



Harvard College Library

GIFT OF

Archibald Cary Coolidge, Ph.D.

Class of 1887

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR

OF HISTORY



Harvard College Library

GIFT OF

Archibald Cary Coolidge, Ph.D.

Class of 1887

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR

OF HISTORY

A Compendious
HISTORY
OF THE
TURKS:
CONTAINING

An Exact Account
OF
The Originall of that
People; the Rise of the *Othoman* Family;
and the Valiant Undertakings of the
Christians against Them:

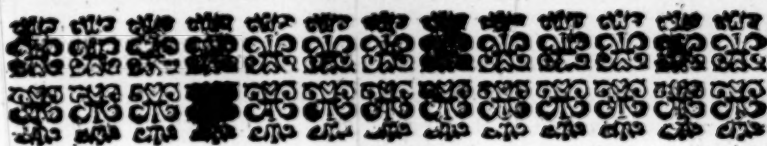
WITH
Their Various Events.

BY
Andrew Moore, Gent.

L O N D O N:
Printed by *John Streater*, 1660.

Att 163.9

Prof. D. C. Goodidge



To the Reader.

READER,

TH E view of the most united and greatest Empire in the World at this Day, is here presented unto Thee at once, in a portable and convenient Volum: wherein Thou hast the great Achievements of many, whose memory is worthy to be preserved and transmitted over to Posterity: For that they have opposed that mighty Power of the Ottoman Family; whom God (no doubt) suffereth as a Scourge to the World; to grow to that immense Magnitude, that as a Tempest He bloweth down, and overwhelmeth Kingdoms, vast Provinces, and Principalities: Some of which are, the glorious Empire of the Greeks, the renowned Kingdames of Macedonia, Peloponnesus, Epirus, Bulgaria, Servia, Bosna, Armenia, Cyprus, Syria, Egypt, Judea, Tunis, Algiers, Media, Mesopotamia, with a great part of Hungary, as also of the Persian Kingdom: And, in brief, so much of Christendom, as far exceedeth that which is thereof at this day left. Notwithstanding this Overgrowth, Greatness, and unlimited Power that this Empire is attained unto; yet, the King of Kings hath at several times by his providence, shewed, that he doth over-rule the great Actions of the World, and he can put a hook in the Nostrils of the great Leviathan, put stops and periods to the mighty Ones. This History pleatifully affordeth matter of this sort, as that of George Castriot, or Scanderbeg's, notable defence of Epirus against the Turk's Power, by small and Inconsiderable Forces: The defence of Malta, the Famous Battles of Hippiades, the defence of Vidda in Hungary; The continual, and not to be compared wars of the Venetians, a small City against the Turk's whole Power: The very consideration of which should incite Noble and Valiant minds to Heroick undertakings: The accomplishing and perfecting of great undertakings, may next to the providence of God be attributed to wisdom and Valour, wisdom to lay a good Foundation to noble Interprizes, and Valour to put them in Execution. History is a Lanskip, that presents at one view: the Counsels of Princes, Battles, Sieges of Cities, Towns, Fortresses; wastings, Depopulations, erections of Edifices: It shal the
various

To the Reader.

various Events that time produceth. The growth of Kingdoms and their periods, the growth of this Empire ; The Subject of this Discourse, seemeth to cease and stand at an even poyre ; It floweth not much over its banks, what it gaineth in one place at one time, it loseth at another : The Roman Empire when it arrived to its greatest Power and Extent, the weight of its own Greatness ruined it self : It's naturall for all bodies and things whatsoever, from small beginning to grow, untill they come to a full State, there to abide a while, then decline ; The greatest cause of the Turks Growth hath bin the differences amongst the Christians, and nothing will ruine him but their union : Reader, I will not detain thee any longer from the History it self, it being carefully Collected out of the writings of Nicetas, Choniates, Nicephorus, Gregoras, Laonicus Chalcocondiles, Marinus Barletius, Leonardus Chienfis, Arch-Bishop of Mytelene, Ja. Fontanus, Augerius Basbequius, Nicholas Nicholai, John Crispe, Paulus, Jovius, Pantalion, Menadoie, and Leonclavius ; All writing such things as they saw, or were (for most part) in their time done. And since continued by the hands of those that have been eminent, able, and best acquainted with those affairs ; Likewise, a native Turk contributed his help to the latter part. So that thou mayest be confident thou art faithfully dealt with in this matter, by him, who desireth nothing more then (Reader) to receive thy Character of Impartial,

THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

Turks before the rising of
the *Ottoman* Family: their first Kingdom's erection by
Trangrolipix in *Persia* of the *Salzuccian*
Family with its successe.

IT is neither agreed on by the best writers, nor well known to the *Turks* themselves, from whence the Empire of this barbarous Nation, the worlds present terrour, first took its small & obscure beginning. Some deriving them from the *Trojans*, from the corrupting of *Tauri* their common name, into *Tarci*; but without any probability: Others reporting that they came first out of *Persia*, and some out of *Arabia*, and *Syria*. *Philip* of *Mornay* derives both *Turks* and *Tartars* from the ten Tribes of *Israel*, carried away by *Salmanazar* King of *Assyria*: some among the *Tartars* still retaining the names of *Dan*, *Zebulon*, and *Nephthali*. *Tartar* also in *Syriack* signifying, remnants; and *Turks*, banished men. Greater store of *Jews* being found in *Russia*, *Sarmatia*, and *Lithuania* than else-where; and the nearer the *Tartars*, the more. A barbarous people likewise in *Livonia* nigh the City *Riga*, differing in Language from the rest, daily and dolefully repeating in the fields, *Jeru, Jeru, Masco, Lon*, knowing no cause, but the teaching of their Ancestors for those words utterance; yet thought to lament over *Jerusalem*, and *Damasco*, thereby. But both *Pomponius Mela* (who saith, the *Thyrsgetes* and

Turks possess the vast Forrests, and live by hunting, fast by the *Geloni*. And *Pliny*, speaking in like manner, Next unto the Nations about *Maotis* Fens are the *Evaza Costa*, &c. The *Thussagets* and *Turks* unto rough desarts with woody Valleys, beyond whom are the *Arympeians*, bordering on the *Riphean* Mountains, together with the *Turks* manners, attire, gesture, gate. weapon, manner of riding and fighting and language agreeing with the *Scythians*, do induce greater probabilities. that they came out of *Scythia*. *Ptolemies Tusci* in *Sarmatia Asiatica* being likewise supposed to be the *Turkish* Nation. The cause next to the hand of the Almighty, the Author of all earthly Kingdoms, of departure from their natural seats, was, either a general want in that cold Countrey, or their neighbours driving them from the *Caspian* Mountains. The time was either in 755, or 844, or both; who rather issuing out of the *Caspian*, than the *Caucasian* streights, first seized on a part of the greater *Armenia*, called by them *Turcomania*; wherein, under leaders, they roamed up and down a long time with families and cattel, in unity, having but little whereabout to strive; who not only defended *Armenia*, but through hardiness and valour, and the cowardise of the *Asians*, incroached farther and farther, though not much skilful in war; whereby their fame and fortune increased, and the *Saracen* Empire rent (within 200 victories over the Christians) into many Kingdoms, whose Sultans (not obeying their great Caliph) as fast declined, by turning their Arms one upon another. *Mahomet* the *Persian* Sultan, praying the *Turks* his neighbours aid against *Pisafiris* the Caliph of *Babylon*, his mortal enemy, who in hope of *Persia* sent him 30000 hardy men, under a valiant Captain *Togra Mucalet*, called by the *Greeks* *Tangrolipix*, of the *Salzuccian* tribe; so that *Mahomet* overcame *Pisafiris*. And now threatened the *Turks* (such necessary men, having further service for them against the *Indians*) if they should talk of departure home, over the

River

River *Araxis*, which they had requested, who hereupon withdrew secretly into the desert of *Caravonitis*, making incursions into the adjoining Countries; against whom *Mahomet* incensed, sent an Army of 20000 men, the third day after whose encamping by the Forrest side, (in whose covert *Tangrolipix* a great way off lay) the *Turks* at night, suddenly set upon their affrighted enemies, who fled. *Tangrolipix* now furnished with all warlike necessities, shewed himself in the field, whose Army was (through the repair of rogues and villains unto him) grown to 50000, against whom *Mahomet* set forward with a fresh Army, having put out the eyes of the Leaders of the former, and threatened to disgrace the fleeing soldiers with womens apparel, who (by the way) fled to *Tangrolipix*, to his great encouragement; and at *Ispanan* of *Persia* they fought, with wonderful slaughter on both sides. But *Mahomet* breaking his neck by unadvised riding: both Armies proclaimed *Tangrolipix* Sultan of *Persia*, with all its Dominions in his stead, (which was in 1030, about 214 years after their coming out of *Scythia*) who freed the passage for his Countrymen over *Araxis*; and the *Saracens* being thereby kept under by the *Turks* (who before used Circumcision) do now embrace Mahometan-Superstition.

Tangrolipix (who now warred against neighbour Princes) after he had slain *Pisafiris*, and joyned his Kingdom of *Babylon* to his own, sent his Cousen *Cutlumuses* with an Army against the *Arabians*, by whom he was overthrown: whose *Turks* easily overthrew and took *Stephen*, the Greek Emperours Lieverenant of *Media*; who sought to stop *Cutlumuses* his return by the confines of his Country. *Cutlumuses* returning, perswaded *Tangrolipix* to turn his forces into *Media*; who notwithstanding, went against the *Arabians* in person with a new Army: by whom he was also worsted. *Cutlumuses* the mean while (for fear) revolting from the Sultan, and betaking him-

self to the strong City *Pasar*, was besieged by the Sultan; who a long time defended himself. *Tangrolipix* in the mean time, sent *Asan* his Nephew to invade *Media*: who was by the Emperours Lievtenant, slain with most of his Army. Then he sent thither his brother *Habrami Alim* with 100000 men; who while the Lievtenant expected *Liparites* Governour of *Iberia*, to come to his aid before he would encounter them, *Alim* besieged *Arzen*, a rich but open Town; who, after six daies defence, setting it on fire in divers places forced the inhabitants to flee for their lives, leaving an infinite spoyle to the enemy. *Liparites* being now come with a great power, they overcame the *Turks*, and chased them in the night; yet *Liparites* was taken prisoner, who was frankly set at liberty by the Sultan, with whom he sent the Seriph in Embassage to the Emperour, to make an everlasting peace with him, by becoming his tributary; which Embassage, being scornfully rejected, the Sultan with all his power, invaded the *Roman* Provinces; And coming as far as *Coims*, the Countrey people and goods, being conveighed into strong Holds, and the Emperour raising a great force against him at *Casarea*, in a fret he returned into *Media*, laying siege unto *Mantzichiart*, a City strongly fortified; he assaulted it 30 daies with fury in vain; and was perswaded by one *Alcan*, to stay another day to prove what he could do, unto whom the whole charge was committed. But this forward Captain was (while others shot from higher ground at the Defendants) slain in his approach to the Wall; and being drawn (by two Sallyers) into the Town, had his head cast over the wall; whereupon, the Sultan raised the siege, threatening a return the next Spring with greater power; But discord arising between the Sultan and his Brother *Alim*, *Alim* joyned with *Cutlumses*, denouncing war against the Sultan, by whom *Habramis* was overcome & taken neer *Pasar*, and put to death: And *Cutlumses* with 6000 glad to flee into *Arabia*, being followed

lowed into *Armenia* by the Sultan, where they had sent for protection from the Emperour *Constantine Monomachus*: which *Monomachus* afterwards sent *Michael Acoluthus* (a valiant Captain) against the Sultan, who spoyle*d Iberia*; wherefore he retired to *Tauris*, leaving *Samuch* with 3000 to in*est* the Emperours frontiers; the which, (by reason of *Monomachus* imposing tribute on the frontiers of his Empire (who in lieu of defending the passages had been free) they hereupon dissolving wonted Garrisons; and *Constantinus Ducas* chiefly his successor, wholly given to hoard up treasure, gave little maintenance unto men of service) the *Turks* now, and afterwards more easily did, to the weakening and ruin of the *Constantinopolitan* empire. And *Endocia*, *Ducas* his wife, with three very young Sons now governing; the *Turks* spoiled *Mesopotamia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappodocia*, and sometimes *Cælesyria*: who fearing a remove from the Empire, thought of some valiant man for her husband, to manage so weighty affairs; the man was *Diogenes Romanus* of great renown, who swelling with his Fathers ambition had secretly aspired unto the Empire, for which by *Endocia* he was held in bonds at *Constantinople*; but when he was brought forth to receive the sentence of death for his treason, the Emperesse moved with compassion (as the other beholders) pardoned him; and made him General of her forces. But a solemn oath she had made to her husband never to marry, was a check to her purpose; wherefore in feminine policy, she sent an instructed Eunuch unto *John Xiphiline* the Patriarch, to get by craft the writing of her oath, being delivered into his hands to keep, by telling him of making his nephew *Barda* a gallant her husband, if she might safely be discharged of her rash oath. Whereat the Patriarch (moved with his nephews preferment) sent for the Senators, of whom, some by his perswasion, telling them of the Commonwealth's dangers, and blaming her rash oath: others by gifts and promises of the Emperesse,

were overcome; so that the Patriarch delivered her the desired writings, discharging her of her oath; who forthwith married *Diogenes*, and proclaimed him Emperour: who being of an haughty spirit, was weary of the pious observations of *Eudocia*; and the Eastern Provinces being in part lost, passed (although with a small and unfitted Army) into *Asia*: of whose coming the invading Sultan hearing retired; and dividing his Army, spoyle the South and North parts of *Asia*, surprizing, and sacking the City *Neo Casaria*. But the Emperour, using expedition, with some of his best companies, came on the *Turks* unawares, who fled and left the booty and prisoners of *Neo Casaria*, together with bag and baggage behind them, although but few slain. Then going into *Syria*, *Hierapolis* was yielded unto him, where he built a strong Castle. And hearing of the overthrow of part of his Army, before sent unto *Melitena*, speedily marched for their relief; where (having a far inferiour number, and the Governour of *Aleppo* traiterously joyning with the enemy) he was surrounded with impossibility to escape; yet suddenly and silently issuing out of his trenches, put the *Turks* to flight: so he returning to *Constantinople*, first taking divers Towns, and billeting his Army against Winter, about *Alexandria* of *Cilicia*. And at Spring he repressed the *Turks* fury, who did much harm about *Neo Casaria*; after whose departure unto *Enphrates*, the *Turks* put *Philareus* (left by him at those frontiers) to flight, wasting *Cappadocia*, and sacking *Iconium* in *Cilicia*. The Emperour made towards them, sending the Governour of *Antioch*, to stop the *Turks* passage at *Mopsiphestia*. But they being stript of their prey by the *Armenians*, and escaping by night at the Emperours approach, he returned from those quieted Provinces, unto *Constantinople*. After which *Manuel Comnenus* (whose honour was envied by the Emperour, for his pre-valorcy against the *Turks*) was, near *Sebastia*, taken by the *Turks* in his way to *Syria*, and most part of his small Army slain,

slain; who (while the Emperour was preparing to go personally against his enemies) fled from the displeased Sultan, with the *Turk* that took him. The Emperour set forward, and having pacified a mutinous Legion, at *Cryapega*, where he encamped; he both removed, and divided his Army into three parts, sending one part to besiege *Manzicierts*, which was soon yielded upon composition; yet the garrison Souldiers being suddenly oppressed, as they sought for forrage, he sent *Briennius* for the Cities relief; who when *Basilacius* was sent unto him, as being too weak, put the *Turks* to flight in battel. *Briennius* notwithstanding laden with Armour, was in the rear taken, his horse being first slain, and brought unto the Sultan, who both entreated him honourably, and questioned him frequently. The present Sultan in the field, was *Axan Tangrolipix* his son, who was dead, of great wisdom: who sending to the Emperour to treat of peace, had this message slighted by him, through the perswasion of some Captains, being willed if he desired peace, to leave the place of his encamping to the Emperour; who sent for *Rufelius* in haste, that he had sent against *Chliat*: but (he being for safety retired into the *Roman* frontiers) had not his help, some of the *Scythians* also in the Emperours camp revolting to the *Turks*; yet he gave them battel, who having some hopes of peace, seemed not much desirous either to fight or flee. But the Emperour retreating for fear of his camp that was left weakly manned; others (through *Andronicus Constantine* his brothers son, and that envied *Diogenes*, giving out that the Emperour fled) began to flee also. At which the *Turks* being encouraged hardly pursued; the Emperour now standing, and notably resisting, but in vain, for he was both wounded and taken; which the Sultan at first believed not, until he was assured thereof by his Embassadors, and *Basilacius*, a prisoners gesture towards *Diogenes*. The Sultan then cheered him with words, telling *Diogenes* (who humbled himself) he

would use him as an Emperour, the which he did, concluding peace with him, on promise of marriage between their children; and sending him away (in a Turkish habit) with his Embassadors towards *Constantinople*, being first cured of his wounds. But *Michael Ducas* (the eldest son of *Eudocia*) who was thrust into a Monastery, being by *John Caesar* and others, set up in *Diogenes* his room, letters were sent into all Provinces, not to receive *Diogenes* as Emperour: who stayed at the Castle of *Docia*; and was by *Caesar's* sons overthrown, and yielded to them in the City of *Adana*, upon condition of resigning the Empire for ever, who being brought by *Andronicus*, *Caesar's* eldest son, to *Cotai* in *Phrygia*, while he was there sick, had (notwithstanding the Clergies faith gaged for his safety) his eyes cruelly put out, and in the Isle *Prota* (worms breeding in his wounds for want of dressing) shortly dyed, reigning 3 years 8 moneths.

Axan in revenge thereof, invaded not for booty alone, but for conquest, the Imperial Provinces, and overthrew *Isaac Commen's* Armie, taking him prisoner; and *Caesar* the Emperour's Uncle, with another Army, being also taken; but that was by *Russelius* a revolting traytor, who hereby doing what he list in lesser *Asia*, was through *Alexius Commen's* secret working with the *Turks* for money, betrayed to the Emperour, who being imprisoned, was afterwards employed against *Briennius* up in rebellion.

But *Cutlumuses* and his cousin *Melech*, in the beginning of *Axan's* reign, returning out of *Arabia*, raised a great power, and were ready to encounter the Sultan's whole forces nigh the City *Eres*, as envious of his Kingdom. But the Caliph of *Babylon* their chief Bishop, considering the ruine of the *Saracens*, through civil dissention, and fearing the like in these, the chief stay of Mahometism, thrusting himself (contrary unto Pontifical formality) betwixt the Armies ready to joyn battel, who both by his reverence and perswasion, (that *Axan* should enjoy his Kingdom

Kingdom entire, & that *Cutlumuses* with his Sons, should be the sole Lords of what they subdued in the Constantinopolitan Empire) were content to lay down Arms: Most commodious to Mahometism, and most hurtful to the Christians; for *Cutlumuses* &c. soon subdued all *Media*, a good part of *Armenia*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, *Bythinia*, and the lesser *Asia*; and enlarged (by the *Persian* Sultans help) much the *Turkish* Empire, (which occasioned them to be accounted Sultans, though indeed they were none, neither were *Aspasalemus* &c. (though all great men of the *Selzuccian* family) any other than imaginary successors in the *Türks* first Empire, *Axan*, or rather *Ax-Han*, that is, the white King, succeeding his Father *Trangrolopix*; *Axan* giving to *Ducas* and *Melech* his kinsmen, *Damascus*'s and *Aleppo*'s government, (still to hold all of him as of their Sovereign) that he might encroach on the *Ægyptian* Caliph, *Cutlumuses* privileges being larger: who had also assisted *Botoniates*, in thrusting *Michael Ducas* after 6 years & 6 months reign, into a Monastery, who usurped the Empire of *Greece*, though himself was in like manner served, by *Alexius Comnenus*.

Cutlumuses and his sons, thus prevailing both against the Christians, and *Melech* against the *Ægyptian* Caliph, to the loss of the *Saracen* name and Empire, now almost quite driven out of *Asia*; *Peter* a French Hermite, then visiting *Jerusalem* in devotion, diligently observed the manne's, government and strength of these Barbarians: as also the grievous miseries of the oppressed Christians amongst them; the which (being a little hard-favoured fellow) he had freedom safely to do; and coming to *Jerusalem*, entred into deep discourse with the Abbot of the Monastery, and Master of the Hospitalers; at length agreeing that they should write Letters to the Pope, and other Christian Princes touching the Christians miseries, craving aid against those cruel Infidels; the Hermit promising that he would be a trusty carrier of their Letters, and also a careful

careful Solicitor of their Petitions, which were to this effect; That whereas the Citizens & Countrey-men of Christ Jesus, are daily scourged and brained, &c. were it not impiety in divers respects to leave the Land, they would flee to the farthest parts of the earth. And though happily the Western Christians are without fear, yet, the *Turks* forces, policies, & attempts, together with their success, being stronger, and deeper than the *Saracens*; seeing *Jerusalem* it self is taken & sacked, they could not presume to stand in safety; And therefore since our blood cryeth out for revenge, we lay prostrate at your feet for help, for deliverance of your Religion from accursed slavery & averting the storm hanging over your own and childrens head.

The Hermit delivered these Letters at *Rome* to Pope *Urban* the second, requesting his care for redresses of the Christians miseries teen at *Jerusalem*; who calling a Council at *Claremont* in *France* of 310 Bishops out of divers parts, with Embassadors of all Countries, propounded the same as a special matter; where the Letters being read, and the Christians miseries and teares being (by the Hermit) lively represented, the whole Assembly was moved with compassion, crying out, *Deus vult*, that is, God willeth it, which words were afterward much used in their expedition as a sign of their chearfulness; this religious decreed war spreading in one daies space, by flying fame, so far as is hardly to be believed. And by the effectual perswasion of the Father, returned home, were shortly seen about 300000 men with red Crosses on their brealls, ready to spend life and goods for Religion, and recovery of the holy Land, under the commands of *Godfrey*, *Eustace*, and *Baldwin*, Brothers of the house of *Bulloin*; Great *Hugh* the French Kings brother, *Raimond* & *Robert*, Earls of *Flanders*, *Robert* of *Normandy*, *William* the Conquerour's Son, *Stephen* of *Valois*, *Ademar* the Popes Legate, and *Peter* the Hermit; many Princes being partakers of their travels, though not of such charge.

One *Gualter* first set forward, then the Hermit with

40000, who came at length thorow *Germany*, *Hungary*, and *Bulgaria*, with labour and losse to *Constantinople*, which weary travellers were afterwards shipped over *Bosphorus* into *Asia*, by *Alexius* the Emperour, (marching & encamping not far from *Nice* in *Bythinia*) unto whom (by reason of distrusting the expedition to be against himself, through guilt of his usurpation) they were not at first very welcome. *Godfrey* with others, followed the Hermits way; *Hugh* the Legat and the French Commanders, passed into *Italy*, taking leave of the Pope, unto whom *Bohemud* a Prince of *Apulia* joyning with 12000, they crossed the Adriatick from three several Ports *Brundisium*, *Bary* and *Hydruntum*, passing by land to *Constantinople*, where they met with *Godfrey*, with whom jealous *Alexius*, better perswaded of their good meanings, made a League, to furnish them with all supplies, (though by him but slenderly performed) for which he should receive all Countries, except *Jerusalem*, gained from the *Turk* and *Saracens*; he transported them unto *Asia*: but *Bohemud* from his Fathers grudge with *Alexius* came nor to *Constantinople*; yet marched & passed *Hellepont* sooner than was expected.

The *Turks* understanding what was growing on them out of *Europe*, diligently sought to cut off *Gualter*, & *Peters* Army, who had lye two months about *Nice*, expecting the other Princes, whose Souldiers weary and somewhat pinched, chose *Raymond* a *Germane*, in a mutiny, in *Gualters* room, suspecting also *Peter's* prowess, and therefore by quitting *Exorgum* a Town, and sending out Cartel, as a bait to train out the Christians, winking at those who brought them into *Exorgum* slew afterwards full 3000 encouraged Christians, to the discouragement of their chief Commanders; yet the Soldiers chose one *Burel* a new General, & 10000 rashly going out of *Exorgum* in revenge, & for forrage, were almost all slain by the *Turks*, who afterwards hardly besieging the town, with famine & sword consumed most of them, the *Hermit* with much ado defending the town *Cinit*, whither he had fled til the Princes coming.

Solyman Curtumuses his Son (who was dead, (who had almost nullified) the *Hermie's* forces, was careful to withstand the great Army; who removed from *Nicomedia* besieging *Nica*, so called from *Nicea* the wife of King *Lyfismachus*; this City was yielded July, 1097 after 50 daies siege, defended by the *Turks* longer then was suppoled, new supplies coming to them by the lake *Asianus* on the other side; the *Turks*, assaying the mean while the Legars Camp, were with great loss repuffed, *Solyman's* wife and two children being taken prisoners; the City was restored to *Alexius*. Then the Christian Princes encamping on the fourth daies march by a river for refreshment, news was brought to *Bohemud* of *Solyman's* approach (aided by the *Persian* Sultan) with 60000 men, to give the Christians battel; who sending word to the other Princes for relief upon occasion, the two Armies most terribly fought, the *Turks* lying slain on heaps, some of their horsemen breaking in the mean time, into *Bohemuds* Camp, among women and weak persons, appalled the fighters; but *Bohemud* withdrawing some Companies, repuffed the enemy, whose Souldiers he found at his return ready to flee from the *Turks*; but his coming restored the battel. The enemy with horsemen assaulted the Camp again, *Hugh* seasonably coming with 30000 to rescue it, whom a fresh *Turkish* reserve notably encountred. At length (after a terrible and doubtful fight) the *Turks* gave ground, retiring into the mountains, 40000 being slain, about 2000 Christians; No enemy the next morning appearing, they buried their dead, easily distinguished by their red crosses. *Solyman* fleeing, gave out he had the victory, burning, destroying, or carrying away all as he went.

Bohemud and the Princes now marching through lesser *Asia*, easily took *Antiochia* in *Pisidia*, being courteously received by the Citizens of *Iconium*, refreshing their Army. But at their approach to *Heraclea*, the *Turks* and Garrison souldiers fled; the Christian Citizens gladly yielding themselves

selves and City to their deliverers. Here (through the Turks fear not daring any where to abide their coming) Baldwin and Tancred with part of the Army soon subdued Tarsus Edessa, and Mannissa, Cities of Cilicia, while the other part took the lesser Armenia, and the Cities of Casarea and Socor in Cappadocia, driving the Turks in every place out of lesser Asia, and setting the oppressed Christians at liberty. Of which Solymán sorely complained in Letters for aid unto Axan his Cousin. Thus the Turks (until, by discord and ambition of the Greek Empire, they again became dreadful this heat being over) were glad to retire farther off, being brought low in lesser Asia.

The Conquerours mounted over high Taurus, possessing the City Maresia, (from whence the Turks had by night fled) being first bound by oath, not to return home till the accomplishment of that holy war. While they stayed here, the Citizens of Artasia suddenly slaying all the Turks in Garrison, received Robert Earl of Flanders, with 1000 men that was sent to Summon it. In revenge hereof, the Turks sent 10000 out of Antioch unto Artasia, 15 miles off; who by stragling Companies, drew the Flemings out of the City, purposely fleeing from them; and had not the Citizens relieved them, they had surely perished by the Turks ambushments. The Army, marching forward, encamped Octob. 21. 1097 before Antioch, having passed the River Oronates, on which this famous City is situated, (Robert Duke of Normandy by a hard conflict making the Turks forsake the bridge, where they thought to stay their passage) the Governour (for the Persian Sultan) of this Metropolis of Syria (called by the Hebrews Reblatha) was Cassianus, who had 7000 horse and 20000 foot, as defendants, with great store of all necessary provisions; 'Twas encompassed with a double Wall, 460 Towers within it, an impregnable Castle at its East-end with a deep Lake on the South side. Many a fierce sally during the siege, was made by the Turks, being valiantly repulled: chiefly

at the bridg made by the Christians with boats over the River for passage to and fro. But at the beginning of *February*, through the abundance of rain, and scarcity of *vi-ctuals*: whereby they eat their slain enemies, their horses perishing for lack of meat; *Peter* the Hermit, author of this war, and *Tancred Bohemud's* Nephew among others, through these increasing miseries, secretly withdrew to steal home: who being taken, and by *Hugh* sharply reprov'd, were forced to take a new oath for their fidelity. A great part of *Arethusa's* Garrison being cut off by *Bohemud*, the Countrey was more open for distressed Souldiers relief, until a great number of *Turks* about *Aleppo* and *Damasco* came to relieve the besieged, who by the Christians were put to flight, 2000 being slain, taking store of victuals, &c. and setting the *Turks* heads on stakes before the City; Whereupon, *Cassianus* (having lost his eldest Son herein, and expecting relief from the Sultan, requested a truce for a time, which being (by the *Turks* slaying one *Uollo* a French-man) broken, a fresh and more hard siege began. The Governour had in 9 months space lost so many, that he used one *Pirrhus*, amongst divers Christian Citizens, for the guarding of a Tower; who by secret intelligence, and easy conditions made with *Bohemud*, let his Souldiers by night into the City, which was recovered *June* 1098, about 10000 men, women and children were put to the sword: amongst whom many Christians by the furious Souldiers; many *Turks* fled into the Castle, and the fleeing Governour, was slain by Christians in the mountains of *Armenia*. Amongst other Letters, speedily certifying this joyfull news, *Bohemud* wrote to *Roger* his Brother Prince of *Apulia*, shewing how it was yielded unto himself by *Pyrrhus*, and how few daies after he was in danger by a wound received at *Arecum*, that was assaulted by them; assuring *Roger* both of the valour and esteem, he and the Army, had of his Son *Tancred*. The *Venetians* likewise, at the time of the siege, with 200 Gallies, having the

the upper hand of the *Turks* by Sea at the *Rhodes*, set at liberty 5000 souldiers, save 30 chief Commanders, and sayling into *Ionia*, took *Smyrna*, spoyling *Lycia*, *Pamphilia*, and *Cilicia*. *Corbanas* also, the Persian Sultan's Lieutenant, now besieged *Edessa*, intending to relieve *Antioch*, which was defended by *Baldwin*, whereof he had intelligence by the Son of *Cassiannus*, after he had raised that siege, keeping on his way with a mighty Army resolving to hazard the fortune of a battle. The *Turks* still possessing the Castle, *Corbanas* sent some supplies into it, which sallied out on the Earl of *Tholouse*, who was left to keep them into the Castle, while *Corbanas* fought with the Christians in the field, so that within and without the City was a dreadfull fight, and bloody slaughter; but the *Turks* gave ground and fled, above 10000 of them being slain, and about 4000 *Christians*, leaving rich prey besides Horses and other beasts, the Castle also surrendring the next day *June* 28.

Alexius the Emperour, unto whom this City should according to agreement have been delivered, guilty of neglect, sending the Princes no relief all the siege, refused to accept of it: so that *Bohemud* was chosen Prince or King of *Antioch*.

At Autumn there was a plague in the Army, of which 50000 are said to have dyed, which ceasing in *November*, *Rugia* and *Albaria* two Cities, were by force taken; where *Raymund*, envying *Bohemud's* preferment, dissented with him, who for the Cause's sake, retired to *Antioch*. At Spring, *Raymund* besieging *Tripolis*, from some fortunate roads made on the enemies last Winter, insolently maligned *Bohemud's* proceedings, who had besieged *Tortosa*; *Bohemud* considering 'twas enough to divide all Christians, rose with his Army, and retired to *Antioch*.
After

After which, *Gabella* was taken, and *Tortosa*, whither *Godfrey* (and *Raymund* from *Tripolis*) came, after 3 moneths siege departed spoiling about *Sidon*, passing by *Ptolemais*, and keeping Whitontide at *Casarea*, marched to and from *Rama*. And upon the first delivery of *Jerusalem*, there were piercing and rending shouts for joy: some lifting up eyes and hands to Heaven, calling on Christ: others kissing the ground, and saluting those so much heard of holy places: Every one, as at the end of long travel, expressing some joy.

This ancient and famous City, being utterly destroyed by *Vespasian* and his son *Titus*, 40 years after Christs death, lay buried in its ruins, till about the year 136 it was (by *Ælius Adrianus* Emperour) re-edified, who in part changed its situation, enclosing the place of Christs suffering and burial within the City walls, and calling it *Ælia* after his own name, giving it first to the *Jews*, who were afterwards for rebellion thrust out, and then gave it to the Christians (in time also recovering the ancient name *Jerusalem*) who under several idolatrous and persecuting Emperours, endured grievous things; peace being, about 320, given to the afflicted by *Constantine* the Great. Whereby for 300 years they flourished under *Greek* Emperours, till usurping *Phocas* (by killing *Maurice* and his Children) occasioned *Cosroes* King of *Persia* to invade *Syria*, taking *Jerusalem* and killing almost 100000 Christians in revenge of his Father in Law: who about 624, was again driven out of it by *Heraclius* that succeeded *Phocas*, cruelly slain by his Guard. Which *Heraclius*, not paying a warlike people of *Arabia Deserta* that had helped him against *Cosroes*, calling them vile Dogs, because they had lately received *Mahomet's* Doctrine, caused them to revolt and joyn to the Caliphs, extending *Mahomet's* doctrine and Sovereignty over all *Egypt* and *Syria*, taking *Jerusalem*. The *Greek* Emperours being overcome by the *Saracens*, left *Syria* in their possession, for which they had divers years conflicted; who
for

for 370 years oppressed the Christians, leaving a 3d part of *Jerusalem* to them; with Christs Sepulchre and mount *Zion* for profits sake; untill the vagrant and cruel Turks start up, and aspiring *Persia's* kingdom, subdue *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, most of the lesser *Asia*, and all *Judea*: The *Saracens* Government being but light unto the Christians, in respect of their Thralldome under the *Turks*; and had not these Princes who were now come to *Jerusalem*, been stirred up for release of these miseries, none could have been expected.

The Princes lay encamped before the North and West of *Jerusalem* in order, (*Bohemud* being at *Antioch*, and *Baldwin* at *Edessa*) *Godfrey* with the *Germans* and *Lorrainers* lying next the City, whose Governour had a very strong Garrison with all necessaries for a long siege; on the 5 day they fiercely assaulted it, but for want of enough scaling-ladders (it was supposed) they gave over, few daies after they most terribly assaulted it on both sides afresh, untill by reason of fervent heat and want of water (all the wells except *Siloe* being poysoned) they retired into their Trenches.

A fleet of *Genovaies* now arriving at *Joppa*, (knowing themselves too weak for the *Egyptian Sultans* fleet at *Ascalon*) for *Jerusalem's* relief, sunk their Ships, and marched to the Camp; among whom were divers Engineers, by whom a great moving Tower was made covered with raw hides to save it from fire; which by night being brought to the wall, they the next day the winde driving the *Turks* fire, who thought to burn it, into their own faces, gained the top of the wall: which being first footed by *Godfrey* and his Brother, they pressed in like a violent River killing men women and children, with a lamentable sight: The better sort of *Turks* retiring into the Temple fought terribly; many on both sides falling, but the *Christians* fiercely breaking in, the foremost were miserably slain, the *Turks* also desperately fighting

fighting in the midst of the Temple, there were slain heapes both of victors and vanquished, the pavement swimming with blood. Then the *Turks* held the top of the Temple; And the next day (upon Proclamation of mercy to such as laid down weapons) they yielded themselves. Thus *Jerusalem* was recovered in 1099, having been in the *Infidels* hands above 400 years.

Eight daies after (cleansing the City and giving thanks to God, and the poor Christians welcomming with joy their victorious Brethren) the (Princes consulting of their King, chose *Robert Duke of Normandy*, who refusing *Jerusalem* upon news of his Fathers death in *England* (*William Rufus* being in possession as it were) lost both Kingdomes: *Godfrey of Bullaine* a great Souldier being saluted King, who said, He would not wear a Crown of Gold, where Christ wore a Crown of thorns: but briefly certified these proceedings to *Bohemud*, shewing *Jerusalem's* strength and situation, and how he first gained part of the wall, *Baldwin* opening the gates for entry; of their great conflict in *Solomon's Temple*; and that, since, he was saluted King of *Jerusalem*, though against his will; he would endeavour well to deserve of the universal faith. And then joyned a most dreadful battle with the greatest multitude of *Turks*, and *Saracens*, (all as one assembled at *Ascalon* for revenge) killing a 100000 of them & taking more spoile than in this whole expedition: After this Victory, some Princes returned to their Charges, others, with honour to their own Country. But shortly after, a great Pestilence ensuing, *Godfrey* among the rest died, *July 18. 1100.* Scarce reigning a full year, generally lamented, and honourably buried on mount *Calvary* in the Temple of Christ's Sepulchre. In whose Room *Baldwin of Edessa* his brother was Crowned King in 1101. Who (aided by Sea and Land) took the Sea-City *Cesarea Stratonis*, overthrowing certain Companies at *Rams*, gladly and safely conducting to
Jerusa-

Jerusalem, new western aides by *Tyre*, and three other Cities holden by the enemies, at which time the *Christians* were notably overthrown about *Rama* by the *Turks*, aided by the *Arabians* and *Egyptians*; two *Stephens*, Earles of *Charters* and *Burgundy* being slain, the King hardly escaping; who repairing his Army at *Joppa*, speedily so overthrew his secure enemies, that they had little cause to rejoyce in their Victory. *Tancred* Prince of *Galilee*, in the mean time taking the City *Apamea*, and with much royl *Laodicea*: But *Baldwin Burgenfis* Governour of *Edessa* was, at the siege of *Carras* that was upon yielding, overthrown by the *Persian Sultan*; *Benedict* a Bishop, and *Joscelin* his kinsman being taken with him: who (to the offence of the 2 *Sultans*) after 5 years, redeemed themselves from the Turk that took them.

King *Baldwin*, who (after this) lived unmolested for a season, suddenly raised a full strength and besieged *Ptolemais* or *Acon* in *Phœnicia*, and was glad to raise his siege, being after a long time brought to his end, by a healed-up wound received in a skirmish at his return, yet the next year *Ptolemais* by the encouragement of the *Genna* fleet, was yielded to him on composition after 20 daies. *Tancred* Livetenant Governour of *Antioch*, soon after put to flight the invading Governour of *Aleppo* and others, and the *Caliph* of *Egypt* was discomfited by the *Christians* at land, and by tempest at Sea, comming against *Jerusalem*.

Bohemud returning out of *Italy* with 40000 foot and 5000 horse, (as is reported) toward *Jerusalem* spoiled (in revenge of *Alexius* his injuries) the Country about *Dyrrhachium*, forcing the Emperour to promise by oath security and kindnesse to all travelling Souldiers, and dying shortly at *Antioch* in 1108. Whose Principality his child *Bohemud* enjoyed, under *Tancred*s tuition.

Baldwin the King, *Apr. 23. 1111.* wonn the City *Berytus*, puttig most to the sword, and the same year *Decemb. 19.* *Sidon* was yielded to him, through the assistance of a Norway fleet: *Tyre* only (of all the famous Sea-Cities from *Laodicea* to *Ascalon* remaining to the enemies, the which *Baldwin* hardly besieged 4 months in vain.

Two years after, *Baldwin* and *Tancred* who, *Bohemund* dying, Reigned in *Antioch* with the rest joyned a cruel battle with the *Persian* Sultans mighty Army under *Mendius* their General, (encamping on the Sea near *Tyberias*) after some companies, were by some flying skirmishers entrapped in ambush, and rescued by other *Christians*: who were, by the *Turks* far exceeding in number, put to flight, and hardly followed with great slaughter. The *Ascalon* *Turks* (the mean while) besieging *Jerusalem*, weakly manned: but news of the Kings coming, and of Supplies out of the west made them (having burnt store-houses of Corn, and spoyled other things) to retire home. This King (after many hard conflicts with *Turks* and *Saracens*, won *Pharamia* a strong Sea City in *Egypt*, taking abundance of fish, at the mouth of *Nilus*; wherewith he sealed in the City. And after dinner grieved with his old wound, died near *Laris* in his return in 1118, Reigning 18 years, and royally Sepulchred near his brother *Godfrey*.

Baldwin Brugenis of *Edeffa*, his Cousin, was chosen and Crowned King of *Jerusalem*, *Apr. 2. 1118.* a man of great courage, tall stature, and comely countenance: Against whom the *Caliph* of *Egypt* with the King of *Aleppo* raised a great power the same summer, *Baldwin* also encamping in sight of his enemies, both armies for fear of each other, after 3 months sitting, retired without any notable action. *Alexius* the Emperour died this year, whose Son *Calo Johannes* his successour (all his Reign) worthily defended his territories in lesser *Asia*,

But

BUT Roger Prince of *Antioch*, with more courage than discretion going forth against a great Army not far from *Aleppo*, was slain with most of his Army, the place being called the field of blood. *Baldwin Aug. 14, 1120*, overthrowing the careless Turks with a great slaughter, joyned *Antioch* principality to his own; which *Antiochians*, *Baldwin* their protecting Prince being far off, were more subject to enemies' incursions than before; the King of *Damasco* coming with great power, and doing harm thereabouts in 1122; who understanding *Baldwin's* approach with a puissant Army, retired out of the Country, the King taking *Garaze*, a new built strong Castle of the King of *Damasco's*, which he rased to the ground; Whilst this King wisely sent Embassadors to divers Christian Princes, especially to the *Venetians*, for relief by Sea, *Balac* the *Persian* Sultan with a great Army invaded about him *Antioch*: with whom without longer stay for his friends aid, he joyned battel, and was with certain of the best Commanders carried captive unto *Carras*, most of his Army being overthrown. Hereupon, the Caliph of *Egypt* the *Saracen*, for *Egypt* with *Tuneis* and *Moroccoes* Kingdoms were yet in their possession, invading *Jerusalem's* Kingdom, landed an Army at *Joppa*, besieging it also by Sea with 700 sail. Against which, while they lay in hope, the Duke of *Venice*, stirred up by the Pope for the Christians relief, came from *Cyprus* thither in hast with 200 sail, and either before the *Saracens* could make ready, or after a doubtful battel, obtained a glorious victory, going by land to *Jerusalem*, where he was honorably received by the Patriarch &c. *Eustace* also the Vice-King, overthrowing them at *Ascalon*.

After *Joppa's* relief, the *Saracens* discomfited, and the *Christians* encouragement, they besieged *Tyre* by Sea and Land, *March 1*, whose sharpest assault the *Turks* valiantly

repulsed; yet after 4 months, *June 29, 1124*, it was yielded on composition, of which a third part was given to the *Venetians*, according to a former agreement; *Baldwin*, after 18 months imprisonment, being shortly ransomed for 100000 Ducats.

But the Duke of *Venice* returning home, took *Chios*, *Rhodes*, and three more Islands, with the City of *Modon* in *Peloponnesus*, from the Emperour, who, as *Alexius* his Father, envying the *Christians* success, had in the Dukes absence infested his Territories. King *Baldwin* also invaded and spoyled the King of *Damascos* Country, overthrowing him in three battels, taking great prey, as also the invading *Saracens* at *Ascalon*, whereby for a time he lived in peace; who, with others, joyning with *Hugh Paganus* the first Master of the *Templars*, returning with a great number of *Christians* out of the West, and besieging *Damasco*, through the Cities strength, the Defendants valour, and the air's contagion, raised their siege. King *Baldwin* also now sent to *Fulk* Count of *Turine* &c. (who was 60 years old, and making preparations for the holy Land) offering him his eldest daughtre *Melissinda*, with the Kingdoms succession for a dowry, whereof he accepted. And about 3 years after, feeling death draw on, removing into the Patriarchs house, he in the presence of divers great Ones commended to his Sonne in Law and Daughter, with their Son *Baldwin* two years old, the Government, presently after (*Aug. 22. 1131*) dying, and solemnly buried with *Gosfrey* and *Baldwin*. *Fulk* was *Sept. 16*. Crowned by the Patriarch; the beginning of whose reign, was by *Pontius* of *Tripolis*, and *Hugh* of *Joppa* that joyned with the *Ascalonian Saracens*, vext with domestick discord, greatly hurtful to the Christian State; which by force, and others mediation was well appeased, and yet vengeance followed the Traytors. The *Turks* also invaded about *Antioch*, and were overthrow; But
John

John the *Greek* Emperour, with a puissant Army, took *Tarsus* with *Cilicia's* whole Province, besieging *Antioch*, pretending it belonged to his Empire; who (after Christian Princes mediation) agreed that *Raymond* Count of *Poitou* (to whom the dukedom of *Antioch* was given with the Dukes daughter) should hold it from him as his Sovereign, and so returned. *Fulk* about that time, coming to relieve *Monteferrant-Castle*, was by *Sanguin* the Turk overthrown, betaking him into the Castle: which now he hardlier besieged, pinching them within by famine, unto whose relief the Kingdoms whole power coming, the Turk upon deliverance of the Castle to him, set all at liberty.

John the Emperour, about 4 years after, came to *Antioch* (having longed also for *Jerusalems* Kingdom) who not being suffered to enter, but upon an oath and few followers, with quiet departure, in revenge, pretending the Armies want of victuals, made havock of the Suburbs, cutting down the fruit-trees to dresse their meat. And wintering in *Cilicia*, at hunting of a Boar, had his hand lightly wounded by a poisoned arrow in his quiver, where-with his arm swelling more and more, must be cut off, which he abhorred, saying, The *Greek* Empire was not to be governed with one hand, died; *Emmanuel* the youngest Son (his two eldest being dead) succeeding him.

King *Fulk* also now at pence, walking with his Queen out of *Ptolemais*, following amongst other Countiers, a Hare, put up by running boys, fell in the course with his head under the Horse, with whose weight and the Saddles hardness, the brains came out at the nose and ears of his crushed head, who died *Novemb. 13. 1142* (lying 3 days speechless) and was magnificently buried by the other Kings with a general lamentation. The elder of whose 2 Sons, *Baldwin*, about 13 years old, with his mother, were

Solemnly on *Christmas*-day crowned in 1742, about which time *Sanguin* the bloody Turk took by undermining *Edeffa* in *Count Joscelin's* absence exercising all cruelty on the Christians, (the territory of 2 Archbishops being drawn from *Antioch* hereby) which Turk was stabbed in his drunkenness at the siege of *Cologenbar*. *Noradine* his Son succeeding him. Who (after *Baldwin 3* had in his first year recovered and fortified *Sorbal* Castle beyond *Jordan*) to betet him in his return, the next year going against the King of *Damasco*, that he miraculously escaped.

Edeffa's loss with the Christians miseries (through the stirring up of *Eugenius* Bishop of *Rome*) greatly moved the Western Princes, to prepare almost in every Province for their relief. *Conrade* Emperour of *Germany*, raising a puissant Army, set forward, who having before certified *Emanuel* the Greek Emperour of his purpose, craving passage with victuals and all necessaries for his mony, he seemed willingly to condescend, though inwardly pining thereat; for strong companies of the *Greeks* following the Army to keep the Souldiers from stragling, now and then cut them off roaming, at advantage. And the farther they travelled, the more the *Greeks* discontented countenances appeared; yet they went on to *Philippolis*, from whence departing, the *Greeks* and Armies rear, had not the wisest sort duly appeared them, had plain'y fought. Then from *Adrianople* they came to the Plain *Cerobachi*, where the River *Atelas* (that suddenly in Winter or great fall of water, overfloweth its banks like a Sea) through abundance of rain, so by right overflowed the encamped Army, that beasts with burdens, besides weapons &c. and also great numbers of armed men, were with lamentable out-cries carried away, and perished like hay or chaffe every one glad to shift for himself; the beholders saying, The wrath of God was broke into the Camp. Nevertheless, the

the water being fallen, the sore troubled Emperour marched to *Constantinople*: Who (by armed men glistening on the Walls) was not suffered to enter, but perswaded by the Emperour to transport his Army over the strait, promising to supply his wants; the *Greeks* sparing no labour, or vessel in that to hasty service, Who being shipped over, the Countrey people (by his appointment) brought nothing, as before, to sell them; the Towns at an extream rate, first receiving their mony by ropes from the Walls, delivered them what they pleased, and oft-times nothing, wildely mingling Lime with their Meal, of which many Souldiers died; but if the Emperour were not privy thereunto, yet he coined counterfeit mony to deceive them, practising all kind of mischief, to terrifie their posterity from the like expedition, and secretly plotting with the *Turks*, how they might be defeated: some part thereby, being overthrown near *Bathis*, although in *Phrygia* themselves were greatly slaughtered by the part marching thorough *Phrygia*: which *Turks* with a great Army, to stay the Armies passage at the River *Meander*, and they having neither bridg nor boat to passe over, declared it their patience, that the *Greeks*, as they passed by, were not become their prey. *Comrade* retired his Souldiers out of the shot of the *Turks* Archers, standing on the other banks-side for refreshment, arising before day, and putting his whole Army in Battalions. Both Armies thus in readiness, the winding River only betwixt them, the Emperour encouraged his men with a Speech to this purpose. That we are exposed to dangers pining with hunger, &c. for Christ's sake and the glory of God. But these Barbarians (divided from us by this River) are the enemies of Christ's Crosse, in whose blood we have vowed to wash our selves, calling to remembrance the grievous things, and tortures inflicted on our friends and Countrey-men, by these uncircumcised: let not any terror daunt us.

Let

Let them know that we are superiour to them, as our Master excells their Prophet and seducer: Let us fight in Christ's name, with assured hope of an easie victory. We are those mighty men standing about the divine Sepulchre, as about *Solomon's* bed: let us remove these *Agarens*, as stones of offence, Children of the bond-woman; I my self will shew you the way over this River, I know the water, beaten back by our force, will, as *Jordan* in ancient times, be at a stand. This attempt shall (to our immortall praise) be spoken of in all posterity. This said, after a signal of battel, and devout prayer by every man; *Conrade* first put spurs to his horse: the rest, closely following with a terrible out-cry, passed all over with lesse trouble than was feared; the horses even beating back the water towards the fountain, then after small resistance, the discouraged *Turks* fled, whom the Christians like Lyons pursuing, the fields were covered with dead bodies; huge heaps of bones long after declaring the fallen multitude, to the wonder of travellers, many *Italians* being wounded, but few or none slain.

After this they hardly besieged *Iconium* in lesser *Asia*, but the Cities strength, the valour of the Defendants, and the peoples numberlesse dying in the Camp (of which, the *Greeks* mingling Lime with the Meal was the chief cause) caused the Emperour to raise his long siege, and return into his Countrey; most referring this his journey into *Asia* to the year 1146.

By this not so fortunate expedition, *Baldwin* the mean time, fortified ruinous *Gaza* of the *Philistins*, serving as a Bulwark against *Egypt*, and to distresse *Ascalon*: which strong Sea City he besieging by Sea and Land, (when *Noradine* was repulsed by the Citizens of *Paneda* whom he besieged, and the Caliph of *Egypt's* fleet

fleet from *Ascalon's* relief) was with great losse repulsed, the Wall's breach that he had made repaired, and the dead Christians hanged in ropes over the Walls, at which the Commanders moved, returned to the assault and the besieged discouraged with great slaughter, yielded the City with its spoyle to the Souldiers, departing only with their lives, the enemy having now no place in those parts.

Lewis the eighth of *France*, with other great Princes, at or about this Emperours time, took on him the like expedition with a puissant Army, who landing in *Asia* found nothing answerable to the feigned courtesie of *Emmanuel* at *Constantinople*; great numbers of Souldiers perishing in desolate Countries by false guides, and many straying, cut off by the *Greeks* themselves; yet he besieged *Damasco*, *Noradin's* Royal Seat, the besieged being brought to extremity, and at the point even to yield. But some Christian Princes there, grudging at the Kings promise of that Cities Government, (it won) to *Philip* Earl of *Flanders* a stranger, corrupted also (as some say) with the *Turks* gold, perswaded the King to remove to a stronger part of the City than where he lay, from whence after a while for lack of victuals, he departed, returning into *France*; deresting *Emmanuel* the Emperours name, by whose dealing such an expedition was brought to nought.

Noradine, for some injuries done to the *Turks* and *Arabians* dwelling in the Forrest of *Libanus*, straightly besieged *Paneda*; the multitude of *Turks*, after the Christians desperate sally, hardly pursuing and entering the City, put all to the sword in their way; yet most of the Citizens stood upon their guard in the Castle. *Noradine*, after spoyle taken, and firing the City, departed upon *Baldwin's* coming for relief, waiting

waiting in the Woods to take the Christians at advantage, and set suddenly on the King passing over *Jordan* accompanied only with his Horsemen, and doubting no such thing, most of his Nobles were slain or taken, himself with a few hardly escaping to *Saphet*. *Noradine* after this besieged it again, (whose Walls were again repaired) in good hope; but (though he had made breaches in the Walls) rose with his Army upon *Baldwins* the Prince of *Antioch*, and the Count *Tripolis*, approach. This (among other hard conflicts of this young King) is worth remembrance, That he put *Noradine* to flight, losing most of his Army; who besieged the Castle *Sueta*, belonging to his Kingdom; and marrying the Greek Emperours Niece, he again required one of his kinswomen in marriage, and preferring *Mary Raymond's* Daughter of *Antioch*, before *Matilde* the Count of *Tripolis* his Sister, the said Count grievously by Sea infested his frontiers. While the marriage was solemnized, *Baldwin* abiding at *Antioch*, and fortifying a Castle on *Oromes*, took Physick of *Barac* a Jew the Count's Physician of *Tripolis*; whereby he was verily supposed to be poisoned; and languishing in pain with the Bloody-flux and Consumption, he died at *Berutum*, Febr. 13. 1163. reigning 21 years, being solemnly enterr'd by his Father with a general mourning. *Noradine* himself refusing to invade his Kingdom at his funerals solemnity, saying, The Christians had lost such a King as the like was hardly to be found. To return to the *Turks* proceedings in lesser *Asia*. After Sultan *Solyman's* death, *Mahumet* succeeded him betwixt whom and *Masut* Sultan of *Iconium* broke great discord, which broke out into open war, *Comnen* the Emperour aiding *Masut*; But the 2 Infidels soon becoming friends, joyned; and overthrew the Emperour besieging *Iconium*, he hardly escaping.

Masut

Masut dying divided the whole *Turks* Kingdome, gotten by him, between his 3 sons, to *Clizasthan* the eldest he gave *Iconium*, with the Provinces belonging; unto *Jagupasan*, *Amasia* and *Ancyra*, with fruitful *Cappadocia* and the places adjoining; to *Dadune*, *Cesarea* and *Sebastia* with the large Countreies thereabouts. These brethren soon fell at discord; the Sultan and *Jagupasan* seeking openly each others destruction: *Emmanuel* the Emperour rejoicing therat aided *Jagupasan*, whereby he obtained many notable victories against the Sultan, who weary of the quarrel, personally met the Emperour coming out of *Syria*, and accompanied him to *Constantinople*, who rejoiced to be sued unto by such a Prince, as the Sultan was, being honourably received in triumph. For the solemnizing of which, a great number of People were assembled at the report of an active Turk, who had promised to fly a furlong from the top of an high Tower in the Tilt-yard: who hovering a great while (girt with a long white garment of many pleats and foldings, and the Beholders crying *Fly Turk, fly*) at length, finding the wind, as he thought, fit, committed himself to the air, breaking his neck, armes, &c. whereby the Sultan's attendants could not walk the streets underided, the common people crying, *Fly Turk, fly*; whose insolency the smiling Emperour, in favour of the grieved Sultan, restrained.

The Emperour, after the triumph (which was obscured by an earth-quake) gave the Sultan many rich presents with a masse of treasure, who in requitall termed himself his son, promising him *Sebastia* with its territories, thrusting *Dadune* out of *Sebastia*, taking from him also *Cesarea* and *Amasia*, but kept all to himself, *Jagupasan's* dominions likewise falling into his hands, by his death, on whom he had also bent his forces. And now the Sultan swelling with pride took *Laodicea* from the Emperour, killing and carrying the people captive as he went, whereupon the Emperour passing with a great army into
Asia,

Asia, maugre the *Turks*, most strongly fortified *Dorileus* carrying the first basket of stones on his own shoulders, as also *Sybleum*. Yet the *Turks* ceased not their inroads, though not with such success as before: The Emperour now expostulated with the Sultan as an unthankfull man, who again upbraided him with breach of promise: thus open war was daily expected, the Sultan managing his by expert Captaines, whereas the Emperour commonly in great expeditions adventured in person: who in revenge of his subjects so many wrongs, raised his whole power in *Europe* and *Asia*; passing into *Asia* with his most puissant Army, well appointed of all necessaries, orderly marching thorow *Phrygia* and other places, and by the old ruinous Castle of *Myriocephalon*, Ominous by its name. Though he were circumspect, yet by reason of his many Carriages, &c. he made but small speed: the *Turks* destroying the Country before them, and in many places poisoning the water, whereof the Christians (especially of the flux) died. The Sultan (though aided by the *Persian*) loath to adventure all on battel's fortune, made to the Emperour once and again for peace on honorable conditions; who pricked forward by his Court-Gallants, proudly dismissed the Embassadors, willing them to tell their Master, he would give him an answer under the walls of *Iconium*, which caused the Sultan to take the Straits of *Zibrica*; enclosed with high mountains, whose vallies opening, and growing straiter and straiter with superimpendent rocks, on both sides, almost touching each; gave to the Army (of necessity passing thereby, from *Myriocephalon*) a difficult passage. The Emperour, though he were told that the enemy had strongly possessed the streights and mountains, not providing for his safety, desperately entred herein: *John* and *Andronicus* with others conducting the Vant-guard, the drudges and carters, &c. following; then the Emperour with the maine battle; and *Andronicus Comestephanus* in the

the rear. After no far entry, the *Turks* shot as thick as hail down upon them: Yet the Vant-guard casting themselves into a three square battle, and closely covering their heads with their Targets like a pent-house, caused their enemies, by lusty shot, to retire into the mountaines, and passing those streights with little or no losse, encamped on the top of a commodious hill. But the rest of the army not passing with such order and courage, and troubled with their carriages in those rough and streight places, were miserably overwhelmed by the *Turks* arrows, falling like a shoure, to their great dismaying & disordering. The *Turks* now incouraged, came downe from the mountains to handy blowes on plain ground, overthrowing the right wing, where *Baldwin* breaking into the thickest of the enemy with a valiant troop, to stay their fury, was slain with all his followers, and most of that wing. Then the *Turks*, with all their power, stopped all the Christians waies, who (by reason of the places streightnesse) could neither retire or goe forward to relieve one another, their many carriages hurting themselves, were the cause of their own and others destruction: the valleys full of dead bodies, and the rivers running with the blood of men and beasts, in an unexpressible manner; and if the Chrittians shewed any spark of valour, it was but lost, the *Turks* shewing the head of *Andronicus Bataza* the Emperour's nephew, who coming against the *Turks* of *Amasia* was overthrown. The Emperour was now so troubled that he was at his wits end, doubtful w^{ch} way to turn, who having often attempted to open a way for passage, but in vain, seeing the same danger in staying as in going forward with a few of his best souldiers, resolving to dy, by many blowes given and received, (himself having many wounds and could not lift up his Helmet being beaten close to his head, about thirty arrows sticking in his Target) brake through and escaped those streights. Infinite numbers of the other legions seeking to follow, were slain, besides
many

many troden to death by their own companions. Those that escap'd one freight (this passage having 7 Valleys) were slain in the next: the sand also, raised by men and horses and by a violent wind carried, both armies (being as it were in darkness) killed both friend and foe; so that those Valleys seemed to be a burying place of *Turks* and Christians, the most being Christians, and those not all of the meanest sort. The wind allaying, and the day clearing, wounded and whole living men were seen middle & neck deep among dead carcases not able with struggling to get out, with full voyces crying to passengers for help; whom every man, through fear, without compassion, left living, as to be numbred among the dead. The Emperor standing alone under a wild Pear-tree to breathe himself, a common souldier came and helped him to buckle up his armour, but a *Turk* came and took his horse by the bridle, from whom the Emperor cleared himself by striking him to the ground with the trunk of his broken lance: other stragglers likewise came presently ready to seize on him, one whereof he slew with the said staff, struck off anothers head with his sword, keeping them off till 10 relieved him: and departing toward the Van-guard, he was troubled with other *Turks* and heaps of dead bodies, & saw *John Catacuzen*, that married his neece, fighting alone, encompassed & slain. The *Turks* seeing him, followed him as a rich prey: whom he with his small company notably repulsed, coming at length, after much labour and more danger, long looked for, and most welcome, unto the legions. Who, in his way to them, ready to faint for thirst, and drinking some infected water of a river, with a deep sigh said, *Oh how unfortunatly have I tasted Christian blood*, whereunto an envious souldier replied, that he had oft, & long since, been drunk with Christian blood, by vexing and devouring his Subjects with most grievous exactions: the Emperor, putting it up in silence, answered no more to this railing companion than *Good words Souldier*.

Then

Then animating his souldiers to rescue his treasures and take it for their labour, the same souldier said, [*It should before have been given to thy souldiers, rather then now, when 'tis to be recovered with great danger and blood-shed; and therefore, if thou be a man of valour, valiantly charge the Turks thy self, & recover thine ill gotten goods.*] Andronicus Contostephanus came shortly after, having escaped the Turks fury, to the Vant-guard. The Turks cryed all the night, to increas the oppressed Christians fear, *that all their conni-
trey-men, that had abjured their Religion, or taken part with the Imperialists, if they staid till morning should be lost men.* The Emperour hereupon declared his resolution, to his chief Commanders, secretly to flee, and leave every man to shift. Which base determination a souldier without the Tent over-hearing, cryed, in detestation, with a loud voice, *What meanes the Emperor? & turning to him said, Art not thou he that hast thrust us into this desolate and streight way, casting us headlong into destruction? What had we to do with this vale of mourning? What can we particularly complain of these Barbarians? Was it not Thou that broughtest us hither? And wilt thou thy self betray us? &c.* Which reprehension (though nought remained but death and despair) changed his determination. And in this extremity, it pleased the Almighty so to touch the Sultan's heart, that (by perswasion of the chief men about him, that in peace had wont to receive great gifts from the Emperour) he voluntarily offered him peace on the very conditions of former leagues. The Turks ignorant of the Sultan's resolution, in the morning assaulting the Camp, slew divers of the Christians in their own Trenches, but by the command of one *Gabras* the Turkish Embassadour, (who, with reverence to the ground, presented the Emperour with a goodly Horse, with silver furniture, and a two edged Sword, & by enchanting words concerning peace appealing his heaviness) they ceased to assault them: the Emperour giving *Gabras* his rich yellow Robe, upon a pleasant con-

ceit by him uttered, told him 'twas not fit for war, portending ill luck, and then signed the peace, this being one condition, that *Dorileum* and *Sybleum* should be raled. The Emperour purposed to returne home another way, yet (by his guides) was led back the same way, to behold thole miserable spectacles of the slain, all that passed by calling with grief upon their lost friends. The Emperour placed his best souldiers in the rear to repulse the *Turks*, who, in the tail of the army, slew many; the Sultan (as is said) repenting & giving leave to perue them. He raled *Sybleu*, but not *Dorileu*, answering the complaining Sultan, he greatly forced not to perform what by necessity he was enforced to promise. Who in revenge, straitly charged *Atapack* with 24000 chosen souldiers, to waste and destroy all his provinces to the Sea side, not sparing man, woman, or child, and to bring Sea-water, an Oar, and Sea-sand as a token; who did so to *Phrygia*, returning with a rich prey: But passing *Meander*, he was, by *John Bataza* and *Ducas Constantine*, slain with all his army, and all the booty recovered. After many hard conflicts, *Emmannuell* died, having governed 38 years, being in a Monks habit a little before his death; as jealous of the Christians in the West, as of the *Turks* in the East: in warr altogether laborious, and in peace given over to pleasure. The Sultan afterwards took *Sozopolis*, joyning more and more of the Emperour's provinces to his own without resistance: For *Alexius*, called *Porphyrogenitus*, (being but 12 years of age) succeeding, followed his pleasure; his Mother, and Father's kinsmen and friends (neglecting his education) followed their delights: Some courted the young Empresse: Others filling their coffers with the common treasures: and others aiming at the Empire itself. Amongst whom was *Andronicus*, *Emmanuel's* Cousin, who, for his aspiring, was by him confined to live at *Oenu*: who thought it now a fit time, in such disorder of state, to aspire unto the long looked-for Empire. He doubted not but he was generally beloved, yea, & of some

of the Nobility, wanting nothing more than some fair colour to shadow his purpose. He took first occasion to work on a clause in the Oath of obedience which he took, [*That if he should see, hear, or understand any thing dangerous or hurtfull to the Honour, Empire, or Persons of Emmanuel or his son Alexius, he should bewray it, and to his utmost power withstand it.*] Thereupon he wrote divers Letters to the young Emperour, the Patriarch, and others, wherein he seemed to complain of the immoderate power of *Alexius*, President of the Council, who ruled all things at his pleasure, & that his care of the young Emperour's safety mooved him to complaine, wishing so great power of *Alexius* to be abridged, aggravating the report of *Alexius*'s too much familiarity with the Empresse: the reformation of which he (as bound in conscience) most earnestly desired. Wherefore, travailing towards *Constantinople*, he gave out what he would, for his Oaths sake, do; unto whom men, desirous of a change of the State, flockt in great numbers. Thus honourably coming to *Paphlagonia*, as a deliverer of his Countrey; divers Nobles also joyned with him, especially *Mary* the Emperours sister by the Father, with *Cesar* her husband, (who had raised a great tumult in the City against *Alexius*, & the hated Empress her Step-Mother, nor appeased without much bloodshed) pricked forward, by secret Messengers and Letters, *Andronicus* to hasten his coming, and take the government on him: who being daily encouraged, came to *Heraclea*, winning the peoples hearts with words and tears, saying all that he did was for the common good of the Emperour. Passing by *Nice* and *Nicomedia*, out of which he was shut, he was encountred by *Andronicus Angelus* (sent with a great power by the President *Alexius*) who spending most of the night in rioring, and the day in his bed, left nothing undone for the assuring of his estate; working the matter so by the rare beauty of the Empresse, by gifts and sums of money, that none of account went to *Andronicus*. Who

nevertheless joyning battle with *Angelus* overthrew and put him to flight, whom *Alexius* in great displeasure calling to account for the many of that war, his misfortune being taken as if he had betrayed the Army of purpose; by the counsel of his 6 sons, first he fled with them to his own house, and presently after to *Andronicus*: Who being encouraged with the coming of these noble kinsmen, encamped almost right over against *Constantinople*, causing many great fires to be made in his army, to make it seem greater than it was, some Citizens running to the Sea side, some to the tops of hills and towers, willing to have drawn him, by their looks, into the City. *Alexius*, not able to encounter *Andronicus* by land, (for some that could not go over on foot, were in heart with him, others taking part with neither) commanded all the Emperours Gallies to be throngly put to Sea, to hinder *Andronicus* passage over *Propontis* and *Bosphorus*; *Contostephanus* challenging the Genallship over this Fleet as his due, unto whom he was, without dispute, glad to commit the charge thereof. Then he sent one *George Xiphiline*, as from the Emperour, with Letters and instructions to *Andronicus*, commanding him forthwith to return in peace, promising him the Emperours favour, with many honours, &c. otherwise it might turn to his destruction: *Xiphiline*, as it is reported, secretly advised *Andronicus* to proceed in his purpose, wherewith encouraged, he willed the Messenger to tell them, that proud *Alexius* should be first displaced, and called to an account, that the Emperesse should be shut up as a Nun to learn a ingendment of life, and that the Emperour should take the Government on himself, & not be overtopped by others, &c. *Contostephanus*, few daies after, carried all the Gallies to *Andronicus*, calling *Alexius* into the bottom of despair, *Andronicus* his friends openly flocked together, and some (setting out *Alexius*) passed the Strait to him, returning home in ray and joyfull, filling the City with his praises. After that *John* and *Manuel*, sons of *Andronicus*, were set

at liberty, and others laid fast in their rooms; *Alexius* himself with all his faction, were committed to the guard. But *Alexius* (by a wonderful change) was about midnight conveyed to the Patriarch's house, and kept with a strong guard, complaining of nothing more than his keepers not suffering him to sleep; whose misery the Patriarch undeterred by pitying, perswaded him not to provoke his keepers, by speeches, to use him evilly. Within few daies, he was brought (on a little jade with a ragged cloth on the top of a reed in derision) to the sea side, and to *Andronicus*, whose eyes were, for his evil Government, by a general consent, put out. *Theodosius* the Patriarch approaching, the last of Nobles that came to *Andronicus*, he fell down at his horses feet, and rising kissed his foot, calling him the Emperour's Saviour, the defender of truth; comparing him with *John Chrysostom*, &c. But the Patriarch, marking his stern countenance, subtil nature &c. quippingly said, Hitherto I have heard, but now I have also seen and plainly known; adjoyning with a deep sigh, that saying, As we have heard so have we seen: remembering also *Emmanuel's* words, wherewith he had lively represented *Andronicus* (never seen before) many times to his view.

Andronicus (all things in the City being to his mind) departing from *Damascus*, crossed the strait, oftentimes singing that saying, *Return my soul to thy rest, &c.* Coming to the Emperour's Countrey-house near *Philopatium*, he most humbly prostrated himself before the Emperour with deceitful tears, kissing his feet: saluting his mother *Xene*, as it were but for fashion sake; staying a good while with the Emperour, he desired to go to *Constantinople* to see his Cousin *Emmanuel's* grave, where coming he wept bitterly, and roared as it were out, divers ignorant blunders by saying, Oh what a wonderful thing is this, &c. He would not be removed by his kinsman, pulling him from the Tomb; and secretly said something, as if he had pry-

ed: some saying, it was a charm: Others and more truly, that he triumphed over the dead Emperour, with these or the like words, I have thee now fast, my cruel persecutor, &c. And now I will be revenged of thy posterity, and satisfie my self as a Lion with a fat prey, &c.

He afterwards (disposing of all matters at his pleasure) allowed the Emperour hunting and other delights, watching him by Keepers, that none should talk of any important matter with him; He took all the Government to himself, to drive away the contrary faction that had born sway. The state of that time (by his rewarding bountifully the Souldiers that helped him, bestowing Offices on his children, or other favourites, shortly driving divers Nobles to exile, depriving some of their sight, casting others into prison for something or other that grieved him) began to be most miserable. Some accusing their nearest kinsmen, for deriding *Andronicus* his proceedings, or that without regard of him they more favoured the Emperour; Yea, many accusing & charging others with treason, were themselves charged by the accused, and both clapt up together. You might have seen not only his enemies, but some of his best friends, the same day to be crowned and beheaded, graced and disgraced: the wiser deeming his praises, bounty and kindnesse; the beginning of a mans disgrace, undoing and death. *Mary*, *Emmanuel's* daughter, who above all others wished for his coming, was first cunningly poysoned by *Pterigionites* a corrupted Eunuch, her husband suppoled also to be poysoned with the same cup. He made as if he would depart, if the fair Empress *Xene* were not removed from her Son: the incensed vulgar people flocking unto, and ready to tear the Patriarch out of his cloaths, if he consented not thereunto. So in a Councel of his favourites she was after many false things accused of treason, as to sollicite *Bela* King of *Hungary* her Brother in Law, by Letters to invade *Branisoba* and *Belligrade*, belonging to the Empire; for which she was

condem-

condemned, and cast into a most filthy prison. Four of this Council, being asked their opinion of her, said They would know whether it was called by the Emperours consent? Whereupon *Andronicus*, in great rage starting up, said, Lay hands on them, his guard shaking their weapons at them: and the people catching and pulling them, were so fierce, that they had much ado to escape with life. The Empress now hourly expected the deadly blow. *Andronicus* demanding of the assembled former Council, What punishment there was for betrayers of any Town or Province? The answer being in writing, that it was death; he brake out in choller, as if she had done it. By and by a writing was subscribed by the Emperour, (I abhor to write it) unworthily condemning his Mother to dye; *Manuel* his eldest son, and *George Augustus* his kinsman, saying plainly, They would not see her innocent body dismembred, never consenting to her death. At which troubled *Andronicus*, plucking himself by the hoary beard, &c. sighed at his own most miserable tyrannical estate, &c. Yet few daies after, he commanded her to be strangled by *Pterigionites* and another: which was done accordingly; her (lately adorned) body was secretly raked up in the sand by the Sea-side.

Andronicus (all being covered under pretence of common good and safety) to manifest his loyalty to his cosen the Emperour, perswaded the Nobility to have him solemnly Crowned, (who for his tender age was not yet) his own shoulders, at the time, supporting him to and from the great Church, with Crocodiles tears, as if it had been for joy; many accounting the young Emperour thrice happy in him. So cunningly, under pieties vail, shadowed he his most execrable treachery. For (having got into his power both Emperour and Empire) he called a Council of his favourites, declaring unto them the danger of the Empire, through a rebellion at *Nice* in *Bithinia*, and another at *Prusa*, who (before sufficiently instructed) an-

wered, there would be no end of such mischiefs, except he were joyned in fellowship of the Empire with *Alexius*. At which, the standers by with a shout cryed, Long live *Alexius* and *Andronicus* the *Greek* Emperours. The people swarming like Bees in every part of the City, sounding his praises; and a world following him out of his house, crying the same thing. The Emperour seeing the Court full of people saluting *Andronicus* his fellow, welcomed the old Tyrant, sore against his will, as his companion in Empire. Whom, dissemblingly unwilling, some flattering favourites carried up with both hands, placing him in the Imperial Seat: others putting on him the imperial Robes. At their proclaiming (next day) *Andronicus* was named before *Alexius*, This reason given, That it fitted not the name of a boy, to be set before a man so reverend, &c. Being to be Crowned in the Temple, he first, with a cheerful countenance, began to fill the people with large promises of a more happy Government. And the more to deceive, the Coronation past, he with eyes cast up to Heaven, receiving the bread and taking the cup, swore and deeply protested by those mysteries, that he took on him the fellowship of the Empire, for no other end, but to assist *Alexius* in the Government. But spending a few daies in feigned devotions, he called together his own corrupt Council, having that saying of the Poet in their mouths,

*An evil thing 'tis to be rul'd by many,
One King and one Lord if there be any.*

They by general consent decreed, That *Alexius* (as unfit) should be deprived of all Imperial dignities, and live a private life; another more cruel suddenly coming out, That he should be put to death. *Theodore Badibren* Captain of the tormentors, with two more, strangling him with a Bow-string in his Chamber; *Andronicus* shortly after spurned the dead body, railing at his Father and Mother; his

his head was left to feed the Tyrants eyes, his body carried in lead, to Sea by two favourites, who returning with joy, vengeance followed them, all or most of the conspirers coming to miserable ends. *Alexius* perished, not full 15 years old, in the third year of his reign.

Andronicus being 70 years old, as made hereby young again, married *Anne* the French Kings daughter 11 years old, procuring an absolution for all people from the Bishops (whom for a while he had in great honour) from the Oath of obedience given to *Emmanuel* and *Alexius*; and for establishing his estate, secretly poisoned some, deprived some of their sight, some he hanged, some he burnt all of great honour and place that favoured *Emmanuel* or *Alexius*. For colour whereof (Oh deep dissimulation!) he pretended himself sorry for them, &c. with tears running down his aged cheeks. Most being thus taken out of the way, the rest that favoured *Emmanuel* and his son, fled for safeguard of their lives. *Isaac* and *Alexius Comnen*, *Emmanuel's* kinsmen, the one refuging into *Cyprus*. kept it: the other fleeing into *Sicily*, stirred up *William* that King, who took the Cities *Dyrrachium*, and *Theffalonica*, spoiling the Countrey as he went, bringing great fear on *Constantinople* it self: which evils *Andronicus* (enemies at home and abroad daily encreasing) though he sent out such forces as he could spare, was not able to remedy; but (resting wholly on tyranny) he proscribed not only the friends of the fled but sometimes whole families; yea, and sometimes for light occasions his best favourites; no day passing, but he killed, imprisoned, or tortured one great man or other; whereby the City was filled with silent sorrow. Amongst other Nobles *Hagio Christophorites* came to *Isaac Angelus* his house, to apprehend him, beginning to lay hands on him, reviling his followers, for that they, touche with compassion, stood still as beholders. *Isaac* thus beset, cleft with his sword *Hagio Christophorites* his head to his shoulders, desperately making way thorow the rest;

rest; And with his bloody sword, fled thorow the City into the Temple of *Sophia*, where the guilty flying for refuge used to sit, confessing and craving pardon of those going in and out. The Temple was filled with flocking people, thinking (before the Sun-set) he would be drawn thence by *Andronicus*, and put to some shameful death. His Uncle *John Ducas*, and his Son *Isaac*, came thither also, who had become surerries to the suspicious Tyrant for their kinsman. Many others also, in doubt of their estate, instantly requested the common people to stay, and stand by them at their need. *Isaac* spent that night, not thinking of an Empire, but expecting death; yet no friend of *Andronicus* appeared, every man speaking what he list, and encouraging one another; divers of the seditious assembly shut up the doors, and with lights stayed all night, causing by example others to stay. The next morning all the Citizens flocking to the Temple, cursed the Tyrant, wishing the Empire to *Isaac*. *Andronicus* was out of the City at *Melindinum*, being certified hereof by 9 a clock at night, stirring not that night; but by Letters advising the people to pacifie themselves. Nought in the morning prevailed with the enraged people: neither the persuasions of *Andronicus* his favourites, nor the report of his landing in the City; but flocking and encouraging each other in the Temple, scoffed and called the lookers on Rotten limbs. Then they set at liberty the prisoners, many of them of good houses, and for some light fault or small offence, there laid fast; who most animated the people, so that but soft murmurers afore, did now openly joyn themselves, running forth of their shops with swords, clubs, &c. *Isaac* was hoysed up by this assembly, and saluted Emperour, a Sexton setting *Constantin's* Crown of gold (hanging over the Altar) on his head; who fearing it to be but as a sick mans dream, and the extreame danger, seemed at first unwilling; whereupon, *Ducas* his Uncle requesting it might be set on his old bald head, the people

cried

cryed out, they would no more obey an old bald man, having for *Andronicus* his sake, every such: especially having a forked beard or bald head, as they had. *Isaac* (mounted on one of the Emperour's horses richly furnished, the enforced Patriarch waiting on him) was by the tumult invested in the Empire. *Andronicus* his friends and favourites, by whose help he thought to repress the rebellious, some shrinking from him, the rest faintly coming on, he vainly shot from the highest Tower of the Pallace among the people; then cryed aloud, that if they would be content, he would resign to his Son *Manuel*: the enraged people reproaching both, and breaking into the Court, *Andronicus*, without hope fleeing, returned disguised, with his Wife and Minion, in his Galley, to *Meludinum*. *Isaac* being again saluted Emperour in the Pallace, with the peoples greatest applause; who forthwith sent to apprehend *Andronicus*, secretly fled with his Wife and Paragon, and a few old trusty servants to *Chele*: thence purposing to flee to the *Tauroscythes*, he was twice or thrice put back by foul weather, the Sea still threatning to devour him. Being thus apprehended by those that sought him, he was with two iron chains on his neck, and gyves on his legs, cast into the Castle of *Amena*, and shortly after presented to *Isaac*, being, as he went, most shamefully reviled, and injuriously used, especially by women whose husbands he had murdered, or deprived of sight. His right hand was afterwards by the peoples fury cut off, and he committed to the Castle without meat, drink, or comfort: being after few daies, led bare thorow the Market-place, with his face towards the tail on a lean Cammel, in a short old coat. But the baser sort, omitted no villany they could devise to him they had honoured, extolled, and sworn loyalty: some thrusting nails into his head &c. a drab casting a pot of scalding-water in his face. They hanged him up by the heels, having thus brought him into the Theater, with indignities not to be named

named; he sometimes saying patiently, Lord have mercy on me: and, Why do you break a bruiled reed? Yet they, cut off his privities, as he hung, one thrusting a sword to the swift thorow his throat: two others proving to strike with swords farthest into his buttocks. After 2 years reign, he thus miserably perished, a man of honourable descent, and notable vertues, &c. had he not obscured the same with ambition and cruelty. *Isaac* suffered him not to be buried, but he lay a space, in a base vault, till charitable men removed him into a low vault near a Monastery.

Isaac the Emperour, at first governed with lenity, but afterwards (besides forreign enemies) troubled with an aspiring Nobility that besieged him; for repressing of which, he was so severe, that few daies passed without condemning or executing some great man, making no great reckoning of the meaner sort, became odious as *Andronicus*. Whereupon his younger brother *Alexius* whom he had redeemed from the *Turks*, rose up and deprived him of the Empire and sight, thrusting him into a Monastery, after 9 years 8 moneths reign, and not 40 years old. Out of the losses and ruin of the Constantinopolitan Empire, the *Turks* greatness, for the most part, grew: *Chlizaishlan* Sultan of *Iconium*, taking after *Emmanuel's* death, divers strong places in lesser *Asia*, and also a great part of *Phrygia*, (the 3 succeeding Emperours opposing him with nothing but intreaty and presents) which victorious Sultan dying, divided his Kingdom among 4 Sons, *Masut* to whom he bequeathed *Amasia*, &c. *Coppatine*, *Melytene*, &c. *Reueratine*, *Aminsum*, &c. *Caichofroes*, to whom he left *Iconium*; with it, *Lycania*, &c. *Reueratine* and *Masut* warred for *Coppatin's* inheritance, who lived not long; but *Masut* as too weak yielded to *Reueratine*, glad to keep his own. *Reueratine* ambitious, denounceth war against *Caichofroes*: who fleeing to *Alexius Angelus* for aid, he given to pleasure, and repunitg their domestick wars part of his safety, sent him home without

without comfort. Who was quickly driven out of *Iconium* by *Raucrasine*; *Zebune*, King of *Armenia*, to whom he fled, denying him aid, the poor discouraged Sultan (as forlorn) passed his daies at *Constantinople*.

The course of time calleth us back to remember the *Turk's* proceedings then, and shortly after, in *Syria*, *Judea*, *Egypt*, &c. where these people ceased not til they brought thole Kingdomes under obeysance. For after *Baldwin's* death, *Almericus*, his younger Brother, was by the better liking of Clergy and People, than of the envying Nobility, chosen King of *Jerusalem*, and Febr. 17. 1163. crowned, the *Egyptians* first denying to pay their tribute to him. Who, in revenge overthrew *Dargan* the Sultan in battle; he, to stay the Christians further pursuite, cut *Nilus* banks that the King was glad to return to *Jerusalem*.

Almericus, the next year aided *Dargan* against *Saracou*, whom *Noradine* had sent to restore *Sanar*, the expelled Sultan *Dargan* being slain, and *Saracou* keeping townes that he had won to himself; *Sanar*, being doubtfull, joyned with *Almericus*, expulsiing *Saracou* out of *Egypt*. *Noradine*, the meantime, making inroads neer *Tripolis*, was (by *Gilbert Lacy*, Master of the Templars and others) suddenly set upon, most of his followers slain, and himself fleeing half naked. But shortly after besieging *Arathusa*, *Bohemund* Prince of *Antioch*, with four other, came for relief, and eagerly following the *Turk*, that raised his siege, they were with great slaughter overthrown in deep fenss, all chief Commanders, (but the Prince of *Armenia*, who fore-casting had retired) were taken. The Prince of *Antioch* about a year, the Count of *Tripolis* after eight years, being hardly delivered. *Noradine* in few daies after won *Arathusa*, and besieged *Panade*, which was delivered to him, the Citizens departing in safety at pleasure. The King returning, hanged 12 Templars for Treason, from whom *Saracou* had now taken one Castle in *Sidon* and another beyond *Jordan*.

Sanar (in dread of *Saracou*, coming shortly with all his power

power into *Egypt* to subdue it) prayed aid of *Almericus* for 40000 Ducats, beside his yearly tribute. *Almericus* overthrew *Saracón* at *Nilus*; but (the *Turks* lighting on his carriages in their flight) as the Christians had the victory, so the *Turks* the spoil. *Saracón* gathered again his dispersed souldiers, being received at *Alexandria*, the King attempted not the City, but encamped by the River *Nilus*: *Saracón*, thereby fore-seeing want of victuals, departed by night with his Army, leaving *Saladine* his son or Nephew with 1000 horsemen. *Almericus* being perswaded from following *Saracón*, approached the Walls with Engines. Wherewith the discouraged Citizens began to consult of turning out their troublesom Guests. *Saladine* certified *Saracón* thereof, requesting speedy relief: the Christians having intelligence of all, much harder besieged it. *Saracón* perceiving *Saladine's* request dangerous & difficult, by means of two noble Christian Prisoners, concluded a peace: the City was yielded, the *Turks* in safety departing; and all Prisoners, on both sides, freed without ransome. *Saracón* thus disappointed returning to *Damasco*: & *Almericus*, Sept. 31. 1167. with glory to *Ascalon*.

King *Almericus* now enflamed with the wealth of *Egypt*, and encouraged with the peoples weakness, & chiefly stirred up by *Gerbert* Master of the Templars, purposed to invade it, pretending the Sultan's secret seeking to joyn in league with *Noradine*. He set forward in *October*, and came inten daies to *Pelusium*, taking the City by force, after 3 daies; he put all to the sword therein, giving it to the Templars according to promise, *Gerbert* having, on that hope, with all his wealth and credit, furthered the Warr. His Fleet sacking *Tapium*, and he besieging *Cair*; *Sanar*, considering his danger, offered *Almericus* 2000000 Ducats to withdraw, deferring the payment of 1900000 purposing to raise all *Egypt*, and expecting aids by *Saracón*, whom *Almericus*, going to meet him, missed. *Almericus* dismayed with the joyning of the two Armies, retired to *Pelusium*,

Pelusium, returning to *Jerusalem*, having, in that expedition, laid the foundation of his Kingdom's ruine, by bringing the *Turks* into *Egypt*. *Sarracon* perceiving a fit opportunity offered, encamped near *Cair*, betwixt whom and the Sultan passed all tokens of friendship, often feasting each other: but the Sultan was at length slain in the *Turks* Camp. *Sarracon* entering the City was by the great Caliph (*Mahomet's* true Successour) appointed Sultan, as he desired, the first of the *Turks* that enjoyed it. He dying within a full year, *Saladine* his Nephew stepped up, who not regarding the Caliph (as *Sarracon* and the Sultan's before) with his Horse-man's Mace struck out his brains, rooting out all his posterity; and to encourage his *Turks* against the Christians, he divided the *Egyptian* treasures among them. Renowned *Egypt* was (till about 704) part of the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, which revolted unto the *Saracens*, whose superstition they received, through the *Greeks* pride and coverousnesse, so living about 464 years, till now (invaded by *Almericus*) *Sarracon*, ayding, repulsed the Christians, but took the Kingdom, remaining in *Saladines* posterity, till again taken by the *Mamalukes*, *Selymus* the I utterly destroying them (under whose servility it was long holden) it hath remained to this day in the *Turkish* Emperour's Government, *Selymus* his posterity.

Saladine thus possessed of *Egypt* entred into *Palestine*, in 1170, with so great an Army, as the like of the *Turks* was never before there, winning *Daron*, and overthrowing *Almericus* his relievers, and returned contented into his Kingdome. *Almericus*, beset on both sides by the *Turks*, went personally to *Constantinople*, and sent Embassadors to Christian Princes of the West to crave aid: he and his Embassadors were loaded with great promises, all which came to nothing. *Saladine* made three light expeditions into the holy Land, the three following years, (still raising his siege and retiring upon *Almericus* his coming) more to prove his enemies strength, & train his souldiers (cheif-

ly the womanly *Egyptians*) than for hope of Victory.

Noradine, Sultan of *Damasco*, reigning 29 years, soon after died: *Almericus* forthwith besieged *Panead*, but for a great sum from the Widdow, & noble Prisoners delivery he departed. So returning, not well, on horseback, (with his ordinary retinue) to *Jerusalem*, where being grievously tormented with his old disease, the Flux, which was before somewhat staid, he requested a gentle potion of his refusing Physicians, commanding it upon his own peril, where-with (though his loosed belly was at first eased) his Fever was vehement, and he suddenly died, July 10. 1173. having reigned about 10 years. This wife and right valiant Prince was buried by his Brother, with great lamentation of all. His son *Baldwin* (about 13 years old) was 4 daies after chosen and solemnly crowned, 1173. *Raymund* Count of *Tripolis*, being, by the whole consent, appointed his Tutor, for his tender age.

Noradine left his son *Melechfala*, a youth, to succeed him. Whose disdainig Nobles betrayed *Damasco* to *Saladine*, secretly sent for; who, in fine, unresistably possessed the whole Kingdom of *Damasco*, *Arethusa* excepted. The wiser not thinking it safe for the Kingdomes of *Damasco* and *Egypt* to be joyned, *Jerusalem* lying betwixt both. Wherefore the Count of *Tripolis* made out to hinder his proceedings: (Then also *Cotabed* Prince of *Parthia*, *Melechfala*'s Uncle's Troops, sent to aid his distressed Nephew, were almost all slain by *Saladine* near *Aleppo*) Who appeased the Christian Princes with intreaty, rewards, and rich presents. After which he, passing 3 or 4 years in quietnesse, was greatly strengthened in those new Kingdomes. *Philip* Earl of *Flanders* comming over, the Christian Princes consulted of an expedition into *Egypt*. (*Saladine* drawing down into that Country). But *Philip* disliking it (and the rather for *Tripolis* his no cheerfulnessse) they turned forces a contrary way, miserably wasting about *Emissa* and *Cesarea*. *Saladine* taking this occasion, invaded the holy Land.

Land; where burning the Country, and raging in bloud, he encamped not far from *Ascalon*; them of *Jerusalem*, being about to forsake the City for fear. *Baldwin* lay close in *Ascalon* with small forces he had left. *Saladine* encouraged, dispersed his Army to forrage the Countrey. The King perceiving this, secretly issued out and charged him, till (after a hard and doubtful battel) *Saladine* fled, most of his Army being slain, or lost with hunger and cold. This was *Novemb. 25, 1177.* the Turk had 26000 horsemen, the King not past 4000. He returned triumphing to *Jerusalem*, diligently repairing the Cities Walls. In revenge *Saladine* did great harm, chiefly about *Sidon*; the King overthrowing part of his Army carryed great booty. *Saladine* came as a sudden tempest on the secure Christians, dividing the spoil, slaying a great number, taking *Otto* and *Hugh* in flights confusion; the King glad to shift. After which he took (by force) a strong Castle lately built by *Jordan*, putting all to the sword, except a few prisoners; He becoming hereby dreadful in *Syria*, caused the Christians to be more vigilant; yet there was almost a 2 years breathing by the Sultan and Kings, shortly concluding a Peace. But the Count of *Tripolis*, (being through enemies suspected by the King as affected to the Kingdom, and commanded to stay) coming toward *Jerusalem*, suddenly troubled this pleasing calm. The Kings turbulent Mother and her brother, were the chief authours; but the other Nobles (wisely foreseeing discords danger) appeased that fire for a time, by causing him, being sent for, to be reconciled to the King.

Saladine now renounced the League with *Baldwin*, setting forward with great power in *Egypt*, toward *Damasco*. *Baldwin* went to meet him, and encamped at *Petra*; but *Saladine* turning away, encamped before Mount-royal Castle given to the Templars; who there refreshing his Army, arrived unresisted at *Damasco*. The Turks Captains then spoiled *Galilee*, besieging and soon taking *Bury* Castle

Castle at Mount *Tabor* foot, carrying away about 500 prisoners, with great slaughter made. *Saladine* joyning all *Damasco's* Garrisons with *Egyptian* forces, entred the holy Land; whom *Baldwin* (though the Count of *Tripolis* lay sick), encouraged, encountred near *Frobolet* a Village overthrowing him, and most of his Army perishing, himself by flight escaping to *Damasco*; who in revenge besieged *Berytus* by Sea and Land: his brother, Governour of *Egypt*, besieging *Darum* towards *Egypt*. *Baldwin* thinking best first to relieve *Berytus*, set forward by Land, rigged 30 Gallies at *Tyre*; which *Saladine*, by intercepred Letters, understanding, presently departed. And seeing the success against *Baldwin* not as his desire, passed more Eastward over *Euphrates* into *Mesopotamia*, getting *Edeffa*, *Carras*, &c. by force and corruption into his hands: in which time *Baldwin* spoyled about *Damasco*, retiring to *Jerusalem* laded with spoil. *Saladine* returning, marched in revenge, to *Aleppo*, longed for above all other; which ere long, was by the Governours treason delivered to him, the Princes fearing great matters to ensue. The Prince of *Antioch* sold *Tarsus* (*Saladine* as it were stepping betwixt him and it) to *Rupinus* of *Armenia*.

The King sick of a Feaver, and the Leprosy daily encreasing, appointed (to the great discontentment of the Count of *Tripolis*) *Guy* Count of *Joppa* and *Ascalon*, to whom *Sybil* his Sister was espoused, Governour of the Kingdom, reserving only the Kingly title, and *Jerusalem* with 10000 Ducats yearly. *Saladine*, after a little breaching, took many Castles, doing infinite harm in the holy Land the people fleeing into Cities for fear. The Christian Army, through envy to *Guy*, and affection to *Tripolis*, lying fast by and (never so before) not moving, suffering the enemy to spoil and depart in safety; who within a month, in hope of a safer passage between *Damasco* and *Egypt*, sat down before *Petra* beyond *Jordan* with a great Army. *Baldwin* sent the Count of *Tripolis* by him restored

restored, and *Guy* displaced, against him: *Saladine* hearing of it raised his siege.

The King, a little before, growing sicker, appointed (by the Nobles consent, *Baldwin*) *Sybil's* Son (a posthume of *William* Marquess of *Mountferrat* her first husband) 5 years old, to succeed him; *Raymund* of *Tripolis*, during his minority, to govern the State. *Guy* hereupon, departed from Court to *Ascalon*, discontented; the Patriarch and Princes, fearing great danger, requested the King to receive *Guy* into favour, and to reconcile him with *Raymund*, by his Parliament at *Acon*; but it was dissolved, and nothing in that point concluded. *Jerusalem's* Kingdom, through the old King's sickness, the young ones unfitness, and the dissention between *Guy* and *Raymund*, began to decline. *Raymund*, fearing *Guy*, was thought to have intelligence with *Saladine*, the King almost purposing to proclaim him Traytor; But by the Counsel of *Tyre's* Archbishop and others, he sent *Heraclius* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, and two more Masters of the Knights and Templers, to the Pope, the Emperour of *Germany*, the *French* and *English* Kings, to crave aid against the Infidels. Their Embassadours, before the Pope and Emperour, declaring the Eastern Christians hard estate, moved all the Princes (at the Council of *Verona*) to compassion. Thence passing into *France*, *England* and *Germany*, great preparation was made for relief, the returning Embassadours filling the sick King with great hopes. But quarrels shortly arising between Pope and Emperour, sharp war between the *French* and *English* Kings, and others, the expedition was dashed. Whereat *Baldwin* (oppressed with grief) died without issue, May 16. 1185, 25 years old; whole body was also buried (with a general mourning) in the Temple by Mount *Calvary*, not inferior to his Predecessors. *Baldwin* 5th. a boy, was Crowned. *Raymund* contending for the government and Kings tuition, by the late Kings appointment: having it almost confirmed by Parliament.

But *Sybill* so animated *Guy* not to give place, that by his favourites, and the Marquess of *Montferrat* (then in *Syria* with great power) he had from the Nobles what he desired. Seven months after, the young King was buried: poisoned by his Mother (as was said) whose death she concealed, till it was wrought, that the King was buried, and *Guy* the same day Crowned: Let him have his place as the 8th King of *Jerusalem*, though some reckon him not among the Kings.

Raymund, out of all hope, did what he could to cross the King; *Saladine* promising him help at need, which the Count desirously embraced. Discord reigning, the Kingdom drew to a period; which *Saladine* perceiving, invited *Turks*, *Saracens*, and *Egyptians* to take up Arms, assuring them of great prey, and honour of conquest, which *Mahometans* flocked to *Ptolemais*, 50000 horse, besides infinit foot there meeting the Count, conducting some thorow *Tiberias*, *Nazareth* and *Galilee*. They besieging this City *Ptolemais*, *Saladine* terribly assailed it on May day 1187. In the heat whereof, the 2 Masters of the *Templars* and *Knights Hospitallers*, to whom it was given to defend, sallying out, assailed the Camp; and turning on the assailers, made confusion and sudden danger, turned his whole forces, fighting a most bloody battel; the Count of *Tripolis* in a Turkish habit, helping the Infidels, authorized the Master of the *Hospitallers*, who surcharged with Armour, and oppressed with enemies, died, *Saladine* (new succour still coming) having lost 15000, fled with the rest; a victory not without Christian blood, most of the *Hospitallers* being slain. *Saladine* now thought good to joyn policy to open force; working by *Raymund* of *Tripolis*, that (as utterly fallen out with the *Turks*) he should seek for grace of *Guy*, as his dread Sovereign. *Saladine* to colour this, besieged *Tiberias* a City of the Count; who, traiterously craving aid of the King, encamped with an Army near the fountain of *Saphor*, joyning

ning a terrible battel with 120000 horsemen and 160000 footmen of *Turks*: both Armies, as by consent, retiring through extream heat and nights approach. The *Turks* next day, by the false Counts flight, gained the victory; *Guy* the King, with divers of great note were taken; the Christians whole strength was here broken.

Saladine, with little resistance, had *Ptolemais*, *Biblis* and *Berytus* delivered him; not forcing any Christian yielding their obedience and tribute, but the *Latins*, to depart. And, within a month, taking, except *Tyre*, all Sea-port Towns betwixt *Sidon* and *Ascalon*; he marched from *Ascalons* siege of 9 daies, directly to *Jerusalem*, perswading the Citizens timely to yield themselves and City to his mercy; they refusing, he for 14 daies, left nothing unattemped for gaining thereof. The Citizens considering their danger, the Kingdoms strength lost, no forreign aid to be expected, agreed to yield on condition, of staying with goods and liberty, or departing with what they could carry on their backs; 'twas delivered Octob. 2, 1187, holden by the Christians 89 years. *Saladine* prophaning the Temple with his superstition, using the other as Stables; that of the Sepulchre was, for a great sum redeemed by the Christians. The *Latins* he thrust out, with what burdens they could bear; who travelling to *Tripolis*, *Tyre* and *Antioch*, were by false *Raymund* of *Tripolis*, and his followers, lightened thereof. Others, as *Syrians*, &c. had places in the City appointed to dwell in. All Monuments were defaced, except Christ's Sepulchre with *Godfreys* and his brother *Baldwins*. Above 20000 Christians perished, the Count of *Tripolis* shortly after found dead in his bed, as some say, circumcised. *Saladine* returned to the siege of *Ascalon*, which after 10 daies, with a composition for safe departure, was delivered for freeing *Guy* the King and *Gerrard* Master of the Templars. Then he attempted *Tripolis*, but gave over the siege. He most furiously assaulted *Tyre*, which was full of men, by *Con-*

rade of *Montferrats* arriving with the *Greek* Emperours Fleet, and distressed Christians fleeing thither; but was repulsed with great losse. The Admiral of *Sicily* landing upon his back, he (charged behind and before) left his Tents, with all therein, to the Christians for haste: In few daies invading about *Antioch*, he destroyed all with fire and sword, that so strong a Cities Castle, being (by means of the Patriarch for gold) betrayed to him; whereby he soon was Master of the City, about 90 years before hardly gained by the Christians, 25 Cities with the Provinces belonging, depended thereon.

The report of this losse, soon filling Christendom with pittiful complaints of Embassadours, and perswasions of Pope *Clement* 3, moved the Christian Princes with many great Prelats, all or most making great preparations for relief against the *Turks*; and afterwards imploying them (at divers times) with danger of their persons; the success shall hereafter be declared. Of which *Saladine* not ignorant, set *Guy* at liberty, detained a year contrary to promise, with an oath, never by Arms to seek revenge or recovery of his Kingdom: hoping to stay the other Princes coming thereby; which extorted oath the Pope dispensed withal.

Guy now came to *Tyre*, but could not (for their sworn obedience to *Montferrat*) be received; But departing, he besieged *Ptolemais* with the power he had; with whom the *Venetian* Fleet, them of *Pisa*, and 50 sail of *Flemings*, joyned to win the City. *Saladine* came with a great Army for relief; there was fought a great battel, and had not *Geffrey* the Kings brother, come from the Camp with supplies, the Christians, who had at first the better, had had a notable overthrow; yet 2000 were slain. *Saladine* sent for his strong rigged Fleet at *Alexandria*, putting men and victuals into the City. The encouraged *Turks*, made often sallies, whipping in despite, the Image of Christ crucified on top of the Wall. *Saladine* scoured the
Seas

Seas with this Fleet, that no supplies could come to the Camp : So that some Christians, through famine shortly arising, fled to the *Turks* for bread. *Saladine* making shew as not understanding thereof, departed leaving his Camp full of victuals. The Christians supposing he had gone for fear, hastened to the forsaken Camp, of whom *Saladine*, returning, made a great slaughter ; yet they with many a skirmish by Sea and Land, continued the Winters siege, expecting aid the next Spring. *Frederick* the Emperour with other Princes, the mean time, set forward from *Ratisbone*, arriving at length at *Constantinople* ; where *Isaac Angelus* Emperour, honourably, for fear and fashion, entertaining him, hastened his passage into *Asia*, pretending the Christians need of aid : who passing the straits, and marching into *Lycaonia*, overthrew the *Turks* in a great battel, sent to stop him from the *Iconium* Sultan, which City he took by force, giving the spoyle to his Souldiers, in revenge of his Uncle *Conrade*. Then he overthrew them in *Cilicia*, taking *Philomela*, racing the City to the ground, and putting all to the sword, because they slew his summoning Messengers. He likewise took *Melitene* in lesser *Armenia*, overthrowing a huge Army, coming for relief, with an exceeding slaughter. Then he discomfited *Saphadine*, *Saladin's* Sons Army in *Comagena*. But his horse foundring in the River *Saleph*, (at his too eager chase) his foot hanging in the stirrop, he was drawn thorow and taken for dead ; yet with much ado he uttered, Lord receive my soul, and gave up the ghost : of whom *Saladine* was greatly afraid. He perished June 10, 1190. aged 70 years, reigning 38 ; his body was pompously buried in *Tyre's* Cathedral, *Frederick* his Son Duke of *Suevia*, was chosen General, whose mourning Army, the *Turks* fiercely charging in hopes to overthrow, returned with some losse, and like speed as they came. But famine began to encrease, the *Turks* having destroyed and carried away all ; yet *Antioch* being easily delivered

to him, his Souldiers were well refreshed by the Christian Citizens. 15 daies after, the Plague began to rage there among his Souldiers, and he glad to take the open field; and setting forward against *Do Dequin*, *Saladin's* General, sent for out of *Egypt*, they joyned a great and doubtfull battel; the Christians exceeding in valour, they in number. At length the Christians Vaunguard began to retire, their seconds hardly charged. *Frederick* breaking in with a valiant Troop, the *Turks* gave ground: *Leopold* of *Austria* presently coming with his foot, they speedily fled, 4000 slain, 1000 taken, and 15 Ensigns, small losse of the Christians. After which, he passed *Laodicea*, easily taking *Berytus*, with other revolted Cities: So coming to *Tyre* buried his Father. Thence certifying *Guy*, at *Ptolemais*, of his coming; who sent *Montferrat* to transport him by Sea, because of *Saladin's* great Army: and being safely conducted with his Souldiers to the Camp at *Ptolemais*, he was joyfully received. After whose coming, it was thought good to assault the City round, every Regiment being appointed what place to assaile; which was done with such fury, as if they purposed to gage their whole forces, the *Turks* still beating them from the walls top. But now *Saladine* (hovering aloof) came suddenly on the Christians Camp, notably receiving the first charge; but giving ground, some Tents with Ensigns were taken, and Pavilions fired, having slain above 100. The Christians retired from the assault to relief of their Camp; the *Turk* retired also, having almost lost himself. This notable assault was *Octob. 14.*

Divers Princes (the mean while) of the West, came thither, rather increasing famine than furthering service. Then also *Conrade* of *Montferrat* (who had married *Isabel* the Queens sister) pretending a Title to the Kingdom, much hindered proceedings. But Duke *Frederik* dying shortly, at the siege, of the plague, and buried at *Tyre*, the Christians attempted no great matter; but lay entrenched expecting

expecting aid from the Princes : which were *Philip 2.* of *France*, and *Richard* King of *England*, on whom all the hope of affairs in *Syria* rested ; who met at *Marselles* in province, with combined forces for relief. The *French* King first departed for *Sicilia* with a prosperous gale ; but coming nigh the Island, through a sudden tempest, he with much ado arived at *Messena* ; tossed in the deep, many ships perishing, some broken on sands and rocks, and all sore weather-beaten. *Richard* arived after with better fortune. Both Kings resolved there to Winter, the *French* being necessitated so to do, for supplies from *France*. King *Richard* and *Tancred*, the now aspiring King of *Sicily*, had like to break out into war about the Queens (*Richard's* sisters) Dowry, had it not been taken up. But it fell out, whilst the Kings of *England* and *France* often met as good friends, &c. that jealousie and distrust revived old, and raised new quarrels, to the great hinderance of the common good they intended: a warning to great Princes (willing to hold a unity) never to converse or stay long together. An old quarrel was, *Richard's* rejecting *Adela* the others sister, for suspicion of too much familiarity with his Father *Henry* the 2d. and espousing *Berengaria* the King of *Navar's* Daughter : which afterwaras brake out to this Expedition overthrow, and disturbance of their Realms.

The *French* King at Spring, loosed from *Messana*, arriving safely at *Prolemais*, and was received by the Christians as succours from Heaven. *Richard* shortly following, two ships of whose weather-beaten Fleet, were driven on *Cyru*, the Islanders (spoyling them, slaying and taking the men that hardly escaped the Sea, and forbidding the rest to land. The King, moved, landed by force, fully conquering the Island, and taking *Isaac Commen* (commonly called their King) sent him bound in silver chains into *Syria*. Then there at *Limozin* he married *Berengaria*, and set forward, after disposal of things, he took of the Sul-

tans a great ship laden with victuals, & warlike provisions; and was most honourably received at *Ptolemais*: which had been besieged 3 years, with many a hot assault and bloody skirmish. The eyes of all were fixed on these two Kings. The Camp chiefly consisted of *English, French, Italians* and *Almains*: as also many others from *Zeale* daily coming in. These thus besieging, had laboriously undermined that called, the accursed Tower, with part of the Wall, appointing every Regiment to assail the wall at the firing of the Mine; in which assault the Tower fell, with part of the wall, opening a fair breach. The *Turks* forthwith in a Parley, yielded the City, *July 12, 1191*, and were to restore the holy Crosse, 2000 Captives, 200 horsemen of those they required, being in *Saladin's* power; 200000 Ducats to be given to the 2 Kings for their cost, the City *Turks* being to remain hostages for performance; and to be at the Kings' mercy, if all were not performed in 40 daies. The *Austrians* (as the only men) first, at entry, advanced their Ensigns on the walls top, which *Richard* (especially) not brooking, caused their Dukes Ensigns to be soyled under foot, to his after repentance. The 2 Kings dividing the spoyle, not regarding the other Christians, they withdrew, and sent them word, except they they were partaker of the gains, as of the pains, they would forsake them; many (the Kings delaying their promises) departing for poverty discontented, into their Countries.

But ere long, envy and distrust, ministred new matter of greater discontentments between the 2 Kings; King *Richard* requested the *French King*, to bind himself with him by oath, to stay 3 years for regaining *Syria* and *Palestine*; but he, estranged before from *Richard*, plotting matters nearer home, would not be perswaded so to do; but in a colour fell very sick, sending for *Richard* and others: to whom in few words, he declared his purpose; That seeing he could not indure the hot air's intempera-
ture

ture, and that the life of one absent might more profit Christian Religion, &c. than the death of him present, he must depart; but would leave 5000 horse and 10000 foot choise men, under *Odo Duke of Burgundy*, giving them pay, and supply of all things. King *Richard* said, his return was to invade *Guien* and *Normandy*, now disfurnished of Garrisons; which point he so urged, that *Philip* bound himself to him by Oath, no way to attempt any thing, until 50 daies after *Richard's* return home. And imbarquing the rest of his Army, he *Aug. 1.* departed to *Tyre*, thence to *Rome* visiting the Pope, and so safely arrived in *France*, having performed nothing to what the world expected. *Leopold of Austria* followed, and shortly the *Venetians*, *Pisans* and *Genoans*. Whereupon *Saladine* refused to pay the promised mony, or restore the prisoners, threatening to chop off all Captives heads, if extremity were used to the pledges. *Richard* refused *Saladin's* request and presents for longer sparing his pledges; whereupon he beheaded the Christian Captives, and *Richard Aug. 20.* in sight of *Saladin's* Army executed 2500, or as some write, 7000 *Turks* prisoners.

Saladine (as it commonly happens in a great Commanders ill successe) much impaired his reputation by the losse of *Ptolemais*; wherefore with a headlong despair he sacked, ruined, and overthrew the walls of *Porphyria*, *Cæsaria*, *Joppa*, *Ascalon*, *Gaza* and *Elam*, with divers other places like to stand the Christians in stead: most part whereof were fortified, and re-peopled by *Richard* and the *Templers*, though *Saladine* endeavoured to let them.

But nothing more hindred the Christian Princes proceedings, then discord among themselves; for besides the strife of the Kings of *France* and *England*, no lesse was between King *Guy* and *Conrade of Montferrat*, about the lost Kingdom's title. *Richard* with others taking *Guy's* part; and the *French King* with others taking part with *Conrade*: who being shortly slain by two *Assassines* or
Russians

Russians, suborned by the Prince of *Torone*, for taking from him *Isabel* his espoused wife. *Richard* perswaded *Isabel* his Widow, to marry his Nephew the Earl of *Cam-paine*, giving him *Tyre*; *Guy* exclaiming as of a wrong unto himself: But shortly after, he perswaded *Guy* to resign his small title in the Kingdom to him, and gave him *Cyprus* in lieu thereof; *Richard* becoming hereby King of *Jerusalem*. *Guy* lived not long in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*; yet 'twas about 283 years in the *Lusignan* family: until it fell into *Venetian* hands, who held it nigh 100 years, till *Selymus 2*, *Turkish* Emperor took it from them in 1571.

King *Richard* was now more desirous of *Jerusalem* than before; And thereupon set forward himself in the Vanguard, *Otho* following him, and *Jaques* with his *Flemings* &c. in the rear; being come to *Arsua*, *Saladine*, with ambuscadoes, charged the rear-ward, on whom *Jaques* turning, endured the charge till the rest came to their succour. The *French*, *English*, and Low-counrey-men, firove honourably in that notable battel, especially the *Turks* part, their only hopes depending on *Jerusalem*: it continued from noon till the Suns going down; *Richard* (some write) was wounded with an arrow: *Jaques* was slain, leaving the victory to the Christians: more *Turks* are said to be slain, than in any battel in mans memory, the Christians lost no great number. They removed (the next day) to *Bethlehem*; but the King through Winters approach, &c. returned with most to *Ascalon*, which that Winter he fortified. *Otho* wintred at *Tyre*, many departed then from the Camp; however, at Spring *Richard* took the field, and came to *Bethlehem*: taking (by the way) very many loaded Camels, sent to furnish *Jerusalem*; but *Otho* (who knew the *French* Kings mind) perswaded the Frenchmen, that the glory would redound to *Richard* (as present) through whose unwillingness to the siege *Richard* (to his grief) returned to *Proiema*s. News also

was then brought, that *Philip* of *France* (forgetting his promise) had invaded *Normandy*, stirring up *John*, *Richard*'s brother, to take on him *Englands* Kingdom. *Richard* fearing he might lose his Kingdom at home, thought best to make some good end with *Saladine*, and so return. But the politic Sultan, to weaken the Christians forces, and discourage others from coming thither; afterwards, offered no other conditions than that the Christians should restore all they had won in the 3 years, *Ptolemais* excepted; and that, the *Turks* for 5 years should not molest them: which the King was willing to accept of whereby the labour, &c. of these two Kings, and others were frustrated: the Christians having only *Antioch*, *Tyre* and *Ptolemais* left in *Syria*.

Richard, leaving those affairs to *Henry* Earl of *Champain*, shipped most of his men with his Wife for *England*, they arriving safely there: but himself from *Sicily*, following, was (by extremity of weather) driven on the coast of *Histria*; and travelling homeward in a *Templars* habit, was by *Leopold* of *Austria* taken prisoner; who sold him to the Emperour for 40000 pounds, and after 1 year 3 months, was ransomed for 100000 li.

The great Sultan *Saladine* about this time dyed, who commanded no solemnity to be used at his burial, but his shirt carried on a Lance point as an Ensign, a plain Priest crying before his dead body, *Saladine* Conquerour of the East, of all the greatness and riches he had in his life, carrieth nothing with him after death, more than his shirt. He reigned about 16 years, leaving 9 Sons, all (except *Saphradine* Sultan of *Aleppo*) murdered by *Saphradine* their Uncle, from whom descended *Meledin* Sultan of *Egypt*, and *Coradin* of *Damasco* and *Jerusalem*.

Pope *Celestine* was now in hope, that *Jerusalem* might (in that discord of the *Turks*) be recovered, and the Kingdom established, who perswaded *Henry* the Emperour to undertake the matter; who sent the Duke of *Saxony* with

with a great Army into *Asia*, to whom two Legats, the Archbishop of *Moguntia*, and the Bishop of *Herbipolis* were joyned. Many other *German* Princes and Prelats, then taking on them the holy war; who being relieved, and transported to *Antioch* by the *Greek* Emperour, came by land to *Tyre* and *Ptolemais*, purposing to relieve the besieged *Germans* in *Joppa*; but they being all by treason slain, and the City rased, they departed to *Sidon*. Then taking and fortifying *Berytus*, they besieged *Torone*: which being brought to extremity, the *Turks* came on so fast for relief, that they raised their siege, which *Berytus* Garrison perceiving, abandoned the City, marching with the Army to *Joppa* and fortifying it; The enemy coming rased *Berytus* in 1197. The *Turks* coming to disturb *Joppa's* fortifying, the Christians removed some miles off, to draw the *Turks* to a convenient place. The *Turks* hereupon, sent a part to assail the City, the other following disorderly; on whom the Christians turning, sharply encountred and put them to flight, some thousands of them falling, taking the spoil and returning to the City. But the Duke of *Saxony* over-heating himself, and on the fourth day, dying of a Fever, and the Duke of *Austria* (the night following) of a wound, diminished this victories joy.

Not long after, both Pope *Celestine* and *Henry* the Emperour dyed, troubles arising in *Germany*, about a new Emperours choice; whereupon, the Bishop of *Moguntia*, an Electour, and the other *German* Princes, could not be perswaded to stay, but home they went. The *Turks* afterwards, (the *Germans* on *Martin's* day making merry in their Pots at *Joppa*) had a port betrayed to them, putting all to the sword and rasing the City, thinking now to drive the Christians quite out of *Syria*; yet by *Simon* Count of *Montfort*, sent thither with a tall Regiment by the *French* King, and their civil discords, they were repressed, and a Peace concluded for 10 years, which was in 1199, or, as some write, in 1198, the Count returned into

into *France*, with whom (the time and History now calling us) we will repair into lesser *Asia*, to see other *Turkish* affairs in those Eastern Countreys.

The ruin of the Turks first Empire in Persia: with the success of their second Kingdom in lesser Asia, under the Aladine Kings.

IT fared with the *Turkish* Empire (first planted by *Tangrolipix* in *Persia* and other Eastern Countreys) as with a sick body subject to many changes, which continuing for 170 years, must now give place to a greater power. For it fortuned about this time, that the *Tartars* or *Tatars* (inhabiting the cold and bare Countreys in the North of *Asia*, a barbarous, fierce, and needy Nation) stirred by their own wants, and the perswasion of *Zingis* or *Cangis*, holden for a great Prophet, made their leader, and honourably named *Uluchan*, or the mighty King, or great Cham flocked like the sand of the Sea, and conquering their poor neighbours, easily entreated to seek better fortunes with them, passed the high Mountain *Caucasus*, part of *Taurus*, dividing *Asia* into 2 parts; over which, coming down as into another world full of natures delights, never seen to them before, bear down all before them. *Zingis* dead, *Hoccatu* his eldest Son, took his Fathers place, who sending part of his Army Westward, turned himself Eastward; where subduing the *Bastrians* and *Zogdians*, with others, he entred *India*, subduing to the East Ocean, building in *Cathia* the City *Cambalu*, 28 miles about: where

where the Cham of *Tartary* hath his Imperial residence, having also in the Province of *Mangy*, *Quinsay* the greatest City in the World, 100 miles about. 12000 bridges therein, some whereof are exceeding high. The Cham alway 30000 in Garrison: *Hoccat*, through the rich pleasures of *India*, mannaged his warrs by Lievtenants, tending them North, West, and South, who subdued the *Arachosians*, *Margians*, &c. and also subdued *Persia*, with all *Parthia*, *Affyria*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Media*. *Cursumes*, or *Corfantes*, now reigned in the City *Baleh*, in *Chorasán* the farthest part of *Persia*, who fled with all the people leaving all; the *Tartars* racing the City, and taking the Countrey. *Cursumes* (of the *Selzuccian* family) dying in this flight, *Ugnanchan* his Son led the multitude of *Turks*, and seized on *Babylon*, now called *Bagadat*; where putting all to the sword, he there, and thereabouts seated himself; but, ere long, the *Tartars* pursuing, took him, and thence expelled his people. *Solyman* also of the *Oguzian* family, (of whom more shall be said hereafter) reigned in *Persia* at *Nacnan*; who terrified, and waned by the *Selzuccian* Sultan's fall, fled with some subjects into lesser *Asia*. After this, the *Tartars* conquered greater *Armenia*, with *Cholchis* and *Iberia*. This proud Conquerour purposed to subdue all *Asia*; but, overcome with *India's* delicacies, he so rested, embracing the manners and superstition of the conquered. The *Turks* were driven out of *Persia* about 1202; who retired into lesser *Asia* (possessed by their Countreymen) under the leading of *Aladin*, descended of the *Selzuccian* Family, who taking opportunity by the discord of the *Latines* and *Greeks*, and *Greeks* among themselves, first at *Sebastia* in *Cilicia*, then at *Iconium*, erected their new Kingdom of the *Aladines*.

Now

Now, and within few years, such great & strange changes were in the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, that it was almost utterly subverted, the *Turks* hereby establishing their Kingdoms in *Syria* and lesser *Asia*, and at present, triumphing in the imperiall City: which briefly to pass through shall not be from our purpose.

Usurping *Alexius* sought also the life of *Isaac* his Brother's son, Heir apparent to the Empire: who seeing the villany committed on his Father, fled from his Uncle's fury, with some *Greek* Lords, for aid to Western Princes, comming first to *Philip* German Emperour, who married his sister *Irene*; Who most instantly solicited her husband (from the execrable indignity done to her Father, the banishment of her wandring Brother, and her own disgrace thereby, as also his, declaring, that if *Alexius* had not lightly regarded and contemned *Philip*, he durst not have committed so great villany) not to leave the same unrevenge'd. Her Husband promised to be partly revenge'd, but, through wars with *Otho* his Competitor in the Empire, he could not at present. But it fortun'd, that then great preparations were making in divers places for the Holy Land: *Theobald*, Count of *Campagne*, General of the Army, *Boniface* Marquels of *Montferrat*, &c. were cheif, with divers Noble men: their Army was very populous. But (since the *Greeks* had formerly shewed great discourtesie to the *Latines*) they thought it best to journey by *Italy*, and cheifly to use the *Venetians* for their transportation by Sea, who were the easier increased thereto, hoping hereby to scour the Adriatique Sea of the *Dalmatians*, and recover *Jadera* in *Sclavonia*, being revolted from them to the *Hungarians*; which this Army did. But in their march into *Piedmont* their General died, to the whole Armies sorrow; the Marquesse of *Montferrat* was chosen General. This great Army having taken *Jadera*, was ready to be imbarqued for *Syria*. But prince *Alexius* had so wrought, especially with Pope *Innocent III*, *Philip* the

Emperour, and the French King; that they commended both him and his cause (by Letters and Messengers) to the Army. Who coming to *Jadera*, with this commendation, was received as an Emperour's son, recommending himself, as a poor exiled Prince, to their protection, of a lively Spirit, &c. and being instructed by the Noble *Greeks* in all things for his purpose, he fitted divers Nations in the Army with motives most prevalent with them: Promising to pay the money that the *French* had borrowed for this War: To the *Venetians*, recompence for all injuries received from the *Greek* Emperours, chiefly *Emmannell*: To the Pope and *Italians*, he and his Nobles had promised the *Greek* Church should alwaies acknowledge the Supremacy of *Rome*: which made the Pope, by all means, to further *Alexius* his cause; alledging that the *Greeks* & *Latines* difference in opinion caused that the *Mahometans* were not, long ago, by united forces, subdued. And promised large rewards to all that took his part.

These forces for the Christians relief in *Syria*, were hereby converted against the *Greek* Empire, to the *Turks* great advantage: who, had he been charged home by the Christians, as by the *Tartars*, might easily have been suppressed. The Commanders of the Army thought best to march directly to *Constantinople*: giving out thorough all *Greek* Cities manned against them, that they purposed not to war against the *Grecians*, but to restore their lawfull Emperour. And seeing ancient *Greece* had appointed rewards and honours for their deliverers from Tyrants, they should the more favourably intreat them. So imbarquing their Army, and entring the streights of *Bosphorus* & *Thracius*, they anchored even in the face of the City with 240 tall ships, 60 Gallies, 70 of burden, 120 victuallers, the freight seeming rather a Wood than part of the Sea. They lay thus a while, attending if, on their sight, any tumult might arise in the City. But the Tyrant had provided, that the Citizens, favouring *Alexius*, durst not stir in his quarrel.

Embassa-

Embassadours now came from *Crete*, yielding that Island to the young Prince, which he gave to *Montferrat* to encourage others in hope of recompence.

Alexius had made fast the Haven between *Constantinople* and *Pera* with a great chain, manning it with 20 Gallies; but the General sent the *Eagle*, a swift & the strongest ship in the Fleet, who sailing with a full gale, brake the chain, thus gaining the Haven, the *Greeks* left their Gallies to the *Venetians*. *Lascaris*, the Emperour's son in Law, was ready with a select company to hinder the *Latines* landing, who running on Land, the Foot (for the Horses could not so soon land) leaped out of their ships in a moment, laying about the mounted *Greeks* like mad men: The Citizens expecting the event of this hot skirmish, 60000 *Greeks* bravely sallied out of the City, and made the battle doubtfull; yet in fine, the *Greeks* retired into the City, guessing the losse, by *Alexius* with *Lascaris* and a few others, secretly (with a masse of treasure, hidden by his daughter *Irene*, Abbess of a Nunnery) the next night, fleeing.

The *Constantinopolitans* next morning taking *Isaac* out of Prison, saluted him again Emperour, and opened the Gates to the *Latines*, calling them the Revengers of their liberty, and their Emperour's Life and Majesty, requesting to see young *Alexius* so long desired, so saving the City, that time, from saccage. The old Emperour and his son, in the imperiall seat, gave most hearty thanks to the *Latine* Princes, and though his sight could not be restored, yet he acknowledged they restored his Life, Liberty, Empire, Country, and Son, confirming whatsoever his son had promised them, and that he would content them better if they were not therewith contented, not being able to render answerable Rewards to their deserts. And consulting about means to satisfy them, (that the Citizens might more willingly do what was to be commanded) he intreated the *Latines* (as they did) to retire out of the City. But

what every man was to pay being set down, it seemed to the *Greeks* most intolerable. *Isaac*, being brought out of a stinking Prison, through the sudden change of aire and manner of living, dyed in this very instant.

The *Constantinopolitans* grievously exclaimed at this exaction, all in generall saying, and the Nobles (in assemblies) grievously complaining, that it was a villanous thing for the Empire, by a boy, to be made bare unto a covetous and proud Nation: that the rich Isle *Creet* was given to the *Latines*: that the *Greek* Church was constrained to submit to the See of *Rome*, from which it was happily freed since the translation of the Empire thither by *Constantine the Great*; whereupon a Tumult was raised. The armed people furiously ran to the Pallace, purposing to commit some outrage on the young Emperour: to whom, without stay, he, shewing himself above, promised to doe nothing without their advice and liking, appealing the tumult with these good words. But the Emperour burning with desire of revenge, and thinking himself more bound to keep promise with the *Latines*, (for he could not satisfy both) he sent secretly to *Montferrat*, to send him certain souldiers about midnight, assuring him to receive them in by a Gate nigh the Pallace. Of this *Alexius Ducas*, surnamed *Marzuffle* from his beetle Browes, was not ignorant, whose aspiring mind took this occasion: and the night following, raised a tumult not inferiour to the former, comming suddenly to the Emperour, as if he had no hand in it, and told him, with a sad countenance, that the people, especially of his Guard, were in an uproar, comming to do him violence for his love to the *Latines*. The terrined Emperour, demanded of him, what was best to do in the case. He embracing him, in his Gown, led him by a secret door into a Tent in the Court; and departing as to appease the tumult he was (in bonds) clapt into a close stinking prison, as the Traytour before had ordered. The Traytour now made an Oration to the people, shewing

shewing his compassion to the *Greeks* and their Empire, and in that they were governed by a Youth, mislead by the *Latines* pleasure. That 'twas high time for the City and Empire to look about them, since 'twas sold by its Preservers: that they needed one who loved his Country before the *Latines* had extinguished their name. The windy people cried out with applause, *That none but he was to be Chief of the Commonweal*; Others, to have him made Generall of all forces: the greatest cry was to have him made Emperour; who, by general consent, was forthwith chosen and proclaimed. Who was of nothing more careful then to break the *Latines* forces, which he feared; attempting first by Galleys filled with pitch, to burn the *Venetians* fleet: who, not unacquainted with such devices, and wary, by keeping themselves from each other, avoided the same. He now, to colour the matter, sent Messengers to *Dandalus* the General, that it was done by the peoples malice, without his privity, that he would be glad of their favour and friendship promising to aid them with all things in their wars against the Infidels. *Dandalus* answered, he would believe it when young *Alexius* should assure him of it, and intreat for the people: which Answer mooved the Tyrant to take him clean out of the way, (for the mutable people began to repent of what was done against the Emperour, saying, They must find means to remedy their fault with their troubles) & with his own hands villanously strangled him in prison, bruising abroad that the Prince despairing had hanged himself. And fearing the *Latines* sword, resolved to meet them in the field: to arming the Cities whole strength, with a cheerful countenance, he encouraged his souldiers to defend their Country; to have the Walls of the City (where they were born) before their eyes; to pity their Temples, Wives, and Children. &c. gracing his enterprise with a colour of devotion, causing the Priests in their Ornaments to march with an Ensign, having in it

the Virgin *Mary's* picture. He first charged the Count of *Flanders* with a fierce and doubtfull battle, but new supplies every way coming in, they, with a great losse, and their superstitious Ensigne, were forced to retire into the City. The City was besieged 72 daies by Sea and Land with the *Latines* rare agreement, fresh men still coming to the assault gave the besieged no rest day or night. The *Venetians*, on the haven side, built a wooden Tower higher then the Walls and Rampiers, on 2 fastned Gallies, out of which, in the assault, they fired the City. The *French* likewise, on the Land side, pressing on with fury and valour, over deep ditches, high strong Walls and Bulwarks, gained the Angels Tower, and opened a way for themselves and the rest into the City. *Alexius* despairing of State and Life, fled with *Euphrosina* and *Eudocia* her daughter whom he married after 1 month 16 daies reign. The Tyrant fled, and the *Latines* entring, the Priests with their Ornaments, Crosses, and Banners, met them, beseeching them, with floods of tears, (falling at their feet) that as men, Captains, and Souldiers, they would pity men, Captains, and Souldiers, though not so fortunate as they: to abstain from slaughter, burning, ransacking; that they might have much more pleasure and profit in preserving than destroying the City, it being their own: That the elder *Alexius* and *Marzuse* had received a reward being exiled: That they would pity a poore people often oppressed by tyrannous Governours: That in so doing the Lord of Hosts would reward them, &c. Some of the better sort were moved with this humble submission; but the Souldiers fell all to the spoyle, without respect of injury to others, abstaining from innocent blood, every corner of the City being filled with mourning for so great outrages: Nobles, aged Men, and wealthy Citizens, being thrust out of all. They broke into Pallaces and Temples, where all was good prize: Some *Greek* Historians, eye-witnesses thereof, complaining of the *Latines*

tines insolency, to their eternall dishonour. Thus *Constantinople*, the famous seat of that Empire, fell to the *Latines*, April. 12. 1204. or as others, 1200.

The Princes and great Commanders now considered what was best to do with the gained City and Empire, thinking not good to raise a City so ancient & important, it overlooking *Asia* and *Europe*, and so commodiously placed to keep under the Christsians enemies, but to place there a *Latine* Governour, Lawes, and Customs, uniting it with the Church of *Rome*. Some would have but one Emperour in Christendome, and would choose *Philip* Germane Emperour, whose Wife *Irene* was caugther and Heir of *Isaac Angelus*. But all approved of this opinion, as better to choole one among themselves, by whose personall presence (which the *Greek* affaires needed) the *Latines* might be alwaies aided in their wars against the Infidels. The chief in this election, were 9 Counts, with the Marquesse of *Montferrat*, and 5 Gentlemen of *Venice*; to whom were joyned two Bishops of *Syria*; with two of *France* and an Abbot. These, assembled in the Apollles Temple, after they had craved God to inspire them in choosung a good and iust Prince, chose *Baldwin* Count of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, about 32 years old; crowned by *Maurocen* a *Venetian*, (first *Latin* Patriarch there) May 16. 1204 or 1205. From which time the *Greek* Church received Rites of the *Latines*, acknowledging *Romes* supremacy. Not long after, the *Latines* dividing their forces, took in most part of the Countreies on *Europe* side belonging to the *Greek* Empire, dividing them among themselves. To *Baldwin* the Emperour was assigned *Constantinople* and *Thracia*, with a limited Sovereignty over all Provinces gained or to be gained by the *Latines*. The *Venetians* share was, the rich Islands *Egeum*, *Ionium*, and *Candy* in lieu whereof *Montferrat* had *Thessalonica*, with all *Thessaly*, a good part of *Peloponessus*, with a Kingly Title. The *Venetian* State fortified some of those greater

F 4

Islands,

Islands, the rest were left to be possessed and deended by Citizens, at their private charges, the Signiour having a care over all, by a fleet suppressing the *Genua* Pirates, and taking in the strong Towns *Modon* and *Corone*, which they hold a long time. Other parts of the Empire, as the Dukedom of *Athens*, was given to *French Jeffery* of *Troy* in *Champaigne*. being made Prince of *Achaia*, another to the Count of *Blois*, with divers others to private Persons, paying yearly a 4th part of their revenue to their Lord the Emperour. Yea, the *Greeks* also sought to share out something, every man for himself, without regard of the common good, from which they were shortly driven, by the *Latines* or their Countreymens greater power.

Lascaris, who fled, at the Cities taking, to *Adrianople*, and so to *Bithynia*, was, with the good liking of the people; (having taken in the Countreys from the windings of *Meander*, even to the *Euxine Sea*) honoured as their Emperour, making *Nice* his seat. The two *Comnens* (Nephews of *Andronicus* by his son *Manuel*) possessing *Pontus*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*, erected another Empire in *Trapezond*; whose posterity gloriously reigned many years, till it, with the *Constantinopolitans* was by *Mahomet* inverted. Thus it was no longer one, but many Empires, some in Royal dignity, many others as petty Kings in their *Toparchies*: as *Aldebrandine* in *Attalia*, *Michael* in *Epirus*, &c.

Baldwin, by the help of *Dandalus* the *Venetian*, and others, soon brought under all the Cities of *Thrace*; *Adrianople* excepted: unto which the better sort of discontented *Greeks* with *Lascaris* were fled; which *Baldwin* knowing, hardly besieged the same. Some evil-intreated *Greeks* were fled into *Bulgaria*, by whose persuasion, *John*, that Countries King (aided by the *Scythians*, lately come thither, and by the *Greeks* themselves) took on him to relieve the City; who sent certain *Scythian* Troops before, to fetch in booties of cattle

near the Camp: giving order that when they were charged, they should retire, and so draw out the Imperials, where the King lay covertly to entrap them. The *Scythians* under *Cozus*, by twice retiring, and then returning with a greater number, drew the Emperour with his Army among the woods and mountaines, where the King with his Army lay in waite: where they being wearied, and beset, were overthrown with a great slaughter: *Baldwin* himself taken and sent in bonds to *Ternova*; where, by the barbarous King, his hands and feet were cut off; lying 3 dayes in a deep valley (where he was cast, breathing) he dyed, no man burying him: He perished in 1206, not having reigned a full year. The barbarous King with his savage Souldiers, tasting the *Latins* wealth, over-ran all *Thracia*, rissling and racing the City of *Serra*, with 9 more, putting all to the sword, except a few carried away prisoners. Of all Provinces, *Thrace* was most miserable, first spoiled by the *Latins*, now desolated by *Bulgarians* and *Scythians*. *Didimothicum* and *Adrianople* (valiantly defended) escaped their fury. The *Latins* made choice of *Henry*, *Baldwin's* brother, to succeed him; who aided by the King of *Thessaly*, recovered all places taken by the *Barbarians*, driving them quite out the Countrey.

But to come nearer to our purpose: *Alexius Angelus* fled into *Thessaly* from the *Latins*, and so to *Leo Siturus* (who tyrannizing at *Nauplius*, was grown greater by surprisal of *Argos* and *Corinth*, by whom he entrapped *Murzu* for a secret grudge, and put out his eyes (himself an exile a deadly foe to other exiled): who being shortly taken by the *Latins*, was brought to *Constantinople*; where for murdering young *Alexius*, he was cast headlong from a high Tower, and crushed to pieces, miserably dying. Not long after, *Alexius* himself was wandering in *Thracia* by *Montferrat*, going against *Scurus* stript of all, and sent away naked, wandering as a beggar in *Achaia* and *Peloponnesus*.

poneſſus who hearing that *Laſcaris* his Son in Law reigned as an Emperour in *Aſia*, inwardly grieved thereat, came ſecretly to *Jathathines* the *Turks* Sultan lying at *Attalia*, declaring his heavy ſtate, requeſting he might be reſtored eſpecially in that part of his Empire, detained from him by *Laſcaris*; *Jathathines*, not forgetful of his own troubles, or of the kindneſs he had received from *Alexius* at *Conſtantinople*, (when fleeing from *Azatines* his eldeſt brother, he was honourably entertained by him, received (after *Azatins* death) for the *Turks* Sultan) and hoping to ſhare of what he got, threatned *Laſcaris* with all extremities, except he gave place to his Father in Law, to whom thoſe Countries of right appertained; *Laſcaris*, fearing both the Sultan's power, and the peoples inclination, yet finding them ready and well-affected towards him; ſet forward with 2000 choiſe horſemen, with the Sultan's Embaſſadours, to *Philadelphia*; the Sultan with *Alexius* then beſieging *Antioch*, (on the banks of *Meander*) with 20000 *Turks*. *Laſcaris* underſtanding the gaining that ſtrong City would hazard his whole Empire; reſolved to do what he might with thoſe few to relieve it. And following the Embaſſadour at the heels, who coming unto the Sultan, and telling him of his approach, and at length perſwaded of the truth thereof, put his Army in the beſt order he could on ſuch a ſudden, and the places ſtraightneſs. The Emperour had 800 reſolute *Italians*, who brake thorough the Sultans Army, diſordering them, the *Greeks* following; but being divided from the reſt, in coming back, were by the diſordered *Turks* all together ſlain; having made an (hard to be believed) ſlaughter of the *Turks*. The *Greeks* were now upon the point to flee; but the Sultan ſingling out the *Greek* Emperour, at the firſt encounter, gave him ſuch a blow on the head with his Mace, that he fell down aſtoniſhed, who quickly recovering his feet, hoxed the hinder leggs of the Sultans tall Mare, with which ſhe ſaltred, and the Sultan tumbled

bled down, whose head the Emperour cut off; the sight of which so dismaied the *Turks*, that they presently fled, who for his small number pursued not, but in the City gave thanks to God. The *Turks* sent shortly concluding a Peace on his own conditions; who carrying *Alexius* taken in this battel to *Nice*, used him well notwithstanding his ill deserts.

Whilst the *Latins* spent their forces against the *Greeks*, and *Lascaris* was troubled with the *Turks*, the Christians affairs in *Syria* grew worse and worse; whereof the Knights Hospitallers and Templers, blamed *Almericus* King of *Cyprus*; who being so near, and marrying *Isabel* heir of *Jerusalem's* Kingdom, given to pleasure did nothing to relieve the Christians; for though the *Turks* were yet in League with them, and at some mutual discord; yet building new Castles, &c. they cut them short upon occasion. The Knights requested Pope *Innocent* for remedy, certifying him, there was one *Mary* daughter of *Montferrat*, whom they had brought up, and were ready to bestow her on whom he should think worthy, with her right to the Kingdom, *Innocent* discharging *Almericus*, gave it to *John* Count of *Breuxe*, a Frenchman of fame then in Arms with the *Latin* Princes; who commending his Earldom to his brother, came with what forces he could to *Venice* and *Constantinople*; and thence with rejoycing, was received as King at *Ptolemais*, arriving Sept. 5. and marrying *Mary* the last day, was with her crowned at *Tyre* in 1209, *Almericus* soon dying for grief. Some envying his promotion, called him in derision, a King *Sans Ville*, that is, without a Town.

The 10 years peace betwixt the *Turks* and *Christians*, was almost expired: 9 years discord having continued between *Noradine* and *Saphadin* for Sovereignty, was ended by *Saphadin's* death. *Noradine* contented with *Aleppo*, *Coradin*, and *Meladine* *Saphadin's* Sons: one had *Damasco*, the other *Egypt*, all enemies to the Christians.

Nor

Not long after, Pope *Innocent* summoned a Council at *Lateran*, to which, not only a multitude of *Bishops*, but most Christian Princes Embassadors repaired; the danger of the Christians in *Syria*, and their relief by the Western Princes was propounded. To which all consented, and some were appointed to publish their Decree in every Province, for relief, & to stir up the people for undertaking the same. The German Bishops of *Ments*, *Cullen*, & *Trivers*, were special furtherers of this, whose example moved many. *Henry* Count of *Nivers*, and one *Gualter*, with a great and gallant number, were sent from *France*, a Fleet of 200 sail meeting at the *Adriatique* Ports; who arrived prosperously at *Ptolemais*. *Andrew* King of *Hungary* (before bound hereto) followed with the Duke of *Bavaria*, and *Leopold* of *Austria*: to all which, *John* of *Jerusalem* joyned. There was great hope of some great matter to be done; they the first day marched into *Galilee*, easily overthrowing some met-Companies of the *Turks*. The King of *Hungary* bathing in *Jordan*, as discharged of his vow, returned (with all his power) home, all the rest crying out the contrary. From *Jordan* they came to *Taber*; But Winter coming on, and the Cattel dying by cold and want of meat, they wintred at *Ptolemais* and *Tyre*. *John* and the *Austrian* troubling the *Barbarians* that Winter, by taking a Castle between *Casaria* and *Caipha*. The Army met at Spring, they thought best to attempt the conquest of *Egypt*, which standing upright, they should do no great matter in *Syria*; and, it being subdued, *Jerusalem* and *Palestine* would of themselves yield; resolving to begin the war at the City *Daniata*, the first and commodioust Port, by whose taking they should enter *Nile*, and command the Country thereabouts. This rich and ancient City, stood about a mile from the Sea, somewhat distant from *Nile*, environed with a navigable cut, like an Island, and compassed with 3 strong stone-Walls, a strong warch Tower at the Cut's mouth, a number of fair houses about

about it entrenched; the *Cut* also was barred with a great strong iron chain. The Christians by great strength (coming with their Fleet) brake the chain; but they found a greater stay at the Watch-Tower, which strongly built, and well stored, the Souldiers overwhelmed them with shot, fire, stones, &c. The Christians had built high wooden Towers on Vessels for assault; in the approach the Marri-ners and Souldiers hindred each other, by crying, they should draw nigher the Tower, others to cast out the bridges for entry; the enemy also with clamour encouraging one another. In this hurly-burly the highest Tower, over-charged with men, fell with an exceeding noise, crushing some to death, the timber oppressing others being hurt, and crying for help: others hurt leapt for fear, some into *Nile*, some aboard ships, crying out of arm, leg, head, other part, discomfiting the rest, and giving over the assault. King *John* the Armies General, appeasing the tumult giving those that were hurt to Surgions, and burying the dead bodies, cheerfully perswaded the Souldiers, not to be discouraged, this Towers fall being through wars chance not their cowardise, or the enemies valour.

Meledine encamped in sight of *Damiata*, to fill the besieged with hopes of relief, often sending then by the River whatsoever they wanted, skirmishes passing daily betwixt both. The Christians had still the victory, but could neither be drawn to battel, nor kept from victuals, it being conveyed out of upper *Egypt* by *Nile*; whereas the same River dividing into many arms, &c. gave our men a 1000 inconveniences; therefore they resolved to besiege the Tower again: framing a strong Tower on 2 fastned Vessels, and bringing it near their Tower, the rest of the Fleet following for assault, others standing in battel range at Land, to discourage the besieged; and that the Sultan should not help them without hazzarding battel. They of the suburbs valiantly defended a fierce and cruel assault; for, it being a publick Mart-City, there dwelt in
the

the Suburbs, not only *Egyptians*, but *Arabians*, *Indians*, &c. who fought for defence of lives and goods: our men being animated also, as in religious quarrels, to with the spoil of those rich Nations. The Christians drew as near with their ships as they could to Land, that they might fight hand to hand; But the *Barbarians* fought by shot, &c. to keep them from landing. The enemy boarding by chance a ship running a ground, and making a cruel slaughter, a Souldier made a great hole under the hatches, and drowned a great number of *Egyptians* with the Christians, which most feared them; The high Tower also now mating the Watch-tower, dismayed the Defendants, as with a miracle, forsaking the Tower and fleeing; which thus taken, the discouraged in the Suburbs fleeing, many were wounded from the Watch-tower by the Christians. Other ships then landing, the Souldiers put all they found to the sword. There was abundance of victuals, but far more riches.

Now they assaulted the strong Town *Damiata*, but gaining nothing but hard blows and wounds, they retired; yet they lodged in the Suburbs, lying betwixt the Sultan and the City, that no supply should be brought: the enemy being (to their great losse) oft hindered, both from entering or sallying forth. But now *Nile* swelling with an Eastern wind: most of the Christians victuals were spoiled; who (through the Pope's Legat) fasting and praying for 3 daies; the wind falling and the River decreasing on the fourth day, they prayed more earnestly, thinking, as the Almighty had feared, so he had comforted them again.

Victual growing scant in the Sultan's Camp, he sent away half his Army about *Caire*; at which time, *Ceradin* sent Embassadours to the Princes of the Christian Army, in his own, and the *Egyptian* Sultan his brothers behalf, suing for peace, and promising to restore whatever his Father *Saladine* had taken from them; most liking that well, saying, They had taken up Arms for recovery of that

that had been before gotten, : that all these things being restored, there rested no further occasion of war, &c. Yet *Pelagius* the Popes Legat, (for the other was dead) King *John*, Master of the Hospitallers and Templers, Duke of *Austria*, and the *Germans* were contrary in opinion : alledging, this sacred war was undertaken against the Infidels and *Mahometan* Superstition, and they ought to impugn *Egypt* as its chief seat ; whereby the Sultans large offers were rejected. Whereupon *Coradine* fearing, forthwith rased the Walls of *Jerusalem*, plucking down most of the stately buildings ; yet sparing *David's* Tower and *Christ's* Sepulchre, at the humble intercession, as is said, of the Christians of divers Countreys.

The Plague arising in the Christians Camp at *Damiata*, the great Commanders (so many dying) who would have accepted the Sultans large proffers, began to repent they had so much hearkened to the Legat. The Christians weary of a now 6 moneths siege, and the Sultan (but only the choice of his men) having sent away the rest, stood not so carefully on their guard as before ; whereupon the Sultan in the night hoped to send supplies to the besieged. The foremost Companies were already entred ; but the Christians perceiving them, so assailed the hindermost, that the enemy, fearing they should enter in with them, shut the gates, where they were all cut to pieces. The Christians hereby encouraged, next day part of the Army presented themselves to give the Sultan battel, who would not be drawn out of his trenches, they (especially the French-men) attempted their rampiers, but not with answerable successe. The *Egyptians* enforcing their small number to retire, *Gualter* with others being lost : the King also assailing the Camp, lost many, his face burnt, hardly escaping with life. After which, they thought of nothing but the siege, and the City now more straightly besieged, and brought to extream famine, assembled themselves to consult what to do, one or other secretly fleeing to the Camp.

Camp. Had not the chief Commanders mured up the gates, and commanded none to come on the Walls or Rampiers, the City had been by the most yielded, who searching, especially Shops and Ware-houses, divided the small store of Wheat among themselves; the people eating whatsoever came to hand, prolonged life with what they could find. These not able to endure famins extremities, were greatly slaughtered with the plague, which so encreased, that men were wanting, not only to succour, &c. the sick, but to bury the dead. The dead bodies gave a horrible stink with infectious air; they choosing rather to die, than submit themselves to their enemies, The Christians knew of the famine, but not of the raging Plague among them. They cast up Trenches and Baricades, to keep in such as the famine should enforce out, still expecting when the besieged, through necessity, should yield. When they had lyen above a year at siege, certain Souldiers in a bravery, adventured to mount the Wall: and finding no resistance, they stood still hearkening; but seeing that dumb silence continued, they returned, informing the Captains of the matter; who thinking it some policy of the enemy, afterward caused some Companies to scale a Bulwark, in such sort, as if they had gone against a puissant enemy: who took it without resistance, and cut in pieces (in their further entry) a small company, very weak and feeble with famine and infection of air, after some small resistance. The gates being set open, the Christians were let in with displayed Ensigns; but at the entry were attainted with a most grievous stink, they saw the streets covered with dead bodies, others drawing towards their end. Of 70000 persons were not found above 3000 alive, and those the most part young children, which maigred and poor ones, had their lives granted them, to cleanse the City and bury the dead, being three moneths in doing it. *Damiata* was taken Nov. 5. 1221. The spoil was great, with store of Gold, Silver, and precious

rious Stones. The Christians (as in a Colony) forgetting their Countrey, staid there above a year after. The City, *Pelagius* (by vertue of his Legation) adjudged to belong to the See of *Rome*: at which, the King and Armies General, (to whom all places taken was agreed to be given) withdrew himself discontented, yet dissemblingly, to *Prolemas*. *Pelagius*, weary to see nothing doing, the year following, commanded every man to take Arms and prosecute the war, with besieging of *Caire*; yet the Souldiers cryed out with one voice, They would be commanded by none but the King of *Jerusalem*. The Legat was enforced to send and request the King, to take on him the managing of that war, who by particular affairs, and his own indisposure, excusing himself, at length (through the requests of the other Princes) at the time when the *Bavarian* Duke, after 10 months absence, arrived (out of his Countrey) with a brave Company, returned to *Damiata*: whom with others the Legat requested, and urged speedily to take the field, telling them, the holy wars enterprize was grown old, and cold by these delays, &c. That it was for the invaded or assailed, (on whose lives their Countrey, Wives, &c. depended) to prolong time, and to delude and dally off the enemy, till, having weakened his forces, he should lose his hope: *Caire*, he said, was a great City; yet the greatest Cities had, by puissant and speedy enemies, become desarts: and that great Empires ought not to be assailed by forreign force, if they were not (at first) overthrown, or weakened as not to recover themselves, &c. That *Egypt* ought not to have been attempted, or not to be given over before conquest. The King of *Jerusalem*, whether grieved that *Damiata* could not be given him, or having proved, that higher *Egypt* was not to be attempted without great danger, said he would not go in any case, the war being undertaken for recovery of the holy Land; and that after *Memphis*, *Babylon* of *Thebes* were taken, they could not be kept long by force; whereas

whereas *Syria* was in right their own. And though he commended whatever forwardness, &c. *Pelagius* commended; yet he ought to employ the same in *Syria*; and not where no need was, or profit to be expected. The Legat, wedded to his opinion, commanded him and the rest, to get in the field against the Sultan, threatening the sentence of excommunication against the backward or unwilling: So as enforced, they set forward in *August* the hottest season. The Sultan (as afraid of 70000) retired farther off; at which the unexpert Legat rejoicing said, That fortune favoured the valiant, and to cowards all fell out to the worst. The Christians seizing on a bridge, made over *Nile*, cut the Keepers thereof to pieces. Drawing nigh *Caire*, and encamping in its sight, they ran up and down, provoking them of the City to come out to battle, &c. who let them alone to brag and boast, and purposely protracted long the siege; and the Christians having confidence in their valour, with little regard of their enemies, not considering they were within the Trenches, &c. of a deceitful River, took no care of duty, watch, &c. So the crafty enemies, abusing them with delays and deceits, drew them out at length, that they might circumvent them when they least feared it. The Christians encamped under the covert of the Banks, and Causes of that fenry Country, thinking themselves safe; But these places were soft and durty, the people at pleasure warring them by channels and sluices out of *Nile*; which opened, the River began to overflow all. Then they (too late) perceived themselves taken as in a gin; all the ground being covered with water, that the victuals were corrupted, and no place for a man to lye dry in. The *Egyptians* had taken the high places, that the Christians should not retire out of the covered Boggs and Marshes: so their rash valour was exposed to the enemies shot and fury. Then all began to cry out, and rail, &c. against *Pelagius*: the King they blamed not, who was against his liking drawn into

into this war, &c. After 3 daies, thus coupt up with waters, the poor Souldiers fell down dead in the water for want of food and sleep, no help but to accept of the proud enemies conditions; who most desiring his Countries liberty, required *Damiata* to be restored and all things as before the besieging thereof, and so the Christians to depart his Country. These hard conditions were by the distressed Christians accepted of; but when they were propounded to them of *Damiata*, a great contention arose, some said they would not surrender the Town a stay for all Christian affairs in the East; but being restored, carried away all their hope with it; and therefore 'twere better endure all extremities, than receive so hurtful a Peace: Others said, they ought to have compassion of so many thousand distressed souls; not to expose them to butchery, Towns consisting of men, and not men of enclosures. These seeing the others obstinate, presently, by force entered their houses, and took away their weapons, to constrain them to yield. When they before *Caire* (almost drowned) understood of this dissention, they sent word, If they would not yield *Damiata* to the Sultan, they would forthwith send to *Ptolemais* (which would not fail) to have it surrendred, instead, to the *Egyptians*. So was *Damiata* again yielded to the Infidels. *Meledin* the Sultan, did neither by word or deed, despite or reproach them; but relieved them with victuals, and other things wanting, conducting them safely (by guides) out of the Country. Likewise, *Coradin* his brother made a truce with them for 8 years; whereupon, the King went into *Italy*, and (by the Popes perswasion) gave his daughter *Yoland* in marriage to *Frederick Latin* Emperour, (she being Crowned Queen of *Jerusalem* in her dead mother's right) to stir him up for undertaking this sacred war. He and his successour illy prosecuting their pretended title. *John* arriving from *Rome* at the *French* Court, found King *Philip* desperately sick, who (by will) gave to the Hospital-

lers and Templers 60000 Crowns for maintenance of their wars, which was afterwards paid to *John*; who in the way to *Spain*, married *Berengaria* the King of *Castiles* Daughter, returning into *France*, where he long expected *Frederick* to recover his wives right to *Jerusalem's* Kingdom: which though he at *Rome* (at the marriage) solemnly vowed; yet (otherwise let) performed it not till almost 7 years after. Let us leave the Christians in *Syria*, (who enjoyed the 8 years Peace, till new troubles) returning to the troubled affairs at *Constantinople*, and in lesser *Asia*.

Henry as aforesaid, repressing the *Bulgarians* and *Scythians*, dyed, having with trouble reigned about 11 years. After whom succeeded his Son in Law, *Peter* Count of *Anserre*; who to gratifie the *Venetians*, and in revenge besieged *Theodore Angelus* (Prince of *Epirus* his competitor) in *Dyrrachium*, which he had a little before surprized from the *Venetian* Seignior; where *Peter* laying, was so cunningly used by the *Greek*, that a Peace was betwixt them concluded, and friendship joyned. So that *Peter* came to him as his guest, who entertained him with all feigned formalities, but most traiterously slew him in the midst of his banquet; (Yet others report he was by him put to death being intercepted travelling from *Rome* to *Constantinople*) which *Topulus* Governour of *Constantinople* understanding, made peace in the Empire's vacancy for 5 years, with him, and the *Turks* for 2. *Robert*, *Peter's* Son, shortly coming thither, was saluted Emperour; but soon after, he taking a fair Lady, daughter of a rich and Noble Matron, to Wife, before betrothed to a gallant *Burgundian*, the old Lady breaking her promise: the young *Burgundian* (enraged with the wrong) entred the Court in the Emperour's absence, by night, with a company of lusty Souldiers, cutting off the young Empresses nose and ears, throwing her old Mother into the Sea, and fled out of the City with those cut-throats. The Emperour pierced to the heart with the disgrace, soon went to *Rome*,
and

and returning thorow *Achaia*, died there. *Baldwin*, a child by his first Wife, left to succeed him, the 5th and last of the *Latin* Emperours there; who being married to *Martha* younger Daughter of *John* King of *Jerusalem*, but then Governour of *Ravenna*, he had both the person and Empire of *Baldwin* committed to his charge: which he for certain years faithfully discharged, till *Baldwin* was able himself to govern. Now though *Constantinople* with *Thracia*, and the other *Greek* Provinces, were all or most under *Baldwin*, the *Venetian* and other *Latin* Princes; yet the oppressed *Greeks*, were in heart devoted wholly to their natural Emperours. *Lascares* reigning at *Nice*, & *Comnen*, at *Trapezond*. *Lascares* in his reign, had fought many a battel, &c. as it were, erecting a new Empire in *Asia*, reigning 18 years, and leaving *John Ducas* (who married *Irene* his Heir) to succeed him. A man of great wit, spirit and gravity, undertaking nothing before consideration; which resolved on, he omitted nothing for performance: The *Greeks*, saying, The planting this new Empire required the celerity of *Lascares*; but its stay, the gravity of *Ducas*. In the beginning, setting things in order, he augmented his legions, and aiming to recover *Constantinople*, with *Thrace* and *Greece*, built a great number of Gallies, taking in one Summer, most of the *Aegeum* Islands, with famous *Rhodes*, and many others; and the next Spring landing over *Hellespont*, invaded *Chersonesus*, then foraging the Countrey even to the gates of *Constantinople*, taking also many Cities and Towns by the Sea coast; the *Greeks* almost all yielding themselves where they could help him. The ruin of the *Latin* Empire in the East, was plainly to be seen; for *Assan* the *Bulgarian* King, sent his Embassadors to *John*, offering his Daughter *Hellena* in marriage to *Theodore* his Son, of which he (*Assan* able to call in the *Scythies*) loath to have him his enemy, gladly accepted. Wherefore *Hellena*, both about 12 years old, was solemnly married to *Theo-*

dore about *Chersonesus*. The Sultan of *Iconium* (not long after) fearing while his hands were full of the dreadful *Tartars*, he should beset on by the *Greek* Emperour, sent unto *John* to prolong the League betwixt them; which he for many causes granted, as notable to war against the *Turks* and *Latins* at once, and to keep by this warlike Nation his own Countries safe from the *Tartars*. This Peace exceedingly enriched his Countries; for now the people began to fall to the fruitful labours of peace. The Emperour himself by plowing got much Corn, planting many Vine-yards, and keeping Heards, and Flocks, and Fowls of all sorts, stirred others up to the like, causing also his Kinsmen and Nobles to have sufficient for their own spending, and not to take any thing from the poor Countreymen; whereby in few years, every Barn was full of Corn, &c. Then also there being a great famine among the *Turks*, they travelling into the Emperour's Provinces for Viſuals, gave their gold, silver, and rich commodities for food; so that the Countrey-mens houses were full of the *Turks* wealth, and the Emperour's Coffers stored with Treasure. The money gathered of Eggs daily sold, making the Empress a rich Crown of gold set with precious stones; which he called *Ovaia*, because it was bought with Egg-money. The *Greek* Empire thus flourishing in lesser *Asia*, the *Turks* pill'd by the *Tartars* and consumed with famine, as fast declining.

Frederick the Emperour, and King of *Sicily*, was hardly called on by Pope *Honorius*, to take his long vowed expedition into the holy Land; and for delay, excommunicated by *Gregory* 9, more to draw from him some of his Empire in his abſence, than for their zeal thereto, which he fearing, delayed his Vows performance; But at length, enforced with *Gregory's* thundring, he set forward in 1227. *Yoland* his wife thereabout dying in child-bed of a Son. There met at *Brundusium*, an exceeding number of Souldiers out of all parts (especially *Germany*) under the Landgrave

Lantgrave of *Thuring*, and the Bishop of *Augusta*; but the Plague arising there, the Lantgrave and Bishop, with many others, dyed: The Emperour falling very sick of a Feaver at *Malea*, on his way, returned to *Brundisium*, staying long there. Then the Pope, casting out his excommunications against him, accusing him with perjury, &c. he would have cleared himself in an open Assembly at *Ravenna*, had it not been disturbed; yet he answered all by writings, setting forward again from *Brundisium* in *August* 1228. The Pope for that the Emperour had neither taken his leave of him, nor reconciled himself, in a great choller, forbad all forces in *Syria* to yield him obedience: writing also to the Sultan, not to agree with him &c. And afterwards ran on his Kingdom of *Naples*, troubling *Italy*; yet he was honourably received at *Prolemais*. Sultan *Meledin* hearing of his arrival, offered him most honourable conditions of Peace; who sending first for the Pope's consent, would not suffer the Messengers to come into his presence, rending the Letters without reading them; yet the Emperour, on condition that he should be King of *Jerusalem*, and all *Palestine* delivered to him: That all taken from *Baldwin* 4th by *Saladin* should be restored: that *Nazareth* and *Joppa* he might fortifie at pleasure, and that all prisoners, by both, be freed without ranfome, concluded a Peace for 10 years: thereupon he was Crowned King of *Jerusalem* on Easter-day, 1229, who repairing its desolate Walls, with certain Temples, &c. appointing *Raynold* of *Bavaria* his Lievtenant, returned into *Italy*. The *Sicilian* Kings have been ever since called Kings of *Jerusalem*.

Gregory (next year) more in spight to the Emperour than zeal, did by the lately erected *Dominicans* and *Franciscans*, stir up a wonderful number to take on them the Crosse, so termed, their cognizance, who bound themselves for recovery, or defence of the holy Land, under *Theobald* King of *Navarre*, the Counts of *Montfort*,

and *Campaigne*, and others, to trouble the 10 years concluded Peace; passing *Bosphorus* they came to the River *Sanger* in *Bythinia*, there refreshing themselves, at length they came to the Straits of Mount *Amanni*, taken by the *Turks*, the Sultan of *Iconium* not far off encamping; yet *Montfort* courageously marching with his Vanguard, by force opened the Mountains passage. *Navarre* in vain assailing the Sultan's Camp, who would not stir out; wherefore the King, dividing his Army, followed *Montfort*, with his best Souldiers in the rear; but the *Turks* assailing them upon occasion, at length taking advantage in a Plain, slew of them an exceeding number; the battel through the night broken off, the Christians at length arrived at *Antioch*, having lost most of their Army and horses, with all their wealth and victuals; they were transported to *Ptolemais*, and thence conducted to *Gaza*, spoiling the Countrey, they could have no help of the Emperor's forces there; for he had expressly charged, not to do any thing tending to the breach of the 10 years League: which the *Turks* perceiving, lay in every corner to cut them off: these of *Gaza*, returning with spoil out of the the Countrey, were set upon by the *Turks*, whom they put to flight. But the next morning, far more *Turks* appeared, who joyned with the watching Christians a cruell battel: who (though they shewed very much valour) wearied and oppressed with their multitude, were almost all slain. The two Counts falling among the rest, the King by his horse's swiftness hardly escaping; who after 2 daies wandring, came by hap to *Joppa*: some few escaped to *Ptolemais*: He visiting *Jerusalem*, returned home with a few followers.

Raynold the Lievtenant about 4 years after dying, the *Templers* (who would oftentimes have broke the League) now took occasion to stir up the people to take Arms against the *Turks*: Wherefore the *Egyptian* Sultan, raising an Army, & sending for the *Chorassines* lying near *Babylon*, besieged *Gaza*, which at length taking, he put all to the

the sword therein: Likewise, he dealt so with *Ascalon* and other places. The Templars and Hospitallers, with the weak Kingdomes strength, came to give him battle near *Tyberias*: who hastily (as if for fear) retiring, came upon them next night, encamping by the River, at unawares and unarmed; who, being awaked, hastily and disorderly, took such weapons as came to hand, fighting terribly and doubtfully a long space, encouraging each other. But the *Turks* keeping order, and more in number, greatly slaughtered them, yet with loss of many thousands of their own: most of the best Templars and Hospitallers were slain. The Sultan, being encouraged, forthwith took *Jerusalem*, putting all men, women, and children, to the sword, rasing it, burning the buildings, &c. defacing Christ's sepulchre, never before violated, which he seemed chiefly to do, for that the Christians, for its gaining, so hardly adventured, & so troubled the *Saracens* and *Turks*. Thus by breach of the league, *Jerusalem* fell again into the *Turks* power in 1234, in whose hands it hath remained to this day, governed by a *Sanzack*, the Sepulchre being again repaired, was much visited, and not unreverenced by the *Turks* themselves.

Frederick was much grieved with this losse, but (being entangled with troubles that *Gregory* left unto other *Popes*, till they had deprived him of Empire, and life also) he could not remedy the same. *Lewis* the ninth, King of *France*, famous for zeal, devout in life, and abounding in wealth, was careful for the Christians in *Syria*. In whose devout morions, before he could resolve on the enterprize, he fell dangerously sick, lying speechlesse, and but a little faintly breathing; the first thing that he asked for (when come a little to himself) was the Crosse, that was cognizance, which he received of the Bishop of *Paris*; 3 Counts his Brethren, with the Duke of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders*, Count of *Paul*, and most of his Nobles, taking (the same time) the same charge on them. Yet few years passed

passed in preparation for so great an enterprize, many dying before it. At length the King, taking order with his mother *Blanch &c.* took his leave of the Pope at *Lyons* (who, for fear of *Frederick*, lay there) and imbarquing at *Marcelles*, Aug. 25. 1248. he arrived in *Cyprus*, Sept. 20. following. Who was desirous, without stay, to goe for *Egypt*, had he not been otherwise perswaded through want of his whole Fleet, and the years season. But passing there the winter, the plague arising and increasing in the Camp, a great number shortly died, with the Bishop of *Bravais*, and divers others, 240 in number, nor of the meaner sort; so that he divided his Army, attending the stay of the Infection. The Templars, in the mean time, fearing the *Turk's* over-running all, and the *French* getting the Victory, would diminish their tyrannizing power; sent secretly to the Sultan of *Egypt*, perswading him, by an agreement, to avert farther harm from the *French* King. Who, liking it well, sent to their Master about a peace, yet, with the *French* King's consent. To whom the Templars wrote, perswading him to accept thereof, setting out the Sultan's great preparations. But the King of *Cyprus* acquainting *Lewis*, that the Master had sent to the Sultan, procuring that message. he fed the *Turk's* Embassadour with hope, but wrote to the Master, on his head, not to have any intelligence with the enemy.

Winter past, divers Noble and great ones, who had set forth late, or, for fear of the plague, winnred by the way, repaired to *Cyprus*: as *Robert* of *Burgundy*, with good Horse-men; the Prince of *Achaia*, with a great fleet from *Peloponesus*; *William* Earl of *Sarisbury*, with a band of lusty souldiers: So *Lewis* departing, tossed with winds, about 5 daies after, fell upon *Egypt*, coming with his fleet before *Damiata*. The Sultan understanding his purpose, had strongly fortified his frontiers, beside a great power kept with him in readinesse. The Governour of *Damiata* was ready to keep the Christians from landing: who,

who, manning their long Boats with Archers, to beat the enemy from the shoare, ran a ground with other landing Boats; coming to handy blowes, a sharp battle was fought, many falling on both sides. But the *Turks*, oppressed with multitudes still landing, fled into the Town, leaving their Governour, with 500, dead on the shoar. This rich and populous City had (since the formertaking) been strongly fortified by the *Turks*, with deep ditches, high walls, &c. and stored with all things for a long siege. Yet the Souldiers and Citizens, remembring the miseries endured in the former siege, the night following, fled over the River by a bridge made of Boats; and brake it lest they should be followed, having first fired their houses. The Christians entring the City, did what they could to quench the fire and afterwards found abundance of riches with store of victuals, This happened about the beginning of *Octob:* in 1249. *Meledine* herewith discouraged, offered the King for peace, and the redeeming thereof, more in *Palestine* and *Syria* then they had before a long time: which was by the *French* proudly rejected, and *Alexandria* the Metropolis further demanded. *Meledine* (not much beloved) now died, in whose stead, *Melechsal*, courageous & welbeloved, (even then returning from craving aid of the Mahometan Princes) was chosen: which Princes (though not according among themselves, or with the *Egyptian*, yet in this common danger of Superstition) joyned, sending him great aid. Who being strengthened, hotly skirmished with the Christians, not far from *Damietta*, wherein he retired with some losse. But the Christians, sallying out the next day, fled to the Camp with ten times more losse. Whereby the Sultan encouraged hoped for better success, stopping that without great peril no victuals could be brought to City or Camp, so that victuals began to grow scarce; whereof he was informed by fugitives, that fled for want. It fortuned that the Governour of *Caire*, not ill affected to the Christian Religion,

Religion, and highly offended with the Sultan, for his Brothers wrongfull death, secretly perswaded the King to come thither with his Army, promising to deliver it to him, with instructions what to do. Whereupon he assembled what forces he could make: sending also for the Earl of *Salisbury*, who, with the *English*, was gone to *Ptolemais*, for indignities offered him by *Artoys* the Kings brother, purposing to serve no more: But with promise of better usage, and recompence for wrongs, he returned into *Egypt*. And more strengthened by new supplies from *France*, leaving a convenient Garrison in *Damiata*; set forward towards *Caire*. Wherefore the Sultan offered to restore him all *Palestine*, with a great summe of money, and all prisoners, so he would redeliver *Damiata*, and joyn in League with him. Which offer through others perswasion he refused: The King was to passe an Arme of *Nilus*, but being conducted by a fugitive Saracen to a foord, he sent *Robert of Artoys* his brother with a 3d part, before, accompanied with the Masters of the Templars and Earle of *Sarisbury*. Who assailing the *Turks* in their tents, (in the Sultans absence) put them to flight. *Artois* above measure encouraged, would needs on forwards, whom the antient Templars, acquainted with that Nations deceitful manners; and considering their own strength better then he, perswaded him not further to prosecute the enemy, till the rest of the Armies coming. To whom he in despite replied, he would prosecute, &c. calling them cowards, objecting to them the common fame, that the holy Land might long since have been united to the Christians Commonwealth; but for the false collusion of the Templars and Hospitallers, with the Infidels. The Master moved, answered, he should when he would, and where he durst, display his Ensignes, &c. *Sarisbury* also perswaded *Robert* to listen to the wholesome Counsel of the Templars; being experienced men, beginning also to pacifie the Ma-

ster with gentle words: Whom, whilst speaking, *Robert* called *Dastard*, wishing the Army rid of him, and the fearful Cowards his Country men: Who answered, well General, on, my foot shall be as far as yours; and I believe we go where you shall not dare to come nigh my Horses tail: He said so, because the *French*, had in disdain, often called him and his English, *Tailes*. The Earle not to be perswaded, first assaulted a little place called *Mansor*, who was about to retire, having lost a number of his men. The Sultán suddenly came on with his whole power, and with his multitude, enclosed the long wished-for, divided Christian Army; in which great fight though they worthily behaved themselves, yet being a small number, they were slain down right. Then the too late repenting Earle, cried out to *Sarisbury* (valiantly fighting) to fly, &c. who answered, God forbid, my Fathers son should run from the face of a Saracen. The *French* Earle swiftly fleeing and taking the River *Thasnes*, overladed with armour, was drowned. *Sarisbury* with his own hand slew many that day, till his Horse being slain, and he so wounded in the legs, that he could not stand; yet desperately laid about him on his knees, and was there slain; scarce more than 2 Templars, 1 Hospitaller, and 1 Common Souldier escaped alive.

Sickness also increasing in the Camp, the King sent many sick people to *Damiata*, down *Nilus*, purposing to march to *Caire*: whom the Sultán (by meeting them with boats carried in Carts) burnt and drowned all, except one English man, who, wounded in 5 places, escaped reporting it to the rest. The Sultán had now intelligence of the Governour, to betray *Cair*, & suddenly apprehended him till better leisure: the King had all his hope of the City hereby cut off; who now would gladly accept of the refused conditions, which the Sultán would not hear of, but sent, in derision, to know what was become of all his mattocks, forks &c. which he brought with him, & why

why (like an ill husband) he suffered them to rot and rust by him. The King would fain have retired to *Damiata*: but the Sultan got betwixt him and home, so that he must fight it out or yield: Who being before often intreated by his Nobles, for safety of his person, to conveigh himself by water to *Damiata*, would never be perswaded, saying, He was resolved to endure with his people whatever God should lay upon him. So passing the foord afore-mentioned, coming where his Brother's battle was fought, he might see the mangled Christians (the Sultan having proclaimed great reward to whomsoever brought him a Christians head or hand). Long he staid not there, but the Sultan appeared with a most huge Army: against whom the *French* men, for 3 hours made great resistance. But one being against ten, and the Army fainting for sicknesse and food, they were, at last, all (except a few saved in hope of great ransome) slain: The King, with two Brothers, was taken also: who, to the Sultan demanding, why he warred against him, answered, 'twas for Religion, and the defence of his God's name. This was fought *Apr. 5. 1250.* most of the *French* Nobility being slain.

The Sultan presently sent a like number of his souldiers, with *French* attire and Ensignes to *Damiata*: where the Duke of *Burgundy*, *French* Queen, and the Pop's Legate lay, but they were by them of the City discovered, and so kept out.

Melechfala (through compassion) yet minding to make his own of the Kings life, began with cheering speeches to talk of his deliverance, and of a good atonement, on condition of delivering *Damiata*; and paying for his ransome, and the other charges 800 pounds of Gold, that both their Prisoners should be freely set at liberty, and so a peace for 10 years. The Sultan would have sworn to renounce *Mahomet*, if he performed them not: requiring the King to swear a denial of his Christ to be God, if he failed; which the King detesting, he took his

his word, and published their league. But whilst they came together to *Damiata*, *Melechfala* (not fearing the mischief hanging over his head) was suddenly slain by 2 desperate *Mamalukes*; and one *Tarqueminus*, a Slave of the same order, was by the Army created Sultan in his stead, and made another league with the King much on the same conditions. Which Mitcreant, after *Lewis* had paid his ransom, went from *Damiata* to *Ptolemais*, but performed not half that he promised, scarce freeing 4000 of 12000 Captives, and killing all sick souldiers, which he ought to have relieved, not suffering any Christian to carry his goods out of *Egypt*. The King, at *Ptolemais*, (by the intreaty of the Master of the Templars, &c.) staid almost 4 years, repairing *Casarea* and *Joppa*, and fortifying many strong places. So sending his Brethren before, himself arrived in *France* the 6th year after his departure thence: Some write that 80000 Christians were lost in this expedition; the *French* Chronicles say that 6000 of 32000 returned into *France*. *Damiata* was (shortly after delivery) rased, by the Sultan, to the ground.

The *Egyptian* Sultans, having no great assurance in the effeminate *Egyptians*, had bought an infinite number of Slaves, especially of the *Circassians*, near *Colchis* and the *Euxine* Sea, transported out of those bare cold Countries by Merchants: out of which the Sultans culled those of likeliest Spirit and ability, delivering them to most skilful Teachers, who taught them to run, shoor, ride, handle all sorts of weapons, &c. who, so instructed, were inrolled in pay as his choise Horsemen, and called *Mamalukes*: In whose service finding great use, they daily erected new stored Nurseries: Whose Order now, wonderfull strong hereby, managed their greatest affairs, especially in wars; gaining by valour many fair victories, and defending their Coun ry. But proud of their preferment, traiterously slew *Melechfala*, their chief Fonnder, setting up the Slave *Tarqueminus*, of great Spirit & Valor.

The

The *Turk's* power in *Egypt*, with *Melechala*, the last of *Saladine's* Stock, took end. For the *Mamaluks* now commanded as Lords over the rest, not suffering them to use Horse or Armour, or sway the Common-wealth, but preferring their own swarming Slaves, the people, kept under with heavy impositions, dared not to meddle, but with Merchandise, Husbandry, &c. the greatest profit whereof still came to them: choosing a Sultan still from among themselves, none of his Children to succeed, least proud of their parentage, they should reckon them their Slaves: providing also, that though the *Mamaluks* sons might enjoy their Fathers lands, &c. after death, yet none should take on them the name of a *Mamaluks*, that the Government might still rest with the *Mamaluks*: Neither might any *Mahometan* or *Jew* be admitted into that Order, but onely Christians (become Slaves) instructed in that superstition, or that had abjured Christian Religion. Many of these poor Slaves, thus exalted, proved most renowned Princes, dreadfull to the greatest Monarchs. This servile Empire flourishing 267 years, was, by victorious *Selymus* (with *Syria* and *Palestine*) united to the *Turkish* Empire, being overthrown by him in 1517.

But leaving the *Turks* and *Mamaluks*, let us return into lesser *Asia*, and *Constantinople*. The *Greek* Empire all this while, flourished under *John Batazes*: the *Latines* power declining as fast, under *Baldwin II.* at *Constantinople*. The *Turks* had, in the mean time, more than enough to do to withstand the *Tartars*. *John Ducas* at length died, about 60 years old, happily reigning 33 years, by whom, the *Greek* Empire, not onely in *Asia*, but a little in *Europe* also, began to gather strength. This Emperour after long lamenting *Irene* his first Wives death, married *Ann*, the King of *Sicily's* Sister, among whose honourable Dames, sent to accompany her, was one *Marcesina*, a rare Paragon of Nature, with sugred words,

words, and eyes, as Nets, to entangle the amorous; the Emperour fed his eyes on this fair Object, till he became her Subject. seeming little to regard the young Empreſſe in reſpect of her, ſuffering her to be attired and honoured as the Empreſſe herſelf: She, thus triumphing, would go with moſt of the Court-Gallants, and ſome of the Guard, to viſit the Monastery and Temple, which noble *Blemmides* had of his own coſt lately built, where he with his Monks (as weary of the World) lived a ſolitary and contemplative life: (who, choſen afterward, for his upright life and learning, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, reſuſed it). *Marceſina* coming thither in great Pomp, to enter the Temple, had the doors ſhut againſt her, commanded ſo by *Blemmides*, to her great diſgrace. For he deemed it impiety for that wicked Woman, againſt whom he had ſpoke and written, to tread upon the ſacred pavement. She being enraged, and pricked forward by her followers, returning, grievouſly complained thereof to the Emperour, ſtirring him up, by all means, and his own diſgrace, to be revenged, her pick thanks not ſparing (as it were) to put Oyl to the fire: who, ſtruck with remorse, not with wrath, deeply ſighing, with tears in his eyes, ſaid: *Why provoke ye me to puniſh ſo devout and juſt a man? whereas if my ſelf had lived without Infamy, I had kept my Imperiall Majeſty unpolluted. But ſince I have cauſed my own and the Empire's diſgrace, I may thank my deſerts if I reap the harveſt of ſuch ill ſeed I have ſown.*

Theodorus, his ſon, about 33 years old, was ſaluted Emperour, in his ſtead, who, in the beginning, renewed his Father's League with *Jathathines* the Sultan. And with a puiſſant Army paſſed over into *Europe* to appeaſe the troubles raiſed in *Macedonia* and *Thracia*, by the King of *Bulgaria*, and *Michael Angelus* Deſpot of *Theſſaly*, who, in hope to joyn thoſe Countries to their own, began to ſpoyl them, by whoſe coming they were glad to ſue for peace. But being advertiſed from *Nice* that *Adi-*

Michael Paleologus his Governour there, was secretly fled to the *Turks*, he was not a little troubled. *Paleologus* gave out, that being brought by his enemies into disgrace, and the Emperour, so filled with cunning complaints, not easily in short time to be refelled, was the cause; and so willingly exiled himself, fearing his heavy displeasure, to save his life from their malice: who at *Icöbinum* found *Jathatines* making great preparation against the *Tartars*, who running still on, spoyled much of the *Turk's* Territories in lesser *Asia*, lying now at *Axara*. The Sultan now welcomed *Paleologus*, commending to his charge some Bands of *Greeks*, which he had retained; as also other *Latines*, under the conduct of *Boniface* a *Venetian*: to he set forward against the *Tartars*: who at first sight of strange Ensignes and Souldiers, were much dismayed: Yet they had with them a most bloody conflict, wherein that part standing against *Paleologus*, being worsted, were about to flee, but the Sultan's Kinsman, bearing him a grudge, revolting with his Regiment to the *Tartars*, the battle was quite altered, the *Tartars* fighting like *Lyons*; and the Victors were glad to flee, a great number of them being slain. *Paleologus* and the Generall were hardly chased, & glad to stand fighting often for their lives, with much adoe, after many daies, recovered a Castle of the Generalls. The *Tartars* hazarding hereby the *Turk's* Kingdome, foraged all his Countreies unrented, so that the discouraged Sultan fled to *Theodorus* for aid, who comforted him with such small aid as he thought good, sending them home with him, for his safety, under *Isaac* surnamed *Murzusle*: who gave him *Laodicea* in recompence, yet, ere long, it fell again into the *Turks* hands as not to be holden by the Christians. The Sultan, too weak to withstand the *Tartars*, made a league with them for paying them a yearly tribute. They are accounted, from this time, as their Tributaries and Vassals.

Not long after, *Paleologus* was called home by the Emperour's

perour's Letters, with his faith for security: who, before his return, was bound by Oath, to be loyal, never to seek after the Empire, or cause new suspect of matters before charged, but yield dutifull obedience to the Emperour, or his Successours. Whereupon he was, again, Great Constable, living afterwards in great honour with him. Who reigning 3 years died, leaving *John* his Son, but six years old, to succeed him, and commended him to *Arse-mus* the Patriarch, and *George Muzalo*, as trusty Tutors, together with the Empire. *Muzalo*, though of mean Parentage, was brought up in the Court, as the Emperour's play-fellow, still ready to say or do what might please him. And the elder they grew, they increased in mutual affection: and he, as in greatest favour, was promoted to the greatest honours, and married to the Emperour's nigh Kinswoman. An Oath of obedience unto the young Prince, and them, as Tutors, was exacted of all sorts whatsoever, both before and after the Emperour's death: for many Nobles murmured at *Muzalo's* sudden fortune, many thinking themselves to have better right thereto, as of nearer Kin to the Emperour, and fitter for such a charge than *Muzalo*, who, not honourably born, and having been *Theodore's* minister of wrath against some Nobles, was to be hated and contemned; and if he should now affect the Empire, he would spare no villany to effect his inordinate desire. *Muzalo's* wits being awakened with these dangers, he called all the Nobility into the Court, courteously offering to yield up both the Empires administration, and the tuition, to any one whom they thought fittest for such a charge, which all refused, saying, He was to be preferred, to whom the Lord of both had committed both: *Muzalo* stily requested the contrary, for fear, chiefly, of danger to ensue. But, would he or not, he must take the charge on him. Now were all sworn with greater solemnity (the third time) than before, wishing a shameful end to them and theirs, if they failed to perform

The
Sal
com
use
pre
und
wit
wh
am
pro
Sl
mi
nor
che
Ne
tha
ed
lig
mo
nar
wa
tec
15
inc
all
tim
sta
tha
cas
33
bu
En
de
wh
on

200

The History of the Turke.

their obedience, &c. Yet 9 daies were not fully past, but some of the chief Nobility conspired the unworthy death of *Muzalo*: which was on the Emperour's funeral day, in his Abbey at *Magnesia*; where, while the Hymns were singing, &c. the Souldiers, before instructed by the Conspirator, breaking into the Temple, with drawn swords, flew *Muzalo*, (at the Altar for refuge) with *Andronicus* and *Theodore* his Brethren, and divers others. The mourning Matrons thronging out, fled as fast as they could: but the Priests and Monks thinking to do the like were, by the Souldiers, forced into the Temple, and on the Pavement (slippery with blood) ended in fear these bloody Obsequies. *Arsenius*, the onely Tutor, was much troubled, for, though for learning and integrity not inferiour, yet, in state matters he was far to seek, and of no great reach, yet wishing all well, he consulted with the Nobility, what were best to be done for government of the Emperour and Empire, now *Muzalo* was dead, Which, not being grounded on wise fore-sight, was more dangerous to the young Emperour than the murdering swords. *Michael Paleologus*, was also called to the counsell, descended of the *Comnen*'s house, a man very courteous and liberall, winning all mens hearts thereby, especially the Commanders of the Army: of whose aspiring many Rumours had formerly passed; yea, the Patriarch (on speciall favour) committed to his trust the Keys of the common Treasury when mony was to be paid out upon great occasions of State, the readiest way to effect what he had long plotted; for he powred out the Masse of treasure amongst the Nobility and Martiall men, with others, and many of the Clergy also. The Patriarch was, by his favourites, (who had many meetings) solicited, though generally, to take order for the States good Government, which, as a ship without a Master was in danger to perish. *Paleologus* was then in every man's mouth, as onely fit to take the charge on him, till the Emperour came to Age.

Unto

Unto which the Patriarch gave consent; and so with a general contentment, made him a Governour and Tutor. This was the first step whereby he mounted to the Empire. Not many daies after, it was alleadged by his favourites in Counsell, It was not seemly for a Tutor, and Governour of State, who was to hear forreign Embassadours, to want the honour next to an Emperour; whereupon he was honoured with the title of Despot. Shortly after, he was by certain great favourites, near *Magnesia*, with great applause, saluted Emperour: *Arsenius* being much troubled therewith, fearing what would become of the young child. He thought it better by Oath to bind the Emperour and his makers not to seek his life, nor to go about to deprive him, than to excommunicate them, which was done. Within a moneth, the Patriarch perswaded, set the Imperial Crown on this Usurpers head; not as still to enjoy the Empire, but according to present necessity, till the child came of age, to whom he was then to resign. All being confirmed by oath, good news was brought him of a victory obtained by his brother *John*, against *Michael* Despot of *Ætolia* and *Epirus*; who hearing of the Emperour's death, his Father in Law, with troubles in *Asia*, being aided by 2 others, entred *Macedonia* and *Thracia*, burning and spoiling the Countrey, and thinking to take most to himself. The news he received when Crowned, the great Commanders shortly bringing the Prince of *Peloponesus* and *Achaia* prisoners; who gave to *Paleologus* for ransome, three of the best Cities of *Peloponesus*: wherein he put strong Garrisons, and gained at length most of *Peloponesus* from the *Latins*, shortly after purposing to besiege *Constantinople* with a great Army; but, as too difficult, he left that, and besieged the Castle of *Pera*, on the other side the haven, hoping (by winning that) to master the Town; but he was forced to retire with loss. So fort sying divers places thereabout, he charged the Garrisons with incursions, to cut the Citizens so short, that

they should not dare look our. The *Latins* hereby were soon fain to burn houses for fuel : which done, he returned to *Nice*.

Baldwin 2 of small courage and lesse power, now reigned in *Constantinople*; who for maintenance; sold the publick Ornaments of the City, and pawned his Son to the *Bruges* Marchants, left by them at *Venice* to be brought up.

Mango great Cham of *Tartary* (now) being stirred by *Aiton* the *Armenian* King, (through whom he received the Christian Religion) sent his brother *Haalon* with an exceeding Army against the *Turks* in *Syria*, and *Palestine*; who (also a Christian) in 6 months over-ran all *Persia*, with the adjoining Countries, except (as some say) *Samarchand* (afterward the seat of *Tamerlaine*) in the mountains, which besieged with 10000 horsemen, was continued 27 years; and at length, (as *Aiton* writes) yielded for want of cloaths to cover the Defendants: *Haalon* marching on (not missing the 10000) entering into *Affyria* besieging *Babylon*, whose Caliph as *Mahomet's* true successour, was above all honoured: they from him receiving their Laws interpretation. *Haalon* winning it, put all to the sword, enriching his Souldiers with its spoil, and the Caliph's treasure; commanding the Caliph to be set in the midst of the infinite treasure, saying in derision, Such a gainful guest should be fed with nought but things of best price &c. The covetous wretch thus kept certain daies, dyed for hunger. *Babylon* sacked and almost rated; the *Tartar* took *Rhoais* in *Mesopotamia*, where *Aiton* came to him with 12000 horse and 40000 foot: So entering *Syria* took *Aleppo*, which he sacked and razed in 1260. Then came *Malacnesar* Sultan of *Damasco*, *Syria*, and *Palestine*, humbling himself before him, in hope to save somewhat; but he was either carried far into exile, or (more probably) afterward cut in pieces under *Damasco*; to his Sons terror, after a double assault;

yet he took it (together with that Kingdom) and sacked it, overthrowing all the *Mahometan* Temples, as before he had done. But purposing to conquer *Palestine*, *Mango* died, upon which news he returned back, after almost 6 years expedition, in hope of his brothers Empire. At which time the Christians affairs might have been easily repaired, had the Western Princes put to their helps, as did the *Tartars*; but they busied with wars and fatal discord let slip that seldom or never so fair opportunity. *Haalon* left his Son *Abaga* with 20000 horsemen to aid the Christians if they should come; who, hearing of his Fathers troubles at home, left *Guirboca* with 10000 horsemen, to like purpose; who was with his *Tartars*, of a friend made a foe to the Christians: whose Souldiers fetching booty out of the *Tartars* Territory, refused to restore it, and evilly entreated those sent to demand it. *Guiborcus* his Nephew being slain in farther quarrels; who in revenge, took, sacked, and burnt down *Sidon*, and afterwards, doing the Christians all harm they could devise. This discord occasioned *Melech* the *Aegyptian* Sultan, with a great Army of *Mamalukes*, and others to enter *Syria*, and spoil about *Damasco*; with whom *Guiborcus* joyning battel with a number far inferiour, was slain with most of his *Tartars*: the rest, fleeing into *Armenia*. *Syria* and *Palestine*, fell hereby again to the *Aegyptian*, except few places which shortly also did. For *Bandacader* succeeding *Melech*, took *Antioch* from the Christians, with most of the other places, he burnt the City, and razed the Castle; and then did great harm in *Armenia* also.

The *Turks* Kingdom going to wrack in *Syria*, their affairs in lesser *Asia*, went not then much better; for *Jathatines* having lost *Iconium* to the *Tartars*, he fled to the Emperour *Paleologus*, in hope to be relieved for the kindness he before shewed him. fleeing from *Theodore*, he requested him, either with some force to aid him, or to

assign him some corner, where, with his wife children and followers, with much wealth he might rest. The Emperour encumbred with wars, thought not good to diminish his forces; and a place to inhabit in, seemed as dangerous: because he a great Prince, was not like to be content with a little; his dispersed Nobles hearing he was seated, being likely to resort to him also: yet was loath unkindly to cast him off, Therefore with fair words, he held him long in suspense. At length, in his absence, he was commanded with his train, about 1200, to get to *Aenus* of *Thracia* by the Sea coast; where as an honourable prisoner at large he lived, through watchful eies, not able to escape as he desired. *Paleologus* (after 2 years reign) sent *Alexius Strategopulus*, against the Despot of *Epirus*, to repress his treachery, with little above 800 *Bythinians*, and to take up what he needed in *Macedonia* and *Thracia*, commanding him to passe thorow the Suburbs of *Constantinople*, to terrifie the *Latines*; who passing over *Propontis*, encamped at *Regium* not far off; where, lighting upon poor labouring *Greeks*, dwelling in the City; he enquired of them the state thereof, &c. who told him, their strength was smal, & that most thereof was at the siege of *Daphnusia*, a Town by the *Euxian Sea*: and, as ill affected to the *Latins* government offered to shew him a means of entrance into the City, which was by an old Mine almost swarved up near the gate; this secret way into the City, not being known to any other: promising by night to let in (at this hole) 50 of his best Souldiers, &c. Few daies after, by night, at an hour appointed they received them, who aided by them and their friends, slew the watch, and brake open the gate; whereby *Alexius* entring, and putting his men in order, caused the City to be fired in 4 places, which terribly burning; was come almost to the Emperour's Pallace; who, awaked, and seeing the City all on fire, perceiving it to no purpose to make head with his few *Latines*, fled with the Patriarch and some others,

into

into *Euboea* by Sea, and thence to *Venice*: afterwards to *Lewis of France*, hoping to be relieved by them. The chief *Latins* fled after. *Constantinople* thus fell into the *Greeks* hands in 1261, being possessed by the *Latins* about 58 years.

This joyful news was soon carried to *Palaeologus*, who at first believed it not, it being by so weak a power surprized. But afterwards, caused Hymns and Psalms to be sung in every Temple, with all other signs of joy and triumph: So being wholly busied in preparing for *Constantinople*, he, with his wife and *Andronicus* his Son, 2 years old, entered the City on foot; and after prayers and thanks, went to the Pallace near the Tilt-yard: for the other, during the *Latins* reign, had lie'n ruinous and defaced. And shortly after, caused *Alexius Caesar* (the Cities recoverer) in triumph, robes, and Crown of gold on his head, with great pomp to be carried thorough the City; and that his name for one year should be joyned to the Emperours, in solemn prayers and hymns: causing also his lively Image, to be set on a Marble pillar, before the Apostles Temple, in perpetual remembrance of him; which overthrown by an earthquake, was restored by his Son. This great City, sometime the Worlds beauty, by the strange mutations, was wonderfully defaced &c. for its beauty, when the *Latins* took it, was most defaced by fire; who while they had it, ceased not to destroy some part or other, as if they had known they should not long keep it: neither did this last fire a little deform it; wherefore his chief care now was, to cleanse the City, and first beginning to repair the Temples, then filling empty houses with Inhabitants. Though the chief *Latins* were fled, yet most Tradesmen were *Venetians* and *Pisans*; to whom to joyn the *Genovais* and to fill the City, he thought not altogether safe; but assigned them *Galatha* now *Pera*, on tother side, to inhabit; with priviledges and a Consul of their own over every Company; flourishing *Constantinople*

ple what he could with natural *Greeks*. But though all things went as *Paleologus* could wish; yet fearing (such is the torment of usurping tyrants) lest the smouldred anger of the Empires right heirs should break into open force, and perhaps work his confusion: thought best to dispose so of *Theodor's* children, that he might not stand in doubt. Besides *Mary* and *Theodora*, before married to the Despot of *Epirus*, and the Prince of *Bulgaria*, other two younger were in his custody, *Theodora* and *Irene*; whom he married to 2 *Latins*, one of *Peloponessus*, the other to one of *Genoa*, men of no great birth or power; *John* the heir only remained but 10 years old, whom *Paleologus* (at first) sent into *Magnesia* to be kept from Court, lest in his right, new stirrs dangerous to his estate, should begin. The which the Patriarch took so ill, that he forsook all, to spend his days in a little Monastery of the *Piscasins*, from whence *Paleologus* drew him almost against his will, making him Patriarch of *Constantinople*; The Usurper unmindful of his former faith given, resolving to establish him and his posterity in the sovereignty, caused the young Princes eyes to be put out; for which barbarous cruelty, *Theodora* his sister ceated not to stir up the Prince of *Bulgaria* her husband in revenge. *Jathathines* also, weary of exile, entreated him to war on the Emperour, promising him a great sum, if he might recover his liberty; who with his own power, and above 20000 *Tartars*, sooner than could be thought, over-ran all *Thracia*, leaving neither man nor beast as he went: hoping also to surprize the Emperour, returning from *Thessaly*; but that he, in a Galley of the *Latins*, put in by the Sea side to water, arrived safely in the imperial City; wherefore the *Bulgarian* marching to *Anum*, forthwith (being terrified) they delivered the Sultan unto him. In his return, they drave before them such numbers of men and catrel, that for a space, either Countreyman or beast was not to be seen in the open Countrey. *Jathathines*, carried over

over *Ister*, and set at liberty, soon died ; whom *Meleck* his Son succeeded not, but two other *Mescott* and *Keicubades* of the *Selzuccian* Family, as were all the *Turks* Sultans ; betwixt whom, *Cazan* the great *Tartar* for a yearly tribute, divided the *Turks* Kingdom : unto *Mescott* the Cities of *Amida* in *Galatia*, *Melasia* in lesser *Armenia*, &c. unto *Keicubades*, *Iconium*, with all Countries of lesser *Asia* along the Sea coast. So that the *Turks* Kingdom, long flourishing in *Persia*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and *Egypt*, were overthrown by the *Mamaluks* and *Tartars*, and now brought under in lesser *Asia* also ; the 2 weak Princes reigning but at the devotion of the *Tartar*. In which confusion, divers of power, shared something of the declining Kingdom ; but many of the basest people (only with bows and arrows) with daily incursions from the Mountains straits, much hurt the adjoining Christian Countries, still gaining upon the *Greeks* what they lost to the *Tartars* ; for the frontier Garrisons, being for want of pay disbanded, and the Castles abandoned, was, at length a great ruin to the *Greeks* in lesser *Asia*. At length a great power of them meeting in *Paphlagonia* to invade the Christians, *Paleologus* sent a strong Army, to stay their further coming ; which, by unskilfulness of Captains, was by the *Turks* (who of purpose retiring, had drawn the *Greeks* into danger of ambush) utterly defeated, few or none of that multitude escaping. After which victory, the *Turks* over-ran all the Countrey to the River *Sanger*, on whose banks, *Paleologus* fortified divers places to keep them out of *Bithynia*. Yet they soon subdued all from *Pontus* and *Galatia* to the *Lycian* and *Carian* Sea, to the River *Eurimedon*, dividing them into *Toparchies*, little acknowledging *Mescot* or *Keicubades*.

Many conflicts in the meantime, passed between the *Mamaluks* and *Tartars*, for the Sovereignty of *Syria*. The poor Christians, in doubt of both, with the *Armenians*, infested by the *Mamaluks*, sent divers to the Pope and

and Western Princes for help, whose prayers moved *Lewis* of France and *Henry 3* of England to promise them aid. *Lewis* took on him the Crois, causing *Philip* that succeeded him, *Peter*, and *John* surnamed *Tristan*, (for his Mothers heaviness for her husband in her delivery) his 3 Sons, and most Nobles to do the like; to whom the King of *Navarr* and 2 others joyned. He set forward from *Marcelles* March 1. 1270, (staying a while at *Sardinia*, through force of weather, he arrived at *Carthage* (not the ancient City, but another built after, in her ruins, or not far from them) surprizing certain ships in the Haven; but assaulking the Town, he was notably repulsed. On a day, the Defendants making a fierce sally on the French, retired by degrees, to draw their enemies on. The Constable coming and charging them behind, and the retirers now standing, they were hardly beset, who made there a great fight, not without extream peril: which they in the City beholding, hideously cried, astonying their friends and enemies. But the French approaching a Bulwark on the Sea side, took it without resistance; at which they without began to flee, and them of the Town (for their lives) yielded it to the King. *Carthage* won, he besieged *Tuneis*, being by the way encountred by the Moors King, who losing 10000 men fled: resolving to keep within his Citiss walls if happily he might weaken his enemies by protracting time. *Lewis* resolved not to stir thence, the City not seeming to hold out for want, considering the peoples multitude; yet it held out 6 months straightly hemmed in every way; after which, Embassadors were sent to treat for Peace. But, the whiles a furious Plague cut down the French by heaps, *John Tristan* his youngest Son dying Aug. 25. 1270. The King shortly dyed of the Bloudy flux; yet his brother *Charles* arriving with fresh Souldiers, somewhat lightned the French, and daunned the Moors. *Edward*, *Henry* of England's Son, came to *Tuneis* in 10 daies, with a brave Company.

from

from *Aquesmert*, being joyfully received of the other Princes: who a little before concluded a peace with the *Moors* King, upon his paying a yearly tribute of 40000 Crowns to the King of *Sicily*, and suffering Christian Religion to be freely preached in his Dominions, and the converts to be baptized, &c. *Edward* what he might, dissuaded them from it, saying, They were enemies to the Crosse of Christ, &c. But the Peace concluded they said, they might not break: and so hoysing sail, they returned toward *Sicily*, with purpose next Spring to go into *Syria*. But being come nigh the Isle *Drepanum*, most of the great ones went on Land in boats; for the ships being most of great burthen, they could not put in to the harbour. As they lay at Anchor, some were eaten up, some perished by falling foul of each other, others beaten to pieces by a violent tempest: above a 120 sail perished, with all the people, &c. only Prince *Edward's* 13 ships escaped free without any losse. The Plague followed them at Land; *Theobald* of *Navarre* and his Wife dying, *Lewis* his daughter, the *French* Queen, with a number of others: so that *Philip* the *French* King, discouraged, returned into *France*, as did the rest into their own Countrey. Onely *Edward* at Spring set forward to *Ptolemais* from *Sicily*; where, after a moneths rest, marching with 6 or 7000 into the Land, took *Nazareth*, putting all to the sword, and returned; killing afterward and putting to flight, his enemies following and hoping for advantage. And about Mid-summer, killed above 1000 *Saracens*, & dispersed the rest, making head at *Cackhow*, about 40 miles off. Aided by the *Cyprians*, he (with like successe) made a 3d expedition: that for his fame, they not a little dreaded him. But the Admiral of *Joppa*, one of the *Mahometan Assassins*, accounting it meritorious to kill any great enemy of their Religion, feigning a desire to become Christian, had sundry times secret intelligence with the Prince: Who being searched, had access to him (lying, through heat,

beat, on his bed bare-headed) and pulling out pleasing letters from his Lord, which he read; but, the company voided, as he farther questioned with him, he suddenly pluckt out an envenomed knife secretly hidden, to strike him into the belly; the Prince lifting up his arm was grievously wounded therein; but as he went to double the stroak, he felled him to the ground with his foot, and wrestling the knife out of his hand, and hurt in the forehead, he presently slew the murderer. The servants running in, one beat out the dead man's brains with a stool, to the Princes displeasure. The wound in his arm began to mortifie after certain daies dressing, that the Surgions, began to look heavily; yet cutting out all the dead and poysoned flesh, they perfectly cured him in 15 daies after. The Sultan sent, calling his Prophet to witnes, it was not done by his consent; whose Embassadours were not suffered to come nigh him. So, no expected aid coming in 18 moneths, he returned homeward, travelling from *Apulia* to *Rome*, and by *France* arrived in *England*; where, *Henry* a little before dead, he was Crowned in 1272, *Gregory* 10th, knowing the Christians hard state in *Syria* (being lately there with *Edward*) ratified the election of *Rodulph* of *Hapspurge*, to the Empire, upon promise of giving them relief: offering the Emperour also 200000 crowns with all tenths for 6 years, many blessings being by the Preachers, in his name, promised to all taking on them the holy war. Whereupon he, and shortly the Duke of *Lorrain*, and others took on them the Crosse; yet busied in other wars, and delaying so long and dangerous a journey, the threatening Pope died, and nothing was done. At length the Emperour, at some good leisure, sent *Henry* Prince of *Meckelburg*, with a strong power, to perform what he had promised; who from *Ptolemais*, destroyed all with fire and sword about *Damasco*, carrying away rich booties, till circumvented by the *Mamalukes*, he at *Caire* remained 26 years in prison, till

till a runagate *German* being Sultan, demanded of him, If
 it would not do him good to celebrate the Nativity of
 his Christ in *Germany*, the time being at hand? I know,
 said he, thou respectest that more than liberty. Truth, said
Henry, for liberty would avail me nothing, if Christ by
 his Incarnation had not taken away our Captivity: there-
 fore I wish I could perswade thee how much all owe to
 the remembrance thereof. God forbid (said the Sultan);
 for when I was thy Fathers chief Engineer at *Knesesenick*,
 I was of the Christian perswasion; but leaving that Er-
 rour, I have also changed my fortune: but wouldst thou
 gladly be free, and return home to thy friends? Nature
 answereth it, said he, though fortune (which yet dependeth
 of thy pleasure) gainsayeth, I must take thy denial in good
 part, assuring my self, that my Wife and beloved Sons
 have long since ended their mourning. Thou art deceived
 said the Sultan, &c. I owe much to thy Father's re-
 membrance, and therefore give thee thy liberty; furni-
 shing him with necessaries. He departed with one *Martin*
 his servant, with him all his Captivity, and came
 to *Ptolemais*, and in the way to *Cyprus* was as a fugitive
 taken by sea, and brought to the Sultan: who set him again
 at liberty, and transporting him to *Cyprus*, where, as some
 say, furnished with all things fit, he came to *Marseilles*,
 travelling by Land into his Countrey; and at last, being
 known by his own Children and friends, was joyfully
 received as their Father, and as the Prince of his Subjects;
 shortly after dying. Thus it appeareth, what notable ex-
 peditions the Princes of the West, undertook again
 Christ's enemies, and for relief of the distressed Christi-
 ans in *Syria* and *Palestine*. Divers of them had glorious
 success, some answered not with like events, &c. Yet even
 in more zealous times, the Christian Princes (not fee-
 ling those harms so far off, and more regarding their
 hereditary quarrels, could not be moved to reach their
 helping hands unto their brethren crying out for aid.

The

The *Germans* were jarring about their Emperor's choice, The *French* agreed not with the *English*, nor the Low-countreymen : nor the *English* with the *Scots* : the *Arragonians* at odds with the *French*; and in *Italy*, many deadly factions. Of which *Melechares Egyptian* Sultan understanding, purposed to root out all the Christians in *Syria* and *Palestine*, and joyn them to his own Kingdom; but sudden death hindred his great designs. *Alphix* succeeding him, entering *Syria*, besieged *Tripolis*, and undermining it, put all Christians to the sword, but those that by speedy flight escaped, and raced it to the ground; this was *April 9. 1289*. Then he took and garrisoned the Castle of *Nelesine*, to hinder them from building it again. Likewise sacking and razing *Sidon* and *Berytus*; after three months siege *Tyre* was yielded to him, on condition of departing with bag and baggage. He took (as without resistance) all strong holds in *Syria* and *Palestine*, except *Ptolemais* the Christians Sanctuary, defended by the Knights and Templers : with whom he voluntarily made a Peace for 5 years.

The Christians, as it were, faintly breathing by the late Peace, the 2 Grand Masters, passed as Embassadors to Pope *Nicholas* for his fatherly aid : who solicited the Princes, especially *Rodolph* the Emperour for their relief; who busied with affairs and troubles, gave good words, but no help. Some getting mony of their Subjects under that colour, employed it to other uses : the Pope entertained 1500 of his own charge, to whom many volunteers joyned, who from *Brundisium* with 2 Masters, arrived at *Ptolemais* : in which were 50000 able men, and about 40000 weaker; among whom, divers murders, felonies, &c. were committed, unregarded saving by the injured, For all the chief Commanders were then at variance, every one laying claim to the vain title of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*. Neither strove they lesse for the Government of the City. The Popes Legat, the Patriarch, Templers

plers and Hospitallers, French and English King, by their Messengers: them of *Pisa*, the *Venetians*, the *Germans*, and *Florentines*, pretended a right to, and endeavoured for, the Government of the City. But the greatest part, were inclined to the *Armenians* and *Tartars*, as most like to stand them in stead: most of these deciding controversies in their own Laws and Courts; where by the offenders removing their Suits as best served their turns, every one might almost do what he list. Thus were murders and many outrages, &c. done, to the hastening God's wrath, and grief of all good men. The Souldiers of late sent thither, were enforced (for want of promised pay) to take spoil in the Saltans frontiers contrary to the League: the Sultan desiring restitution and the offenders to be delivered to him. But in a dying Commonweale the Embassadours were, not courteously heard; Wherewith the the Sultan provoked, sent *Araphus* with 150000 men to besiege the City: who by a Mine had soon overthrown a piece of the Wall; but was glad to retire from the breach. *Alphix* now died at *Damasco*, the *Mamalukes* choosing *Araphus* for their Sultan, who was so far from rayling his siege, that he more straitly beset it than in the 3 moneths before. *Peter*, Master of the Templers, was chosen Governour of the City, of great valour and experience: unto whom and the Nobles, the Sultan offered great things so they would now yield the City: which offer he rejected, telling him, He learned not of his Ancestors to sell a City to Infidels, bought with so much Christian blood, &c. Wherewith he enraged, next day so furiously assaulted it, as if he would have carried it; yet having lost a number of men in assault, and a sally, he was forced to retire into his trenches again. The Governour, among other Christians lost, was wounded with a poysoned dart, dying 3 days after, with whom the defendants courage fainted also. Their weak and aged, were sent away to *Cyprus* at first of the siege; but now many Caprains, &c. discouraged, con-

weighed themselves away, a great number of whom, were upon *Cyprus* coast (with the Patriarch) drowned. 12000 remained for defence of the City: who (some report) fled after, leaving it to the enemy: others, that they valiantly defended it, till, most being slain or wounded, the rest being driven to the Market-place, defended themselves a while, and fleeing to the ships were all cut off, or drowned. But however, the Sultan giving the spoil to his Souldiers, burned it to the ground, and digging up all foundations, left no sign of any City: but purging it of rubbidge, made it fit to sow Corn in, which he did to other Towns by the Sea coast, that they should give the Christians no more footing there. Thus was their name utterly rooted out of *Syria* and *Palestine* in 1291, about 192 years after the winning of *Jerusalem*. Which losse as tending to a general disgrace, not a little moved the greatest Christian Princes; yet, troubled with their affairs at home, and neighbour Princes, none stirred for redress. Only *Cassanes* the great *Tartar*, at the request of the *Armenian* Kings daughter, his Wife, a Christian, and his Father in Law took it in hand: and with 200000 fighting men, the *Armenians* and *Georgians*, overthrew *Melcenazar* the *Egyptian* Lievtenant, not far from *Hama* in *Syria*, 40000 *Egyptians* being reported to be slain, sending *Molais* to secure him, who chased him over the desert sands into *Egypt*. Then he took *Hama*, dividing the Sultans treasures, and the spoil among his Souldiers, reserving but a Sword and a Casket of secret Letters to himself. He took most Cities in *Syria*, with *Jerusalem*, repairing many places, giving it to the Christian *Armenians*, &c. repairing thither to inhabit; and returning, *Damasco* was delivered to him. But purposing to destroy *Egypt*s Kingdom, he was certified of troubles in *Persia* and other parts; wherefore he returned with most of his Army thither, leaving *Capcacus* Governour of *Damasco*, (who had revolted to him from the Sultan) and *Molais* of *Jerusalem*; commanding them to re-edifie *Tyre*, and to

send to the Christian Princes, to joyn with them for holding those Countries. Tyre was repaired and garrisoned; but the Embassadors coming to proud Pope Boniface 8th; could obtain nought of him. For he then by excommunication, and discharging the Subjects loyalty to Philip of France, had given his Kingdom to Albert Duke of Austria, declaring him Emperor, whereof great troubles arose. And being also of the Guelphes faction, was careful to extinguish the Guebellines, especially the Family of the Columnii, some of whom he had slain, deprived, imprisoned, and exiled: hereby not at leisure to further the Christians good; but being suddenly taken prisoner at his Fathers house in Anagnia, by Sara Columnius, sent by the French King, and Longarett a French Knight; he was brought into St. Angelo Castle in Rome, and in 35 daies died, renting himself (some report) with his teeth, and devouring his fingers for madness. Cassanes was of a very short stature, and hard favour; but the valour and vertue of his mind, recompenced the want of his feature. After whose departure, Capcacus, considering no aid was to be expected from the Christian Princes, revolted a new from the Tartar, drawing Damasco and most of Syria after him: Molais was about to go against him; but Capcacus having compacted with the Egyptian Sultan also; as too weak, he retired with his Tartars into Mesopotamia, expecting supplies from Cassanes and the King of Armenia. The Sultan the mean while, took Jerusalem forsaken of the Inhabitants, sparing only Christs Sepulchre at the suit of the religious. Then he won all lesse Towns, and rased all Castles, and forts of the Hospitallers and Templers; who, of themselves, held out almost a year, most being slain, the rest abjuring Syria (for ever) by Oath, had leave to depart with bag and baggage; who for 300 years had worthily defended the Christians and their Religion against the Infidels, and now for ever driven out about 1300. Wherefore leaving Syria and the

holy Land, though 'twere likely enough to be recovered again, had not *Cassanes* died, and the *Tartars* domestick troubles letted, We will return to the *Turks* troubles in lesser *Asia*, not thinking it good to break off abruptly; but to make the reader partaker of its heaviness. *Mescot* and *Ceicubades*, kept in awe by the *Tartar*, died as they lived, almost buried in obscurity. *Mescot* died without issue; but *Ceicubades* left his Son *Aladine* 2d, who united the divided Kingdom, paying also tribute to the *Tartar*. *Aladine* did not much, yet the *Tartars* power began in his time to decline: he was of a quiet spirit, and a great friend to *Othoman*. But he dying without issue, *Sahib* his chief Counsellor, aspired to the Kingdom: which he could neither long hold, or deliver to his posterity; for many of the Nobility, envying at his honour, laid hold, some on one Country, some on another, erecting greater or lesser Satrapies, and absolutely commanding over so much as by strong hand they could hold; Wherein they shared so well for themselves, that *Sahib* was shortly thrust out of all; and the *Turks* Kingdom in lesser *Asia*, become an Anarchy. The greatest sharer herein, was *Caraman Alusirius*, who took to himself *Iconium* the Regal Seat, with all *Cilicia*, &c. and *Antioch* upon *Meander*. All which was afterward of him called *Caramania*: whose successors strove long with the *Othoman* Sultans for sovereignty, till by the greatness of the *Othoman* Empire, theirs, with all the rest, were swallowed up. Next to him was *Saruchan* or *Sarchan*, of whom *Joma Maritima* is yet called *Saruchania*. The most part of *Lydia*, &c. fell to *Calamus* and his Son *Carasius*, called of him, *Carasia*. *Aidin*, possessed most of ancient *Misia*, &c. of him called *Aidinia*. Some part of *Pontus*, with diverse Cities near the *Euxine*, and *Paphlagonia*, fell to the Sons of *Omer*, or *Amur*; but is commonly called *Bolli* of a City there so named: as was *Mendesia*, so called from the City *Mendos* or *Myndus*. To prosecute all Toparchies
in

n lesser *Asia* were tedious. It sufficeth for shewing the *Turks* Anarchy, and their Kingdoms ruin there, to remember these. All those that shared the *Aladinian* Kingdom, were of the better sort of *Turks*; who under the *Selzuccian* and *Aladinian* Sultans driven out of *Persia*, had here seated themselves; amongst whom, most Writers reckon *Othoman* for one; but he held no more of *Aladin's* Kingdom than one poor Lordship, called *Suguta* in *Bythinia*, (before given to his Father for his good service) with other small holds, as himself gained from his weak Christian neighbours; For he was not of the *Selzuccian* family, as were the rest, but of another Tribe; and therefore they envied the sudden rising of this *Oguzian Turk*, being as it were a meer stranger to them: whose fortune for all that they seemed to fear, as dangerous (in time); wherein they were not deceived. But more being to be said of him hereafter, we leave him with the rest unto their fortunes, So concluding this part of our general History.

The LIVES of the *Othoman*

KINGS and EMPEROURS; faithfully gathered out of the best Histories, both Ancient and Modern: and digested into one continue History,

The Rising of the Great and Mighty Empire of the Turks, under Othoman first Founder thereof: With his Life and doings.

THe foundation of this so great a Kingdom, and now an Empire, was first laid by valiant *Othoman* or *Osman*, not descended of the *Selzuccian* Family; but of the *Oguzian* Tribe, in whose Line it hath for 303 years wonderfully flourished; and so yet at this day under *Mahomet* 3. But seeing he, and the *Othoman* Kings and Emperours, took their beginning from this warlike *Othoman*, with whose life and doings we purpose to begin this part of our History; it shall not be amisse a little farther to fetch his race and descent also.

When the *Turks* Kingdom flourished in *Persia* in the *Selzuccian* Princes, there was another small one at the City *Marchan*, over which reigned one *Solyman*, at the same time that the *Tartars* under old *Zingis* bare down all before them; and overthrowing the *Turks* Kingdom at *Balch* in *Persia*, drave them with their King *Cursumes* out of their Countrey, they reigning 172 years from *Tangrolipix*.

Solyman was of the *Oguzian* Tribe, a family famous also among the *Turks*, who seeing *Cursumes* beaten out, and

and *Babylons Caliph* overthrown, thought good by speedy flight with such as would follow him, to provide for his safety: and in hope of like fortune with *Aladin Caicosroe* of the *Selzuccian* Family, (who by force had honourably seated himself in *Romania Asiatica*) and accounting all well gotten from the Christians, took his way after him; and coming to the City *Artezorum* feared himself with many followers thereabouts, who (as the *Tartar Nomades*) still removed up and down their tents and carts, feeding their cattle; as do the *Turcoman* Nation in many parts of *Asia* at this day: being not only called *Nomades*, that is, 'Heards-men (as the *Janizaries* will often call the greatest *Turks* in contempt) but *Hamaxophetie* and *Hamaxobii*, that is, people carried or living in Carts. *Solyman* staying a while there, removed to *Amasia*, where, by spoiling, encountering the Christians in field, and seizing on their Towns, he had subdued a large Territory: at length having lost a great number, and wearied the rest; fearing also with the small power left, he could not keep that already gotten, he thought best to seek better Fortune elsewhere. It was now lively reported, the *Tartars* fury was well abated in *Persia*: wherefore *Solyman* resolved to visit his native Country. So passing thorow *Syria* he seized on *Ziabercala* Castle; there staying for refreshment. Afterwards setting forward, he came to the River *Euphrates*, but finding no meanes to get over, he stood still as dismayed. *Solyman* in this perplexity; oft taking the River to find passage, adventuring too far was with the streams force carried away, and (with his horse) drowned. Whose body at length found, was buried by his people near *Ziaber* Castle. Some of whom, seated themselves thereabouts. The rest went some to the Desarts of *Arabia* and *Syria*, called the *Damascene Turcomans*: others returned into *Romania*, of whom are the *Turcomans* of *Iconium* and *Anatolia*: who yet wander up and down, in manner of their

their Ancestors. *Solyman* left 4 sons, *Sentur*, *Teken*, *Iundogdis*, *Ertogrul*, (the Father of *Othoman*) and *Dunder*. *Ertogrul* and *Dunder*, marching along *Euphrates*, came to *Pasin Onasi* where, with 400 families, they staid with tents and carts. *Sentur* and *Iundogdis* returned (passing the River) into *Persia*; where we leave them. *Ertogrul*, &c. had divers conflicts with the people thereabouts, till he thought best to return into *Romania*. So he came from *Ancyra*, and the black mountaines, to the plain Sultan *Ungi*, about 75 miles Eastward from *Nice*, where he had many skirmishes with the Christians.

Now *Aladin* the Elder (of whom before) had subdued divers great Countries in lesser *Asia*, and was named by the *Turks* *Ulu Padischach*, that is, their great King or Emperour. *Ertogrul* having 3 sons, *Iundus*, *Sarugatin*, and *Othoman*, sent *Sarugatin* unto him, to grant his poor exiled Country-men some small corner for them, their Families, and Cattle, to rest in. The Sultan (not unmindful of his own distresse) courteously used the Messenger. And it fortun'd, that this Sultan (troubled in lesser *Asia* by the *Tartars*) had Sharp conflicts with them; in one whereof, he was in danger to lose the day: but *Ertogrul* coming unlook'd for with 400 men on the *Tartars* backs, so forcibly charged them, and the Sultans men fighting now with greater courage, they fled after, which, The Sultan honourably welcomed *Ertogrul*, and gave him and his *Turks* a Village called *Sugarta* in greater *Phrygia*, in which they might live in Winter, and feed their cattle on the mountaines, *Tmolus* and *Ormenius* in Summer; he also committed to his protection his Kingdomes Frontiers where he dwelt, by whose care and prowess the before infested Country was well secured.

Ertogrul (become a petty Lord of a Country Village) thus living certain years; it fortun'd that the Christians of *Carachisar*

Carachisar Castle fell out with him, evilly intreating him and his people, of which their ingratitude and wrongs, he so complained to the Sultan that he in person with a great Army besieged the Castle. But the *Tartars* entering and spoiling *Caria*, and taking *Heraclea*, he rose with his Army, yet leaving sufficiency for the siege under *Ertogrul Beg*. The Sultan overthrew the *Tartars* at *Baga*, whilst *Ertogrul* took the Castle, sending the 5th of the spoile for a present to the Sultan, with the Captaine of the Castle: who was again restored to his Castle paying a yearly tribute; but the Sultan, after 2 years, dying, he revolted.

Aladine dying at *Iconium*, *Azatinus* his eldest Son succeeded, after him *Iathatines* his younger; who slain by *Lascaris*, *Iathatines*, *Azatines* son, succeeded, who was expelled and subdued by the *Tartars*; after which the *Selzuccian* Family scarce retained the shadow of their former Majesty. In which confusion *Ertogrul* kept close in *Suguta*, keeping peace on every side, sweetly passing over the troublesome times of *Mescot* and *Ceicubades*, till the 2d *Aladin* the last heir of the *Iconian* Kingdom, and contenting himself with a little, bare himself kindly towards all: who with his 3 Sons, were greatly beloved of their Neighbours, and favoured by *Aladin* then Sultan, his sons visiting him often with one or another. In *Othoman* was greater courage and spirit to be seen than in the other two brethren, and was especially of the youthful and warlike sort most regarded, who when he hawked or hunted, &c. resorted unto him, and called by them *Osman* the Warlike.

Aladin had in this frontier County, divers governours of his strong holds: unto whom *Othoman* for friendship sake resorted, especially, to the Captaine of *Mungi* to him very welcome. On a time, as *Othoman* was going to *Eskichisar* Castle to make merry; at *Itburne* he saw a fair Maiden called *Malhatun*, to whom he sent a secret friend

to intreat of marriage, who answered, there was great inequality of birth betwixt her and *Othoman*, &c. but one cause of this answer was, because some had put in her head, that *Othoman* meant under that colour to obtain a few daies pleasure with her, and after ward to cast her off: which was far from his thoughts. And going again to *Eskichisar*, chanced to fall in speech of his love, commending her beauty, &c. and not dissembling the repulse received at her hands; which the governour hearing, said, she was by divine providence appointed for him only. But secretly inflamed, he began to grow amorous of her himself, whom he had not seen. *Othoman* by conjectures and tokens perceiving the same, who yet dissembling the matter, secretly sent a trusty servant to some of the Maidens friends, to send her farther off, least she were taken from them, by a great man more amorous of her person, than respectful of her honour: by and by be- taking himself to the Captaine of *Mungi*, his dear friend. But whilst he there stayed passing the time in disports, the governour of *Eskichisar*, sent one to see *Malbatun*, and how things went; who certifying his master, that by *Othomans* advertisement she was conveyed afar off, being exceedingly grieved and fretted: he sent to the Captaine of *Mungi*, to command him forthwith to deliver *Othoman* unto him. But he could not be perswaded so to do: Wherefore the Governour came with the greatest power he could to the Castle, requiring him. After much consultation, it was resolved by the Capraine and Souldiers, that he should be defended, who could not without their great infamy be delivered: But *Othoman* terrified with the diversity of opinions at the first; deeply conceired by a sudden sally, to make way thorow them. And with *Iundus* and his few followers, brake thorow by plain force, notably repul- sing his pursuers towards *Suguta*. But being come into his Fathers Territory, such as loved him well, presently came

came to his rescue, slaying, and putting to flight, the Governours Souldiers. Among those taken, was *Michael Cossi*, a Christian Captain of a little Castle, called *Hirmencaia*: whom *Othoman* pardoned. Who ever after took part with him, and did him great service: whose posterity, even till this Age, is, next to the *Othoman* Family, most honourable among the *Turks*.

Ertogrul shortly died, in 1289, living 93 years, and governing the *Oguzian* Family 52: whose body was honourably buried at *Suguta*. After his death they doubted whom to make choice of for their Governour, yet thinking it better to chose *Dunder*, *Othoman's* Uncle, for his gravity and experience, than *Othoman*, who for gifts of body and mind was to be preferred before his Brethren, for his young Age suspected. But *Dunder* foreseeing what danger the *Oguzian* State stood in, through the hatred of the *Greeks*; and not surely backt by the *Iconium* Sultan's growing weaker and weaker, said, those inconveniences required the help of a wise, vigilant, and valiant man, such as they knew *Othoman* was. Thus, he in private declared his mind: and, at the generall assembly, (by his example to encourage others) saluted him their great Lord, promising him all loyalty; whereunto ensued the great applause of the people, as to a Governor sent them by God. Thus *Othoman* was great Governour of the *Oguzian Turks*, and named *Osman Beg*, or, *Lord Osman*. Yet this honour was included in a small, plain, and homely circuit: Amongst which rude Herdsmen, he (not far exceeding the rest in Civility) commanded much like *Romulus*, of whom the *Turks* report many things, as the *Romans* do of him.

Othoman fell first at odds with *Hagio Nicholas*, Captain of *Einegiol* Castle, for molesting these *Oguzians* in passing with their Cartell by his Castle. Wherefore he requested the Captain of *Belizuga* Castle, that his people might take refuge in his Castle with their goods and Cartell

tell upon occasion: who, with this proviso, That none should come in but the women onely, easily granted it; which courtesy *Othoman* refused not. The women usually presented the Captain with one Countrey present or other, which afterwards was the losse of the Castle. Yet *Othoman* purposing to be revenged on the other Captain, chose 70 most able men, secretly to passe *Ormenius*, and (if possible) to surprize or fire *Eigeniol* Castle. The wary Captain laid a strong ambush upon the mountain to cut them off: *Othoman*, no lesse wary, with an augmented number, marched to the place where they lay; where many were on both sides slain, *Hozza*, *Othoman's* Nephew, being one. Yet *Othoman*, having the victory, his people fed their Cattell in summer in more safety, quietly passing to and fro. *Othoman* shortly after surprized (by night) the Castle *Chalce*, putting all the Christians to the sword. The Christians adjoyning (much grieved) complained to the Captain of *Carachizar*, that these *Turks*, who were of pity received into that Countrey, began now to lay hands on the Christians possessions, which if suffered, they would in short time drive both them and all the rest out of their native Countries, &c. The Captain being mooved, speedily sent a strong company, under his Brother *Calanus*, to joyn with the Christian forces at *Einegiol*. Whereof *Othoman* understanding, marched to *Opficium* in *Phrygia*, where was fought a sharp battel, *Sarugatin* his Brother, with many Souldiers, being lost. *Calanus* was also slain, whose intrails *Othoman* pulled out, naming his burying place, *Mesari Repec*, that is, *The Dog-Grave*. His Brother he honourably buried at *Suguta*. *Aladin* was very sorry for *Othoman's* losse, & gave him the City *Paleapolis*, with the Territories belonging, with leave to besiege *Carachizar*, sending him Souldiers and Munition: who streightly besieging it, won it, and slew all the Christians, cruelly executing the Captain; giving his souldiers the spoyl, except the 5th part to the Sultan,

tan. (This was in 1290.) This, with other Castles, was either in *Phrygia* the greater, or in *Bythinia*, and the confines of *Mysia*, where the Christians lived mingled with the *Turks*; at continuall jars, till by them they were extinguished.

Othoman, thus encouraged, and by the Sultan supported, consulted with his Brother *Iundus*, of the best way to subject the Christians. *Iundus* advised him to urge his fortune with all speed, and to invade them, discouraged with *Carachisar's* loss. But *Othoman* said; The Castles &c. must be kept with strong Garrisons, else they will be again recovered: which Garrisons cannot be maintained, if we dispeople the adjoyning Countreys: I think better that we make a league with the Christians about us, which we will keep or break, as shall serve our purpose. And he made a peace with all, chiefly with *Michael Cossi*, who became also a *Mahometan*. This he did the rather, for the envy of *Germeanogli*, a *Salzuccian*, who (as others) sought by all means to hinder his greatnesse. Who to strengthen his new Common-weal, built a fair Temple in *Carachizar*, for *Mahometan* Religion, appointing Markers, and granting priviledges to all that resorted to his great Towns, using great Justice, so that all sorts furnished Towns and Countreys with all necessaries: but his aspiring mind had alwaies a greater care to enlarge his Territories, whom *Michael Cossi* so politicly directed, in his inroad into *Bythinia* that he returned with great spoil and more honour. The Christians thereabouts were now loath to give him any offence, lest he should spoyle them.

Aboutt his time the Captains of *Belizuga* & *Cuprichisar* falling at odds, he of *Cuprichisar* first invaded him of *Belizuga*: who praying *Othoman's* aid, he presently came with companyes of lusty Souldiers: whereby he of *Belizuga* set upon his enemy, and by *Othoman's* help, the other fled to his own Castle, divers being on both sides slain: when

when *Othoman* besieging him, took his Castle, and slew him. He of *Belizuga* was so proud of the victory, (though most gained by the *Turks*) providing a great feast for him and his followers: that, giving Garments of great price to *Othoman*, in token of his favour, rewarding also his souldiers, but all with a presumptuous grace, he offered the *Turk's* common Souldiers his hand to kisse: where-with *Othoman* was so offended that he could scarce hold his hands from him; yet he secretly imparted the disgrace to his Cousin *Dunder*, inquiring of him how the Captain was to be corrected for it: who, being the Captain's Lievtenant, told him, That, seeing *Germeanogli* was their enemy on one side, and all the Christians would be in his neck if he offered him any wrong, nothing was then to be attempted. *Othoman* hereby perceiving his Cousin's affection to him, and lest the mischief should by him be revealed or hindered, slew him suddenly with his bow.

Michael Cossi, not long after, concluding a Marriage between a Gentleman and his daughter, invited all the Christian Captains thereabouts thereto: and the rather to grow in acquaintance with *Othoman*; hoping that at that merry meeting, all being made friends, every one might possesse his own without fear of *Othoman*, whose gifts exceeded all the other Guests, giving also to the new married folks, flocks of Sheep and Cattle; so that, the Captains saying, *Othoman's* wealth portended some great matter, &c. they thought best, secretly to compass his death: the execution whereof they referred to him of *Belizuga*: whose ill disposition though *Othoman* long perceived, yet he in shew honoured him, and debased himself in comparison. But the Captain told *Othoman* that he intended to marry the Captain of *Jarchiser's* daughter, requesting him to honour it with his presence, &c. a colour to bring *Othoman* into danger: who, neer the time, sent thither fat Oxen and Sheep, in *Iundus* his name, certifying him *Othoman*

othoman himself would be present, with such presents as his poor ability could afford. The Captain now surely hoped his devised treachery would take effect: and therefore requested *Michael Cossi* to bring *Othoman* to the marriage, which he knew *Cossi* might easily do, sending him by *Cossi* a present of gilt plate. *Cossi* found him very willing to go; but being moved with compassion, he discovered the Captain's Conspiracy against him, willing him to take heed to himself, for which *Othoman* greatly thanked him, rewarded, &c. At thy return (saith he) tell him I am bound to him for many courtesies, chiefly for protecting my goods and cattell within his Castle, which I request may be continued for a year longer by reason of my wars with *Germean Ogli*: wherefore I will presently send to his Castle things I most reckon of: and tell him further, my Wife and her Mother desire to be acquainted with the Lady his Mother, whom (if he please) I will bring with me to the Marriage. When the Captain understood his request by *Cossi*, he sent him back to hasten his coming, and to bring what Guests he pleased. Because the Castle was too little for the expected multitude, there was another place appointed, about 3 miles distant. *Othoman* had accustomed to send his best things in packs to *Belizuga* Castle, but now instead of household-stuff, &c. he thrust in armed men, chargeing the carriages to come thither before twi-light. Then he apparelled some of his best Souldiers in Womens apparel, as his Wife and Mother in Law with their Women: So contriving it, that they and the packs might at one instant meet at the Castle. The Captain thought his late coming was because the Turkish Women shun the sight of Christian men. *Othoman* (being come unto the marriage place) requested the Captain that his Gentlewomen might lodge conveniently, in his Castle, apart, according to their homely fashion, lest the presence of such Gallants might put them out of countenance, which the Captain granted, saluting them
afar

afar off. The packs and the disguised Souldiers came thither at a time: where when they were entred, the Souldiers suddenly leapt out of the packs, and with the help of the disguised, flew the Warders (for most were gone to the marriage place) of the Castle, possessing the same. *Othoman* (the Captain taking his chamber) took horse, with *Cossi*, and his followers, to *Belizaga*, whom the Captain presently pursued with his train, most being drunk; whom *Othoman* in the conflict flew, putting the rest to flight. Early in the morning also he surprised *Jarchifer* Castle, with the Captain and his daughter (which was to have been married the next day) with all her friends; whom he shortly married to his Son *Orchanes*, who had by her *Amurath* I. and *Solyman Bassa*. He presently sent one *Durgut Alpes*, of great valour, to besiege *Einegiol* Castle, who used such speed, that he invironed it (that none could passe in or out) till *Othoman*, setting all in order at *Belizaga*, came with the rest to *Einegiol*, which he presently took by force, cutting the Captain his enemy in small pieces, for they had used the like tyranny against the *Turks*.

Now began *Othoman* to execute the Justice of good Lawes to all, both Christians and *Turks*, his Subjects, and to protect them from the spoyl of others: whereby those who forsook their Countrey, through troubles, repayed to their ancient dwellings, & also many strangers; whereby the wasted Countrey soon grew populous. Then he besieged *Isnuica* (called *Nice*) in *Byrhinia*: this City (by placing his men on every passage in forts, that nothing could be brought in for relief) he greatly distressed; the Citizens, in extremity, certified the Emperour of *Constantinople*, that they must (except present relief came) famish or yield. The Emperour embarked certain companies for relief; of whose landing *Othoman* understanding, lay in ambush with most of his forces near the place, and flew most of them, driving the rest into the Sea, where they

they perished. *Othoman* returning, most streightly besieged it, whose Citizens, now despairing, yielded that great and rich City to him, with whose spoyl he enriched his men. Of whose good success *Aladin* hearing, sent him a fair Ensigne, Drums, &c. saying that all should be his own that he took from the Christians, and publique prayers to be said for *Othoman's* health, &c. the Sultan's proprieties. This made many think, that the Sultan intended (having no Children) to adopt him his successor: who sent to *Aladin* the 5th part of *Nice's* spoyl, but during his life, used not his princely honours; intending shortly to visit the Sultan. But (being about to set forward) he was informed of *Aladin's* death, and that *Sahib* had taken on him his dignity: which news much discontented him, being in hope to succeed him, or share in most part of his Kingdom. Yet he thought it now fit to take the princely honours granted him by the Sultan in his life: wherefore he made *Dursu Fakiche* Bishop of *Carachisar*; who first, by his command, made publique prayers for *Othoman* as was wont to be for the Sultan; coyning also mony in his own name, and taking all the honours of a Sultan; which was about ten years after *Ertogrul's* death, in 1300. to which time the Turkish Empire under *Othoman* is to be referred. Then he made his Son *Orchanes* princely Governour of *Carachisar*, and his chief followers Governours of Castles. He chose *Neapolis* to be his regali seat, calling it *Despotopolis*, that is, *The City of the Lord*: yet he ceased not to augment his Kingdom, but (accompanied with *Orchanes*) surprized adjoining places, serving best for its enlargement.

The Christian bordering Princes, fearing *Othoman's* greatness might shortly be their confusion jointly invaded his Kingdom with fire and sword, who meeting them in the confines of *Phrygia* and *Bythinia*, fought with them a great battle, many on both sides being slain, and obtained a bloody Victory. *Castaleanus* one of the greatest

Christians was slain ; another, called *Tokensis*, he chased to *Ulubad* Castle not far off, who, for fear, was delivered him by the Captain, and afterwards cut in pieces in view of his chief Castle, which (with the Country thereabouts) *Othoman* subdued. The other Princes fled into holds farther off. The Prince of *Bithynia* fled into *Prusa*, (now *Burusa*) which *Othoman* hoped to win : but finding it impossible, he, in one year, built 2 strong Castles on the chief passages of the City, placing two courageous Captains therein ; thus blocking up *Prusa*, he subdued *Bithynia*, and so returned home ; honourably rewarding his Souldiers, and establishing such Government, that people resorted from far into his Dominions ; which in few years became very populous, and he most famous. So living in great quietnesse certain years, now being old and troubled with the Gout, his old Souldiers came to him with one request, To take some war in hand for enlarging his Kingdom, offering to spend their lives in his service, &c. For which he thanked them, promising he would not be long unmindfull of their request. But to make all safe at home first, he calls to him *Michael Cossi*, (the onely Christian Captain he suffered to live in quiet) to perswade him to follow *Mahomet*, which if he refused he would war on him as his utter enemy. *Cossi* not thinking of what ensued, came with such Souldiers as he thought to use in his intended service : but hearing the cause, and seeing the danger, kissing *Othoman's* hand, he requested him to enter him in *Mahomet's* principles, which he promised ever after to embrace : so saying certain words after *Othoman*, he turned *Turk*. Whereupon *Othoman* gave him an Ensigne and rich Robe, an assured Token of his favour : Who, after this, to content his souldiers, took many bordering Castles, subduing all unto the *Euxine* Sea : and being now aged and diseased, as aforesaid, he often sent *Orchanes* against his enemies, who achieved many great enterprizes, his Father yet living.

The Reader may happily marvel, why *Paleologns*, and

afterward his Son *Andronicus*, suffered the *Turks*, not *Othoman*, but the sharers of *Aladin's* Kingdome, to take spoyl, kill, and encroach, especially, in *Bythinia*, as it were under their noses: But let him here consider the trouble of that declining Empire, and he shall plainly see the causes of its decay. *Michael Paleologus* by treachery obtaining the Empire, and recovering *Constantinople* from *Baldwin*, (as is declared) fearing the Western Princes, especially the King of *Sicily*, whom *Baldwin* solicited for his restitution, and to marry his daughter to his Son: to intangle *Charls* with troubles nearer home, he offered to *Geregory X. Bishop of Rome*, to conform the *Greek Church* to the *Latine*, and that it should be lawful to appeal to *Romes* Court, as to the higher: of which the Pope gladly accepted, promising to keep *Charls* otherwise busied. But when this alteration in the *Greek Church* should be made, the Patriarch gave up his place, retiring to a *Monastery*, where he spent the remainder of his life. The other Clergy in their Sermons inveighed against it, perswading the people not to receive it, &c. So that all the City and Countrey was in an uproar: for many of the chief Magistrates also abhorred these proceedings: Whereby *Paleologus*, leaving forreign businesse, was forced to turn all his power and study to appease domestick troubles: first perswading his Subjects, that this alteration was not made for any good liking he had thereto, but for the danger of time; for (said he) if the enemies should come, the City in many places rent or but lately repaired, &c. then they would be Lords not of our Religion and Ceremonies onely, but of Wives and Children, and whatever we have, &c. With which perswasion, some were contented; and others not, whom he imprisoned, banished, tortured, &c. using all means to move their minds. All which, some with patience endured; but the greater parr, the Refuse, ran rogueing abroad, as men persecuted for their conscience, out of the

Emperour's Jurisdiction; some taking the names of *Arsenius* his Disciples, some of *Joseph's*, and some of others. Wherewith the Emperour was so encumbered, that he had no lei ure to provide against the *Turks*: whose deep devices in a piring, and travels in assuring, the Empire, with altering his Father's Religion, yielded him not so much as an honourable buriall. For, dying not far from *Lysimachia* he was, by his Son *Andronicus* his command, obscurely buried in a field a good way from his Camp, as unworthy of better sepulture for revolting from the Religion of his Ancestors, though his Obsequies were afterwards, for fashion sake, with some solemnity, celebrated.

Andronicus Paleologus succeeding his Father, and thinking, by restoring the Churches government and rites, to appease all troubles before raised, found them no less than his Father's, for they that liked the *Latins* Customs obstinately defended them: the other faction countenanced by the Emperour, insulted on them without measure: whereof arose exceeding stirrs, chiefly in the beginning of his reign. The *Turks* ceasing not to increase their Territories in *Asia*, but also in the Mediterranean Islands. For *Andronicus*, delivered of the greatest fear (by *Charls* of *Sicily's* death, for which he and his Father maintained a strong Fleet of Gallies) now perswaded by some to spare that needlesse charge (as they termed it), had discharged all his Sea-men, and laid all the Gallies up in one Creek or another. The Marriners went severall waies to seek a living in forreign Countries, where some gave themselves to Husbandry; which at the first seemed very profitable to the Emperour, till many great mischiefs were (too late) found hereof. For, besides the *Turks* doing great harm at Sea, the Pirats took the spoyle of Mediterranean Islands, robbing all Towns along the Sea coast; and came with their Gallies (as in contempt) even close to the City: yea, the *Venetians* (on small displeasure) rifled the Suburbs.

Then

Then also *Andronicus* had a jealous suspicion of his brother *Constantine's* aspiring to the Empire, seeking to win the love of all, especially the Nobility at home & abroad: which were thought but mere slanders maliciously devised. The grounds of this suspicion were, That from his childhood, he was (for many causes) better beloved of his Father than *Andronicus*; so that he could willingly have left him his successor: that his Father, in his life, thought to separate *Thessaly* and *Macedonia* from the Empire, and make him absolute Prince thereof. *Andronicus* dissembled his secret hatred 3 years after his Father's death. The meantime, *Constantine* bountifully bestowed the profit of his great revenues on all sorts, and with sweet behaviour won their hearts. He that blames *Constantine* for the two first, (they not proceeding of himself) should do him wrong: but if (not experienced) he gave such gifts as becomed the Emperour himself, he ignorantly erred: but if he knew that therefore he could not be unsuspected, he was greatly blameable; for he should have considered, how many such like doings had brought to untimely ends. *Constantine* lived in *Lydia*, lately married, not past 30 years old: whom the Emperour, passing into *Asia*, secretly resolved suddenly to oppress. And at his coming, *Constantine* not fearing it, was, with all his favourites and *Michael Strategopulus*, clapt in prison, their Lands, &c. being first confiscate. But the *Turks* (those men who defended the frontiers on the East side of *Meander* being laid fall) finding none to withstand them, torraged all beyond the River, and also passing it did great harm: so that the Emperour must make choice of some other worthy Captain, those his Cities and Countreys being in danger by the IncurSIONS of the *Turks*. There was in Court *Alexius Philanthropenus* a valiant young Captain: whom the Emperour chose to defend his frontiers in *Asia* joyning to him, *Libadarus*, an old experienced one: the one governed

the Cities of *Ionia*; the other, the frontiers along *Meander*. *Alexius*, by many victorious conflicts, soon became of great fame, being also very bountifull and courteous unto all. Thus, all things prospering with him, the bordering *Turks*, more moved with his courtesy, than fearing the *Tartars*, came to him with their Wives, &c. many serving in his Camp. *Libadarius* envying thereat, suspected lest he should proudly aspire to the Empire, & to first begin with him. *Alexius* had certain companies of *Cretensians*, whom he trusted above others, using them for his Guard, who, in hope by his advancement to raise themselves, perswaded him speedily to take it on him, the conceit of which would be no lesse danger than entering the action it self, as he might see by *Constantine* and *Strategopulus*: which quick suggestions wrought in him divers and contrary motions. At length, the perswaders prevailed with him; yet, at first, he forbade any to mention him in the Army as Emperour: which caused the *Cretensians* almost to force the imperial Ornaments forth upon him; For (said they) delay would but fill the Souleiers heads with doubts, & discourage them with fear of an uncertain event: all which, whether fearing the great danger, or thinking how, first, to circumvent *Libadarius*, moved him not so to do. *Libadarius* and the Emperor (both disquieted) had soon the report of his designs: *Alexius* turned from *Libadarius* to follow after the Emperour's Brother *Theodorus* not to be feared, who (warned by his Brother *Constantine*) lived in *Lydia* far from Court: unto whom *Alexius* fearing many would (in the hurly burly) resort, thought best to make him sure, and afterwards to oppresse *Libadarius*. But he (of great experience) by gathering all possible coyn of his own & friends, sending also for the Emperour's treasure to *Philadelphia*, raised such a power out of *Ionia*, that in ten daies he dared give the Rebell battell in *Lydia*: and so wrought with the mercenary *Cretensians* by sums of money given, and promises,

promises, that they promised, in the beginning of the battle, to deliver him into his hands, which they did, (fast bound) unto *Libadarius*, who in 3 daies after put out his eyes, lest the Emperour should pardon him, and kept him in prison till his further pleasure known.

Andronicus, after this, knew not whom to trust, putting more confidence in strangers than in his own Subjects to his great hurt. He gladly accepted of the *Messagers*, Christians beyond *Ister*, oppressed by the *Tartars*, who offered to come to him (with 10000 Families) and serve him against the *Turks* grievously waiting in *Asia*. But when they were to be furnished with all things, especially with Horses, Armour, and Pay; the Subjects were hardly charged, houses searched, who murmured to have their Armes taken from them and given to strangers: and when they were to contribute to their pay, they openly cursed them. Yet, at length, they were shipped over into *Asia* under *Michael* the Emperours Son, and companion in Empire: who came and encamped about *Magnesia*, where the *Turks* at first retired into Mountains and Woods, that, protracting time, they might learn what strength they were of, and what discipline they kept; and perceiving them often to roave disorderly after prey (for, as Mercenaries, they spoiled their friends as if they were enemies) they came down, at first, adventuring but little; but afterward came further on with greater confidence: wherewith they being discouraged, retired, the *Turks* following them, who were (thinking one thing to be two) blinded with their own fear: neither were they like to do any great good, who setting forth carried with them the bitter curses of their friends. *Michael* seeing the *Messagers* flee retired into the Castle of *Magnesia*: But the *Messagers*, spoiling the Countrey as they went, passed over into *Europe*. *Michael* returning, not many daies after, to *Constantinople*, the *Turks* came down and subdued all unto the Coast of *Lesbos*.

Not long after, one *Ronzerius*, sometime a notable Pirate, with four tall Gallies, manned with *Catalonians*, *Narbonensians* &c, in the Mediterranean Sea and Islands, but then a famous Captain: having stood *Theodore*, King of *Sicily*, in great head, again: *Charls*, King of *Navarre*, with 2000 expert Souldiers; and through peace concluded betwixt them, now to seek for new entertainment, he offered his service to the *Greek* Emperour, whereof he gladly accepting, he came to him with 2000 good Souldiers called by the name of *Catalonians*. He honoured *Ronzerius* with the name of Great Captain, and gave him his Niece *Mary* in marriage: But one *Tenza*, another *Catalonian*, coming a while after with more aid, he named *Ronzerius*, Caesar; & *Tenza*, Great Captain. But when they were to be transported into *Asia*, they did unspeakable harm, to the People, for which they had many a bitter Curse. The next spring they valiantly raised the siege of *Philadelphia* which was hardly bested without and within: to these *Catalonians*, great numbers of the best *Grecian* Souldiers, and all the *Messagets* were joyned; so that, had not the Emperour before commanded not to pursue the *Turks* too far, 'twas thought they might have soon recovered all they had taken. This service done, the *Greeks* returned home, and *Messagets* also. But the *Catalonians* turned their forces on them that they were sent to relieve; alledging they had not their pay, &c. Poor people were every where spoiled, wives and daughters ravished. Priests and aged men tortured to confesse their store; yea many, that had nothing, lay by the high waies begging, having hands or feet, &c. cut off upon their greedy imagination. The Emperour was much grieved, but his Coffers were not able to redresse any thing. *Ronzerius*, thus spoyling *Asia*, passed over into *Europe*, and leaving his Army at *Calipolis*, he went to *Michael*, then at *Orestias* with 200, to demand, or with threats to extort, his pay: with whole insolency he now
more

more offended, his Souldiers present, compassing him in, slew him, with some others, the rest fleeing to *Calipolis*. Neither was the *Catalonians* pride abated by *Ronzerius* his death, but was cause of greater evils: for they first slew all the Citizens of *Calipolis*, making it their refuge; then, manning 8 Gallies, under the leading of *Tenza*, they robbed and spoyle the Merchants ships passing to and from *Constantinople*: the rest (the mean time) foraging the Countrey. But *Tenza* was overthrown shortly after by a *Genoway* Fleet, himself being taken; yet afterwards redeemed. Now the *Catalonians*, somewhat discouraged, kept themselves, certain daies, within their wals, not knowing well what to do; for they feared both the *Messagers* and *Thracians*; for outrages upon whom, they despaired of the Emperours favour. But the expectation of *Michael's* coming to assault them, most terrifyed them: for fear of whom they cast a deep ditch about the City, with a strong Counterscarp. But the Emperour delaying his coming, they maliciously craved aid of the *Turks*, dwelling in *Asia*, on the other side of the Streight: who sent them 500 good Souldiers, other fugitives following; with whom (themselves being 3000) they foraged the Countrey, and brought great herds of Cattell, with their Keepers, into the City. This was the first coming of the *Turks* into *Europe*, that I read of, and the beginning of those miseries wherewith the Christian Commonweal hath been ever since most grievously afflicted, and in great part overwhelmed.

These now lying about *Cypsella* and *Apri*, *Michael* with his Souldiers, with the *Messagers* and *Turcopuli* encamped at *Apri*. These *Turcopuli* were about a 1000 *Turks* which *Jathathines* left behind him when he was delivered from the Emperour by the *Tartars*, who had become Christians. The Emperour, advertised of the enemies approach, put his Army in order: whose Captains divided their battle, as their enemies, into 3 parts. The Emperour

perour, riding from place to place, encouraged his men. The Sun rising, the enemies (much inferiour in number) began to come on: But the *Messagers* (whether by a fore-agreement, or on a sudden treaton) withdrew as idle beholders, as did also the *Turcopuli*, the *Greeks* being hereby discouraged in the very battles joyning. The Emperour intreated the Captains, by name, not to be so suddenly discouraged: but they still shrinking, he turned himself to his few foot that were left, saying; *Now, worthy men, is death better then life, &c.* Valiantly charging the enemies, his horse was slain; but one of his followers remounted him on his own horse, with the loss of his life. The Emperour fleeing to his Father, to *Dydimoticum*, was joyfully received, but sharply reproved for adventuring so far. The enemies pursuing, slew some, and took others: & next day divided the spoyle, forraging the Country at pleasure. The *Turcopuli* revolting, were enrolled in *Chalel's* Regiment, who was a Turk.

Shortly after, the *Catalonians* mutinied; *Tenza*, and *Pharenza* disdained to be commanded by *Recasfort* their Generall. *Tenza* was slain, *Pharenza* glad to flee to *Andronicus*, who honourably entertained him. The *Messagers* were now also (having done the *Greeks* more harm then the *Turks*) about to return, with Wives, Children, and wealth, beyond *Ister*: for whom the *Turcopuli* and *Catalonians* laid wait, as they passed the streights of Mount *Hemus*; where they slew almost all of them, recompencing themselves with their spoyle, for the wrongs received by them before, in dividing the *Greeks* spoyle. And being proud of their Victory at *Apri*, spoyled all along the Sea coast, and the inland Country also. Forraging *Thracia*, they brake into *Macedonia*, and wintred about *Cassandria*, a City then desolate. At spring they removed purposing to spoyle, especially *Thessalonica*; wherein they were, by the Emperour's foresight, prevented; and finding a forsaken Countrey, were about to return into *Thracia*:

But

But being informed, that the Emperour had shut up the passage by a mighty wall at *Christopolis*, from the Sea to the top of the Mountains; they thus beset, desperately resolved to break into *Thessaly*, (being above 8000 men) to relieve their wants, or towards *Peloponessus*, there to seat themselves: at least-wise, to enter a League with some on the Sea coast, and so return into their own Countrey. They came in 3 daies to the *Thessalian* Mountains, at the foot whereof, finding plenty of all necessities, they wintred. But Winter being past, they came down into the Plains of *Thessaly*, spending that year at pleasure, harocking whatever came in their way. That Countrey was but weak, the Prince being but young and like to die, &c. And to avert these forreigners, the Nobility offered their Commanders gifts, and guidance into *Achaia* and *Boetia*, Countries more commodious for them: promising if they needed aid, there to seat them. Of which offers the *Catalonians* accepted: So at Spring, receiving their rewards and guides, passing over the mountains beyond *Thessaly* and the straits of *Thermopyla*, they encamped near *Locris*, and the River *Cephissus*. But the Duke of *Thebes*, &c. hearing of their coming, with great pride and contempt, denied them passage thorow his Countrey, reckoning them but as loose wandring rogues, &c. wherewith they enraged, resolved there to seat themselves or to die. So they encamped not far from the River in *Boetia*, 3500 horse, 4000 foot. But lying there, they caused the ground where about they lay to be plowed up, which they watered with cutt out of the River, that it little differed from a deep Marsh. Hither comes the Prince with about 6400 horse, and 4000 foot, casting no peril, coming bravely on with his horsemen; but before he was come to the middle of the Plain, his horses sinking deep, lay with their riders for most part, tumbling in the mire, &c. other some sticking fast stood with their riders like very Images, not able to move. The *Catalonians*

flow

ſlew them at their pleaſure, and ſo ſpeedily purſued the reſt, that they ſurprized *Thebes* and *Athens*; ſo they (having wone a goodly Countrey ſtored with all wealth) there ended their travels and ſeated themſelves: not ceaſing (as ſaith *Nicephorus Gregorius*) by little and little to extend their bounds unto this day.

There were 3000 *Turks* in the *Catalonians* Army, of whom about 1100 were the *Turcopuli* under *Melech*; the other came with *Chalel* out of *Asia*, being ſent for by the *Catalonians*: All theſe, when the *Catalonians* were about to invade *Theſſaly*, & ſeek new fortunes, partly diſtrusting their ſociety, and partly loth further to follow, began to mutiny; Whereupon *Melech* and *Chalel*, requested of the General leave to return: which he eaſily granted, and ſo they departed, proportionally deviding the captives and ſpoils taken. After which, they divided into 2 parts; the *Turcopuli* following *Melech*, and the reſt *Chalel*. *Melech* having violated his Religion again and revolted, deſpairing of the Emperour's friendſhip, choſe rather to go to *Crales* Prince of *Servia* (by whom he was ſent for) with 1500 horſe and foot; but all his Souldiers (delivering up horſes and armour) were to fall to Trades, and not to bear Arms, but when, and ſo many as, the Prince ſaw good.

But *Chalel* with about 1300 horſe and 800 foot, offered the Emperour quietly to depart his Countrey, ſo he would give him paſſage by *Chriſtopolis*, and transport them and their ſubſtance over *Hellepont*. The Emperour conſidering the great harm done, deſirous to be diſcharged of them, ſent *Sennacherib* to conduct them out of *Macedonia* to the ſtraits of *Hellepont*; Where the *Greeks* thinking it indignity, to ſuffer them to carry ſuch abundance of horſes, mony, &c. taken from the *Greeks*, into *Asia*: and in hope of ſo rich a prey, they neither provided for them ſhipping, nor cared for their ſafety, purpoſing by night to deſtroy them. Of which the *Turk* underſtanding,

derstanding, surprized a Castle thereby, which they notably fortified : the *Greeks* were glad to get further off, and to certifie the Emperour thereof, who delayed the time, to his enemies advantage ; who speedily sent over the strait for aid of the *Turks* in *Asia*, which they presently sent them ; wherewith encouraged, they oft times grievously wasted the Country round about. The *Greek* Captains greatly discontented, requested *Michael* with all his power, to come to suppress these dangerous enemies. For which not only Soldiers, but the Country in general flocked to *Michael* with spades and mattocks, as though they would have digged down the Castle. Most part of whole followers, not considering the danger in gaining it, proceeded carelessly and disorderly in their siege that their enemies, who before feared the very fame of their coming ; therewith much more encouraged, bestowed all their wealth, &c. within their trenches : themselves with 800 chosen horsemen, sallied out to the place of the Imperial Ensign ; with which sudden and desperate eruption, the *Grecians*, especially the rustical, terrified began to flee : after whom by little and little, all fled. The Emperour did what he could to stay them ; but in so general a fear, Who regarded him ? wherefore he was glad to flee with the rest. Yet many expert Captains ashamed, making stands, stayed the barbarous from further pursuit. In which doing, many were taken by the *Turks* ; Whatsoever was found in the Emperour's Tent, yea the Imperial Crown it self became a prey also ; which they say *Chalel* putting on his head, scoffed at the Emperour.

After this, the *Turks* spoiled almost all *Thracia* ; so that for 2 years, the people scarce durst go out of their Towns to plow and sow ; the Emperours exceedingly grieved, all their hope was in forreign aid ; wherein they found many difficulties, their Coffers being empty, by reason of their Territories so long wasted : yet *Andronicus* sent to the Prince of *Servia* his Son in Law. But he making

king no haste, and the misery encreasing, one *Philes Paleologus* the Emperour's Kinsman, undertook his Countries deliverance. He had been brought up in Court, &c. beloved of all for integrity of life, but altogether unskilful of wars, being by nature weak and sickly: and more given to devotion, than worldly affairs. He requested the Emperour, that with some small power, and a few Captains of his own choice, he might go out against the *Turks*, hoping (he said) to revenge the wrong, and return with victory. Whereunto he easily yielded, saying, God delighted not in any mans leggs, but in a contrite heart &c. For I have seen (said he) the swift not to gain the prize, &c. the simple to gain favour, and the subtil to fall into disgrace. So he furnished him with such conveniences as he desired; which he receiving, first he by all waies of courtesie encouraged his Souldiers, perswading them to a temperate life, promising (the war ended) rewards according to every ones desert; and before setting forth, understanding, *Chalel* with 1200 horse and foot was foraging about *Byzia*, he hastened to encounter them by the way laden with spoil, encamping the 3d day near the little River *Xerogipsum*, where he left nothing unsaid or undone for the animating his Souldiers. Within 2 daies, his scouts brought tydings about midnight, that the enemy was even at hand, who by Sun-rising were come in sight; wherefore, first of all compassing themselves with their Waggon, &c. and bestowing their bound & captives booty therein, casting dust on their heads, and their hands towards Heaven, they came on. The Christian Army came on also, *Philes* right well conducting them. He that led the right wing at first on-set, unhorsed two enemies; but his horse sore wounded, he retiring hastily out of the barrel, somewhat troubled the Christians, and encouraged the *Turks*. *Philes* with chearful words encouraged them, and with eyes cast up, and tears running down, heartily besought God, &c. The footmen encountring hand to hand, slew the Barbarians

rians and were of them slain: But *Philes* having almost encompassed their horse with a valiant company, brake in upon the sides of the enemy; who circumvented and hardly charged, most of them fell: a few horsemen were pursued to the entrance of *Chersonesus*, whither came *Philes*; 5 Gallies were sent to keep *Hellespontos* Straits, 2000 horsemen came out of *Servia*, and 8 Gallies moe by the Possessate of *Pera*; wherefore, shutting them up by Land and Sea, *Philes* encamping about the Town and Trenches, greatly battered the Cattle, making great slaughter. The *Turks* by night set first upon the *Grecians*, by sallying out; and then upon the *Servians*, with vain attempts: wherefore (utterly despairing) about midnight, they full of Coin, ran to the Sea, purposing to yield themselves to the *Genowaies*; But the night being dark and misty, many unawares came to the *Greek* Gallies; who lightened them of their mony, and slew them. The *Genowaies* slew only those with the most Coin, lest it should be sought for by the *Greeks*: the rest, some they sent to the Emperour, some they kept as their own prisoners. Thus by *Philes* his valour, the *Turks* for that time, were chased out of *Europe*.

Innovation and change of the *Greek's* Religion, covetousness, envy, ambition, distrust, Forreign aid, and foul discord, were the chief causes of the *Greek* Empire's decay and ruin. But *Michael* had 2 Sons, *Andronicus* and *Manuel*: of these, old *Andronicus* entirely loved *Andronicus* his Nephew, causing him to be brought up in his Court as not willing to spare him out of his sight. But when he was grown a lusty youth, he began to contemn all Government, his companions leading him forth to walk the streets, hawk, hunt, and haunt Plays, and afterwards night-walks: which requiring great expence, and his Grandfather giving him but a spare allowance, He took up mony of the rich Merchants of *Pera*, &c. with secret consultations of flight. For seeing his Grandfather live long

long, & his Father like to succeed, his ambitious thoughts suggested to him such purposes: seeking after the Imperial liberty, that he might have sufficient for himself, and to reward others; which, seeing he could not do, he sought one while after *Armenia*: then after *Peloponessus*, sometime dreaming of *Lesbos* and *Lemnos*, for which he was reproved by the one and the other. He used by night to repair to a Gentlewomans house, whom another gallant no lesse affected then himself; wherefore he appointed Ruffians to watch her house. *Manuel* about midnight seeking him, passed by these watchmen; who in the dark, supposing him the man they looked for, wounded him that he fell down for dead, and so was carried half dead to Court: which outrage cast the Emperour into great heavineis; but *Michael*, hearing at *Theffalonica* of *Manuel's* being dead with the wounds, shortly after dyed with grief. The unslayed youth, purposing to flee, became more and more suspicious to his Grandfather; who appointed one *Surgiannes* (who was suspected of aspiring, imprisoned, and by the Emperour enlarged) warily to observe the young Princes doings. But he, not unmindful of former wrong, and in hope to aspire himself, took the Prince aside, discovering his Grandfathers device, to set them together by the ears, as followeth. Thy Grandfather most noble Prince (said he) hath set me a watch, or rather a bloodhound over thy actions, and if possible thy most secret thoughts, &c. whilst thou followest thy shallow conceits; for what shall it avail thee to flee away? &c. But if thou hearken to my counsel, I will shew thee a ready way to aspire the Imperial Seat, which is by leaving *Constantinople*, and fleeing into the *Thracian* Provinces, and proclaiming immunity for ever from thy Grandfathers long and heavy yolk; If thou likest this, I will bring the whole matter to effect: so that thou promise me to reward my travel according to desert, and that no great matter be done, without my consent; for thou
 see'st

feest how unwillingly I make my self partaker of thy Calamity, &c. And seeing delay brings danger, let's impart the matter to such as are like to keep countel, and further our designs. He, moved herewith as with a charm, confirmed his desire by an Oath in writing. *John Catacuzene, Theodore, Synadenus*, men of great honour, and aged; and *Alexius Apocaucus*, a man of great place being present, who shewed themselves as Ring-leaders therein. *Syrgiannes* and *Catacuzene*, by corrupting divers great ones, procured the Government of places, fittest to begin their rebellion in. In all which they mistred Souldiers, &c. entertaining Strangers, as for some great War; placing their Friends, and removing those they suspected from Government: colouring all by the rumours of the *European Tartars*, and *Asian Turkes* coming, and commended by the Emperour himself for their care. All which *Syrgiannes* dissembling, oft certified the Prince what he had done, and was to do. But the Emperour seeing his Nephew proceeded in his dissolute life, was about to reprove him before the *Patriarch* and others: but being otherwise perswaded, for that it was on the point of Shrovetides, when as the people (through excess) were fittest to be drawn into a tumult, he let him alone. But, a good part of Lent past, he sent for him to chide him before the *Patriarch* and other Bishops; that (as ashamed) he might either amend, or be thought justly punished, if he proceeded. The Prince with his followers came secretly armed, agreeing, if the Emperour used gentle admonition, to keep themselves quiet; but if in anger, or threatening to punish him, to break in and kill him, placing young *Andronicus* in his stead. He was grievously blamed of him: yet with such moderation that all seemed from a fatherly care; so that the assembly was quietly dismissed, and an Oath taken, That he should not appoint any other his successor: and that the Prince should attempt no hurt to his Grand-father's Life or

Empire. At his coming out, he was discouraged and ashamed at the speeches of the fretting and fuming conspiratours, saying, Thou hast left us in the Devils mouth to be devoured, &c. and sent for *Theodore Metochita*, requesting to deal with his Grand father for his followers pardon: whereof he disliked, telling them, himself was to give God thanks for escaping so great a danger, &c. Wherewith the Prince troubled and discontented, and (after a while musing) commanding him to depart; he by his Companions perswasion, entertained his former designements: which his Grand father suspecting would often say, In our time is lost the Majesty of our Empire, and devotion of the Church. Yet he thought good to lay hands betime on him; acquainting none but the *Patriarch* therewith, who acquainted the Prince, (fleeing himself before) who with all his Complices, the night before his apprehension to be, fled out of the City by the gate *Gyrolimnia*, (still at his Command); and next day came to *Syrgiannes* and *Catacazens* Camp at *Hadrianople*; the Emperour the same day proclaimed him traitor, proscribing him, with all his conspiratours; swearing the whole City to be loyal to him. But he proclayming liberty in all *Thracia*, the people resorted to him armed, in great numbers. First they foulely intreated the Emperours Collectours, taking away their money: Nor seven daies after almost an incredible number departed towards *Constantinople*, under *Syrgiannes*, hoping at first coming to take the City at discord in it self. Four daies after they encamped at *Selybria*, whither the Emperour sent Embassadors to his Nephew, for appeasing so dangerous troubles, sending with them *Syrgiannes* his Mother, to perswade him to retire a little, and so come to talk and demand what he pleased. *Syrgiannes*, retired to the Prince about *Orestius*, whither the Embassadors came also: with whom it was agreed, that the Prince should hold all from *Christopolis* to *Rhegium* and *Constantinople's*

tinople's suburbs : and that the Lands given by the Prince (to his followers) in *Macedonia*, should remain theirs : and that the Emperour should hold the imperial City, with all *Macedonia* beyond *Christopolis*, and have the honour to hear and dispatch Embassadours, the Prince not delighting in those weighty affaires. Thus while the Greek Empire was divided betwixt the Grand-father and Nephew, *Asia* was a prey to the greedy *Turks* : *Othoman* founding his Empire in *Phrygia* and *Bythinia*, and *Aladins* successours encroaching as fast on this side *Meander*; robbing also the Christian Merchants trading to *Constantinople*, spoiling *Macedonia*, and *Thracia's* Coasts with the *Egeum* Islands, taking *Rhodes* : out of which they were shortly driven by the *Hospitallers*, aided by the *Genovais* and *Sicilian* King holding it 214 years, named Knights of the *Rhodes*, till it was lost to the *Turk*, for want of relief : since which they have seated themselves in *Malta* Island, which they have notably defended against mighty *Solyman*.

But *Syrgiannes* had thought from the beginning, to have ruled all with the Prince at his pleasure : but seeing him to be wholly Ruled by *Catacuzene*, and himself not so much as called to any Counsel, began secretly to devise revenge on the ungrateful Prince. Wherefore he resolved again to revolt to the Emperour, not doubting but shortly to overthrow the Princes Counsels and State. He secretly (by a trusty friend) acquainted the Emperour of his purpose, alleadging ; He could not abide the sight of him that sought to corrupt his wife, meaning the Prince. This news was most welcome, for it grieved the Emperour to be so contemned and deluded by his Nephew, &c. So an Oath passing betwixt them, *Syrgiannes* secretly fled to *Constantinople*, (which rejoiced many). But the Prince taking occasion hereat, marching towards the City, and being within sight, lay to intercept *Syrgiannes* by ambushes : who the third night after from *Perinthus* with 300 Souldiers, deceiving them, came to *Constantinople*.

The Prince hearing of his escape, and no expected tumult in the City, presently retired into *Thracia*.

Constantine the *Despot*, was by and by sent by his brother to *Thessalonica* to Govern *Macedonia*, and apprehend *Xene* the Prince's Mother by the way, and then to invade him in *Thracia*; that he on one side, and *Syrgiannes* on the other might shut him up, and take him. The *Despot* taking the Empress at *Thessalonica*, sent her in a Gally to *Constantinople*, where she was kept close. And with all his power invaded the Prince, breaking thorow the wall of *Christopolis*. The Prince sent *Synadennus* against *Syrgiannes*; hoping himself to encounter his Uncle the *Despot*. And first he wrote and dispersed Edicts, promising great rewards, to whomsoever brought him alive or dead. Then he proclaimed his Grand-fathers death, slain by the *Constantinopolitans* in a tumult: some swearing they were present thereat, others shewing white goates haire, as if they were pluckt off his head or beard at the time: which (commonly reported) filled mens heads with doubts; the *Despot* with fear retiring to *Thessalonica*, whither came letters from the Emperour to apprehend 25 chief Citizens, vehemently suspected (by rebellion) to deliver the City to the Prince: but they (in time) secretly stirring up the people, and by ringing bells, soon raised a wonderful tumult of Citizens in Arms, who running to the *Despots* house, he fled to the Castle: they flew, or robbed, and imprisoned all they met of his, pulling down the house. Then they fired the Castle-gates, wherenpon he fled to a Monastery not far off, where being taken, he took a Monks habit to save his life. Yet he was carried prisoner to the Prince, whose waiters were ready to tear him in pieces; but not the Prince (embracing him) saved his life. But next day he was cast into a very loathsome deep and straight prison; his boy and others that drew up his ordure, often pouring it on his head. Where, after a great while, and wishing to die, he was removed into an easier prison.

Things

Things crossing the Emperour, he was very pensive: and one day opening the Plaster, the first verse he light on was; When the Almighty scattered Kings for their sakes, they were white as snow in *Salmon*, which he applying, as if all troubles, &c. proceeded from Gods will, fought (contrary to *Syrgiannes* mind) to be reconciled to his Nephew: who being sent for, came to *Rhegium* visiting his Mother, (now set at liberty) doing what was done by her Counsel. In few dayes an attonement was made and he lighting from his horse, met the Emperour, kissing his hand and foot on horse-back, then taking horse, embraced him, kissing one another. The old man, after a few words, departed into the City; the young man to his Camp at *Pega*, coming for certain dayes in and out at *Constantinople*.

Syrgiannes now spake hardly both of the Emperour and his Nephew, wronged (as he thought) by them both. But seeing one *Asanes Andronicus* walking melancholy, he acquainted himself with him, as grieved with the like sorrow that himself was: with whom he (as with a friend) plainly discoursed of all things as his grief desired. *Asanes* spake also hardly of Emperour and Nephew; but hating him before for his ambition, and displeased that he was enemy to *Catacuzene* his son in-law, noted whatever he said, telling all to the old Emperour; and that, unless *Syrgiannes* were (in time) laid hold of, he should shortly by him (affecting the Empire) be brought to his end. *Syrgiannes* was forthwith imprisoned; the common people spoiling him of his house and wealth, and converting it, and the adjoining Vineyards to a feeding place for sheep and goats. The Prince was shortly Crowned as fellow in the Empire, unto which the old Emperour riding, was by his horses stumbling, foully bemired in the Streets, which many took as portending ill Fortune. During this peace, 70 *Turks* were driven on shoare at *Chersonesus* the Prince hunting there, who before they

would yield, slew divers of his men; himself long after being tormented by a wound (there) in the foot. Who not long so contented, longed for the whole Government: and weary to see his Grand-father live so long, resolved to thrust him out of Government; or to dispatch him of life and State together. And (by his Mothers counsel) sent for *Michael* Prince of *Bulgaria*, his wife, and his Sister to *Dydimethicum*, in colour of a desire to see them, as before to him unknown. But the secret conclusion was, that the *Bulgarian* should aid the young Emperour against his Grand-father, and he him against the *Servians*, as need should be: and if he recovered the whole Empire, then to give him a great sum of money with confining places. So *Michael* loaded with rewards and promises returned home.

The young Emperour encouraged; and knowing the *Constantinopolitans* and other *Thracian* Cities to favour him, thought best to depose his Grand-father with as little stir as might be. But needing money, he took all from the Collectors in *Thracia*, telling them, he was an Emperour also, and that the common charge was by the common purse to be discharged. Then he took his way with a great power towards *Constantinople*, pretending he was there to take order for a ship to transport Embassadors to the Sultan of *Egypt*; having thrust the suspected out of Office in *Thracia*, placing in others. But one most inward with him, secretly fled to his Grand-father, discovering all the intended treacherie, &c. advising him to keep him out of the City, for fear of a general revolt, which the Emperour (comparing other reports) deeming to be true, complained in the anguish of his soul: Revenge my quarrel O God! &c. and preserve me in the imperial power, which he comes to take, whom I begat and advanced. Then first he sent to his Nephew, so bidding him entring the City; and that 'twas great folly for him to think his traiterous purposes were

were unknown; rehearsing unto him how many occasions he had given for breaking the league with his Grand-father. After that he craved aid of *Crales*, Prince of *Servia*, and the *Despot* his Son Governour of *Theffalonia*, &c. commanding him, speedily with all his forces, and his Nephews of *Macedonia* to joyn with them of *Servia*, against the young Emperour. But these Letters (written in Paper) were intercepted on the Straits of *Christopolis* and other passages; yet others in fine linnen (secretly sowed) escaped, and were delivered. Nothing was done, but the young Emperour (for all inclined unto him) was advertised thereof: but he understood not what his Nephew did, or intended. *Theodore* his own son among others (who honourably married in *Italy*, and by prodigality far in debt, whole debts (very great) he paid, &c. living now at *Constantinople*) went about to betray his own Father. For he (especially being become a Latine in Religion and manners) being rejected, thought he could not do him greater despight, than by revolting. *Demetrius* the *Despot*, calling to him his Nephews, Governours of *Macedonia*, and joyning with them, spoiled the young Emperour's friends there, confiscating the estates, and exiling all with-standers. Young *Andronicus* was not Idle, but secretly sent out edicts into all parts, proclaiming releasement from all tributes and payments: promising in the Souldiers the augmenting their pay, &c. which bruited, most were moved, inviting him secretly to hasten into the City: who by Embassadors from *Rhegium*, requested leave of the Emperour to come in, or to send him some of the chief, and better sort to whom he might speak his mind. Which requests being both dangerous, he chose the easier, sending forth two Noble Senarours, two Bishops, and two other Prelates, and four chief Burgesses of the City: to whom he openly delivered this crafty speech. *It is not unknown, that ye my Subjects have been more dear to me, then I to my self.*

Let any tell me how I came by these wounds, but in fight with the enemies of my Country. For I, stricken with a piercing grief, (seeing the poor Christians some barbarously slain, some carried into Captivity, the rest driven out of Houses and Cities: the old Emperour through great years being become slothful) went out, either by some honourable death to end my self; or to stand my Country in some stead. For he that hath long reigned, worldly things delighting in change must at length be loathsome to his subjects, &c. My Grand father having reigned so long, is become hateful: yet not regarding to discharge himself of such a burthen or to relieve the declining Empire, nor grieving to see its successors die before him (for my Father is dead: and happily I may die before I receive any profit thereof) I neither stoutly deny nor altogether confesse my ambition in departing from my Grand father: for, might I see the Empire increase, &c. I could willingly content myself: But seeing the Empire decline from ill to worse, &c. What deem ye me to think? For most ease their present grief, with future hope: but to me is not left such vain hope. At length, I requested but 1000 men at armes to preserve the Cities of Bithynia, which he denied me, taking me ever since for his enemy. I have another request for 8000 Duckats to content my Souldiers: which granted, I will dismisse my forces, holding my self contented.

Then discoursing with them apart, with great hopes he sent them away, who proclaiming his praises in the City, more enflamed the people than before: Wherewith the old Emperour was exceeding vexed, fearing to be slain in some sudden concourse. Yet he thought best to hear the Patriarchs and Bishops council: to whom he declared,

That if he were sure (after deposing himself) to see his people well Governed, and himself live in safety, he should much preferre a quiet life before an Empire. But how can I safely commit to my Nephew so great a charge, who gi-
ving

ving his power to unskilful men, and flinging away his possessions among them; liveth himself in penury, regarding nothing more than his dogs and kites. I will never willingly cast away my subjects and my self: I have loved him more than my self, purposing to leave him heir and successor of my wisdom and Empire. But he contemning my good counsel, hath lifted up his hand against a Grandfather so well deserving. Wherefore ye ought to censure him unworthy of the Empire, and communion of the faithful; that so (as ashamed) he may lovingly return, &c. The conclusion of his former speech is feigned, and crafty, not agreeing with the reproaches given me in all that speech, &c.

Upon this, most of them agreed he should not be named in Church prayers, till better conformed. But, meeting afterwards in the Patriarchs house (who secretly favoured him) they conspired (divers Nobles consenting) against the old Emperour, binding themselves to continue constant. About 3 dayes after, the Bells ringing, and the people flocking, the Patriarch pronounced excommunication against all omitters of his name in publique prayers, or refusing to do him all honour. Which (it appears) grieved the old Emperour, saying; *If the Doctor of Peace be so mad against us, who shall repress the Vulgars rash attempts?* &c. So the contrary Bishops excommunicated him likewise with his bribed followers: the Emperour committing him to safe-keeping in a Monastery. About 2 daies after, the young one came to the walls to know the acceptance of his Messengers, requesting he might enter alone into the City, to do his duty to his Grand-father; but such as stood on the walls (not abiding to hear him speak) drave him away with stones, &c. and so for that time he retired a little. But at night some busie heads gave him knowledge, that about mid-night they would be ready with ropes to draw him to the top of the Bulwarks. But he, approaching, found no such matter: the watchmen carefully watching and calling

calling one to another. Wherefore with *Cataguzene* and *Synadenus*, he rowed softly along the wall towards the Sea, but there the watchmen calling and receiving no answer, began to cast stones at them: so they departed as they came. But this ill successe was shortly better recompensed; for he had secret letters sent from *Thessalonica*, to come speedily thither, assuring him, with a general good liking, to open the Gates to him: who setting forward with a part of his Army entered the City in a Country man's habit, and casting off that simple attire (and being known) the people with joyful acclamations received him as their Sovereigne: yet a few stood on their guard in the Castle; which was at length taken.

The old Emperours chief Captaines now fled, most of whose Souldiers went to the young one: who came to *Serre* which was delivered him by composition: but the Castle was by *Basilicus Nicephorus* (whom the old Emperour had made Captaine rather for his sincerity, than wit or Capacity) strongly fortified in these troublesome times, and kept till the old Emperours death, then reconciling himself to the young: who, in reward of his fidelity, gave it to him to hold as amply as before from his Grand-father: for wise men (as did King *Philip* in *Demothenes*) honour virtue even in their enemies. The young Emperour soon took all strong Townes and Cities in *Macedonia* unresisted with the *Despots* wife and Children and treasure, his Nephews and following Senators wives also: after whom their Husbands were most cast in prison, and some perishing in exile. The old Emperour was about to send to his Nephew for peace, but at the same time *Michael* the *Bulgarian* (in hope of great profit) secretly offered him aid: whereof he gladly accepting, Embassadours were sent to conclude it; but two or three trusty Counsellours being acquainted therewith. In the mean time he sent out *Constantinus Assan*, against *Synadenus* who coupt him up; by whom, he

he was over thrown, and taken prisoner ; the rest flying head-long to *Constantinople*. Now the young Emperour returned thither to prevent the *Bulgarians* coming : lest they killing the old Emperour, should seize the City themselves, or at least keep him out. There was also great want of Victuals in the City, his Army shutting it up by Land, and the *Venetians* (being at Odds with the *Genowais* of *Pera*) by Sea. The young Emperour at first attempted to enter, but being repulled, he gat farther off. About this time came also the 3000 *Bulgarian* horse-men, but remembering the harms by forraign aid, he suffered but their General and some few Commanders to come into the City. The young one, least some harm to their utter subversion should betide them, offered to do what his Grand-father should command. But he trusting to this *Bulgarian* aid, listened little to him : (and how could he trust him that had so often deceived him ?) Who, almost despairing of successe, sent great gifts to the General and chief Commanders, promising far greater if they would return home : whereunto they easily granted.

Two watch men *Camaris* and *Castellanus* fleeing secretly to the young Emperour, offered to betray the City to him, for assurance of such money and possessions they required, returning again (for fear of suspicion) without stay. (The Emperour four dayes made ship-ladders of ropes). And the night being come, they give such store of good wine by way of courtesie to their fellow watch-men, that they fell into a sound sleep : The traytours about mid-night receiving 18 men by the ladders fastned to the top of the wall ; who breaking open the Roman gate, the Army entered. The same night, just after Sun-set, a Country man in hast knocked at the gate of *Gerolimna*, telling the Souldiers he saw many of the young Emperours men marching towards the City, by the way of the Roman gate : The old Emperour
(troubled)

(troubled) thought to send scouts to see if all were clear: but *Metochita* his great Counsellour letted, saying, *Seeing either the rumour was false, or the endeavour of so few, vain; it becometh not a couragious mind to be so leightly moved.* Again, divers others came running telling the watch-men, A great number were at the Roman gate: the Emperour (more troubled) sharply said to *Metochita*: *Thou seemest to be strangely Metamorphosed into a man of iron, which hast no feeling of our danger, &c. for the noise of my Nephew soundeth in mine ears, &c.* Nevertheless, he rose to go to bed, accounting them but as false alarms. But the Emperour (alone) lay tumbling to and fro on a pallet, as troubled with heavy thoughts. The mean time he hearing a great noise at the Court-gate (for above 800 were entred with his Nephew, and they of the City joyfully saluted him) rose (destitute of all but his ordinary waiters) beseeching not God to forsake, but defend him from their fury: Who heard him. For the young Emperour straightly charged all his Captaines, &c. on pain of death, not to violate his Grand-father, or any about him. For (said he) this victory God hath given us, and not ourselves, &c. which peradventure he will give to others, who (as we have been to them) will shew themselves to us: wherefore if nighnesse of blood or being of one Country, move us not; yet let's use mercy that we feel not Gods hand in like case. A Courtier then opened a wicket with this message to him,

Seeing God hath (my son) given thee the imperial seat, I request thee this good turn for many I bestowed on thee, not to spill the blood from which (next to God) thou hast taken life, &c. If brothers-blood cryed out against *Cain*, how much louder shall fathers-blood cry to the Lord, &c. Have pitty on my miserable old age, and a bruised reed, cast down; and do not again tread on it. And be not proud of thy fortune, but consider the uncertainty of worldly things; taking by me example,

ple, &c. Young *Andronicus* moved herewith, entred the pallace; humbly saluting, embracing, and comforting his Grand-father: Straight way carrying away the *Patriarch Esaius* (kept in the Monastery) in a Chariot, restoring him to his Dignity; who spared not fully to revenge himself of the old Emperour's friends. One might have seen all the Nobles wealth that took his part, carried away, and their houses overthrow, especially of *Metochita*, whose wealth not onely in his house, but layd up with friends (by notes in his study) was a prey to the people, and the rest confiscate, being brought with wife and children, to extreame beggery in one day: many (to increase his grief) saying, All that treasure was the blood and tears of the poor subjects, brought to him by them he made rulers of provinces, &c. that he might stop them (cruelly dealt with by them) from complaining to the old Emperour: and that the Revenger's eye was now awaked, &c. He was confined to *Didymoticum*; whence (after a while) he was sent back to *Constantinople*, where, having nothing to relieve him, he went to the *Monastery of Chora*, repaired by him in his prosperity, therein shrowding himself, and not long after dying.

But *Niphon* (sometime *Patriarch*) meeting the young Emperour (the same day) asked, How they would deal with his Grand-father? Who answering Emperour-like, was by him inflamed; for *Niphon* bare a special gudge against the old man, for that he being by the Clergy outed of his *Patriarchship*, for his shameful extortion, was not defended, as he looked for: and dreaming his taking out of the way, was a step to the same Dignity. Wherefore he said, If thou desirest to Reign without fear, &c. cast haire cloath on him, and clap him in prison, or exile him: to which ungracious counsel, other Nobles consenting, much changed the young Emperour's minde: that he could not endure his Grand-father a Companion in the Empire. Whereupon it was decreed, the old man should

should retain the name and ornaments; but meddle with nothing, nor come abroad; with 10000 duckets yearly for his maintenance. Of which shameful decree *Esaïas* the Patriarch was a furtherer rejoicingly, wresting this Scripture; *The just shall rejoyce when he seeth the Vengeance:* But the old Emperour thus shut up, humours distilling, (through grief) first lost one eye, and shortly the other, being often mocked not by his guarding enemies onely, but by his own servants. The young Emperour not long after falling very sick, *Catachzene* and the rest yet doubtful of the old blind man, put him to choice, either to put on him the habit of a Monk, or to take dear exile, or perpetual imprisonment. At which hard choice he oppressed with woes, lay on bed a great while speechlesse; for being encompassed with barbarous Souldiers, none was left to direct him where to go or stand, But would he or not, they shaving and polling him, cast a Monks habite on him; changing (after the manner) his name to *Anthony* the Monk; of which *Esaïas* was glad, as now no hope to recover the Empire, nor cause for himself to fear. Yet (seeming to be very sorry, but indeed deriding him) he sent two Bishops to know of him how he would be remembered in Church-prayers. To which fetching a great sigh he answered: As in poor *Lazarus* appeared a double miracle, that (dead) he rose, and (bound) walked; so in me, in a contrary manner, who (alive) am dead, and (loose) bound, my tongue also wherewith I might (at least) bewaile my woes and wrongs to the Aire, &c. But shame hath closed my mouth, my brethren abhorre me, and the light of mine eyes is not with me, &c. As for him that sent you, I chose and preferred him to the Patriarchship, before many worthy men, never before preferred, or famous, &c. But in my Calamity he joyned with mine enemies, more cruel than any other: feigning him to be (much like the *Crocodile* of Nile) ignorant and sorry for me. But if I should answer to his catching question,

question, to be remembred in the Church as an Empe-
rour; I shall forthwith be slain. If I say, as *Anthony* the
Monk; it will be taken, that of mine own free will I put
on this habite, which was never in my thought. Thus he
sent them away: and sitting down said, *My soul return to
thy rest*, &c. neither spake he one word more in declaring
his grief, and so against his will passing over his sorrow in
silence, as astonished before the humorus (gathered
into the brain) could be dissolved into tears. But the
Patriarch decreed, he should be remembred before his
Nephew in Church prayers, as the most Religious and
Zealous Monk *Anthony*, the better to colour the matter,
as if weary of the world, he voluntary took it on him.
Yet in four daies, *Synadenus*, understanding the people
secrely to mutter at the hard dealing with him, Ecclesi-
astical Laws enforcing none against will to enter Religi-
ous orders, sent to exact an oath of him in writing, that
he should never seek after, accept of, or substitute any
other in the Empire; and to fear him of his life upon re-
fusal, setting barbarous Souldiers over him: so yielding,
he signed the Oath with a red and black crosse, another
guiding his hand. Thus living two years, on Feb. 12th,
towards night, a day dedicated to St. *Anthones Vigil*,
certain friends had access to him (amongst whom was
the Prince of *Servia's* widow, his daughter, and *Nice-
phoras Gregoras*, Authour of this History) with whom he
entred discourse till past mid-night, then bidding them
farewell; pleasantly saying, *To morrow they would end
their discourse*, no signe of sicknesse appearing. They
gone he eat of a sheell-fish, after which, (as his manner
was when he felt inward heat) he drank cold water, then
feeling a great pain in his Stomach, and afterwards very
sick, fell into a loosenesse; and going of to a house of
Office in an inner Chamber, not able to recover his own
bed, and none to helpe him, he dyed before day, sitting on
a homely bed fast by, having Reigned 43 years, whose
death

death was by strange signs and accidents foretold, a great Eclipse of the Sun, juſt 43 daies before, and after of the Moon, an earthquake the day before, the Sea riſing above the bounds made breaches in the Citie-Walls, &c. Many Croſſes and Pinacles, with a great Pillar before the Church of the 40 Martyrs, (he having wiſhed to live ſo long as it ſtood) were overthrowen. He was honourably buried in the Monaftery of *Libe*, whole Obſequies 9 daies yearly were ſolemnly kept.

Thus the Reader may ſee, the *Greek* Emperours were not at leaſure, to look over into *Aſia*. At which time *Othoman* on one ſide in *Phrygia* and *Bithynia*; and *Aladin's* Succeſſours along *Meander*, encroached as faſt, till the *Greeks* were thruſt quite out. But *Othoman's* 2 Garriſons built before *Pruſa*, having continued certain years, brought the City to ſuch diſtreſs, that many Citizens and others died of famine; The reſt out of hope to be relieved, yielded the City to *Orchanes*, to depart ſafely with as much goods as themſelves could carry. Moſt write the *Turks* faithfully performed the conditions; yet ſome report, *Orchanes* brake moſt part. *Pruſa* was yielded 1327, and afterwards by *Orchanes* made the ſeat of the *Othoman* Kings. *Othoman* died in the year 1328, 69 years old, in the 28th year of his Reign, buried at *Pruſa*; whole Tomb is there yet to be ſeen &c. There is another Monument of him at *Suguta*, by his Father's Sepulchre, made by his Sons. Some report him to be there buried; yet the *Turks* generally ſuppoſe his interring Monument is at *Pruſa*. He was wiſe, politick, valiant and fortunate, full of diſſimulation and ambition, not raſh in attempts, but very reſolute, bountiful eſpecially to his men of war, and the poor. He is worthily accounted the *Turks* Empire's Founder; whole Kings by lineal deſcent are called, The *Othoman* Kings: and the *Turks*, *Oſmanida* or people of *Oſman*.

The

The Life of Orchanes or Vrchan, second King of Turks.

After *Othoman's* death (with great solemnity interred) *Orchanes* or *Vrchan* and *Aladin* his Sons, summoned a Parliament for establishing a new succession, and dividing his treasure and goods; but he having bestowed it on his men of war, there was no Money, Plate or Jewels found, but the remembrance of his life for them to imitate; great Dominions, store of horses and armour, with great herds of Cattel. *Aladin* answered to *Orchanes* asking, what order was to be taken with those things, That it was requisite, first to establish a King, which (like a good shepherd) might govern, &c. And that to him (as his eldest brother) all other things belonged, and so to me instead of a Father, &c. Through this commended modesty of *Aladin*, the Kingdom peaceably descended to *Orchanes*; who would have made him President of his Council; but he requested rather the Lordship of *Fodore*: which frankly granted, *Aladin* lived there (mostly) a private and quiet life, then building two Temples and an Abby at *Prusa*. Some report *Orchanes* obtained the Kingdom by murdering two elder brothers which he had. But that practice (lately much used) was not before *Bajazet* 1. is the most probable collection from the *Turks* Chronicles affirm.

The Christians presently recovered *Nice*, with divers holds from the *Turks*. Among whom *Tzaprichiser* Castle on the River *Sangarius* (by impeaching that passage, into *Bitbynia*) most grieved them. *Orchanes* apparrelling himself and few others like Christian Marchants came to the Castle, craving leave to passe: they supposing them to be Merchants, let them in: who slaying the warders, pos-

Iessed the Castle, who now so forraged the Countrey, that
Nice wanting victuals to relieve so many, fled into it
 for fear, was brought to great extremity; For whose re-
 lief young *Andronicus*, passed the strait into *Asia*, whose
 greatest strength was in 2000 choise horsemen, the rest
 being most Artificers (who carried many small Vessels
 with them to receive them when they should flee) or Ras-
 cals taken up here and there. *Orchanes* sent expert Cap-
 tains to forelay the strait passages, following with his Ar-
 my. The Emperour in three daies march, came to the
 little Town *Philocrene*, and understanding *Orchanes* lay-
 ing not far off, having taken the straits, he there stayed
 that night. Next morning, divers *Turks* Companies
 coming down the Mountains, he set forward to meet
 them. The *Turks* shot freely, keeping themselves a
 loof off. The Emperour supposing that proceeded from
 fear, commanded some Companies disorderly to march,
 and skirmish with them: his expert Captains would have
 had him kept his strength together; yet such was his
 youthful heat, they must needs set forward; But, the fore-
 noon spent in this light skirmishing, *Orchanes* perceiving
 the Christians weary therewith, and the heat, came down
 with a world of men, charging them with a hideous cry,
 some a far off, some hand to hand: both sides were con-
 ragious, with great slaughter, till nights approach; then
 the Christians weary and oppressed with multitudes, reti-
 red disorderly, receiving great losse by the pursuers. The
 battel was at length ended, the Emperour wounded in the
 foot: who going to *Philocrene*, fult by, to be dressed, the
 Army supposing him to have fled, (as if *Orchanes* would
 have slain them all that night) fled also: some to their
 boars: some, hasting to the Town-gates, were by others
 trodden to death: some hanging at one another, got some
 up the Towns Rampiers; others drawn down by the hang-
 ers on, were trod on and perished: some (tis reported)
 died for fear, none chasing them. In the morning, 200 of
 the 300 horsemen that *Orchanes* (retiring to places of ad-

vantage, doubting the Christians farther coming on) had left as scouts, took the spoyl of the forsaken Camp at pleasure; yea, the Emperour's own furniture and saddled horses: the other 100, slew a great number of hapless wandring Christians. The Emperour seeing the hand of God, returned to *Constantinople*: After which, the *Turks* seizing many Sea Towns or *Bithynia*, laid heavy tributes on the other Country places, not destroying them for the benefit thereof.

Nice holding now out in hope only of 1000 horsemen, the Emperour promised to send to lye in Garrison; Of which *Orchanes* understanding, furnished 800 of his own after the Christians manner: who by a compass about, trooped towards the City, in the high-way from *Constantinople*. Then sending 300 other in *Turks* habit, to forage the Country, within the Cities view, what they could: the 800 following them as by chance, put them to flight in their sight: who returned again towards *Nice*. The Citizens, supposing them *Constantinopolitan* horsemen, with joy received them as expected friends; But entering the gates, and seconded with the other 300, bringing also others in ambush not far off, won the great City: whose spoyl the Souldiers had, the Citizens led into miserable Captivity, and they possessing it to this day. *Orchanes* other Captains daily encroached on the weak Christians. *Cunger Alpes* subdued *Mudurn* in *Phrygia*, *Bolli* in *Paphlagonia*, appointing valorous *Abdura Cham*, Governour. Then also old *Accecozza* subjected *Candara* and *Ermome* to the *Turk*, garrisoning all Castles &c. Then about the Captains Son in *Scamandria*, (not far from old *Troys* ruins) died; to whose funeral, his Father with his friends repairing, crafty *Accecozza* suddenly setting on them, slew most and took the rest: with the Captain, his Cattle, and Countrey: whom he leading to *Abydus* renowned Castle (situate on *Asia's* Sea coast, over against *Sestus* Castle in *Europe*) so near as he could, offered him liberty on

the Castles surrender, or they to see him there slain; who said, They might cut off his head, seeth him, and eat him, but the Cattle he would not deliver. The Emperour refused also to redeem him proffered unto him; yet at last by *Nicomedia's* Governour ransomed. *Accecozza* (at *Scamandria*) being long molested by *Abydus* Cattle, and the *Constantinopolitans*, was glad to be most times on horseback against the enemies attempt. The Captain of *Abydus* had a fair young Daughter, who then dreamed that (fallen into a deep miry ditch) a young gallant coming by, did both help her out, make her clean and richly apparel her; the Image was so fantasied, in her troubled brain, that waking she thought she saw him, and sleeping longed for him. *Accecozza*, the while, besieging her Fathers Castle, she often went into a high Tower, to see the Martiall deeds on both sides, &c. But on the first sight of *Abdurachman's* approach to the siege, she thought he was the man dreamed of; wherefore waiting another time of his approach to the Castle, she cast down a Letter fastened to a stone, in *Greek*, (which he delivered to *Accecozza*) promising (after her affections discovery) to deliver the Castle in the night, to *Abdurachman*, he returning with a few, after the siege raised. *Accecozza* giving small credit thereto for fear of treason; yet said to *Abdurachman*, Seeing she hath on special liking chosen thee, Wilt thou adventure? He said, he would undertake it if it were his pleasure. *Accecozza* sharply assaulted the Castle, and presently as despairing brake up his siege. The Defendants rejoicing hereat,urcharged themselves that night with excess; *Abdurachman* came to the appointed place of the Castle, where she was attending, and by her means being conveyed in, and so to the Porters lodg: he slew the Porter asleep, and let his followers in at the gates; who took the Captain, overtaken with Wine and fast asleep: who with his daughter and rich spoil, being presented by *Abdurachman* to *Or-*

chanes, He, glad, gave her with most of the prey to him. There was also one *Cararachman*, so dreadful, that the *Constantinopolitans* would pacifie their children, saying, *Cararachman* comes. *Cunger Alpes* and *Accecozza* shortly dying, *Orchanes* made *Solyman* and *Amurath* his Sons Governours of those Countries. He intending to besiege *Nicomedia*, took divers small holds in his march thitherward, which being governed by a Lady, *Andronicum* his kinswoman, she doubting her forces ability to hold the siege, yielded the City on condition, with whom she would, she might depart with lives, liberties, and goods: so shipping for *Constantinople*, *Solyman* was made Governour of *Nicomedia*. The Temples were converted to Turkish Me'chitas. The greatest being turned into a School for the Students of *Mahomet's* Law, yet called *Orchanes* his Colledge; who placed divers the most experienced Souldiers, with Pensions and possessions for defence of the Countrey near, and open to the Sea, in danger of the *Constantinopolitan* Gallies. Then by *Aladin's* Counsell, all his men wore white caps (which the *Jannizaries* now use) to be known from others wearing red. The *Turks* then and long after, did not shave their beards: so that the King in disgrace, would command a mans beard to be cut or shaven. They borrowed cutting or shaving of the *Italians*; also many other fashions contrary to their ancient ones. *Orchanes*, removing his Court to *Nice*, built a sumptuous Temple, appointing a Preacher for every Fryday: also two fair Abbies, in one of which himself served the strangers, and poor, the first dinner. He first builded Abbeys and Monasteries, whom most his successours imitated. He gave *Solyman* great charge to be vigilant over *Taxara*, *Gouinea* and *Mudurne*, nigh *Nicomedia*; all which Towns, with the Countries joyning, he soon got by composition from the Christians. *Solyman* so tempering justice with clemency, that many Christians became of his Religion, and under his government,

not changing the Countries politique Laws, which greatly won their hearts. *Amurrah* was made Lord of *Prusa*; *Carachisar* Castle with its Seigniory, *Orchanes* gave his Colon *Artemure*.

Orchanes (by perswasion of *Turson Beg* the King of *Charasia's* Son) whose subjects (when dead) denied the elder brother wishing *Turson* their Sovereign) went with an Army into that Country, surprizing to his own ute many Holds by the way. *Orchanes* entred, *Turson's* elder brother fled to *Pergamum*, the *Turks* pursuing; where *Turson* approaching to speak with his brother, was slain from the Walls. *Orchanes* hereupon, threatening to destroy all with fire and sword, if they submitted not by a day to mercy; the people terrified, yielded them selves. The Kings Son also on reasonable conditions, who (sent to *Prusa*) died there after two years, of the Plague; *Solyman* being then made Prince of *Carazina*: One of the greatest Successours of Sulten *Aladin* thereby took end, whose Dominions were not small. *Orchanes* returning, for his good successe, built a Temple and Monastery at *Prusa*, seeking for religious men out of all his Kingdom: of which religious men, the *Turks* write many Fables.

Orchanes so augmented his Kingdom, that, viewing *Europe* from many parts of *Asia*, and incited with desire of Sovereignty, he devised how to passe narrow *Hellespont* into *Europe*: which he imparting to his Son *Solyman*, he answered, He, if he pleased, doubred not to passe the strait, and plant *Mahometane* Religion in those Countries. His Father, much pleased, gave him leave to depart, and proceed as he thought best therein; who journeying into *Carasina*, made to the place (as for pleasure) where *Troy* was said to have stood, by the Sea side. And standing a great while still in a study, without speaking to any, *Ezesbeg* a Chieftain, boldly said, My Lord, what strange thing is this? &c. 'tis some great matter thou art studying on. It is, said *Solyman*, I was thinking how to passe

passe this Seas, to view *Europe* and return undiscovered.
 Said *Ezesbeg*, joyning *Fazilbeg*, We two will by God's
 power perform this. They shewed *Solyman* (desirous to
 know) what place they would passe over; and shortly af-
 ter, making a little boat or rafter arrived by night in *Europe*
 side, near *Zemenick Castle*, of the *Greeks* called *Coiridoca-*
stiron, or Hogs Castle, not far from *Sestus*; where finding
 a good sensible *Greek* in a Vineyard, returning back pre-
 sented him to *Solyman*: who gave him great gifts and
 rich apparel, learning at length of him how to take *Ze-*
menick Castle at unawares; For which, boats being pec-
 cily made, *Solyman* with 80 chosen men passed the Strait
 (not past an *Italian* mile over) with their guide: who
 brought him to a dunghil at the Castle, so high that get-
 ting in (in harvest time) they easily won it. *Solyman*
 sought by courtesie rather than extremity, to win the In-
 habitants good wills; yet some of the better, he sent into
Asia, returning in one day 200 Soldiers more into *Eu-*
rope, and sent *Ezesbeg* in small Vessels to burn the Christi-
 ans Vessels, lest they should hinder his passage: so in
 few daies he had 2000 *Turks* in *Europe*; who doing no
 violence to the vulgar Christians, they began to like of
 them, and converse without fear. Albeit some of them
 had sundry times come over, yet this was the first coming
 of the *Turks* to conquer and inhabit, whose posterity was
 never since removed; but have joyned to their *Asian*
 Kingdom, a great part of *Europe* alio. *Solyman* took *Ma-*
ditus Castle, 2 miles from *Zemenick Castle*, strongly man-
 ning both; After which the *Turks* came in great num-
 ber into *Europe* to dwell in *Chersonesus*: *Solyman* in their
 room, sending Christians into *Asia*, Such was the negli-
 gence and security of the *Greeks*, that when news of *Ze-*
menick's taking was carried Post to *Constantinople*, they to
 extenuate it, said, 'Twas but a Hogstie lost; alluding to the
 Castles name; their foolish laughter (as with a grave one of
 their own) being converted into most bitter tears.

Solyman's strength thus encreasing, he spoyled almost to *Callipolis* about 22 miles off; whole Governour perceiving the *Turk* began to long for the City, went out against him with what power he could (all the other *Greeks* lying still) but he was overthrown, and fled into his City: the *Turks* following spoyled the Countrey, and returning, took both City and Castle in 1358. The *Constantinopolitans* making small account of its losse, commonly said (jesting) The *Turks* had took from them but a pottle of Wine. But they got (in few years) so far into *Thracia*, that *Amarah* placed his Seat in *Hadrianople*, and *Bajazet* his Son laid hard siege some years to the Imperial City, and had not *Tamerlain's* expedition (to him fatal) then happened, he had carried it. But *Solyman* certified his Father what he had done, and that it was expedient speedily to send him a great supply for keeping what he had got, as for further invasion. *Orchanes* welcoming this Message, commanded the *Saracens* likewise, (who were come into *Caracina*, to possess their dwellings who were gone into *Europe*) to passe over, which they did, *Solyman* omitted not to win small Holds, and people them with *Turks*: they of *Caracina* also placing themselves as in a new world; For which, and to extend the Turkish Dominions and Religion, they refused no pains. Not far from *Callipolis* was the little Castle *Congere*, whose valiant Captain *Calo Joannes* molested the *Turks* on that side, under *Ezesbeg* slaying and taking many at advantage. *Solyman* much angered, learning when he was gone out for some exploit, beset the Castle placing others in by waies, lest he should any waies escape. The Captain ignorant, thinking to return with a *Turk* prisoner, was pursued by *Fazilbeg*, and hasting fell into the *Turks* ambush; where all his men slain and he taken, his head was struck off before his own Castle, which forthwith surrendered, and *Chazi Ilibeg* placed therein, who thence troubled the Country to *Didymothicum*: as *Solyman* from *Callipolis*;
 who

who gave divers places (taken thus in one year in *Europe*) to his Captains and Souldiers, as by the Tombs of *Ezes* and *Fazil-beg* there appeareth.

Solyman having king in *Bolare* fields, on *Europe* side, was overthrown in a ditch and with the fall shortly died: whose Father *Orchanes* then laying sick, justly sorrowing, within two months died, about 1359, 80 years old, reigning 31. Some report otherwise of his death and time wherein he lived. But *John Leunclave* in his History of the *Turks* Chronicles, reporteth as before. He was wise, courteous and bountiful, &c. very zealous in his superstition, appointing Pensions to the sayers of *Mahomet's* Law by heart in the Temple, and competent maintenance for all Judges, that for reward they should not pervert justice, living and dying a mortal enemy to the Christians.

The Life of Amurath I. third King of Turks, and the great augmenter of their Kingdom.

A Murath the younger Son succeeded Orchanes : having wondrous successe in his zeal, more than any, for *Mahometan* Religion. Purposing (at first) to invade *Thracia*, he gathered an Army from all parts to *Prusa*; But the *Mahometan Asian* Princes combining, he must turn his forces upon them, prevailing and returning with victory: and next year prosecuting his intended war in *Europe*; wherefore with a strong Army, he passed to *Callipolis*, with *Lala Schahin* his Tutor, whose counsel he most followed in weighty affairs. Then *Benium* Castle was yielded him on composition, and the Town *Tzurulus* he won, after sharp encounter with the Christians: taking divers small places in *Romania* (now called *Rumilia*) in *Thracia*, razing some, and garrisoning others. Then also the valiant ones, *Chasi Ilbeg* and *Eurenoses*, took some Forts on the River *Meritza*, much troubling the Inhabitants thereabouts; wherefore *Didymothicum's* Captain, gathered his Souldiers to intercept *Chasi Ilbeg*, losing most, and himself taken: for whose rancome, &c. the Citizens yielded *Didymothicum*.

Amurath soon after sent *Lala Schahin* to besiege *Hadrianople*: the Christians encountered him on the way, many being lost on both sides, but in the end worsted, they retired to the City. *Schahin* sending news of this victory to *Amurath*, with some Christians heads, *Chasis* and *Eurenoses* going before, himself followed to the siege: which the Governour hearing, fled by night to *Aenus*. The
Hadriano.

Hadrianopolitans seeing this, yielded to *Amurath* in 1362. Some *Turks* Histories otherwise report, especially the taking these 2 Cities: which because 'tis not disagreeing from their subtil dealing, I thought good to set down.

Amurath at first of his reign, concluded a Peace with the *Thracian* Christians, during which the Governour of *Didymothicam* entertained all workmen, more to fortifie his City. *Amurath* caused 200 lusty men to come out of *Asia*, to offer him their service, who gladly used their help: some of the wiser, wishing him to beware of those *Asians*. But he, through the peace, and they no Souldiers, had the lesse care, yet lodging them without the walls every night. *Amurath* (they entertained) requested valiant *Chafis Ilbeg* to go with 30 good Souldiers thither for work, and to espy any opportunity to surprize the City. *Chafis* coming accordingly, they found entertainment, carrying stones, mortar, &c. shewing diligence; he vigilantly awaiting for a surprizal. Night come, and the *Turkish* workmen going into the Suburbs to lodge, *Chafis* secretly departing, shewed *Amurath*, how one gate of the City might suddenly be taken, if he would place a sufficient ambush near, to joyn with the labourers upon occasion: which resolved on, and *Chafis* returning, instructed what workmen he thought meet, what was to be done. Next day at dinner time, these fell at fained words, and blows among themselves, suddenly running to the gate appointed, and laying hands on the Warders weapons. (as to defend themselves) and so slew them; then opening the gate, let in the *Turks* (laying in wait) who presently took the City, and put the chiefeest to the sword. *Rhodesum* also was (in this peace) by sudden assault of *Eureneses* by night taken.

The Christians charging *Amurath* with this breach of League, turned it to his Captains, threatening them severely: feigning himself sick, in a colour, all the while; but he

he refused to restore these Cities, saying, 'Twas against *Mahomet's* Law to deliver that wherein his Religion had been openly taught. Whereupon fresh wars (very redious to both) arose. *Amurath* therefore made peace with them of *Selybria*, *Constantinople* and *Hadrianople*; yet this he desiring heartily to take, causing *Chafis Ilibeg* (as discontented) to flee from his Master to *Hadrianople*; from whence, issuing out with other dissembling fugitives, he often skirmished with the *Turks*, and growing into the Governours favour thereby. Many others also, under like pretence, resorting to him, he wrote secretly to *Amurath*, If he would lend him succour against the time, he would deliver a gate unto him. *Chafis* with ten followers, at day dawn (as going to hunt) came to the gate, which opened, they furiously slew the Warders, and aided by the other fugitives, possessed the gate, till *Amurath's* near ambush, hearing the alarm, speedily came and entered, where was a cruel fight all day; but the *Turks* prevailing have possessed it to this day. These Cities thus (or as aforesaid) taken, *Amurath* seated his Court at *Hadrianople*, as the most fit place for enlarging his Kingdom: from whence a world of woe hath overflowed great part of Christendom, drowning many Kingdoms in *Europe*, the *Greeks* of all other most miserable. The proud Sultan now presently sent *Lala Scabin*, to invade about *Philopolis* with the Country *Zagora* toward *Hemus*, and charging *Eurenoses* to subdue *Ipsala's* Territory; who soon subjected them all, wherein he shortly placed *Sanzacks* or Governours for better assurance thereof.

Cara Rustemes a *Mahometan* Doctor suggesting it, *Zinderlu Chelil* their chief Justice (afterwards *Catradin Bassa* by *Amurath's* command) ordered every fifth Captive above 15 years old, to be taken up, as due by Law, for the King: and if under 5, to pay 25 Aspers a head, as tribute, *Cara* the deviser, being chief Collector hereof, numbers of Christian youths, were by *Zinderlu's* Coun-

sel distributed among the *Asian* husbandmen, to learn the *Turkish* Religion language and manners; where after two or three years painful labour, they (at Court) the better sort, were chosen to attend on and serve the Prince in wars, where they practizing all activity, are called *Jannizaries*, that is new Souldiers. This was their first beginning, but increased under *Amurath 2*, and hath ever since been continued by that and some greater means, being (in time) so great, that they are oft dreadful to the great *Turk* himself, and sometimes preferring that Son they best like, to the Empire, contrary to the will of the Deceased Sultan, now the greatest strength of that Empire, and (being continual Garrisons of martial men) not unlike to be the greatest cause of its ruin.

Amurath (after a great while) determining to return to *Asia*, made *Scabin* Viceroy of *Romania*, *Eurenses* Governor of the marches, *Zinderlu* President of his Council, calling him *Cairadin Bassa* that is, the *Bassa* well deserving. Then returning, he spent that Winter at *Prusa*, *Cairadin* & *Cara* once two Doctors (as *Turkish* histories report) first corrupted that Court with coverousness and bribery, as yet of them much blamed. *Amurath* thus in *Asia*, hearing the *Servians* & *Bulgarians*, had gathered an Army to besiege *Hadrianople*, he greatly prepared for aid in *Europe*; asking *Boga* in his way, putting all Christians that could bear Arms to the sword, captivating the rest, his Souldiers had the spoil, which Town ere long they recovering gave them like measure, and razing it; yet it was rebuilt by the *Turks* in 1365.

The *Servian* &c. Army, now near *Hadrianople*, murdered among themselves: which the *Turks* espying set suddenly on them by night; who (through inward hatred) joyned not against them, being ready to turn their Weapons on each other; whereby the *Turks* put to flight & slew them with such a slaughter, that the place is at this day called, *Zirf Zindugi*, or, the place where the *Servians* were overthrown.

This

This notable news with the spoils fifth part, and many Christians heads, were sent to *Amurath* in *Asia*: who then, returned to *Prusa*; this was in 1366. This year he triumphantly circumcised his Sons *Bajazet* and *Jacup*, building Temples, a Monastery, two Colledges, and a Pallace at *Bilezuga*, *Neapolis*, and *Prusa*.

Germean Ogli, having alwaies envied (as did the other *Seljuccian* Princes) and fearing the *Othoman* Kings greatness might be dangerous to his Son after his death, now very aged, sent *Isaac* a *Mahometan* Doctor to *Amurath*, with rich presents, to offer his daughter *Hatun* in marriage to *Bajazet*, promising with her divers great Cities and Towns, as *Cutai*, &c. with their Territories: *Cutai* being now the City where the *Turks* great Viceroy is resident, as in the heart of lesser *Asia*. *Amurath* liking it well, contracted *Bajazet* unto her, and preparing with great magnificence for the marriage, invited most *Mahometan* Princes; and commanding most of his Nobles to honour it with their presence. The *Egyptians* Embassadour had the highest place of all the others before invited; who all presented *Amurath* with many great gifts befitting their Masters. At length, *Eurenoses* one of his own Nobles, besides many rich gifts, presented him with 100 goodly Christian captive boys, and as many maidens richly attired, with a cup of gold with divers precious stones in one hand, and a silver cup full of gold in their other: the Embassadours wondring at the riches hereof: All which *Amurath* bestowed on them and their presents on *Eurenoses*: None also of the learned and religious came thither so poor, but he went away rich. He sent divers Nobles with 100 Ladies &c. & 3000 horsemen, to attend the brides coming: whom *Germean Ogli* meeting, saluted every man of account: feasting them royally (with Princely gifts) in one of his Cities. And delivering *Hatun* to two ancient Ladies, one *Bajazet's* nurse, sent her away with his wife *Jenses*, and other Courtiers, being

being most royally married at *Prusa*. The dowry promised, was delivered *Amurath*, garrisoning the Cities and Town ..

Chusen-beg Prince of *Amisum*, sold that Territory to *Amurath*. at this marriage, with many others, doubting (as was thought) how to keep them, *Amurath* being come to near him. *Amurath* spending great time in *Asia*, committing that Kingdom to *Bajazets* and *Temurtases* his Government, returned into *Europe* with a strong Army, marching from *Callipolis* towards *Hadrianople*, soon winning *Magalgura* by the way : whither *Lala Scabin* and *Eurenses* coming, he ent them to besiege *Phera*, which they took after few daies. But leading his Army into *Servia*, and foraging the Country 14 daies, presently marched to *Nissa*, the Metropolis and Key of that Kingdom, winning it shortly by *Jaxis Begs* advice. *Lazarus* the Despot was so danted hereat, that for peace he offered 50000 li. tribute yearly, and 1000 mens aid when he required it : *Amurath* granted him peace and departed. Then with much ado he won great *Apolonia* near Mount *Athos*, the Christians departing with wives, &c. and goods not spoiled by the Souldiers. Returning to *Hadrianople*, *Eurenses* (elf) shortly took *Berrhea*, &c. Then also *Scabin* won *Zichne*, and *Seres* in *Macedonia's* confines, with many other upon *Thessaly* and *Thrace* : who made his abode in *Seres* ; great numbers being sent for from *Asia* to inhabit thereabouts forsaken by the Christians. *Aladin* advertised out of *Asia*, that *Aladin* King of *Caramania* his son in Law invaded him with fire & sword, was exceedingly troubled ; Wherefore, telling his Nobles, &c. what *Aladin* (so getting all bonds of Religion, alliance, &c.) had done, whilst he fought with honour, the *Mahometan* sincere Religions increase in *Europe* : from which godly wars, said he, I am forced to turn, against men joyned with us in Religion and alliance ; he appointed *Chairadin Basa* his Lieutenant and his Son

Alis

Alis one of his Councel: so passing into *Asia* and so to *Prusa* he there spent that Winter. To whom *Egyptian* Embassadours, then coming to renew former amity, he thankfully sent them back with kind Letters and rewards. At Spring in 1387, he levying a great Army, to war on the *Caramanian*, he prepared no less power to meet him associating to him all the less *Mahometan* Princes, who brought him great supplies: and thinking himself strong enough for his Father in Law, certified him, That (not being inferiour in power) he did not fear him, yet he could hearken to peace on reasonable terms; but if he had rather have war, he should be ready to dare him battel when he came. *Amurath* willed the Embassadour to tell him, That he, against faith, having cruelly invaded him, whilst busied against the misbelieving Christians, from which, he was by him withdrawn, against their Prophets Law, he would shortly take revenge, therefore he was to expect nought but war willing him to provide as not to be wanting to himself. Wherefore *Aladin* with great persuasions and promises encouraged the Princes to this war: who kissing the ground, promised with Oaths never to forsake him, but to do all that Princes desirous of honor ought to do.

Chairadin died in this preparation in whose stead *Amurath* appointed *Alis* his Son: But he, stayed in his journey towards *Europe*, by urgent occasions, he sent Post for him back again.

Aladin forecasting likely dangers, sent another with reasonable conditions for Peace to *Amurath*, who answered, Perhaps he would have accepted them if one month before sent; but seeing he had drawn him so far into the field, to his infinite charge, no end to be but wars chance; and whereas he called me a *heardsman* &c, in disgrace, if he be not such a one himself, let him meet me in the field, &c. The Embassadour epyed, The King offered not this for fear, but to save innocent blood: which set
apart,

apart, he should find him not inferiour in number of expert Souldiers, or other provision, &c. *Amurath* commanded him to depart, (in great rage) willing his Master, (if of such courage) to endall in the field, not doubting but shortly to chastise him, &c. Three daies after *Alis* came to him, whom he dearly loved, relying much upon his Counsel. The Embassadour leaving nothing untold that *Amurath* had said; *Aladin* said to the Princes, *Amurath* threatneth to take from us *Iconium* and *Larenda*, but let him take heed we take not from him *Prusa*. The Embassadour deeming him about 20000 strong, *Aladin* rejoicing said, Surely he wil not dare give us battel: if he do, it's upon great disadvantage, his men being fewer, and wearied with travel. *Amurath* holding on his way, and daily encouraging his Souldiers with perswasions, gifts, and promises, came to the great Plains of *Caramania*; into which *Aladin* coming encamped, within a daies march of him, resting that night. *Amurath* next morning, put his Army in order, appointing *Jacup* his youngest Son (joyned with expert Captains) in the right wing, *Bajazet* &c. in the left, in which were the 1000 *Servians*: himself in the main battel, *Temurtazes* in the Vanguard, the *Sub-bassa* of *Oxylichus* & *Achmetes* in the rear. *Aladin* set his men in like order, that in all judgment he was not inferiour to *Amurath*. These great enemies came on courageously with displayed Ensigns, and noise of Trumpets, Drums, &c. very great. But the sign given, *Savagazes* one of the Princes, brake *Temurtazes* his ranks, *Teberruses* also a Tartar, and *Varsacides* another Prince, shot arrows like hail upon the Vanguard: which *Bajazet* seeing, (and leave obtained) brake in on the enemy with such violence, that he was surnamed *Gilderun*, that is, Lightning. *Ferizes* and *Hozza* with others, following him with like courage, there was (a great space) a dreadful and doubtful fight; in which many thousands were on both sides slain. At length the confederate Princes (overmatched) fled:

which *Aladin* seeing, despairing of victory sped hastily to *Iconium*. Most of the great spoyle, *Amurath* giving to *Temurtases* and his Souldiers, speedily marched to *Iconium*, besieging *Aladin*, and proclaiming no kind of violence to be done to any on pain of death, that it might appear, he warred against the *Mahometan* rather to propulse wrong than for sovereignty and spoyle; which *Lazarus* his Christians among others transgressing, they were exemplarily punished.

Aladin (without hope of escape) sent to his wife, *Amurath's* daughter, bewailing his estate, and requesting her, by all love to her miserable husband, to adventure her self to crave pardon for his offence of her angry Father; who attired as fittest for her husband's estate, came falling down on her knees, with wise words and distilling tears, and would not be taken up till she had obtained grace; who (*Amurath* entirely loving her) assured of her Father's promise, sent to her husband, to come out next day, and humbly to acknowledge his fault before her Father; who prostrating himself and acknowledging his unprofitableness, obtained, for his wives sake, pardon of life, and restitution to his Kingdom with many great gifts. Latin Historys report this was sought against *Amurath's* Grandfather by the Mother, who spoiled great part of his Kingdom. But the *Turkish* make *Amurath*, *Orchanes*, and *Lulusers* Son the daughter of the Captain of *Jarchiser* Castle. This victory was the true beginning of the *Othoman* Kingdoms greatness in *Asia*; the other *Selzuccian* Princes submitting themselves to *Amurath*, and after to *Bajazet*: till great *Tamerlain* taking *Bajazet*, restored the Princes to their old possessions.

Amurath took *Despotopolis* in his return, in disbanding at *Cutai*, and in triumph, coming to *Prusa*. *Daywod* with his *Servants* returning home, reported to *Lazarus* the Despor,

Despot, that wars success, and in what cruel manner his men were used by *Amurath's* command: With whom, said he, Thou hast causelessly made a most dishonourable peace, by giving faith to such a miscreant, ending thy subjects (in recompence) to be so butchered, besides the shameful tribute: whereis in depth of wisdom thou shalt find thy self nothing inferior to the Tyrant, in warlike force; for by our valour (but a handful) not his, he got the victory. I know he cannot bring into the field above 50000 fighting men, admit 100000, Art thou able to levie far more? and tenfold better provided for all other warlike provision? Besides, the Christian Princes will lend such aid, that his Barbarian forces will be nothing to those thou shalt be able to bring into the field, &c. *Lazarus* was now so moved, he determined to break the servile League; and sent to the King of *Bosna* his neighbour, chiefly to crave aid against their common enemy the *Turk*: who answered, It had been better thus to have been thought of, before the foul and dingy deal contract made, &c. But seeing things done could not be undone, he promised to joyn with him. And meeting at an appointed place, concluded fully all Articles.

There was a Castle in *Bosna's* confines called *Alexandria*, whose Christian Captain was the *Turks* tributary: He under colour of friendship went to *Amurath*, secretly opening that Kingdoms state, and what the King intended against him, heving probable means, how it might be objected, by a convenient power, and offering his own service. He casting a rich garment on him, (a sure token of his favour) appointed *Lala Schahin* to invade *Bosna*; who joyning himself with this Captain, with 20000 men over-running one side, took great booties unresisted: and to do the more harm, by his advice, divided his Army to burn and spoyl in diverse parts.

The King advertized by the Captain of all, conveniently laid ambushes : and as *Schabin* with but 1000 men returned with booty, suddenly 30000 Christians appearing, he would have fled ; but his other gallants, presuming, and loath to lose rich prey, would skirmish with them, and were almost all slain, and the spoil recovered. *Schabin* saved himself by flight, most of the rest being intercepted and slain, scarce 5000 of 20000 returned home.

Amurath, the while, married the *Greek* Emperour's daughter at *Neapolis*, whose 2 sisters also married his two Sons : and then Circumcised *Bajazet's* 3 Sons with great solemnity. Now also *Fazgi Oglı*, his Embassadour to the *Egyptian* Sultan, in requital of his Embassy returned. He, upon the losse in *Bosna*, and the *Despot's* revolt, was much disquieted, commanding *Alis Bassa* to send speedy Commissions into all parts for levying a royal Army, which was done in post-haste. Then were the other *Mahometan* Princes, homaging him, sent for to aid him ; who through fear and zeal, brought them forces. Divers volunteer *Mahometans*, came from far also. *Bajazet*, *Cutai's* Governour, &c. came to aid his Father, with all his forces. Two Christian tributaries *Custendyll* and *Seratzib*, came also ; but *Sasmenos* of *Bulgaria* and the Prince of *Varna* &c. came not. Now *Lala Schabin*, of great years dyed, in whose place, *Temurtases* governed. *Amurath* highly offended and grieved at the 2 Princes revolt, commanded *Alis* with 30000, to invade and spoyl *Sasmenos* his Country : whose Army accordingly assembled, the Bassa took many strong holds in *Bulgaria* ; as *Piravade*, *Venzina*, &c. *Amurath* the while, gathering a great Army, in *Asia*, determined to passe into *Europe* at Spring, committing his Country's Government, to *Temurtases* Bassa, and 4 others ; being stayed a while with contrary winds, he was transported to *Callipolis* by its Sanzack, the 3d time of *Amurath's* Army being brought into *Europe*. *Bajazet* came to him thither : *Alis* also returning

ring out of *Bulgaria* to *Chalcide*, recounted to him his expeditions successe.

Sasmenos seeing his Country spoyled, &c. by his Nobles advice, tying a winding sheet about his neck (a token of deserved death) came to *Calciæ*, and falling flat at *Amuraths* horse feet, most humbly craved pardon, offering to deliver his chief City *Silistria*, a pledge of fidelity: who pardoned him, and in assurance cast a rich garment upon him, sending *Alis* to possess *Silistria*. But (he repenting) delivered it not, but strongly fortified it. *Amurath*, now more offended, commanded *Alis*, with fire and sword again to spoil him: who so terrified the peoples hearts, that many strong places were voluntarily yielded; then he besieged *Nicopolis* the strongest City, on *Danubius*, whither *Sasmenos* was fled; who taking his Son with him craved pardon as he had done before, with whose misery the *Bassa* moved, and having taken most of his Dominion, he granted it. So returning to *Amurath*, who sending for *Jacup* Governour of *Carasia*, repaired to his Father with all his power. This was the greatest Army brought by the *Turks* before into *Europe*. *Lazarus* joyned to him the King of *Bosna*, with *Ulcus Macedons* Prince, his son in law. Also he procured great supplies from *Valachia*, *Hungaria*, &c. and *Italy*, with numbers of voluntary Christians: all which far exceeded the *Turks* great Army. He encamped by the River *Morova* the greater, and sent *Demetrius* (a terrour to the *Turks*) to take the strong Castle of *Serkave*, taken before from *Sasmenos*, and thought dangerous to *Servia*; they hearing he was come, yielded it without resistance. *Lazarus* doubting it would be hardly kept, sent *Ulcus* with 20000 to bring away all therein, and in the City, who razed both, before *Jaxis Begs* coming, sent by *Amurath* to have done the same. The two Christian tributaries met *Amurath* in his march, who marched with their forces before him as guides, and in *Custendill's* Country, was refreshed with

with all necessaries; then passing *Morova* the lesse River; he drew to near *Cossova's* Plains, that he with *Bajazet* could view the Christian camp to cover those large plains: And (daunted) he consulted with his greatest Captains what course to take; and would that day have given battel, but *Eurenoses* dissuading for the heat and Souldiers weariness. next morning he placed *Bajazet*, &c. in the right wings, *Jacup* in the left, himself in the main body. *Ulcum* was in *Lazarus* his right wing, *Bosna's* King and his Son in the left, himself in the main battel: who (they report) had 500000 men: *Amurath* scarce half so many; who drawing out 2000 of the best Archers, and placing them under *Malcozzem* and *Mustapha*, on both sides. *Eurenoses* to diminish, at injoyning battel if he could a little, the Christians following upon hope you should see their defence, and leave an entrance for his men. The archers first charging contagiously, the *Turks* gave a little ground, then the Christians following in the left wing, after hard fight put it to flight; *Bajazet* renewed the battel, that the left wing began to engage in: In which bloody fight many thousands fell on both sides; the armour and weapons brightning as lightning and whose noise, with horses neighing and men's cries was so terrible and great, that the wild beasts stood astonished. About noon, the Christians gave ground, and at length plainly flew, whom the *Turks* pursuing, slew without mercy; *Lazarus* the Despot being slain. Yet some report, he was (with his Son) taken, and afterwards cruelly slain, in revenge of *Amurath's* death: others, that he died in prison. *Amurath* with a few chief Captains, viewing the funerals heaps of dead bodies, a Christian Souldier fore wounded and bloody, arose out of the heap, and as he came towards him, fell divers times, (through weakness); drawing nigh to *Amurath* he was commanded to come nearer, (being stayed by the Quarters) supposing he would crave his life; who

who pressing as if to kisse his feet, stabb'd him in the belly with a dagger under his coat, of which he presently died. His name was *Miles Cobelitz*, shortly after cut in small pieces before *Bajazet*. The *Turks Annals* report, That *Cobelitz* (coming to him as a fugitive servant of the *Deipots*) so stabbed and slew him, being so cut in pieces as aforesaid. Since this, when any comes to kisse the Sultans hand or approach to him, he is (as for honour) led between two Courtiers; but indeed so entangling him, that he shall not violate him. *Bajazet* being brought with an Ensign, as the successor, unto his dead Fathers Tent, secretly conveyed thither; *Jacup Zelebi*, of the Noble, was sent for by the *Bossaes* as from his Father; who coming in ignorant of the chance, was (as most report) by *Bajazet's* command, by them strangled; yet their *Annals* charge not *Bajazet*. Ever since 'twas holden a good policy, in beginning of the *Turks* Reign to Massacre their brethren and nearest kinsmen.

Amurath was more zealous in his superstition than any, of great courage, fortunate in all; he slew more than Father and Grandfather: he greatly enlarged his territories in *Asia*, by sword, marriage and purchase; and by the *Greeks* discord and cowardice he subdued the *Romania* in *Thrace*, with its Territories; leaving the *Constantinopolitan* Emperour little or nothing there, but the City it self. He won much of *Bulgaria*, entred *Servia*, *Bosna*, and *Macedonia*; he was liberal and severe; beloved and feared of his Subjects, of few words, deeply dissembling; slain, being 68 years old, reigning 31, in 1390. He was royally buried at *Præsa*, &c. There is a Castle and Tomb in remembrance of him in *Cassova's* Plains, where he was slain, and his entrails buried.

The Life of Bajazet I. the 4th, and most unfortunate King of the Turks.

B *Ajazer* succeeding his Father, the first year of his Reign, besieged the City *Cratova* in *Servia*, (where-to the silver Mines (not that wars least cause) belonged) yielded to him, on condition, that the Inhabitants might with life and liberty depart; who no looner gone, but they were all slain by his men sent for that purpose. Then also he wone *Uscupia*, with divers Castles near *Cratova*.

Young *Sigismund* King of *Hungary*, advertized by the *Servians*, of *Bajazet's* proceedings, requested him (by Embassadours) as he was just, and wished to live in quiet with his own, to desist from such open wrong, &c. Whom he answered not, till he over-ran a great part of the Despots Country. Then calling them into a Town filled with his Souldiers, said, They might see his right good enough to that Town, and the rest taken, seeing the walls acknowledged it, willing them so to tell their Master; Which poud answer troubled the King, as if open war had been denounced to him: yet, not being well settled in his Kingdom, and doubting of a contrary faction, he was glad then to put it up.

Next year he by *Ferises Beg* taking *Vidina* in *Servia*, returned to *Hadrianople*. But the *Caramanian* King, invading his frontiers in *Asia* the while, though then not at leisure, yet afterwards he fully revenged it. *Eurenoses* then took the City *Sitros* in *Theffaly*: and *Ferises* passed over *Danubius*, grievously spoiling *Valachia*, returning loaden with prey. Now also *Jegides Bassa* entered *Bosna*

Bosna, carrying a number of Captives to *Hadrianople*, where *Bajazet* wintred.

Next spring *Bajazet* passing to *Prusa*, built a fair Temple, a Colledge, and Almes-house, and, returning into *Europe*, a Monastery at *Hadrianople*. In *Asia*, he besieged *Philadelphia*, the onely City in lesser *Asia* holden by the Christians. At first, he straightly commanded not to spoile or hurt any thing belonging to the Citizens, hoping to make them more willing to yield. But finding them resolved to the last, he commanded not to spare any thing: which was by his Souldiers done. The Citizens after long siege, not able to endure, and no hope of relief, yielded their City. Some write, it was not besieged without the Emperour's consent: and the Greeks envying its holding out, helped to win it. At the siege, *Aiden Ogli* Prince of *Caria*, came to *Bajazet*, yielding himself his Vassal: to whom, he restored places taken from him a little before, on this condition, not to coyn money in his own name, or publicquely to be prayed for as before; but all to be done in *Bajazet's* name. Thence he led his Army into *Saruchania*, subduing it on like conditions: Then passing farther, to *Mentesia* in *Caria*, the Prince left it to his pleasure, fleeing to *Castamona's* Prince. And in revenge of the King of *Caramania's* former invasion, he entred it, taking *Cesaria*, and other places: the King glad to be content, making peace as he pleased. As he was making this expedition, Prince *Germian's* son (with a chief Counsellour) coming to him, were sent prisoners over the Straite to *Ipsala* Castle, laying in durance many years. Thus he oppressing most of *Aladin's* successours, returned to *Prusa* in triumph.

Aiden (fled) had incited the Prince of *Castamona*, to invade the bordering side of *Bajazet's* Kingdome. At which time the *Vayvod* of *Valachia* passed over *Danubius* into the parts of *Servia* and *Bulgaria*, possessed by the *Turks*, spoyling the Countrey, and slaying them by heaps;
and

and carrying back many prisoners. *Bajazet* deferring his purpose against the other, turned his forces against the *Valachians*: Wherefore passing to *Hadrinople*, thence to *Nicopolis*, and to over *Danubius*, he entered *Valachia*, spoiling and burning: whom he *Vayvod* giving battle, was overthrown, and many slain; at last, he obtained peace by submission, and a yearly tribute. News being brought (the while) that the Christian Gallies greatly hurt along the Coasts of *Asia* he entered into *Thessalies* destroying all to *Thessalonica*: and taking *Neapolis* in *Greece*, and *Joannina* in *Ætolia*. he was in *Asia*. Next spring he with great power passed the Straite of *Calipolis*, to invade *Hungary*. But (intercepting a spie with Letters from the *Greek* Emperour, giving that King warning thereof; and understanding of another Messenger before sent) *Temurtases* perswaded him to desist, and besiege *Constantinople*, which was (he said) surrounded with *Turkish* Provinces: bringing *Philadelph* for example. *Bajazet* returning, besieged it first by Land, then by Sea, which (most report) continued 8 years, in which, *Emmanuel* the Emperour, left the City to crave aid of the German Emperour, *French* King, and others. The Citizens at length had happily yielded, if the *Hungarian* King (assisted with *French* and other Volunteers, with a 130000 under *John Count* of *Nivers*) had not passed into his Dominions, recovering *Fidina* &c. in *Bulgaria*, and besieging *Nicopolis*. Who (tis reported) should proudly say in his jollity (through his Armies greatnesse) What need we fear the *Turks*? who need not fear the Heavens fall; if they should, we were able to hold them up with our Speares and Halberis. *Bajazet* commanding the ladders, &c. for assault, to be burnt: marched from the siege, with a puissant Army to *Nicopolis*, sending *Eurenosses* before to intercept some Christians, to learn their Armies state. But he returned, without any prisoner taken: which troubled *Bajazet*, fearing a wary enemy. *Sigismund* (leaving sufficient for the siege) went to meet his proud

proud enemies : who (within sight) shewed but half his Army keeping close in ambush not far off with the other. The Christian deeming they were far more in number, divided also their Army to inclose the *Turks*. The *French* daring to give the first Charge, began the battle (the *Hungarians*, &c. not yet in order) where was so many thousands slain. *Bajazet* (ere long) arising with the other halt, and coming on as became his name *Gilderum*, so hardly charged the *French*, that they stood at first as dismayed : but seeing no remedy, and hoping of relief from the rest, fought till they were almost all slain or taken : divers *French* horse-men (as their manner was) fought on foot, which horses running on the *Hungarians*, made them doubt they were quite overthrown : wherewith dismayed, they fled in great haste; the *Turks* pursuing, made great slaughter, many being also drowned in *Danubius*. They took so many, 'twas thought every *Turk* had his prisoner. *Sigismund* (Xerxes like) got over *Danubius* in a little boat, and fearing the *Hungarians* violence for the battle's losse, fled by Sea to *Constantinople*; then sailing to *Rhodes*, and from thence, landed in *Dalmatia* : so after 18 months painful travel, he returned into *Hungary*, where the contrary faction had chosen the King of *Naples* their King, then going with an Army to take possession; had not *Sigismund* (by some Nobles help) prevented him : There were 20000 Christians, 6000 *Turks* slain. The Count of *Nivers* was taken with 300 great ones, who (after great Contumelie before *Bajazet*) was commanded to choose 5 other Captives, and with them was sent to *Prusa*, (all the rest being cut in pieces before his face) and ransomed afterwards for 200000 Duckets. This bloody battle was in 1396.

Bajazet thus relieving *Nicopolis*, besieged *Constantinople* more hardly than before; building Forts, &c. on one side, and a Castle upon the strait over against it, to hinder (what possible) passage thereto by Sea. This 3 years siege,

Imp-

I suppose (by the History) was part of the 8 years. *Emmanuel* (wearied) sent to *Bajazet* for peace: to which, (hearing that *Tamerlane* intended shortly to war upon him) he the more harkened; yet on condition, for the *Turks* to dwell in a Street of the City, with freedom of Religion, Laws, their own Judge, and to give him 100000 *Duckars* yearly; which he was glad to accept of. A Temple was built, for the *Turks* sent out of *Bythimia* there to dwell: which when *Bajazet* was overthrown by *Tamerlane*, was pulled down, and the *Turks* driven out.

Stephen, Despot of a part of *Servia*, *Lazarus* his son, sent *Bajazet* an Embassadour with loving Letters, and Royal presents: by whom, also the old Princessse offered her fair Daughter *Despina* in marriage, who was promised him, whilst *Amurath* lived. *Bajazet* being very glad thereof, she was forthwith sent to him; and with great solemnity shortly married. He held her dearest of all his wives, restoring (for her sake) the *Semendre* City and Castle, and *Columbarium* to her Brother *Stephen*: She allured him to drink wine, forbidden by their Law, and to delight in sumptuous Banquets, never used by his predecessors. Corruption increasing in the *Turkish* kingdom, *Bajazet* determined to execute divers apprehended Judges: whose estate though *Alis Bassa* (in such favour with him that the Vulgar honoured him as the King) and other great ones pitied; yet (He dangerous to be spoken to when angry) none durst intreat for them. *Alis* requested an *Aethiopian* jester (who many times (under some jest) would bolt out that, in the Kings heart, which his Counsellours durst not speak of in secret) to devise some meanes for these Judges, &c. Who putting on a rich Hat wrought with gold, and apparel bebecoming an Embassadour; presented himself before the King with a Counterfeit gravity. *Bajazet* asked him, why he was so gay. I have a request said he to thee, wishing

wishing to find favour. *Bajazet* asked him, what it was. I would fain go (said he) Embassadour to *Constantinople*. To what purpose, said *Bajazet*? To grave 40 or 50 of the Emperours grave Monks and Fryers to bring thither. What should they do here, said he? To be placed instead of the doting Judges to be put to death, said the jeaster. I can place of my own, said *Bajazet*. True (said he) for gravity, &c. so would the Monks, &c. serve, but not so learned as those in thy displeasure. If they be learned said *Bajazet*, why do they contrarily pervert justice, &c? There's good reason, said he. What reason, said *Bajazet*? He (poynting to *Alis*) can tell better than I (said he): who, commanded to give the reason, shewed, those Judges (being not conveniently provided for) were inforced (many times) to take rewards to the staying justice. Which true, he commanded *Alis* to appoint them convenient stipends, granting their pardon. The *Bassa* set down, the Judge to have 20 aspers of every suite exceeding a 1000; [and for every writing, &c. out of the Court 12 aspers: taking it at this day. *Bajazet* (not long after) intended to put certain Commanders to death, grievously offended for a small occasion. Who (before him) the Countellours sate hanging down their heads, not daring to speak a good word for them, &c. The jeaster stepping forth earnestly requested him to execute them presently as Traitors; rayling on them, &c. *Bajazet* asked him why he so exclaimed, thinking he could greatly accuse them. Because the Knaves be good for nothing, said he, and they say, *Tamerlane* is coming against us: if thou take up but an ensigne, and I go before with a drum, Ile strike up such a terrible march, that we shall need none of these, &c. to get the Victory. *Bajazet* musing deeply a great while, and considering the jeasters drift, granted them an unlooked for pardon. *Bajazet* sending this jeaster to his Mother, to bring her desired news of his successe against the Christians; she began to demand how he did,
and

and of his successe. He answered; Very well, having won a great Country, enriching his Souldiers. A little after, she asked him again. How he did, and how he sped in his Wars. He answered, as before. But asking the 3d time how he did, Dost ask me so often (said he) Oh ? where ! thou hast brought forth a son like a Devil, who doth nought, but burn and destroy the World where he cometh. She crying out, upstart he, and was never more seen.

Bajazet passing over *Hellespont* against the *Valachian*, who had aided *Sigismund*, leaving *Temurtases* his Lieutenant at *Ancyra* : The *Caramanian* King came and surprized *Temurtases* (by night) sleeping not in, and carried him in bonds to *Caramania*. But *Bajazet* ending his Wars in *Valachia*, he (fearing) released *Temurtases*, apparelled him richly, craving pardon for his wrong, and sent great presents, to *Bajazet* to make his excuse : *Bajazet* would not hear the Embassidour, but then levied a great Army to invade him. *Aladin* now levied all forces he could, entertaining all mercenary Souldiers ; and at *Aczac* upon the way gave him battle, but was overcome and put to flight : in which, his horse stumbling and he falling, was taken and brought bound to *Bajazet* ; his 2 sons being taken also and sent to *Prusa*. Himself was delivered to *Temurtases* : who presently caused him to be hanged, *Bajazet* seeming to be very sorry, for he was his Sister's son. He won *Iconium*, &c. with all *Aladin's* kingdome : also *Amasia*, *Cappadocia's Metropolis*, was delivered to *Bajazet*, by its Prince, too weak for *Casi-Burchanidin* Prince of *Sebastia*, and who had solicited *Egypt-Sultan* to aide him against *Bajazet* : Who led his Army towards *Sebastia*, whose Citizens had deprived *Casi* for cruelty, placing in his son ; but soon weary of the son, they sent that they would yield it to him coming that way : *Casi's* his son now fled to *Nasradin* his brother-in-law ; the Citizens delivering it to *Bajazet* accordingly, leaving

Solyman

Solyman his eldest son Governour. So conquering *Caramania*, taking *Amasia* and *Sebastia*, most of *Cappadocia* and all *Rumilia*, *Asiatica*, he wintred at *Prusa*: who at spring, (*Cuirum* of *Castamona* dead) came thither with a great Army; wherefore his Son *Isendar* fled to *Synope*, whence he humbly requested him, to suffer him to have that little City to live in; and not seek the sons blood, for the Fathers offence. *Bajazet* granted it; yet took from him *Castamona* with most of *Pontus*, giving it to *Solyman*. Then also he oppressed Prince *Germean*, and took from him all his Dominion. And the Prince of *Mentesia* abiding at *Castamona*, and doubting now of safety after *Cuirum* *Bajazet's* Death, fled into a *Hermite's* habit to *Tamerlane* the *Tartar*. *Bajazet* returning, built a magnificent Temple at *Prusa*, during which, he forbore wine, reposing with grave and learned men, and administering justice; greatly winning his subjects: and now all bordering Princes stood in great fear of him.

Achmetes King of *Bagdat* and *Eiracum*, with *Josephus* of *Colchis* forced by *Tamerlan's* incursions, fled for their lives into *Syria*, and (discovered) were imprisoned by *Egypt's* Sultan: from whence escaping, they fled to *Bajazet*. *Achmetes* after two months, by *Bajazet's* aid, recovered *Eiracum*. *Josephus* tarrying 8 months, procured *Bajazet* to invade the *Egyptian*: who slew his general, discomfiting his forces, took *Malatie* in *Armenia*, with 3 places taken from the *Turcomans*, spoyling all threabouts. Thence marching towards *Erznitzane*, *Tachretin* its Prince meeting him, yielded all into his power, who giving it to *Josephus*, after 6 daies, (finding them unwilling to be governed by a Stranger) surrendered it into his hands again. Them of *Erznitzane* requesting him to have their old Prince *Tachretin*, he granted: but sent his wife and children, as a pledge, to *Prusa*, where they were (e e long) made away.

Bajazet having mightily prevailed in *Romania*, *Bulgaria*,

garia, &c. and other places in *Europe*; and having worse oppressed the *Mahometane* Princes of *Asia*, some of whom he slew: some he exiled, some imprisoned, and other living, but at his devotion; and fearing no man, was (as he thought) the Worlds terrour; divers of these *Mahometans*, met at *Tamerlans* Court, whither they fled for relief. *Germian Ogl*i after long imprisonment in *Europe*, brake prison with his great Counsellour, who consorting and roaming with loytering Companions, delighted the people with toys; so passing *Hellespont*, came with much ado to *Tamerlane*: the Prince of *Mentesia* (shaven) as aforesaid, *Aidin Ogl*i passing as a Pedler, came thither also: *Tachretin* as a serving-man attending on *Iffendiar* coming as an Embassadour from another Prince. These with others ariving at *Samarcand*, every one particularly complaining, all earnestly requested *Tamerlane* to revenge the wrong done them by the Tyrant *Bajazet*. In so great a matter, he coldly answered them, that he could not tell, whether all were so as they reported; but he knew him very zealous in the *Mahometan* Religion, therefore warring on the Christians: in which godly cause (said he) perhaps they refused to assist, or had given him some greater offence: For (said he) I can hardly believe, such a Prince as he would, without cause, offer you such violence, especially to Neighbours, and of the same Religion. Yet I will first send an Embassadour to him, to understand more of him and his proceedings, before I resolve on any thing. But being advertized that *Achmetes* and *Josephus*, were come to *Bajazets* Court for aid, he deferred to send, suspecting *Bajazet* (by them incited) would first war on him. But they being departed, he dispatched his Embassadour with many rich gifts, &c. requesting him to deal kindly with these poor *Mahometan* Princes; as also with the Greek Emperour, whose intercessour to him he was become. Some report he desired the Kings of *Bagdat* and *Celchis*

to be delivered him ; seeming to dislike his proceedings against the *Turcomans*. But *Bajazet* (highly offended with this Embassage) in great scorn rejected his presents, especially certain garments ; bidding his Master meddle with his own matters, &c. and not prescribe him Laws with whom he had nought to do ; and to send his rags to his inferiours, not to Princes of greater power than himself. Adding many despightful and disdainful words : calling him plain *Tamerlan*, and the Husband of a whore, if he met him not in field, wishing himself to take his thrice divorced wife (polluted by another) if he met him not in battle wherever he durst. Which answer (aggravated by *Axalla* a Christian *Genoway*, and one of his greatest Counsellours, and the Greek Emperours friend) was so ill take, that he resolved (all things set apart) to go against the *Turk*. Besides, he thought it not fit to suffer so unquiet a Neighbour to grow great, who adding conquests to conquest, might in the end prove dangerous to his own Estate. *Tamerlan* (though a *Mahometan*) for the fidelity, valour, and virtue he found in *Axalla* a Christian, was advised by him in his greatest affaires, disliked none for his Religion, so he worshipped but one God, Creatour of Heaven and Earth, &c. For which cause he permitted all Religions within his Countries ; were they not Atheists, Idolaters, or worshippers of strange gods.

Bajazet (not ignorant of *Tamerlan's* power and purpose) prosecuted the enlargement of his Empire, and increase of his strength: deeming *Tamerlan's* messages to be forewarnings of his designs against him ; which he was so far from fearing, that he spared no intemperate speech to provoke him the more.

It shall not be much from our purpose, to see what this mighty *Tamerlane* was, who held the East in such awe, that he was commonly called Gods wrath, and the Worlds terror. Most report him to have been poorly born,

O

born, and (in youth) to be a poor Shepherd, or herdsman in the Mountains; where consortng with other sturdy Companions, he became a masterful thief among them. To whom other such still resortng, he soon grew to that greatnesse as none but he ever yet came to; contrary to the course of things, which from small beginnings grow not to notable perfection, but by degrees; and that in long time. Wherein, late *Historiographers* seem too much to follow the *Turks* report, who (by him brought low) charge him with many untruths, making him first a very abject amongst men: and for cruelty a monster in nature, &c. which reports, I list not to follow: especially, others (of no lesse credit) with greater probability, reporting of him the greatest honour. He was born at *Samercaud*, chief City of the *Zagaxian Tartars*, whose Father was *Zain Cham* or *Og* their Prince, 3d in descent from *Zingis* before remembred: which *Og* (of a peaceable Nature) long lived in happy peace with his subjects: contenting himself more with the increase of his estate, than hoording up gold or silver: which (happily) occasioned some (ignorant of the *Tartars* Princes custome) to report *Tamerlane* as a Shepherd's son, &c. His Father well stricken in years, delivered him his Kingdom, but 15 years old and joyning *Ordinar* and *Aly* two faithful Counsellours to assist him in Government, retired himself to a solitary life. He first proved his Valour against the *Moscovite*, for spoyling a City under his protection, entering his Country, & proclaiming war against him: whom he overthrew, slaying 25000 of his foot, between 15 and 16000 horse, with the loss of scarce 8000 horse, and 4000 foot of his own. Where he beholding so many dead on the ground, to a familiar, lamented the condition of great Armies Commanders, commending his Fathers quiet life, &c. protesting he was heartily grieved thereat. The *Moscovite* (discouraged) sent for peace, which was concluded on such conditions as he pleased. The great
Chan

Cham of *Tartary* now growing old, sent to him divers presents, offered him his onely daughter, and with her to proclaim him heir apparent of his Empire: as in right he was, being his Brothers son. Which *Tamerlane* gladly accepting, was afterwards done: being supported by his Father-in-law while he lived, and succeeding him after his death. Yet (the while) he wanted not envious Competitors: who now onyars of his way against the King of *China*, *Celiz* (of great power in the great *Chams* Court) with a puissant Army seized on great *Cambalu*, the Citizens also disdaining to be governed by the *Zagataian Tartar*. *Tamerlane* returning with most of his Army, met the Rebel, who had 80000 horse, and 100000 foot, and (above 50000 being on both sides slain) overthrew him, (himself being beaten to the ground) took him and beheaded him. His state newly confirmed by his Victory: he proceeded in war against *China*, breaking down their strong wall of 400 Leagues long, and entered their Country, overcoming the King, leading 350000 with the slaughter of 50000 of his men, took him, and yet (wisely moderating his Fortune) shortly freed him: yet, as having taken half his kingdom, leaving *Ormar* his Lieutenant; and imposing other conditions, with 300000 Crowns yearly tribute. So returning in triumph to the old Emperour at *Cambalu*, glad to see him and his daughter, who had still accompanied him.

The War against *Bajazet* resolved on, he sent *Axalla* to *Sachetay* or *Zagati* to begin assembling of forces, that at first of the spring he might set forward. He procured from his Father-in-law a 100000 foot and 80000 horse, hoping to have as many from *Sachetay*, besides 50000 from the Lords that would accompany him, and divers other supplies expected also; he would oft say, he was appointed by God to abate the *Othoman* pride. So departing towards *Samarckand* his Empires seat, he left the great Emperours forces to come to *Qasara*; the place of

general meeting. The *Moscovite* (requested) sent him 15000 horse, with a sum of money, and to passe thorow his necessary Territories. *Axalla* the Livenant general had (the while) assembled all the Army at *Ozara*, whom *Tamerlane* sent for to *Samarchand*, to conferre about setting forward; for by his advice he did all things, without him nothing: who wanted not the envy of the Court, but his virtues, Courtesie, and worthy services, supported him against malice: who having largely discounted with him about the Armies estate and order: they shortly departed to *Ozara*, where *Tamerlane* consulted with his most expert Captaines, whether to lead his Army towards *Capha*, by the *Moscovites* Coasts, or on tother side the *Caspian* Sea by *Persia's* skirts. It was (in the end) resolved to passe (thoughe the longer way) by the *Moscovite*, so to the *Georgians*, and *Therizonda*, thence into the *Othoman* Kings Country. From *Ozara* he came to *Maranis*, staying 3 daies for *Odmars* forces from *China*, receiving news thereof; paying, and generally mustring his Army. He conveyed Victuals, and most of his Furniture by the *Caspian* Sea, a great ease to his Army, to passe some 20 Leagues thorow places without victuals and water. His Army extended 20 Leagues: At the river *Edel* he stayed at *Zarazich* while his Army passed over at *Mecker*, and 2 bridges made for that purpose. The *Circassians* and *Georgians* now offered him all assistance they could, he passing that way. The *Georgians* being Christians, a great and warlike people, long tributaries to the Greek Emperours; tributaries, and sometimes confederates to the *Persians*, but the *Turks* enemies: *Axalla* drew great number of them to his Princes service, whom (being tall, beautiful, strong, courageous, and expert) he not a little esteemed: who had oft resisted the *Othoman* Power by their rough Countries advantage. *Tamerlane* was by these, with all necessities relieved: In marching thorow whose Countries, he so severely ordered his

his Souldiers, that if any had taken injuriously but an Apple, or the like, he died for it. 'Tis reported, a woman complaining of a little milk taken from her, he ript up the Souldiers stomach; where it (lately drunk) being found, he sent her away, contenting her; who otherwise had surely died. Which severity (or many accounted extreme cruelty) was the preservation of his Army, whose Camp (now, as a well governed City) was stored with all things: Artificers and Merchants from far, and Country peoples, receiving present money, and safely departing. Then coming to *Bachichich*, and staying 8 dayes to refresh, he numbered 400000 horse, and 600000 foot: of as some present affirme, 300000 horse, and 500000 foot: whom he generally paid, orating what orders (and military discipline whereof he was curious) he would have kept. Then also, every Common Souldier might more boldly behold him, than on other dayes. Who passing the Georgians, and coming to *Bussabnich*, *Axalla* who led the head of the Army, came to him with news that *Bajazet* raising *Constantinople* siege, was resolved to come to battle in *Asia*; (trusting more to the experience, than multitude of his Souldiers) whom, *Tamerlane* could hardly be perswaded, would adventure out of *Europe*, but rather there protract time to weary him: at which he not insolently rejoicing, said, a small number well conducted, did oft carry the victory from a confused multitude, staying 3 dayes, his Souldiers still marching, passed over *Euphrates*, the rather to maintain his Army on the enemies spoile. All Cities yielding, he favourably received, those refusing, he used with all extremity: especially strong *Sebastia*, where some of his fore-runners were cut off, and the gates in contempt set open. *Tamerlane* offended, sent certain horsemen (upon his displeasure) so to bear themselves, that he might find the City taken, or the gates shut: for nothing was more dreadful to his men than his displeasure: if any in huncing gave way to the

Lyon or Bear for fear, and slew him not, he was fore to dye: and to turn his back on the enemy, was to run on his own death. The garrison *Turks*, seeing these *Tartarians* (not many) issued out to meet them, who were to charged by them: that (retiring) for haste they shut on part their own, lest the enemy following should have entered of with them: who were slain by the *Tartarians*. Shortly after came *Tamerlane*, and sitting down before it, lay still 7 daies, the defendants thinking he intended to distresse it by long siege. But about the 8th day the walls, &c. in many places undermined, were suddenly overthrown, leaving large breaches to enter. The *Turks* forthwith yielded in hope of their lives: but he (as the *Turks* report) commanding deep pits to be digged, buried quick all the people of the City, and utterly rased it: Then he bid *Malcozzius* the Governour, spare onely for that purpose, to go tell his Master, what he had there seen; which tragedy he relating *Bajazet* demanded of him, with Army he thought the bigger, he answered, *Tamerlane* had the greater number. *Bajazet*, in great choler, replied, surely the *Tartars* fight both to frighten this coward, that he thinketh every army to be two. Most reported that *Tamerlane* putting he men to the sword, overrunning women and children with his horsemen) in the fields, except a few for prisoners. Also that *Bajazet* losing these his elder son, of some called *Orthobules*, in his march, hearing a Shephard merrily repeat him with his pipe, (singing long liltning) with a d'op fight. Oh happy Shephard! which had neither *Orthobules* nor *Sebastia* to lose. Yet the *Turks* give *Orthobules* lost 6 years before, against *Cassius Buchanan*: They reported 12000 in all to be in *Sebastia* lost. Other Cities yielded for fear of like danger, whole Citizens (chiefly the Christians in respect of the Greek Emperour) he courteously used, &c. Not gone far, he was certainly advertised, that *Bajazet* (coming) was within 30 Leagues of him; after which, he marched more closely with his

his Army. *Axalla* sent *Chiansen*, Prince of *Ciarcan* with 4000 *Parthian* horie, to know (if he could) of the *Turks* Army, &c. and make relation to him: who (sending another *Parthian* with 500 horie before) not ridden 10 leagues but heard of *Bajazet's* coming, and surprizing *Sennas*, understood his Armies state, to marching forward. *Tamerlane* commanded him not to retire, till the enemies arrival seen, and to give him notice every hour, himself resolving not to passe further, being at a large plaine, and Country, advantagious for battel of his Army far greater than *Bajazets*. Yet, (his Army being of divers Nations, and not to fight against the soft *Chinois*, but the *Turks* most warlike, &c) he thought to be well advised in proceeding. Wherefore he sent for *Axalla* to view the place; who not mistaking it, advised him to keep *Sennas* as long as possible. So sending word unto them, to fire it upon the enemies, approach, and so withdraw, that the enemy not desiring there to incamp, might come forward to those plaines. The *Turks* drawing near *Sennas*, they all retired, except some 100 left to fire it, which done, they retired in great disorder. *Ciarcan* dividing in two parts, commanded the first to receive the 100, purposely in disorder fleeing so soon as the enemies pursued them, retiring altogether. Himself stood in a Valley near a wood, unseen: where suffering 2000 horie enemies to pass by, he charged them home in the reare the retirers turning on them also: who thus beset, fled, most being slain, the rest taken prisoners: who were sent to *Tamerlane* as a present, with the *Bassa* of *Natolia* who led them; whom *Tamerlane* demanding, why *Bajazet* shewed such contempt of his Army, &c. He answered, his Lord was Sun upon Earth, ensuring no equal: that he was rather astonished to see him enterprize from so far, to hinder his Lords fortune; the heavens bending to further it, &c. that he committed great folly in resisting it. *Tamerlane* replied, he was sent from Heaven to punish his rashness, and to teach him, the proud are hated of

God, &c. Thy self (said he) hatt felt already my *Parthians* Vaour against thy Turkish, and I have caused him already to raise *Constantinoples* siege, and look to his own in *Asia*. Furthermore he demanded, if his Master resolved to bid him battle? Be assured (said he) he desires nothing more: and I would I might acknowledge thee in giving me leave to assist my Lord. Go, (said *Tamerlane*) and tell thy Lord thou hatt seen me, and he shall find me on horse-back, where a green ensigne is displayed. The *Bassa* thanking him, &c. and returning, declared he had seen him, and reported all he witnessed him; and published his courtesie: who besides liberty, had given him a fair furnished horse, though he were to serve against him. *Bajazet* answered, he would shortly try him, hoping ere the march ended, to make him acknowledge his folly. Next day the 2 Armies encamped within a League: where the *Scythians* (greedy and needy) talked (all night) of the spoile, the *Parthians* of honour, the Christians of their deliverance, &c. All which *Tamerlane* hearing, rejoiced to see his Souldiers hope of Victory: who after the 2 watch, thought to sleep a while in his pavilion. But his cares not suffering, he then read (as ordinary) in a book of his Ancestours lives, not to deceive time, but to imitate and decline what they worthily did, or by rashnesse; &c. fell into. After slumbring, he sent for *Axalla*, who came with divers great Capitaines, with whom consulting a while, he mounting, sent every one to their Charges to make ready. At which, he heard, the enemy came to take his ground; whole Order he desired to see, to marshal his own by. Causing 3000 horse to advance, to begin skirmishing, himself followed to lodge every part in places, foreseen for his advantage. Seeing the *Janizaries* in a square battle in midst, on the 2 fronts 2 squadrons of horse, seeming 30000, and another covering the *Janizaries* battalion, he thinking this order hard to be broken, said to *Axalla*, I thought to have fought a foot, but

but now I see it behooves me to fight on horse-back, to encourage my Souldiers, to open the enemies great battalion. And my will is, that my men come so soon as they may, for I will advance with a 100000 foot-men, &c. *Ciarcan* commanded the first 40000 horse, Lord *Synopes* a *Genovois*, the foremost foot: *Axalla* over 5 squadrons of horse. *Bajazer's* Army came bravely on towards their enemies, who stirred not from their place; except some light horse-men (as loose) skirmishing before the Armies. *Tamerlane* had notice that *Bajazer* meant to fight on foot in midst of 30000 *Janizaries*, in whom he most hoped. His horse were 14000 old Souldiers. The *Egyptian* Sulcan having also sent him 30000 *Mamalukes*, with 30000 foot: whole Army marching in one front like a half moon, (but not so well knit as *Tamerlanes*) seemed almost as great as his. So with horrible out-cries still advancing; *Tamerlane* standing fast with great silence. Young *Ciarcan* with his 40000 horse, was in the first encounter almost wholly overthrown, by the *Turks* most furious charge: yet fighting valiantly and entring into the midst of the *Janizaries*, was himself slain. About which time, *Axalla* with the avaunt-guard, cutting a wing of the enemies all to pieces, and his foot joyning, faced the *Janizaries*, who valiantly behaved themselves for their Prince's safety. This hard fight continued one hour, not any seen scattered, horse-men rushing together like mountaines, men dying, crying and threatening all at once. *Tamerlane* patient the while to see the event; at length his men giving ground, he sent 10000 horse to joyn with the 10000 for the reare ward to assist him at need, and charged himself, causing the foot to charge, commanded by the Prince of *Chanais*, who furiously charged the *Janizaries* where *Bajazer* yet was: in whose Army were a number of mercenary *Tartars* called *Destenses*; with many 1000s. taken up in exiled Princes Countries, who seeing some their friends, others

their

their Natural Princes in *Tamerlane's* Army, revolted from *Bajazet*. Who yet with his own men, and the Christians from *Servia*, and other places help, with great courage maintained the fight: but the multitude (not true valour) prevailed. *Tamerlane* giving a fresh charge, and his avantguard knit to him again reinforcing it, he with much ado obtained the victory. *Bajazet* wounded and mounted to escape, fell into *Avalla's* hands (thinking him *Tamerlane*) who for a space took him for some other great Commander; *Musa Bajazet's* son with divers great Capitaines were taken there also, with *George*, De pot of *Servia*, who (yet) gained the reputation of a Worthy Captain, who afterwards brought to *Tamerlane*, was by him wel-comed; but reproved for fighting against him, come in favour of the Emperour, and other oppressed Princes as himself was. Who answered, his own safety (against his will) made him take *Bajazet's* part, to whom all the World seemed to bend: Whereupon he gave him leave to depart at pleasure. *Bajazet* being afterwards brought to him, and courtously entertained, presumptuously answered him to what ever he demanded. *Tamerlane* (moved) told him, 'twas in his power to make him lose his life. He answered, Do it; that loss should be his greatest happinesse. *Tamerlane* demanded why he enterprized to subject so Noble a Prince as the Greek Emperour? He answered, for glory and sovereignty, that moved thee to invade me. But wherefore (said he) art thou so cruel towards the conquered, without respect; said he, for the greater terror of mine enemies. What (said *Tamerlane*) wouldst thou have done with me, if I had fallen in thine hands? I would (said he) have enclosed thee in a Cage of Iron, and in triumph have carried thee up and down my kingdom: So (said *Tamerlane*) shalt thou be served. So being taken out of his presence, he said to his followers: Behold a proud and cruel man, he deserveth to be chastized accordingly, &c. I acknowledge

ledge God hath delivered to me a great enemy this day, to whom we must give thanks; which he did. Next day (the dead being to be buried) *Ciarcan's* body was found among the dead Janizaries: *Tamerlane* greatly lamenting his Kinſman's death, and embalming it, convey'd it with 2000 horſe, (and divers priſoners chained, &c.) to *Samarchand* till his coming: The other were honourably buried at *Sennas*.

This bloody battle, in 1397, was fought from 7 in the morning till 4 in the after-noon. *Tamerlane's* politique ſtiring of *Bajazet's* ſtrong forces, was the ſafeguard of his own. The number ſlain is diverſly reported: the *Turks* ſay that *Bajazet* loſt his Son *Muſtapha*, with 200000 men *Tamerlane*, not many fewer; others that there were 60000 *Turks* ſlain, of *Tamerlane's* 20000. It was three daies (as they report) before *Bajazet* could be pacified, but ſtill ſeeking and calling for death: neither did *Tamerlane* afterwards courteouſly uſe him, but, as of a proud man, made ſmall account of him, and ſhackling him in golden fetters, made him be ſhut up in an iron Cage, to be ſeen on every ſide, ſo carrying him up and down in *Aſia* to be derided of his own people, uſed him for a foot-ſtool when he took horſe; and at other times fed him, like a dog, with his crumbs. All which he did, not ſo much for hatred, as to ſhew God's Judgment againſt the arrogant folly of the proud.

This great overflow ſo ſeared all *Bajazet's* Countries in *Aſia*, that *Axalla* ſent to proſecute with 40000 horſe & 100000 foot came unreſiſted to *Pruſa*, whither the armies reminders were retired, the Country ſtill yielding as he went. Yet, the great Baſſa with the reſt fled over *Helleſpont* to *Hadrianople* carrying *Solyman*, the eldeſt Son, with them, ſetting him up in his Father's place. *Mahomet*, the younger, fled to *Amafia*. *Pruſa* yielding to *Axalla* without reſiſtance, he riſed it taking (with other Wives and Concubines) fair *Deſſina*, which doubled *Bajazet's* grief.

Emmanuel

Emmanuel the Emperor sent his Embassadors to *Prusa*, whom *Axalla* stayed till *Tamerlane's* coming; who receiving them honourably, shewed them his magnificence, and order of his Camp, to their great admiration. By these, the *Greek* Emperour submitted all to *Tamerlane*, as his Vassal, bound to do (he said) being delivered from the cruellest of Tyrants, by the long journey, discomforts, losse of his People, and danger of his person: besides his many virtues and accomplishments. And therefore he would attend him in his chief City, to deliver it, with all the Empire, into his hands. The Embassadors, looking for nought but bondage, thought *Tamerlane's* acceptance thereof in friendship was the best bargain that they could make. But he, mildly beholding them, answered, He was not come from so far to enlarge his dominions, already large enough; but rather to win honour: And it should appear that he was come to aid him, as his ally, being requested: that his upright meaning was the greatest cause that God (by his power) had bruised the fiercest enemy of mankind, under heaven: He desired no more, but that his service for the *Greek* Emperour might be ingraven in the memory of his posterity, that they might for ever wish well to him and his Successors: Long might the noble Emperour live happily to govern: And that he (before his returne) would consider that he should not lightly fall into the like jeopardy. Few Princes (I suppose) would perform such a part; but there be but few *Tamerlanes* in the World. One of these joyfull Embassadors, being sent to carry this unexpected news, filled the Emperour (with all *Constantinople*) with exceeding joy and gladnesse; who shortly after passed to *Prusa* to see *Tamerlane*, and, in person, to give him thanks: who, being very glad, sent *Axalla* to meet and conduct him to *Prusa*, where these great Princes met with the greatest magnificence, spending a whole day together. *Tamerlane* had a desire to see *Constantinople*; yet

yet he would go thither as a private person, which by *Axalla* was accomplished, where he was with all possible familiarity received by the Emperour, who shewed him all the rare things to be seen, all the fair Gardens, a league or 2 off, along the Sea coast, spending 5 or 6 daies with all mirth possible: *Tamerlane* often saying in his private conduct, he never saw a fairer City, which (for its fair and rich situation) was worthy to command all the World. He wondred at the costly buildings of the Temples &c. said, it repented not him of his so long dangerous voyage, if it had been but to preserve so noble a City from fire and sword. The Emperour gave him 30 of the best hortes possible to be gotten, richly furnished: knowing him above all things to take pleasure in them; sending fair presents to all his great Commanders, and bountifully delivering all necessaries for the Army. So a streight bond of friendship being made, & by Oath confirmed between them, *Tamerlane* returned to *Prusa*, wasting and spoiling all *Bajazet's* Dominion in *Asia* without resistance.

The year being well spent, *Tamerlane* dispersed his Army into divers provinces of lesser *Asia*, expecting when some of *Bajazet's* sons or friends should make means to him for his deliverance, but none came. Whereupon passing by, he said unto him: *I marvel that none of thy Sons or friends come to see thee or intreat for thee, thou must needs have ill deserved of them, as of others: Yet, if I should see thee at liberty, would they receive thee as their Sovereign?* *Bajazet* answered, *Were I at liberty thou shouldst see that I want neither courage nor means to revenge my wrongs, and to make those disobedient and forgetful know their duties better.* Which made *Tamerlan* keep a stricter hand over him. Then restoring to the Mahometan Princes, *Tachretis*, *Isfendiar*, *Germian*, and others, all their inheritance with something more; as he did divers Cities and Countreys of *Natolia* to the Greek Emperour, for 400000 Duckats of Gold, and 800000 Franks of sil-

ver, yearly tribute; and enriching his Army with O ho-
 man spoils in *Asia*, he turned against the *Egyptian* Sul-
 tan, who had aided *Bajazet*, and entering into *Syria*, near
Aleppo (before yielded to him) was fought a mortal bat-
 tle, the Sultan having an 100000 foot and 74000 horse,
 whereof 30000 were *Mamalukes*. *Axalla* with the
 Van-guard, hardly distressed, was taken, but rescued forth-
 with by *Tamerlane*; who, if he had not come on with
 fresh forces, that day might have ended his good fortune:
 After long fight, (80000 being slain) the Sultan fled, *Ta-*
merlane pursuing him 3 leagues, and sending *Axalla* with
 40000 horse and 50000 foot, to pursue along *Arabia's*
 coast: himself, the while, with 60000 horse and 100000
 foot, had all Cities by the Sea coast as he went yielded to
 him, as *Magara*, *Aman*, &c. only *Damasco* refused,
 Prince *Zamadsen* strongly defending the same: but *Ta-*
merlane, overthrowing part of the Wall by battery, won
 it by assault, the Castle (almost impregnable) yet remain-
 ing; but the retired multitude soon pinched with hunger,
 and many dead, the rest, for their lives, offered to yield,
 to whom he would not shew mercy: so that most dying,
 the rest yielded without condition, and were almost all
 slain. Which severity made them bring the keys of their
 Cities to him 30 leagues off, and contribution to his ar-
 my. Thence he turned towards *Jerusalem*, the City
 driving out the Sultan's Garrison. *Chorazin* at first stood
 on their guard, but afterwards dismayed, and submitting
 they found mercy, where leaving certain men in garrison,
 for repressing the troublesome *Mamalukes*, he rode to
Jerusalem, to visit the Sepulchre, and make his oblations:
 where (joyfully received) seeking out all antiquities, and
 conducted to all places thereabouts as Pilgrims, gave to
 the Sepulchre and devout there many rich gifts, to the
 contentment of all but the *Jews*, who blamed him, whom
 he called the accursed of God. He heard the Sultan (ga-
 thering his forces) was in *Egypt* fortifying, especially
Alexandria

Alexandria and Caire. *Tamerlane's Army* the while came towards *Damiata*: which he would not leave behind him, though perswaded by some (as thought impregnable) to commanding *Axalla* to set on it, himself followed after. *Axalla* declaring to the Inhabitants (most Christians) *Tamerlane's* courtesy; and what Religion himself held, and made many *Greek* Captains tell them of their misery under the Moors and *Mamelukes*: which prevailed, that (by night) they mastering a quarter of the City delivered a Gate to *Axalla*: who entering slew or took all the *Mamelukes*, gaining the City. *Tamerlane* (yet on his march) hearing of this, was in good hope of a happy end in *Egypt*; for he knew this haven, might serve him with victuals out of all *Greece*. He left there two thousand of the Emperour's Souldiers, taking Oath for obedience. His Vant-guard marched towards *Alexandria*, and passing the River, turned even instantly to *Caire*, to the Sultan's great astonishment. But using diligence, (as *Tamerlane* approached) he entered the City to defend it, with 40000 horse and 60000 foot: whereby the City, ready to revolt, was again confirmed: *Tamerlane* could not stay long before it for want of victuals, yet making a great trench to cover his horse, &c. he drew near it giving divers on-sets, to try the enemies confidence, and to see the affection of the Citizens (especially of the slaves) to whom he promised liberty. One day he shewed his Army in battle array before it, to seek occasion to fight; hoping also, if the Sultan came forth, some revolt might happen within, he having made known to the Citizens, he came not to hurt them, but to destroy the *Mamelukes*. But none came forth, neither was any stir raised in the City: for the Sultan resolved to weary him out with lying still. Who resolved to force him even in his greatest Cities heart, though not to be done without great adventure. He purposing first to take one City (for it's divided into 3) advanced by little and little, still fighting: Having brought his

his foot to the place of onlet (for 'twas fortified onely with ditches and trenches) he commanded the Prince of *Thanais* to begin with 50000, and there began a most terrible fight. *Axalla* fetching a compasse, passed the trenches on another quarter of the City with small resistance; leaving 30000 to fill the ditches, and make way for the horse to enter: advancing himself against 20000 sent by the Sultan to stop him, *Thanais* being almost beat back by the *Mamelukes*. But the way being made plain, and 10000 horse entered (who charged on their backs where the Sultan was) and seconded by 10000 more, *Tamerlane* following with all his power: the Sultan retired into the next City. The fight was 7 hours, above 16000 of the Sultan's being slain, and betwixt 7 & 8000 of *Tamerlane's*: who now founded a retreat, hoping next day to win the rest, as he did. For *Thanais* forcing their trenches in one place, and *Axalla* in another, the Sultan (after a great fight) abandoned the City, encamping by *Nilus*, purposing to pass it, and flee to *Alexandria*, whom *Tamerlane* followed with his horse, and a few foot, (whose service he had promised to reward) hardly drawn from their fellows (spoiling the City, against whom the Sultan opposed (on a narrow cawley) 12 or 15000 slaves, to favour his passage, who stood fast, but at length forced by their enemies increasing (not without great losse) they took the River, with a weapon in one hand and swimming with the other to the bank. The Sultan fleeing with 18000 horse (not fled or crowned) is reported to comfort his men, saying that they were not men but Gods that vanquished them. Divers *Mamelukes* being taken and brought to *Tamerlane*, he demanded if they would serve him now their Master was fled, which they refused, yet he freed them for their fidelity; every man after 24 hours spoyle, was commanded to his quarters. He set all the Citizens at liberty, & leaving 10000 good souldiers with many others, (whereof he carried great multitudes) &c.

to keep the City: his Army passed the river to follow the Sultan. *Axalla* before with the avantguard, and *Chanais* with the rest; himself going by water, greatly pleased to see the river's sometimes swift course, and (in an instant) scarce moving.

The *Alexandrians* (hearing of his coming) besought the Sultan to withdraw into *Lybia*, whither (for barrenness) he could not greatly follow; they resolving no more to resist so great a force; promising to remain his in heart, and to make it (on the first occasion) appear. Wherefore he (hoping time would bring some change) determined to retire: and departing with standing tears, often said, God was angry, &c. That he must needs suffer the overthrow of his Estate, &c. Yet he hoped to return and deliver his people from bondage, &c. *Tamerlane* staying long here, sent *Axalla* to pursue him, grieved he could not get him. This brute passing with *Axalla* into *Lybia*, so feared all *Africa*, that 22 Moores Kings sent (thinking he followed) to offer obedience: the Sultan still flying off, the nearest *Tamerlane* too hostages; the rest, faith given, contented him.

After this, *Tamerlane* desired to see his native Country; the rather moved by his Wife's request; his Father in-laws sickness; his Own age; and his wearied Souldiers desires. The stay was *Calibes* his coming, (whom he, for his deserts, appointed governour of all his conquests in *Egypt* and *Syria*) who was making way along *Euphrates*, for the conquest of *Mesopotamia* and *Persia*; and being sent for, came to *Alexandria*, whither the whole Army was assembled. *Tamerlane* leaving *Zamalzan* (*Calibes* his Lieutenent general) Governour with 6000 horses, and 10000 foot, departed to *Cair*, leaving *Calibes* 40000 horse and 50000 foot, and instructing him how he would have those Kingdomes Governed, dismissed him, seeming very sorry to leave him. So setting forward, he (with a few) turned aside to *Jerusalem*; carrying 11 dayes, visiting Christ's Sepulchre,

pulchre, (whom he called the Christians god) and the ruins of *Salomon's* Temple wondring, &c. but grieved not to see them in their former beauty: despising the *Jews*, who so cruelly murdered Him that came to save them; he commanded *Jerusalem* to be free from all subsidies and garrisons, giving great gifts to, and honouring the Monasteries. Thence he came to *Damasco*, which (infected with *Jezi-des* opinion (an arch heretique with the *Mahometans*) and ill affected to him) he razed, digging up and burning *Jezi-des* his bones, and filling his before-honoured grave with dung. So marching and blasting the world as he went, he passed *Euphrates*, and conquering *Mesopotamia* with *Babylon*, and all *Persia*, he returned loaded with spoil to *Samarchand*. *Bajazet* having layen 2 years in miserable thraldome, did violently beat out his braines, against the barrs of the iron cage inclosing him in 1399. Yet of his death are divers reports: that he (through sorrow) died of an Ague, that he poysoned himself: the *Turks* affirming an unlikely report, that first poysoned by *Tamerlane*, he was freed, dying 3 daies after. His body (at *Mahomets* request his son) ient to *Asprapolis*, was conveyed to *Prussa*, and buried in a Chappel without the City Eastward, where also *Despina* lyeth.

Tamerlane and *Bajazet*, both began from the *Tartars*: *Bajazet* being the 4th from *Othoman*: and *Tamerlane* the 4th from great *Zingis*: both of great power, and like spirit, &c. above measure ambitious, the ground of all troubles raised by them to the Worlds astonishment. Yet *Bajazet's* virtues were much obscured by his Choler and waywardnesse, &c. He used commonly to say, His treasures was his Childrens meat, nor his Souldiers pay: which was by a Souldier cast in his teeth, when he raged to see himself forsaken by them in the great bartel. Whereas *Tamerlanes* virtues were graced with divers of like nature, no man more kind to his friends, or more dreadful to his enemies

enemies, &c. *Bajazet* is to be accounted more fortunate than the Conquerour his enemy, having ever since one lineally to succeed in his Kingdom and Empire: as at this day. Whereas *Tamerlane's* Empire (divided by him among his sons) shortly after his death decayed, rent asunder by ambition and civil discord; and not long after (with his posterity) rooted out by *Usun Cassanes* the Persian King.

The Life of Mahomet I. 5th King of the Turks, and Re- storer of their sore Shaken Kingdome.

SOME write Bajazet had 2 sons, *Orchanes* or *Calepinus*, slain in the 2d year of his Reign; and *Mahomet* who possessed his Brothers Kingdom. Others that *Orchanes* and *Mahomet* were *Calepinus's* sons, who died Reigning 6 years: that *Orchanes* slain by his Uncle *Mustapha*, *Mahomet* in revenge slew him, possessing the Kingdome. Others reckon 7 sons of *Bajazet*, with their uncertain succession. I shall leave these divers reports, with the History following, to the credit they shall find with considerate Readers.

Neither the Greek Historiographers, nor *John Lennaxius* a great traveller among the *Turks*, do mention *Calepinus* or *Orchanes*. But, in mine opinion, the great confusion of the *Turkish* Kingdome wrought by *Tamerlane*, with the civil discord afterwards arising among *Bajazet's* sons for the restless Room of Sovereignty, &c. might give just occasion of such divers reports: some reckoning such as never were to have succeeded in Government. Wherefore leaving *Calepinus* and *Orchanes*, &c. I (following the *Turkish* Historie's authority) reckon this *Mahomet* a younger son of *Bajazet*, 5th King of *Turks*: who after his fathers Captivity, about 10 years, was (after great and dangerous wars) solely invested in that Kingdome.

Bajazet (as the *Turkish* Kings) had by divers wives and concubins, 7 sons. *Erthogrul* the eldest was lost against *Casi Burchaniden*. *Mustapha* slain against *Tamerlane*. *Casa* the youngest, a child when his father was taken, and afterwards (with *Fatine* his Sister), died hostage to the Emperour. *Solyman* (conveyed out of the battle into *Europe*) was saluted Sultan. *Mahomet* fleeing to *Amasia* was Governour (in his fathers time) there. *Isa*, after *Tamerlan's* departure, seized on *Prusa*. *Musa* was taken with his father, and afterwards freed by *Tamerlane*.

Places about *Amasia*, with a great part of *Cappadocia*, were so trouble some after *Tamerlan's* Victory, that keeping watch and ward continually, many wearied and despairing of better times, voluntarily exiled themselves, which much grieved *Mahomet*, but 15 years old. Wherefore consulting, what course to take, it was thought best, to get farther off into stronger places, and while their enemies departed not, to cut them short by policy. For though *Tamerlane* lay at *Caria*: yet his Captains foraged and spoyled at pleasure over lesser *Asia*. Hereupon, he departed to *Derby*: encountering (by the way) with *Cara Jahia*, *Isfendiars* Kinsman: whom he put to flight with great slaughter. Thence going to *Kereden*, he sent a spie into *Tamerlan's* Camp: afterwards consulting of farther proceedings. Some thought he were best withdraw into the mountaines of lesser *Asia*, till *Tamerlan's* departure. Others thought those mountaines no places to trust to, and therefore to return to *Amasia*, there to live protecting his subjects, and not leave them a prey to strangling *Tartars*: which counsell he following, and ready to set forward, the spie returned, certifying of *Bajazets* health, but, for the straight guard over him he could not speak with him: that *Tamerlane* possessed all that part of *Asia*. *Mahomet* had not long staid at *Amasia*, but he heard, *Caradulets Chach* was with 20000 coming to spoile his Countrey: given him

him by *Tamerlane*. Wherefore he speedily sent a spie before his forces, who hastily returning, told him, *Cara* lay at *Egiolus*, but with a small power, having dispersed his Army to seek after Pillage. *Mahomet* marching thither with celerity, overcame, and utterly discomfited his Army: *Cara* being slain with an arrow in the head, and returning to *Amasia*, refreshed and rewarded his Souldiers. Being shortly advertised that *Cubad Ogi* (hardly besieging *Casaria*) was like in short time to take it to the hazarding of all *Cappadocia*: he marching day and night thither, was upon him at unawares, putting him to flight, and slaying most. Then entring *Cubads* Country, *Pontus*, he grievously spoyled it, winning also *Pelta*, a strong Cattle in *Phrygia's* confines. *Inal Ogi* another of *Tamerlan's* Captaines, immediately after entring *Cappadocia* with 20000 men, killed and spoyled before him; the people fleeing into woods and mountaines, for fear. *Mahomet* exceedingly grieved wrote to him. Whereas without just cause, or war proclaimed, thou hast invaded our Kingdome, cruelly killing our subjects, &c. digressing from the Laws of true *Mahometan* beleivers, &c. thou shouldst forthwith depart with thine Arms, &c. But seeing thou wilt proceed in thy wicked purpose; falsely perswading thy self, my kingdome is destitute of a lawfull inheritour, I will shortly (by Gods power) come against thee, and in field chastize thee according to thy deserts. Therefore while thou mayest, reclaime thy self, &c. In the year after the great Prophet *Mahomet's* departure, 806. To which, *Inal* answered in writing; Why dost thou (*Mahomet*) so provoke me? &c. being (in truth) but a very child. Thou oughtst not to have laid hands on the Countries, with the wrongful Title of Sultan. There's no cause to Complain I seek after thy life, thy Kingdome, &c. I challenge it to my self, none of thine, &c. Wherefore except thou without delay, get thee packing, &c. I denounce against thee all the

Cala-

Calamities of war, wishing thee with speed to prepare to battle, &c. This year of our great Prophet 806, *Mahomet* had shortly a notable victory of this *Tartar* Prince, and the like against 2 other at *Charachisar* Castle and *Artuck* Onaplaïne. And one *Mesises* a Turk, (fortified in *Sebastia*) spoyling the Country about, he sent *Bajazet* Bassa, who shortly brought him bound unto him: who seeing an invincible courage in him when he was to die, pardoned him: for which he (ever faithful) did him great service.

The bruite of *Mahomet*'s name, coming to *Tamerlane*, he many times highly commended his valour in so tender years; telling *Bajazet*, he was very desirous to see him: and if he found that true that was reported, he would bestow one of his daughters on him. &c. willing *Bajazet* to write to him, not to doubt to come to him to his own & fathers good. *Bajazet* (at first) (doubting the Word) requested *Tamerlane* not to believe that of his son. Yet perswaded by his protestations, and importuned, he wrote: *Tamerlane* sent *Horza*, *Mahomet*'s Embassadour, with these and other letters and rich presents; but understanding the cause of his coming, he consulted with the *Bassas*, whether he were best go or not. They were all of opinion, it was not good to adventure, &c. And (said they) if *Tamerlane* offended will by force seek thee, we will take refuge of the woods and mountaines untill he be departed. &c. Yet *Mahomet* hoping his journey to be for his Father's good and his own advancement, resolved to go setting forward. But *Cara Iahia* getting some of the Prince *Iffendiars* forces, set on him by the way, but with as ill successe as before: so travelling-on, *Alis* Beg, went about to intercept him; who (in hast) was upon *Alis* ere he was aware, or well provided, so that he fled. *Mahomet* considering, the nearer he came to *Tamerlane*, the more like he was to danger, by his Counsellours advice, resolving to go no further, spake to *Tamerlan*'s Embassadour; Thou seest

the dangers, &c. I endure, and my mind foreboderh greater to ensue, &c. Commend me therefore to *Tamerlane* with my Father: hoping they will excuse me; for which I will send an Embassadour of mine own, which was *Sophis Bajazet* his Schoolmaster, a wise and learned man, in whom *Tamerlane* taking pleasure, never suffered him, to return to his Master. Mighty Prince *Tamerlane* returned at last into his own Kingdom, wonderfully enlarging *Samarchand*, and beautifying it with the worlds spoils; where he afterwards in great peace and glory reigned: keeping alway a standing Army of 40000 horse and 60000 foot, besides other Garrisons, &c. commonly in every place 60000 strong upon occasion. At length, hearing of the *Turkish* Kingdoms rising under *Bajazet's* Son: with whom the oppressed *Mamelukes* and *Greek* Emperour had for fear combined; he prepared for a second expedition to root out the *Othoman* family, and subdue the *Greek* Empire. But (a *Turkish* Bassa being by *Axalla* overthrown, and 30000 slain) he in midst of these great hopes, died of an Ague, Jan. 27. 1402. A little before, appeared a great and terrible blazing-Star. He was of a middle stature, somewhat narrow shouldred, well limmed, and of great strength. Many in talking with and beholding him, became dumb through the majesty in his eyes: which oft caused him to abstain from looking too earnestly on them. His other visage amiable, &c. little hair on his chin: he ware his hair long and curled, for the most part bare-headed, contrary to the manner of the *Tartars*, his hair was somewhat toward a violet colour, right beautiful: which his Mother coming of *Sampson's* race, (as he gave out) willed him to nourish; most of his men of war believing there was some rare vertue or fatal destiny therein. His great Empire, was by his Sons discord, and ambition of some their disloyal Subjects, shortly brought to confusion, and his posterity, utterly rooted out by *Usun Cassanes*, the *Armenian*

menian Prince. But *Tamerlane* departing those Countries, *Mahomet* determined to go to *Prusa*, where his brother *Isa* reigned. But *Isa* having taken the straits of mount *Horminius*, he came about to *Palaocastron*, where *Eine* Sub-bassa remained, who refreshed both him and his Army. Great forces still repairing, he marched to *Ulabad*. *Isa* marched thither also, on the side toward *Prusa*, to give him battel. But *Mahomet* consulting what was best to be done; *Eine* told him, It was not for brethren to pollute their hands in each others blood; but to assuage the quarrels compofure, by some other means; wherefore *Mahomet* offered *Isa*, *Aidinia* with 4 Provinces, and other Countreys belonging, so he might have *Prusa*, with all about the same. *Isa* seeing *Mahomet* offering him but such Countries as were rather *Bajazet's* tributaries than part of his Kingdom, &c. in choller said, Doth not my Fathers Kingdom belong to me the Elder brother? by what right can he (but a youth) claim it? if he can by the sword win it, let him take and hold it. *Mahomet* hereupon, prepared to the field, where his brother (expecting his coming) gave the first charge, in which most cruel fight, many were on both sides slain. At last *Isa's* Army beginning to retire, he pressing into the thickest of his enemies, with his own hand slew ancient & valiant *Eine* Sub-bassa. But *Isa* having done what he could, on every side forsaken, fled to the Sea-side; where in a ship bound for *Constantinople*, he passing thither yielded to the Emperour's protection. *Temurtases* being taken in this chase, and brought to *Mahomet*, he in revenge of *Eine*, smote off his head, hanging his body on a tree. Of this he certified *Solyman*, sending *Temurtases* head. This battel was much spoken of, being betwixt two brethren, and for the death of *Eine* and *Temurtases*, both wishing peace betwixt the ambitious brethren.

Mahomet, after this, led his Army to *Prusa*, and was joyfully received as their Sultan: so likewise at *Nice* and *Neapolis*

polis: the Garrisons of *Carafina*, *Saruchania*, and *Aidinia* with other Inhabitants resorting thither, and submitting themselves to him, as to their King. And sending to *Germean* for *Bajazet's* body, (and his brother *Musa* left by *Tamerlane*) he sumptuously buried it at *Prusa*; the *Turkish Alcaron* being read 7 daies on his Tombe: Great cheer was for all comers, and much given to the poor for *Bajazet's* soul; but above all to *Mahomet's* posterity, (known by their all green apparel) who were then by him greatly enriched. He also endowed the Abby built by his Father with great possessions; which done, he (in progresse) was every where joyfully received, spending the Summer at *Amasia*, in pleasure.

Solyman, the eldest, at *Hadrianople* peaceably reigning in *Europe*, hearing how *Mahomet* had driven *Isa* out of *Prusa*, was much offended: and declaring to his *Baslaes*. &c. his natural proceedings, said he, He doth me also great wrong, his eldest brother, in taking the sovereignty in *Asia*: In revenge whereof, I intend to passe with a strong Army into *Asia*, and recover mine inheritance. &c. A grave Counsellour replied, It was not best in his opinion, to go personally into those wars; for though (said he) *Mahomet* be but young, yet is his experience above his years, &c. Wherefore it were best to send for angry *Isa*, and make him General, in which wars one brother (not unlike to be lost) thou shalt have one competitour lesse, &c. This counsel approved of, *Isa* was presently sent for, and made General of a great Army: at whose first coming into *Asia*, he possessed all *Carafina* and *Lydia*: all people where he came, promising him obedience, if he prevailed against *Mahomet*: So he wintred at *Despotopolis*, seeming the while, by kind Letters to *Mahomet*, to be glad he was so obeyed and liked of, &c. *Mahomet* answering with like dissimulation, he was even glad of his coming, &c. commanding a rich garment to be cast on the Messenger, and sending him rich presents, with provision, and necessities for his Souldiers.

But

But Winter past, *Isa* marched to *Prusa*, shewing the Citizens *Mahomet's* loving Letters, hoping they should shortly well agree, requesting the Castle, whose gates the better sort had fastned against him; but seeing he could not gain it by fair words or policy, he enraged, burnt it to the ground: *Mahomet* not ignorant how *Isa* roamed up and down, &c. and how he had razed the royal City; between *Amasia* and *Prusa*, overthrew all his forces in a great battle. *Isa* with but ten, fled to *Castamona*, whose Prince *Isfendiar* (for friendship at his hands when he was a Suiter in *Bajazet's* Court) entertained him with all honour he could.

Mahomet exceedingly grieved, gave among the Citizens exceeding sums of money; ordering for the Citie's rebuilding, and staying to see it begun. *Isa* the while inciting *Itendiar* to invade *Mahomet*, was by him, the third time, overthrown; yet entring twice more with small forces, and finding few or none, to follow him, he fled to the Prince of *Smyrna*, honourably entertained by him; who in so manifest a wrong, not only promised what help he could, but solicited the Princes of *Aidinia* &c. to give him aid; who pitying his case and fearing *Mahomet's* ambition, sent so amongst them, that *Isa* had 20000 in Arms. *Mahomet* with a strong Army entred so speedily, the Prince of *Smyrna's* Countrey, that he was upon them before looked for: after a bloody fight, obtaining a notable victory. *Isa* fleeing into *Caramania* dyed none knows how. The Prince of *Smyrna* humbling himself, obtained *Mahomet's* favour. The others he shortly spoiled (mostly) of their Dominions, returning to *Prusa*. But whilst there, he was advertised, That *Solyman* had raised a great Army to invade *Asia*; wherefore furnishing the Castle, with all things needful for a long siege, he departed thence to *Ancyra*, directing Commissions to take up Souldiers in all parts, writing so to *Doioran* a *Tartar*, (whom he often pleased) for aid: who came with Troops of brave horse promising fidelity.

Not

Not long after, *Solyman* now come over *Hellespont*, he thought without delay to meet him in the field. But being by expert Captains advised to retire further off, waiting all good opportunities, rather than commit all to one battells hazzard, he being to fight against his eldest brother, and Fathers heir. Upon which he retired towards *Amasia*. Then *Doioran* (marching out at the other side) fell to robbing and spoiling, burning the Villages as he went, *Mahomet* pursuing and overtaking him unlooked for, slew most of his men, recovered all the spoil, *Doioran* hardly elcaping: and so held on his way.

Solyman bending towards *Prusa*, the Citizens brought him peaceably into the City. But *Jacup Beg* would by no means deliver the Castle; wherefore sharply assaunting it, he slew many, and wounded most of the Defendants. *Jacup* certifying *Mahomet*, the Castle could not hold out long, except speedily relieved; he (hastning towards *Prusa*) sent the Messenger with Letters, commending the Captain, and promising speedy relief, who being intercepted and brought to *Als Bassa*, he, perusing them, presently wrote others in *Mahomet's* name, commending the Captain, &c. but since he could not in time relieve him, to deliver the Castle on the best conditions he could; who yielded it to *Solyman* on reasonable terms. *Mahomet* (now within a daies march) was exceedingly grieved, and returned to *Amasia*: where *Solyman* shortly besieged him; but (without hope to win it) he retiring to *Prusa*, spent his time in riot, &c. exceedingly given thereunto.

Mahomet advertized, that *Solyman* lay securely at *Prusa*, but with small power, marched in haste to surprize him; but he was discovered by *Solyman* Sub-bassa, at the River *Sangarius*: who in all hast gave knowledge of his brothers coming: *Solyman* (dismayed) would have fled into *Europe*, if *Alis* (from the blemish and discouragement of his friends, and encouragment of his enemies to pursue) had not otherwise perswaded him, it were better

to take *Neapolis* Straits, till he might assemble the rest of his Army. *Mahomet* coming entered those Straits, for he must needs passe them, being repulsed by *Solyman*; who, with little losse, frustrated his brothers brave attempts, (through the places advantage) though much the weaker. *Alis Bassa's* wilie-head (the while) sent secretly Letters to *Mahomet*, that most of his great Captains, &c. had bound themselves to *Solyman* and one another, to betray him into his hands as the undoubted Heir, &c. which Treason he discovered with great protestation of love and good will, &c. *Mahomet* yet ceased not for 6 or 7 days to gain those passages, but in vain; one of whose servants fleeing to the enemy, caused him to suspect the more: So prevailing nothing, and doubting to be betrayed, he returned to *Amassa*: *Solyman* (glad) to *Prusa*, ordering his Armies assembling; but the *Caramanian* King and *Mahomet*, agreeing in League to joyn against him, he forthwith drew all to *Ancyra*.

Musa remaining all this while with *Mahomet* (though not altogether well pleased, spake (one day) to his brother: Thou seest how *Solyman* ceaseth not to vex us, not unlike to prevail, &c. Now I would go to *Isfendiar* his enemy and procure passage over the Euxine into *Europe*, where I doubt not (in his absence) to make some innovation, &c. which if I shall gain, by thy support, I promise to hold it of thee as my Sovereign, *Mahomet* greatly pleased, (after their *Turkish* faith given to stand to each other during life) furnished *Musa* with money, and necessaries for so great an enterprize; who setting forward, *Isfendiar* entertained him as a great Prince: and acquainting him with his purpose, he visited the King of *Caramania*, *Mark* of *Valachia* (having his Countrey spoiled by *Solyman's* Garrisons) wrote to *Musa*, promising him his daughter and Heir, if he would come and revenge the wrong done by *Solyman*. *Musa* gladly returning into *Europe*, the *Valachian* received him with honour, and gave him his

his Daughter. This fame was soon bruited thorow *Solyman's* Kingdom, and wrought such effect, that the vulgar submitted (as it were all) to him as their Sovereign: to that coming to *Hadrianople* he was received as their King.

Solyman understanding *Musa's* proceedings, was exceedingly troubled. Leaving a Deputy in *Ancyra*, he with his Army, obtained passage of the Emperour over *Bosphorus*, promising (therefore) to restore him some places taken from him in *Asia*; for *Musa* had brought all *Turkish* shipping unto *Europe* side. *Musa* made toward him: but their Armies ready to joyn battel, many of *Musa's* Captains fled to *Solyman*: he fleeing to the woods and mountains. *Solyman* taking again his Kingdoms possession, gave himself (at *Hadrianople*) to excess without measure.

Jacup-beg, *Solyman's* Deputy, lately received into *Mahomet's* favour, delivered to him *Ancyra*, *Prusa's* Castle, and all the rest in *Asia*, who shortly reducing again *Carrasia*, *Aidin* &c. to his obedience, returning to *Prusa*, he took a second possession of his Fathers Kingdom.

Musa still put to the worst by *Solyman*, gathering some good strength, drew near where *Solyman* was banquetting in his Camp and full of Wine: So that news being brought, *Musa* was at hand, he caused the messenger to be beaten: and when he affirmed it more earnestly than liked him, commanded him to be slain. Ere long *Musa's* Vaunt-courours skirmishing with *Solyman's* Souldiers: *Eurenoses* told him *Musa* had skirmished, &c. *Solyman* (in Wine) said, Good Tutor trouble me no more, *Musa* dares not come so nigh me; if I hold but up my Cap, he is gone. He discontented, sent in *Chasan*, Aga of the *Janizaries*, who boldly told him the danger, and sharply reprov'd him. *Solyman* moved, commanded his beard to be cut off; *Chasan* coming forth thus disgraced, said, This is the honour wherewith *Solyman* in (his excess) rewardeth

rewardeth his; Wherefore I will serve *Musa* a Prince of more temperance, and discretion. Who will follow me, come and wellcome. So with a number of *Janizaries*, he went to *Musa*, as did others by his example. But then it repented *Solyman* of his too dissolute tolly and hiding himself till night, then accompanied only with two Noble men and a Countrey *Turk* as their guide, thought to flee to *Constantinople*. This Clown led them on purpose (all night) to and fro, bringing them in the morning not far from whence they departed: and riding before, willed a sturdy peasant or two to make stop of *Solyman*; who with others like running out with Bats, &c. slew *Caratze* and *Muchil* that stood on their guard, taking *Solyman* alive; some in their fury, cryed out to kill him, &c. and end the wars: some few to save him. In this heat came *Musa*, who caused him to be strangled, reigning 6 years 10 months. This was *Solyman's* miserable end; much in excess, otherwise endued with many virtues. *Achmetes* writing *Alexander* the Great's History in *Turkish* verse, and publishing it in his name, he bountiously rewarded him. His body lyeth buried at *Prusa* by his Grandfather *Amurath*.

Musa now reigning in *Europe*, in the beginning, displaced most that bare great Offices in *Solyman's* time, fearing to be by them, betrayed or forsaken as his brother was, and on small causes imprisoned and put to death many well deserving of him; Wherefore many Nobles doubting the event of such Tyranny, kept out of the way; *Eurenoses* feigning himself blind, to be absent from the Court. He also demanded of divers Christian Princes, tribute payed or promised to *Bajazet*, invading some of them, and demanding (by *Ibrahim Bassa*) the like of *Emmanuel* the Emperour: who advertizing *Mahomet* of *Musa's* indiscreet Government. &c. he sent back, requesting the *Bassa* to come over to him, with rich garments, and Princely promises: the *Bassa* going to *Prusa* was sworn

one of his Privy Councel, serving him faithfully, and his Son *Amurath* after him.

Mahomet upon advantage of his Brothers ill government assembled 15000 choise Souldiers to invade him, before well established; and was transported over *Bosphorus* into *Europe* by the Emperour (after a League concluded betwixt them, the one should never damnifie the other, &c.) *Musa* having stopped all other passages. *Mahomet* not marched far from the Sea, *Musa's* Vaunt-Courriers met with his brothers at *Intzage*, *Musa's* were put to flight and chased to his Army; who thinking *Mahomet* was upon them, were almost ready to flee, but both Armies rested that night. Next day, began a mortal and bloody fight: *Michael* Bassa of *Romania*, and other Captains (on discontent) revolting to *Mahomet*: Many of *Musa's* Souldiers (discouraged) fled. *Mahomet's* Souldiers so pursued, that few were left with him; yet (in hope) he set upon his brother: who (though half discontented) stood himself with 7000 *Jannizaries*, valiantly receiving his charge. But *Mahomet* was glad to flee to *Constantinople* with scarce 200 men, and was (according to the agreement) shipped into *Asia* by the Emperour. *Musa* taking his Tents, there encamped. They who followed the chase returning to the Camp, and finding it possessed by their enemies, stood as amazed, &c. *Musa* suffered not his Souldiers to put them to the sword, but dispoyling them of what they had, suffered them to depart.

After this, the Prince of *Smyrna* forcibly entred *Aidonia*, to passe into *Saruchania*: *Mahomet* with a great Army so spoyled his Countrey, and distressed himself, that submiring, he was glad to hold his Dominion of him, as of his Lord, &c. *Mahomet* levied a choise Army again, to try his fortune against *Musa*, craving aid of *Dulgader* Ogle his Father in Law from *Amasia*; who answering his Letters, sent his Son with a Company of brave Souldiers excellently furnished, whom he royally scallings, gave to

the Prince, his own rich apparel, and horse, and all the gold and silver plate wherein they were served: to every Noble man a rich garment, with some other gift: & (telling them he intended to recover his Fathers Kingdom in *Europe*, or there to end his daies) said, The prey shall be theirs that win it: a Horse, Sword, and Mace, shall content my self. So coming to *Bosphorus* Strait, the Emperour transported his Army into *Europe*, and feasted him in a Country Pallace; who, though he excused to joyn (through age) with him in that war, yet assisted him with some Christian Companies, who stood the *Turks* in great stead: marching to the River *Wyzen*, where *Eurenoses* (by the way) advising him to march very circumspectly, and not too much to hasten joyning battel, counselled him also (if by any means) to allure *Jegides Beg*, *Barac Beg*, and *Siman Beg* to follow him, promising (in good time) to come himself. He shortly marching to *Hadrianople*, *Gara Calile* began to shew himself, and presently put to flight by *Michael Ogli* besieging *Hadrianople* the Citizens sent to certifie him, they could not (through *Musa's* Garrison) then deliver him the City; but if by trying it in the field he should carry the victory, they should be ready to yield themselves, City and all to his pleasure. *Mahomet* content, raised the siege, marching towards *Zagora*. *Musa* is reported to come secretly into *Mahomet's* Camp disguised; but perceiving himself too weak, withdrew into woods and strong places; from thence to *Philopopolis*, marching along the River *Meritze*, where *Jegides* with two of *Musa's* Captains, setting on *Mahomet's* rear, were by *Michael* repulsed. *Mahomet* came to *Sophia*: as he went, *Muse* shewed his Army from the Mountains, not daring to come down to battel. *Mahomet* marching to *Sarkine*, *Jegides*, *Barac*, and *Siman*, perswaded by *Eurenoses*, wrote to him: We are three young men, having 3000 choise Souldiers, of incomparable valour, &c. Draw near us with what speed thou canst, and thou shalt find us ready,

to come to thee. He marching all next night, came to the River *Morava*: where the 3 Captains joyned unto him. Old *Eurenoses* also with a great company of expert Souldiers. *Mark of Servia* sent him aid also. He began to march farther to *Cossova*, his forces still increating by the revolt of his Brothers. *Musa* seeing none almost left, but the Souldiers of the Court, his best and faithfullest men, thought bet to attempt something, before left alone, seeking with 7000 to take his brother at advantage. But *Mahomet* had a vigilant eye unto him. At last, he suddenly set upon his brothers Army: but (oppressed with multitude) after a bloudy fight, was put to the worst; which he seeing, sought death among the thickest of his enemies. But *Bajazet* Bassa desirous to take him alive, he was be-set, and breaking from the midst of them, fled. But his horse falling into a muddy ditch, or (as some) hoxed by his own servant and himself wounded, overthrew him, and was there taken by *Bajazet*, *Michael* and *Barac*, hardly persuing him. Being brought hand-bound through the Army, which grieved many; most were glad, hoping this long Civil war would now end. Shortly after, came *Balta Oglis* sent (as they thought) from *Mahomet*, who after a bitter reproof for his cruelty to *Solyman*, caused him to be strangled with a Bow-string. *Mahomet* shed a few Crocodiles tears over his dead body. He lyeth buried at *Prusa* by *Solyman*, reigning 3 years, 7 months.

Mahomet now taking on him the sole Government in *Europe* and *Asia*; the *Turkish* histories here begin his reign, accounting the troublesome time to *Musa's* death as a vacancy: But seeing *Mahomet* held all or most in *Asia*, during this, possessing (in the end) the other part in *Europe* also, I reckon him *Bajazet's* Successour, including all that intestine Tragedy, wherein he was chief actor.

Mahomet busied against *Musa* in *Europe*, the King of *Caramania* invaded his Kingdom joyning upon him in *Asia*, burning and peyling all before him. *Eivases*

his Lieutenant, nor able to withstand him, and fearing his coming to *Prusa*, made the Citizens bring most of their wealth into the Castle, receiving to many of them as he could, willing the rest to shift for themselves. The King shortly came to *Prusa*, not yet fully fortified, burning it to the ground the second time, and besieging the Castle, gave it great assaults for 30 daies; but was repulsed by *Eivases*, comforting his Souldiers that *Mahomet* (overcoming in *Europe*) would come in few daies for relief. *Musa's* dead body was then conveying to *Prusa* with much people. The *Caramanian* fearing it was *Mahomet* with his power, speedily departed: the *Turks* long jested, saying, If the *Caramanian* run for fear of the *Othoman* Kings dead body, What would he, had he come against them alive? *Orchanes*, *Solyman's* Son, (a boy) departed from *Constantinople*, for the League made between the Emperor and *Mahomet*, to go into *Valachia*: by the way, great numbers of voluntary *Turks* offered to spend their lives in his quarrel. *Mahomet* marching hastily to suppress them, they dispersed & fled. *Orchanes* being betrayed by his Tutor *Zaganes*, *Mahomet* put out his Eys, allowing him great Revenues at *Prusa*, &c. This is he who some reckon among the *Turkish* Kings, betrayed to his Uncle *Moses*; erring, I suppose, in succession and name.

Now *Mahomet* assembled a great Army, to revenge himself of the *Caramanian* King: *Isfendiar* sending his Son *Casumes* for aid: and commanding *Germian Oglı* to provide for victualling as he passed by; he entred *Caramania*, taking three Cities and besieging *Iconium*; but (through the rain then falling) he made peace with the *Caramanian*. News was brought him into *Pontus*, that he renouncing his League, was again in Arms. Wherefore, returning to *Iconium*, he overthrew the King, taking him and his Son prisoners; who redeeming themselves by many Cities and Castles, concluded a peace, receiving of him an Ensign as a token of Vassalship. Then passing

over *Danubius* in *Europe*, he foraged *Valachia Transalpina*, whose Prince sent him what tribute he demanded and his Son to serve in his Court. Then about, happened a great earth-quake in *Prusa*, &c. great troubles ensuing in *Asia*; Yet *Mahomet* going thither kept all in quiet.

Isfendiar disinheriting his Son (for that he would not return to him from *Mahomet's* Court and wars) reserving *Castamonaw* with a little more, gave *Mahomet* the rest; who (in lieu) gave *Cassimes* other great possessions in his own Kingdom. He sent *Bedredin* (*Musa's* Cadelcher) to *Nice* as exiled; yet allowing him a great pension: *Bedredin* having in his house one *Burgluzes*, they laid their heads how to trouble *Mahomet's* peaceable Government; Wherefore *Burgluzes* going into *Aidinia*, pretending great zeal, broached divers strange opinions: by which he was shortly reputed a famous, learned, and devout man, and had many followers, &c. *Bedredin*, fled to *Isfendiar's* Country, from thence into *Valachia*, and in a Forrest as some devout man, allured to him a number of Out-laws, and thieves there living, whom (instructed) he sent in religious habit, into *Zagora*, and other *Mahomet's* frontiers, as his Disciples: who published his doctrine, &c. and that he was by God, appointed King of justice, and Commander of the world, set forth by *Burgluzes*, and received in *Asia*: therefore they should repair to *Bedredin*, shortly to shew himself and promote his followers according to desert. Many in hope of preferment resorted to *Bedredin*: who at last, came out of the Forrest, with displayed Banner, and a great multitude resorting daily unto him: *Mahomet* sent his Son *Amurath* and *Bajazet* with 2000, to apprehend *Burgluzes*: whom they found guarded with 3000 well appointed; there was a bloody battel and many slain: the rebels fleeing, *Burgluzes* was slain and hewn to pieces. Then *Bajazet* executed *Torlac Kemä*, who with 2000 seduced did much harm

harm about *Magnesia*. *Mahomet* sending also against *Bedredin*, whose followers, seeing in him no such matter as they hoped for, were fallen from him, whereby he (easily apprehended) was brought to *Mahomet* at *Serras*, and hanged in the Market-place.

Mahomet furnished the great Temple at *Hadrianople*, begun by *Solyman* and *Musa*, where he built a Princely Pallace: also another Temple, a sumptuous Abby, a publick School adjoyning, with great Revenues, giving also great sums yearly for Pilgrims travelling far to *Mahomet's* Sepulchre at *Medina*, or his Temple at *Mecha*.

Shortly after falling sick at *Hadrianople*, he sent in post to *Amasia* for *Amurath* his eldest Son, by his last will, to succeed him: But feeling death approach, he straightly charged his Bassaes to conceal his death, till his coming, lest any trouble should arise. So he departed about the year 1422, reigning 17 years, *Bajazet's* rent Kingdom being (by him) wholly restored 7 years before his death.

The 3 Bassaes, *Evaifes*, *Bajazet*, and *Ibrahim*, (fearing the *Janizaries* and other Court Souldiers) called a Counsel of war as if he were alive: pretending the Kings pleasure for the *Janizaries* to passe to *Baga* Castle in *Asia*, to war on the Prince of *Smyna*. Preis-mony being presently given, they were sent over with Letters, &c. The Bassaes sat daily in Counsel placing and displacing, as if the King had so commanded. His Physicians also went with their potions, &c. as they had wont. Yet the Pensioners and others (some of them of the Privy Chamber) suspecting, said, They marvelled the King shewed not himself so long, as before he did. The Bassaes answered, He was yet but little recovered, and the Physicians would not suffer him to look abroad. Then said they, (ready to force in) We will our selves see his Majesty. *Evaifes* desired them not then to trouble him, having taken Physick; but to morrow, said he, we will request (if

he please) that ye may see him. *Geordiron* a subtil *Per-
sian* Phytian devised, that the dead body Royally appa-
relled, and wrapped about his head, should be brought
betwixt two, as if led into an high open Gallery, and a
Boy nearly placed under his Robes behind, to move his
hand, as stroaking his face or beard, as his manner was.
Being brought accordingly, suddenly a *Physitian* came
in fuming and raging, &c. asking the *Bassaes*, if they
meant to kill the King by bringing him into the open air,
&c. Pardon us good Doctor, said *Eivases*, for these (point-
ing to the *Pensioners*) were so importunate to see him,
that he was content to be led forth, &c. They supposing
him to be alive, held themselves contented. The *Physi-
tians*, carried him in again, as an extream sick man. His
death was thus concealed 41 daies. He was wise and va-
liant, exceeding bountiful, but ambitious above measure.
He left to *Amurath* an entire Kingdom, in the former
greatness, though not much augmented. His body lyeth
buried in a fair Tomb in a Chappel at the East of *Prusa*.

*The Life of Amurath II. sixth
King of the Turks, and the
great Establisher of their
Kingdom.*

A Murath or Murat, being placed in his Fathers Seat, and Mahomet's death published; great troubles began to arise. The Prince of *Smyrna* and *Mentesa* rose in Arms: and at *Thessalonica*, an obscure fellow took on him the name and person of *Mustapha*, *Bajazet's* Son, slain long before against *Tamerlain*. This counterfeit, animated by Greek Princes, and going to *Vardarium*, set on so good a countenance, that not only the Country people, but *Tzunites* Beg, the prince of *Smyrna's* Son, with *Eurenoses* Son, repaired unto him as to their naturall Prince. Going to *Hadrianople*, (*Amurath* yet at *Prusa*) he was received as *Mustapha*: and shortly honoured as King in all the *Turkish* Kingdom in *Europe*. *Amurath* sending *Bajazet* Basla with a strong Army into *Europe*, he found all the Country revolted to *Mustapha*; but being forsaken of the *European* Souldiers which he brought, and afterwards of the rest, he with his brother *Hamze* yielded for safety to *Mustapha*, upon promise of loyalty, sworne one of his Privy-Council; who, he better to maintain his credit, levied a great Army to make war upon *Amurath* in *Asia*. On the way his Counsellours repining at *Bajazet's* honour, advised him to beware he trusted him not too far, &c. Whereupon, *Bajazet* apprehended, was without tryal executed, and *Haze* with much ado, spared. This done, he proceeding, marching over into *Asia*. *Amurath* joyned three new

Bassas, Temurtases his Sons, to Ibrahim and Eivases: by whose advice he sent for Michael Oglı, (Viceroy in Europe in Musa's time) after 8 years imprisonment from Musa's deposing) because well known to most chief men in Mustapha's Army. Amurath setting forward to meet him, distrusting his forces, much inferior to Mustapha's, prostrated himself at an Emir's feet (one of Mahomet's posterity) to receive a blessing for his better speed, &c. For all whole charms, he marched in fear enough to the River Wlibad, causing, through Mustapha's approach, the bridge to be broken down, & encamped on that side. Mustapha finding the bridge broken, encamped on the other side: They thus lying that both might talk together, Michael Oglı called aloud upon the old Souldiers in Mustapha's Army, asking by name for many old friends: many there present, rejoycing to see him, (whom they supposed dead in prison) came to the rivers side to hear him. Who lowdly perswaded them that this man was not the honorable Mustapha, but some bawled minded fellow set up by the Grecian Princes as a vail, &c. assuring them Mustapha, Bajazer's Son, ended his daies 22 years before, in his Countries defence, in the great battle against Tamerlane: wherefore they should forsake that supposed one, & yield obedience to their undoubted Sovereign Amurath. These words from him whom they generally revered and trusted, so wrought, that some adventured over the river unto him, and many that stayed, doubted. Eivases also, sent in secret to Mustapha, to terrify him, that (Amurath next night purposing to pass over above the bridge) his chief Captains corrupted promised to deliver Mustapha into his hands. Eivases, with some Troops (in the night) passed the river in the same place, with such noise as if Amurath's whole army was coming. Mustapha seeing things begin as Eivases had written, and carrying a guilty conscience, fled in haste, but with 10 persons (none pursuing) till he came to

Boga river, and by a great sum to the Captain of the Castle got passage, landing the 3d day over *Hellepont*, at *Calipolis*. This known they all yielded to *Eivases*, who repairing the bridge, *Amurath* joyned with him. *Ibrahim* would have had all the Rebels put to the sword, but by *Eivases* they were generally pardoned. *Amurath* coming to *Boga*, hanged the Captain: and intending to pursue him, hired (by chance) a *Genoway* ship to transport his Army into *Europe*; (for *Mustapha* caused the shipping to be brought to the other side). He now fleeing to *Hadrianople*, fearing to be betrayed, speeded thence: coming to an obscure place in the Country, whence the pursuers brought him bound to *Amurath* at *Hadrianople*, where he was hanged from the battlements of a high Tower. Some Writers report him indeed to be *Bajazet's* Son: but the *Turkish Histories* reporting as before, call him *Dusma* or counterfeit *Mustapha*, &c.

Divers of the common Souldiers apparelled and armed like *Janizaries*, fell into the true *Janizaries* hands, *Amurath's* guard, who used them with all possible indignities. A Janizary being hungry, brought 2 of these to a Cooks shop, to sell them for a little victuals: who refusing to give him, as having no use of such; the Janizary swore to cut off their heads, and give them him for nought if he would not redeem them for a thing of nought. The Cook, moved with pity, offered him a Sheeps head, which he took, swearing he had given more than they were worth; which disgrace is yet often objected by the insolent Janizaries, telling these *Asapi* (in their rage) two of them are not worth a ludden Sheeps head.

Amurath was not a little grieved to think that this dangerous rebellion was first plotted by the *Greeks*, and then commenced by the Emperor; of whom thinking to be revenged, he sent *Michael Ogli*, with his *Europeans* to invade about *Constantinople*, following in person with

with the *Janizaries* and *Asians*, filling the Land's neck before the City from Sea to Sea, and beginning furiously to batter the walls: but they, stronger than he, supposed, and the Defendants still repairing, he ceasing his battery, desperately assaulted it, but they were notably repulsed, some losing their hands, some their armes, but most their lives; no shot failing (from the walls) in vain. Which *Amurath* beholding, roundly a retreat, and shortly in great rage departed: To whom the Emperour, sending about peace, he would not hear, but threatned ere long to be revenged. Wherefore the Emperour, to keep him busied, deviled with the *Caramanian* King, countenancing another *Mustapha* *Amurath's* younger Brother, to his no small trouble. *Mahomet* had 5 Sons and 7 Daughters, *Mustapha* surnamed the little was the second, who being but 13 years old, was set up by *Caramanian*, and other *Mahometan*, and Christian Princes to impeach *Amurath's* greatnesse: who strengthened with their forces, besieged *Nice*, at length yielded to him. But *Amurath* corrupting by great gifts and promises, *Ilias Beg*, the Princes Tutor, he in 9 dayes came to *Nice*, entering with small resistance, *Mustapha* being presented by the Tutor to him: who because he would not (pill a drop of Sacred *Othoman* blood, strangled him with a bow-string, buried at *Prusa*.

Amurath now fearing no Competitor, removed the 3 *Bassies* into honourable places, retaining onely *Eivases* and *Ibrahim* of his Council. *Eivases* being shortly accused, that he sought to aspire the Kingdome, usually wearing a privy Coat, the Tyrant (jealous) cast his arme about him (as in kindnesse) as he rood with him: finding him secretly armed, would know the cause; who answered, for fear of some enemies in Court; but he forthwith apprehended. had his eyes burnt out with a hot steel glaive. *Mahumethes* (the while) *Caramanian's* King besieged *Attalia* 6 months, valiantly defended by

by *Hamza*, *Amurath's* Lieutenant: the King being slain with a great shot, as he viewed the City. *Ibrahim* succeeding brake up the siege, to bury his Father. Then also *Dracula* of *Valachia* passing *Danubius*, did much hurt about *Silistra*, but afterwards was forced to become *Amurath's* tributary.

Tzunites (then about) pretending an interest of descent in the *Seignory* of *Aidinia*, (by all means vexed *Jaxis Beg* the Lieutenant) secretly favoured of the Country what they durst. *Amurath* Commanded *Hamze Anatolia's* Viceroy with all power to war on him, who invaded the Princes Country: who meeting him well provided, gave him battle: *Hasan* the Prince's son, with a part, put part of the *Turks* to flight, and too furiously pursuing, left his Father hard beset by the Viceroy, glad to flee to *Hipsly* Cattle: *Hasan* returning, ignorant of the hap, was overcome and taken: The Viceroy presently besieging the Castle, after a while, the Prince (in extremity, yielded to him, (without Violence to him or his son) to be sent prisoner to *Amurath*: the Viceroy promising it by Oath. *Jaxis* whole brother the Prince (by chance) before taking, put to death attending *Hamze* to his tent, and *Hasan* (as the *Turks* manner is) sitting on the ground, drawing him by the Collar to his fathers feet struck off his head, and in the same rage, the aged Prince's also; to the great dishonour of the Viceroy. Their heads set on 2 Lances in the Castles light, the defendants yielded. After *Zunites* his death, all this territory was united to the *Othoman* Kingdom. After all this, *Amurath* married *Isfendiars* Daughter. He now thought high time to take revenge of the Greek Princes that aided the Rebels aforesaid: wherefore ranging with a great Army thorow *Macedonia*, to *Theffalonica*, he surprized divers places (belonging to the Emperour) by the way. This famous City, (sometime for beauty and wealth) not inferiour to any in Greece, *Amurath* hardly

hardly besieged with terrible battery, corrupting secretly some Citizens, to have let him in by a secret Mine; which being by the Venetian Governours perceived, the plotters leaping the walls, fled to the *Turks*. *Amurath* promising his Souldiers all its spoyle if they wan it, so inflamed them (especially the *Janizaries*) that by a most terrible assault they entred the City. The *Venetians* fleeing to their Galleys, got to Sea: but no tongue or pen describe, the miseries the Christian Citizens endured, heartily wishing to die and could not. The furious enemy devoured all Sexes and Ages, but those who for strength or comelinesse, were reserved to labour and lust, afterwards dispersed into most miserable slavery. The infinite riches became a spoile: the houses (desolate) given for a habitation to such *Turks* as (at pleasure) repaired thither, and at this day possessed by them. This happened in 1432, *Amurath* returning to *Hadrianople*, sent *Caratze* with most of his Army into *Ætolia*: whose Prince, *Charles*, dying a little before, divided *Acharnanian* amongst his 3 Base sons, (leaving the rest to his Brothers Son, *Charles*). Shortly after, *Amurath* sending aid to one of the brethen falling at discord, in fine, subjected all *Ætolia* to himself. The Princes of *Athens*, *Phocis*, *Boetia*, and all Greece unto *Corinths* strait, terrified hereby, became tributaries to the Tyrant, living long under his slavery. Thus the Greeks lost their liberty, &c. and are now so degenerate, that whereas they accounted all Nations Barbarous in comparison, themselves are become no lesse Barbarous. *John Catrion* who reigned in *Epirus*, seeing how the *Turk* prevailed against his Neighbour-Princes, (for peace) delivered his 4 Sons, *Szemslus*, *Reposius*, *Constantine*, and *George*, Hostages to *Amurath*, promising well to intreat them: But having gotten them, he circumcised and instructed them in *Turkish* superstition, to their Parents great grief: and the Father dying he poysoned the 3 Elder, seizing on *Croia* his chief City,

City, and all his Territories, as if (by right) devolved to him. But *George* (named *Scanderbeg*, or Lord *Alexander* for his feature and wit) he loved (some thought) more passionately than he should a boy: causing him to be instructed in all activity, &c. wherein he excelling all his equals, came (very young) to be a great *Sanzack*, and being often General of his Armies, he got the love of all, increasing in credit with *Amurath*. Who shortly turning into *Servia*, the Prince to procure his favour offered him a yearly tribute, and to do what he reasonably demanded. He beside the tribute, required *Mary* his fair Daughter in marriage, the *Hungarians* not to passe through his Country to invade him, and not to deny his Army passage, when he would invade *Bosnia*. All which the Prince was glad to agree to: Now about, *Josephus* and *Machmutes* *Amurath's* brethren, and *Orchanes Solymans*' son, &c. died of the plague at *Prusa*.

While he thus in *Europe*, the *Caramanian* King invaded him in *Asia*: for 'twas agreed between the Christians of *Europe* and *Mahometans* of *Asia*, to invade him (when in *Europe*) in *Asia*, and when in *Asia*, in *Europe*. *Amurath* seizing on *Saruchania Mentesia*, &c. before, but his tributaries, entred *Caramania*, forcing the King to yield to his own conditions, and send his Son to wait at his Court: and made *Isfendiar* his tributary, and to send his son also; Thus becoming terrible to all the *Mahometan* Princes. Returning to *Hadrianople*, he sent *Ali's* Bassa to invade *Hungary*, in revenge of their incursions in his absence: which he performing for a month, returned with rich booty. Ere long he personally invaded into *Hungary*, the Prince of *Servia* giving his Army passage, and *Dracula* of *Valachia* aiding him more for fear than good will. So returning, his Souldiers enriched, he wintered at *Hadrianople*. Who to spoyle the secret suspected confederacy between the *Hungarians* and the King of *Caramania*, doubting the
Servian

Servian his Father in-law was chief Author, sent for him to *Hadrianople*: who doubting some tragedy, pretended greatly he could not come; and fearing, fortified all his strong places, chiefly the City *Semendre*, leaving *Gregory* or *George* his son Governour, (for *Stephen* was at Court with his Sister) and went into *Hungary* to procure some aid, and having there certain Territories exchanged of *Sigismund* for the City *Belgrade*. Not long after, *Amurath*, forgetting affinity and league, entred *Servia*, destroying and hardly besieging *Semendre*, where after long siege, the Princes son (doubting sudden assault) yielded himself and City: so that *Sophia*, *Novomont*, with all the rest yielded to *Amurath*. After which, hearing the *Servian* and *Hungarian* were making head, and that *Gregory* and *Stephen*, had intelligence with his Father, he cast them into prison at *Didymotum*, & burnt out their eyes with a red hot brasse ballon.

Albert Duke of *Austria* marrying *Sigismund* the Emperours onely Daughter, and succeeding him, died in the 2d year of his Reign in preparation against *Amurath*: who driving *George* of *Servia* out of his Dominions, had extended his Kingdome even to *Hungariaks* borders. *Albert* leaving his wife with child, the *Hungarians* (the *Turks* come to nigh) thought needful not to rest on the peoples devotion towards the Queen, and expectation of her issue: but to choose some great Prince, the better to defend the Kingdome against their enemies. Whereupon they sent Embassage to *Uladislaus* young King of *Polonia*, to offer him the Queen in marriage, and with her the Kingdome also. So he debated in the *Polonian* Court of the inequality of the match, the King being in his prime, and the Queen well steeped in years; nought was offered herein but wars: that the *Hungarians* sought to defend themselves by *Polonian* forces. Others said, the uniting of these 2 Kingdomes, would be great good to both, to the Kings great honour, &c. that it were greater policy

policy to keep the *Turk* out of *Hungary*, than leaving it a prey, to be forced to fight with him in *Polonia*: and for inequality of years, it was not so great a matter, for Princes regard more the virtues of their choice, with their honours increase, &c. than the Summer fruit of youth, which doth shortly perish, &c. *Uladislans* answered the Embassadors he would accept of their offers. But the Queen being delivered of a son, whom she named *Ladislans*, she began to repent of calling in the *Polonian* King, to her sons prejudice. And animated by some Nobles, (hoping to grow great themselves) determined by all means to exclude the *Polonian*: but most considering the most expedience, and that they could neither with honour or safety flye from what was concluded. *Hungary* was divided into 2 Factions, and grew to civil Wars. The Queen, the more to gain the people, caused her son (but 3 Months old) to be solemnly Crowned at *Albaregalis*. But the *Polonian* entering *Hungary* with an Army, and joyning with his friends, most which followed the Queen, revolted to him. So that she (committing her sons tuition, with the Crown, to *Frederick* the Emperour, yet) ceased not to stir up wars against *Uladislans* at home and abroad, till by her death her quarrel ended.

Amurath (in these civil Wars) thought a fair opportunity for *Hungaria's* conquest. Wherefore with a great Army marching to the strong City *Belgrade*, (which environed on the East with *Danubius*, on the South with the river *Saus*; and on the other sides with strong walls and deep large ditches, was then accounted, the gate into *Hungary*) First gave 2 terrible assaults (in good hope) but was Valiantly repulsed with great slaughter. Wherefore he raising mounds, and high wooden Towers, furiously battered the walls, causing also galleys, &c. in great number to be brought into both rivers, to assault the City, and keep the Citizens from succours. Yet it was still defended

defended under *Uranus* a Florentine Governour, who with Sallies and shot, slew great numbers. The *Turk* knowing, that *Vladislaus* was at this time troubled by the Queens Faction, continued his siege, though famine began much to increase in his Campe, hoping the defendants (despairing of help) would shortly yield. *Vladislaus* assayed to raise the siege by sending 3 *Polonian* Nobles Embassadors to *Amurath*, declaring, for as much as he had offered to joyn with him in league before he came out of *Polonia*, if he would desist from invading *Hungary*, whereof he was now chosen King, and raise his siege, then they should easily agree upon the desired peace, &c. but if he had rather proceed in Armes, he would do his best to make him know he was of power sufficient to withstand his greatest forces, and revenge his wrongs. *Amurath* appointing the Embassadors to withdraw to *Synderovia* of *Servia*, not far off, till he might better consider their demands, and pretending their safety: so soon as they were departed, he first assailed the Citizens and Souldiers, with magnificent promises, &c. if they would yield the City: shooting in also many letters full of like promises. But seeing no hope to prevail, he spake to his Captaines (called together) as followeth. Though I know 'tis in my power to grant or not grant the motioned peace: yet it is my pleasure to know your minds also. For so much as we have that war in hand; wherein, with worldly felicity, is endangered our religion, &c. As for mine own estate, I possess so large Countries in *Asia* and *Europe*, that perhaps it might better stand with my estate to take more care for keeping that I have, then to travel for more: but whether have you sufficient or nor, and how long assured of the same? And moreover, we shall be driven at length to forsake our Religion, if we now lay down Armes. For our enemies require we should first cease from War, and then they would talk of Peace. I omit what labour we have taken in our siege, &c. all which they command us to forsake. Our enemies

know, whosoever shall have this City, shall have a Bulwark of defence for his own, and an entrance for subduing of others. *Hungary* is now divided: and this motion is but to gain time for satisfying private quarrels, that with double forces they may set on us. &c. Their proud demaunders for restoring *Bulgaria* and *Rascia* &c. sounds already in my ears: which we refusing to grant the *Hungarians* and *Polonians* joyne, will bring those Wars to our doors, which we at great advantage make on them troubled with civil broyles. And if we should restore all in reason they could desire, do you think the Prince of *Servia* would rest contented with his own? whose haughty mind gapeth at all ours in *Europe*, &c. If whose fortune should answer his designs, besides all the miserable outrages to be feared, they count it a godly work to use all cruel villanies against our Nation, except we will forsake the Faith and Religion delivered by our Ancestors, &c. accounting all holy Saints which die in fight against us. If ye will but a little inforce yourselves, ye shall find all worldly and heavenly felicity assured unto us, when (to morrow) you shall overthrow the foundation of the enemies wall. Hitherto we have striven with nature in the rough mountaines of *Bulgaria* and *Rascia*, &c. that at length we might attain to the wealth of fruitful *Hungary*, whose pleasant places do yield plenty of all food for man and beast, not only to satisfy nature's necessity, but even glut our wonton desires: gold which others most painfully dig up (in few places), the *Hungarians* gather as it were a growing plant. It is in your power (worthy Souldiers) whether ye will (to morrow) open your selves a way to these good things for ever, or leave the way open for your enemies to all that you hold. According as I shall see you fight, I shall perceive what to answer to the insolent demands of the Embassadors.

Next morning (early) *Amurath* commanded the assault to be given to a great breach he had made: the Souldiers assailing it with great courage, especially the *Janizaries* who won the same. The Christians seeing all in danger running from all parts to the breach, so charged the *Janizaries* that they retired more hastily then they entred. Many slain, the rest fleeing out, were either slain or burnt to death in the ditch, or strangled in the smock: the Defendants wild fire taking hold upon raggots, &c. wherewith the *Turks* made their way over. He is reported to lose herein 8000 of his best men, besides 7000 overwhelmed in the Mines, by Countermines. They that assailed by water had rather worse successe. Many Gallies, &c. sunk, some burnt, divers in sudden fear splitting upon the Shelves. *Amurath* shamefully beaten, and by famine, and defendants force losing most of his Army, determined after 7 months siege to return. Yet sternly answered the Embassadors in the Campe: we will talke of peace, when *Uladislans* shall deliver us all of *Rascia* which he holdeth, and also *Belgrade* as a pledge. For this time I will raise my siege: yet I would wish him, rather to accept of my friendship, than, by denying that little, to hazard both his Kingdomes. I ask but what is mine by law of armes, before he was called into *Hungary*. If he will rather strive for other mens, than quietly possesse his own, I will (in good time) repaire thither again, &c.

In his way, he left *Isa Beg* with certain troopes at *Scopia* in *Servia*, who so troubled the King of *Bosnia*, that (for peace) he promised *Amurath* 25000 Duckets yearly tribute.

Uladislans seeing *Transylvania* much subject to the *Turks* incursions, (having gotten all *Moldavia* into their possession) created *John Huniades* his Vicegerent there: Whatever his parents were, himself was a most polique, Valiant, and fortunate Captain, obtaining such

Victo-

Victories, as was never before (by any Christian Prince) against the *Turks*, with whose name they used to fear their crying Children: He began to keep them short, cutting them off when they entred, and shutting the passages of *Transylvania*, and not resting till he won *Moldavia* quite from them, And many times passing *Danubius*, made havock of the *Turks*, carrying away great booty, with many Captives.

Laying at *Temeswar*, and *Isa* at *Sinderovia*, both of great Spirit: *Isa* to increase his credit with the Sultan his Uncle, &c. continually foraged about *Belgrade*, that wearying the Inhabitants with daily harms, he might gain the City, mostly abandoned of the Citizens, which *Amurath* could not by force obtain. Sometimes not content to spoyle the open Country, he assailed the Cities Suburbs, and was hardly repulsed. And *Huniades* onely hindring his further proceedings, he brake sometimes into his Country, laying ambushes in every Corner to Circumvent him: who grieved hereat, secretly raised a strong power, and with Valiant *Nicolas Vilarch*, passing *Danubius*, encamped betwixt *Belgrade* and *Sinderovia*. *Isa* forthwith setting forward against him with a great Army, he found *Huniades* as ready for battle as himself. At the first encounter, *Huniades* his wings were forced to retire: but the *Turks* coming to the men at Armes, their fury was stayed; many fell on both sides, but of the *Turks* more, who not able long to endure the Shock, were by heapes overthrown. Which *Isa* beholding, fled to *Sinderovia*, the rest fled also: whom the *Hungarians* (especially *Huniades*) fiercely following, left not the Chase till come almost to the Suburbs of *Sinderovia*: few escaped, the rest being taken or slain: *Huniades* returning with rich prey, &c. to *Belgrade*, after which *Isa* was more quiet. This Victorie soon filled *Buda* with joy and gladnesse: *Uladislaus* causing publique prayers with thanksgiving to be made, and by letters gratulatory,

tory, with rich presents, encouraged *Huniades* to the prosecution of the Religious War.

Amurath, lest he would seem to yield to the *Hungarians*, repaired his broken forces, to renew his Wars in *Valachia*: sending *Mesites* Bassa with a puissant Army, to invade *Transylvania*. He passing out of *Servia* over *Danubius*, suddenly entered *Huniades* his Country, burning, spoiling, and killing all he li hit on without respect. *Huniades* (lately come) and having no sufficient forces to oppose the enemy, was wonderfully grieved and perplexed. At length he fled to his old friend the Bishop of *Alba Julia*: but staying there about raising a tumultuary Army, the enemy was come near him, glad to march so slier, as it were surcharged with spoyle. Which they beholding, thought it better, with what power they had to go out, and honourably to die, than longer to behold the miserable destruction of their Country. But whilst they marched on unadvisedly, without scouts, they fell in ambushes layed in the woods and Vallies to intercept them. *Huniades* and the Bishop so entrapped and beset, fled back again, after whom the *Turks* following, put all they could overtake to the sword: yet most escaped to *Alba Julia*. The Bishop in taking a river with his horie was overthrow and slain. The *Bassa* encouraged, now wasted at pleasure with fire and sword, that part yet unspoyled. *Huniades* with wonderful speed taking what Souldiers he could, perswaded also the *Sicilians* to take up Arms, who (for the present necessity) chearfully did, he following the *Bassa* returning laden with spoyle, to sit upon him on occasion: of whose coming, *Mesites* not greatly reckoning, said, Let him come, and with the spoile of him self enrich our Victory. *John*, an Espial, especially discovered to *Huniades*, that the *Bassa* had appoured some of his best Companies, above all things, to assaile *Huniades* his person in battle, (all depending on his direction) giving them tokens to know him

him and his horse. One *Simon Kemene* a Valiant man, or much unlike *Huniades*, changed horse and armour with him, appointing him a choise troope to attend him: *Huniades*, finding an opportunity, came suddenly on the *Turks*, that they were glad to fight without Order; many fell on both sides, but far more of the *Turks*. The *Turkish* troopes (the while) decrying *Simon*, with all their power made towards him, where was fought a most bloody battle. But they bending their forces more and more to kill him: at length slaying them about him, (not without their great losse) slew him, supposing him the very General. But *Huniades* riding to and fro, encouraged his Souldiers not to forsake the Victory, nor leave unrevenge, so many slaughters and harmes, committed by their enemies, &c. In the heat of this battle, fortune favouring neither, great number of *Transylvanian* prisoners in the Camp, with one consent brake their bonds, slaying many of their keepers, and issuing into the battle, encouraged their Country men. Yet it was hardly fought: But at length, the *Turks*, out of hope of Victory, retired by little and little; the other fought more fiercely than before. *Mesues* beholding some as if they fled, others fleeing outright, and no meanes to slay them, fled also: the *Hungarians* pursuing with most terrible execution, in which *Mesues* and his son were slain: the report of which added swiftnesse to the *Hungarians*, pursuing them for certain dayes to the top of the *Alpes*; 20000 *Turks* were slain, about 3000 *Hungarians*. *Huniades* recovered all the prey, with their rents and baggage, a number of Capives kissing his feet, gave God thanks for their deliverance: some called him the Father, some the Defender of his Country, &c. He again with tears standing, embracing them, rejoyced at the publique good, giving hearty thanks to God, Commanding the like to be done in all that Province. He commended the Souldiers Valour, and the people's Loyalty, extolling the

worthy Captives by name, &c. part of the spoyle; he appointed a part to devout uses, part amongst the Souldiers. He sent a great wagon loaded with the *Turks* ensignes; and the chief of their Heads, (the *Bassaes* and his sons stood foremost) to *Wladislaus* and the Despot of *Serbia*, presented by an old *Turk*, as followeth;

Huniades, &c. sendeth to you part of the spoyle, lest he should seem to defraud you of the honour of the battle. These heads he sendeth, that you should not want assurance of such a Victory. All these witness the greatnesse of the Slaughter, and exhort you to great achievements; requesting that general Supplications may be commanded, and a great Army provided: for all suppose the *Turk* will engage his whole forces in revenge of so great a slaughter.

The King and the Despot, commending *Huniades* his discreet Valour, with the Victory, worthy (as they said) of a Roman triumph, publique supplications were made thorow *Hungaria*, Messengers sent to give *Huniades* great thanks, with rich presents, commending his faithful service requesting him to prosecute the war with like care, that he should want nothing needful thereunto. *Moldavia* and *Valachia* the *Turks* Tributaries, now revolted to the *Hungarians*: and *Huniades* fame was soon dispersed thorow *Europe*, and a general hope conceived of him. &c.

This overthrow, with *Mesites* his death, most of all *Moldavia's* and *Valachia's* revolt, much troubled the *Turk*. So that, raising a great Army of 80000 men under *Schech Abedin* Bassa, an Eunuch, yet right Valiant and expert, charged him after doing what harm he could in *Valachia* and *Moldavia*, to break into *Transylvania*, fully to revenge the losse before received, &c. The Bassa entred *Valachia*, filling the Country with fear and tumult, sore repenting of their revolt. *Huniades* chearing them, willed them to retire to their safest places, and
not

not to expose their weak forces against their fury, promising to come to their relief, &c. The Bassa dividing his Army, foraged far and near, burnt, and spoyled all in their way, killing without respect of Age, Sex, or Condition. But the *Valachians* retiring themselves, few fell into the enemies hands. The *Turks* descended into *Transylvania*, purposing to do greater harme if possible: but *Huniades* was therewith 15000 chosen Souldiers, ready to encounter them. The Bassa, (as well aware with whom he had to do) encamped, to see the enemies power. But informed by scouts that he was not a quarter so many as the *Turks*, but lay strongly encamped with his Wagons and Carriages as in a sure Fort, he wondered at his courage and skill, yet presuming of his multitude, he doubted not to offer him battle. Being come within half a mile of each other, the *Turks* thought not best to joyn battle in one front, but to divide, and so fight by degrees; if he could not so, to enclose the Christians round with his multitude. *Huniades* charged his Souldiers, above all things to keep their Order, &c. Next day being come to *Pascape*, the Bassa spent a good space in marshalling his Army, as did also *Huniades*, encouraging his chief Commanders that no courage could have induced him to encounter such a multitude, did not necessity, their approved Valour, and the assured hope in Christ, confirme him. Three commodities God propounded unto them, the welfare of Wives, Children and Country, renown in this World, and immortality in the World to come. The *Grecians*, *Macedonians*, *Thracians*, *Bulgarians*, *Epirots* and *Dalmatians* could not abide the *Turky* force: The *Athenians*, *Thebanes*, *Lacedemonians*, willingly gave them place: Unto us is this praise of this Victory by God assigned, who oft with a small power and some time against all hope, have with notable slaughter overthrown them, &c. learning no lesse to fear you though but few, than if you were many. Now they are come with innum-

merable Legions: yet more than the Janizaries are no good Souldiers among them, the rest as entorced serve them for fear, &c. We are not to fight for other mens houses and altars, but for our own, &c. That God is able with his little finger (if he will) to destroy all the *Turks* in the World, but he first makes proof of our courage for defence of his name, that finding it faithfull, he may strengthen it with his own right hand. They fight for their Prophet, Authour of all impiety, for spoyle and prey, destruction of Nations, other mens Kingdomes, enlarging their Dominions, worldly glory. But we contrarywise, &c. A little refreshing your selves (with a repast) as you stand, on the signal given, thrice calling aloud upon the name of Christ, fight (as near you can) with like Valour that He fought for your redemption, &c. for Christ will be alwayes present with us, who (believe me and so hope) will not onely deliver us this day out of the *Turks* hands but load us with their rich spoyle, and so bring all home in safety, with much joy and triumph.

The Bassa encouraged his, minding them of former Victories, not to degenerate from their Ancestours and themselves, to whom *Mahomet* the god's interpreter had foretold the Empire of the whole World, &c. He filled them with hope of great spoyle, promising to the Valiant, whole Villages, &c. with great preferments, as they should deserve. He assured them of Victory their enemies being weak, and themselves a great number, if they would fight it out like men. That having overcome *Huniades*, whom he had found the most Valiant and skillful Christian Captaine, nothing should hinder their further conquests; willing them above all things to seek after him; promising to him that killed him, great reward, &c. Both Armies being come within quarter of a mile, the signal given, the battle began: *Huniades* seeing the enemy cast his first battie in forme of a wedge, the easier to divide them, they in forme of a pare of Sheers were ready

ready to receive them, where both sides encountred with a fury and outcry, never more terrible. They fought a while, in the light horsemens wings, with like hope: but the *Turks* better acquainted with that kind of fight, better appointed & exceeding in number, enforced the Christians to retire to the men at arms force, where was made a most terrible fight: most of the *Turks* light horsemen were slain, for they could not abide the men at arms force, though but few in Comparison of them: so that the *Turks* in both wings began to faint. But the battle yet wavering, the Janizaries with men at arms, and troopes of light horsemen, compassed the Christian men at arms, standing in the main battle, where the old Janizaries, with Scimitaries cut their horses legs asunder: many of whom falling, were made shorter by the head: likewise the Janizaries were themselves trodden under foot. Whereupon blood ran like Rivers; most of the Janizaries being slain, and many Christians also.

The Bassa yet in hope the *Hungarians* would faint with long fight, came on with the reare ward, and a number of fresh Souldiers left for guarding his baggage. It was after four houres cruell fight. He commanded them to compass in the *Hungarians*, &c. vainly boasting it would be the last battle ever they would fight. *Huniades* suffering part of his men to be environed, caused the waggoners to thrust in with armed Carts, &c. behind the enemies; and afterwards with fresh supplies renewed the battle. The fight was great, and though the *Turks* slaughter great, yet not much feeling it for multitude still fought most desperately, till the right wing seeing themselves compassed with waggons, and thence charged with shot, &c. fearing the danger behind, shrunk from the fight. The *Hungarians*, now more furiously assailing their fainting enemies from; encouraging them in the waggons to approach them nearer, the *Turks* hardly beset, and fighting disorderly, first retired,

retired, presently after fled. They that were already slain in, &c. all perished. The left wing discouraged, fled likewise: the *Hungarians* fiercely following. The *Bassa* stricken with dispaire fled, with some Janizaries kept for his persons safeguard, whom so many *Turks* as could, followed: the rest flying thorow woods and mountaines, either perished with hunger, or were by the *Valachians* slain: scarce half the Army returned over *Danubius*. *Huniades* content with so great a Victory, pursued them not far, but with their Campes spoyle, greatly enriched himself and his Souldiers: 5000 were taken prisoners, and 100 Ensignes. *Huniades* caused prayers with thanksgiving to be made for 3 dayes in all those 3 Provinces, and hanged up at *Vascape* (where the battle was fought) certain *Turks* Ensignes, Trophies of Victory. It was the greatest ever any Christian before obtained against the *Turk*. Many Inhabitants left their dwellings for a season, for fear of infection by the *Turks* Carcates, where-with the fields lay covered. Then returning to *Buda* in triumph, he presented *Uladislaus*, the enemies Ensigns, &c. which he thankfully receiving, and highly commending his Valour, its fame shortly filled all *Europe*.

Amurath a little before, sent a proud Embassage to *Uladislaus*, offering peace, on delivering him *Belgrade*, or paying him a yearly tribute: the King (upon the first report of the Victory) answered, according to the issue of matters, he would shortly in person come and give him further answer. And for withstanding *Amurath's* power or desire of revenge, assembling the States of his Kingdom, with *Julian* the Popes Legate, sent thither to stir up the *Hungarians* against the *Turks*, he propounded the danger threatened, and how it might be averted. *Julian*, requested by the King to deliver his opinion, first spake: Since the *Turkish* Pestilence began to rage in *Europe*, no newes was more welcome to the great Bishop, &c. than

Uladislaus

Vladislaus his being chosen King of *Hungary*, for a fitter could not the *Hungarians* any where have found, &c. The Kingdom is by your force and valour, my mediation, and the Queen's death well pacified: but yet the *Turkish Tyranny*, &c. is to be repressed, &c. If so great an Army was vanquished by one of thy Captain's power, but small: what is to be hoped of thee (most mighty King) if thou shalt lead thine Armies in person, under the Protection of Christ Jesus? The eyes of all Christian Princes are upon thee, &c. And albeit the Common cause of Religion require thee to be a revenger, &c. yet *Hungary* and *Poland's* necessity no lesse enforce it; of which one is miserably vexed with the *Turks* out of *Servia* and *Dalmatia*, the other out of *Moldavia* and *Valachia*. You lack not (worthy Captaines) money, which shall be brought unto you from all part, not lusty and couragious Souldiers, nor policy, nor for tune, &c. you want nothing but will. It's an Expedition necessary, religious, profitable and honourable, wherein are all ample rewards in this life, and the life to come. Wherefore I beseech you by the faith of Christ, by love of your Children, health of your Kingdome, &c. with valiant courage and one consent, to take this sacred war in hand, and so enroll your names in the eternal book of fame.

Forthwith ensued the Despot's teares, perswading them of that expedition's necessity, declaring the *Turks* cruelty and strange tortures, his sons deprived of sight, and spoyled of their Genitories, &c. that the *Hungarians* were divided from the *Turks* but by the river *Sans*, oft to be waded in Summer, and hard frozen in Winter: that he was driven into exile by the *Turks* power, fleeing to *Ragusa*, then into *Hungary*, of which the *Barbarian* now asked tribute, to have some colour for its invasion, &c. Wherefore with many teares running down his aged face, he besought *Vladislaus*, not to let slip this fair occasion, &c. offering a great sum himself towards the war's charges,

charges, assuring them also of great supplies of men and money from other Princes. Whereupon a decree was made, that the King should personally with all speed enter into that war. Though Winter approached, men were taken up, and Embassadors sent to the Emperour, and others to pray their aid. Who mostly excusing themselves, sent no aid at all. Yet many out of *France* and *Germany* forsaking all, came and served on their own charge. In spring come, and supplications made for succour, the *Vladislavs* (May 1.) passing *Danubius* from *Buda*, they did 3 dayes at the River *Tibiscus* for his Armies coming; departing thence, marching till within sight of *Bulgaria*, he at *Cobis* passing *Danubius* with his very great Army, marched to *Sophia* in about 6 dayes, in *Bulgaria's* frontiers. Which being badly fortified, was easily taken; and afterward burnt, as were all other Towns and Villages thereabouts, for terrour to the rest. Thence he encamped at the River *Morava*, where 500 light horsemen being sent over, to view a safe and easy passage for the Army, they took 4 *Turks* scouts; understanding them, that 2000 *Turks* were at hand. They retiring back with all speed to the River, many leaping (for fear) from the high banks, perished in the deep, the rest stood doubtfully expecting what should become of themselves. The *Turks* descrying the King hovering on the top of the hill beyond the River, doubting an ambush, retired. Which they on the far side perceiving, and encouraged by the Kings coming down, followed a while to increase their fear. Next day the King passing the River, sent to see if all were clear: but being advertised that the *Turks* (at hand) had placed ambushes full by; he entering into counsel, resolved, that *Huniades* with 10000 horse, should next night suddenly set on the enemy. Who brought near them, and the Moon shining out, he led his men by the way the enemy was likeliest to flee, if put to the worst; and entering the Campe with a hideous cry, the

the *Turks* suddenly awakened, and dismayed, betook some to their weapons, some to their heels, &c. *Huniades* the whiles, cheered up his men courageously to assault their sleepy, naked, and fearful enemies. At last, the *Turks* made a Stir, but hearing *Huniades* was to do with the greatnesse of the sudden fear, with an insupportable desire of flight, they trod down one another, trampling on each others weapons. Most of them driven into thickets, &c. were by the fierce pursues slain: the rest when 'twas day, ran the same fortune, 30000 were slain, 4000 taken, with a number of Ensigns. Most report *Huniades* lost but 500; for few found any enemy to resist them. They took all the spoyle of a most rich Campe: The King and De'pot hearing of *Huniades* approach in triumph from the slaughter of the *Turks*, with great applause of the other Legions went 3 miles to meet him, and would not suffer *Huniades* to alight, to do him honour, but taking him by the right hand, joyed with him, thanking God who had given him a Captain worthy to rule the Romane Empire, &c. The Common Souldiers embracing one another, welcomed their victorious Friends. So the King and *Huniades*, sending the spoyle, and the chained Prisoners before, returned in great triumph, causing prayers with thanksgivings to be made to God, thorowout the Army.

The Legate General of the Voluntary Christians, perswaded the King and the rest, to prosecute their good fortune, and take in the rest of *Bulgaria*. *Huniades* had learned it was but 3 dayes journey to *Philippopolis* in *Thrace*, the like to *Hadrianople*, as much to *Constantinople*. The difficulty was the great and rough mountain *Hemus*, which dividing *Bulgaria* and *Servia* from *Macedonia* and *Thrace*, is not to be passed over but in 2 places, one made by *Traian* the Emperour, with a mighty stone-gate to be opened or shut at pleasure, the other near the little River *Saliza*, *Huniades* marching forward took

took all Towns (in their way) of *Bulgaria*; wherein conformity of Religion, the *Turks* cruelty, great affinity of Language, was no small help. Coming to *Hemus* to enter *Thrace*, the weather now very cold, they learned, those passages were so strongly shut with great stones, &c. they were very hardly to be forced. Wherefore *Hunniades* leaving the straighter way made by man, came upon *Christmas*, even to the other, by *Saltiza*; where *Amurath* had shut up the passage, and placed strong Garrisons to defend *Macedonia* and *Thracia* from the dreaded *Hungarians* invasion. In the Army was such want of all things, that the Souldiers were ready to forsake their Ensignes, and, mutinie beginning, to grow weak, by victuals failing. Besides, the Winter was so cold, and the frost so great, they could not many times seek for forrage or water. So that the Army began to retire and had been dissolved, had not *Hunniades* daily told them, the greatest difficulties were already past &c. that in going back, they should find greater difficulties in those vast Countries, than in going forward: that, these straits opened, there remained not but the spoile of a most rich and pleasant Country; that what they had already won, was easie to be recovered, except those enemies remaining, were driven quite out of *Europe*. Whilst *Hunniades* spake, every man was encouraged: but remembring their miseries, they curied the rash attempts of ambitious Princes. The *Turks* coming after them, *Hunniades* was sent with some troupes, who 8 times encountred them, and as oft forced them to retire. In retiring back, the King with most of the Army went before *Hunniades*, and the Despot followed after a good daies Dayes march: the *Turks* that kept the passage, followed them down the hill, in hope of reveng. *Carambey* was their General, with expresse charge not to fight upon any occasion with the enemy: (for *Amurath* thought it Victory enough, without

without losse to keep them out of *Thracia*). Which *Carambey* (for all that neglecting) followed the Christian Army, come to the mountain *Cannobiza*, hovering over their heads to take them at advantage: The Christians would many times fight with them in disadvantageous places, saying, They had rather dye like men, then starve with hunger and cold. *Carambey* exceeding both in strength and number, besides the ground's advantage, would needs give battle. *Huniades* and the Despot (though much troubled with the King's absence, who was gone a dayes march before) saw they could not shun battle; yet *Carambey* coming down upon them, put themselves in the best order they could, &c. *Carambey* sending his horse down, a cruel fight was made: in which many on both sides were slain. The *Polonian* men at armes, with the *Hungarian* light horse men fought (but as how?) honourably to dye. The *Turks* stood hard to it for a space, at length being hardly lied to, they began to give ground: *Carambey* coming in with new supplies, sometimes rating roughly, sometimes perswading fairely, flayed them that were fleeing. *Huniades* and the Despot, when they perceived the enemy a little to faint, cryed out, Victory &c. And sent some companies of foot, who climbing up among the bushes, paunched the *Turks* horses with half pikes, &c. as they passed by them. Here began the battle to decline; the bolder *Turks* which were come into the Valleys, compassed with the men at armes, hardly recovered the hill. *Carambey* (the while) performed all the parts of a Valiant and worthy Captaine, and courageously fighting in the thickest of his enemies, flayed, for a time, the lost battle. At last, deceived by the snow, he fell into a bogge, and was taken prisoner by a common Souldier. Many great ones were taken besides *Carambey*. but more slain, and most in the flight; few escaped but such as fled to the mountains to them that were left to defend the passage. In the
retreat,

retreat, *Huniades* seeing such a man as *Carambey* (though to him unknown) led prisoner, asked the Souldier, if he would sell him? who asked for him 10 Duckats, *Huniades* giving him 400, sent him to his tent, comforting him with cheerful words. The Despot coming that night to the tent, began to talk with him in the *Turkish* Language, and guessing by his talk Who he was, asked *Huniades* now he would ransom him? who said, he cost him 400 Duckats, but he valued him at 400000, which the Despot offered to pay: The *Polonians* report, that *Uladissus* was present and commanded as chief in this battle: yet *Hungarian* writers (whose credit we follow) report as before.

Shortly after, *Huniades* and the Despot consulted with the King for removing the *Turks* Garrisons left to keep the passages, and to prosecute the War. *Uladissus* (considering the Difficulty, and his Souldiers necessity) thought good notwithstanding to return. But they, the one for Honour, the other hoping to recover his lost Kingdom, said, The *Turks* were in any case to be removed, &c. alledging the invincible courage of his Souldiers, whose valour, (as the King should seem to distrust) he commanded to set forward. The Kings battle first mounted the hill, often stayed by its roughness, &c. *Huniades* in searching, found a crooked way, whereby (with his men) he got to the top even with their enemies. But being come to the desired place they found such a deep wide gaping rock betwixt, as was not to be passed or filled up: yet being very near, they attempted by cross-bow shot, &c. to remove the *Turks*, who were (at first) so annoyed and discomfited, they were almost at the point to forsake the passe, had not *Alis Beg* encouraged and taught them, (by throwing under the broken rocks) &c. to save themselves from the shot. *Huniades* had sent up other Companies, by another more steep way, who (by too much disadvantage) were easily rejected.

At length seeing the vain attempt, and desperate danger, he (by the Kings command sounding a retreat) retired down to the *Turks*, rejoycing. Next day the cold raging, and wants increasing, the King consulted with the rest, for halting their return into places of greater plenty; whereunto *Hunades* now easily yielded, the rest spake against it, blaming them, &c. promising he would find money for all things needful: So said the Legate also. But the Souldiers could not be perswaded to stay, crying out, It was not their Captaines, &c. but them that starved for hunger: as for the Despot (in hope of recovering his Kingdome) he perswaded things impossible, Need, they said, could not be vanquished; but, Winter past, they would willingly return to the War. The King sending his baggage before, retired the way he came: the *Turks* following and assailing them in the reare, on both sides, did and received harm. The Army loaded with spoil, could make no great haile: and passing thorow a great thick wood, full of bogs &c. they left some strong men at armes, as a wall against the pursuers; whom the *Turks* fiercely charging, there was a great fight and tumult raised, to which noise many hastily returning, in skirmishing, fell into the bogs, &c. hardly ridding themselves out. Besides, there were many crooked turnings, &c. with so steep descents, that their horses lay heeles overhead, overthrown with their Rides, that they were often forced to fight on foot. About 80 men at armes were lost; besides the *Turks* slain, were taken a 120, all presently slain. The King, fearing his Army (in so long and troublesome a march) should be consumed with hunger, &c. caused all things of the carriages and baggage, serving rather for burthen than use, to be burnt; all armes of them whom he lost, as of the enemy, to be buried; and all weak beasts of burthen to be killed. So the Army marched more speedily, nor so much subject to assaults. At length *Vladislaus* arriving at *Belgrade*, stayed some

daies well to refresh; thence passing the River *Savus*, he came to *Buda*, of all joyfully received. The Legate and *Huniades* went on his right hand, the Despot on his left, &c. Before the King at his coming to the City, went the notable *Turks* Captives; *Carambey* next before him, bound in chains; with them also the enemies Ensigns and saved spoiles. *Huniades* came behind the King, between the Legate and Despot in a triumphant robe, as next to the King best deserving, &c. Before all went the Prelates and Priests singing Hymns, &c. *Uladislans*, alighted at the gate, going on foot to a Cathedral, giving there hearty thanks, and hanging up the enemies Ensigns & part of the spoil in remembrance of so notable a Victory, &c. Then he went to his palace in the Castle, and duely commending every man, (especially *Huniades*) gave them leave to depart. Thus the *Hungarians* report: yet the *Turks* (dissemblers of their losses) call the Basha overthrown, *Cassanes* and the noble prisoner *Mechmet Beg Sanzagit* of *An-cyra*, called (of some) *Carambey* after his Father's name.

Out of this Turkish slaughter, escaped that Valiant Prince *George Castriot* (called *Scanderbeg*) whose mind had long desired to break out of the *Turks* thralldome, and be revenged of *Amurath's* intolerable injuries, being of en animated thereto by secret letters and messengers from *Epirus*: but wisely dissembled the same unto *Amurath*, till now under the leading of *Carambey*, in such a confusion, he took occasion to put in practise what he had long plotted, *Scanderbeg* a little before, imparting the matter to some trusty Country men, especially to *Amessu* his brothers son, of great courage, had a vigilant eye on the Bashes chief Secretaries flight, whom with *Amessu*, and other friends he closely followed: but getting the Secretary with a few followers in place convenient, he slew all the *Turks*, carrying away the Secretary bound, and with threats compelling him to write letters as from the Basha, to the Governour of *Croia*,

Croia, forthwith (in *Amurath's* name) to deliver to *Scanderbeg*, the charge of the City and Garrison, cunningly enterlacing other things, &c. And then slew the Secretary, and many *Turks* coming in his way, that his doings might be the longer kept from *Amurath's* knowledge. Who having with him 300 Epirot Souldiers that followed him out of the battle, came with incredible celerity, into *Dibria*, about 70 miles from *Croia*, where staying but a day, he chose a few to waite on him to *Croia*, as if his household servants: the rest, with other 300 come out of *Dibria*, he appointed secretly to be led thorow woods and mountains, till come to nigh *Croia* as possible, unperceived. When he drew near the City, he sent *Amessa* before as his Secretary, to certifie the Governour of his coming; who framing his countenance and attire as a natural *Turk*, he delivered his *Message* with so good grace and words, that all was verily believed. But *Scanderbeg* himself coming, and delivered the great Commanders letters, the Governour delivering him the Government of the City, departing next day, with his household towards *Hardrianople*. *Scanderbeg* thus gaining the chief City of *Epirus*; in the dead of the night, received in the Souldiers come from *Dibria*: placing most in convenient places, he with the rest, flew the Watch, and afterwards many in their beds; the Christian Citizens also helping, in a few hours there was none of the *Turks* Garrison left, except some few, who were content to forsake their superstition, many chose rather to die, and (as is reported) to kill themselves, than so to save their lives.

Scanderbeg now sending speedy messengers into all parts of *Epirus*, to disperse the news, and stir up the people for recovery of their liberty, flying fame had already prevented the Messengers, and the oppressed Epirots, were in armes in every place greatly desiring leaders; yet running by heaps they slew most *Turke* Garrisons in the

Country, abroad. No *Turk* could stir but he was slain, &c. the Governour of *Croia* with his retinue, was by the way slain by the Country people, and his goods a prey.

Scanderbeg commanded those he appointed Captaines, speedily to repaire to *Croia* with all power they could possibly make, divers Nobles also resorting to him with their followers; in few days he had 12000 well appointed: wherein, marching to *Petrella*, 25 miles from *Croia*, and situate on a steep rocky mountain, as the rest of the Cities be, he sent a wise Souldier to offer the Souldiers of *Petrella*, that if they would yield it, they should choole to continue in *Scanderbeg's* service, with bountifull entertainment; or depart with bag and baggage with honourable reward. The subtle Messenger, declared to them, That *Amurath* lately vanquished by the *Hungarians*, and looking daily to be set on by Christian Princes, had no leisure to look to *Epirus*; willing them to consider the dreadful misery that befell the Garrison at *Croia*, &c. The Governour considering the matter, gave up the City, onely upon departure with such things as they had, because it should not be said, he sold the City. *Scanderbeg* giving them both meat and money, sent them out of *Epirus* safely, with a Convoy. *Petrella* thus gained, he placed therein a convenient Garrison, presently marching towards *Petra Alba* in great hast. It is a City in *Emathia* 3 miles from *Petrella*. *Scanderbeg* scarce well encamped, but the Governour terrified, offered to deliver the City, on the same conditions granted at *Petrella*; which *Scanderbeg* faithfully performed. All things were there set in order, he came without delay to *Stellusa*, a strong City 50 miles from *Croia*, where encamped, next morning he sent a messenger to the City, with like conditions accepted of at *Petra Alba*: which most of the Souldiers would accept of, but the Governour *Desiderius* with a few, earnestly withstood. But the greater

greater part, when they could not perswade him with those few, to yield, they delivered him and them bound to *Scanderbeg*, and so yielded up the City. Wherefore fearing to return to *Amurath*, some remained with *Scanderbeg*, others provided for, or rewarded, departed whither they would. All other weaker places, in short time yielded themselves on like condition: onely *Sfetigrade* in *Epirus* frontiers, placed as it were an Eagles nest, remained in the *Turks* possession. *Scanderbeg* coming hither, began to assay it by composition, causing his Embassadors to declare, all that happened at *Croia*, *Petrella*, &c. how courteously he used the Garrison of *Stellusa* which yielded to him; and having the Governour with his partakers in bonds, whom they should see executed, if they forthwith delivered it not. This troubled the Garrison, chiefly the Governour, seeing thereby what might happen to himself. Wherefore first entertaining the Embassadors honourably, he said to the Citizens and Souldiers: Worthy and faithful men, what is your pleasure, we shall answer to our enemies demands? A rough and bold spirited Souldier, drawing his sword, and shaking it on high, answered. Most Valiant Governour, this and the like shall answer for us. Nothing was to lesse purpose, than to seek to terrifie Valiant minds, with the fortune of *Croia*, and *Stellusa*, &c. we prescribe them of *Petrella*, or *Stellusa*, no laws, neither let them us: brave mindes disdain to imitate others in honest actions, much lesse in cowardise. Let *Scanderbeg* kill the Governour, and our fellow Souldiers before our faces, do ye therefore think we shall die in their bodies? &c. But oh happy bodies! &c. which in defence of their liberty and faith have contemned Gold, Silver, Death and Torure. Wherefore carry back this answer from a common Souldier: If thy Master seek to impose these conditions on us, let him once more bare his Arme, which men of courage fear not so much as he

thinketh. Yet *Scanderbeg* is not the man we have heard him reported to be: for why (holding the Governour of *Stellusa* in bonds) doth he threaten him with death, not deserving the same, &c? Then the Souldiers thronging about him beating their swords and targets, gave a shout, as approving his speech. So the Governour, returning the common Souldiers answer, appointed every man to his charge, ordering all things for defence of the City. *Scanderbeg* smiling at the common Souldiers answer, said, He is a Valiant Souldier, if his deeds be answerable to his speeches: but if my force fail not, I will make him happy among the happy Ghosts of *Stellusa*: and commanding the Governour to be brought with the other, some forsaking Mahometism were baptized. *Desdrot* with the rest were put to death in sight of the Garrison Souldiers, shouting from the wall and railing on the Christians.

Winter now grown on, he left *Moses Golemus* with 3000 Souldiers, to keep in the *Turks* at *Sfetigrade*, and defend *Epirus* borders, till a more convenient time: repairing to *Croia*, when in a little above a month he had recovered his Kingdom: *Sfetigrade* being also ere long delivered by composition: during this time he slept not above 2 hours in a night; fighting awaies with his arme bare the blood oft burting out of his lips. 'Tis written, he slew 3000 *Turks* with his own hands in his wars against them.

After he had wrung his inheritance from *Amurath*, he overran part of *Macedonia*, making incursions into the heart of the Countrey, so enriching his Souldiers, that they desired no better pay: it beginning to be a proverb, that the spoil of *Amurath's* Dominions was *Scanderbeg's* revenues. *Amurath* (troubled with *Hungarian* wars) at first seemed not greatly to account of it, though inwardly grieved at the heart. But seeing no end to be expected of these miseries, he sent *Ali's* Bath with 40000 Select Souldiers, to subdue *Epirus*. This replenished the *Turks* with such hope of Victory, that the Souldiers before setting forth, were contending for division of the spoyle.

spoyle. Fame also filled *Epirus* with great fear of *Alis* his coming. The Country fleeing into strong Cities fortified the same, watching and warding, the aged commended them and theirs to God, and the Souldiers courage, with teares. *Scanderbeg* was nothing moved, having (as was supposed) intelligence from Friends in Court of all *Amurath's* designs. Out of all the multitude that repaired to him at *Croia* in *Epirus* from Christian Princes, &c. besides devout Volunteers, he chose onely 8000 horse, and 7000 foot, and placing some few in frontier Garrisons, at which his friends, yea and enemies marvelled. With which 15000, marching to *Dibria*, after encouraging his Souldiers, he encamped in the lower Counry near a wood, where the Bassa must needs passe. In which wood, he placed *Gnee* and *Ameffa* with 3000, to stand close, till he had joyned battle with the Bassa, then to break forth upon his rereward: Who encamping near *Scanderbeg*, reined that night, making great shew of mirth, with great fires: whereas in *Scanderbeg's* Campe all was silent, and no shew of fire, which made the *Turks* the more careless. Next morning *Scanderbeg* placing 3000 horse and foot in the left wing, and the like in the right, himself led the main battle: The rereward was committed to *Uranocotes*, a man then renowned, &c. *Alis* first charged with a small troope of horse: who retired that the Christians (hastily pursuing) might disorder their battle. But *Scanderbeg* perceiving the Bassa's meaning, all was kept in good order. So the wings beginning afresh, *Scanderbeg* Valiantly charged the Bassa with his main battle. But those in the wood suddenly issuing upon the *Turks* rear, made great slaughter, and forced many to flee. The Bassa's best Souldiers placed nearest himself, renewed the battle, almost lost. *Scanderbeg's* fortune was even at stand: till *Uranocotes* receiving the wearied into the reare, brake thorow the Bassa's Army with fresh

troopes brought thence, with such slaughter, that he made way for all the rest. The *Turks* discomfited, fled, whom the Christians fiercely pursuing, slew of them 22000, 2000 taken prisoners, 24 *Turks* Ensigns; of the Christians were slain not past 120. *Scanderbeg* making his 7000 foot horsemen, with the *Turks* hortes, entred far into *Macedonia*, filling his Souldiers with wealth, and sparing nothing from fire and sword. *Alis* with the remainder returning to *Hadrianople*, was charged by *Amurath* of cowardise and indiscretion. Whereof clearing himself by rehearsal of his former Victories, and the testimony of the Captaines present in battle, he was again received into favour.

Amurath overthrown, first by *Huniades*, now by *Scanderbeg*, and elsewhere beset that he knew not which way to turn, fell into such a Melancholy passion, that he was about to execute himself, had not *Cali Bassa* (by whose perswasion, he yielded to desire peace of *Uladislaus*, using the Despot a mean therein) comforted his dying spirits. The Despot at first finally credited what the Embassadors told him, still better perswaded, he so wrought especially with *Huniades*, that *Amurath* departing withall his forces out of *Servia*, restored it to the Despot, delivering him his 2 sons, whom, bereft of sight, he had long kept in prison. That thenceforth he should not claim *Moldavia*, nor that part of *Bulgaria* lost in the last Wars. Not to molest any part of *Hungaria*, during the time: and to pay 40000 Duckats for *Caramber's* rancome; a Peace was for 10 years concluded, and by solemn Oath on both parts confirmed. This was the honourablest Peace ever before made with any *Turk*, and most profitable, had it been sincerely kept. *Amurath* now converted all his forces against the *Caramanian* King, injuring him whilst busied in the *Hungarian* Wars. The *Caramanian* not daring to meet him, nor trust to any his strong holds, fortified himself in the mountain.

mountaines. *Amurath* made great spoile, taking great booties in his Country, at last hardly besieging *Iconium*. Whereupon he sent Embassadours with his wife, *Amurath's* sister, to intreat for Peace, offering him the double tribute, and his son in hostage. *Amurath* granting him Peace, returned: In this War *Amurath's* Eldett son died with a fall from his horse, (hawking) to his great grief: Who old, and thorowly wearied with Wars, &c. tending for his son *Mahomet* but 15 years old, resigned to him his Kingdome, appointing *Cali Bassa* and one, *Chosroe* his trusty Counsellours. So with *Hamze Beg*, departing to *Magnesia*, he gave himself to a Monastery life amongst certian Turkish Monks.

Many Mahometan and Christian Princes, sorry for the peace between *Uladislans* and the Sultan, thinking that War's prosecution would have been the utter ruine of the Turkish Kingdome, sought by all means to induce *Uladislans* to break the solemn league, especially *John* the Greek Emperour, remembring him of the confederacy made with other Christian Princes against the common enemy of Christianity, that he (rejecting divers offers of *Amurath* for Peace) was ready with the other Princes, to joyn his forces with his, if he would; which he could not do in a better time: *Amurath* having drawn his greatest forces into *Asia*, and betaken himself to a private life: requesting *Uladislans* not to leave them a prey to the Turk, who when he thought himself safe from the Hungarians, would invade them. Then also letters came from the Cardinal of Florence General of the Fleet, declaring how *Amurath* leaving almost none in *Europe*, was gone into *Asia*: that he was (according to promise) come to the straits of *Hellepont* to embarre his passage out of *Asia*: Both these letters being read in the Council, the King with all the Hungarian Nobility, were never more sorry or ashamed for any thing, than the late league with *Amurath*, &c. whilst they

they stood wavering, *Julian* the Legat, an enemy to Peace, and by his place next to the King dissuaded them, That they entred a League with the *Turke* an Infidel, to violate their faith with the Christians, and break the holy League made with the great Bishop, and other confederate Princes, that they might recover *Servia* long before destroyed; verily a small and woful profit, &c. Did they not in his presence (and he the Author) willingly make a League with the *Italians* and *Greeks*, that the one should meet them with aid out of *Thracia*: the other with a great Fleet to come in o *Hellepont*? If they made it, why made they not another with the *Turks*, or by what right can they keep the same, being made? This second League is to be broken, which except they do, he feare, as *Judas* betrayed Christ, they may seem to betray his Vicar, &c. And what would they answer to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperour, who had (with the first) taken the field, and expecteth but their coming? What would they answer the great Bishop? What the *Venerians* & *Genovais* whose Fleet is ready? What the *Burgundians*, who for zeal passing the Ocean, by many dangers now stode in *Hellepont*? That they promised the first of the Spring to be in field, and now their Souldiers both in Spring & Summer play. That some perhaps would blame him for suffering it with the rest: he was indeed present, but as much as in him was, he entered it might not be, &c. That he was overcome by the wisdom and authority of *Huniades*, and compassion of the Despot &c. that having made restitution of *Servia* and the Captives, what remained but to repair their Army, and keep their first League? and to say that *Uladislaus* after his League with the *Greek* and *Latin* Princes, could not without their consent conclude any thing, especially with enemies of Christian Religion, &c. That a just and lawful Oath is to be religiously kept, but that which tendeth not only to a private but publick destruction, ought to be frustrate. That before their faithless dealing

ling were farther spread, not to violate their faith, (for the good of the Christian Commonweal) given, to protect the expedition, by common consent taken in hand: To deliver the Christian Provinces or presse with a kingly vir-
titude, and not to deceive the worlds expectation conceived of them, than which nothing can be more dishonourable: not to suffer to fit an occasion to slip away; but requesting them above all things, to march forward with their victorious forces into *Macedonia* and *Thracia*.

In conclusion speaking of the great Bishop's authority, he in his name, dissolved the League, abjuring them from the Oath: which so contented the King, and the rest, that a Decree was made to continue the League with their confederates, and to prosecute the wars against the *Turks*. To which unfortunate Decree, both the Despot and *Huniades* easily consented, the one in hopes of the Wars good success the other with desire of *Bulgaria* promised and (as some say) assured by Charter to him, by *Uladislaus*.

Of this breach notice was speedily given to the *Greek* Emperour and the *Florentine* Cardinal; lest, hearing of the Peace concluded, they should alter or desist from their purposes. The *Turk* being ignorant hereof, had withdrawn all Garrisons out of *Servia*, and other places agreed upon, restoring them to the Despot and others; freeing a number of Captives and the Despot's two Sons. Yet *Uladislaus* (through *Huniades*) detained some strong holds in *Servia*, for which the Despot ever grudged against *Huniades*.

As *Uladislaus* was preparing his Forces, the fame of *Scanderbeg* was grown great, every man speaking of him honour and praise; Whereupon *Uladislaus* by consent of his nobility, dispatching Embassadors to him with Letters, certifying of his purpose to root out the *Turks* in that Common Cause, praying his aid to this purport; That as
he

he seemed to him above all other Princes, accomplished with all perfections of body and mind, so to be endowed with some Divine and wonderful fortune, under whose good conduct, not only *Epirus* may think it self secure; but the other Nations also, lately by the *Othoman* Kings dismembred from *Macedons* Realm, may recover their ancient Laws and Liberties. For what can be more glorious than this victory obtained by the utter discomfiture of *Alis* Bassa? But now there offers unto him an object of far greater glory, with a fit occasion to revenge injuries of *Amurath* both new and old: also the publick calamities, and opprobrious disgraces against the Christian Religion in general, now oppressed, if he would succour him in this extremity of affairs; whereto all the Princes of *Hungarie*, and *Polonia* &c. *Julian* the Cardinal entreateth him, with those courageous Christians with them, wishing for nothing more than the presence of his victorious Ensigns: which occasion, if he refused not, would be a mean to drive the *Turk* quite out of *Europe*, &c. That the flame hath well near consumed them all, whilst none thought it would come near himself. That there is no house-wife or Matron in *Hungary*, not in some measure partaker of this heaviness. That the Christian Princes hear of this, yet the misery of their Allies can nothing move them: Only *Eugenius* Bishop of *Rome*, and *Philip* of *Burgundy*, have not refused to bear part of the burthen. That albeit he was not ignorant how ill at leisure he might be to take such an expedition in hand; yet it should not withhold him assuring him, that as it could not be but to him most honorable, so this present desert should not be bestowed on ungrateful men.

Scanderbeg liking well this motion: by the general consent of the *Albanian* Princes his Allies, promised the King by Letters (in good time) to be present with him, with 30000 Souldiers; which Letters being dispatched, he (beginning to levy his forces) joyned 15000 no lesse
valiant

valiant, to the 15000 which discomfited *Alis*: so setting forward with the Vows and hope of all his loving Subjects. But at *Servia's* borders, he found the strait and difficult passages shut up by *George* the Despot (a Christian only in name) who but lately, restored by *Uladislans* help, now in favour of the *Turks* quarrel, and in detpight especially of *Huniades*, did this. *Scanderbeg* complained to him of the wrong, &c. requesting it but for the common Cause of Christianity to give him (as to his friend) passage; and not perpetually to stain himself &c. But what availeth requests? *Scanderbeg* resolved to open his way by force, though it much grieved him, &c. But the while, *Uladislans* prickt forward by *Julian* the Cardinal, or his own destiny, assembling a great Army; yet far inferiour to that he had the year before from *Segedinum* (in the beginning of *November*) came to *Nicopolis* in *Bulgaria*, where he burnt refreshing his people thereabouts, and mustering his Army; *Dracula* the Vayuod of *Valachia*, (of great experience) considering the King's small number, said, He had learned to deem aright, by his own harms, of the Sultan's power, &c. perswading him not to expose his small forces to so manifest perill, in such an unseasonable time; but reserve to a fitter opportunity. This Counsel was thought wholesome; but the Cardinal, extolling the last years victory, with promises of aid from the Pope, & *Constantinopolitans*, and others, &c. perswaded the King that *Dracula* his speech proceeded on a superficial judgment, not regarding the Kings strength from his friends, or in regard of a League, lately made betwxt him & the *Turk*. The Prince seeing his Counsel not so well taken as it was meant: doubted, whether to leave him to his fortune, or (casting off the *Turkish* League) to joyn with him; but, at length resolved, he said to the King, That he prayed the hope of his friends help failed him nor at his need, &c. that his resolution, which he could not by perswasion alter he would (as times suddenness) and his ability permitted gladly,

gladly further, and so presented to him his Son with 4000 horsemen; preferring also to him two lusty young men perfect guides, with two horses of incredible swiftness, and with standing tears, said, Take this small gift in good part, &c. I pray God they be given in vain; yet if necessity shall force thee to use them, thou shalt find them serviceable.

Uladislaus marching towards *Thracia*, took many places by the way, the *Turks* yielding for fear, coming to *Sumium* and *Pezechium*, the Garrisons stood upon their guard; but besieging and taking them by assault, he put 5000 *Turks* to the sword.

The *Bassas* terrified, requested *Amurath* to leave his obscure life, and to levy his greatest power in *Asia*, for defence in *Europe*; blaming him for committing the Government to so young a Prince as *Mahomet*, many great ones scorning to obey him: *Amurath* (awaked left his Cloyster) speedily gathering a strong Army, and finding *Hellespontus* Straits stopped by the *Venetians* and Pope's Gallies, was at his wits end. But at *Bosphorus* Straits, he found conveyance: some write, he payed the *Gennoways* for passage, a Duckat for a *Turk*, amounting to 100000 Duckers: Others affirm, by bribing the Defendants of the passage. Being got over, he, joining his *Asian* and *European* forces, in 7 days encamped within 4 miles of *Varna* in *Bulgaria*, whither *Uladislaus* hearing of his coming had retired having taken it but a little before, with others on the Sea-coast. And, before in hope he could not possibly find passage, consulted now with his Commanders, what course to take; many were so discouraged with the fame of his coming, they advised him to return, and not oppose so small an Army against such a world of people reported. But others, chiefly *Huniades*, said, It was not for his honour, first to invade, and to turn his back upon the first report of their coming, wishing him rather to remember the good fortune of his former

mer wars: that he learned (by experience) not to be moved with the enemies multitude, &c. Whereupon the King resolv'd to try the fortune of the field: And committing the ordering of all his forces to *Huniades*, he carefully dispos'd the same, guarding one side with a marsh, the other with carriages, the rear with a steep hill, that the Army could not be compass'd with the multitude of their enemies. The *Turks* approaching, began to skirmish, which fight was long maintained with a divers fortune, the ground being cover'd and stained with dead bodies and blood: At length, joyning closer, *Huniades* had with his *Transylvanian* and *Valachian* horse, put to flight both the *Turkish* wings, so that *Amurath* was about to flee, had he not by a Soldier holding the Reins of his Bridle, been stay'd. The Captains and Prelars encouraged by *Huniades* his success foolishly left their appointed stations, pursuing disorderly; not gone far they were hardly encountred by a party of *Turks* in a valley fast by. *Lesco* one of the most valiant *Hungarians* was slain; the Bishop of *Veradium* that first disorder'd the battel, sleing thorow a Fenne, after struggling with his horse, was strangled in the mud; The Bishop of *Agria*, was then lost, with many Church-men: The Cardinal with others retiring to ward their standings, and assailed by the *Turks*, they were by the King and *Huniades* coming, with great slaughter forced to retire. *Amurath* (in extrem danger) beholding the Crucifix in the voluntary Christians Ensigns, plucked forth the writing of the late League, and holding it up with eys to Heaven said, *Behold thou crucified Christ, this is the League thy Christians have without cause violated. If thou be a God, &c, shew thy power upon thy perjurious people, who in their deeds deny thee.*

The King (in heat) hardly perswaded by *Huniades*, to return from the bloody pursuit, coming to the Camp, found *Julian* and others overcharged with the *Turks*, who there fought courageously backt by the *Janizaries*, *Amurath's*

rath's last refuge. There began a most cruel fight, many slain on both sides. The victory stood long doubtful: at length the *Turks* shrunk back, where the King and *Hunniades* fought; But in the left side they so prevailed, the Christians were ready to flee, which *Hunniades* perceiving, speedily with his presence there, restored the battel; then returning to the King, who repulling a number of *Turks*, was come to the *Janizaries*. There was a 1000 deaths to be seen, &c. in which confusion young *Uladislaus* brake in among them; then also *Amurath* (by a *French Knight*) was wounded with a Pike, and assailed with his sword, but being speedily rescued, the Knight was slain, and performing all parts of a worthy Souldier, his horse being slain, he was forthwith slain, and his head, struck off by *Ferizes*, was presented to *Amurath*; who on a Launces point, proclaiming it the head of the Christian King, the Christians discouraged therewith, fled. *Hunniades* after vain attempts to rescue the Kings body, gave place to necessity, fleeing over the Mountains into woods, thence got over into *Valachia*, and imprisoned by *Dracula*, as some write; who after enlargement, aiding *Dannus* against him and his Son, they were slain; and *Dannus* put in his room. *Julian* the Cardinal was found by the way side half stripped, and mortally wounded, sharply reprov'd by *Gregory Sanse*, as author of that perfidious war. Many fleeing Christians were slain; but more drowned in the Fens, perishing by cold and hunger in woods, or fell at length into *Turkish* slavery. The number slain in this battel was great as the little hills raised of bones & bodies do yet declare. Most agree, that scarce a third of the Christians Army escaped. The *Turks* multitude was made lesse by (at least) 30000; For *Amurath* very sad, answered those demanding why he was no merrier after such a victory, That he wished not at so great a price to gain many such. Yet he erected a Pillar where the King was slain, inscribing all that was done. This battel was fought near

Varna, (a place fatal to many Warriors) *Novemb. 10. 1444.* Some impute this losse to *Huniades's* fleeing out of the battel with 10000 horse, but it seemeth to be devised to excuse the Clergies foul dealing, the report not agreeing with his noble disposition. *Amarath* returning to *Hadrianople*, and solemnly burying the body of the Vice-Roy of *Europe* slain in the battel, resigned his Kingdom, again to *Mahomet*, living a solitary life, at *Magnesia*, vowing so to do in the fear of the late battel; but after a short time, he returned to *Hadrianople*, resuming the Government to the great discontent of his ambitious Son.

Scanderbeg yet in *Servia's* Borders, hearing what happened to the *Hungarians* was exceedingly grieved, resolving to return into *Epirus*; yet breaking into the Despots Country, he did exceeding harm. Returning home, he relieved many *Hungarians* and *Polonians* escaped from the slaughter, and repairing to him, providing to *Ragusa*, thence to return into their Countries. Thus was *Scanderbeg* by the Despot's treachery, stayed from being at the bloody battel of *Varna*, to the unpeackable losse of the *Chilian Commonweal*. Of the two, *Huniades* was accounted the better Commander, and the more politick, for his greater years: which was well countrevailed by *Scanderbeg's* good fortune, and by experience afterwards gotten.

Amarath was exceedingly moved at *Scanderbeg's* proceedings, and his great harms in *Macedonia*, &c. yet still dreading the *Hungarians*; himself (through years) desirous of rest, and the young years of his Son *Mahomet*, with *Scanderbeg's* fortune, and *Huniades* his malice, he proved by Letters (mixt with threats and feigned courtesies to draw him into some peace for a time, to be the better revenged at leisure) shewing that he never wanted preferments; to bestow on him most unkind *Scanderbeg*; but now he had so highly offended him, he knew not

what discreet words to use unto him, &c. that it grieved him to rehearse his manifold and horrible treasons, &c. if his mind would suffer them to be covered with silence; yet he thought good to advertize him, lest his heart (when he had lost himself) should overthrow him with his unlucky Kingdom; Did he think his late outrages should escape his revenging hands? that he (gracelesse man) should amend, and not farther expect, whether his indignation will break out: that the allurements of his good fortune should not so puff up his foolish desires, &c. that his misery afterwards may move even his greatest enemies, or himself, to compassion; that he should remember his courtesies, and make him no longer sorry that he so ill bestowed the same; That, letting passe his soules health, which he esteemed as nothing, and *Mahomet's* Laws by him despised; What had he ever wanted at his hands of all things most delighting mens desires? &c. For all these benefits, that, he shewed himself but a very Serpent brought up in his own bosome. But the love of his Countrey moved him: which if he had asked, would he have denied him? which he often proffered unto him; but he had rather gain it by treachery, than receive it from him by courtesie. That he now pardoned him all, chiefly for that the time he faithfully served him, was longer than the time of offending him. That his Fathers Kingdom he gives unto him, on condition of restoring him the other Towns of *Epirus*, by himself honourably won. That, restoring all taken from the Prince of *Servia*, and recompensing him for other harms; and never violating any his friends, or aiding his enemies, he should ever stand in his favour as before: That he knew his strength, and had before his eyes the *Hungarian* fortune. That he might conferr with *Airadin* his trusty Messenger, to understand more: to write at large what he intended to do.

Scanderbeg knowing the old Fox wrought nothing simply

simply of good meaning, he called *Airadin* unto him, and after many publick and private discourtes, to sound his meaning, &c. he shewed him the strength of his Camp, that the crafty Messenger might not think he was afraid of his Master. Then complaining of *Amurath's* dealing against his Father, Brethren, and himself, he sent him away with such a writing, That, as *Amurath* had exceeded him in many courtesies, so he would now exceed him in temperate speech: that his Letters and Messenger, gave him more occasion of smile than choller: whilst (at first) accusing him of ingratitude and treason, he presently seemed careful of his souls health, himself being a defender of a most damnable error, and as a conquerour to a vanquished enemy, propounding many conditions, which he scorned to hear. That he imputed his rayling to his great age, wayward nature, and conceived grief, &c. Yet wherefore did he so exclaim against him? Did he call his needful departing a treachery, his native Countrys recovering a villany? That if *Amurath's* kindnesse toward him were compared with his miseries, his good deserts would be overwhelmed with his greater tyrannies: That he took away his Fathers Kingdom, murdered his brethren, vowed him to death when he little feared it, &c. How long did he think he would endure his insolent bondage? which yet he many years endured, not refusing his commands &c. That simply believing his words and deeds to be void of fraud, when his cankered malice, began apparently to shew it self, he also glosed with him, till he found occasion to recover his liberty; yet these are but trifles to what he had laid up in hope and resolution: therefore ceasing his threats, he should not tell him of the *Hungarian* fortune, &c. *Amurath* herewith (and conferring with *Airadin*) was filled with wrath; yet to give no token of fear, stroking often his beard, (as when thoroughly angry) cheerfully dissembling, he said, Thou desirest (wicked man) some honourable death; We will

give it thee. Wee will be present at the burial of our foster child, &c. Thou shalt not complain, thou diedst an obscure death. And because of many then great occurrences, he sent *Ferises* with 9000 choise horimen to keep *Scanderbeg* in doing, and spoyl his Countrey what he could. For all whole halte, *Scanderbeg* hearing thereof, placed 1500 footmen in ambush on the mountains leading into the valley of *Novoa*, and 2000 horsemen, as he thought most fit. *Ferises* descending those woody and bushy mountains by broken and stony waies, was set upon by the foot, suddenly arising: 760 *Turks* were in this conflict taken, a number slain, and *Ferises* with the rest fleeing, cryed still out, *Better some saved than all lost.* *Scanderbeg* pursuing him into *Macedonia*, rewarded his Souldiers with its spoyl,

Amurath grieved, presently sent *Mustapha* with a supply of 6000 to take *Ferises* charge; in no case to enter far, but to burn and spoyl *Epirus* frontiers, accounting it good service, if but the trees and fruits had telt his anger. *Mustapha* (by continual Scouts) warily entred the Valley of *Novoa*, entrenching upon the rising of a hill, placing espialls on the mountains tops, to give notice of the enemy by signs; reserving 4000 horse in his Camp, he sent about 9000 to forrage and spoil: charging every one (on pain of death) to retire thither upon sign given. The *Turkish* Army making havock of all that fire and sword could destroy; *Scanderbeg* drawing near the Valley was advertized (by a wounded *Epirot* Souldier) of all the enemies doings; who considering *Mustapha's* wary proceedings, resolved, by force, suddenly to assault him in his trenches, before his Souldiers could return to the Camp: and speedily entring the Valley, was discovered by the espialls, giving a sign to the Camp, whence it was given to the dispersed Souldiers: most of whom being strayed and busied in spoyl, heard or saw it not. *Scanderbeg's* Souldiers following those that heard it, (and terrifying them with his

his name) many were slain in entering the Camp with their booties, and the *Turks* trenches presently assaulted, and they beaten from their top; which won, all their Camp was filled with fear and slaughter, being come to pell mell. *Mustapha*, put to the worst, fled by the part furthest from the enemy; the rest fleeing, shifted as they could; 5000 *Turks* were slain, but 300 taken by the enraged Christians: *Scanderbeg* losing but 20 horse, and 50 foot. The *Turks* in the Countrey (mildoubling) fled also, many being pursued and slain.

Mustapha, to excuse the misfortune to *Amurath*, greatly commended *Scanderbeg's* courage, and wonderful skill, and said, To send such small Armies, was but to increase his glory, and the *Turks* infamy, &c. Wherefore *Amurath* determined for a time to suffer him to live in peace: yet commanding *Mustapha* to renew his Army, for defence of his borders towards *Epirus*; but in no case to invade any thereof, or to joyn battel with *Scanderbeg*.

Now also the *Peloponnesians* (building 5 strong Castles in a wall, with deep trenches on *Corinth's* strait from Sea to Sea, 6 miles long) began to deny the yearly tribute payed to the *Turk*, and to invade such Princes of *Achaia*, content still to be his tributaries: of whom, the Prince of *Athens*, and the Governour of *Thessaly* continually incensed him against them: who coming (though Winter) into *Achaia*, most *Grecians* were fled for fear, into *Peloponnesus*. Coming to the *Isthmus* where *Corinth* sometime stood, he there encamped; but perceiving them to stand on their guard, he battering the wall 4 daies, brake thorough with his Army. The *Grecians* fleeing, some to one strong hold some to another, the *Turks* spoyled that rich and pleasant Countrey at pleasure: selling the numberlesse prisoners at a vile price. *Amurath* sacrificing 600 captives to his Fathers Ghost: and imposing yearly tribute on the *Peloponnesians* & other *Greek* Princes, yielding again unto him, he in his return took the Cities, *Patras* and *Sicyone*. This was 1445.

Amu-

Amurath now old, was content to take rest at *Hadrianople*: during which time, *Bajazet Mahomet's* Son was born in 1446.

The *Hungarians* loosing *Wladislans*, chose *Ladislans Albertus* his posthume Son, their King. But he being but 5 years old, it was thought necessary to choose some worthy man (during his minority) for the Government and protection of so turbulent a Kingdom: many were well thought of, but the glory and valour of *Huniades* procured to him, that by the general consent of all the States, he was (with great applause of the people) chosen and proclaimed Governour, quietly spending some years in deciding controversies in indifferent administration of justice, ending many controversies far from the place of judgment, dispatching many weighty matters, sitting, going, standing, riding, alwaies affable as well to the poorer sort as others: in peace, providing for war: above all, so dexterously careful of the Nobilities agreement, that he was of them and others generally beloved and feared. Being advertized (the mean time) that *Amurath* was raising great forces (as the same went) for *Hungaries* invasion; for withstanding thereof in his 4th year of government in 1448, with most of the Nobles and the Waiwod of *Valachia*, he set forward against him with 22000 choise Souldiers. Travelling thorow *Valachia* and getting over *Danubius* into *Servia*, he requested the Despot, (as before) to put himself into that war, and not to shew himself ungrateful to the *Hungarians* great benefits, &c. But he, for no Religion, and better affecting the *Turk* than *Huniades*, pretended the League he had with *Amurath*, the times unseasonableness, Autumn being past, with many other such: but his malice to *Huniades*, preferred before him in government, and disdaining to serve under his Ensignes, caus'd his backwardness. *Huniades* (angry) threatned him if he returned with victory, to give his Kingdom to a more worthy than he. So comming to
Bulgaria,

Bulgaria, the Despot advertized *Amurath* of their coming and strength; yea of every daies march: if he suffered them to come on further, and so get betwixt them and home, *Huniades* should hardly scape his hands. *Amurath* so suffering *Huniades* to do, came two or three daies march behinde him, that being stopped, he must needs fight. They being both come into the Plain of *Cossova* in *Bulgaria*, about 20 miles long, 5 broad, environed with mountains, &c. an old woman of a Village by the River fast by, where both Armies passed, cryed out aloud, *Oh how much I fear the hard fortune of the Hungarians: whose passage troubled the River but a day, the Turks 3!* Not far beyond a little hill in the Plain, was a certain Piramide Tower in memorial of *Amurath I.* there shinn. *Amurath* fearing *Huniades* should take the Tower before him, and so become ominous, halted the more to joyn battel before he should come thither. *Huniades* encamped at the rising hill, expecting *Scanderbeg* every hour; wherefore *Amurath* provoked him to battel, cutting off his water and forrage to draw him thereto; for he had about 80000 men. At length enforced to fight, upon *Luke's* day, dividing his Army into 32 battalions, he spake to them, That the day was come wherein they might revenge the dishonour in the battel of *Varna*: that although the enemy be moe in number; yet in hope, quire, and strength, far inferiour, &c. That of their overthrow at *Varna*, he verily believed the angry powers from above (to revenge their breach of faith) was the cause rather than their cowardise; for even there every one received the just guerdon of their treachery; whereas they against their wills drawn into that war, by God's mercy, are yet preserved for defence of the Christians Commonweal, and especially of *Hungary*, &c. That God is alway present with them that (in his just quarrel) fight courageously: thereunto being joyned their safe manner of fight, &c. their many notable and forcible Engines, which the ene-

mies have not: that they look for worthy *Scanderbeg* every hour: that the danger is not so great as to fear it, nor so little as to contemn it: That if the way back, were never so easie; yet without doing what they come for, and glory with victory they might not retire. That they at *Varna* lost a devout King, by whose sacrifice that divine anger is appeared: unto whose Ghost in this battel, he beseeched them to make an honourable sacrifice, not forgetting other worthy mens death. That this fear of the *Turks* is even this day to be cut off, as never to grow again, &c. Beseeching them to fight, as men resolute y^e to overcome, or (if otherwise) honourably to dy.

The hearers were greatly enflamed herewith, and by their own desires sufficiently encourage^d. Neither did *Amurath* with lesse care, marshal and encourage his Army, which filled the Plain from side to side, to the Christians astonishment. *Huniades* sending both his wings down the hill, with certain light-horsemⁿ before, and men at Arms betwixt them; the Souldiers began at first to skirmish a far off; but afterwards they fought foot to foot, and hand to hand about three hours: the *Turks* being (at length) put to the worst in both wings, *Amurath* sending strong supplies renewed the battel; whereby the wearied Light-horsemⁿ retired to the men at Arms, who easily repulsed the *Turks*; many were slain, but far more *Turks*, not so well horsed and armed as the Christians. *Huniades* much hurting them with the Artillery from the hill, *Amurath* drew as close thereto as he could out of the danger; whereupon *Huniades* coming down, and sending supplies to both wings, encouraged them with cheerful speech, and sometime with his valiant hand, &c. omitting nothing of a good General to be done, whereby the battel became in every place fierce and terrible. *Amurath* likewise, presuming on his multitude, hoped (by continual sending fresh supplies, to weary his enemies, one battalian of the Hungarians being forced to weary 3 or 4
of

of the *Turks*: who were that day put to the worst, and often forced to retire; yet was the battel still again renewed. The night ending this fight, both returned to their Trenches, purposing next day to renew the batrel: which began when scarce fair day; the *Hungarians* not fighting with such courage as before; for they had spent their strength the day before, whereas almost 40000 *Turks* not fought at all, or but lightly skirmished. *Huniades* exhorted his Souldiers, that remembring how many thousands of their enemies they slew the day before, not now to give over; for that, they were to be thought worthy of honour, not who began, but who ended honourable actions: wishing them to let before them the calamities like to ensue, if they should (as cowards) be overcome, &c. *Amurath* also, promising and threatning his, perswaded them rather to endure any thing, than (by that daies overthrow) to be driven out of *Europe*. After some skirmishes, it was fought with no lesse fury, than the day before: The slaughter being great, and the *Hungarians* force not to be withstood; the *Turks* began with fresh horsemen to delude their fiercenesse, by turning their backs (divers being slain by the eager pursuers); And again (on a signal given) turning back upon them, well revenged their fellows deaths: wearying the *Hungarians* (thus) all day long. Many *Hungarians* were slain. and the *Turks* had the better that day: so (at night) both returned into their Trenches. By day dawn the battel was again begun: *Huniades* his brother, with his Light-horsemen, first setting forward; for some hours they fought with like hope, the *Hungarians* being chiefly slaughtered. *Zechel Huniades* Sifters Son, was in the front, the first of the leaders, slain: *Marzalus* and *Bamffi* there died also. *Amurath* seeing *Zechel's* Ensigns taken, and his Souldiers (now discomfited) turning their backs, commanded all the fresh Companies to issue forth, and overwhelm the few Christians, overwearyed with 3 daies fight; who breaking out, overthrew

threw both the Christians wings, discomfited and put to flight the rest, with a great slaughter. *Huniades*, seeing the battel quite lost, fled also, leaving all for prey; who following the chase with cruel execution, returned (at night) to their Trenches. The rest compassing the Camp, were by the wounded Souldiers, Waggoners, &c. kept out so long as they had shot, but in the end were all slain, two or three *Turks* in many places lying dead by one *Hungarian*. *Amurath* to cover his losse, cast most of his common Souldiers into the River *Schiekniza*; for which the Inhabitants long abstained from eating fish therein taken. The plain laying covered (for many years) with mens bones, could not be ploughed, &c. Though the *Turks* had the victory, yet they lost 34000 at least, for 8000 *Hungarians*; yet themselves report, The Christians lost 17000, and themselves 40000. There fell most of the *Hungarian* Nobility. Many taken in chase, were by the angry Tyrant slain, of such as returned through *Servia*, few escaped, being either slain or stripped of all. *Huniades* travelling 3 daies without meat or drink, cast off his tired horse the fourth day; and falling into the hands of two thieves, they poyling him of apparel, strove for his golden Crucifix; whereby (laying hand on one of their swords) he thrust him thorow, then putt the other to flight. Next day, he lighted upon a sturdy Shepherd roaming for prey, who stricken with his Majesty, at first stood at gaze, as did *Huniades*, fearing his so great weakness: after a while, the Shepherd asked him of his fortune. He craving something to eat, the Shepherd moved, and hoping of reward, caused bread and water to be set before him in a cottage, not far off, with Onions; who would often say in his banquets, He never fared better than with the Shepherd. Being conducted to *Sinde-rovia*, the Despot caused him to be imprisoned; who lest he should deliver him to into *Amurath's* hands, yielded that all the strong Towns detained when he was restored

by

by *Wladislaus*, should be delivered him, his youngest Son to marry the Despot's daughter, and other like; requiring his eldest son in hostage for performance. *Huniades* coming to *Segedinum*, was honourably received by the *Hungarians*. Raising suddenly a great Army, he invaded the Despot's territory in *Hungary*, destroying and burning, never resting till he got it into his power, and presently entered *Rascia*, where the Despot's Embassadors met him with the hostage, craving peace: which at the Nobilities request, he granted, forgiving all wrongs, so returning into *Hungary*. *Amurath*, exceeding wroth with the Despot for freeing *Huniades*, sent, in 1449, *Fritze-beg* and *Jose beg*, with a strong Army to invade *Rascia*, who fortifying *Chrysonicum* on the River *Morava*, destroyed with fire and sword far and near. The Despot dismayed, and wistling not what to do; yet had rather endure any thing than the *Turks* bondage again, humbly (and not without shame) craved aid of *Huniades*: which the courteous Governour easily granted. And forthwith setting forward with a convenient power, he joyned with the Despot's power in *Rascia*. Marching on with expedition and in a thick mist, he was the fourth day upon the *Turks* before they were aware: who (the mist breaking up) discovering *Huniades*'s dreadful Ensigns, speedily fled; whom the Light-horsemens followed with bloody execution all the day: *Huniades* with his men at Arms, following in good order. *Fritze-beg*, with most of the best Commanders were taken. Then *Huniades* entering *Bulgaria* burnt *Budina* its Metropolis to the ground. So clearing the Country of the *Turks*, and presenting all the prisoners to the Despot, he returned with triumph to *Buda*, to find no less trouble with the *Bohemians*, and some *Hungarian* Nobles, than he had with the *Turks*, to the Christian Commonweales great hurt.

Mustapha lying still all this while on *Macedonia*'s borders,

borders, a great quarrel arose betwixt the *Venetians* and *Scanderbeg*, about the inheritance of *Lech Zachary* murdered, which laying in *Epirus* frontiers, they claimed, holding the City *Dayna* against him: so that they were by him at the River *Drine*, overthrown in battel; wherefore *Mustapha* would fain have taken his opportunity to enter the Countrey, but not daring to attempt it without his Master's leave, he giving him intelligence from time to time of those troubles, earnestly requested him to give him leave. The suspicious Sultan at length discharged of fear of the *Hungarians*, sent *Mustapha* Letters answerable to his desire, that his own valour should give him the glory of the wars he so desired, which he granted him; yet, that he must deal warily with that enemy, and not rashly take up Arms. &c.

Mustapha entered into *Epirus*, hoping in one battel to end the war: Of which *Scanderbeg* hearing (then at *Dayna* siege) from his frontier Garrisons, commanded them to protract the time of encounter, till his coming. Then choosing 500 horse, and 1500 foot, (old Souldiers) he marched into the upper *Dibria*, leaving *Amesa* at the siege. *Mustapha* beginning to burn and spoyl, when he understood of *Scanderbeg's* coming, encamped at *Oronoché*, within two miles of him. *Scanderbeg* had in his Camp 4000 horse and 2000 foot, 300 of whom he left in the fortified Trenches. Whilst both Armies ranged in view of each other, expecting the signal, *Caragusa* a *Turk* man at Arms, in gallant furniture, issuing out, challenged to fight with any one of the Christian Army. At first, *Scanderbeg's* Souldiers stood still, looking one upon another: till one *Paul Mareffi* accounted the best man at Arms there, with great courage and chearfulness, requested *Scanderbeg*, he might accept that challenge; who commanding him, willed him to set forward, for honour to himself, and example of the rest. *Paul* bravely armed, mounted

mounted to horse and riding forth, called to the *Turk* to make ready to fight. *Caragusa* required to stay a while, speaking unto him, That if he had the honour of the day, he might by Law of Arms, carry away his rich spoys, and dispose of his dead body: But if he should fall under him he required the same right and power, that none move out of either Army, to better either of their fortunes.

Manessi answered, he agreed to those conditions, saying, Where the fierce soul yielded, all the rest ought to be Conquerours; therefore he should fight fearlesse of any enemies but himself: that if he would give his dead body to his fellow Souldiers tears, yet *Scanderbeg* would not suffer a vanquished cowards carkale to be brought in- to his Camp. *Caragusa* marvelled at his resolution. Both Champions (after confirmation of the combate-laws by the Generals) being left alone betwixt the Armys, with alleys fixed on them, and withdrawing themselves for making their courie, violently running together, *Caragusa* was at the first encounter strook thorough the head and slain, whose head *Manessi* striking off, returned (with his armour and head) victoriously to the Army, and was honourably commended, and rewarded by *Scanderbeg*. *Scanderbeg* and his men hereby encouraged, and the *Turks* dismayed, set himself first forward towards the enemy; and had charged them, had not *Mustapha* with some disordered Troops, opposed himself, the Army faintly following, and at first encounter driven to retire, *Mustapha* earnestly calling on them to follow him, fiercely charged *Scanderbeg's* front, whom most of his principal Captains following, the battel was for a while renewed. But *Moses* greatly prevailing in one part, the *Turks* fled. *Mustapha* with 12 chief ones being taken, of the common Souldiers few saved, 10000 *Turks* were slain, 15 Ensigns taken, but 300. Christians lost. All their Camp became a prey: yet *Scanderbeg* entring *Macedonia*, burnt and spoyled all he could

could do. Leaving 2000 horse, and 1000 foot, to defend his frontiers, he returned to *Dayna* siege.

Amurath (about the time of the *Venetians* making peace with *Scanderbeg*) sent him presents, with 25000 Ducats for *Mustapha* and the others rancome, which he divided amongst his Souldiers: and leading his Army again into *Macedonia*, he made his Souldiers better pay with the spoyl; and for the more harm, divided it into 3 parts, putting all the *Turks* coming in his way to the sword, leaving the Christians no more than their lives: utterly consuming the buildings with fire, in all that part bordering upon *Epirus*: that the *Turks* should find no relief to lay in Garrison, or invade it; it was thought there was not enough left to relieve the *Turks* Army for a day.

Amurath herewith exceedingly vexed, resolved to go in person with an Army, not to conquer *Epirus*, but if need were to fill every corner of it. None but the Bassa's of the Council knew whither he imployed the same: which made the bordering Christian Princes prepare for their own assurance. But *Scanderbeg* easily perceived it to be made against him, and the rather for *Amurath's* unaccustomed quietness, as if he had been in a dead sleep. It was thought also, he had intelligence from suspecting Courtiers, his friends; wherefore letting all things apart, he first advertized his neighbour Princes of that war's danger, *Amurath* seeking the destruction of them all; and therefore to stand fast on their guard. Then he sent *Moses* and others, to take the Souldiers and all provision possible, himself not resting till he left nothing in the Countrey for the enemies cruelty. Most of the people with their substance, were received into the strong Cities: the rest into the *Venetian* and other Princes Countreys, till this fury was overpast; all able to bear Arms, were commanded to *Croia*, out of which multitude *Scanderbeg* chose only 1000 old Souldiers, with whom he purposed

to encounter the *Turks*, as he saw occasion, and placing 1300 in *Croia*, whose Citizens were furnished with all weapons, and provision to defend the City: Proclamation was made, that all aged men with women and children, should depart, &c. *Croia* being the chief City, *Scanderbeg* had the greater care for its defence. All was full of weeping and wailing at the departure of this weak company, no house, no street, no part of the City was without mourning, &c. In the midst of these passions commandement came from *Scanderbeg*, That they must now depart, that the Souldiers might take their charge. Then began sorrows afresh, with pitious screeching and tears, and departing set their feet (many times) they wist not where, for desire of looking back upon the City; who were convey'd into *Venetian* Cities, and other places, whither all, not before received into strong Cities, resorted with their substance, and nothing left in all *Epirus* but the ground. After this, *Scanderbeg* stored *Croia* with all needful things, giving to every Souldier a small reward; and placing valiant *Uranocotes* Governour thereof. And exhorting them (in few words) courageously to endure the siege, not listening to *Amurath's* charms, departing to his Army (within view) marched towards *Dibria*. Not gone far, he met *Moses* with a gallant Troop coming from *Sfetigrade*, which strong City was *Scanderbeg's* second care, it standing first in the Tyrant's way. *Moses*, having there set all in like order, placed polirique *Peter Perlas* Governour with a strong Garrison chosen out of all *Dibria*, accounted the best men of war in *Epirus*, *Scanderbeg* delivering him prepared-forces, sent him with divers others to take order for defence of other Cities and Castles, every man having his charge. Himself with a small Troop, went to *Sfetigrade*; where, all the Souldiers assembled in the Market-place, he spake unto them, That a fairer occasion could not be presented unto brave minds, than that which now caus'd them to take up Arms, which they

they had hitherto borne for their Kingdoms honour; but now they must fight for their lives, liberty, &c. That *Amurath's* first passage would be this way: that the first fruits of this war is theirs: that if they bear couragious hearts, they might beat down the haughty enemies strength, and discourage his high conceits; who will not lay long here, except the way-ward old man will foolishly gage all his forces; for such is the situation and strength of this City, that it may easily set at naught an angry enemy. Therefore to resolve with themselves, &c. That it seldom changeth fortune to fail sound advice or vertue: and they had all things which politick care could provide for their safety, that they might be encouraged with the very sight one of another, and himself would not be far off a silent beholder and encourager of their vertue; where (though he might not try this wars fortune in plain field) yet he would trouble the enemies designs with many a hot skirmish: that he will first feed their hardness with his base Souldiers blood, the easier to entrap and oppress their rashness; but his crafty devices are by great policy and consideration to be frustrated. For that victory should be to him lamentable, bought with Souldiers blood, &c. That if they suffered not themselves to be conquered of the Sultan, he would praise and honour his subjects as conquests. Having thus encouraged their minds, he visited other Cities, returning to his Army near *Croia*. *Amurath* the mean time, his Army of 150000 was assembled at *Hadrianople* whereof many were pioniers, &c. He sending 40000 Light-horlemen before him, to encamp before the City, *Scanderbeg* with 4000 horse & 1000 foot took his way towards *Sfetigrade*, strongly encamping within 7 miles thereof; whence with *Moses* and *Tannusius*, he went by blind waies, till from the top of a hill he might discover how the enemy lay encamped; returning back, he the night following, drawing as near the *Turks* as he could, placed his Army in the Woods and Valleys unperceived:

Then

Then he sent *Moses* and *Musache*, with 30 of the best horsemen, as if but common Souldiers, driving horses laden with Corne, by a by-way, and secretly, to get into the City. Being discovered and set upon, they fled on purpose: but *Moses* seeing themselves pursued but with a like number; returning back, he slew five, chasing the rest to the Campe: whose Generall sending 4000. horse to pursue them, they soon recovered sight of them, *Moses* of purpose slowly hastening; the *Turks* drawing nigh, *Moses* leaving the Horses, fled; yet drawing them on, till brought where the Army lay in waite, by whom being with great slaughter put to flight, 2000 were slain, and 1000 Horses taken, but 23 Christians being lost.

Amurath came 8 dayes after, the beginning of May, 1449. and encamping his better foot at the foot of the Hill, himself lay with his Janizaries, &c. farther off. After one day, he towards evening sent a Messenger to the City to speak with the Governour, whom he requested the Souldiers might goe further off, having something to say to him in secret; *Perlat* merrily answering, said, He had not learned to hear any message from his Enemy by night, nor at any time else out of the Garrisons hearing; to morrow if thy Master please, I will hear thee at large, commanding him to depart from the Walls. *Amurath* more hoping to gaine the City by large offers, than by great force, dissembled his wrath, sending that Messenger with a grave Bassa borne in *Epirus*, who with 5 men, being received into the City, and brought into *Maries* Temple, where after insinuating eloquence, he augmented the terrour of *Amurath's* power; exhorting them to yield the City: promising the Citizens to live in all respects, as under *Scanderbeg* before: that *Perlat* should have most honourable preferments, with many rich gifts; the Souldiers safely to depart whither they would, and 300000 aspers among them. But the Governour replied, That,

if this had not been delivered to resolute men, it might perhaps have wrought some effect, &c. But since no ill desert of *Scanderbeg's*, nor good desert of *Amuraths*, for preferring a Stranger before their naturall Prince had passed, &c. his Master should first proceed in his action, beat down their Walls, make havock of their men, &c. But it were almost to be laughed at, if they should cowardly accept of these conditions before any assault given, &c. that *Amurath* had better get back to *Hadrianople* to spend his old years in quiet, and not provoke them his fatall enemies, &c. : that he would never forget his faith given, to the last drop of blood; 'twas reward enough to him, if living, to defend the City, or loosing life to leave his guiltlesse soule at liberty, &c. Then feasting the *Bassa*, he led him thorow the City on purpose to shew him the store of Victualls: So sending him away much discontented, to his Master: who exceeding wroth, battered the City three dayes together, and making a small breach, he gave a most terrible assault by his common Souldiers the *Asapi*, thereby to give easier Victory to his *Janizaries* and better Souldiers: whilst these are slaine by heaps at the breach, the *Janizaries* attempted the Wall in another place, who first difficultly crawling up the steep Rock, then mounting their Scaling ladders, they were with huge stones, &c. beaten down to the bottom, and miserably slaine. Many with their Scaling ladders were thrust from the Wall, carrying others behind them, with them. Some taking hold of the Battlements, lost fingers, hands, most their lives. Many farther off, were wounded also with snor. The *Turks* discouraged, began to withdraw: but, the Captains by exhorting and threatening some, and beating others, the assault was renewed, not with such courage, yet no lesse slaughter: the defendants shouting from the Walls. *Amurath* sent *Feri Bassa* with 3000 chosen Souldiers to renew the fight: who without regard of danger brought

them to the Walls, whom the defendants overwhelmed with Stones, Timber, Wild-fire, &c., Yet *Ferr-Bassa* flew divers, and had not the Governour with a fresh company, speedily come to the place, had entered. *Amurath* seeing the great slaughter, and no hope, retired into his Campe: Yet not ceasing to give the like vaine attempt, The Captaine of the *Janizaries* perceiving a part of the City, seeming impregnable, to be commonly but slenderly manned; told *Amurath* he would assay it secretly by night: wherewith the King pleased, it was silently put in execution. The Governour advertised hereof by the watch, repaired thither with a great Company, beholding the *Turks* climbing and helping up each other by that desperate way. But being come to the top of the Rock, they were suddenly overwhelmed, and violently forced down, most being crushed to death, and many of the rest, slaine with shot: wherewith *Amurath* was exceedingly grieved.

Scanderbeg, still removing as best served his purpose, brake sometimes into one quarter of their Campe, sometimes into another, and was straight way gone againe. Being, the latter end of *June*, come within 8 miles, he sent *Moses*, like a common Souldier, to view how the enemy encamped. Being informed, that the *Turks* kept but negligent watch; He the night following, suddenly assaulted one of their Camps quarters, which though discovered by Scouts; yet by his furious assault, he slew 2000 before they could well arme, carrying away 230 horse, losing but 42 men, whom the *Turks* in revenge next morning hewed in peeces.

Amurath upon these disgraces, gave three fierce assaults to the City, and was alwayes with losse repulsed. But turning the more with revenge, he encouraged them to a fresh assault, with greater promises than ever before in all his wars: appointing *Ferr-Bassa* with 12000 horse, and 6000 foot to attend on *Scanderbeg*, lest he should trouble

ble the assault, by assailing his Campe: *Feri Bassa* glad hereof, lay as he was commanded, boasting, that he would seek *Scanderbeg* in the field, and trie with him hand to hand. *Amurath* next morning compassed the City round, purposing to gage his whole forces on the raking thereof. The battered Walls were not without Ladders to be assaulted through the places strength, and the defendants still filling up with earth. They first delivered their Arrowes and Bullets like a Haile-shower. And in this heate, clapping Ladders to the Walls, began desperately to Scale: but the Christians with shot slew and wounded many: yet others pressing up, the assault was terrible in many places, especially neere the Gate: where with timber, &c. raising as it were a wodden Tower, for they fought with the Christians as upon even ground; and prevailed so far, that they had set ensignes on the Wall. The Governour hastning with a fresh Company, and repulsing the *Turks*, sent their Ensignes into the Market-place: Consuming the Wodden Tower with Wild-fire from the Walls; and presently placing fresh Souldiers, worthily defended the City.

Scanderbeg the while, came with 9000 Souldiers to assaile their Campe: *Feri Bassa* opposed against him: *Scanderbeg* retired a little to draw him further from the Camp. The Bassa withdrew 4000 horse to fetch a compassse and to set upon *Scanderbegs* reare, &c. But the expert Captaine perceiving it, leaving *Moses* with the maine battell, with 2000. so charged these 4000, before well departed, that they had now more cause to look to their own safety: *Scanderbeg* here encountering with *Feri* hand to hand, slew him. *Moses* all this while, stood fast, receiving the assault, expecting their Successe. But *Scanderbeg* comming now in, he set forward with such force and courage, that the *Turks* fled: many of whom were slaine in chafe; yet not daring to follow them too far, he retraited, and having put his Army in order, appoint-

ed some to take the spoile of the slaine. *Amurath* hearing what hapned to *Feri*, was so overcome, that he could not for a while speak, but afterwards he commanded some Ordnance to be placed on that side of the Campe, most in danger; Sending 4000 to joine to *Feri Bassaes* for its defence, charging them not to issue out of their trenches. Continuing the assault all that day, and no hope appearing, he left the assault, in which he lost 7000, and many dying afterwards: of the Garrison, but 70 were slain, and 90 hurt. *Scanderbeg* hoped *Amurath* would at length be gone: yet with 2000 he would oft shew himself on the Mountaines sides to draw the *Turks* out, and take them at advantage: But the King commanding none to goe out, or speak of battell or assault on paine of death, lay certain daies more like one besieged himself: which *Scanderbeg* the more distrusted, fearing he was hatching some mitchiefe, who thought good againe to prove if twere possible to overcome the Garrison Souldiers with gifts; wherefore he sent, offering to the besieged conditions, with such large rewards, as had not been heard offered to any. All which being leightly rejected by common consent, one base-minded fellow, corrupted herewith, secretly promised the *Turks* espialls, that on assurance of the profered reward, the City should be yielded. He layed many plots: but the first device served his purpose. The Garrison Souldiers were of the upper *Dibria*: exceeding superstitious, putting nice difference between meats, chusing rather to die, than eate or drink of that which they deemed unclean. *Sfetigrade* was watered but with one Well which sunk deep into the Rock. The Traytor in the night, cast the stinking Carcase of a dead dog therein. In the morning, the Garrison being drawn out of the Well, the report was, it was poysoned: all were in an uproar to find out the Traitour. The Citizens were very sorry, but the Souldiers detested that loathsome water more than *Turkish* servitude, protesting they

The Life of Amurath II,

would rather perish with thirst, than drink thereof: Some desiring to fire the City, and break thorough the enemies, or die. They that thought best, that it might be yielded up, as ready to sue to *Amurath* for peace, though on harder termes than the former. The Governour troubled and astonied, the better to pacifie the matter, exhorted them in the Market place to continue faithfull, and make small reckoning to use the water, which would soon be brought to its wonted purity: drinking in their sight a great draught, whose example the Citizens followed. But the Captaines and Souldiers refused to tast thereof, as of some deadly poyson, crying, to give up the City, wherefore many thought they were corrupted by *Amurath*; Yet none but the Traitor did afterwards revolt, or appeared richer. The Governour seeing they were not to be moved by perswasion, reward, or any other meanes, resolved with his chiefe Captains, and best of the Citizens, to yield the City to *Amurath*, on condition that all might safely depart with Armour, and other things: that such Citizens as would stay, might there dwell as under *Scanderbeg*, the rest to depart at pleasure with bag & baggage. Glad was *Amurath*; yet consented not that the Citizens should continue in the City, but build their houses without the Wall. The Garrison Souldiers quietly passing, *Mahomet* earnestly perswaded his Father to put them all to the sword, saying 'Twas one of *Mahomet's* chiefe commands, to use all cruelty to destroy the Christians. But the old King would not hearken therein saying, People abhorre the government of a faithlesse and cruell Prince. The Traitor had three rich suits of apparell, 50000 aspers, and a yearly pension of 2000 Duckats. But after a few dayes, he was suddenly gone, and never seene or heard of: supposed to be secretly made away: *Amurath* detesting the Traitor, though the Treason served his purpose, *Sfetigrades* Walls being repaired, and 1200 *Janizaries* put in Garrison, *Amurath*,
September

September 1. departed out of *Epirus*, having lost 30000 at the Seige; much grieved that he could not vanquish the enemy: *Scanderbeg* understanding of his departure, speedily followed with 8000 horse, and 3000 foot, and taking advantage of Woods and Mountain-straites, skirmished often with the *Turks*, charging them every way, and slew many. *Amurath* left the Viceroy of *Romania* with 30000 to attend on *Scanderbeg*, who now ceased to follow *Amurath*, fearing to be enclosed between both. Which he seeing, followed to *Hadrianople*, *Scanderbeg* returning to *Croia*: who leaving 2000 Souldiers upon the borders for defence, they so kept in the *Janizaries* at *Sfetigrade*, that they could not look out, but were intercepted and slain: and within few dayes besieging *Sfetigrade* a month, was repulsed in two great assaults, losing 500 men. *Amurath* sending with speed to recall his dispersed Armie, *Scanderbeg* returned to *Croia*, Winter approaching; wherein he put 2000 of his best Souldiers under famous *Uranocotes*, storing the City with a year's Victuall, greatly helped therein by the *Venetians* and others. The like care he had of the rest, being advertised by secret friends in Court, of the *Turks* great preparation against him, at beginning of the Spring: who by the latter end of *March* had ready an Army of 160000 men: of which he sent 40000, under politique *Sebalyas*, into *Epirus* in beginning of *April*, 1450. who with great speed, and without let, comming to *Croia*, strongly encamped nere the pleasant plaine *Tyranna*: and keeping close, attended that no new supply should be conveyed into the City: for he was expressly forbidden to attempt any thing against *Scanderbeg* himself.

After 20 dayes, *Amurath*, through age, oft marching but 5 miles a day, came thither with his Army, filling the Country round about: And after 4 dayes setting his Camp, he sent two Messengers, offering the Governour, if he would yield, to depart with his Souldiers, with bag

and baggage, 200000 aspers to himself, with an honourable place among his great *Bassas* : and the Citizens to enjoy all their former liberties, promising greater. They being commanded to deliver their message without the Gates, he scornfully rejected their offers, and the Soldiers shamefully derided them. *Amurath* more offended at this, than the refusal, commanded ten great Artillery pieces to be cast, for by reason of the high Mountaines, he brought none ready made, but store of mettall in masse. This work being in 15 dayes perfected, 6 he placed against the East side toward the plaine, 4 against the Gate, in which places onely, *Croia* was subject to battery. In 4 dayes *Amurath* had in both places beaten downe halfe the Wall, and sore shaken the rest. The *Turks* encouraged with great cheerfullnesse made ready for assault, striving who should shew himself most forward : And *Mahomet* besides his Fathers rewards, promised a 100000 Aspers to him that first set an Ensigne upon the Walls. The Garrison nothing dismayed, comforted and encouraged each other to endure all manner of perill, especially *Uranocomes*, who shaking some Soldiers by the hand, said ; These were the fortresses of their City, &c. What honour, triumph should they hope for, if these Walls standing whole, they should shroud under their defence, and not they defended by them ? So can Cowards defend, and Sheep not feare the Wolves rage, &c. That men of worth shun such things, which being kept or lost, yield like praise : that things ready to fall need shoaring, and there appeareth valour. Therefore their valiant right hands should instead of dead Walls, oppose their lusty armed bodies against the enemies force. That he in the thickest should view and judge of every mans courage. Yet that their former hopes were little or nothing by these breaches diminished : For that the rising of the hill, though not so high as in other places, doth serve them at great advantage to charge their enemies.

mies. That this breach will encourage the Barbarians to climbe up, &c: whereof so many shall be easily slaine, as they shall but aime at: that onely those 2 places can be assaulted; How will so many valiant Souldiers bestow themselves in so little roome? Yet let them play the men, and in one conflict weaken the Tyrants strength, and burst his proud heart, &c.

Uranocotes setting all things in order, and repairing the breaches as well as possible, they rested that night. In the morning the *Turks* cheerfully assaulted both breaches: but it being well begun, *Scanderbeg* had suddenly broke in on the *Turks* Campe, with 5000, slaying 600 *Turks*, and was spoyling their Tents; which rumour made them with lesse courage to assault. *Amurath* for more suretie sent *Seremet* with 4000 into the Camp, saying, Nothing could be too sure against that wild beatt. *Mahomet* also halted thither against his Father's will. But *Moses* knowing himself too weak; had before retired into the Mountaines, having done great harme, losing but ten men. *Scanderbeg* here, forgetting himself, so engaged, that being on every side enclosed, yet valiantly breaking thorow, he escaped the great danger recovering the Mountaines. This was the greatest oversight of *Scanderbeg* in all his Wars. When all was quiered, *Amurath* brought all his forces to the Walls, with multitude of Archers and small shot, labouring to drive away the defendants. Then likewise other common Souldiers brought Scaling ladders, &c. The *Janizaries* and others following ready to mount them. But the Garrison Souldiers made such slaughter, that had not the Captaines spared neither stripes nor wounds, they would presently have retired. Hereby the Ladders were with great slaughter set up, and the *Turks* came to handie blowes at the breaches: who being with their Ladders tumbled down the Mountaine with horrible slaughter and discomfiture, that none would set one foot forward again, though fierce young

young *Mahomet* caused them that returned to be slain. These common Souldiers are most miserable Christians, now under the *Turks* slavery : of whom the *Turks* draw great multitudes in their Wars, commonly unarmed, because not daring well to trust them; they carry all the baggage, fetch wood and water, serve for Pioneers : when battell is in field, they with weapons are thrust into the fore-front to blunt their enemies swords; if a City be to be besieged, serving to fill ditches with their dead bodies; and if they shrink, more cruelly used by their commanders than enemies. *Amurath* stood in doubt, whether he had better retreat : but being enraged, he gave a fresh assault with divers of his better companies : But *Uranotomus* placing fresh men in the breaches, they repulsed the *Turks* with a double slaughter : till the King not able longer to behold it, sounded a retreat, having lost 8000 men, without any notable harme to the defendants.

Mahomet, burning with revenge, drew most of the best Souldiers into that quarter nearest *Scanderbeg*, intrenching on the Mountaine of *Tumenist*; that if he should againe there assail the Campe, he might hardly do great harme, or himself escape. Whereupon *Scanderbeg* left *Moses* with 500, where he lay, ordering him in the night to assail the quarter where *Mahomet* lay, and speedily retire to the Mountaine. Himself with about 8000 fetching a compasse by secret waies, came to Mountaine the farther side of the *Turks* Armie. *Moses* at the hour assailed the Campe with the tumult of some great Armie. *Scanderbeg* at the instant breaking into the other side, there made such a slaughter, that *Croia's* losse was forgot in comparison of this. *Moses* doing little harme, safely retired : and *Scanderbeg* making great spoil, timely returned, scarce losing one man.

Amurath after this, withdrew most of his small Ordinance into his trenches, against *Scanderbeg's* sudden attempts.

tempts. Yet seeing in that hot season he could not so closely encamp, but that some part would still be in danger, he appointed *Sekalias* with 15000 to attend *Scanderbeg*: Then battering the Walls afresh, he made greater breaches than before, appointing next day, for a new assault. But perceiving no signe of courage in their heavy countenances, &c: he calling them cowards, said, Every weake Castle can hold out one assault; but if they will draw these wild beasts out of their dens, they must arme themselves to endure whatever shall happen: that great Captaines have growne old under their enemies Walls, &c: that they remember the glorious victory of *Varna*: that all honourable things are brought to passe with adventure and labour: and the end of this War depends on taking of *Croia*: that fortune is to be proved and oft provoked, of them that will wed her. Yet that they must work warily with this enemy: that they should weare them out if they kill but ten at a daily assault. That per-adventure fortune may find some unlooked-for mean, as at the siege of *Sfetigrade*, &c.

Early next morning, began a valiant assault, the *Turks* assaying vainely and desperately to break open the Gates: Wild-fire being cast into many places of the City, and the Artillerie oft discharged into the breaches, many *Turks* were slaine together with the Christians: who still repulsed their enemies. Yet *Amurash* maintained the assault by supplies, but grieved at heart to see them so slaine: at last weary to behold it, and perswaded by his Bassaes, not wilfully to cast away his valiant Souldiers, he ended the assault: and thought good to prove what might be done by undermining: daily alaruming the City, to busie the defendants. Buying store of Corne of the *Venetians* of *Lisia*, *Scanderbeg* slaying the convoy, carryed it away, dividing it among his Souldiers. Yet, he received abundance of provision from *Macedonia*, and the *Venetian* Merchants furnished him with Corne, Oyle, Honey, &c. which

which *Scanderbeg*, they being his secret friends, would not hinder; considering he might have had all the same from the further part of *Macedonia*, *Thracia*, *Mysia*, &c.

400 Souldiers sallying out the while, chased divers *Turks* to the Campe: *Amurath* hoping they would to their losse, give the like attempt. But the governour would not suffer them any more to sally, *Scanderbeg* also encreasing his Armie with 2000, delivered a part to *Moses*, another to *Tannsie*, & a third to himself: determining by night, to assail the Camp in 3 places at once. But *Scanderbeg* being discovered by their Scouts, Souldiers were appointed diligently to guard that side: *Moses* and *Tannsie* the while assailing in 2 divers quarters, slew a number of *Turks*, and made great spoile. *Scanderbeg* discovered, did not much harme: and retiring, sat down by faire daylight, on a Mountaine's side, in sight of the *Turks*, that *Moses* and *Tannsie* might see to meet him again. But the *Turks* thinking he stood to brave them: divers craved leave, that they might go, and, at least, beat him out of sight: which granted, 7000 horse, and 5000 foot presently set forward. *Scanderbeg* seeing them, retired a little farther up, expecting *Moses* and *Tannsie* comming. When the *Turks* well wearied, and laboriously marching up the steep hills, were come a great way, and perceived by the dust, some greater force, and ere long; saw the foremost of them, they retired: *Scanderbeg* pursuing through the grounds advantage, slew many. *Moses* also comming in, beside slaughter, took divers; After which victory, *Scanderbeg* retired into the Mountaines.

The late spoile, with this overthrow, much grieved the Tyrant; but the mines sorting to no good purpose, for the Rocks hardnesse, and the defendants discovery, drove him to his wit's end. Resolving now to prove, if by great gifts and promises, he could corrupt the Governour and Garrison; he sent a dexterous *Bassa*, commanding him
if

if possible, first to fasten rich presents on him, in honour of his valiant minde: and afterwards delivering his message, to promise more than should be desired, for giving up of the City. The *Bassa* being with two Servants, received into the City, presented to *Uraucantes* the rich gifts, with much reverence, and many magnificall words. *Uraucantes* willed him first to declare his message: whereupon he would, either receive or refuse them. The subtil *Bassa* nothing dismaied, thus began.

That however they agreed, yet they brought not these gifts to deceive any: and though enemies' gifts are as he rightly said, ever to be suspected: Yet they durst not for shame come to so worthy a Governour empty handed: neither ought he, if he be what he seeme, to refuse their courtesie, &c. That they went not about with fild speech and rich rewards to circumvent him, whose invincible mind they had so oft, in vaine proved with their forces: That is it for which *Amurath* loveth him: desiring to have his virtuous enemies with himself: that he was worthy of another manner of Sovereign than *Scanderbeg*, whom he condemned not; and another manner of calling, &c: that *Scanderbegs* destruction might be deferred, but not avoided, against whom *Amurath* conceiving implacable displeasure, would never depart out of *Epirus*, till he imposed a deadly yoke on his neck: That the first of this misery beginneth at this City: that his eyes would scarce behold the horrible spectacle of the men of *Croia's* miserable fortune, &c. Did they think *Amurath* would in the mid't of this heat, raise his siege and be gone? No no, if force will not prevaile, they shall alwayes have their tents in their eyes, till long famine tame their courage. Can *Scanderbeg* victuall them, scarce able to relieve his own misery? or will the *Venicians*? who daily brings them plenty of all necessities: Therefore they should repent of their over hardinesse, and gather

gather their wits together : That they should find liberty, rewards, perpetuall rest with *Amurath*, &c.

The Bassa expected some great motion in the Souldiers : but perceiving his speech rather to fill them with anger than feare, requested to talke in secret, with the Governour : which was granted : who beginning cunningly to deliver his more secret message, *Uranocomes* interrupting him, commanded him to depart : and that if he or any other came from his Master to speak with him about any such matter, he would returne them dismembred of hands, noses, and eares. So the Bassa was with his presents turn'd out of the City, though the Souldiers could well have eased him of that carriage.

Amurath understanding the Governours answer, in great rage next day, caused a furious assault to be given, rather to satisfie anger, than in hope to prevaile, and with greater losse than before, many *Turks* being slaine at the breach, with their own great shot. At length wearied, he gave over, returning to his Camp, as halfe frantick or distract; sitting all day, full of melancholly passions, sometimes violently pulling his beard and locks, complaining, that he lived so long to see those disgracefull dayes. His Bassaes, to comfort him, recounted his many and glorious victories, and producing examples of his like event. But nothing could content his mind, or revive his Spirits; so that oppressed with melancholly-conceits, he became sick for grieve. Whereupon by some's Connsell, he sent to *Scanderbeg*, offering him peace for 10000 duckats yearly tribute, thinking hereby well to save his honour, which being utterly refused, greatly increased his sicknesse. *Scanderbeg* to grieve him the more, &c: daily assailed the Campe: which he often suspected by alarums and tumults, languishing with the grieve thereof. Feeling he could not longer live, grievously complained, that all his former life was so blemished: who repressing the *Hungarians* fury, and almost nullifying

tying the *Grecians* pride and name, was enforced to give up the Ghost under the Walls of an obscure Castle, and in sight of his contemptible enemy. Then he gave his Son *Mahomet* many grave advertisements, commending him to the faithfullnesse of his *Bassas*; weaknesse, and teares oft upon sight of him, interrupting his speech; Yet forcing himself, he warned him of what now most grieved him.

That his example be a warning to him not to contemne his never so weak enemy, &c: whereby he had purchased this calamity, and for ever blemished the honour of the *Othoman* Kings, &c. That this Traitor should then have been suppressed, when first he recovered his wicked Kingdome, &c. *Ali Bassa*, nor the other Generalls, should not have been sent against him, &c: That they entered into *Epirus* 16000 strong, &c: but now how many tents stand empty, &c. That the destinies had vowed his Spirits to *Epirus* as to him fatall. But why did he impute these impediments and chances to himself? for this mischievous seed first began when the *Hungarians* with others rose up against him. So whilst he could not take order for all important affaires at once, this enemy grew great? That fortune never deceived his endeavours more than in this. Therefore he charged his Son that for so great and stately a patrimony as he should receive, not to leave his death unrevenge of this enemy. Shortly after becomming speechlesse, &c: he breathed out his Ghost, to the Christians great joy, in *Autumne* 1450, 85 years old as most write: reigning 28, or as some 30, about 5 months after *Croia's* siege.

Thus layeth great *Amurath* dead almost in despaire! Who had fought greater battels? who gained greater Victories, or obtained more glorious Triumphs than he? &c. But oh, how far was he now changed from the man he then was! how far did his last speeches differ from his forepassed life! full of base passionate complaints, be-
seeming

seeming some vile wretch overtaken with despaire, and yet afraide to die. He lyeth now dead a gastly stinking Carcase, &c: and of such infinite riches, such stately honours, &c: his fraile body enjoyeth nothing. The *Turks* say, he died, miraculously forewarned of his death at *Hadrianople*: others that he died in *Asia* with an Apoplexie surfeiting of immoderate Wine. But *Marinus Barlesius*, who lived in his time, in *Scodra* fast by *Epirus*, sets it downe as aforesaid.

Mahomet fearing some innovation at home, presently returning to *Hadrianople*: buried his body with great solemnity on the West of *Prusa*: lying in a Chappel without a rooffe, his grave not differing from the common *Turks*: which they say, he so commanded, that Gods blessing might come to him by the Sun and Moones shining, and raine, and dewes falling on his grave. He mightily enlarged the *Turkish* Kingdome: for the better establishing whereof in his owne house, he in the beginning of his reigne, by manifold favours began to bind to himself men of forreigne Countreys, his Servants. And whereas the *Othoman* Kings, had mostly, or altogether raised their *Janizaries*, and other Court Souldiers of Christians Children taken in War; he seeing how serviceable they were, plotted, how to make an Armie of such, his own Creatures, &c: wherefore taking from the Christians every 5th. Child: he placed the fairest and aptest in his own *Seraglio*, the rest in other like places, where being instructed in *Mahometans* Religion, then in all feats of Armes: of these he made Horsemen, &c: to guard his person, naming the better sort *Spahi Oglani*, that is, his Sons the Knights. Of these he made Bassaes, Generals, and Governours, with all great Officers; dispersing the rest and greatest part into every Country of his Dominion in *Asia*, to be brought up in hardnesse and painefull labour, out of whom he choosing the most lusty and able, they were taught to handle all manner of weapons added

to the other upon occasion, calling them his Sons, binding them, of all sorts, so fast to him by continual pay, &c. that he might account so many Sons as Souldiers. A great policy from a deep judgment, to weaken the Christians by taking their Children of greatest hope, and to keep in awe his own natural Subjects also. *Amurath's* successours keeping and increating this Custome, have not only kept the Empire in their Family: but so maintained their State, that they are feared, obeyed, and honoured as Gods, &c. Hence it comes to passe, that the better of them called *Turks* (but indeed Christians children) desire to be called *Musulmans*, that is, right believers; holding it a reproach to be called *Turks*: For they knowing, there is not one natural *Turk* among all in authority, &c. but he is borne a Christian either of father or Grandfather, avouch those only to be *Turks*, living in *Natolia*, all Merchants, Mechanicks, or poor labourers, &c. Yea, many of the Grand-Signiors, had Christian Mothers, accounting it in the greatest part of their Nobility.

This great King, was wonderfully beloved, and no less after death lamented; more faithful of his word, than any before or after him; melancholick; rather politick than valiant, yet both: a great dissembler; painful in travel, exceeding wayward and testy, many imputing it to his age, He had 6 Sons, *Achmetes*, *Aladin*, *Mahomet*, *Hasan* or *Chasan*, *Urchan*, and *Achmetes* the younger: three of whom died before him.

The Life of Mahomet II. 7th King, and first Emperour of Turks, for his many victories, surnamed, the Great.

IT was thought that *Mahomet*, who, being about 21 years old, succeeded his Father in 1450, and the supposed Son of the Prince of *Servia's* Daughter, a Christian, would have embraced the Christian Religion; but embracing in shew the *Mahometan*, abhorring the Christian, he greatly reckoned not of either; and worshipping no God, but Fortune, he derided such as thought God had any care of worldly men: so that he kept no League, Promise, or Oath, longer than stood with his profit and pleasure.

The *Bassas*, and others of great Authority to whom *Amurath's* Government was never grievous, inwardly lamented his death; doubting *Mahomet's* fierce nature, &c. But the Court gallants in hope of preferment were glad to see him on his Fathers Seat: and the vulgar exceedingly rejoiced in him. Then also the *Janizaries* (as their manner is) spoiling the Christians and Jews, easily obtained pardon: whereupon he was by them and other Court Souldiers triumphantly saluted King: which approbation is a greater assurance of their Kingdom, than to be born the King's eldest Son.

The young Tyrant, was presently about to murder with his own hands his youngest brother, but 18 months old. *Moses* a *Bassa* requested him, rather to commit the execution thereof to some other; which thing *Mahomet*

commanding him to do; he taking it from the Nurse, strangled it with water: *Spondertius* his Daughter, in her rage, reviling the Tyrant to his face, &c. He requesting her to be contented, for that it stood with policy, said, she should have whatsoever she asked. But she desiring to have *Moses* (her Son's executioner) delivered to her bound, presently struck him in the breast with a knife, crying in vain for help, and cutting a hole in his side, cut out, and cast his Liver by piece-meal to the dogs. He also caused another Brother in *Caly Bassa's* keeping, to be murdered. Presently after, he began to abrogate and alter the old Lawes and Customs, publishing new, better fitting his own humour: imposing also new Taxes and Subsidies on his Subjects, and was (through avarice) thought over-sparing in apparel and diet. He calling all great Officers to streight account, put some to death, confiscated the goods, greatly fined, or quite removed from Office, others. He admitted also false and surmized accusations against his Bassa's; little mercy was to be looked for; whereby he was exceedingly feared of his Subjects, but more hated. Of 7000 Faulconers and not many fewer Huntsmen that were maintained of the Kings charge, (saying, He would not be such a fool, to maintain such a multitude to at end on so meere a vanity) he ordered 500 Faulconers only, and 100 Huntsmen: the rest to serve in wars. Then also he entred League with *Constantine* Emperour of *Constantinople*, and the other *Greek* Princes: as also with the Despot his Grandfather, as some will; yet some write, the Despot's Daughter was but his Mother in Law, whom he sent again to her Father allowing her a Princely Dowry.

Ibrahim King of *Caramania*, took occasion the first year of his Reign, to invade him in *Asia* with fire and sword. *Mahomet* displacing *Isa* his Lievetenant there, as insufficient, appointed *Isaac* Bassa in his room; who passing into *Asia*, raised a great Army. After whom *Ma-*

homot following with a greater, he entred with great hostility into *Caramania*: whose King fleeing into the great Mountains, offered him such conditions of peace, whereof he accepted: which being by Oath confirmed, he returned to *Prusa*; where the presuming *Jamizaries* came (in order of battel) and demanded a Donative, as a reward of their good service, who inwardly chafing, yet (having warning by *Abedin Bassa*, and *Turechanbeg*) he for the present dissembled his anger, scattering ten great baggs of Aspers among them. But few daies after, he caus'd *Doganes* their chief Captain to be shamefully whipt, discharging him of his Office: and so likewise used he the under Captains, a punishment usually inflicted (on the King's least displeasure) upon any man, if not a natural *Turk*. Presently after, sending *Isaac* against the Prince of *Caria*, he was driven out of his Countrey: which hath ever since remained subject to the *Turkish* Kings.

Mahomet determining to return to *Hadrianople* with his Army, was advertized, he could not passe *Hellespontus* Straits without manifest danger; wherefore taking his way through that part of *Bythinia* lying above *Constantinople*, passing over at the Castle *Accechisar*, standing on *Bosphorus* Strait in *Asia*; being got over, and encamping by the Sea side, he began to build a great Castle near *Propontis*, directly over against the other Castle; and assembling all workmen possible, his Soldiers working also, it was sooner perfected than was by any at first expected: which for greatness is of most Writers, reputed a City named *Genichisar*, *Neocastron*, and *Lamocastron*, built as for the *Turks* safe passage to and fro, so to hinder the Christians passage, thorough those narrow Straits: and to distresse *Constantinople* but 5 miles distant. The rich Trade which the *Venetian*, *Genoan*, and *Constantinopolitan* Merchants had to *Cassa*, and other places on the *Euxine*, were hereby almost cut off, to the great hinderance of those *Estates*. *Mahomet*
ambi-

ambitious, thinking nothing more answerable to his conceits than to attempt *Constantinople*, & the *Greek Empire*'s utter subversion: and grieving at that goodly *Citie*'s commodious Situation, and not at his disposing; and the Emperour's small power with the other Christian Princes discord, ministering no small hope of success; made great preparation all the Winter both by Sea and Land, to be ready against Spring: none certainly knowing whither he would employ the same: *Constantinus* then Emperour, of a mild and soft Spirit hearing hereof, prepared according to his own small ability, also earnestly craved aid of other Christian Princes. But they being at variance, all his Suit was vain. *Nicolas* the 5th, Bishop of *Rome*, *Alphonſus* King of *Naples*, and the State of *Venice* promised him 30 Gallies; but none came.

The Emperour made stay of certain Ships and Gallies of *Venice*, *Genua*, &c. Then also *Johannes Justinianus* a *Genuan* adventurer came to *Constantinople*, with two tall Ships and 400 Souldiers; where being entertained, he was made the Emperour's Lieutenant General. 6000 entertain'd *Greeks*, with 3000 *Venetians*, &c. made stay of, joyned to the Citizens, was all the defence for his Empire.

The *Turk* had a great Army of 300000, ready against Spring, most out of *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, &c. either indeed Christians, or else Runnigates: to these were joyned divers out of *Germany*, *Bohemia*, and *Hungary*. This enforcing and alluring Christians against Christians, hath not been the least means of the *Turks* greatnesse. His effeminate *Asians*, natural *Turks*, and *Janizaries*, were mingled; these last the fewest, yet commanding all.

Mahomet encamping April 9. 1453, before *Constantinople*, filled the Land, from *Bosphorus* Sea side, unto the place where it, compassing the City on two parts, makes a goodly haven betwixt *Constantinople* and *Pera*.

This City (anciently called *Bizantium*) is, in form of a Triangle, situated in *Europe*, in the pleasant Countrey of *Thracia*, on a point of the main Land, shooting out towards *Asia*, called of *Pliny* and *Solinus* the promontory *Chrysoceras*, where the Sea *Propontis* joyneth unto that Strait which divideth *Asia* from *Europe*, called in ancient time *Bosphorus Thracius*, &c. and about 200 years past or more, *St. George's arm*. It was first built by *Pausanias* the *Lacedemonian* King, flourishing till the Civil Wars between *Severus* the Emperour and *Niger*: when it, enduring 3 years siege of the *Romans* under *Severus*, yielded not till the Citizens did eat one another: the walls were overthrown; the City destroyed, and brought to the state of a poor Country Village, given by *Severus* to the *Pyrinthians*, until *Constantine* the Great new built and beautified it: translating his Imperial Seat thither, calling it *New Rome*; and that part of *Thracia* along the Sea Coast, *Romania*. But the founders name so prevailed, that it was, and is called *Constantinople* or [*Constantine's-City*.] The longest side running from North-East to South-West, is commonly reputed 8 miles long: The other side East and West, 5 miles, washed with the Haven more than 8 miles long, before it meet the fresh water, and about a quarter of a mile broad, the City *Pera* or *Galata*, standing on the further side, very deep, bearing ships full fraught, close to the shoar. The 3d side almost North and South, 5 miles also in length; the two Sea and Haven sides, are environed with a single wall, with high Towers flanking the same, &c. But the other side regarding the main Land, beside the fenced ditch, is defended with 3 walls, &c.

Mahomet placed his *Asians* on the right, toward *Bosphorus*; on the left, towards the Haven; lay himself with 15000 *Janizaries*, &c. betwixt both against the heart of the City: placing also, on the further side of the Haven *Zaganus*, with another part of his Army. Then also
Pantologes

Pantologes came to the siege with 30 Gallies, and 200 small ships, and a number of others fitter for shew than service. But the Emperour chaining the Haven overthwart, (placing his small Fleet within it, rather there by chance than provided for such service) the City was put in good safety on that side.

When he had surrounded the City by Sea and Land; he cast up great Trenches as near the Walls as possible, raising mounds in divers places, as high as the walls; thence greatly annoying the Defendants. Then, he terribly battered the Gate called *Calegaria*, chiefly with one Ordinance, difficultly brought from *Hadrianople* with 150 yoke of Oxen, carrying a bullet of 100 pound, made of a hard black stone from the Euxine Sea. The Christians also discharged their Artillery on the *Turks*; but sparingly, as if afraid to shake their own Walls, or loth to spend shot and Powder; yet the *Turks* were grievously annoyed with what was spent. The breach also made at the Gate, was dangerously and laboriously repaired with faggots and earth, and made stronger than before: In which they were directed and greatly encouraged by *Justinianus*.

Mahomet continuing his battery, in greater hope, employed his store of Pioners to dig a Mine, directed by skilful Christians, therefore entertained; whereby that part of the wall, with one strong Tower therein was quite undermined, and supported but with stays, till it should be blown up. This, the *Constantinopolitans* neither perceived nor feared; for that, *Bajazet* and *Amurath* had both vainly attempted the same. But *Mahomet* had by men of greater device, brought this to passe, though it took not the wished effect; for *John Grandis* a German, inspecting, by a Counter-mine timely discovered the *Turks*, and they with fire and sword were driven out, and the Mine strongly filled again. *Mahomet* removed his battery, planting it against the *Bastatina* Tower, near the

Romane Gate: which, at length, falling down, filled up the ditch before the outer wall. But this breach was speedily and courageously made up again. The *Turks* also erecting high Timber Towers covered with raw hides, slew many Christians; But *Mahomet* seeing their valian-ness, said, It was not the *Grecians*, but the *Frenchmen* that defended the City; for so the *Turks* call all the Christi-ans of the West.

The *Turkish* King, almost despairing to win the City, (which he could but on one side assault) a Christian in his Camp shewed him how to bring a great part of his Fleet by Land into the Haven, to assault the City by water: by which device, and mens strength, *Zoganus* Bassa, brought 70 lesser Ships and Gallies, with sails abroad, up a great hill, 8 miles, into *Constantinople's* Haven. The Christian is suppoed to have learnt it of the *Venetians*, who did the like before, at the Lake of *Bennacus*. Glad was *Mahomet*, and the Christians (with its sight) discouraged: who at-tempting to burn them in launching, the *Turks* with great Ordinance, sunk the foremost Christian Galley: the rest, being dismayed, returned. Next day the *Turks* slew cer-tain Christians, of the Galley, took up in the Haven; and in revenge, certain *Turks* prisoners were put to death on the top of the walls, in sight of the Camp.

Shortly after, *Mahomet* made a wonderful bridge, more than half a mile long, over the Haven, built with timber planks, &c. whereby his Army came over to assault the City on that side also.

Three tall *Genoway* Ships laden with Corn, and munition from *Chios*, and one of the Emperour's with Corn from *Sicilia*, coming for *Constantinople*; the *Turks* Fleet set upon them, and boarded them (after an excee-ding number of *Turks* slain); but being much lower, they could not well look our, but they were slain or wounded. *Mahomet* beholding it, cryed aloud, swearing and blas-pheming God, riding in rage into the Sea, and coming back,

back, rent his cloathes. The whole Army was filled with indignation also. The great Fleet ashamed in fight of their King to be overcome of so few; did what they might to enter, but in vaine: glad to fall off againe. Some fugitive *Turks* reported, almost 10000 *Turks* to have perished. Three of these ships arrived at *Constantinople*, the other was lost. Though *Pantogles*, *Mahomets* Admirall lost an eye in that fight, yet he thrust him out of office, confiscating his goods, and hardly sparing his life.

A rumour being raised, of great aide comming out of *Italy* by Sea, and *Hungarie* by land, for reliefe of the besieged: the *Turks* Camp was filled with feare: So that the Souldiers murmured, &c. Whereupon, *Mahomet* consulted with his three great Bassaes, whether he were best continue the siege or not. *Caly Bassa* of greatest authority, and secretly favouring the distressed Emperour, after long declaring the difficulty of the wished successe, &c: concluded, it were best for him to depart before further losse or disgrace received. But *Zoganus* envying *Caly Bassaes* greatnesse, perswaded the King to proceed in his enterprise, assuring him of its good successe, &c. Of the same opinion also was the third *Bassa*, rather to crosse *Caly*, &c: than for any great hope in the desired successe. The King resolved to continue the siege: authorizing *Zoganus* to appoint a day for a great and general assault, who appointed the *Tuesday* next, *May* 29. The meane time he sent one *Ismael* to offer the Emperour peace: but on conditions, no lesse to be refused than death it self: the *Turks* being most of opinion; God will not prosper them, except they first make their enemies some offer of peace: and to prove what confidence the enemy yet had: But they were by the Emperour refused. Three dayes before the assault, the *Turks* kept their fast, eating nothing till night: then making the greatest cheere and joy, and taking their leave one of another, *Mahomet* proclaimed
the

he City's spoile for three dayes, to his Souldiers if they won it, solemnly swearing the *Turks* great Oath : By the immortall God, &c : for confirmation thereof.

Caly Bassa, diidaining that his counsell was rejected : secretly advertised the Emperour of the appointed day for assault, perswading him not to feare them , who were no lesse afraid of him, &c.

The wofull Emperour did, all the siege, what he could : but the Citizens many times were hardly drawne from their Trades, to the Walls, affirming, 'twas to no purpose to fight at the breaches, and starve at home. Wherefore the Emperour com manding a view to be taken of all Corne in the City, such store was found in many's hands, that it appeared the dearth then beginning to increas, proceeded rather of covetousnesse, than true want : this store the Emperour proportionably divided at reasonable prizes : so easing the people's murmuring. The Greek mercenaries also refused longer to go to the Walls, than sure of daily pay : the Church-plate, &c : being converted into money, to content them. For the Emperour requesting to borrow money of his Subjects ; they would still swear they had it not, as poor for want of Trade : which their enemies finding in abundance, wondred at their wealth, and derided their folly. But this was their usuall dealing with their Emperours, in that declining state, as well appeared in *Baldwins* time.

But the Emperour advertised of the Enemy's purpose, first commended their defence to the Almighty's protection by fasting and prayer : then by *Justinianus* his direction, appointed every commander to his certain place. The City beset, and the defendants but few : the Walls could be in many places but slenderly manned. The greatest and best strength were for defence of the inner Wall. *Justinianus* with 300 *Genowates*, and some chosen *Greeks* undertook that battered partner the Roman

Gate : against which, Mahomet with his Janizaries, lay. The Emperour neer Justinian for defence of another part: shutting fast up the Gates of the inner Wall, that the defendants should have no hope but in their valour. Thus they laying all night, a little before day, the Turks began the assault; who pressing fast, and not seeing in the dark to defend themselves, were without number wounded or slain; but these were of the common and worst Souldiers. Upon the day's appearance, the City was at one instant on every side most furiously assaulted: they delivering their Arrows and shot, so thick, that the light was darkened: others mounting the Ladders, came even to handy strokes. The Christians with no lesse courage, beate them down with great stones, &c: and soon whelmed them with shot, darts, &c: that they were ready to retire: Mahomet sending in fresh supplies of Janizaries, &c: his last refuge; the terrible assault began afresh. The King calling on, and promising the forward Capitaines Golden Mountaines: to others, threatening terrible death, so that, though the Turks lay dead by heapes, yet others pressing on, over them, either slew or were slaine. In this conflict, Justinianus being wounded in the Arme, and losing much blood; withdrew himself without any to supply his room; getting into the City by the Gate Romana in the inner Wall; pretending for binding up his wound: but indeed wholly discouraged. Upon whose departure, the Souldiers dismaied, fled to the same Gate: with which sight others, ran by heapes also. But striving to get in at once, they so wedged in each other, that in the presse and confusion, 800 were trodden or thrust to death. The Emperour also fleeing with the rest, there ended his dayes. Whose body shortly found, and known by his apparell: his head was presented to the Tyrant: by whose command it was afterwards as a trophie of Victory, carried about in the Camp and City. The Turks advancing their Ensignes on the Walls, cryed, Victory; entering

tring by the breach, like a flood : and entring the City by the Gate opened for *Justinianus*, and by a breach they had before made, cutting in pieces all in their way, they became Lords of that Imperiall City. Some few Christians preferring death before *Turkish* slavery, sold their lives deare to their Enemies. Many 1000 of men, women and Children perished in this fury. Many fleeing into *Sophia's* Temple, were all slain except a few reserved to more grievous purposes than death it self. The Ornaments and Jewells of that sumptuous Temple, were pluckt down and carryed away : it self converted at present into a stable, &c : the Image of the Crucifix was with a *Turks* Cap on its head, shot at with Arrowes, carried about their Camp in derision, with Drums playing ; rayling and spitting at it, calling it the Christians God. Others ransacked private houses, to whom all things were lawfull that stood with their lust, &c. What tongue were able to expresse the misery of that time ? &c. But the hidden Treasure and Riches there found passeth credit ; that its a proverb at this day, if any grow suddenly Rich, to say, He hath been at the sacking of *Constantinople*. Yea the Citizens had not care so much as to fortifie the inner Wall of the City, but suffered those having the charge thereof to turn most of the money into their own purses, as appeared by *Mannuel Grageras* ; and by *Neophytus* ; who soone gathered 70000 *Florens* : all a worthy prey to the *Turks*.

After three dayes ransacking every corner of the City, the Souldiers returned into the Camp, driving the Christian Captives before them as droves of Cattell : a spectacle no lesse lamentable, than the sacking of the City, &c : There might Parents, Children, Husbands, Wives, see the wofull misery of their Children, Parents, Wives and Husbands, and one friend another ; Yet not able to mourn together, being in the thraldome of divers cruell Masters : The Souldiers retired, *Mahomet* with great
Triumph

Triumph entered the City void of Christian Inhabitants making a sumptuous feast unto his great Capraines; where lurcharged with excesse, he cauted divers chiefe Captaines men and women, many of the Emperours race, to be in his presence put to death : which cruelty he daily used, till he destroyed all the Greek Nobility in his power, with the chiefe of the Citizens, divers *Venetian* Senatours, with their Governour *Bainlus*, and many *Genna* Merchants, &c. were likewise murdered. So that of 47 *Venetian* Senatours, there unluckily shut up, a few found favour with exceeding ransoms.

Amongst these, was one *Lucas Leontares* of late, great Chancellour of *Constantinople* : whom the Tyrant seemed to blame, that he perswaded not the Emperour in time to seek peace on any condition, or to have yielded. He said, his Master was encouraged by the *Venetians* and Citizens of *Pera* : he also drew out *Caly Bassa's* letters to the Emperour, delivering them to *Mahomet*, hoping for favour thereby. But his eldest Son then living was executed in his sight: the youngest reserved for the Tyrants lust: and his own head struck off with the rest. *Justinianus* escaping to *Chios*, within few dayes died of griefe, rather than his wound. *Isidore* the Pope's Legat, simply appalled, redeemed himself for a small ransome : This Cityes glory continued many 100 years, till by civill discord and private gaine it was by little and little weakned, yet holding the title of an Empire 1221 years : till by this *Mahomet* overthrown, with the Christian Easterne Empire, May 29. 1453. *Constantine* having reigned about 8 years : remaining since, the seat of the Turkish Emperours.

The Citizens of *Pera*, doubting the same misery : sent Oratours to *Mahomet*, offering him their keyes, and to become his Subjects. Of which he accepting, took possession thereof by *Zoganus* : who establishing the *Turkey* government, confiscated the goods of all fled, using the rest

rest with oppression, little lesse than theirs of *Constantinople*. And doubling the *Genowais* might aide the Citizens by Sea, upon any revolt; he cast down all the Walls and fortresses toward the land, to the ground.

Mahomet had long boren a grudge against *Caly Bassa* his tutor: by whose meanes *Amurath* his Father returned the government before resigned to him. But he being the chiefe Bassa, &c: he durst not in the beginning of his reigne, take revenge: keeping it still in mind, and warily dissembling it. Yet some time, words fell from him, whereby the wary Courtiers, perceived the secret grudge sticking in his stomack against him: which not unknown to the Bassa himself, he, troubled, went on Pilgrimage to their great Prophets Temple at *Mecha*, holden for a right religious work, hoping the young Kings malice might in time be assuaged. *Mahomet* perceiving his dis-trust hereby: willed him not to misdoubt any thing, assuring him of his undoubted favour: sending him continually rich gifts, and heaping on him new honours. Till now *Leontares* discovering his intelligence with the Emperour, he sent him in bonds to *Hadrianople*: where after exquisite torments to confesse his treasures, he was in extreame old age cruelly executed. After which, his friends and servants, for he was greatly beloved, putting on mourning apparell; *Mahomet* offended, proclaimed all such next day to appeare before him: at which time, for feare, there was none about the Court, in that heavy attire.

Mahomet resolving to place his imperiall seate there, repairing the spoiled Walls and buildings, gave immunity by proclamation, to all commers thither to dwell, with freedome of Religion and Trade: whereby it was soon well peopled, especially with Jewes, who, driven out elsewhere, came thither in great numbers: then taking on him the title of Emperour of *Turks*.

There

There was among the Captive Virgins, one *Irene* a Greek, of incomparable beauty, and rare perfection: which Paragon being presented to *Mahomet*, he was on the first view not a little moved. Yet for the present, committed her to his Eunuch to be safely kept untill his better leisure. But his new conquests well assured, he began to think of the faire *Irene*: taking in her such delight, that she soon became commander of so great a Conqueror, and he in nothing more delighted than in doing her the greatest honour and service. All the day he spent with her in discourse, and the night in dalliance: his wonted care of Armies was quite neglected: Yea the Government of his Empire, seemed in comparison of her, little or not at all regarded. But he thus spending a whole yeare or two in pleasure: the *Janizaries* and other Court Souldiers first secretly murmured: at length openly said: It were well done to deprive him, and set up one of his Sons in his stead; so that it was feared by some Bassaes, whereunto this their insolency would grow. But who should tell the Tyrant thereof; whose frowne was death? or, who durst take in hand to cure his sick minde? There was one *Mustapha Bassa*, for his good service, and brought up with him of a Child, highly favoured and promoted by *Mahomet*, and he by him no lesse honoured and feared: who espying a convenient leisure, and presuming of his former Credit with him, adventured to give him warning; that if it were not for the loyalty owed to his greatnesse, dearer to him than his own life, he would not adventure now, the hazard of his doubtfull acceptance of his faithfull speech and meaning, &c. That the life he led since the taking of *Constantinople*, had given occasion not onely to the Vulgar, and Souldiers of the Court, but to his greatest Commanders, to murmur and grudge: he dared not say, conspire against him. That he had given himself a prey to a poor simple woman, his Slave and Vassall, &c: that, had noble *Othomas* so given him-
self

self to pleasure, he had not now inherited *Bithynia*, and *Galatia*, with more others along the *Euxine*, &c: That *Bajazet* in his misfortune was more to be commended, as vanquished in field by mighty *Tamerlane*, and not by a silly woman. That all those famous conquests of his noble progenitours, should awake him out of his heave Lethargie, wherein he had too long slept: and let it never be said, he could with the sword overcome his greatest enemies, and not with reason subdue his inordinate affections. What availeth it him to have won *Constantinople*, and to have lost himself? That he should shake off those Golden Chaines, wherein the wilie Greek had so fast bound him: which, though at first, it seem hard, yet time shall digest it, and make him think it good and necessary for his estate, &c. That from the want of martial discipline proceedeth disloyall speeches in his Souldiers, that if he will not lead them forth, &c: they will set up one of his own Children which shall. That what the common Souldier foolishly saith, the great Commanders maliciously purpose, &c. That Rebellions are far easier prevented, than in their heat appeased. That what was fit for him to do, becomed not him to say; beseeching him to pardon him, for saying so much already (contrary perhaps to his good liking) provoked even halfe against his will to discover unto him the secret of his heart, &c.

Falling at his feet to receive the doome of his free speech, if not well taken: the Sultan having attentively and sternly hearkened to all, knew it to be true, and that he discharged but the part of a faithfull servant. Yet he was at war with himself, as in his often changed countenance appeared. Thus tossed too and fro, he resolved considering the danger, at once to cut off all his troubled passions: and to strike a errour into them that had condemned him, as unable to governe his affections: saying to the Bassa yet at his feet; that, although he as a slave,
pre-

presuming to enter into his Sovereign's greatest secrets, deserved to die; yet, being brought up with him of a Child, and ever faithfull, he now pardoned him: and would make known to morrow, to him and others, whether he were able to bridle his affections; that he should not faile to assemble all the Bassaes and chief Commanders to know his farther pleasure.

The Bassa departing, he made more of the Greek than ever, dining with her: then (sumptuously apparelling her, and with inestimable Jewells deckt) he entred the Pallace Hall, where *Mustapha* had assembled the Nobles and Commanders, marvelling at his meaning, who had not shewed himself publicquely so long, leading the faire Greek by the hand. After reverence done them by all, he seriously looking about him, said, He understood of their great discontent, &c. that he overcome, could not withdraw from this *Paragons* presence: But he would know which of them, if he possessed so rare a thing, would forgoe it without thrice advising? they should freely say what they thought: They with incredible admiration, all said, He had with greater reason passed the time with her, than any had to find fault: whereto he answered; But I will make you understand, there is no earthly thing can so blind me, as not to see what becometh my high place: that nothing but death can put out of my remembrance the honour and conquests of the *Othoman* Kings: with a desire to exceed the same. Then catching the Greek by the haire, he struck off her head with his Falchion at one blow: saying they should judge whether he could bridle his affections or not. A while after he greatly prepared for conquest of *Peloponessus*, and *Belgrades* siege.

When the *Turks* took *Constantinople*, *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, the Emperours brethren, governed a great part of *Peloponessus*: which in form of a plane Lease, is almost environed with the *Ionian* and *Aegean* Seas, leaving but a

strait neck of land, called *Isthmos* about five miles broad. Its 175 miles long, and almost as broad: wherein are contained *Achaia*, *Messenia*, *Lacedemonia*, *Argolica*, and *Arcadia*. These two Princes were now about to have fled by Sea into *Italy*. Then also it fortuned that the *Albanians* rose in armes against those their Sovereigns, whose diversity of living, like the *Scythian* herdsmen, and language, from the naturall *Greeks*, was no small cause of their often spurning against the Government. In this extremity the Princes offered, for peace, to be *Mahomet's* tributaries: of which he willingly accepting, sent *Turan* *Thessalia's* Governour with an Army, to aide against the *Albanians*: whereby the Rebels were soon discomfited, and the Country quieted.

Demetrius, and *Thomas*, lived a few yeares as the *Turk's* Vassalls: during which, many displeasures arose betwixt them, desiring plausibly to win their subjects from each other. Yet, understanding, the Westerne Princes were greatly preparing against the *Turk*: and that Pope *Calixtus* had put a Fleet of Gallies to Sea; they refused to pay the *Turk* any more tribute, &c: whereupon, he first besieged *Corinth*; and, entering *Peloponessus*, took divers strong Townes, destroying the Country, forcing the Princes to flee, one to *Mantinia*, the other to strong *Epidaurum*, now *Ragusium*. They, destitute of expected aide, sued againe for peace: which he granted on condition; that all places taken should be his own, *Patras* with its County to be delivered him, and they to pay him a yearly tribute for the rest.

Returning, he took *Athens*, before taken from *Francus Accioval* promising him *Boetia* with *Thebes* in lieu thereof. *Francus* was *Nereus* his Nephew, Prince of *Athens*, brought up in the *Turks* Court as one of *Mahomet's* Minions. But he having received that Duke-dome, was sent to *Zaganns* in *Peloponessus* as in great friendship:

ship; but departing he was stayed, and (as *Mahomet* had commanded) murdered.

About 3 years after the peace with the two brethren, *Mahomet* understanding the Christian Princes had combined to drive him out of *Greece*, thought it much for his assurance, to root up that Empire's Reliques in *Thomas* and *Demetrius*: they being now at variance, neither paid him the promised tribute. Coming to *Corinth* with a great Army; *Arsanes*, whose sister *Demetrius* had married, came to him from his brother in Law with many gallants, to aid him against *Thomas*, they both reckoning him as a friend. But *Mahomet*, being come to *Tegæa*, he cast *Arsanes* with his chief followers into bonds.

Demetrius hearing of it, fled to *Sparta*, now *Mizisbra*: which in few daies *Mahomet* besieging, the Prince went out and submitted himself to him with all he had; whom the Tyrant comforting, promised to give him other Lands, &c. instead of *Sparta*; yet, he carried him as a prisoner till he ended those wars. Then besieging *Caßria*, he loſt divers *Janizaries*: wherefore, the City taken, he put all the Souldiers to the sword, cutting the Captains into pieces. Then he took *Leontarium*, anciently *Megalopolis*, with *Cardicta*: whither these had conveyed their Wives and children, leaving not one alive in those Cities of about 6000, and commanding the very cattel to be killed. Many Cities (terrified) forthwith yielded, he causing all the Inhabitants 10000 of *Salvarium* in *Arcadia*, to be cast in bonds, with which (as Captives) he peopled *Conſtantinople's* Suburbs. Then by *Demetrius* his Counſel he ſent *Greek* Souldiers to strong *Epidaurus*, to deliver it him in the Prince's name, with his Wife and Daughter: but the Governour refusing, ſuffered the Princeſſe and Daughter, to depart to her husband; who being preſented to *Mahomet*, they were ſent to *Boetia* to attend his return; an Eunuch taking charge of the young Lady,

whom *Mahomet* took afterwards to wife. Then also subduing most of *Achaia*, and *Elis* by *Zogannus*, himself ere long, besieged *Salmenica* there, which yielded for lack of water; but the Castle was for a year defended by Prince *Thomas*, whom he commended, that he found many slaves in *Peloponesus*, but never a man but he. *Thomas* getting to Sea, was at *Rome* allowed, for life, a large pension by Pope *Pius* 2. Thus all *Peloponesus* being subdued (except some Sea-holds holden by the *Venetians*) leaving *Zogannus* his Lieutenant, he returned toward *Constantinople* with triumph: carrying away with him *Demetrius*, his wife and daughter, &c. giving unto him the City *Anum*, with the Custom of Salt there made, to live on. This famous Countrey, fell into the *Turks* thralldom about 1460.

The Christian Princes seeing by the *Turks* continual preparations, his desires to be increased rather than satisfied with so great victories, fortifying their frontiers provided for repulsing so mighty an enemy. *George* the old Despot's Dominions lying in most danger, he left nothing undone for defence; for he had many times endured the *Turks* fury: then he journeyed into *Hungary*, to procure aid against a time of need. But they, especially *Huniades* (having sufficient tryal of his light faith, neither accounted right *Turk* or good Christian) leaving him to his own fortunes, he returned full of indignation: and soon after died of a hurt in a skirmish with *Michael* Governour of *Belgrade*, whose brother he treacherously murdered, travelling with *Michael* by Wagon to *Belgrade*, himself hardly escaping. This was his end, living 90 years: a man of great courage, but marvellous unquiet, &c. a deep dissembler, and double in all his waies, whereby he was neither beloved or trusted of neighbour-Princes, and so detested of his Subjects, that they still tearm him in their Songs, *The faithless and graceless Despot*. *Lazarus* his youngest

youngest Son succeeded him ; yet his two blind brethren fleeing to *Mahomet* with a masse of mony, so incited him against *Lazarus*, that for his friendship, he became his tributary, and dying few months after, great troubles arose in *Servia*: the blind brethren craving aid of *Mahomet*; and *Lazarus* his widow with her 3 sons, putting her self into the *Hungarians* protection, with trouble held it, till the *Servians*, weary of the *Turks* harms, yielded to *Mahomet's* obedience ; who united it to his Empire, as at this day. *Mahomet* now thinking no enterprize so great, which he was not able to bring to passe, ceased not to vex the bordering Princes ; But his heart was greatest against the *Hungarians*. Wherefore, because *Belgrade* was accounted the Key of *Hungary*, he determined there to begin his wars, and levied 15000 Soldiers, in whom he reposed great confidence. He provided 200 Ships and Gallies, that no relief should be brought to the City out of *Hungary*, by the Rivers *Danubius* and *Savins* ; and landing his Souldiers farther up *Danubius*, spoyled along the River side. Shortly after encamping before it, he at first terribly assaulted, but finding greater resistance then he imagined, he entrenched his Army, and provided against sudden sallies : then laying a part of the wall flat by the fury of his great Artillery, the Defendants with great labour repaired it rather stronger than before.

Huniades the while, sent a Fleet (well appointed) from *Buda* down *Danubius*, which taking 20 sail of *Turks*, and discomfiting the rest, they ran on ground near their camps which were set on fire, as not to come into the *Hungarians* power. Hereby the Christians (at pleasure) conveyed all necessities by water, to *Belgrade*. *Huniades* also with 5000, and a Minorate Fryar (by whose perswasion, 40000 Volunteers were come to that war) entred that way with their followers.

Mahomet resolutely bent, determined next day to give a general assault; but, as they were preparing all things for the service, *Carazi Bassa*, his best man of war, was slain from the Town, *Mahomet* being exceedingly troubled herewith as ominous; yet next day early, he with the sound of Trumpets, &c. brought on his *Janizaries* to the breach; who without great resistance entered there, and in divers other places; For *Huniades* ordered the Defendants (upon the first charge) to retire towards the City as discouraged, on purpose to draw the enemies faster on to their destruction: so that great numbers being entered, the retirers, at the sign appointed, turning again, fiercely charged them, and *Huniades* issuing out, so oppressed the *Turks*, that few escaped, not being slain or taken; the rest with exceeding slaughter beaten from the Walls. *Huniades* (with the Fryar's Souldiers) presently sallying out, so charged the *Turks*, defending the great Ordnance, that they with great slaughter, left them to their enemies. The Tyrant courageously charging to recover them again, was so repulsed, and beaten with murdering shot from the City, that he was glad when got into his Trenches.

A great part of the Army was in this hurly, speedily transported over *Danubius*, joyning with *Huniades*, laying without the walls: who now assailed their Trenches, as if presently to enter their Camp: which the Tyrant disdainig, went out and valiantly beat him back to the Ordnance: from whence, he was again driven to his Trenches: which manner of fight, was indifferently maintained till the day almost spent. *Chasanes* Captain of the *Janizaries*, was herein slain, and *Mahomet* himself sore wounded under his left pap, and carried into his Pavilion for dead. But coming to himself, and considering his losse in that siege, &c. departed with great silence in the night, still looking behind when the *Hungarians* should have pursued and troubled him. Here were slain 40000. his

his best Souldiers, besides Commanders: so that he would shake his head, &c. wishing, he had never seen that City where he and his Father received so great dishonor. This notable Victory was August 6th, 1456. *Huniades* shortly after, died of a hurt in these Warres; or as some, of the plague, then rise in *Hungary*, who would in any case be carried to the Temple to receive the Sacrament before his departure; saying, the Lord should not come to his Servants house, but the Servant to the House of his Lord. He was the first Christian Captain, shewing the *Turks* were to be overcome, obtaining more great Victories over them than any before him. He was honourably buried at *Alba Julia*, in St. *Stephens* Temple, greatly lamented of all good men.

Mahomet soon after the taking *Constantinople*, putting a great Fleet to Sea, surprized divers Islands in the *Ægeum*, and hardly besieged *Rhodes*. At which time *Calixtus* the 3d Pope, aided by the *Genowayes*, for the grudge of *Pera* taken, put to Sea sixteen tall Ships and Gallies, under *Patriarch Lodovicus*, who recovered *Lemnos* from the *Turks*, with other small Islands, and encountering them near the Island *Rhodes*, sunk and took divers, forcing them to forsake the *Rhodes*, spoyling for three years after, at pleasure, the *Turks* frontiers, along the Sea coast of lesser *Asia*, terrifying the effeminate people, and returning with many prisoners and much spoil.

Mahomet after that, began diligently to prepare against spring, to subdue the *Ægeum* Islands, chiefly those near *Peloponesus*: Embassadors from *Usuncassanis*, the *Persian* King arrived the while, with divers rich presents: among which were a pair of playing Tables, whose men and dice were of inestimable precious stones and workmanship, found in the *Persian* Kings Treasures, that *Usun* had shin and bereft, and left there by *Tamerlane*. Their Embassage was, that those two mighty Princes might joyn and live in amity, and that *David*, Em-

perour of *Trapezond*, being forced to pay *Mahomet* a tribute by his *Asian* Lieutenant, he should not now look for it: seeing that Empire, after *Dauids* death, belonged to him in his Wives right, *Dauids* elder Brothers Daughter, requiring him not to molest him, so should he be his faithful confederate, otherwise his mighty enemy. *Mahomet*, envying the *Persian* rising, and now disdaining his peremptory requests, dismissed them with this answer, He would ere long be personally in *Asia*, to reach *Usun* what to request of a greater than himself. This was the ground of the mortall Warres ensuing between these two. *Mahomet*, now altering his determination for the *Aegeum* Isles, most under the *Venetians* protection, sent his Admiral with one hundred and fifty Sail into the *Euxine*, now the black Sea, to anchor before *Sinope Paphlagonia's* chief City, to expect him with his Army by Land, who was come thither before he was looked for. *Ismael* a *Mahometan* Prince, governing all thereabout, on whom *Mahomet* bent his forces, as being in league with *Usun*, though he had 400 great Artillery Pieces, and 10000 Souldiers for his defence: yet doubting how to endure the siege, yielded to him the City with all his Dominions, in lieu of *Philopopolis* in Thrace with the adjoining Country. This was the last of the *Isfendiars* long reigning in *Pontus*. Thence he marched to *Trapezond* in *Pontus*, where the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours had their Deputies, whilest commanding as farre as *Parthia*: but it declining, one *Isaac* fleeing from *Constantinople*, and taking the Government of *Trapezond* with *Pontus* and *Cappadocia*, &c. was first called King; but afterwards, he and his Successors, Emperors. *David Comnenus* then raigned: *Mahomet* hardly besieged *Trapezond* for 30 dayes by Sea and Land, burnt its Suburbs, as at *Sinope*. The fearful Emperour offered to yield his whole Empire to him, on condition of taking his Daughter to Wife: and for some other Province

vince yielding a sufficient yearly profit. *Mahomet* perceiving his enemies weakness, attempted the City by force, which not sorting, they again parled: at last it was agreed, the Emperour on the *Turks* faith for his return, should meet him without the City for some good atonement, who as soon as he came out, *Mahomet* (faith not to be kept with Christians) detained him a prisoner in bonds, wherewith the Citizens discouraged, yielded themselves and City into his power: who entering it, and taking his Daughter and all his Children, with all Nobles he found, sent them forthwith by Sea with the Emperour; to *Constantinople* as in triumph: choosing what Citizens he pleased for his own service: bringing up 800 Christian Children for *Janizaries*, many Citizens sent captives to *Constantinople*, dividing the beautiful Women to his friends and men of Warre, he sent some choise ones to his Sonnes. The other Towns, shortly submitted to the *Turkish* thraldom, wherein they have since miserably lived: he appointed *Janizaries* for the Castle, and his Admiral to govern the common Souldiers in the City. So *Mahomet*, having in few moneths, subdued *Paphlagonia*, *Pontus*, and a great part of *Cappadocia*, &c. returned in great triumph. Afterwards, *Usums* Queen seeking to get some of her Uncles children, possibly by her Husbands power, to advance to her Fathers Empire; *Mahomet* cruelly put to death *David* with all his sonnes and kinsmen: rooting out all the Family of the *Comnens*, but *George* the youngest Sonne, who at first turned *Turk*, and whose Sister was afterwards one of his concubines. This Empire was by *Mahomet* subverted in 1461.

The year following, *Ulanus* Prince of *Valachia* resolving to joyn to the *Hungarians*, *Mahomet* thought to circumvent this his tributary, before wholly fallen from him: wherefore he sent *Catabolinus* his Secretary, to bring him to Court, promising him greater promotions than ever: and commanding by him, *Chamuzes Bassa*,
Go-

Governour of *Bidina*, &c. to do his utmost for entrap-
ping of *Uladus*, promising him great rewards. *Chamuze*
devised, the Secretary to give him notice of the day of
his return from the Prince: when 'twas like, *Uladus*
would bring him on his way of himself, or at least being
by the Secretary requested; the *Bassa*, passing with Troops
over *Danubius*, should lay close in ambush on the way.
The Secretary forced his wit, to perswade the Prince to
go to Court, &c. But he obtained no more from him
wary, than good words, and in courtesie to conduct him
unto *Danubius* side. The Secretary giving *Chamuze*s no-
tice, he lay where the Secretary must needs passe: com-
ming at the prefixed time to the place, *Chamuze*s sud-
denly assailing the Prince, slew divers. But *Uladus* being
of great courage, and better appointed than the *Bassa*
supposed, slew many *Turks*, and at length took *Chamuze*s
with the rest: whose hands and feet he cutting off, thrust
their bodies on sharp stakes fastned in the ground, hang-
ing the *Bassa* and Secretary on a Gibbet, much higher
than the other. And gathering his forces, passed *Danubi-
us*, burning along the River side, killing man, woman, and
Child, so returning into *Valachia*. This newes let *Ma-
homet* into such a rage, that he commanded *Bassa Mabo-
metes* telling him of it, to be cruelly whipt. But when
he surely understood, rather worse than the *Bassa* report-
ed, it is not to be expressed into what a rage he fell.
Wherefore assembling speedily his Souldiers to *Philopo-
polis*, he soon raised such an Army, as had not been a-
gainst *Constantinople*: sending also 25. Gallies, and 150
small Vessels, to land in *Danubius*, and joyn with the
Podolian; who for a grudge against *Uladus*, promised to
aid the *Turk*: who before *Mahomet*s comming with the
Polodians help, had burnt *Prailaba*, the greatest Trade-
Town in *Valachia*: then besieging *Cebium* awhile with
some losse, the *Podolian* departed into his Country, the
Admiral to his Fleet. *Mahomet* got over, burnt, &c. ma-
king

king havock of all in his way, taking but few Prisoners; for the *Valachies* had retired all unhurt for Warres, into strong Cities or Woods, or high and rough Mountains. The Prince kept the Woods and Mountains, following the *Turks* as near as with safety, and cutting off straglers many times: yet being but a handful, durst not shew himself in field. *Mahomet* roaming up and down, and not reckoning of so weak an enemy, pitched in open plains, not entrenched. *Uladus* understanding thereof, furiously assailed in the dead of night, the *Asian* quarter of the Camp, slaying many in their Tents; the rest terrified, fled to the *European* Souldiers: whom the Prince following did great harm in that quarter also: so fearing the *Turks* in generall, that they were on the point to flee. Yea *Mahomet*, fearing the *Hungarians* had joyned with the Prince, had fled, had not *Mahomet Bassa* perswaded him; and, by Proclamation, none on pain of death to forsake his place, enforced a head against the Prince: which *Uladus* perceiving, after great slaughter and spoil of the *Asians* Tents, retired into the Woods. It being day, *Halybeg* with select Companies, pursuing them, took one thousand, putting the rest to flight, who were presently put to the Sword. After that, *Mahomet* entrenched every night, keeping better Watches and Ward in every quarter. Who as he marched, came where the *Bassa* and Secretary hanged, and the dismembred *Turks* on stakes: with which he was grievously offended. Passing further, he came to a plain, almost one mile broad, and two long, full of Gallows, Gibbets and Stakes, &c. hanging full of dead men, women and children, deemed about twenty thousand. Some their limbs broken on wheels, with many horrible kinds of death. All which, the cruel Prince, jealous of his estate, had for desert or suspicion put to death; his Souldiers had their goods, executing the whole Family, sometime the whole kindred,

dred, with the offender. *Mahomet*, though by nature fierce and cruel, wondred. Yet said onely, *Vladus* knew how to have his Subjects at command. Then sending *Josephus* to skirmish with the *Valachies*, he was put to the worst. But *Omares* comming in, they were overthrown, and two thousand heads brought on launces into the Camp; for which *Omares* was by *Mahomet* made Governour of *Thessalie*.

Mahomet seeing it to no purpose, to hunt after his fleeing enemy, returned to *Constantinople*, leaving *Halybeg* with *Vladus* his younger Brother, called also *Vladus*, to prosecute that Warre with a party. This younger *Dracula* was, of a little youth, brought up in *Mahomet's* Court: who for his comely feature, sought first by fair words and gifts, to corrupt him, at last to force him. The youth enraged, drew his Rapier to slay him, grievously wounding his thigh and fled: yet being drawn back, he was pardoned and reconciled, becomming his *Ganymede*, and being long beloved and honoured, was now set up for a Stale to draw the *Valachies* into rebellion: divers of whom comming to *Haly*, to ransom their friends taken in those Warres: young *Vladus* declaring the *Turks* great power, and as lamenting the Countries endless miseries, impured them to the disordered Government of his cruel Brother: assuring speedy relief, if the *Valachies* forsaking his Brother, would cleave to him as their Sovereign. By whose lively reasons, &c. they present, perswaded, and others by them, soon all forsook the elder, and chose him the younger, who by *Mahomet's* content, took on him the Government, yet holding it as his vassal. *Vladus* thus forsaken, fled into *Transilvania*, where he was laid fast by the *Hungarian King*, at *Belgrade*, for cruelty and unjustly executing divers *Hungarians*: yet after ten years, being enlarged, he died in battel against the *Turks*.

Mahomet sent the same Fleet into the *Egeum*, to take the Islands, who before under the *Constantinopolitan*, had put themselves now under the *Venetian*, especially *Mitylene* pretending its Prince harbored the *Italian* Pirates and others, buying prisoners, and booty taken from the *Turks* at Sea, and along the Sea-coast: also, that he, slaying his eldest Brother, unjustly governed. Himself passing into *Asia*: came to *Possidium*, over against *Mitylene*; Landing his small Army over the narrow Strait, he soon over-ran and spoiled the Island, captivating all its Inhabitants, who being sold at *Constantinople*, were thence dispersed. Then besieging the Prince in the City *Mitylene*, he battered it twenty seven dayes; and the defendants, by sharp assaults, greatly diminished, the Prince offered to yield up all in the Isle, for some other Province of like value: which *Mahomet* accepting, solemnly swore to perform. The Prince humbly comming forth, excused himself for receiving the men of Warre, that they might not spoil his own Country: denying he had bought or shared any of their prizes. *Mahomet* seemingly contented, cheered him with good words: yet all being delivered into his hands, he put to death many of the chief Citizens, cutting three hundred Pirates in the middle, and placing Garrisons, he returned, carrying the Prince with him, and all the better sort; with all the wealth, leaving his Garrisons with a few of the poorest people.

Being arrived, he closely imprisoned the Prince, with his cousin, used in killing his Brother; who in danger of their lives every houre, offered renouncing Christianity to turn *Turk*. *Mahomet* in rich Apparel, triumphantly circumcising them, set them at liberty: yet bearing the old grudge, soon clapt them fast again, cruelly putting them to death.

Shortly

Shortly after, *Stephen King of Bosna*, who through the *Turks* support, had wrongfully obtained it against his two brethren, refused to pay *Mahomet* his promised tribute : wherefore entering *Bosna*, he besieged *Dorobiza*; which taken, one part of the people he gave slaves to his men of War, sending another to *Constantinople*, a third to inhabit the City. Marching to *Jaziga* (now *Jaica*) the chiefe City, it was delivered after four months on composition. Here taking the Kings Brother and Sister with most of the Nobles, he sent them in Triumph to *Constantinople*. The lesser Cityes yielded also. *Mahomet* sent *Mahometes Bassa* to pursue the King, retired into the farthest parts : who so inclosed him before he was aware, that he could not escape, a thing thought impossible. The King taking refuge of *Clyssa*, was so hardly laid to, that he yielded himself on the Bassaes solempne oath conceived in writing, that he being honourably used, should not be hurt by the Emperour. The Bassa carryed him about with him, till he possessed all *Bosna* : whole Master was offended with him for engaging his Faith so far. The poor King departing, was suddenly sent for : who doubting, carryed the Bassas Oath in writing : yet the faithlesse Tyrant most cruelly put him to death, or as some slew him quick. *Bosna* was subverted by *Mahomet* in 1464, who reducing it into a province, returned in great triumph to *Constantinople*, with many a wofull Captive, and that Kingdom's wealth.

Mahomet in the beginning of his reigne, sent to *Scanderbeg* offering him peace, so he would pay him the yearly tribute demanded by *Amurath* : rather to prove his confidence, than in hope to have it granted. *Scanderbeg* scornfully rejecting this, entered into the *Turks* bordered dominion, wasting the Conuntry & returning with spoyl. *Mahomet* in revenge, sent *Amesfa* with 12000 Horse into *Epirus* to do the like : of whose comming, he understanding, lay close with 6000 on the Mountain *Modrissa*.
The

The *Turks* by night, being almost gotten to its rough and steep top, were suddenly charged, and with great slaughter driven down amaine, their horses being rather their hinderance. Being come to the foot, they were againe fiercely assailed by *Scanderbeg* on one side, and his Nephew *Amesa* on the other: who before had placed themselves advantagiously: So that the *Turks* soone overthrowne were put to flight, 7000 were slaine: *Amesa* their Generall taken with divers Captaines, and sent to *Croia*, where was great triumph and feasting for joy: *Scanderbeg* then enlarging *Amesa* and the rest to be partakers thereof: and using them with all courtesie during their abode, *Amesa* requested he might send to *Mahomet*, how the case stood with them, and to procure their ransome, which *Scanderbeg* granting set downe at 13000 Duckats. The newes foregrieved the Tyrant: but seeing the Armies remainder, most of their Ensignes and Armour lost, and *Amesa's* messenger, he enraged, denied any thing for ransome: impuring all to his treachery, folly, or cowardise. Yet he was perswaded by his *Bassas* and other *Amesas* friends, to think better of him, and to send his ransome, lest he should discourage other Captaines, who might haply fall into like danger: on receipt whereof they freed, were conveyed out of *Epirum*: *Scanderbeg* dividing the mony among his Souldiers.

The Tyrant determining to send another Army, and promising great rewards, &c: to the vanquisher of *Scanderbeg*; among others, *Debrias* in great favour, by great sute obtained that charge, promising confidently to make a better beginning, than others before sent, requiring no more power than was sent the yeare before. But *Amesa* setting forth *Scanderbegs* virtues and valour, with his Souldiers courage, *Debrias* was content with a new supply, having 14000, with whom marching to *Polagus*, and encamping with great security, being not yet come into
the

Enemies Country; *Scanderbeg* chose 6000 of his best
 Horsemen, and marching with all speed, came by night,
 where the *Turks* lay, to be upon them before aware.
 But by the Moon-light he was timely discied; yet the
 sudden approach, and strange attempt dismayed the whole
 Army. But *Debrias* encouraging his Souldiers, sent light
 Horse-men to receive the first charge, till he might set his
 Army in order: betwixt whom and others of *Scanderbeg's*,
 a sharp skirmish beginning, *Scanderbeg* doubling, second-
 ed them with fresh Troops under *Amesa*: by whose com-
 ming the *Turks* were chased even to their main battell.
 In which, *Moses* had, following too fast, been enclosed,
 had not *Amesa* stayed his fury, blamed by *Scanderbeg*:
 commending such forwardnesse in a private Souldier;
 not in so great a Commander. *Scanderbeg* now fiercely
 assailed the *Turks* with his Army. *Debrias* so encouraged
 his Souldiers, that *Scanderbeg's* fortune was even at a
 stand: till *Musachius* with resolute Troops out of the left
 wing, so charged, that he sore disordered the side of the
Turks Army: which *Debrias* perceiving, came to that
 place, cheering them up with his presence and valour,
 seeming the life of his Army. *Scanderbeg* the while,
 mainly charging the Enemies front, they began in their
 Generalls absence to loose order and give ground. *Moses*
 then breaking into the thickest, threw amongst his follo-
 wers a taken Ensigne: who thereby, so pressed on their
 Enemies, that they, discouraged and disordered, were al-
 most ready to flee. *Debrias* here-upon, hastening to en-
 courage his Souldiers among the foremost, was by *Scan-
 derbeg* encountered hand to hand and slain. Wherewith
 the Army discouraged, fled: *Moses* and *Musachius* killing
 more in chase than was in battell: 4120 *Turks* were slain
 and some taken, but few or no Christians: so that *Scan-
 derbeg* accounted it a Victory given. All spoile, and pri-
 soners were equally divided among the Souldiers. *Moses*
 had *Debrias* his horse and Armour: *Musachius* a Priso-
 ner

her seeming of some account given them : whose prisoner drawing 200 Duckats out of a little bag about him for his agreed-ransome, *Musachins* told him he must provide another, seeing that money was taken with his person. The *Turk* alleadged the agreement already made; which controversie, *Scanderbeg* hearing, and smiling, said, They contended for what was (by right) his : for, said he, I gave thee (*Musachins*) the prisoner which I knew ; but not the money, which I knew not of. And to the *Turk*; the concealment makes it not thine : who by law of Armes, hast lost thy self with all about thee. Thus he bringing them both in doubt, awarded *Musachins* the money, and to the *Turk* his liberty : who departing with his horte and Armes, spake honourably of so noble a Conquerour ; After this, *Scanderbeg* triumphantly returned to *Croia*.

Mahomet being very melancholly with this newes : seeing the many Souldiers that returned, he could not endure the sight of them. The Captaines generally envied *Debreas* his hardinesse, or hated his intolency. *Amesa* was glad his proud successour took part of his ill fortune. The men of war offered to spend their lives in that service, to their revengefull King : which he seeming not to refuse, had yet plotted another manner of revenge, whereby his Father had brought great matters to passe. He hoped to find some Chiefetain in *Epirus*, whom wealth or promotion might allure against *Scanderbegs* life or state. *Moses* of *Dibria* accounted the next best Captain to *Scanderbeg*, and most inward with him; he most desired to alienate from him, because he commonly lay in *Dibria* on the very frontiers. Wherefore he commanded the Governour of *Sfetigrade* to devise by all meanes to withdraw and allure *Moses* : promising him also great preferment if he could win him. Who at last thinking upon a shrewd-headed Christian in *Sfetigrade* (whom therefore he might use unsuspected) and winning

him by great gifts and promises to undertake it, sent him away fully instructed : who obtaining to speak with *Moses* in private, after some discourse began to utter his poyson : shewing him, as from the Governour, that the *Turks* Emperour could not but honour him, though his enemy, for his valour and prowess : and marvelling he could be commanded by *Scanderbeg*, whose state was by him chiefly upholden : whereas, if he would follow *Mahomet*, he should soon find entertainment, to be preferred before *Scanderbegs* state : or, if *Epirus* its sovereignty better pleased him, he might easily be advanced there-to, by joyning to *Mahomet's* great power. *Moses* praises and favour with the *Turk*, well pleased him : But the hope of *Epirus* Kingdome moved him more than all. Yet he made no semblance of liking or disliking : which the wily messenger taking for a secret consent, and departing, promised shortly to returne to him againe. After this, many troubled thoughts arising in *Moses*, &c : he in short time seemed to the wiser altogether metamorphosed. Some asking the cause of the Messenger's coming : he answered to receive intelligence from him concerning the good of the State; which was holden for true. The Messenger comming againe, brought presents secretly, becomming the Great *Turk*, with his message better framed. *Moses* is reported to have received nought but the Treason it self : answering, he could not but accept the *Turks* favours: and for the rest, he should not thenceforth find him any great enemy: commanding the Messenger no more to repaire to him, for feare of suspicion.

Scanderbeg comming into *Dibria*, to see how things stood, and to consult about besieging of *Sfetigrade*; *Moses* to avert him therefrom, told him : he lately understood by a Messenger thence, that the City was so well stored of all things, that it were but lost Labour to attempt it : advising him rather to besiege *Belgrade* (not on *Danubins*)

bins) but in the confines of *Epirus*, distant from *Sfetigrade* about 140 miles. Which *Scanderbeg* resolving on, and his Souldiers not so fit for besieging of Townes; he sent two Embassadours to pray aide out of *Italy*, from his old friend *Alphonfus* King of *Naples*, with presents and letters; declaring, that his Souldiers knew not how to deale with Walls, that the *Italians* had skill in that service, that there were certaine Townes of their enemies in *Epirus*: which eye-sore he long desired to take out of his sight, &c. Therefore *Alphonfus* should lend him Harquebusiers and Canonéers: for of other Souldiers he had plenty. That he did so lovingly embrace his former kindnesse, &c: that he could sometimes wish him that fortune, which (as the common saying is) proverb, but getteth not friends, that he might more certainly prove how much he was to him devoted. *Scanderbeg* purposing also to use *Moses* his service in the siege: he found many excuses to stay at *D. bria*: alleadging, it was to be thought, the *Turk* would invade some part of *Epirus*, to withdraw them from *Belgrade*: that no part lay neerer, and in more danger than *Dibria*: that he could not do better service, than to see to that Country's safety: in which also most of his living lay. These Treasonable excuses were thought reasonable, and he commended for his care: authorized also to augment the Garrison upon occasion.

Scanderbeg finishing his preparation, the Embassadours returned from *Alphonfus*, with much more aide than was requested; for he reckoned *Epirus*; but 60 miles from his dominions, the strongest Walls of *Apulia*, as it afterwards appeared when the *Turks* took *Otranto*. He wrote also loving letters to *Scanderbeg*, &c: and to make bold of all things as his own: merrily writing, that his *Italian* Souldiers could fight better with women then men and walls: therefore the *Epirots* were best take heed, &c.

Scanderbeg now furnished, encamped before *Belgrade* with 14000 good Souldiers : which he soone so diuulsed, that the *Turks* promised to deliver it up, if not relieved before 16 dayes truce. During which time, *Scanderbeg* encamped on a hill neere the Towne with 3000 Horse, and 1000 foot, appointing *Musachius* and *Tannusius* to remove into a Plain farther off, for more fresh aire in that hot season : also he ordered 25 Scouts to watch continually on the highest Mountain, to give warning of the Enemies comming by making a fire.

Mahomet, now ready to passe into *Asia* against the Emperour of *Trapezond*, and grieving to lose *Belgrade*, holding on his intended journey him'self, sent *Sebalias* a Bassa with 40000 Horse to relieve it, promising him great rewards for *Scanderbeg*, dead or alive. This Bassa, alwayes accounted more politique than forward, came on so fast by great journeys, that he prevented the same of his comming, intercepting or corrupting the Watch on the Mountaines, that no expected signe was given. So that those in the plaines had not leiture to bridle their horses, or put on their Armour. *Musachius* armed, &c : as the Enemyes approach would permit, doubting whether to fight or flee : but seeing alike danger in both, he resolutely received the Enemy's charge. At length, seeing his men slaine by heapes, he fiercely attempted to break thorow to *Scanderbegs* Mountain : but no way being to be made, he fought till he and all with him were slaine. *Tannusius* also after divers vaine attempts to rescue his Cousin *Musachius*, exhorted all left, to flee : in which many were slaine : for the Enemy filled all places, and eagerly pursued. *Scanderbeg* was about many times to descend the hill, to help them, or have died with them, yet staid : his Captaines earnestly requesting him, not to thrust himself and them into perill of assured death.

Sebalias following *Tannusius* with most of his Army, except few, and such as rifled the dead, *Scanderbeg* coming downe with his 4000, slew all *Turks* in his way, and cut off a great number afterwards in the rear. So that *Sebalias* leaving the chase, turned upon his pursuing Enemy: and after a sharp skirmish begun, sounded a retreat to call together his dispersed Souldiers, the better to encounter his dangerous Enemy. *Scanderbeg* assembling his remainder, and valiantly encountering the *Turks* (thinking now to end these Wars) slew with his own hand *Achmat* and *Barach* two valiant *Turks*, who had sworne to *Mahomet Scanderbegs* death, if they met him. Many *Turks* were here slaine. Night drawing on, *Sebalias* retired to a Mountaine nigh the City: and *Scanderbeg* to another almost two miles off: and in dead of the night returned into *Epirus*, leaving strong Garrisons on all strait passages, lest the *Bassa* should break into *Epirus*. This was the onely and greatest overthrow *Scanderbeg* hitherto received, losing 2000 Horse, and 3000 Foot (most of whom were the *Italians*) with his Tents, and great Artillery, and about 80 taken, 3000 *Turks* were slaine also.

Next day, *Sebalias* buried the bodies of the slaine *Turks*: but left the yet-breathing-Christians, cutting off their hands and feet, among the dead. *Musachius* his head, and others thought of the better sort, were cut off: and because of the heat of the weather, being flayed and stuffed, *Sebalias* carried them as Tropheys to *Constantinople*: Repairing *Belgrades* Walls, and adding 700 fresh Souldiers to the old Garrison; he returned, causing as he entered the City, the Christian Caprives to be led in Chaines before him, after whom were the taken Ensignes, with the heads on Launces, then all the spoil. Himself with his Souldiers were received, with such applause as Conquering some great Kingdome. *Sebalias* praises was in every mans mouth: he onely (they said) shewing *Scanderbeg*

derbeg was to be overcome : No preferment or reward was thought too great, to countervail his desert. Most of the Captives being sold, the rest were thrust alive on sharpe stakes, hang'd on iron hooks, and otherwise tortured to death.

Moses after *Scanderbegs* losse, thought it a most fit time now to revolt : but he thought good, if possible, to allure some others into his Treason, both to diminish his own infamy, and to appear with more credit before the *Turks*. Wherefore at first, seeming very pensive for *Scanderbeg* and *Epirus*; with many words, he set forth (to his utmost) *Mahomets* power : but to those more inward with him, he discovered *Mahomets* great favour, and offered guilts, &c. assuring them of the like also, if they would conforme: yet he found none, but a few of the baser sort, which hearkened to, or followed him. Wherefore he fearing now to be discovered, fled by night, to *Sfetgrade*, with those base ones; thence, by the Governours passe, to *Constantinople*; where arriving a little before *Sebalias* : *Mahomet* joyfully received him, &c : At the first report whereof, *Scanderbeg* (as astonied) stood speechlesse : but pawling a while, said no more, but that he could easily excuse *Moses*, he being carried away with that which might alienate a constant man : commanding divers aggravating his offence to hold their peace, wishing all Treason and ill fortune were gone with *Moses*. *Scanderbeg* went into *Dibria*, diligently enquiring if any of his partakers could be found. But finding none, he much-rejoyced, and things being set in order returned to *Croia*.

Moses solicited *Mahomet* to proceed in his Warrs against *Scanderbeg* : promising to spend his life therein. But he delaying him till next Spring, diligently observed (the while) *Moses* talke and behaviour : and oft discoursed with him about that Warr's management : and finding undoubted signes of a minde for his service, he at
Spring

Spring committed 15000 Horse to him, for invading *Epirus*, for a greater number he required not. These Soldiers through the opinion of their new Generall, and hope by his meanes, of friends there to joyne with them, were the willinger to goe. So *Moses* furnished with an Army of his own chooing, &c. marching thorow *Thrace* and *Macedonia*, came and entred into *Dibria*. Whom *Scanderbeg* stood not to encounter upon policy, he being privy to his stratagems, but with true valour. Both Armies standing ranged in order, a Messenger came to *Scanderbeg* to know if any one durst fight hand to hand with one of the *Turks*, whose name was *Ahemaze*, before the generall battell. Upon his challenge, *Zacharias Groppe* hastily stepping forth; requested *Scanderbeg* he might be the man: who embracing, commending, and wishing him good fortune, gave him leave: Whom as he was Arming, his companions wished onely the fortune of *Manessi*. He put upon his Armour many rich Jewells, &c. The *Turkish* Champion no sooner was come forth in great bravery, but *Zacharias* bravely mounted, was as ready to charge him: to whom *Ahemaze* said, It was time enough to hasten his death, requesting to talke with him. So propounding the conditions before to *Manessi*, *Zacharias* in no better sort accepted them. Thus agreed, and withdrawing a good distance from each other, they ran together with such force, they they brake their Launces, and were both horse and man overthrowne: who nimbly recovering, assailed each other on foot, with their Scimitars. After many sturdy stroakes without hurt, being so strongly Armed, and their swords being beaten out of their hands. they grapled with their hands: After long struggling, *Zacharias* overthrowing the *Turk*, thrust him into the throat with his dagger and slew him, then cutting off his head with a sword: whereat the Christians shouting, discomfited the *Turks*. *Zacharias* re-

turning with spoil, and presenting to *Scanderbeg* the *Turks* head, was by him afterwards honourably rewarded.

Into this place came *Moses*, and aloud challenged *Scanderbeg* hand to hand: but seeing him ready to come forth, he with shame returned into his Armie. Presently after, both Armies joyned battell, where at first onset, the *Turks* vanguard gave ground, whom *Moses* relieved with supplies, here and there with his presence restoring the battell. Yet the *Epiross* still prevailing, with great slaughter came to the strength of their battaile, *Moses* his best Souldiers, and last refuge: here the *Turks* fought very courageously, and *Moses* warily observing *Scanderbeg*, directed his forces if possible, to slay him: one of whose courageous Souldiers, with his Horsemans staffe, bare him quite backward on his Horse: that the *Turk* thinking him to be slain, greatly shouted: but *Scanderbeg* recovering, and chased herewith, after a furious fight slew the *Turk* with his sword. Divers Souldiers thrusting the *Turks* heads on Speares that were already overthrown: astonished the *Turks*: and with *Scanderbeg*, charged their main battell fiercer than before. *Moses* with his own valour staid the Victory a while: till seeing the ground covered with dead bodyes, and that he must flee or die, fled: in which many of the hindermost were slaine. *Moses*, with 4000, escaped by wayes well known: the rest about 11000 being slaine: not past a 100 Christians were lost, and about 80 wounded. All the *Turks* taken, were tortured to death in revenge of their cruelty at *Belgrade*, except one ransomed that yielded to *Zacharias*: *Scanderbeg* not knowing, or winking thereat.

Moses

Moses laying still on *Epirus* borders, would perswade his discomfited Army, *Scanderbeg* being departed, to follow him into *Epirus*, to surprize the two thousand in Garison at *Dibria*, before they were aware. But the *Turks* now contemning him: were about generally to return home. Wherefore *Moses* returned with them: with a countenance as heavy as of a condemned man, and the *Turks* now disgraced him as fast as they before admired him, speaking all evil of him; yea the Tyrant, though he could blame but his fortune, was so offended, that he had put him to a most cruel death, had not the *Bassas*, &c. perswaded him, that hereby he should alienate others from revolting, or attempting any great matter for him. So he was pardoned, but had little or nothing afterwards allowed him: all which, though he outwardly seemed to bear, yet was inwardly so tormented, that he could neither eat or drink. The Tyrant's measuring all by the event, filled him with indignation; and to return to his Prince, having so ill deserved, he was ashamed. Sometimes *Scanderbeg's* clemency, &c. heartned him to think of return; and by and by his foul treason overwhelmed him with despair: yet, at last, he resolved to submit to *Scanderbeg's* mercy. &c. And getting secretly one evening, out of *Constantinople*, travelling all night, and next day not resting he came at last by long Journies to *Dibria*, whom the Garison beholding full of heavinefs, &c. received him with many teares and embracings, bringing him to *Scanderbeg*, then not far off, who falling at his feet with a girdle about his neck, as deserving death, craved his gracious pardon: which *Scanderbeg* granting, took him up by the hand, embraced him, and kissed him: restoring to him all things of his confiscate, with all promotions as before; and openly proclaiming, none to speak of *Moses* his trespassse.

Mahomet was much grieved, and exceedingly fumed at *Moses* return; for that he had trusted him, and let him

Alip

slip out of his hands, being perswaded it was all but a deceit of *Scanderbeg*. Shortly after, *Mahomet* allured *Amesa* to himself, *Scanderbeg's* Nephew, promising him to be King of *Epirus*: hereby thinking it easier to draw the people from *Scanderbeg* to him of the Prince's blood, than to any stranger. *Amesa* fleeing to clear the Tyrant of suspicion, carried with him his Wife and Children, who though low of stature, and not so perfect of feature, yet of exceeding haughty courage, subtil, &c. painful, courteous, and bountiful: he could notably dissemble his affections, being beloved and honoured of all, next to *Scanderbeg*. He at his first coming, filled not *Mahomet* with great promises, and vain prayes of himself, as had *Moses*; but spake to him; that if he should remember the old injuries against his Majesty, they might seem to come, rather to receive the just guerdon of their deserts, then in hope of preferment, &c. that his Father's Army was betrayed at *Morava*, and *Epirus* by treachery wrested out of his hands: the cause of so much calamity and blood-shed. But this fear was vain, &c. especially seeing his then green years, &c. deceived him. He believed his Uncle, &c. but discretion growing with years, he both perceived his sly perfidious dealing, and that his revolt from him, was more hurtful to himself than any other, that *Scanderbeg* not recovering and enlarging the Kingdom without him, he long expected he should give him at least, some part of his Father's Inheritance: But marrying a Wife, he begot an Heire: assigning unto him a bale corner of *Epirus*, &c. that he could never digest that injury: yet the times iniquity, and the mans insolency, compelled him to smother his thoughts: lest he should entrap him, as lately he did his Sitters sonne, *George Stresie*, whom charging with fained surmises, he hath almost deprived of all. That he would willingly have fled to his Highness feet, &c. but the remembrance of old, and since many injuries,

ries, feared him : But now following his faith and promise, he scarcely had beckoned to him, &c. but he came with such speed, as if he would have flown, that he lingered not, &c. as did *Moses*. Neither had he left any cause of desiring to return again into *Epirus*; having brought unto him whatsoever is dear unto him, &c. pawns as might assure him of the faith of a most doubtful man, that if he had had time to have trussed up his substance, he should have thought it a kind of baseness, to bring any part thereof, especially to him; only by his fidelity he laid down before him, &c. that, he dared not to promise to subdue *Epirus* with 15000 men, &c. that in him he should not want diligence or faithfulness: that for other things concerning this War's event, he was not to be advised by him his unskilful vassall.

This speech seeming free from dissimulation, and his Wife and Children confirming it: *Mahomet* with commendation, honourably entertained him; and upon the Spring's approach, consulted with his *Bassas* of invading *Epirus*: *Manes*'s Counsel herein being best liked. And it was concluded, *Isaac* the Bassa of *Constantinople*, should with 50000 men, be sent; and *Amesa* with him, commanding 5000 Horse, *Amesa* to be proclaimed King of *Epirus*, to perswade the *Epirots* he invaded it more against *Scanderbeg* and for *Amesa*, than to take it to himself. Fame soon filled *Epirus* with the report hereof, adding much more than truth. Wherefore *Scanderbeg* sending without delay for his Caprains, &c. to *Dibria*, declared to them, that hope and fear were the two greatest things God had left to vex and grieve the mindes of men: the first a more comfortable thing, &c. the other of more discretion and safety, &c. Hereupon the former chieftaines have gained greater honour and victories, (by fearing what was to be feared) than other, in shew more hardy. But that might be more truly called discretion, or wholsom policy: from whence none can deny, but the
an-

ancient Discipline of Warre hath risen: that this cherisheth hope it self, &c. that they might perceive, his speech tended to know their opinions, before determination of the order of this Warre. That the Great Bassa, flower of *Europe*, &c. knocketh at their Gates: that he thinketh it better to use policy and wariness, than their wonted courage: that the events of Warre are uncertain, and it was never given to any by inheritance, to overcome: that new occurrents require new correspondents, &c. that Victory is like a Traveller, &c. that he was wont to require only valour in his Souldiers, &c. but the losse received at *Belgrade* hath made him deem farre otherwise of the uncertainty of fortune, &c. that he spake not this to terrifie any; but to admonish and consult with them, how some notable Victory may be achieved without the price of bloud, or other losse, &c. that *Epirus* must needs be soon unpeopled, if they should so desperately only seek such glorious Victories as at *Belgrade*: they must fight so to day, that they may fight to morrow also, that the losse of 50000 is not so much to the *Turks*, as 100 of them to him, &c. yet he would gladly trie the whole fortune in plain field, if he might thereby for ever end all warres against the *Turks*: But when this *Isaac* is gone, another *Isaac* will ere long come in his place. &c. wherefore they must so well divide their Patrimony, as alwayes to have somewhat to content their creditors, when they come upon them. Yet God would no doubt, give an end to these troubles and extremities, &c. then should it be no small pleasure to them, to remember so many labors and dangers past, &c. That perhaps some would say, they are to be overtaken by policy, of which opinion himself was. Then he thought it best to deceive them, when they think they cannot be deceived; that besides their own distrust, by others harms, they have with them his graceless Nephew, and domestical Foe *Amisa*, who will teach them to shun such snares.

as he with them, formerly was wont to lay for them : wherefore they must tower up to the height of some strange policy, whereby some great victory without their bloodshed, seldom chancing, may be obtained : with which device, time and space, with sight of the enemy, should furnish them : that first, all things subject to the enemies fury are to be removed : all people brought into safe places, and their Towns to be strongly garrison'd, with all necessary provision : Besides, who knew whether the Tyrant would follow the Bassa at the heels or not ? That, if all things be thus set in order, and they follow his directions, they shall undoubtedly be victors ; and he will make the *Epirots* more terrible to the *Turk*, than ever it hath been : that every one the while, should take part in this charge, that he will command nothing, which he will not do himself, nor refuse any thing tending to their common honour and profit.

This Speech was so well liked, that many besought him to shew how he would proceed in those Warres, who chearfully answered : it was enough, if they did but believe him, &c. And dispatching his Lieutenants into divers parts, he provided, that all things were conveyed out of the Countrey, in places of refuge, as before at *Amuraths* coming to the Siege of *Croia*. By which time, *Iaac* with *Amesa*, was come into *Epirus* : who sent his Scouts and espials before him, to view every corner, for fear of entrapping. *Scanderbeg* had his Army in readiness to use ; but lay onely with 6000 Horie, in shew, as if he determined to give battel. But the Bassa being in sight, he as discouraged, fled : and to avoid suspicion of some policy therein, not into the Mountains and Woods, but towards *Lyssa*, a Venerian Town on the Sea-Coast, as fleeing thither for refuge. The Bassa glad, sent some Troops to pursue him, and mark the way he took : himself encamping in *Dibriates* plains, and resting his weary Army, expecting his Horsmens return, who certainly report-

ing,

ing, he was fled out of *Epirus*, and no enemy to be seen, they began to rejoyce and triumph: yet grieved to finde nothing to satisfie their desires, cause enough to distrust some great matter, but they supposed it to be done for fear of them. The Bassa consulted now, with his chief Captains, what were best be done? *Amesa* perswading him to stay, expecting a further event. But the greater number said, it was better to go farther, and take the spoil, before the people had conveighed all their substance into safe places, as in *Dibria* they had done. Hereupon the Bassa setting forward early, proclaimed none on pain of death, to break his array, or straggle: yet he first highly commending *Amesa*, and inveighing against *Scanderbeg*, created him in *Mahomet's* name, King of *Epirus*. Marching not farre that night for the great heat, for it was in *July*, he encamping kept diligent watch that night every way, chiefly towards *Lyssum*. Next day, the third after his coming into *Epirus*, he came and encamped that night in *Emathia*.

Scanderbeg gone farre out of their sight, stayed there all that day. And a little before Sun's set, with a few chosen Horse, got up to the Mountains top, whence a man might well discover *Emathia's* plains: where he appointed *Peius Emmanuel* with some Horse to mark the enemies way, and by secret signes, to give notice to the Army, coming after midnight again to the Camp: And presently fetching a compasse, secretly came as neere as possible, to those Mountains, waiting for the enemies least motion. The Bassa early setting forward, came to *Pharsalia's* plains, famous for the great battel between *Cesar* and *Pompey*. Here being some strag'ing Cattel, &c. the enemy fell to seek for booty, spending that day in roaming; and at night, encamping with no great watch, but towards *Lyssum*: carrying *Amesa* in triumph up and down the Camp, as in disgrace of *Scanderbeg*: who perceiving by his espials, which way the enemy lay; and with

with great silence bent his course the same way, till come to Mount *Tumenist*, and encamping at its foot: not farre from which, the Bassa next day, came and encamped, sending *Amesa* with half the Army, to burn and spoil: who about noon, returned with such prey he had, and his Souldiers wearied.

Scanderbeg like a careful Householder, to welcom so great guests, carefully viewing the Mountains and Woods thereabouts, set *Moses* in one place, *Tannusim* in another, and the rest in places convenient: so dividing his forces to make the most terrible shew; for which he placed more Drums, Trumpets, &c. than ever before: Then with forty thousand Horsemen, and as many Foot, speedily marching up rough *Tumenist*, he beheld how the *Turks* lay in the plains. They that lately returned with *Amesa*, were scattered abroad in the fields, resting themselves, &c. the rest were passing away time, with kinds of sport, for 'twas the hottest of the year and day. Where the Bassa lay, they were negligent also, little regarding Horse or Armour, for they thought *Scanderbeg* a great way off, at *Lyssum*. They were then consulting in the Bassaes Pavilion, what to do to content *Mahomet*, and commend themselves: some said, when they had wasted the Countrey with fire and sword, to return: others to march to *Croia*, to prove if the Citizens yielding, would receive *Amesa* as King, else to threaten them with a continual siege, and their Countries utter destruction. *Scanderbeg* from the Mountain, delighted with the sight of the *Turks* security and disorder, encouraged and martialled his Souldiers. But first, he secretly descending with a few, the rest soon following, suddenly slew all the *Turks* Scouts but one: who running swiftly into the Camp, crying out, *Scanderbeg* was comming: the *Turks* scarce believed he was so nigh who following as fast as he could, was in a moment fallen in among the unarmed, greatly slaying, and filling the Camp with sudden tumult.

Amesa

Amesa with some half armed, some on foot, first made head against *Scanderbeg*: the *Bassa* doing what he might to arm and put his men in order. But the Souldiers comming down from the Woods the while, with horrible shouts, and noyse of warlike Instruments; so dismayed the *Turks*, that tearing all *Epirus*, with the adjoining Countries were come, they began to flee on every side.

Amesa cryed aloud telling them, Such vain terrors were not to be feared, &c. and slaying many by his own valour. The *Bassa* coming to aid *Amesa* hardly charged *Moses* with his horse, *Tannusim* and *Emmanuel* with their foot, so encountered him that with great loss he retired to his Trenches.

Amesa courageously withstanding his Uncle, and heartning them on with hope of speedy relief, if they would a while endure their enemies fury; who would presently be discouraged, if not prevailing in their first attempt, the *Turks* were again encouraged. But *Scanderbeg* prevailing on them, and no help come, (for many were slain, arming, coming, and others put to flight) they fled also. *Scanderbeg's* horse made great slaughter in the chase, and took *Amesa*. Before *Scanderbeg* came with 1000 foot and some horse to aid *Moses*, he had put the *Bassa* with his Army to flight, whom *Scanderbeg* following, he looked not behind him till out of *Epirus*. Amongst the many heretaken, was *Mesites* a *Lanzack*, 20 the fairest Ensigns were taken, besides prisoners. Other spoils taken almost incredible. Those who write most of the *Turks* slain reckon 30000 they who least 20000. But 60 Christians were lost. There was a sudden alteration of worldly things, *Scanderbeg* possessing the *Bassa's* rich Pavilion, his Captains enjoying Tents, &c. *Amesa* who the same day overran part of *Amathia*, and was honoured and called a King, is now led bound to his Uncle, as a slave, speechless and confounded, whose misery moved most to
com-

compassion, and forced reares from many.

Scanderbeg (next day) burying the slain *Turks*, that the Country might not be infected; he returned in triumph to *Croia*; whom the Countrey people (from the Woods and *Moutains*) meeting, as others out of Cities, they were full of his praises. The Captives with hands bound behind; went before him, except those carrying the Ensigns. Next, the *Bassa's* Pavillion, supported as in field: Then came *Scanderbeg* with the *Sanzack* & *Amesa* following: for he had humbly obtained not to be carried among the captives. Lastly, the victorious Souldiers every one with a spare horse laden with spoil. So being joyfully received at *Croia*, he brake up his Army. *Amesa* being afterwards condemned to perpetual prison, was sent to *Alphonfus*, to be kept at *Naples*: with whom was sent an honourable present of the spoil.

Amesa, remaining a year there in prison; *Scanderbeg* (*Alphonfus* dying) requested *Ferdinand* his Son to restore him to him; who being imprisoned at *Croia*, but not so straitly as before (for *Scanderbeg* began to forget the injury) at last through his supplication, &c. pardoned his life, restored his liberty, and took him into former favour. But *Amesa*, fearing what would become of his wife and children if he hastily used it, with humble thanks brake his mind to his Uncle: That whereas he had graciously regarded his life and welfare: he ought also to be careful of the life of others: to wit, his wife and children; who (when *Mahomet* should perceive that he was fallen from him) shall pay the guilt of his offence. Wherefore he was by some device to be deceived to preserve those pledges, till some fit occasion to redeem them. That (by his leave) he would flee as breaking prison, making the greatest shew of his wonted loyalty to *Mahomet*, &c. That at length with his wife and children; he might escape from him, wherein he might much help him, if (as grieved) he seemed highly offended with the Keepers; but

in the meantime he would stand him instead of a faithful intelligencer.

Scanderbeg refused not his request, but said; *Amesa*, since we have granted thee life, &c: we will not prohibit thee the preservation of them who may justly call on thee as a debtor for their welfare. Go thy way, proceed, and reform while thou hast space: we now believe thee, and like of this device; thou shalt but deceive thy self, if thou longer follow the barbarous King: when thou shalt return, no greater pleasure; thou shalt be with us as heretofore.

Amesa escaping that night, and the Keepers sharply rebuked, easily periwaded *Mahomet* he was by chance escaped with all else told him; yet, for his ill success, he was not so graced of him as before. But (whether *Amesa* neglected his promise, or found no opportunity) he soon after dyed at *Constantinople*, thought to be poysoned, *Mahomet* no longer enduring the sight of him for the notable overthrow in *Æmathia*: wherewith being much grieved, he justly blamed the Bassaes security; whose credit with him better passed it over than was supposed. *Mahomet* would have employoed all his forces upon *Scanderbeg*: but, besides great wars arising between him and the *Venetians*, he was informed, the Christian Princes were strongly confederating against him; wherefore he, by those sent to redeem the prisoners, & by the *Sanzack*, cunningly periwaded *Scanderbeg* to require peace of him: that if he did but ask it, it would be long obtained. *Scanderbeg* utterly refusing to do it: *Mahomet* sent *Sinam* and *Hamur* each with 14000 into *Macedonia*, for defence of his borders on *Epirus*, but by no means to enter *Epirus*, or provoke *Scanderbeg*, whereby the *Epirots* enjoy'd the fruits of peace almost 2 years: so that old injuries wearing out, those Captains mediating, 2 years peace was concluded betwixt them: in which time *Scanderbeg* notably aided *Ferdinand* in *Apulia* against the *French*.

The time of peace expired, *Mahomet* (all things going well with him) sending new supplies to *Sinam*, commanded him to make war on *Scanderbeg*: who entering *Epirus* with 20000, was utterly overthrown, but few escaping with *Sinam*. Presently after *Asani* was with 30000 vanquished by *Scanderbeg* at *Oerida*, in which battel *Asani* fore wounded, yielded himself to *Scanderbeg*, and afterwards freed by him, *Jussumbeg* following *Asani* with 18000, losing part, saved himself by flight with the rest. After which *Caraza* an old Captain, & *Scanderbeg's* companion in *Amurat's* time, requested *Mahomet* he might prove his fortune against him, assuring him of better success: whose long experience put *Mahomet* in such hope; that he levied 10000 more then *Caraza* at first required; who setting forward with almost 40000, *Scanderbeg* more doubted of the man than his power, and assembled greater forces than usually, sending 2000 expert Soldiers into the enemies Country to lye in ambush, whereby *Caraza* must needs passe; who setting upon 4000 horse *Caraza's* forerunners, they were most part slain, those escaping posting back to bring tydings. *Caraza* was now so discomfited he could willingly have returned; yet for honour sake he came to *Epirus*; where long resolving what to do, he was suddenly assailed by *Scanderbeg*, before he could put his men in order. Then (through a vehement shower) both Armies retired before any great hurt done. It rained three days together, for it was about the latter end of Autumn, *Scanderbeg* not ceasing to trouble the *Turks* camp: so that *Caraza* through the weathers extremity, and *Scanderbeg's* restless attempts, rose, and returned to *Constantinople*; whom *Mahomet* derided, promising so much, and performing so little; yet in some sort commending him, for looking on *Scanderbeg* with lesse losse than other Generals.

Mahomet, not at leisure to imploy such forces where with *Scanderbeg* was to be subdued, proved, if by getting

within him, he might bring him to confusion, wherefore he sent rich Presents and Letters to this purport; that He thought no acquaintance greater, or friendship firmer, than that which grew from long and mutual converse, and living together, as he knew it had been betwixt them. Wherefore remembring all those things, and also what he often did for advancement of his Empire, &c. he could not but embrace him with a singular affection, that nothing could be more welcom to him than to enjoy his company a while. Neither needed he to fear coming to him, &c. that to let passe his Souldiers late breaking into his Kingdom without his knowledge, who was not offended at their overthrow, he was perswaded to joyn with him in a perpetual league of amity. Of which these should be the capitulations, if they seemed to him reasonable: first to suffer his Armies to passe thorow his Kingdom against the *Venetians*: then to have his Sonne *John* in hostage, whom he would use as his natural Child. A free Trade of his Merchants into all parts of his Kingdom; Lastly, Himself to repair to him, and return without fear. In which things he yielding, he promised him in the faith of a King, to grant him and his Kingdom sincere peace, with perpetual tranquillity, &c. *May 10th, 1461.*

Scanderbeg well considering, returned answer, that He wrote of exceeding love, &c. toward him, which should alwayes retain its strength. But since among other conditions of the propounded league, that his forces may have free passage to invade the *Venetians*: it standeth not with equity, or his honour, they being his friends and confederates; and for his Sonne, since he hath no more but him, it is not good to have him taken from him, being as yet, a tender Child, &c. As for the Merchants, he heartily wished a free entercourse indifferently into both their Kingdoms. And for his perswasion of him, boldly

to come unto him : He could not but prayse his honourable disposition, &c. whose perswasion, if other urgent affaires, and his Kingdoms Government, a fierce and restless Nation, would permit, he would follow. Yet he in a more commodious time, would come unto him
May 30. 1461.

Mahomet well perusing these Letters, wrote to him again, that, he understood, he liked of none of the conditions propounded, but that of the Merchants : that, this offer he would accept of, and his other excuses admit of; promising him to keep a sincere peace with him for ever, except he first caused its violation. And that he had signed these Letters with the Imperial Seal, sent unto him by *Mustapha*, thereby confirming it, that he might likewise with his Seal confirm this of his ; That he openly proclaim the same through his Kingdom, as he will cause to be in his ; That of his meer bounty he freely granted and confirmed to him and his Heires, all the right to what he had forcibly taken from his Father in *Albania* and *Epirus* ; and will alwayes account and call him Prince thereof, &c. So bidding him farewell, and render love for love. *June 22. 1461.*

Hereupon, a peace was concluded betwixt them, and solemnly proclaimed to the great joy of many. It was faithfully kept on both sides, till the *Turks* on the frontiers, began to fetch booties out of *Epirus*, of which *Scanderbeg* complaining, *Mahomet* as ignorant, seemed much offended, causing much to be restored : whereby the peace was still continued. A little before this peace, Warres began between the *Turks* and *Venetians*, who being in league with the *Turk*, followed their Traffique, little regarding their Neighbors harms ; But *Mahomet* after the subverting *Constantinople's* Empire, and driving *Thomas* and *Demetrius* out of *Peloponessus*, now *Morea*, began to disturb the *Venetians*, who held then divers strong Towns there : *Josue Mahomet's* Lievtenant having

through a Greek Priest's treachery, surprized. *Argos* and *Omares* first spoyling about *Naupactum*, now *Lepanto*, made all havock about *Methone* and *Corone*. Wherefore the *Venetian* Senators much troubled, deliberated oft in Counsel, what course to take. Some thought it best to try if it might be fairly redressed by Ambassadors to *Mahomet*: others deemed it to no purpose, seeing such outrages could not be done without his knowledge and command. In this diversity of opinions, and nothing yet concluded, at length one *Victor Capella*, a grave Senator, franckly delivered a notable Speech unto them, calling upon them for resolution: Seeing, he said, they must of necessity take up Arms, be they never so loath, &c. and endeavouring to remove their objections, he said, when their Ambassadors not long since came to him, he dallied off the time with deceitful and glosing Speeches, doing such contrary things, as they least hoped, &c. that *Argos* was already taken from them: that *Mahomet*, it was reported, going a second time out of *Peloponessus*, and sounding the passage its depth, himself rode over that Sea, strait betwixt *Boetia* and *Eubœa*, curiously viewing where he might most conveniently passe over with his Army to besiege that City: and that those were manifest signes of Warre, &c. And whereas, some fed themselves and others with vain hopes, that he would never turn his forces upon them, &c. He said, it plainly appeared, that he had already proclaimed open Warre against them by invading, surprizing and killing their people: whether they thought it more expedient to sit still, suffering their Dominions to be taken from them, or by open Warre to make the barbarous King know the greatness of their power? who if suffered prosperously still to run on, people would daily more and more fall to him, hoping to live the better as his friends: wherefore he thought it better, to prefer an honourable Warre, before a doubtful Peace. That delay had hurt many States,

and

themselves most of all, whereby they, in a sort, had betrayed the Greek Empire; for their traffique was much holpen by the *Grecians*, whom they left to themselves: After that, he said, they rejected the Princes of *Peloponesus*, who craved their aid with teares: also suffering the King of *Bosna's* Kingdom to be lost after a humble request of aid, and promise of requital, and himself to be cruelly murdered by the Turks: that for these neglects, they could not escape the infamy of all other Nations in Europe, &c. wherefore it was his opinion, to send into *Hungary*, with a masse of money, to stir up that warlike Nation into a fellowship of that Warre. Also to send 2000 *Italian* Horsemen into *Peloponesus*, to animate the people to revolt from the *Turks*, which they would undoubtedly do, when they should see them so proceed: The great Bishop also was by all meanes, he said, to be drawn as a chief man into the Warre. Hereupon most of the Senate decreeing speedy Warres, sent to the Pope, the King of *Hungary*, and others, to pray their aid. Sending also *Bertholdus* Este with an Army into *Peloponesus*: who soon recovering *Argos*, marched with 15000 men to *Corinth's* strait: where *Alovisius* the *Venetian* Admirall meeting him, and joyning their forces, they in 15 days, with 30000 men, fortified all that *Isthmus* about 5 miles from the *Ionian* to the *Agean* Sea, with a rampier and double ditch, being furthered therein by the old walls ruines: then they besieged. *Corinth* *Bertholdus* being greatly wounded in the assault by a stone, shortly died: yet *Betinus*, who succeeded *Bertholdus*, continued the siege; But *Mahomet* now coming with a great Army to raise the siege, and destroy the newly fortified *Isthmus*, the *Venetians* left the siege, purposing to defend the other; but *Mahomet's* Army being 800000, and at hand, *Betinus* left the place with his small number, retiring to *Neapolis* to keep the Sea-coast. Soon after which, *Mahomet* entring *Peloponesus*, and roaming about

Argos with the people's great slaughter, came to *Nepolis*, terribly assaulting it twice, and was notably, with many slain, repulsed: who departing, wasted and destroyed about *Modon* & *Corone*, assaulting *Juncum*, but with no better success: wherefore winter approaching, he returned to *Constantinople*. After which, the *Venetians* spoiled all that of *Arcadia* subject to the *Turks*: and not long after, *Alovisius* had *Lemnos* delivered him by *Cominius* a famous Pyrat, who taking it from the *Turks*, and distrusting how to keep it, delivered it to the *Venetians*. *Ursatus* being sent soon after, to succeed *Alovisius* their Admirall: *Dandalus* their Land-Generall, while he was scouring the *Egeum*, inconsiderately encountering with the *Turks* Horle, was overthrown and slain with divers of great account, 1500 *Venetians* perishing: and then also *Ursatus* landing in *Lesbos*, and besieging *Mitylene*, lost 3000 men in two assaults, and the *Turks* Fleet being coming for relief, he raised the siege; and sailing into *Eubœa*, passed into *Peloponessus*, where he shortly after died for grief: the *Venetians* sending *Jacobus Lauretanus* in his place, and labouring to draw as many Princes as they could, into the Warre's fellowship. *Pius* 2d at first answered their Ambassadors, He must take away the little *Turk*, before he had to do with the Great, meaning *Sigismund* Prince of *Ariminum*, whom he hated, because he sided with the *French* against the *Arragonians*; yet the *Italian* Warres being well allayed, and *Pius* still solicited, he made great preparation, and giving out, he would personally go unto those Warres, great aid out of *Germany*, *France*, *Spain*, &c. were procured: Volunteers also greatly resorting from all parts of Christendom into *Italy* to that end. And then also through *Paulus Angelus*, Arch Bishop of *Dirrhachium*, the *Venetians* had hardly perswaded *Scanderbeg* to renounce his league, and enter into Arms again, who presently spoiling the *Turks* borders, *Mahomet* fearing (so dreadful was his name) that he

he should be made General of the Christians, wrote to him by his Ambassador to reconcile him if possible: saying, He thought it incredible, that he being a Prince of so heroical perfection, should without any occasion break the league, not long since contracted with him, &c. of which, he knew the *Venetians* were the onely cause on whom he laid, he laid the blame rather than on him, &c. Therefore remembring the old familiarity of their tender years, whilest they lived together at *Andrinople*, he thought himself bound unto *Scanderbeg*, in all courtesie, calling him his good *Scanderbeg*: he most heartily entreated him, that by solemn Oath, they might confirm the former peace, wherewith if it had been established, he said he would not have suffered himself to be so circumvented, or seduced by the *Venetians*. So telling him if he would be advised by him therein, his posterity should alway reign in peace, &c. but if not, it would quickly repent him: and setting forth before him the *Grecians*, Emperours of *Constantinople*, and *Trapezond*, the Princes of *Servia*, and *Rascia* the King of *Bosnia*, and all the Kingdom of *Asia*, with many others vanquished and subjected unto him, he said, he poor Princes his Neighbors, the *Venetians* his seducers could not deliver him from his force and power: wherefore he advised him to follow his counsel, &c. this was written *May 7. 1463.* To which *Scanderbeg* replied at large, saying, his Souldiers had done that in the confines of his Dominions, having complained to him, that *Mahomet's* Souldiers had before done the like in their goods and possessions: wherefore they also upon a military bravery, as was *Mahomet's* phrase, had done one shrewd turn for another: there was no cause why he should think it strange, or blame him; and that he would have restrained his Souldiers, if *Mahomet* would have but taken order for a full restitution of what they had lost, or by punishment have chastized his Souldiers insolency &c. And as for his inveighing against the *Venetians*, in excusing him under colour of old friendship, he did them

wrong

wrong, &c. and whereas he advised him to reject their friendship, it was but lost labour; for, said he, what man is so desperate, or hated of his subjects, that would not chuse rather to erre with that Senate, then to be in right with thee, especially himself, who had long been their confederate, and was of all other, unto them most dear: which *Mahomet* for all that, had no regard of, but breaking the bonds of peace, had spoyled and wasted their Territorie in *Poloponessus*. Neither could he make him afraid, though but a small Prince, with his honourable friends the *Venetians*. And that he made him smile, &c. in falsely usurping to himself the stately Style of Emperour of the World, asking him, if all were his in the lesser *Asia*, what he possessed in *Asia* the greater? nothing, What had he in *Europe*, except *Thrasia Mysia*, part of *Greece*, *Poloponessus*, with the Isle of *Mytelene*? And as for *Africk*, he never set foot therein; and supposing all were his, yet he should cease to boast, and learn if he could, the special, but true examples of humane frailty, &c. Neither, he said, was it he alone that so much stomacked *Mahomet*; for the whole Chivalry and glory of the Christian Common-weale was in Arms, and comming against him with all their force, &c. from which, whether he could escape or not, he knew not; yet if following his advise, he casting off *Mahometane* superstition, would embrace the faith of Christ, he might make his name and Empire of great, greater, &c. *Scanderbeg* about this time receiving letters from the *Pope*, that he with Christian Princes, would without delay, come into *Epirus* with a strong Army, most joyfully denouncing war against the *Turk*, brake into his Dominion, burning and destroying before him, and returning laden with spoil.

Mahomet likewise perusing *Scanderbeg's* Letters, and hearing of the late spoil, became exceeding melancholy, which increased, as not seeing the wonted chearfulness in his Men of Warre; yet he levied a great Army fortifying his strong holds, &c. Sending also *Seremet Bassa* with

with 14000 men to attend onely on *Scanderbeg*, upon *Epirus* borders: who accordingly came unto *Ocrida*, now *Alchria*, in *Macedonia*, lodging some in the City, the rest in convenient places thereabouts.

Scanderbeg not ignorant hereof, marched in the night towards *Ocriba* with 12000 men, laying in ambush three miles off, and on break of day, sent out 500 Horse under two expert Captaines, commanding them, if the Enemy came forth to fight, they should retire as if they fled, so to traine him on: which was so well performed, that the *Bassa* with all his power was drawn to the place where *Scanderbeg* lay: who rising suddenly up, in the battell were slaine 10000 *Turks*: the Treasurer with 12 of great note being taken, and being brought bound, *Scanderbeg* ransom'd them for 40000 Duckats. And returning with triumph, he expected the Armies comming out of *Italy*; But Pope *Pius* being on the way with a great Armie, and come to *Ancona* on the Sea side, whither *Christopher* Duke of *Venice* came to him with 10 Gallies, he sickning with a Fever, died in 1464: whereupon the Armie was dispersed, to the exceeding grieve of many Princes, and no lesse joy of the *Turks*. *Laurentius*, his yeare being expired: *Victor Capella* was sent Generall of the *Venetians* at Sea, who sayling out of *Eubœa*, soon took the City *Aulis* in *Peloponesus*, and *Larsum*, with the Isle of *Himber*. Then, he by night surpris'd *Athens*, now *Sethine*, carrying away all the people as Prisoners, with his rich spoile into *Eubœa*, where being perswaded, that if he but shewed himself before *Patras* the Christians there would deliver it him, he departing thence, landed 4000 foot under *Barbaricus*, and 200 horse under *Ragius*; who being come within a mile of *Patras*: and many of them scattering abroad, seeking for pillage: the *Turks* Garrisons setting on them with Horse, easily overthrew them: *Barbaricus* being slaine, and *Ragius* taken and empail'd alive upon a sharpe stake: Scarce 1000 of them
all

all escaping to the Gallies. *Vittor* was herewith greatly discomfited, yet, in hope, few dayes after he attempted *Patras* againe, but losing 1000 of his men, and the rest fleeing to the Fleet, he departed with great dishonour: suddenly dying in *Eubœa*, oppressed with melancholly.

The *Venetians* being much troubled with these hard proceedings, solicited *Matthias* King of *Hungary* to joine in league with them, and to take up Armes against the common Enemy: offering him a great summe, besides a large yearly Pension; for which he should defend all of theirs betwixt the *Rhetian* Alpes, and the *Adriatique*, against *Turkish* invasion.

This *Matthias* was the younger Son of *Huniades*: whose elder Brother *Uladislaus* having for injuries done to him and his Brother, slaine *Ulricus*, Count of *Cilia*, Uncle to *Ladislaus* King of *Bohemia* and *Hungaria*, was afterwards most cruelly executed in *Bohemia* by the said *Ladislaus*, *Matthias* being kept in Prison, and, had not young *Ladislaus* been taken away by untimely death, had been partaker of his Brother's fortune: But he dying, *Matthias* for love to *Huniades*, was, while imprisoned at *Prague*, by a military election, chosen King of *Hungary*, where he reigned 38 years: and was a far greater terrour to the *Turks* than his Father, notably enlarging that Kingdome, &c. And forgetting all unkindnesse of the *Venetians*, who had refused often to aide the *Hungarian* Kings in like case, saying, they received no harme from the *Turk*, &c: he undertook the protection of their aforesaid territory: and passing over *Danubius* at *Belgrade*, next Spring, with a puissant Armie, he razed the *Turks* Forts thereabouts: and wasting *Servia*, returned laden with spoil and 20000 Captives: maintayning great Warrs both with *Mahomet*, and his Son *Bajazet*, wherein he most commonly returned victorious.

Mahomet

Mahomet now in revenge of *Scanderbegs* proceeding and *Seremet* his late overthrow, sent *Balabannus* (an *Epirot* borne, and from a Captive Boy as he was keeping Cattell, brought up in servitude among the *Turks*) with 15000 Horse, and 3000 Foot to invade *Epirus*: who being the first that gained the top of the Wall at the taking of *Constantinople*, was afterwards of *Mahomet* greatly esteemed, and coming to *Alshria*, on *Epirus* frontiers, he sent Presents to *Scanderbeg*, as if he desired peaceably to lye upon the borders; yet waiting to do him the greatest mischief. *Scanderbeg* seeing into his malice, rejecting his gifts, sent him a Spade, Mattock, and Flaile, &c: in derision, willing him to follow his Fathers trade of life, &c: which *Balabannus* taking in very ill part, he determined to set on *Scanderbeg* suddenly in the night, who lay not far off; but he knowing thereof by his Scouts, set forward to meet him: which *Balabannus* perceiving, stayed, encamping within two miles of him: who lay in the valley *Valchal*, but with 4000 Horse, and 1500 Foot, though choise Souldiers, they thus laying in view of each other, *Scanderbeg* cheerfully encouraging his Souldiers, straitly charged them, if the Enemy should flee, or retire, they should not pursue them beyond the hills straits, whereby the Enemy lay, guessing he would leave an Ambush in the rough and wooddy hill adjoyning. Then retiring unto a Rising, a good way behind his former place, for the grounds advantage, if the Enemy should follow to fight; *Balabannus* thinking verily he fled for feare, set forward in such haste, that being come where *Scanderbeg* stayed, his men were greatly disordered. *Scanderbegs* Souldiers receiving them with great courage, there was a fierce battell a great while doubtfull, with much slaughter on both sides; yet the *Turks* being at last put to flight, they were with much slaughter chased to those Straits where *Scanderbeg* had commanded his men to stay; but some of his chiefe Captaines unadvisedly pursuing them, they were

were beset with their Enemyes arising out of Ambush; and after a long desperate fighting, taken and brought to *Balabannus*, who forthwith sent them to *Constantinople*. *Mahomet* when he heard of their taking, being reported with joy to have said, Now I am sure *Scanderbeg's* strength is broken. The chief taken were, *Moses* of *Dibria*, next to *Scanderbeg* himself, with 7 other, every one of them able to conduct an Army: all in *Epirus* so lamented this losse, that the victory was not accounted of. *Scanderbeg* presently sent to *Mahomet*, requesting him he might redeem them by exchange, or for what rancome he pleased; but he refusing to do either, after all despightful usage of them, slew them quick by little and little, they dying after 15 daies miserable torment: whereof *Scanderbeg* hearing, entred the *Turks* Dominion with fire and sword, sparing nothing he could by any means destroy.

Mahomet highly commending *Balabannus*, sent him divers rich gifts, with command to repair his Army and proceed; which *Balabannus* diligently performing, lying at *Alchria*, sent *Scanderbeg* again divers presents, as desirous to live in peace by him: which *Scanderbeg* rejecting, *Balabannus* corrupted *Scanderbeg's* Scouts with rewards (some being *Balabannus* kinsmen unknown to *Scanderbeg*); whereby he had oppressed him in the night at *Orincheum*, if *Scanderbeg* going about the Camp, had not perceived his coming by the horses noyse; wherefore with wonderful speed, he putting his Army in order, after a great fight put him to flight, slaying most of his Army in the chase, *Balabannus* with a few hardly escaping; which when *Mahomet* understood, he doubted whether to send another General; but considering *Balabannus* to be right valiant, knowing well the Countrey, and *Scanderbeg's* mortal enemy, he committed unto him 14000 horse, and 3000 foot to invade again *Epirus*, promising to make him King thereof if he subdued *Scanderbeg*; who coming to
Achaia,

Alchria, sent a third time Presents, which *Scanderbeg* scornfully refused; and lying at *Alchria* three Moneths, he determined to adventure on him by plain force; wherefore marching into the Plains nigh *Sferigrade*, *Scanderbeg* with 8000 horse and 1500 foot, refused not there to fight with him; and being come to handy blows, the *Epirots* fought like raging Lyons; *Scanderbeg* with skill, care and valour, performing all the parts of a worthy Chieftain; But while he thus fought, his horse being slain and falling under him, he sorely bruised his Arm, whereof he long complained. The *Turks* also seeing him down, pressed fiercely to kill him, but he was soon rescued and remounted: forthwith slaying *Saltman* a great *Turkish* Commander hand to hand; whereupon the *Turks* retiring, after a while plainly fled, few with *Balabannus* escaping through the pursuies execution; who returning to *Mahomet*, he was sharply rebuked for these great overthrows; But the Kings fury being over, *Balabannus* cunningly excusing himself, told *Mahomet*, It was in vain to send such small Armies; but if he would send two Captains with a puissant Army, (who dividing the same, might at once enter in several places, and one not to accept of battel except the other were at hand) he by their thus enclosing *Scanderbeg*, promised him an assured victory; which well fitting *Mahomet's* humour, he commissioned *Balabannus* to levy what Army he thought sufficient, and chuse as his associate, which of his Captains he pleased; who, choosing 40000 good Souldiers, and *Jacob Arnanth*, (born also in *Epirus*) for his companion, he sent him with 16000 by the way of *Thessaly* and *Grecia*, himself taking the nearer way through *Thrase* and *Macedonia* into *Epirus*, encamping in *Valchal* valley with 20000 horse, and 4000 foot. *Scanderbeg* having intelligence from the *Turks* Court, of all *Balabannus* his intent, had provided 8000 horse and 4000 foot in readiness, sending out three espials, to discover in what order *Balabannus* lay; one of whom

whom being his Kinsman, perswaded the other two, in hope of reward, to go over to *Balabannus*, discovering all they knew of *Scanderbeg*; who (his espials not returning) presently rode himself forth with 5 lusty Souldiers to discover their manner of lying; who prying into every bush and thicker as they went, descryed certain horsemens lying in secret ambush to intercept them; yet so that they coming to handy-stroaks, *Scanderbeg* and his followers were glad to flee into the next wood, the *Turks* closely following them. A great old tree being fallen a crosse the way, *Scanderbeg* with one of his men leaped over it: the other 4 not being able, turning and fighting were slain; one of the *Turks* leaping the tree, followed *Scanderbeg*: who seeing but one turned and slew him, the other *Turks* returning, and *Scanderbeg* with one man to his Camp; who speedily made ready to go against *Balabannus*, before *Arnaub's* coming, and came with speed into the valley of *Valchal*, having divided his Army into 4 squadrons between *Tamfus*, *Zacharias*, *Peicus*, and himself, and sending some Harquebussers and Archers before to provoke the enemy, *Balabannus* would not stir from before his Tents, expecting the coming of his fellow; which *Scanderbeg* perceiving, drew nearer and nearer to his Trenches, and by continual skirmishing with those he sent out, dared and braved him, as if he would by force have set him out; whereat the *Turks* chafing, were ready to rise against their General, because he suffered them to be so disgraced. *Balabannus* deferring time what he could, and his fellow not coming, the *Turks* also oft ready to issue out without his direction, went out to battel, himself leading the left wing, betwixt whom and *Scanderbeg* was a fierce fight, many falling on both sides; in other places they stood almost as lookers on, expecting the force of their Generals; whereupon *Scanderbeg* (the *Turks* having before given ground) drawing some Troops out of the right wing, and fetching a compass charged the side of the

Enemies

enemies Army; and withdrawing, speedily set on the back of the left wing: so that the *Turks* there fiercely charged before and behind, fell in other places with a great slaughter. *Balabannus*, withstanding as long as he could, and now become desperate, fled out of the battel. The rest fleeing also (except a few escaping, with *Balabannus*) were most either slain or taken.

Scanderbeg had scarce divided the spoyle; but he heard from his Sister, then at *Postella*, that *Arnauth* was entred by the way of *Belgrade*, burning and destroying, and encamping in the lesse *Tirannes* Plains; wherefore he presently setting forward with his cheattful Souldiers, soon came where the enemy lay. *Jacup* having removed his Camp into a corner of the Plain, *Scanderbeg* encamped in *Jacup's* former place: where resting one day, next morning, he cast before the enemies Trenches divers of the late slain *Turks* heads, shewing them divers prisoners, which *Jacup* beholding despairingly said; I see the evil hap of *Mahomet*: *Scanderbeg* sending forth 500 horse to skirmish, *Jacup* (seeing his fellow not now to be looked for) came readily into the field, beginning a fierce battel; but *Scanderbeg* singling *Jacup* out, slew him with his own hand; whereupon the *Turks* fleeing, were most slain or taken: and those that escaped, were by the Countrey people in their stragling, either slain or taken. *Scanderbeg* in these two battels, loosing about 1000, but the *Turks* 24000 and 6000 taken, the *Epirots* being so weary of slaughter, that *Scanderbeg* (being told *Balabannus* might be surprized as fleeing but with one horse Cornet) said, O let some of our enemies live to report their own slaughter and our victory! Presently after he entring into the *Turks* frontiers, and roaming at his pleasure, made havoc of all in his way. Then returning to *Croia*, he brake up his Army.

In the mean time, *Mahomet* procuring two *Turks* with

great rewards to kill *Scanderbeg*, they coming to him seemed so to detect *Mahomet's* Tyranny and Superstition, that they were reputed to be what they would be accounted: and learning the Christian Principles were baptized; but these Traytors (while watching an opportunity) falling at variance, let some words fall whereby they were suspected by some present; whereupon being examined, they at last confessed the design, and were presently executed.

Mahomet, understanding what was befallen to *Balabannus* and *Jacup*, became almost frantick; and, by his *Basla's* advice, resolved to go in person with such an Army as should for ever end his wars in *Epirus*, rayning 200000 men; whereof *Scanderbeg* being advertized, fortified all strong Holds, especially *Croia*: leaving *Balibazar Perduci* Governour thereof, and conveighing the people into places of refuge, he left nought for the *Turks* to prey upon, as he did before at *Amuraths* coming. *Balabannus* entring *Epirus* with 80000 horse, after two days ranging, sat down before *Croia*; on whom, *Perduci* made many brave sallies, *Mahomet* encamping there also; who summoning the City upon his own conditions, the Governour returned nothing but continual shot for answer; whereupon, he planting Ordinance for battery, cast other new ones there, rather to terrifie the Defendants than for any great hope of taking the City by force. *Scanderbeg* the while, lying abroad in the Woods and Mountains with a small Army cut off the *Turks* forragers &c. and breaking into one quarter or other of their Camp by night with great slaughter, suffered them not to rest in quiet; wherefore *Mahomet*, seeing no hope, and fearing his Fathers mischance; leaving *Balabannus* with 8 expert Companies under him, with a great part of his Army to continue the siege, departed with the rest to *Constantinople*, and by the way took some small forts: also by fair promises corrupting the Governour of *Chidna*; and, his faith given, that all the Souldiers lying there,

corrupting the Governour of *Chidna*, being 8000, and people, should safely depart, it was delivered unto him; but having them in his power, he cut man, woman and child in pieces, to *Scanderbeg's* great grief and weakening, who never received such a losse before; and finding himself unable to relieve *Croia*, his Souldiers being sore wasted, and his enemies warily encamping, he sent to the *Venetians* and other confederate Princes, praying their aid at this his need, &c. all which promised him succours. Also, he passing disguised into *Italy*, came to *Rome*, craving Pope *Paul 2* his aid; who being honourably entertained, yet obtained nothing of what he came for: only his Treasurer had 3000 Ducats at departure; who returning into *Epirus*, found all the promised aid ready (chiefly the *Venetians* most drawn out of 4 of their Garrisons) so that he had 13400 choise Souldiers, wherewith marching towards *Croia*, he suddenly came upon *Jonima* with some Troops by night, who was bringing supply to his brother *Balabanus*, taking *Jonima* with his Son *Hedar*; whom he shewed in bonds to *Balabanus*. Then returning to his Army, and so to *Croia*, he drove the *Turks* from the Mountain *Cruina*: which *Balabanus* seeing, he riding with some Troops even to the Cities gates, perswaded them to yield, making them promises in his Masters name; but they falling out, and forcing him to retire, he enraged came upon them with a fresh charge to drive them into the City; but being shot quite thorow the throat he ran as fast as he could to his Camp, where presently falling from his horse he dyed. The *Turks* herewith discouraged, and with *Scanderbeg's* coming, rising that night, silently retired to *Tirana* Plain, about 8 miles off. *Scanderbeg* entering their Tents, found store of victuals, which he conveying into *Croia*, followed himself in great triumph, to the besieged's joy whom he both comended & rewarded, and sending some Companies to take the strait passages out

of *Epirus*: the *Turks* by 2 Messengers offered to deliver up their Horses and Arms, so they might depart with life; which *Scanderbeg* propounding to his Captains, himself at last answered, That as they came into his Countrey without his command: so they should not by his leave depart; Whereupon, the *Turks* in the dead of that same night brake thorow those straits by force, yet not without their great losse; for whose escape, the Souldiers greatly murmuring, were hardly appeased. But *Scanderbeg* recovering all places taken from him, and putting *Mahomet's* Souldiers therein, to the sword, he brake up his Army except 2000 Horse and 1000 Foot to defend his frontiers.

Mahomet hearing of this evill successe, so fretted and grieved, that he could neither eat, drink, nor take rest for a season. At last he resolved to go again next Spring, with a most puissant Army; whereof *Scanderbeg* hearing, provided for him as formerly; who being entred *Epirus*, first repaired or re-edified the ruinous City *Salmes*, leaving a strong Garrison to trouble that part of the Countrey, Thence he marching to *Dirrachium*, (now *Durazzo*) a City not on the Sea-coast, possessed by the *Venetians*, thought to have taken it unprovided; but (it being strongly fortified both by the *Venetians* and *Scanderbeg*), he having to his great losse in vain attempted it, suddenly rising came again before *Croia*, (the chief cause being a perswasion that *Scanderbeg* was in *Dirrachium*, because he had seen some of his men in his assailing thereof) offering at first, great things to the Citizens if they would yield: otherwise, threatening all warlike calamities, vowing not to depart till he had it; he receiving no answer, but from the Cannon or brave Salleys: *Scanderbeg* also every night molesting his Camp; wherefore rising with his Army, he marched to *Kedon*, not far from *Dirrachium*, and in spight razed *Chintrili* which *Scanderbeg* had begun to build.

Then

Then seeking those *Epirots* retired into the Mountaines, he was by them with great losse repulsed. *Scanderbeg* at his heels daily cutting off part of his Armie. So at last despairing of any good to be done, he returned full of discontent to *Constantinople*.

After this, *Scanderbeg* riding to view the state of his Kingdome, came to *Lyssa*, a City of the *Venetians*, to confer with the *Legate* and other Princes, as in generall, so how to take *Valmes*, which much troubled that part of *Epirus*; but he there falling sick of a Feaver, and sending for his confederates, and the *Venetian* Ambassadors, and his Wife and Son, after discoursing of his troublesome life, and exhorting them, in concord to stand in defence of their Religion, Country, and Liberty, commending his Wife and Son with the Kingdome to the *Venetians* tuition according to the Articles of confederation; willing them after his death to passe into *Apulia* quietly, to live on possessions there held by King *Ferdinands* gift, after prayer, departed *January 17. 1466.* about 63 years old, and reigning about 24 years. His death was generally lamented, chiefly of the *Venetians* and *Albanian* Princes, who had lost their Watchman and Champion: all his Subjects bewailing him as the onely stay of the Common-weale, &c. He was royally interred in *Lyssa's* Cathedrall: which City the *Turks* about 9 years after, taking, in the way of the Siege of *Scodra*: they digging up his bones, those who could get never so little thereof, set it in silver or gold, hanging it about their necks, or otherwise wearing, thinking thereby, to have such good hap as *Scanderbeg* had while he lived.

The *Hungarians* and *Venetians*, most time of these Wars, busied the *Turks*; for *Matthias* entring *Bosna* overthrew the *Turks* frontier forts, and driving them out till he came to *Jaziga*, or *Jaitze* the chiefe City, at length took it, wresting all that Kingdome out of their hands: whereupon, *Mahomet* hardly besieging *Jaziga*, it was va-

liantly defended, till *Mathias* comming to its reliefe, so troubled the *Turks* Campe on one side, and the besieged with sallies on the other, that the *Turk* stealing away with his Armie by night into *Servia*, left his Tents and great Ordinance for batle (which the *Turks* Histories report, he cast into the River) whom *Mathias* following into *Servia*, and taking part thereof, united it with *Bosna*, to *Hungarie*. After which *Mahomet* had no great stomack to provoke the *Hungarians*: *Mathias* being now as dreadful to the *Turks* as the name of his Father *Huniadas*.

Then also the *Venetians* scouring the Seas, did great harme to the *Turk*, by landing in severall places: amongst others *Nicholas Canalis* succeeding *Laurentanus*, comming into *Salonichi* Bay, burnt divers Townes and Villages by the Sea side. Then returning into *Peloponessus*, he in despite of all the *Turks* could do, fortified *Legostitium*, where leaving a strong Garrison, he returned into *Eubœa*: and soon after, sayling along *Macedonia* and *Thracia*, surprized *Enus* upon the River *Morizza's* mouth, taking its spoile, and carrying away 2000 Captives into *Eubœa*. Then likewise the *Venetians* ayding *Duchaine* against his Brother *Alexius*, striving for *Zadrina's* principality, greatly overthrew the *Turks* neer *Drino* River in *Epirus*, who came in *Alexius* quarrel.

Mahomet perceiving that *Eubœa* Island, now *Nigropont*, 10 miles long, abounded with Corne, Wine, Oyle, Fruir, and Wood for shipping, and, separated from *Beotia* with a narrow strait of the Sea, was for its commodious situation and strength, the chiefe place whence the *Venetians* wrought him all these wrongs, resolved to imploy all his forces both by Sea and land for the gayning thereof; wherefore assembling a mighry Armie, and sending *Mahomet* Bassa with 300 Galleys, and other small Vessels well furnished into *Eubœa*: himself marched through *Achaia*, till he came over against *Chalcid*. The *Venetian* Admirall, finding himself too weak for the *Turks* Fleet, re-

returned towards *Sciros* : But the *Bassa* comming out of *Hellasponus* Straits, came without let to *Enboa* : where taking and razing *Stora* and *Basilicon*, he went directly to *Chaleis* : of whose smaller Vessels *Mahomet* making a bridge over the Strait, passed to the City *Chaleis*, Rich, Populous, and very strong, besieging it round by Sea and land : where, with his battery, faire breaches by the chiefe Cannoneers giving the *Turks* by signes, knowledge where the Wallis were weakest, being the sooner made, the Traitor, it being perceived, was executed ; Yet, what he beate downe by day, they repaired by night. Thus for 30 dayes, the City being defended, to the *Turks* great losse in their sharpe assaults ; the *Venetian* Admirall, comming in view of the City, shewed as if he would give the *Turks* battell : Wherefore *Mahomet*, (its reported) was about to goe over into the maine with his Armie, lest the *Venetians* breaking the bridge, should have shut him in : which its thought he might have done, if he would have adventured, as his Captaines earnestly requested. But comming to an Anchor, he moved not : which the *Turk* perceiving, brought on his men to the Wall's breaches, promising them the Cityes spoile, &c : whereof himself said, he would be an eye witnesse. Whereupon the *Turks* furiously assaulting, the defendants made such slaughter of them, that the ditches were filled, and the breaches made up with their dead bodys ; but *Mahomet* still sending in fresh supplies, this dreadfull assault was maintained a day and a night without ceasing : who twice winning the breaches, were bearen out againe. At length the defendants being most slain or wounded, and the rest wearied, retiring into the Market place, sold their lives deare to the *Turks* : among whom were found many dead women, who chose rather to die in defence, than to fall into the *Turks* hands.

Mahomet, although Lord of the City, yet losing 40000 in the siege, put all men there alive to most cruel death, especially the *Italians* with exquisite torments. *Eriens*

the Governour fleeing with a few into the Castle, on promise of safe departure delivered up the same, but having them in his power, the Tyrant cruelly murdered them: *Erigus's* Daughter being presented to *Mahomet* as the mirror of beauty: when he could not prevaile on her by flattering words, &c: to consent unto his desire, threatened her with death, torture, &c: But the constant Virgin resolutely denying, he commanded her forthwith to be slaine. And the horrible cruelty committed by the *Turks* at the taking of *Chalcis* passeth credit: the rest of the Island without resistance yielding to the *Turkish* slavery. This happened in 1470. *Canalis* the City being lost; fearing to be set on by the *Turks*, dishonourably returning to *Venice*, he was by the Senate imprisoned, and afterwards with his family banished to *Utinum*.

Mahomet and his Fleet soone after returning, the *Venetians* attempted a sudden surprize of *Chalcis*; but the Garrison there left, was so strong, that retiring to their Gallies, they forsook *Eubœa*.

Petrus Mocenicus being chosen Admirall instead of *Canalis*: the *Venetians* solicited Pope *Sixtus* the 4th, the King of *Naples*, the King of *Cyprus*, and the Master of *Rhodes*, to joyne with them against the common Enemy: which they promised. They sent also *Zenns* to *Usun Cassanes*, King of *Persia*, to incite him against the *Turk*, who next year taking up Arms, had with him mortall Warres, who not ignorant of these things: and knowing how he had offended Christian Princes by his cruelty at *Chalssis*, lay a while still at *Constantinople*, as if desirous to live in peace, whereby, as he wisht, nought worth speaking was that year attempted against him: who also requested the *Persian* King, if it were onely but for community of the *Mahometan* Religion, to withdraw taking up Arms in the Christians Cause, though otherwise he regarded not Religion; but *Zenns* so wrought with *Usun Cassanes*, that he

he told the *Turks* Ambassadors, he neither could nor would longer endure the *Turkish* Kings injury : and that having made a league with the Christian Princes, he would to his power, perform whatever he had promised : so dismissing them discontented, as were the *Persian* Ambassadors before from the *Turkish* Court, touching the Emperour of *Trapezond*.

The yeare following, 1472. *Mocenicus* arriving in *Lesbos*, did great harm : and passing into the lesser *Asia*, sore spoiled about *Pergamus*. Then landing again at *Cnideus*, he took a great booty : so returning, having exceedingly hurt all along the Sea-Coast, laden with spoil to *Peloponessus* : on whose Coast, he met with *Richiensis*, with seventeen Gallies from King *Ferdinand* of *Naples* : who joyning their Fleets in one, landed at *Modon* in *Peloponessus* : where refreshing, and new victualling, they putting to Sea, landed in *Asia* : whom the Country *Turks* encountering, they put them to flight, pillaging for four dayes, store of rich booty, especially *Turkie* Carpets : thence sailing to *Halicarnassus*, a part of *Caria*, they took a wondrous spoil : there coming to them the Bishop of *Modrussa* with twenty Gallies from the Pope, joyfully welcomed : also two Gallies from the great *Rhodian* Master. With these 85 Gallies, they sailed to the Isle *Samos*, over against *Ephesus*, then desolate, to consult of further proceeding. Looking thence, they landed at *Attalia*, the Metropolis of *Pamphilia*, of great Traffique : in whose Suburbs, finding store of rich Commodities from *Egypt* and *Syria*, taking what pleased them, they burnt the rest with the Suburbs ; and beginning to besiege the City, not without great losse to be taken, they departed, and running along *Pamphylia*, burning and destroying, they returned to *Rhodes* : where meeting an Ambassador from *Usun-Cassanes*, for great Ordinance, they

they understood by him that his Master was preparing against the *Turk*: *Mahomet* the while, no lesse requiring the *Venetians*; for *Scanderbeg* being dead, he much prevailed on the Princes of *Epirus* and *Albania*, &c. but the Fleet from *Rhodes* landed in the *Myndians* Countrey: returning to the Isle *Naxos* with great spoil, whence *Ferdinand's* Gallies, the year farre spent, returned home with much spoil; but *Mocenicus* with the *Legate*, returning into *Asia*, took *Smyrna* with its spoyle, setting it on fire, much hurting also about *Clazomene* not farre off. So, laden with *Asia's* spoils, *Mocenicus* returned to *Modon*, and the *Legate* into *Italy*.

Mohomet through the insatiable desire of Sovereignty, had not long before under pretence of a friendly parley, circumvented the King of *Mysia*, cruelly putting him to death, and, subduing his Kingdom, slew all of his bloud. Then invading *Caramania* where *Pyramet* and *Cassambet* reigned, he drove them both out: *Pyramet* fleeing to *Uzun-Cassanes*: *Cassambet* seeking to recover his Inheritance, was besieging some Towns on the Sea-coast, which taken, would draw in all the rest of the Kingdom: who requesting *Mocenicus*, now on *Cilicia's* coast, he landing some Companies and great Artillery under *Victor*. So battered *Sichinum's* walls, that the *Turks* yielding it up, he delivered it to *Cassambet*: also *Corycus*, which he took, then besieging *Seleucia* upon *Orontes*, about five miles from the Sea: the Governour discouraged at the great Artillery, delivered it to *Victor*: who restored it to *Cassambet*, who thus re-brought into his Kingdom, much thanked the Admiral, promising, himself and Brother to be alwayes the *Venetians* friends.

Mocenicus departing, harried all along the Sea-coast of *Lycia*: sailing also into *Cyprus*, to appease an insurrection against the Queen, left to the *Venetians* protection by her dead Husband: which he quietting, *Triadamus*

appointed Admiral, being come into *Peloponessus*, he hastning thither to give up his charge, returned to *Venice*.

About which time, *Usun Cassanes*, who of a small Prince, was accounted amongst the greatest Monarchs then living, began to warre upon *Mahomet*. He was the Sonne of *Tachretin*, who with other poor Princes, were exiled by *Bajazet* the first his violence, and was again restored by *Tamerlane*: *Usun Cassanes* obtaining a small territory in *Armenia*, by *Tachretin's* death. Wherefore not contented, he wrung one province from this Prince, another from that, and thrusting some quite out of all; thus soone getting a great part of *Armenia* into his hands: So that *Calo Joannes* the *Trapezond* Emperour, whose stile exceeded his power, fearing *Mahomet's* greatness, gave him *Despina* his onely Daughter in Marriage: agreeing that *Usun Cassanes* (after *Calo's* death, and of *David* his Brother) should in his Wives right, enjoy *Pontus*: *Despina* freely to exercise her Christian Religion: by whom he had a Daughter *Martha*, Mother of *Hyssmael* the *Sophi*. *Usun Cassanes*, now ceasing not daily to encroach, at length began to lay hold on part of the *Persian Kings* Dominion, in *Armenia*. *Zenza* then reigning in *Persia*, in a sort commanded *Usun* not to come within the bounds of his Dominion, threatening (otherwise) to turn his forces upon him: wherewith *Usun* offended, commanded the Ambassadors speedily to depart, and tell their Master, he would shortly come and debate the matter with him face to face. The *Persian King* moved, set forward an Army, thought sufficient to subdue a far greater Prince. *Usun Cassanes* (though he had scarce one man to 10) fearing nothing; set forward by great journeyes to meet them: and with whom joyning battell after a long and cruel fight,

fight, overthrew them with a great slaughter. *Zenka* raising a far greater Army (the very strength of his Kingdom) set forward in person, and joyning battell with *Usun*, the *Persians* were againe put to flight, more being slaine than were in the first Army: he slaying *Zenka* with his own hand, and taking *Cariasupha's* Son Prisoner: whom to please the *Persians*, he honoured with the Title of King, calling himself the *Persian* Protector. But having under colour of a peaceable Governour gotten the Regall City *Tauris* with the rest: he secretly dispatching the titular King (the last of *Tamerlaines* posterity) took on himself the highest place. *Mahomet* the while, having scornfully rejected his Ambassadors and presents, and slaine *David* the *Trapezond* Emperour his aliance: turning *Pontus* into a *Turkish* Province which *Usun Cassanes* of right claimed: after *Usun* was surely seated, through the remembrance of the former injuries, suggested by *Despt-na*, and the *Venetian's* solicitation; he raising a great Army and passing toward *Pontus*, was nigh *Euphrates*, encountered by *Mustapha*, *Mahomet's* eldest Son, and *Amurath* the *Romanian* Bassa, whom *Mahomet* had sent out of *Europe* to joyne with *Mustapha*, who were by *Usun Cassanes* over-thrown, *Amurath* with 30000 *Turks* being slaine; *Mustapha* and the rest saving themselves by flight.

Mahomet being exceedingly troubled thereat; leaved a mighty Army of 320000 men: *Usun Cassanes* Army being nothing in number inferiour, which two *Mahometans* meeting neer *Armenia's* Mountaines: at the first encounter a *Turkish* Bassa was slaine with 40000 *Turks*: wherewith *Mahomet* was so daunted that he had retired, had not some of his most valiant Captaines sharply reproved him, &c: who now withdrew his Army into a strait between

between two Mountains, fortifying the front with his Carriages, behind which were his Ordnance, on either side of his Archers. The *Persians* encouraged, comming on without fear, were all ere they were aware, on the mouth of the *Turks* Artillery, which breaking their ranks, took away a number of them. Besides, the *Persian* Horses through the unacquainted report of the Ordnance, were not to be ruled: wherefore *Mahomet* fiercely charged them with his Horsemen, being by themselves now out of order: yet the *Persians* slew many *Turks*; but they were at last forced to flee: wherein a great number were slain, and their Tents taken; whose flight, *Zeinall Usun's* eldest Sonne labouring to stay, was slain: forty thousand *Turks*, not above one thousand *Persians* fell.

Mahomet, contented with this dear-bought Victory, returned homewards: and *Usun* (leaving another Sonne with his Army to defend *Armenia*) to *Tamris*. But whilst the Christian Princes expected the event of these Warres, they suddenly confirmed a peace, excluding the Christians. This last battel being in one thousand four hundred seventy four, *Usun Cassius* dying in Jan. 5. 1478.

In the time of these Warres, *Mustapha*, *Mahomet's* eldest Sonne, died at *Icomium*, having spent himself among his *Paragons*; yet some write thus. He comming to Court to see his Father, became amorous of *Achmetes Bassa's* Wife exceeding beautiful, and *Isaac Bassa's* Daughter: wherefore awaiting, when she went to bathe herself, he shamefully forced her.

Achmetes comming to *Mahomet* with Cloaths and Har rent, craved vengeance for the same: who replied, Art not thou my slave? and if *Mustapha* have known thy Wife, is she not my bond-slave? hold thy self therefore content,

Yet

yet he in secret sharply reproving him, commanded him out of his sight, & in few dayes after, to be secretly strangled: nevertheless, the haughty Bassa putting away his Wife, it caused implacable hatred betwixt him and *Isaac Bassa*, and was in the end the cause of his destruction.

Mahomet being at leisure through the concluded peace with *Usun*, determined first to subdue *Epirus*, and *Albania* standing in his way, for invading *Italy*, and the *Venetians* Territories. And seeing the strong City *Scodra*, possessed by the *Venetians*, seemed to give him the best entrance into *Albania Epirus Dalmatia*, &c. he resolved there to begin. Wherefore preparing all things fit for its besieging, he sent *Solyman Bassa* with 80000 Souldiers thither; about which, he encamping May 25. 1475. began to shake the walls most furiously, giving divers sharp assaults, and omitting nothing that could be devised for the gaining thereof: yet was still with great losse, valiantly repulled by the defendants, *Laurentius* being their Governour. *Mocenius* the while, by the Senates command, joyned himself to *Gritus* the Admiral, who as one man, first put strong Garrisons into *Chelchinum*, *Lyssa*, *Dyrrhachium*, and others on the Sea-coast. Then going up the River *Boliana*, came in sight of *Scodra*, assuring them of relief, by fires in the night, &c. wherewith the *Turks* grieved; would have shut up those Gallies, with a Chain across the narrowest of the River: in their doing whereof, the *Venetians* slaying 500. of them, returned to Sea. They also attempted to put a supply into the City, but it was not to be done.

Matthias of Hungary the while, made such spoil in the *Turks* bordering Dominions, that *Mahomet* called the Bassa from the Siege after three moneths there lying, and 14000 men lost, most dying of sickness taken in the moorish ground nigh the River: with which the *Venetians* being also taken, *Gritus* died thereof, and *Moecenius* was

was dangerously sick; but returning home, he, *Marsellus* being dead, was soon after chose Duke of *Venice*. But *Mahomet* was so discontented at this Dishonour, that he gave one a yearly fee, to mind him daily of the Siege of *Scodra*. *Solyman* the same year being sent into *Valachia* with a great Army, was so entangled in the Woods and Fens by the *Vuvod*, that loosing his Army, himself escaped but by his Mares wondrous swiftnesse.

Next year 1476. *Mahomet* sent out a great Fleet under *Geducas Achmetes*, hoping to surprize the Isle of *Candia*; but the plot being timely discovered, the Traitors were executed, and He disappointed: Wherefore He sent *Achmetes* into the *Euxine*, to besiege the rich City *Cassa*, situate in *Taurica Chersonesus*, by the Sea side, long possessed by the *Genowaies*, and of exceeding Trade: till *Mahomet* had by building Castles on *Hellepontus* and *Bosphorus* Straits, taken away the Merchants Traffique into those Seas, and all meanes of succour to it, yet its reported, a valiant *Genoway* carrying but 150 men almost 2000 miles from *Genoa* to *Cassa* by Land, performed the same, *Achmetes* enclosing it by Sea and Land, the Inhabitants being *Genowaies*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, but most *Tartars*, it was soon yielded to the *Bassa*, on condition, that the *Genoway* Merchants might safely depart with their wealth, which the *Bassa* performed, sending some to *Constantinople*: the rest on pain of death not to depart, or convey away any substance, all *Taurica* soon yielding also to the *Turk*. The *Precopenses*, and *Destences Tartars*, becomming for fear his tributaries: since which, they living a servile and troublesom life, have often done great service in the *Turks* Warres against the *Persians*, *Polonians*, *Transilvanians* and *Germans*, &c.

The *Venetians* yet holding divers strong and commodious Havens within and without *Peloponesus*, *Mahomet*, sore longed after them. Wherefore he sent *Solyman* the *European Bassa* into *Peloponesus*, who besieged *Lepanto* in the

the Gulf of Corinth. *Lauretanus* the Venetian Admirall speedily comming thither, furnished the City with all necessities; so that the Bassa after 4 moneths lying there, in fury departed with his Army: and returning towards Constantinople, he landed some men in *Lemnos*, hoping to surprize *Coccinum*; but being about to enter, they were resisted by those next the Gate. Where *Mayulla* a Maiden taking up her slain Fathers Weapons, and fighting desperately with those few there, they kept out the *Turks* till the other Citizens comming to the Gate, forced them with some losse to retire: the Bassa departing for Constantinople, before *Lauretanus* his comming.

Mahomet having now subdued most of *Epirus*, and other parts of *Albania*, about this time besieged *Croia*; for whose relief, *Contareus* the Venetian Lieverenant, comming, he gave the *Turks* battel in *Tirana*-plain: at length the *Turks* fled: the *Venetians* contenting themselves with their Tents and Forts against *Croia*; But while the Souldiers, being more set on the spoil than pursuit, scattered themselves, and the Captains were consulting where to lodge that night: the *Turks* suddenly returning on them, overthrew them, 1000 falling in the fight. *Contareus*, with other noted ones, being also slain, *Mahomet* making divers incursions into *Dalmatia*, *Histria* and *Carniola*, sometimes went as farre as the Province of *Friuli*, part of the Venetian Seigniory, carrying away much prisoners and spoil. Wherefore the *Venetians* fortified 12 miles along the River *Sontium*, building two Forts, wherein were kept strong Garrisons: whereby the Countrey falling into security, *Asabeg* or *Marbeck* suddenly shewed himself with 1000 Horse on the farther side of the River: whereupon every man put himself into a readines; but night being so nigh, nought could be done, yet they watched all night in Arms. In those Forts were 3000 Horse, and some Foot under *Novel Count of Verona* who resolved to keep the *Turks* from

from passing the River, or to give them battel. *Marbeck* secretly by night, conveyed 1000. of his best men over the River, 4 miles off, where the *Venetians* least feared, to lay in ambush behind a hill in sight, and on a sign given to charge the *Venetians*: sending early next morning some Troops over the River, who by offering to skirmish, and then as in doubt whether to fight or flee to tole them to the ambush. The *Venetians* being in three battalions; *Nowel* leading the first, easily put those Troops to flight, earnestly pursuing them, especially his Sonne, who with others, thought that day to gain great honour.

Marbeck forthwith passing over with the rest of his Army, and following the *Venetians*, the fleeing *Turks* now turning, withstood their enemies: at which instant, those in ambush came down the hill with such violence and clamour, that the *Venetians* being on every side beset, were all slain, except a few who yielded themselves. Many also of the other two battalions being in flight slain: The Count himself, and Sonne, with half the Horsemen, were lost. The *Turks* encouraged, spoiled all *Friuli*, betwixt *Sontium* and *Tiliauentum*. So burning the Country, that 100 Villages were to be seen on a light fire at once. So, laden with spoil, driving before them great numbers of Captives, they returned to *Sontium*: and passing the River, that all thought them to be quite gone, they returning, passed the River *Tiliauentum*, no lesse harming on that side than before on the other: So returning the way they came. This overthrow being accounted among the greatest they received from the *Turks*. Next year about Harvest, 1478. they passing *Sontium*, came before the Forts with a far greater power, offering to draw *Fortebrachius* into the field; but he wary, stood on his Guard, expecting to take them at advantage, wherefore the *Turks* durst not disperse for spoil. So going about 4 miles, they turning up into part of the *Alps*, towards *Germany*, grievously spoiled those people,

strangely passing those abrupt and high Mountains with their Horses, then returning home another way about. *Mahomet*, determining once more to engage his whole forces, for the winning of *Scodra*, gave order both in *Europe* and *Asia*, for assembling his best Souldiers, seldom or never having a stronger Army: first he sent *Aly-beg* with 80000 *Achanziz* towards *Scodra*, who are Horsemen, that having Lands for life from the King, are bound to serve on their own charge as forerunners, when he besiegeth a place: who burning and spoiling, till they come to the appointed place, may depart or stay, when all the Army is come.

Scodra's Governour fortifying night and day, provided all necessaries for a long siege, sending forth the aged, &c. into safer places: and taking in many able men about the Countrey, among whom were many Marriners, or others who got their living on the River and lake of *Scodra*.

The Mountains North from the City the while, shining with fires, and the smoak drawing nearer and nearer, soon after the Countrey people with what they could carry, came running to the Cities by the Sea side, crying out, The *Turks* were come. And next day *May* 14. *Aly Beg* with his *Achanziz* encamped in the Suburbs, that none could go in or out. *Scander-Beg*, Governour of *Bosna* and *Malcotius* (the Majesty of whose countenance and resplendent beames of his eyes were of such piercing brightness, that none was able with fixed eye long to behold them) with 7000 Horse joyning unto him; of which Horsemen, the Christians with often sallies and shot, slew many with little or no losse. Ten dayes after, came *Tant Bassa* of *Constantinople* with 25000 men, and about 12000 Camels, most laden with metall, to make Ordnance, &c. whose stately Purple-Tent was pitch'd on a hill where *Solyman* had layn about 4 years before, his Army encamping between that and the Town. *Tant* was born in *Epirus*, of mean Parentage, and for his wit and activity, was thus pro-

promored, and suspected he would have aspired the Empire. Whilest the great Ordnance were casting, the Bassa made a great Bridge over the River, to passe at pleasure. The buſied Christians the while were so vigilant, that no Turk stirred within shot, but he was slain. *June 13. Mustafa* Viceroy of *Asia*, came with 30000 *Asians* to the Siege, personable men, but not accounted so good Souldiers as the *Europeans*, whose rich green Pavilion was pitched in a Vineyard about a mile from the Town. *Mustapha* propounding a reward to whomsoever durst touch the Cities walls, two Souldiers well mounted, hastening thither, were both slain from the wall, one of whose bodies being recovered by a salley, his Head was set on a Lance upon the Wall's top. *June 15. 5606 Janizaries* comming to the Camp, the Bassaes wellcommed them with a wondrous shout: 3. dayes after, came two other great men, with many followers, desiring safely to speak with the Governour and Captains of the City. Which granted, the Elder, after setting forth his Master's power, and what he had done to others, perswaded them to yield, assuring them of all kind usage with rich rewards, otherwise to expect nought but extreme misery and death: in whose name, *Pagnanus* answered, They feared not *Mahomet's* greatness, &c. that he should find it hard to enforce them, impossible to perswade them, &c. concluding, they should expect no answer to any such motion hereafter, but from the Cannons mouth. At this time, *Croia* having held out a yeares siege, for lack of Victuals was yielded to the Turk, on condition, that the hunger-starv'd defendants might safely depart at pleasure, who notwithstanding, put them all to the sword: the *Scadians* being much grieved, but not discouraged thereat. The Water-men comming often down the River by night, and much hurting the Camp, they builded some Gallies to keep them in, who yet stealing on them, much troubled them: who *June 22*, mounting 2 great Ordnance on the *Bassas* hill,

hill, one carrying a stone Bullet of 300 l, the other of 400, battered the Town four dayes : then planting a third piece at the Hills foot, bearing a bullet of 400 l, and next day, they planted a 4th piece about the middle of the Hill, carrying 650 weight : The while, came 8000 *Asapi* into the Campe, and shortly after came *Mahomet* with all his Army to the River *Drinon*, where the two *Bassas* pompously met him. Who July 2, coming to the Campe, after viewing *Scodra's* Situation, is reported to have said : O what a stately place hath the Eagle chosen to build her nest, and hatch her young ones in. Round about his divers rich Tents lay the *Janizaries* : whereinto, was but one entrance, most strongly guarded ; about the *Janizaries* all the rest of the Army encamped : and still more resorting daily thither : it was deemed, *Mahomet* to have in all 350000 men. Against which terrour, the defendants were notably encouraged by one *Barthelmew*, who being sometimes *Scanderbegs* Souldier, was become a Preacher. July the 5th, the *Turks* mounted two other great pieces, one like the former, but the other discharging a 1200 pound shot, being called the Prince's piece, and wherewith, the *Turks* had from the beginning threatened the besieged. Next day a 7th piece carrying 550 pound was planted on the same *Bassas* Mount : they casting in Fire-balls out of Morter-pieces by night, to fire the City ; but divers Citizens uncovering their houses, and by men, watching the fall of the fire-works, &c: the Enemy's device took no effect. Then also they casting huge stones out of short Mortar-pieces, which falling from on high, crashed what ever they lighted on, wondrously troubled the defendants. Few dayes after they mounting three other piece's, one was bigger then the Prince's, carrying 1300 weight : So battering the City daily with 10 such pieces as hath been seldome heard of, Arrowes falling like haile showers into the City. Yet they with their shot from the Walls, exceedingly annoyed the Enemy,

my. *July 11*, mounting another like the former, they the same day battered the Walls with 178 of those shot, and having now beaten down a great part of the Wall, which the defendants had onely repaired with Timber and Earth between: *Mahomet* sent some *janizaries*, and others to assault the breaches; so either to enter or burn the defendants fortifications; but the *Turks* approaching, many were on both sides slaine, especially of the assailants. Which *Mahomet* perceiving, sounded a retreat, renewed his battery, shaking the Wall every day, with 160 or 180 terrible great shot, and one day with 194. Then he caused a fresh assault to be given, rather with worse successe than before, being forced againe to retire with shame, though two *Italian* Captaines, and some of the better Citizens were slaine with great shot, 193 being that day discharged. Yet he continuing his battery, the third day after gave a more furious attempt than before; So that they comming to handy stroakes, made a most deadly fight; many of the Christians falling chiefly by the great Ordinance, but of the *Turks*, most; the Enemy had so prevailed, as ready to enter. But all seeming almost forlorne, a new supply of lusty Souldiers comming to the breach, drove him downe again, forcing him to retire with great losse: Wherewith *Mahomet* grieved, discharging 173 great shot into the City, sent for his Bassaes and other principall men, and said to them, that none were ignorant that it was the third month since *Scodra* was straitly besieged, &c: and the Walls and Bulworks as good as razed, having much vexed them with assaults, &c: Wherefore the morrow at day dawning, they should enclose the City round, and give them a terrible assault before the worn-out Enemy could recover his strength, and repaire his breaches: that he would now prove and know them that were worthy of his pay, &c: that they were few, but the *Turks* almost innumerable, far passing them in Artillery wherewith many should perish in de-

ending the breaches, that his minde gave him, the morrow before that time they should win the City; asking them, if the very name of *Scodra* were not hatefull unto them? remembring their Parents, Brethren, Friends or Companions slain under those Walls? that it was not full four years since, so many thousands of his people fell; that very hill, and the stones, seeming yet sprinkled with their blood: therefore they should glut themselves with Christian blood, as their lawes did so much exhort them, doing what they might, that not one of those of *Scodra* might be left alive: saying, all things were ready; it was easie for a strong man to overcome the weak, as they were. Hereupon, it was proclaimed, every man to be ready against the time, on pain of death: the Commanders also viewing the City on the *Bassaes* hill, consulted how best to assault it: the Defendants, alwayes expecting their hovering enemies, left nothing undone for defence. *Mahomet* July 22. entring the royal Pavilion on the top of the *Bassaes* Mount, plainly to behold all the assault; on a Signall given, they suddenly ran to the breaches thick, hoping to take the Christians at some advantage; wherein they were deceived: so there was begun a most mortall fight, especially towards the Gate, where the Cannon had made the walls most assaultable. There fighting hand to hand, a *Turks* Eplign was set upon the rampier's top. *Mahomet* rejoycing, thought the City as good as taken; but the Christians speedily repairing thither with new supplies, beat them from the rampiers; also they casting down timber, stones, &c. on them that were comming up: no shot likewise falling in vain, (they stood so thick) their Ensign was pluckt down, and they forced to retire: Wherefore *Mahomet* in a great rage, commanded his Ordnance to be discharged into the breach with greater fury; commanding the two *Bassaes* standing by him, to go and force the Souldiers to return to the assault. Who descending the hill, where perswasion would not, with
their

their drawn Swords, forced the Souldiers: who striving might and main to win the rampiers, the walls having been there shaken with 2539. shot, the Christians with invincible courage opposed them, so that a more desperate fight was hardly to be seen, &c. In which dreadful fight, many of the Defendants were slain; but of the *Turks* 20 to one: the Christians with murthering shot making lanes out of the loupes nigh the Gate, flanking the ditch; yet the *Bassas* and great Captains forcing them foreward, if any turned back, slew him; so that the *Turks* seeing the danger in retiring, pressing on, and others stepping into the rooms of the slain, they again recovered the rampiers advancing their Ensigns: *Mahomet* beginning to lift up his head; but the Companies ready in the Market-place for all events, speedily coming, before the *Turks* had taken good footing, slew a great number, forcing the rest from the rampiers, plucking down their Ensigns, and setting up their own. Where-with, the *Turks* dismayed, without a sign, retreated, in spite of their Commanders, hastily to the Camp. *Mahomet* returning into his Pavilion, two dayes tormented himself, not admitting any one to his presence. The Christians having taken their spoil, set dead *Turks* Heads on poles, round the City: 12000 of them being slain in the assault, besides wounded: 400 Christians were lost, none that came to the breach escaping without some wound. After two dayes, *Mahomet* resolved with his two *Bassas*, to gage his whole forces on another assault; for they thought the defendants, wasted and weakened, could not hold out another. Whereupon, every man being straitly commanded to be ready, great rewards were promised to those who performed any special service. *Mahomet* the mean time, spared not the walls, &c. with his Cannon; and the Christians with restless labour, &c. omitting nought that could be devised for defence. The new Moon beginning to shew her self: the *Turks* Priests

gave the Souldiers knowledge thereof, by singing a Song like a procession: the Army answering with a short, but wonderful noise, bowed to the Moon with great superstition. Then beginning to draw nigh the City, a mile round was thick covered with them: The Christians were ready to repulse them, chiefly at the great Gate, where *Moneta* and his Brother *Moncinus* undertook to receive the first assault, commonly the terriblest of the three which they give. *Mahomet* going to the top of the Mount before day, and the Signall given by 11 Cannons, and 12 lesser Pieces, the *Turks* assailing the City round, with a most hideous outcry and nimbleness, had in a trice set up an Ensign on the Gate's rampiers, which was pluckt down by *Moneta*, and the *Turks* driven down, with great slaughter, the assault thus continuing till day: *Moneta* received divers wounds, being twice beaten down, yet still recovered himself, &c. *Mahomet* discharging his great Ordnance on the Christians, standing thick in the breach, many were rent in pieces, and the rest dismayed: wherefore the *Turks* comming on again, forced to enter to the uttermost; but *Moneta* maintained the place till new Supplies came, not departing, nor suffering others till the assault was ended, whom nothing so much troubled as the great Ordnance, when the *Turks* were driven back, almost clearing the breach: but others stepping in their room, manfully repulsed the *Turks*. *Mahomet* now commanded all his forces to be drawn to the Gate, there to renew the assault. Whereupon the greatest part being brought to the place, they so furiously assaulted the breach, that soon slaying most of the defendants, they had advanced divers Ensignes; but new supplies comming to the place of danger, drave them back, clearing the breach, and overthrowing the Ensigns: which turning *Mahomet's* joy into choler, he discharging all his great Artillery at once into the breach, many of his own were slain with the defendants.

The great Captains, being in the eye of their Masters, forced the Souldiers forward with their swords, adventuring also themselves, whereby the fight was more fierce, than before. Many *Turks* were slain, but the Defendants being oppressed with multitude, and overwhelmed with shot, were scarce able to maintain the place; Wherefore a great cry running through the City, that every man should repair to the breach, a multitude of all sorts meeting there together, so valiantly encountred the *Turks* upon the Rampiers, that they began again to shrink back; which *Mahomet* perceiving, commanded the Ordnance to be discharged into the breach, not regarding his own men: and threatening his Captains with horrible death, if they returned without victory: wherefore the assault was renewed, but the Ordnance slew many *Turks*, as well as Christians; the shot falling thrice among the *Turks* themselves, rent many a sunder to the others discouragement; yet they maintained a long and terrible fight: at which time, with one onely shot 18 Defendants were slain: Arrows fleeing and lying so thick, that for a month after, they burnt nothing but *Turks* Arrows, nothing was to be heard, but the terrour of the ears, nothing but death and its instruments to be seen: a fearful cry running through the City, that without present help, all would be lost; whereupon not only the whole, but the sick and wounded chearing themselves, ran with speed to the place: so that the *Turks* were slain in great numbers; yet fresh ones still coming up, the deadly fight was still maintained, many falling on both sides; the *Turks* one while seeming to have the better, and streightway the worse; which doubtful fight continued most part of the day, and most (on both sides alive) being wounded or hurt, the assault began to assuage. *Mahomet* now despairing of victory, sounded a retreat; which the *Turks* hearing ran as men affrighted to their Tents. The Christians joy of this victory, being mixt with much sorrow, for such men as were slain, many of
whose

whose bodies they gathering up by peace-male, buried with the rest of the slain. Then also, repairing their breaches, they made ready for a fresh assault. *Mahomet*, much grieved with this losse and dishonour, wished he had never heard of *Scodra's* name, saying of God, It were enough for him to care for heavenly matters, and not crosse him in his worldly actions: and, tormenting himself again in his Tent two dayes, not to be spoke withall; On the third day, calling a general Council, said, He determined to give a fresh assault, hoping for an easie victory, over those so weakened; but they all with one voice cryed out to the contrary, his best Souldiers being already slain, and most of those left, sore wounded, or weakned, &c. And *Achmetes* Bassa, the *Turks* great champion standing up, with pleasing speech calmed *Mahomet's* fury, and with grounded reasons, perswaded him to desist, and to take a surer course; who (having set forth the greatness of his valour, prailes, and conquests, who had gained from the Christians 20 Provinces, and 200 great Cities, saying, *Cesar*, *Scipio*, *Pyrrhus*, and *Hannibal*, &c, were all inferiour to him in victories, and Countries subdued) said, In his opinion *Scodra* (which should not so much grieve him, worldly things often deceiving their expectation) was not again to be assaulted; for he searching every Tent, found no place without groaning, sighing, &c. he having also lost above 30000 of his best Souldiers in the last assault; they being all now afraid and discouraged, whom, himself (he said) asking how so great a fear was come upon them, they answered, It was the very look of the men of *Scodra* (whose eyes seemed to sparkle with fire) that struck that terrour into them; wherefore, setting forth *Scodra's* strength, and how himself had subjected to *Mahomet*, the long desired City of *Croia*, he concluded, that if he would win *Scodra*, he must block it up, build strong Forts round about it, and make a bridge over *Boliana*, with a strong Castle on each side to stop the passage;

passage; then to besiege other weaker Cities of the *Venetians*, and subdue the Country round about, which would not be hard, he being Master of the field: so *Scodra*, said he, must needs yield at last, as lately did *Croia* by famine.

This Counsel so pleased *Mahomet* and the rest, that the assault being laid aside, the Bassa of *Constantinople* was sent to *Zabiache* a City in *Dalmatia's* borders, which in few daies was yielded to him; who thrusting out the Inhabitants, and leaving therein a *Turkish* Garrison, returned to *Scodra*. Then also the Bassa of *Asia*, was sent against *Drivasto*, whither *Mahomet* coming, after 16 daies siege, next day he took it without much resistance, putting those on the walls to the sword: and cruelly slaying the rest being 300, before *Scodra*, to terrifie the Defendants. Next day, he sending the Bassa of *Constantinople* to *Lyssa*, 30 miles from *Scodra*, he finding the Citizens fled for fear, fired the City, where also the *Turks* dig'd up *Scanderbeg's* bones as aforesaid. *Mahomet* committing all touching *Scodra's* siege unto *Achmetes*, himself departed about Sept. 7. with 40000 to *Constantinople*, cursing & banning by the way, *Epirus* and all that was therein, especially *Scodra*. After which the two Bassaes built a Bridge over *Boliana*, with a Castle on either side to hinder *Scodra's* relief: which being furnished with all necessaries, they returning left *Achmetes* with 40000 to continue the siege; who so ordering that no relief could be brought, the Christians at length were fain to eat all loathsome things, &c. a Mouse being sold at an exceeing price, as also puddings made of Dogs guts. The *Venetians* now weary of 16 years chargeable war to their great losse, and not able to relieve distressed *Scodra*, sent *Trivisanus* an experienced Senator to *Mahomet*, who at length concluded a Peace, *Mahomet* to have *Scodra*, *Lemnos*, and the Castle of *Tenarus* in *Peloponnesus* delivered to him, with 8000 Duckats yearly; And that they might freely traffique in all parts of his Dominions,

nions; and for those of *Scodra*, they might live still under the *Turks* Government, or depart with goods whither they pleased; whereof the Governour being certified, declared to the Citizens how things stood. After a thorow debate, they concluded all, to forsake the City, and the house of bondage, and to live as pleased God, among other Christians: So receiving *Turkish* pledges of safety, they came forth with bag & baggage, being transported into *Italy*, where they lived in peace; the *Turks* after a whole years siege, entring the City with joy & triumph, this happened in 1478. *Mahomet* in 1480 sent *Achmetes* with a fleet against *Leonard* Prince of three Islands nigh *Peloponessus*, wch he easily taking, *Leonard* fled for his life into *Italy*, with his wife and treasure to King *Ferdinand*, whose Kinswoman he had married. About which time *Alis Beg* & 2 others entring *Transylvania* with 100000 men, so feared the Country, that *Stephen* the *Vayvod* speedily fled to King *Matthias* craving his ayd; who, though sick of the Gout, by his Captains, encountred the *Turks*, not far from *Alba Julia*, slaying 30000 of them with *Isa Beg*; which victory was not without the *Vayvods* sore wounding, and 8000 Christians slain. *Mahomet* grieved that so small an Island as *Rhodes* should lye so near his Dominions, troubling his Merchants, &c. which being formerly unfortunately attempted by *Mahometane* Princes, he now assembled his expert Captains, propounding the matter. Some perswaded him to subdue it and revenge Christian injuries, not fearing a repulse; who was to bring more assailants than was stones in the wall; Others declaring the Islands strength with the Defendants valour, &c. said, It was like to prove more difficult than some supposed, &c. alledging it was not worth engaging his honour with the lives of so many valiant Souldiers, who might conquer a Kingdom; yet *Mahomet* ambitious, and solicited by *Meligales* a fugitive Knight of *Rhodes*, (who having spent his great substance, fled to the *Turk* with two others of like disposition

who presented him with a plot of the City, with it and the Islands strength, and how to win it, offering to spend their lives therein, to repair their broken estate) he resolved to follow their Counsel who perswaded the war; wherefore committing that great action to *Mesithes Paleologus* his management: he sailed from *Constantinople* with 80000 men toward *Rhodes*, calling by the way *Demetrius* one of the fugitive Knights, to know, how safely to Land. *Meligalus* falling sick on the way, and growing loathsome and troublesome to the *Turks*, was thrown overboard alive, crying out in vain for help. *Peter Damboys* a Frenchman, was then great Master of the *Rhodes*; who having once in 3 daies intelligence from the *Turkish* Court, and of such judgment as scarce ever to be deceived by false advertisements, had strongly fortified the City with all necessaries for many years siege. Then also many valiant ones repaired thither out of *Italy, France, Germany, &c.* in defence of the place and Religion. *Damboys* had 16000 able men in the City, among whom were many Jews and other servile men, who did good service. *Mesithes* landing in the Island *June 22*, not far from the City, *Damboys* calling the Defendants together, spake unto them; that the *Turks* their mortal enemies, were ready to destroy their Temples, Oratories, Religion, seeking to ruin that noble City, the cruel death of them, &c. and although the chance of war were doubtful; yet considering their courage and chearfulness, he conceived an assured hope of victory, That the *Turks* armed not against them so much for their desert, as for rule and spight against them, and Christianity; shewing them, they wanted neither provision, nor a most strong Garrison of divers Nations, and which was more; Christ their Captain, &c. That they were warlike, their enemies effeminate *Asians, &c.* that he said not this to fill their ears with windy words; but he assured them, if the siege were long, there would come such strong aid out of other Countries, as would not only serve

serve to raise the siege, but recover the *Constantinopolitan* and *Trapezond* Empires. But supposing the hardest; would not any one account his life most happily spent in defence of a good conscience, and Christs quarrel? &c. Therefore they shewing themselves couragions, he doubted not, but time and his discretion should provide for the rest.

They resting in the assurance of their aged Governour, departed to their charge, full of hope &c. The Bassa sent *Demetrius*, (and his traiterous companion) to view (with some Troops and foot) where best to encamp; who being known by *Anthony* the Master's brother, he salyed out, skirmishing with them; but the *Turks* exceeding in number, *Anthony* turned on those behind him with such force, that he slew or wounded most of them. *Demetrius*, having his horse slain, himself was trodden to death by the horses, whose bodie *Murcius* unadvisedly dispoiling, was slain and his head presented to the Bassa; who at his first coming, taking a strong entrenched Orchard, placed some Companies therein, with small Ordnance, (the defendants having abandoned it by night, leaving their Ordnance behind them for haste) and by one *Frapaine* a fugitive Christian his Counsel, he there began to batter *Nicholas-Tower*, 300 paces distant; but *Damboyse* mounting two great Basilisks, he quickly forsook it; yet shortly after, he planted a greater battery near the same, and of far greater force, and 300 smaller pieces; but *Frapaine* Master of his Ordnance, bestowed the shot to small purpose, whom the Bassa distrusting, he fleeing by night, again to the *Rhodians*, discovered the *Turks* secrets, who continuing the battery, had beaten down some part of that Tower, : which the Christians repaired the best they could; yet the *Turks* fiercely assaulting it for 6 hours, they retired having lost 800 men, with many drowned, and 1000 sore wounded. *Mesithes* having after this made a fair breach in the wall; *Damboyse* cast up
such

such Rampires with a Countermure, that he durst not adventure to enter; the Captains helping therein, and moving the rest by their example.

The mean time, young *Caly Bassa* being sent to see how the siege went forward, it was given out (to terrifie the Defendants) that *Mahomet* was coming with 100000 men, and 150 great Ordnance; whereat some were exceedingly feared, especially the *Spaniards* and their neighbours of *Navarre*, that desiring leave to be gone, they discouraged the rest; *Damboyse* sending for them, and sharply reproving them promised to ship them forthwith out of the Isle, &c. commanding them (the mean time) to cease their mutinous talk, with threats: who shortly after, considering the dishonour to themselves and Nation, if they should be so sent away, craving pardon they shewed themselves most forward in all services during that siege; yet *Damboyse* would never trust them alone. The Bassa seeing by the Masters policy, all his devices countermanded, practised to poyson him by one *Janus* a *Dalmatian*; who being received into the City as a Christian fugitive acquainted himself with one *Pythius* an *Epirot*, familiar with *Philelphus*, (*Damboyse* his late Secretary; but then in disgrace as partaker in the late mutiny) a fit instrument to work the Treason, as being well acquainted with the Cooks and Butlers, &c. whom *Pythius* perswading to revenge the disgrace he lived in, shewed him how to do it, &c. *Philelphus* dissembling the matter, desired to know what benefit might thereby arise more than revenge. *Pythius* shewed him the Bassa's Letters to *Janus*, assuring him what he promised any one for furtherance of his poysoning, he would fully perform the same. *Philelphus*, discovering the matter to *Damboyse*, *Janus* and *Pythius* confessing the Treason, upon examination, *Janus* was beheaded, and *Pythius* hanged; but *Philelphus* received again into favour.

The Bassa herewith much grieved, yet still battered the City, and chiefly, *Nicholas-Tower*, framing (besides other preparations) a great bridge stayed with strong ropes, &c. betwixt his battery & the Tower, for assailing it. But as it was making fast, *Rogers* an Englishman, found means by night, to break and cut all the Cables, whereby it was carried away by the Sea; for which he was by *Damboyse* rewarded, and publicly commended. Yet a new Bridge being framed on boats, &c. and fastened with Cables, and Anchors, with divers Ordnance placed therein, the Tower was at once battered by Sea and Land, the Defendants with shot assailed, and the Tower desperately scaled. But *Damboyse* with his Ordnance brake the Bridge sinking four foists and store of men, &c. and with shot, timber, stones, &c. overwhelmed the scalers, with great slaughter, the assault holding from 3 in the morning till 10, the Bassa giving over, having lost about 2500 men, in which night, two mercenaries of *Cret*, about to flee to the enemy, were put to death; and *Frapine*, suspected of Treason, executed also.

Then the Bassa offered *Damboyse* (in his Masters name) great rewards and preferments to yield the City; which the Messengers said, he could not long hold, &c. who answered, He would not in his sure estate use his enemies Counsel, nor in distresse refuse to yield his life to God, far rather then to yield though on never so good conditions in shew. Then (according to the Bassa's instructions) they perswaded him to yield to *Mahomet* some yearly tribute or homage. But *Damboyse* knowing by others example, *Turkish* Thraldom to lye included under that small request, utterly refused either. The Bassa exceedingly troubled, resolved, for his honours sake, to use (in that extremity) an extream remedy; wherefore mounting some pieces much higher, he battered the City day and night, for four daies; the Christians also not sparing their shot, but women and children in the City, shrouded

shrouded themselves in Cellars and Caves for the thickness of the shot. At length, a fair breach being made, the *Turks* so desperately assaulted it, that they suddenly set some Ensigns on the top of the walls; but they being soon repulsed into the ditches, most never rose again. Then also in another place, they both advanced their Ensigns, and 500 of them entered coming into *Jew-street*, where being all slain by *Damboyse*, their Ensigns were thrown down, the rest yet scaling, being with wondrous slaughter rejected. So the *Bassa* founded a retreat, about 5000 being lost, with small losse of the Christians: *Damboyse* himself receiving 5 wounds, one whereof, under his right pap, was thought deadly, but was cured.

The *Bassa*, having for 3 Months spent his forces and devices to small purpose, losing 9000 of his best Souldiers, and all the rest filled with heaviness, of whom 15000 lay sore wounded, many being ready to give up the Ghost, also two ships being landed at *Rhodes*, (in spite of the *Turks*) from *Ferdinand* of *Naples*, with men and Munition, whilst he was deliberating whether to depart or not, a rumour was spread, that Christian Princes were coming for relief; whereupon he raised the siege. Some say, *Mahomet* hearing of his ill successe, (himself being ready to go against the *Egyptian* Sultan) sent for the *Bassa*; who, having first cut down and spoiled all the Vines, and Trees in that part, embarked his Army, and departed, *August* 17.

While *Rhodes* was besieged, *Achmetes* *Bassa* was sent with a strong Army to enter *Italy*; who enbarquing at *Vallona* or *Aulona*, in *Macedonia's* borders, passed over that Sea, about 60 miles broad, and landed in fertile *Apulia*, now *Puglia*, nigh old and famous *Hydruntum*, now *Otranto*; where taking an infinite spoyle, which he conveyed to his Gallies, after 14 daies ranging, and seeing none oppose him, he besieged *Otranto*, (as it were the Key of that part of *Italy*;) where making a breach with

Ordinance, he took it being but weakly manned and weaker defended, with no great losse; the Archbishop and chief of the City, being slain in the Cathedral, whither they had fled, the rest being sold for slaves in *Greece*; this brought such a fear on all *Italy*, that Pope *Sixtus 4th* was about to forsake *Rome*. *Achmetes*, having ransacked, victualled, & strongly fortified the *Otranto*, leaving 8000 in Garrison; he returned to *Vallona*, and so to *Constantinople* to know *Mahomet's* pleasure; but purposing next Spring to return against *Italy* with greater forces: which if he had, it was to be feared (it being then rent by the Princes discord and ambition) it had become a prey to the barbarous *Turks*. But at the same time, the *Caramanian* King, aided by the *Persian* and Sultan of *Egypt*, had overthrown *Bajazet*, *Mahomet's* eldest Son, slaying most of his Army; Wherefore *Mahomet* with *Achmetes* as his chief warrior, passed into *Asia*; where falling sick at *Gevisen* in *Bythinia*, after 3 daies torment of his belly, supposed (by some) the Cholick; yet most thought him to be poisoned. He dyed about 52 years old, reigning 31, in 1481. being buried magnificently at *Constantinople*, in a Chappel nigh a great Temple which he built.

He was but low of stature, square set, and strong limbed, his complexion being *Tartar-like*, as were most of his Ancestors: his look was sterne, his eyes piercing and hollow, his nose very crooked: he was of a sharp wit, learned, chiefly in *Astronomy*; and could speak *Greek*, *Latin*, *Arabick*, *Chalde*, and *Persian*, delighting much in reading of *History*, &c. of an exceeding courage and fortunate: a severe punisher of injustice, chiefly in those to whom justice was committed, greatly favouring and entertaining men excelling in any faculty: so punishing theft, that a thief was scarcely to be heard of. But he was wholly irreligious, perfidious and ambitious, delighting in blood, (being probably the death of 800000 men); and craft, covetousness and dissimulation, were in him accounted

ted tolerable faults: In whose love being no assurance, and his least displeasure death; he lived feared of all, and died lamented of none. *Alphonfus* Duke of *Calabria*, taking the opportunity of *Zemès*, *Bajazet's* competitor and troubler, besieged *Otranto*, losing divers great Commanders, and still by the *Turks* worried; till being aided out of *Spain* and *Italy*, chiefly out of *Hungary*, from *Matthias*, he straitly besieged them by Sea and Land, till the besieged (hearing of *Mahomet's* death and now not expecting *Achmetes* his return, ready to come to their rescue, yielded it up, departing safely with bag and baggage, having held it a year.

Dd 2

The

The Life of Bajazet II, second Emperour of the Turks.

M*Ahom*et being dead, and some great ones seeking to place *Bajazet* the eldest Son, others labouring to prefer *Zemes Gemes*, or *Zizimus* the younger to the Empire, two great factions arose, so that there were soon tumults, hot skirmishes & great slaughter in divers places of *Constantinople*, the *Janizaries* slaying *Mahometes* one of the 4 great Bassaes, for an old grudge, and spoyling all Christians and Jews amongst them of their substance, the City Merchants (natural *Turks*) not escaping their ravenous hands. The other 3 Bassaes *Isaac*, *Mesithes*, and *Achmetes*, though secretly envying each others greatness; yet to appease trouble, and assure their own, found means by their authority that *Corcutus* a younger Son of *Bajazet* 18 years old, was generally saluted Emperour with great triumph: in whose name, the Bassaes disposed of all things little regarding *Bajazet* or *Zemes*, one being at *Amasia*, the other at *Icounium*; for the *Turkish Kings*, send their Sons to Govern remote Provinces, where they are also under their Lievtenant Generals command, and may not depart even to visit their Father without expresse leave.

These two hasting towards *Constantinople*, *Bajazet* as the nearer, first arrived; but finding the Empire already possessed, he in grief, called Heaven and Earth to witness of the great wrong done him by the Bassaes; and what by tears, &c. what by gifts, &c. chiefly by *Cherseogles*, Viceroy of *Greece* his solicitation, and the Captain of the *Janizaries* his Sons in Law, so prevailed, that *Corcutus* resigned to his Father the Imperial Government, himself
being

being made Governour of *Lycia, Caria, and Jonia, &c.* with a yearly Pension, and promise of the Empire after his decease, where he pleasantly living, and wholly given to Philosophy, was afterwards lesse favoured of the *Janizaries* and others.

Zemes thus prevented by his elder Brother, raising a puissant Army in the Countries under him, and marching thorow the lesser *Asia*, taking in strong places by the way; also *Prusa* in *Bythinia*, purposing to exclude *Bajazet* out of *Asia* in requital: fortune at first seeming to favour him therein, the people yielding him obedience, &c.

Bajazet, perceiving most of his Empire in danger, and doubting *Zemes* would scarce long be content therewith, passed into *Asia* with a puissant Army, comming to *Neapolis*, nigh which *Zemes* encamped. *Bajazet* being on his way, *Achmetes*, the best *Turkish* Warrior, presented himself on his knees before *Bajazet* unarmed, his Sword hanging at his Saddle bow, to the admiration of many: The cause was, for that in the Warre between *Ufün Cassanes* and *Mahomet*, *Bajazet* not martialling the right wing to *Mahomet's* liking, he commanded *Achmetes* to set it in better order: which he performing, and *Bajazet* taking it as in disgrace, threatened to finde a time of revenge on the *Bassa*, who being of great Spirit, bid him do his pleasure, and laying his hand on his Sword, vowed, when he came to be Emperour, he would never weare Sword in field: So here being ready to serve, if commanded, otherwise to endure his Princes pleasure. *Bajazet* stretching out his Scepter, and taking him up, bid him girt on his Sword, and not remember what he had long forgiven and forgotten: making him Generall, to the *Janizaries* and the rest, their great content, giving great shouts, as if victory had attended him: who encamping as near as possible to *Zemes*, for 10 dayes space, many sharp skirmishes were made with diverse fortune. At

length, after a long fight and great slaughter on both sides *Bajazet*, by *Achmetes* his policy, prevailed: *Zemes* fleeing to *Iconium*: in which flight many were taken, whom *Bajazet*, *Achmetes* changing his mind, for terror of others, suffered to be put to the Sword.

Zemes doubting to fall into his Brothers hands, after 3 dayes stay, trussing up his Treasure, &c. fled with his Mother and two young Children, and a small retinue, from *Iconium* into *Syria*, part of *Caytheim* the Egyptian Sultan's Dominion. *Bajazet* came thither to have surprized him; but he, fled, he took order for the Government of that part of his Empire, returning with victory to *Constantinople*.

Zemes comming in 1482. to *Jerusalem*, stayed there, visiting its ancient Monuments: thence travelling into *Egypt*, he was honourably conducted to *Caire*, by divers of the Nobles sent from the Sultan to meet him, & being welcomed by *Caytheim*, he declared the cause of his coming: which he said, was to complain unto him of the wrongs done him by *Bajazet*, whom he might more justly rearm his cruel enemy, than kind Brother: who had not onely taken the Empire by tumult and slaughter, but had persecuted him, &c. never resting, till he had chased him out of the Empire's bounds, moved thereto not so much by the jealous desire of Sovereignty, as by an unnatural cruelty towards all his kindred, and a mortall hatred against him in particular, &c. shewing, that he was not to be blamed for the troubles arising at *Constantinople*, betwixt the favourites of them both, he being then farre from thence, and was sent for by many of his good friends, &c; but lest his coming thither might have occasioned new troubles, he returned into *Bythinia* to *Prusa*, to have rested in quiet; if his Brother would have suffered him, &c. that *Bajazet* would sway all things alone; and being of a farre other mind, than either *Xerxes* or *Alexander*, had rather have his Brother his

his enemy, than his friend, and drive him into exile, than to make him partaker of his counsels : beseeching the *Sultan* by the sacred reliques of *Mahomet*, &c. to bridle domestical wrong, and lift up the afflicted by his great Authority, or the Sword's revenge, &c. putting him in minde what deadly enemies, Christian Princes were to the *Turks* : who could not but be thought suddenly to invade their Kingdom, if shaken with civill Warres, seeking the utter destruction of the same : and then *Caytheim* must stand alone for himself, and the rest of the *Mahometans* against the Christians, &c. requesting him to deal with *Bajazet* by Embassadors, that if he would not receive him as a partner of the Empire, yet admit him into some small part of his Father's Kingdom, &c. which if he should refuse to grant, he would as at *Jerusalem*, so at *Mecha*, complain unto the great Prophet of the injuries done him, &c. but if all those proved in vain, he would go with fire, Sword, and slaughter, and vex his hateful Brother, with all manner of revenge, &c.

The *Sultan* comforting the distressed Prince, willed him to bear patiently his present hap, &c. commending him withall, for his courage, promising him to do what in him lay to perswade his Brother : and soon after sent to *Bajazet*, *Zemes* the while, travelling by the *Sultans* leave, to visit *Mahomet's* Temple at *Mecha*, and his Sepulchre at *Medina* : upon whose return to *Caire*, the Embassadors returned also, not obtaining any thing, *Bajazet* seeming to despise his Brother. Wherefore *Zemes* determined to warre upon him, reposing some hope in his secret friends, and some discontented Captain's revolt. Then also firly came Letters from the titu'ar *Caramanian* King, living then in *Armenia*, offering to joyn with *Zemes* all the power he could make, (hoping thereby to recover all the part of the Kingdom, whence *Mahomet* drave his Father) who both together were farre unable by all friends

they could make, to encounter with *Bajazet's* great power.

Zemes, with gifts from the *Sultan* and promised aid, met the *Caramanian* (perswading the contrary), on *Asia* the lesse its borders, where they concluded joyntly to invade *Bajazet*; and entring *Cilicia*, now *Caramannia*, they encamped between *Iconium* and *Larenda*. *Bajazet* fearing more the revolt of his Souldiers, than his Brothers power, raised an Army of 200000 men, sending *Achmetes* before with one part; in his march a rumour was in the Camp, that some Captains had conspired to betray him into his Brothers hands, and that many upon joyning battel, would revolt to his Brother: wherefore *Bajazet* doubting what to do, divided a masse of money amongst the Army, loading them with ample promises, they shewing fidelity and valour: then drawing nigh *Iconium*, he glozingly shewed a desire to come to some agreement with them, secretly endeavouring to stop all passages, that they might not retire into *Syria*. *Zemes* weighing his own weak forces, timely retired to Mount *Amanus's* straits, dividing *Cilicia* from *Syria*: perswading the *Caramanian* to give place unto the time, &c. So breaking up his Army, he with a few, came to *Cilicia's* Sea-coast, hiring a tall Ship to save himself upon sudden danger: sending the while, to *Damboys*, that since he had no safety amongst his own people, he would upon his safe conduct come into *Rhodes*. The great Master deeming his flight to be much profitable to Christians, presently sent to fetch him; but before the Gallies came, *Zemes* was forced by the access of his enemies, to go aboard the afore prepared Ship: and putting a little from shoar, he shot an Arrow back with fastened Letters directed to *Bajazet*, shewing, he fled not to the Christians, for hatred of his Religion or Nation, but as enforced thereto by his injurious dealing; but he surely hoped, that he or his Children should receive the just guerdon of that his tyranny: which

which *Bajazet* reading, it's reported, he altogether mourned, shunning for a season, as half distracted, all speech and company.

Zemes being honourably entertained at *Rhodes*, alleadged, 3 dayes after, in the Knights publique assembly, for colour of his rebellion, that *Bajazet* though the elder, was born whilest his Father lived in a private estate; but he was his Fathers first-born, being an Emperour, &c. yet he could have been content to have given him place, so he would have granted him some small portion of the Empire, &c. wherefore he hoped to finde succour in that his distress: protesting, that if ever he should by their meanes obtain the Empire, he would make with them a perpetual peace, and rest their friend for ever: *Damboys* chearing him, promised to keep him safe from his Brothers fury, and to commend his cause to other Christian Princes. He was now about 28 years old, tall, somewhat corpulent, and well limb'd, gray-eyed, somewhat squinting, hook nosed, rising in the middle, brown, spare of speech, chollerick, a great feeder, delighting in swimming, melancholy, &c. never to be drawn from his superstition, learned, writing the History of his Fathers life.

But *Bajazet*, things being well quieted, returned to *Constantinople*, attending some new motion by his Brother to be made; but hearing he was at *Rhodes*, he sent certain Bassaes to *Damboys*, to deliver up *Zemes*, for a wondrous sum of money. Which, when it could not be obtained, they concluded a commodious peace for the *Rhodians*; also agreeing, that *Zemes* should be kept in safe custody, *Bajazet* to pay in consideration, and for his honourable usage, 30000 Duckets yearly to the Master, Aug. 1.

While *Achmetes* was employed abroad, *Bajazet* discoursing with the other Bassaes, on his late expedition against his Brother, seemed highly offended with the untrustiness

rustiness of some great Captain, seeming somewhat to distrust *Achmetes*: wherefore *Isaac Bassa* (whose Daughter *Achmetes* had put away, as afore said) taking hold of the opportunity, increased his suspicion: sometimes imagining intelligence to have passed betwixt *Zemes* and *Achmetes*: and forthwith amplifying his power with the *Janizaries*, so that he might thereby do more in *Zemes* his quarrel, than should stand with *Bajazets* safety. &c. wherefore *Achmetes* at his return was to be slain: who comming to Court, was by *Bajazet* invited to Supper, to solace himself, as was given out with his great Bassaes; *Achmetes* mistrusting nothing, came, *Bajazet* drunk Wine plentifully, causing them also to do the like, although utterly forbidden by their Law. Supper now ended, *Bajazet* as a token of his grace, caused Robes of pleasing colours, to be cast on his guests, giving to every one a fair bowle full of Gold; but on *Achmetes* was cast a Gown of black Velvet, a token of such indignation, that its death for any man to intreat for such a one: *Achmetes*, now under the shadow of death, said, (Oh *Cachpogli*) that is, *Thou Sonne of a Whore*, since thou intendest such cruelty, why didst thou not execute it, before enforcing me to drink this impure and forbidden Wine? so looking on the ground, fate still. The other Bassaes kissing the ground at his feet, &c. departed, with whom *Achmetes* offering to go out, was commanded to sit still, &c. The executioners stepping in to have slain him, an *Eunuch* in *Bajazets* greatest favour, advised him not to be too hasty in executing so great a Man, &c; but to stay to see how it would be digested, wresting the while out of him what might be got, by torture, &c. who was hereupon stript, and carried to be tortured.

Achmetes his Sonne, missing his Father at the Bassaes comming forth, presently mistrusted and with much ado learned of the Bassaes, of his Fathers Estate, then also advised of the same by a secret friend: wherefore, lamenting
and

and exclaiming against *Bajazets* cruelty, he calling on the *Janizaries* for ayd, and minding them of his Fathers de-
 lerts towards them, and of his eminent danger, had in the
 dead of the night, raised them all up in Arms : who run-
 ning from all parts of the City to the Court Gate , re-
 doubling *Bre, Bre*, a word exprelsing their greatest fury,
 so furiously beat at it, that *Bajazet* causing the outer Gate
 to be opened, shewed himself out at an Iron Window ,
 demanding the cause of that uproare : who answered, they
 would reach him as a Drunken Beast, and a Rascall, to
 use his place with more sobriety, and discretion, calling
 him amongst many opprobrious words, *Bengi*, that is,
 Batchellour or Scholler, no small disgrace among those
 Martiall men; then commanding him forthwith to deli-
 ver *Achmetes*, or to take what should ensue. *Bajazet*
 terrified with this in'olency, commanded him to be deli-
 vered to them: who in haste was brought forth almost na-
 ked, with marks in his body of hard usage. The *Janiza-
 ries* rejoycing, supplied his want, with appareil taken
 from *Bajazets* minions, carrying him out on their shoul-
 diers, crying out, How he did, &c: undoubtedly ready to
 have slaine *Bajazet* if he would, and to risle the Court;
 But he laboured to pacifie them, excusing it as done to
 correct him, he haply neglecting some part of his duty.
 A heart-burning long remained between *Bajazet* and the
Janizaries; yet for feare, he had *Achmetes* (in shew) in
 greater honour than before, but mortally hating him :
 and by *Isaac's* perswasion, all being thought to be forgot-
 ten, *Bajazet* had him thrust thorow, sitting at supper in
 the Court. This was the miserable end of the *Turks* great
 Champion : about which time also, *Caigulus Zemes* his
 Son (a Child) was by his command strangled.

Bajazet grievously offended with the *Janizaries*, find-
 ing upon inquiry their Officers to be the Authors of those
 flirs, he under colour of preferment sent them away into
 divers parts of his Empire, appointing to them as to old
 Soul-

Souldiers, lands, &c : for their maintenance ; but secretly sent to the Governours of the places, whither they were sent, to execute them as Traitors, which was done. The *Janizaries* hearing what was done, began to mutiny, uttering revengfull words against the Emperour : which *Bajazet* understanding, purposed to kill suddenly all the *Janizaries*, chiefly those about the Court and City, wherefore he sent for great numbers of the *Acanziz*, reputed the best sort of Common Souldiers ; most of the Bassaes to whom he imparted his device, much disliked it ; but *Alis* and *Ishender* Bassa of *Michael Oglis* Family, dissuaded him from it, alleading their number, courage, experience, &c. And, if he should kill all about *Constantinople*, yet all his strong holds being holden by other *Janizaries*, they would take up Armes in their own defence and friends revenge, which were likely to endanger himself and his whole Empire, besides his perpetuall dishonour.

The vigilant *Janizaries* getting an inkling thereof, more and more suspected the matter, both by the often and secret repaire of great men to Court, and also by the unwonted multitude of those *Acanziz* brought into the City.

Wherefore banding themselves together, they stood on their guard, and lighting on *Alis Beg*, coming from Court, opprobriously demanded of him, if he were one who had conspired their destruction, and had he not greatly protested and sworn to the contrary, they had presently slain him.

Bajazet seeing his purpose discovered, by others counsell; to colour his intention, proclaimed, that the *Janizaries* and others now assembled at *Constantinople*, should be ready against a day, to goe with him into *Moldavia*. But when he should set forward, the *Janizaries* joyned in order of battell by themselves, nor would they receive the Emperour into the mid'st of their ranks, as formerly, but shaking their weapons at him, told him, He had

had sought their destruction, bidding him (if he would) set his Executioners to work upon them, whom he should finde ready and able to defend themselves. Bajazet giving them good words, and using all meanes, by his Basso's, &c: to pacifie them, swearing by his Fathers holy Soul, he would not harme the meanest of them, with much ado they received Bajazet: who passing *Danubius*, entered *Moldavia*, and besieging strong *Achilleia* (now *Kele*) a Sea-Town, it was delivered him by composition, thence going to *Acgiemen* or *Asprocastron*, it was likewise surrendred after a months siege: so returning to *Constantinople*.

Bajazet fearing *Zemes* breaking forth, or his setting up by Christian Princes, offered great summs for his delivery to him: and *Charles* the French King purposing to invade *Greece* (after *Naple's* its Conquest) was wondrous desirous of him; also *Matthias* of *Hungary*, sought by all meanes to obtaine him: then also Pope *Innocent* the 8th, no lesse desirous of so great a pledge, with the large pension, so wrought by his cunning Legate, that the Grand Master delivered *Zemes* to him at *Rome* in 1488: wherefore he was honoured with the title of *Cardinall*. So *Zemes* remaining at *Rome*, all *Innocent's* and *Alexander* the 6th, their time, receiving for him 20000 Duckats yearly, till *Charles* passing through *Italy* against *Alphonso* of *Naples* in 1495, so terrified the Pope, furthering *Alphonso's* title, that among other conditions he was glad to give him his gracelesse Son *Cesar Borgia* in hostage, and to deliver *Zemes* unto him.

John Castriot, *Scanderbeg's* Son, aided by the *Venetians*, while *Bajazet* was busied against *Zemes*, overthrowing the *Turks* nigh *Croia* recovered much of *Epirus*: then also *Chernovich* an *Albanian* Prince (by the *Venetians* help) expulsed them out of that part of *Albania*: So that *Bajazet* was glad to suffer him to enjoy all he recovered, paying him a small tribute for the rest.

Bajazet, in revenge of the King of *Caramania* his aiding *Zemes*, raising a great Army, and marching along the *Asian* Countreyes in 1486, entred *Caramania*: whose King (knowing himself too weak) fortified his strong places, and retired into *Taurus* Straits, where he was in the most safety. *Bajazet* spoyling the Country most of the Summer, layed siege to the City *Tarsus*, soon making the Walls faultable by battery: the Citizens now offering to deliver it up reserving their lives, libertyes, and goods, which *Bajazet* accepted of and performed: not suffering any Souldiers more than needfull to enter: and Winter growing on, he dispersing his Souldiers round about, not suffering them to Till, Sow, &c: they were forced to yield to his devotion. Wherefore the *Caramanian* King obtaining aide of *Caytheim* the *Egyptian* Sultan, took the field the first of the Spring, though much inferiour to his puissant Enemy. So betwixt them was begun a terrible fight, which was maintained the whole day, with doubtfull Victory and great slaughter, new supplies coming in. The *Caramanian* seeing his overlaid Souldiers begin to give ground, so furiously brake with his guard and other valiant ones into the mid't of his Enemyes, that being forthwith environed, &c: his horse slaine, and fighting on foot, fell downe dead, having slaine divers *Turks* with his own hand: whose Souldiers now discouraged, fled, and were most slaine or taken: after which *Bajazet* over-running all, soon subdued the large Country of *Cilicia*. Then was there an auntient *Mahometan* Prince commanding most of *Trachea* in *Cilicia* with the famous City *Scandoloro*: who had long lived as a Neuter betwixt the *Christian* and *Caramanian* Kings; against which poore Prince (onely left in *Asia* the lesse) *Bajazet* turning his forces: he weighing his small power; offered to deliver up *Scandoloro* with all his territory, so *Bajazet* would give him other possessions for it in lesser

Asia:

Asia: which he accepting, became Lord of all the Sea-Coast, from *Bosphorus* to *Syria's* confines.

After this, he descending into the lesser *Armenia*, subjected all thereof, as of *Cappadocia*, belonging to the *Caramanian* Kings: so leaving *Mustapha Bassa* at *Iconium* with his *Asian* Army to keep under his new Conquests, himself triumphantly returned to *Constantinople* where he was joyfully received.

After which, *Bajazet* swelling in disdain against the *Egyptian* and *Syrian* Sultan, who had aided *Zemes*, and then the *Caramanian*, appointed in 1487, *Caragoses Bassa* with *Ishender*, to invade *Syria* with a strong Army, who being come to the utmost parts of *Cilicia*, *Aladentes* (King of the rude & fierce people, dwelling along mount *Taurus*) being in league with the Sultan, lay in Ambush in the Straits whereby the *Turks* must needs passe. *Ishender* marching in the *Avant* with many *Acanziz*, before he was aware, was so fiercely charged, that losing most of his men, the rest fleeing, he with his two Sons were taken: *Michael* the eldest being bound, was slain by one whose Brother he had there slain: whose head, *Aladentes* sending to *Ishender* to grieve him the more, he bid the Messenger not shew it him, but to bid his Master eat it if he would: wherewith *Aladentes* exceedingly moved, yet pitying the old man, set the younger soon at Liberty, sending *Ishender* Prisoner to *Carie*, where he remained 5 years; *Caragoses* discouraged, retired into *Cilicia*, and was commanded by *Bajazet* to *Constantinople*, as unfit for such an enterprize.

Next Spring 1488, *Bajazet* sent *Achmetes Bassa* with a far greater Army against the Sultan: who being come to the farthest of *Cilicia*, was at *Tzugar Ova* overthrown by the *Egyptians* and *Arabians*: himself fighting valiantly lost two fingers, and was sent Prisoner to *Caire*.

Bajazet rather incensed herewith, made the greatest preparation in 1489 by Sea and Land against the Sultan: sending

sending *Alis Bassa*, or *Calibem* with *Cherseogles* his Son in Law, with a great Army by land, requesting of the *Venetians* (in league with him) to refresh his Fleet upon occasion, in *Cyprus*: which the *Senate* denying, yet sent their Admirall with 30 Galleys for defence of *Cyprus*: who considering how secret and sudden the *Turks* designs were, he sent sundry Companies out of *Crete* into *Cyprus* for its better defence; but understanding all their Fleet to be met, and set forward, he hoist'd saile for *Cyprus*: the *Turkish* Fleet keeping on their course, met the land-Army neere Mount *Taurus*. *Caytheus* having sent *Usbeg* with a strong Army of *Mamalukes* and others to be in readinesse. He (though far inferiour to his Enemyes) expected not their comming into *Syria*, but met them not far from *Tarsus* of *Cilicia*: who so soon as come together, cheerfully joyned battell: which terrible fight was maintained all day with doubtfull Victory and exceeding slaughter: The Generalls with fresh supplies relieving their distressed. Night approaching, both Armyes (chiefly the *Turks*) wearied and weakened, retired to their Camps. But the *Egyptians* finding all their Carriages, Victuals, &c: gone which, (some say) the robberous borderers had done to please the *Turks*: others, that those in charge terrified with the *Turks* number, and battell's doubtfullnesse, fled along the Sea-side, and were spoiled by the *Turks* out of the Galleys, were sore troubled, fearing great extremities. Wherefore early in the morning they braved their Enemyes: which the *Turks* disdainng, set foreward with displayed Ensignes: there beginning such a desperately resolved fight, that one might have said, the former was but a play in comparison; none being seen to give ground, or look back: the *Janizaries* and *Mamalukes* Foot to Foot, spending their utmost force upon each other; *Usbeg* the while freshly charged the *Turks* with 15000 valiant Horse as a reserve, so that they began to give ground: which being made good again.

again by others brought on by the Bassaes, till the Sun's going downe, the battell was fiercer than before; then retiring to their Camps, not knowing yet who had the better.

The Bassaes finding scarce a third part of 100000 men, left, and most of them hurt, doubting to be set upon againe, fled away the same Night, leaving all behind them. The *Egyptians* also losing halfe of 70000, and wanting provision, were retired into Mount *Taurus*, not knowing of the *Turks* flight: Some passing into *Syria*, reported, the *Sultans* Army was overthrown; so uncertaine was the event of that battell. But *Aladenses* certifying them of their flight, and the espials confirming the same, *Usbeg* presently comming downe, entred the *Turks* Camp, finding plenty of all necessaryes for refreshment.

Aladenses with his *Varfacides*, robbed and slew many *Turks* in their returne, so stopping the passages, that the *Mamaluks* overtaking them, few remained alive to carry news home; *Calibeus* and *Cherseogles* being both taken and presented to *Caytheius*, with 18 *Sanzacks* Ensignes: *Bajazets* Navy also riding at *Orontes* mouth, was by tempest put from Anchor, and swallowed up of the Sea, or beaten in pieces upon the maine. Wherefore, with much adoe he concluded a Peace with the *Sultan*, restoring all places taken from him: the *Sultan* delivering him *Calibeus*, *Cherseogles*, *Achmetes*, and *Ishander*, with a number of other Prisoners.

Shortly after *Calibeus* died, having worthily governed *Egypt* with all *Africk*, unto *Cirene* Westward, and unto *Euphrates* Eastward: who through *Dultibe* his Wife's importunity, had joyned his Son *Mahometes* in the fellowship of the Kingdome, the better to enjoy it after his death: contrary to the *Mamaluk's* custome, who grudging to be defrauded of their wonted choice, slew *Mahometes*, and soon after four more, who aspired the King-

dome, setting up a *Sultan* of their own choyce.

About the time of the Peace concluded, *Charls* the French King greatly preparing against *Alphonfus* King of *Naples* gave out, that after its recovery, he would invade *Greece*: induced hereto chiefly by *Sfortia* Duke of *Millane* his solicitation, whereby *Italy* was sore shaken, and *Sfortia* himself at last dyed a Prisoner in *France*.

Alphonfus doubting the French Kings greatnesse, entred a confederacy with some States of *Italy*, chiefly with Pope *Alexander* the 6th: giving his base Daughter in Marriage to *Godfry Borgia* the Bishops Son, making him Prince of *Carinula*, entertayning his other Son *Francis* in great pay, in his Wars.

And by *Camillus*, his Embassadour, acquainted *Bajazet* what the French King purposed against them both, requesting him to aide him with 12000 Horse and Foot: Pope *Alexander* also, sending *George Bucciard* to *Bajazet*, to declare, with what power (after the French King had dispatched his Wars in *Italy*) he intended to passe into *Greece*: Wherefore he had been earnest with him for *Zemes*; yet he distrusting the French, and carefull for the State of *Italy*, had entred a league with *Alphonfus*, wanting nothing more than money: by which *Bajazet* (he said) might provide for the safety of *Greece*; *Rome* and *Naples* being the surest Walls of that side the *Othoman* Empire, &c. *Bajazet* knowing this to be true, thanked the Bishop for his timely admonition, &c: willing *Bucciard* to returne to his Master with one *Daurins* his Ambassadour, who should carry money and other secret resolves, writing a Greek Epistle, cunningly to perswade the Bishop to Poyson *Zemes*: promising him for this, 200000 Duckats, and never to take up Armes against the Christians.

But *George* and *Dautius* being about to land at *Ancona*, were boarded by *John Rovereus*, pretending a great sum due to him for his service done in Pope *Innocent's* time, & quit of their Treasure, and whatever else aboard, which, the Bishop much troubled, could never recover, though seeking recompence from the *Venetians*, who were to save the *Turks* harmless in those Seas, for *Rovereus* bearing upon the *French*, set at naught the Bishops curses and threats. *Dautius* being set on shoare, went to *Ancona*, and thence to *Gonzaga*, Duke of *Mantua*, and was by him, for auncient friendship with *Bajazet*, courteously entertained, and furnished with money and Apparell, so returning into *Greece*.

Bajazet forthwith sent *Mustapha Bassa*, to Pope *Alexander* with like instructions, who comming safely to *Rome*, among many things in charge, the life of *Zemes*, was, that he most sought for of the Bishop. *Charls* the French King then in 1495, passing thorow *Italy*, against *Alphonssus*, and so thorow *Rome*, so terrified *Alexander* the Bishop, that he yielded to all conditions he demanded (not purposing the performance of any) giving him *Cesar Borgia* his Sonne in hostage, then a Cardinal, covering the disgrace with his Sonnes Title of *Legate*, and was forced to deliver him *Zemes*: who to the Bishop's profit, had remained seven yeares there in custody, who three dayes after, died at *Caieta*, thought to be poysoned before, by a wondrous white and pleasant powder, cunningly mingled with the Sugar which *Zemes* drank with water, whose dead body sent to *Bajazet*, was by his appointment honourably interred at *Prusa*: *Borgia* also deceiving his Keepers at *Velitras*, returned to *Rome* before *Charls* came to *Naples*: which wicked imp, shortly after, envying *Candianus* his Brother, General of the Bishops forces, then great, having supped together with their Mother, caused him to be murdered going home, and his body to be cast into *Tiber*. Then casting off his

Cardinal's Robes, took on him the leading of his Fathers Army. And with exceeding prodigality, exhausting his Fathers Coffers, and the Church Treasures, bound to him desperate Russians and Souldiers, chiefly *Spaniards*, his Fathers Countreymen: which proceedings, his Father winked at, fearing, it was thought, to be murdered of him, himself. He now became a terror to the Roman Nobility and Signiories thereabouts, by his Fathers help, desiring to make him great; drave the Family of the *Columnii* out of the City, then out of *Italy*: and poysoning or killing the honourable of the *Ursine* and *Caetane* Families, took their possessions: strangling at once 4 Nobles of the *Camertes*, and driving *Guido Feltrius* out of *Urbis*, taking *Pisaurum* from *John Sfortia*, hardly escaped his hands: and driving the *Malatestaes* out of *Ariminum*, thrusting the Lady *Catherine Sfortia* out of *Forum Liuli*, and *Cornelii*, shamefully leading her in triumph thorow *Rome*. And shedding blood without measure, he took *Faventia* from young *Astor Manfredus*, whom having abused against Nature, he caused to be strangled, and cast into *Tiber*: But he being with his Father at a solemn Supper in the *Vaticane*, prepared to destroy some Cardinals, and other chief Citizens, they were both poysoned by a waiter's mistaking the Flagon of poysoned Wine, prepared for the guests, the Bishop dying few dayes after; but his Sonne, the same being more allayed with water, died not a long time after, yet was so sick, that he was soon forsaken of his followers; seeing two of his enemies, *Pius* the 3d, and *Julius* the 2d, sitting in his Fathers place, *Pius* enjoying it but 16 dayes: whom *Julius* succeeding, caused *Caesar Borgia* to be shut up in a Castle, whence he freed him upon delivery of some strong Holds held by his Garrisons, who fleeing to *Ostia*, and so by Sea to *Naples*, he was for fear of raising new stirs in *Italy*, apprehended by *Ferdinand*, King of *Spain's* Command, and imprisoned in *Spain* in *Medina* Castle: where, after three years,

years, he escaping by a rope, from a high Tower, fled to the King of *Navarre*, in whose Warres he was in a hot skirmish, though he got the Victory, slain with a small shot, whose body found stript, and brought to the King on a bad Beast, was honourably buried at *Pampilona*.

But the French King having lost *Zemes* by death, and *Borgia* by escape, journied toward *Naples*, all places yielding to him as he went, without much resistance. *Alphonſus* destitute of requested aid, and most of the Nobility hating him, for too severely punishing the late rebellious, the Princes of *Sarne* and *Salerne* being chief: and the people murmuring at their heavy exactions for these Warres maintenance, with teares in sight of the *Neopolitans*, resigned his Kingdom to his Sonne *Ferdinand*, scarce reigning a year after his Fathers death, passing over to *Mazerea* in *Sicilia*: *Ferdinand* was, to the wondrous content of the *Neapolitans*, with joy, &c. saluted King, returning presently to his Army: by which time the French King was with his forces entred far into *Naples*, and having taken divers Cities by assault, struck the *Neapolitans* with a general terror. *Ferdinand* had taken the Straits of *St. Germanes* Forrest, to hinder *Charls* his further passage; but suddenly hearing that *Columna* had broken by the *Appenines*, into *Campania*, he doubting to be shut up betwixt two Armies, retired to *Capua*, where through the River *Vulturius* deepness, he purposed to stop the French; but news being brought, that the Citizens of *Naples* were all up in Arms, doubting which way to turn; he, troub'd, leaving his Army and *Capua* in charge to his Captains, rode back post to *Naples*: by whose arrivall, every man laying down his Arms, generally welcommed him: who earnestly requesting them not to betray him their natural King unto his cruel enemies, &c. they all answered, they would spend themselves in his quarrel, while keeping his Army whole, and defending *Capua*; but if the *Aragonians* should be o-

The Life of Mahomet II,

verthrow, or abandon that City, and the French King approach *Naples*, he should against reason and equity exact his Subjects fidelity: So exposing City and Country thereabouts to be spoiled, &c. *Charls* the while, being come to *Capua*, the Citizens, though ever affected to the *Arragon* Kings, yet (the French King bearing down all before him) they consulted of yielding up the City: and the rather, through the revolt of *Trivultius* and his followers, which caused *Verginius & Petilianus* to flee to *Nola* with their Companies. The French hereupon entering the Suburbs, *Gothfredus & Gaspar*, two valiant *Germanes*, sallied forth with their Companies; and having valiantly repulsed the French, in their return were shut out of the Gate, and in danger of the enemy: who on their knees, entreating the cowardly Citizens on the Walls, not so to betray their friends, &c. at length were received ten by ten, in at one Gate, and put out at another, farthest from the enemy; who going towards *Naples*, met with the King at *Aversa*, declaring what had hapned at *Capua*, who notwithstanding, came to its very Gates, calling on divers chief ones to be let in; but none answering him, and a French Ensign being on the Wall, he returned to *Naples*, where he found the Gates shut against him, and all the Citizens in Arms, not willing to receive any but the King himself; for it was famed, that all his chief Captains were gone to the enemy, or fled, the Army broken up, and *Capua* yielded: wherefore they began to contemn *Ferdinand*, who fetching a compasse, came to the Castle, whereinto he was received; but foreseeing, he should there be besieged by Sea and Land, he commending it to valiant *Davalus* his keeping, departed with 20 Gallies, to the Island *Anuria*, not farre off; But *Iustus*, the Captain of the Castle, traiterously shut the Gates against him: wherewith the Prince wondrously perplexed, with inreaty and remembrance of his Fathers, and his own benefits bestowed on him, he prevailed with *Iustus* so, as to come

come in but himself alone : So opening a Port, *Ferdinand* suddenly at his entrance stab'd him to the heart, in the midst of his Souldiers : the Warders dismayed with his look, at his Command let in all his followers : the day after whose departure from *Naple's* Castle, *Charls* was received with such triumph by the *Neopolitans*, as if restored to perfect liberty : and soon after that Castle, with all strong holds thereabouts, were yielded to the French : all the Princes and people submitting unto *Charls* his power. All being lost, *Ferdinand*, from *Aenaria*, departed to *Sicilie* : the House of *Arragon* losing that Kingdom in lesse than 5 moneths ; about 63 years after it was taken from the French by *Alphonfus* the Elder. When the *Turks* saw the French Ensigns displayed on the Walls, all along *Calabria* and *Salern's* Coast, many of them, along *Epirus* and *Macedonia's* Coast forsook their charge for fear of the Christians in *Greece* beginning to lift up their heads, chiefly the wild *Acroceranni* in *Epirus* borders, who taking Arms, refused *Turkish* Tribute.

Both Christian Princes and the *Turk*, doubted whether *Charls* his greatness would grow : many thinking he affected the *Roman* Empire, and Monarchy of *Italy*. Pope *Alexander*, and *Maximilian* then Emperour, being troubled : *Bajazet* also fearing the turning of his forces into *Epirus* or *Greece* ; and *Ferdinand* of *Spain* no lesse careful for *Sicilie* ; *Sfortia* also, shortly after, Duke of *Millane*, the occasion of his coming and great aider, began to doubt of the King, who little reckoned of his promise, so he might enlarge his Dominions : and the *Venetians*, who had stood as *Newters*, doubted to lose some part of their own Territory, before hoping to share something for themselves, by the *Arragonians* and French, weakening each other.

Wherefore the said Christian Princes, concluded a strong League among themselves, that if any one should warre on any Prince, to do it on their own charge; but if invaded by others, every one, of their own charge, to send four thousand Horse, and ten thousand Foot, to aid their Confederate: the league being for twenty years; and if it pleased *Bajazet*, as other Princes, especially, who for fear had offered ayd to the *Venetians* by Sea and Land, against the *French*: whose King the League troubled more, although pretended for their own safety onely; wherefore placing Garrisons in all strong holds of *Naples*, and *Mompenser* his Viceroy, he returned with the rest, purposing by the way to terrifie the Bishop, if possible, from the League, and then to deal with *Sfortia* as he might; but being come to *Rome*, *Alexander* was fled to *Perusium*. *Charls* stayed 3 dayes violating none, but those of the *Arragonian* faction. Thence marching to *Pisa*, and passing the *Alps*, he was set upon by *Gonsaga* Duke of *Manua*, General of the *Venetians* and *Sfortia*, to stop his passage, who being in great danger, lost his Tents, with all his rich spoil; yet repulsing his enemies with great slaughter, got safely home: this was at the River *Taurus*, about which time, *Ferdinand* returning to *Naples*, was joyfully received by the Citizens, and by help chiefly of *Gonsalvus*, sent by *Ferdinand* of *Spain*, recovered the Kingdom within a year; and dying without issue, left it unto his Uncle *Fredericus*: the chief Government of this one Kingdom, being six times changed in lesse than three years: *Fredericus* being as unfortunate as the rest, and *Charls* the French King soon after suddenly dying, as he came from *Tennise*, but twenty seven years old, leaving *France* with *Naples* its Title to *Lewis*, who with great trouble, conquered it, and with greater grief lost it.

But *Bajazet* now delivered of feares, by *Bali-beg Sanzack* of *Silistra*, invading *Podolia* and *Russia*, part of
the

the *Polonians* Kingdom, did great harm, carrying away many Prisoners, but coming the second time in like manner, Winters extream cold being come on, they were, in return, denied passage and Victuals, by *Stephen* Prince of *Moldavia*; so that going all along the Sea-Coast, many straglers were cut off by the *Moldavians*, the rest perishing by cold, want, and wayes fowlness, so that very few came home: 40000 being reported to be lost. He sending also *Cadumes* into *Illyria*, spoyling it, with a part of *Croatia*, 9000 *Croatians* and *Hungarians* under *Francopaine*, encountring them, were worked, above 7000 being slain and drowned in the River *Morava*, the rest fleeing thorow Woods and Mountains: the overthrow was imputed to the General, who would fight in field, though entreated by *Torquatus* to keep the Straits for advantage. *Torquatus* lost all his Horsemen, whose Horse being killed; he fought on Foot till he was slain. The Bassa sent all the Noses of the Christians, put on strings, as a present to *Bajazet*.

Louis the 12th of *France*, writing himself Duke of *Millan*, as descended of *John Galeatus*, resolving to warre upon *Sfortia*, and seeking above all others, to draw the *Venetians* into a fellowship, made a firm League with them, promising them for their ayd, the City *Cremona*, with all about *Abdua*, which was afterwards performed. *Sfortia* farre too weak, tryed to set *Maximilian* with the States of *Germany*, upon the French King: which notwithstanding, he offered to hold his Dukedom of the King for a yearly Tribute: all meanes being in vain proved, he certified *Bajazet* of the confederation, & that their intent was, he being oppressed, and some other *Italian* States, to invade his Dominions, &c. The Duke hoping to busie the *Venetians*, by bringing the Turk upon them: the *Florence* Embassadors also pricking the Turk forward, for malice against the *Venetians*, who protected the *Pisans* against their oppression. *Bajazet* calling to minde the former in.

injuries of the *Venetians*, in aiding *John Castriot* and *Chernovich*, and denying his Fleet to put into *Cyprus*, promised, as glad of an opportunity, to do what they requested: wherefore in 1499, greatly preparing by Sea and Land, he caused *Scander-Bassa* with 12000 Horse, too break into *Frinli*, on *Italies* frontiers: who passing great Rivers, and entering, burned and destroyed as farre as *Liquentia*, carrying away all the people; but being come to late (for the *French* and *Venetians* had before, unresisted, driven out *Sfortia*) he at *Tiliauentum*, put 4000 prisoners to the Sword, and so returned laden with spoil.

Bajazet setting forth a greater Fleet than any of his Predecessors, marched himself with a great Army, along the Sea-coast of *Morea*; so that what they could, they kept in sight of each other: the *Venetians* also setting forth a Fleet under *Grimani* their Admiral, for strength, skill, &c. superiour, though in number inferiour: whom the *Turks* braving, yet durst not (at first) joyn battel, but crept along the Coast: the *Venetians* troubling them, never departed from them, accounting it good service, if they could but keep them from landing in any place of their Territory. The longer they thus sailed, the more was the State of *Venice* offended with their Admiral, delaying to fight, suffering them to draw nearer and nearer to their Territory: while all expected some great exploit to be done, news came, that the *Turks* Fleet had put into *Sapientia* Haven, in *Sphraga* Island, to water, and were there embayed by the *Venetians*: most were joyful, as of an assured Victory; but others said, the place was such, that the enemy might depart at pleasure; yet they all thought, the Admiral would set upon them in their comming out: which he attending to do, it hapned that *Lauredanns* and *Armenius* comming from *Corcira* to the battel, first began the fight, and with two nimble Ships boarded a tall *Turkish* Ship, like a Castle, whereof one *Baruch*, a *Smyrna* Pyrate, was Captain, who perceiving, after

after long fight, he must either yield or be taken, fired his ship, whereby the *Venetians*, grappled to her, were all 3 burnt, some leaping over board were taken up, and some perished. Some few other ships assailed the *Turks*, putting them in fear; but most of the *Venetian* Gallies looking on a far off, the other doing what they could, retired to them; But it plainly appeared, the *Venetian* Admiral let slip a notable victory. After this, the *Turks* holding on their course, the *Venetians* followed them, and faintly setting on them at the gulf of *Patrus*, suffered them to recover it: many lying aloof, afraid to fight, so that *Dantes* the *Turks* Admiral purposing to run ashore, and flee to the Land Army if overcharged, now recovered the desired gulf, though with losse of some Gallies. *Bajazet* being come to *Lepanto* within that gulf, by the coming of his Fleet, hardly besieged it by Sea and Land: which they of the City seeing, yielded it to *Bajazet* on composition.

Grimanus returning to *Venice*, was cast into prison, and though never man in *Venice* was more impugned with spight, or defended by friends; yet he was banished into one of the *Abystides* Islands on *Liburnia's* coast; *Bajazet* returning with victory to *Constantinople*.

Next year 1500, *Bajazet* putting a stronger and greater Fleet to Sea, himself with an Army of 150000 entred into *Peloponesus*, encamping before *Modon*, then under the *Venetians*, where his Foot met him; who making 3 great breaches in the walls, he so terribly assaulted it twice, that the foremost was trodden to death by them which followed; yet he was glad to retire from the walls, having filled the ditches with slain *Turks*. *Trivissamus* the *Venetian* Admiral, lying at *Zante* (far too weak for the enemy) at first sent two Gallies full of men and munition in relief of the besieged, and doubting their farther wants, sent 3 resolute Captains with 3 great Gallies with necessaries; who with a full wind, &c. breaking

thorow

thorow the *Turks* Fleet, ran a ground under *Medon's* walls, the besieged having so barred the haven, that they could not get in; who running by heaps towards the Sea, to receive their new-come aid, divers places of the City were left without Defendants: which the *Janizaries* perceiving, entred with little or no resistance; who making way for the rest, they slew all in their way, with all thole newly landed out of the Gallies: also the two Governours, with *Falco* the Bishop in his Pontificalibus: none escaping but those reserved for slavery, or beauty to the victor's loſt, 1000 of whom, being bound together in ropes were ſlain in fight of *Bajazet's* Pavilion; *Corone*, and *Pylus* (now *Navarrinum*) terrified herewith, yielded to *Bajazet* on Composition; *Criffeum* also, now *Caput St: Galli*, was taken by *Cherſeogles*; *Nauplium* was besieged by *Haly Bassa*, but defended by the *Venetians*. *Bajazet* fortifying, new peopling, and garrifoning *Medon*, returned to *Constantinople*.

Trivisanus dying in 1501 of grief (as ſome ſuppoſed) the Senate ſent *Piſaurius* in his place, who following the enemy (then departing from *Nauplium* even to *Helleſpontus* Straits) took above 20 of their ſhips and Gallies, that ſtragled or tarried behind, taking *Agina* Iſland in his return, and landing in divers places, left the *Turks* a woſul remembrance of his being there; then meeting with *Gonſalvus* the great (ſent by *Ferdinand* of *Spain* to aid him) at *Zante*, he invaded *Cephalania*, in vain attempted the year before by *Trivisanus*; the *Turks* in defence of the City fighting it out to the laſt man, and at length, was taken by *Gonſalvus* his good conduct, the whole Iſland forth with yielding to the *Venetians*.

Piſaurius repairing the City, and ſtrongly garrifoning the Iſle departed to *Corcyra*, where being advertized, that the *Turks* were rigging a great Fleet againſt Spring, ſome lying in *Ambracia* Bay, ſome at *Eanto*, the reſt in *Helleſpontus* Straits, he to avert the *Turks* from perceiving his

his secret purpose, sent most of his Fleet to *Neritos* Isle, to put the Inhabitants in fear, and himself coming to the Bay of *Ambracia* (whose entrance is but half a mile over) but by and by opening with a great widnesse, the *Turks* thinking him to have been at *Neritos*, burnt a great *Turkish* Galley, carrying away 11 more laded with munition, and victual, the *Turks* vainly endeavouring to have sunk him from shore in going forth; who returned to *Corcyra*, with his prey, and ere long he recovered *Pylos* Castle in *Morea*; But *Camalia* a *Turkish* Pirate, putting in there by chance, took 3 Gallies left there for defence; the faint-hearted Caprain, yielding him the Castle on composition, which being twice in one year yielded to the *Turks*, the Captains were both beheaded. *Pisaurius* attempted to burn the *Turks* Gallies in the River *Eante*; but they by the losse at *Ambracia*, did now more warily look to them: so that 200 resolute Souldiers, being sent in small vessels up the River, they being by the way encountered by the *Turks*, were forced to return, and the wind rising with such a stiffe and contrary gale at the Rivers mouth, they were driven a shore on each side, falling into the hands of their mercilesse enemies.

Bajazet (then about) took also *Dyrrachium* (now *Durazzo*) from the *Venetians* (before ruinous and almost quire abandoned) the *Turks* having got all the Countrey about it, who sore pressed with these long wars, had oft craved aid, and now *Lewis* of *France*, sent the Lord *Ravestien* with 10 Ships and 15 Gallies, to aid the *Venetians*; who coming to *Melos*, *Pisaurius* soon arrived there also: and mutually departing to invade *Lesbos*, landed, and besieged *Mytilene*, soon making a fair breach in the wall; *Pisaurius* the while, sayling with part of his Fleet to *Tenedos*, the *French*, some write, reporting, that some *Turkish* Gallies were coming thither out of *Hellepont*, to withdraw *Pisaurius*, that they (in his absence) might carry away the honour, and spoil of the Town. Others blame *Pisaurius* as departing

departing through envy of the *French* their honour, which is hard to be believed. The *French* furiously assaulting the breach (though the *Venetian* Vice-Admiral earnestly requested its deterring, and to expect *Pisaurius* his return) were valiantly repulsed by the *Turks*, and (though many fell on both sides) they were forced to retire; whereupon the *French* Admiral purposing to depart, the *Venetian* Admiral returning, perswaded him to stay: the battery beginning with a greater fury than before; and as they were consulting of a fresh assault, news came, that the *Turks* were coming for relief; who being but few, were partly taken and cast over board, few getting to Land, saved themselves in Woods, &c. The *Venetians* now courageously assailed the breach, and having twice gained the top of the Rampiers were yet beaten down: the *French* looking on many valiant ones, being there slain and hurt. A Pinnace then coming with news, that the Master of the *Rhodes* was coming with his Gallies to the siege, the Admirals determined to maintain it till then. But *Ravesten* next day (changing his purpose) departed to *Chios*, thence towards *Italy*, and by a terrible tempest, the Admiral-Galley with two others and 800 Souldiers were lost, the Admiral himself (with 40 others) being (by a chance) saved, who recovered *Tarentum* with his weather-beaten Fleet. *Pisaurius* forsaken, and the Master of the *Rhodes* not coming, departed to *Chios*, thence to *Paros*, where finding the Master of the *Rhodes*, he imputed the not winning of *Mytilene*, to the *French*-inconstancy; who also, where they came, blamed him as much or more: who, in 1502, coming to *Melos* found one *Richius* a *Turkish* arch-Pirate; who, being driven a shore, was taken by the Islanders: whom (for his exceeding cruelty towards some Christians) *Pisaurius* tyed to a spit, and had him roasted to death with a small fire, so wintering at *Coreyra*. And next Spring, with some Gallies sent him by Pope *Alexander*, sailed to *Neritos*, now *St. Maura*, parted from the firm

firm Land, (with a little fret of the Sea) by the *Corinthians*, who suddenly surprizing it, cast up two great Trenches: so that 3000 *Turks* horse coming at low water over the strait, were with losse repulsed; whereupon, the City and Island was yielded to *Pisaurius*.

The *Venetians* weary of the war, sent *Manifus* to *Bajazet* for Peace: who stood on such terms, that nought was concluded; yet he got *Bajazet* to send with him an Embassadour to *Venice*, to propound his own conditions; who having audience twice, his unreasonable conditions were by the Senate rejected and himself dismissed.

Next year 1503, they sent an Embassadour to *Bajazet*, who (through his subjects complaints of harms received from the *Venetians*, and want of trade, fearing also troubles in *Asia*) hearkened more willingly to peace than before: *Phriscus* returning honourably rewarded by *Bajazet*, and with far more reasonable conditions, the *Venetians* sent *Gritti*, well known to *Bajazet* for his former traffique, and whose life was spared at the winning of *Modon* at *Cherseogles* intercession, who concluded a peace: That the *Venetians* should deliver up *Neritos* and *Leucadia*, reserving the Isle *Cephalenia* only: and that *Bajazet* should restore all Merchants goods taken in the wars, and they safely to traffique in the Euxine Sea, having their Consul at *Constantinople* as formerly: also their Territory to be separated from the *Turks*, by certain bounds. This firm peace was in 1503 after 5 years wars: in which year, *Bajazet* with a great and puissant Army, (met at *Sophia*) purposed as was thought to invade *Hungaria*, but doubting the successe, he leaving *Achmetes* with his *Asians*, went with the rest to reduce the rebellious of *Albania*, sending a Fleet to stop the Sea passages; but the people fleeing into the rockie Mountains, did the *Turks* much harm; who yet, mounning those difficult places, slew an exceeding number of them, carrying away all women and children, and desolating the Countrey with fire and

and sword; thence returning to *Manastirum*, *Bajazet* (on the way) met with a Dervissar or beggarly *Turkish* Monk (apparelled but with two sheeps-skins, and a great ring in each ear) who approaching him (as for an alms) assailed him with a short Scimiter under his habit; but *Bajazet's* horse starting at the hobgoblins approach, he partly avoided the blow (yet somewhat wounded) who being about to double his stroke, *Ishender* striking him down with his Mace, he was rent in pieces by the Souldiers; wherefore, all of that order were banished his Empire.

After these troubles, *Bajazet* quietly spent most of his time in Philosophies study, and conference with the learned (to which he was naturally most inclined, though his State and men of warrs desire, drew him oft involuntarily into the field) the Civil government being referred to his three chief Bassaes. After 5 years thus spent, of a neglected spark arose a great fire in *Asia*, kindled by 2 *Persians*, *Chasan Chelisse*, and *Schach Culi* his boy; who fleeing thither under a shew of holinesse, raised such diversity of opinions, about *Mahomet's* true successour, and afterwards such rebellion, as that the one yet remains, the other was (with great blood-shed) in a good while, not appeased. The ground of which troubles, and the mortal wars between *Hyfmael*, *Sophie of Persia*, and *Selimus I*, was from one *Haidar* or *Harduelles*, honourably descended among the *Persians*, who (*Usan Cassanes* there reigning) contemning honour, riches, pleasure, &c. led such a strict life, that the vulgar wondring at that in him, which they neither could or would imitate, began to have him in singular admiration: Multitudes resorting to *Tauris* out of *Persia* and *Armenia*, to see this accounted new Prophet; who (reviving the opinion of *Giuni*) inveighed against the opinion concerning *Mahomet's* true successours, perswading the people (as if inspired) that no *Mahometan* should inherit Heaven after death; but the followers of *Haly*, *Mahomet's* true successours and fellow in writing

to whose mind he was privie, whose writings were authenticall, therefore only to be honoured: rejecting *Eubek'r*, *Omer* and *Osman* with their writings, as accursed, whom the *Turks* do honour as his true successours and interpreters; as also *Haly*, whom the *Persians* only acknowledge, praying for him, and cursing the other in their prayers: which difference, is a chief cause of their mortal wars, and not the divers interpretation of their Law.

Usun Cassanes, either moved with *Haiders* vertues, or to win the hearts of the multitude, gave him *Martha* begotten of *Despina*, *Calo-Joannes* of *Trapezond* his Daughter; who was freely to exercise Christian Religion as the Emperour covenanted with *Usun*, whereby *Martha* was a Christian also: who soon bare *Haider* a Son called *Hysmael*, whom she so trained up in her Principles, that he obtaining the Kingdom of *Persia* never found fault with the Christians Religion.

Haider, graced with this marriage, grew into greater estimation than before: so that his doctrine and followers increasing, *Jacup* succeeding his dead father *Usun*, distrusted lest the *Persians* (secretly favouring their ancient Kings posterity) should raise some dangerous rebellion before he was well settled. Wherefore, he caused *Haiden* his brother in Law to be secretly murdered, with fire and sword persecuted the professors of that new doctrine. *Hysmael* (then a child) escaping his Uncles fury, fled to *Pyrehales* his Fathers friend, ruling in a small Territory of *Hircania*.

Amongst others that fled, *Chasan Shelif*, and *Schach Culi*, (afterwards surnamed *Cuselbas*) came into the lesser *Armenia*, dwelling at the Mountain *Antitaurus*: at whose foot the broken rocks have obscure Caves, made by art and nature: which place being called *Tokeili*, divers historians have called *Schach Culi*, *Techellie*. The place being very wholesom; and pleasant for variety of Springs

and fruits, wherewith the Plains are alway watered, and the Mountains garnished.

Here they contemplatively and austere lived for divers years with such things as the earth of it self afforded, whom afterwards, the Shepherds on the Mountains, and Countrey people wondring at their devoutness, relieved with necessaries: *Bajazet* lending them 6 or 7000 Aspers as his alms. But when they told fortunes, prognosticating things to come, the people firmly thought them divine Prophets: and being first drawn into villages, were afterwards (as if against their wills) into Cities, filling the Country far and near with their fame; but publishing their doctrine about *Mahomet's* true successour, they wanted not followers, perswaded by them, they should be condemned for ever, if they did not only reverence, but call on *Hali*, next to the great Prophet himself: and commanded their Disciples to wear a red band or riband on their Hats, whereby to be known from others: whence they were, and yet are (over all the East) called *Cuselba's*, that is, *Red-heads*.

Hyfmael also, embracing his Fathers superstition, being grown a man, and eloquent, comely, wise and courageous, was (of the rude vulgar) accounted of, more like a god than a man: Also Noblemen, &c. allured with his new doctrine, ceased not to commend him in the highest degree; who (as yet but a youth) seemed to make no reckoning of riches, honour, fame, or authority: some also swearing, that *Haider* (calculating his Nativity) said, He should prove a great Prophet, and the Author of true Religion; who subduing most of the East, should be as glorious as was *Mahomet* himself: which report occasioned the vulgar to talk of wonders. *Hyfmael*, was afterwards surnamed *Sophos*, that is, a wise man, or the god's Interpreter. *Jacup* being (with his Son) poisoned by his adulterous wife, whom he forcing to drink of the same
cup,

cup, and striking off her head, presently died with his Sons after which, troubles arose; divers great ones aspiring the Kingdom in order, not long enjoying it: *Elvan-Beg* being then mightily impugned by his brother *Moratchamius*.

Hyfmael taking this opportunity, arming divers of his most able men, with some small aid from *Pyrchales*, entred *Armenia*; and more by fame and good will, than force, recovered his Fathers inheritance, growing stronger, & stronger by the continual repairing of such, who having received *Haiders* doctrine, had long (for fear) dissembled the same, and besieging the City *Sumachia* in *Media's* confines; he took and sacked it, enriching and Arming his Souldiery: after which, he thought how to compass the great City *Tauris*, the *Persian* Kings Seat, and then the Kingdom; wherefore, coming thither with his Army, before any such thing was feared, *Elvan* was there, who had lately vanquished *Moratchamius*; after which, he had severely executed divers chief Citizens of *Tauris*, who had taken his brother's part, whereby the Citizens were so alienated from him, that upon *Hyfmael's* approach, they were ready to forsake him: whereof *Hyfmael* was before informed. *Elvan*, as dismayed, fleeing out of the City, the gates were set open to *Hyfmael*; for the Citizens (before suffering great calamities by the brothers contention) saw now an open way to preferment, by receiving *Hyfmael's* reformed Religion; who entring the City, slew some of the King's Guard, raising *Jacup's* stately Tomb, and in revenge of his Father's death, had his bones digged up and scattered abroad, razing also his memoriall out of all the City.

Hyfmael (knowing that while *Elvan* lived, his conquest was not assured) augmented his Army to the utmost, furnishing them with Arms out of the King's Armoury: and had news that the *Persian* King was coming

from *Scyras* with a great Army against him, and that *Moratchamus* (forgetting former quarrels) had raised an Army about *Babylon*, to joyn with him; who, nothing terrified, resolved to go against them, and letting forward, encouraged his Souldiers resolutely to follow him (a leader given them of God) to an assured victory: So coming with incredible celerity, to *Mount Niphates* (parting *Armenia* from *Assyria*, *Elvan* purposing shortly to passe over it, had sent his Scouts to discover the Straits, and Pioniers to make the waies more commodious; wherefore, *Hyfmael* advancing his Ensigns up the Mountains, and discomfiting those who kept the passages, came furiously down, assailing the King in his Camp at the Mountains foot, whereby such a hurly-burly was raised in the Camp, that the King could scarce give order what to have done. &c. so that *Hyfmael* giving a fierce on-set, a most bloody battel began: and assailing the Kings Foot, with three squadrons at once; put them to flight, before the Horsemen could arm and mount; the King was glad to run too and fro, to encourage his men, and stay his discomfited, yea, and to come to handy blows himself; But his Souldiers, not being able to execute his sudden directions, he resolutely thrusting himself into the head of his battel, and valiantly fighting, was slain; whereupon, the Horsemen first, then all the rest, fled.

Hyfmael (having had little losse) possessed the enemies Tents, not much pursuing them, but reposing there some daies with his wearied Army. Then Embassadors from divers places, yielding their Towns unto him, &c. he marched to *Scyras*, where he was joyfully received, and his Army relieved with all things; *Hyfmael* there often preaching of the excellency of his Fathers doctrine, strictly proclaimed all them to be

as his enemies, who, within 30 dayes, did not renounce their old Superstition, and receive his new found verity: the which, by proposing rewards, and denouncing threat, he soon drew all the vulgar to embrace. Then paying his Souldiers with *Seyra's* riches, and furnishing them with Armour there, cunningly made of Iron and Steel, and the juice of certain herbs, better than in *Europe*, he departed and took the two great Cities of *Sapha*, supposed to be *Susa*, and *Sultania*, deemed for its wondrous ruines, to be *Tigranocertum*: then passing *Tigris*, into *Mesopotamia*, to expulse *Moratchamus* out of *Babylon*: who terrified with his Brothers calamity, withdrew into the remotest parts, expecting some better fortune. *Hysmael*, thus become a terrour to all the Princes of the East, entered into *Mesopotamia*, after the flight of *Moratchamus*, receiving it all into subjection, every one striving to purchase his favour thereby; so that *Moratchamus* trussing up his things of greatest price, fled with his Wives and Children into *Arabia*. Some calling him *Mara Beg*, the *Turks* *Imirsa-Beg*, who they say, marrying afterwards *Bajazets* Daughter, and recovering part of the *Persian* Kingdom, was murdered by some of his Nobles, whom he purposed secretly to put to death. *Hysmael* returning out of *Affyria* into *Media*, took in the late *Persian* King's strong Holds, yet there; and returning into *Armenia*, warred on the *Albanians*, *Iberians*, and *Scythians* on the *Caspian* borders, who through long civill Warres, had neither payed tribute for 4 years, nor now sent any honourable message as they were wont, and as was expected. But nothing made *Hysmael* more spoken of, than his innovation in *Mahometanism*; for he brought a new form of Prayer into their Temples: whereby *Ebubekir*, *Homer*, and *Osman* with their writings, began to be condemned, and *Haly* exalted as the true Successor; commanding his Subjects to wear some red Hatband-lace, &c. on their Hats, to be known from other *Mahometans*,

which they still observing, are called *Cuselba's*, or Red-heads; and was soon so beloved and honoured, that his sayings and commands were accounted Oracles and Lawes; they swearing by his head, solemnly to confirm anything: saying, *Hyssmael* grant thy desire, when they wished any one well: upon whole Coyn was on one side words to this effect, There are no Gods but one, and *Mahomet* is his Messenger: on the other side, *Hyssmael* the Vicar of God.

Chasan Chetife, and *Techellis* the while, in 1508, having gathered a great Army, invaded the *Turks* Dominion; for now, such a desire of that new superstition possessed the peoples mindes in general, that 10000 of them met first at the City *Tascia*, at the foot of *Antitaurus*, or else at *Attalia*, on a Fair day: where they executed the chief Magistrate; setting his quarters on 4. of the highest Towers of the City, all swearing never to forsake their Captains, nor refuse any hazard for honour of their most holy Religion, as they would have it. These Ring-leaders considering the money brought in by the Countrey people, was not sufficient to maintain such a multitude, gave their followers proclaimed-leave to forrage the Countrey, and live on the Spoil of those who received not their new Doctrine: whereupon, bringing store of Cartel, &c. into the Camp, they, their multitude increasing, entred *Lycaonia*, and roaming up and down many dayes, the whole Country so feared them, that those in the Villages, fled with Wives, Children, and Goods into *Iconium*; for Proclamations were set up; proposing large blessings, spiritual and temporal, to such as followed their established Doctrine in *Persia*; but to the obstinate, after their Sword once drawn, utter destruction; so that the Inhabitants thereabouts for one cause or other, resorted daily to them. While the *Turks* were preparing to suppress them, some Troops of Horse came timely to these Prophets, from *Hyssmael*: who a little before, by

Mes-

Messengers, had exhorted them courageously to proceed in so religious an enterprise, promising them skilful leaders, and Coyn from time to time; for *Hysmael* bearing an old grudge against *Bajazet*, for former Warres betwixt *Turks* and *Persians*, disagreeing also in their Superstition, and heat of youth pricking him on, greatly desired in this his prosperous success, to have occasion of warring with him: sending Embassadors to the State of *Venise*, to joyn with them in league, as before with *Usun Cassanes* his Grandfather, chiefly requesting them to send him men skilful in casting Ordnance, and with their Fleet to trouble *Bajazet* by Sea, he promising by filling *Asia* the lesse with his Land-Army, to give them occasion of recovering all places they lost in the late Warres to the *Turks*.

The *Venetians* answered, they would never forget the ancient league, &c. being wondrous glad, that *Hysmael* was the *Turks* enemy, &c. But the Embassadors, such was the badness of the *Venetians* State and condition, obtaining no more than the hope of a league to be in time concluded, returned to *Cyprus*: thence to *Syria*, where having secret conference with *Zenus*, Governour of the *Venetian* Merchants at *Damasco*, *Bajazet* grievously complained unto *Gaurus* the *Egyptian* Sultan, for suffering (not as a confederate) them to passe thorow *Syria* to the Christians their common enemies, to stir them up to warre: whereupon, *Zenus* with all the Merchants at *Tripolis*, *Aleppo*, *Beritus*, and *Alexandria*, were carried in bonds to *Cairo*, where often answering in Chains to what was laid to their charge, after a year's suffering manifold despight, hardly escaped with life and liberty.

Chasan and *Techellis* well strengthened, and comming to *Iconium*, wasting the Country, drew a multitude to receive their Doctrine. Wherefore *Orchanes* and *Mahomet Bajazets* Nephews governing those Countries, gathering their forces, came into field against them; but they youth-

fully, and hastily joyning battel in a disadvantageous place, were put to flight: and had not these wanted Artillery, and Engines requisite, they would have besieged *Iconium*. Also *Corcutus* then levying an Army about *Thyatira*, &c. durst not set forward against the Rebels, though dispersed fast by him. These Prophets, entering at last into *Bythinia*, met near the River *Sangarius*, with *Caragoses* the *Asian* Viceroy comming against them with a great Army, commanding *Achomates* or *Achmates*, *Bajazets* eldest Sonne, Governour of *Cappadocia* and *Pontus*, with his power to follow at the back of the Rebels; but *Techellis* marching with all possible speed, was upon *Caragoses*, near Mount *Horminus*, before he was well aware, then taking up more Souldiers: who thought it not honourable to refuse battel, though his Army consisted most of rude Countrey people, suddenly taken up, most unarmed, and called *Asapi*, but he reposed his greatest confidence in his ancient Horsemen's valour; and the Rebels most consisted of Foot. *Techellis* exhorted his Souldiers courageously to defend their lives and Religion by Victory, as having no new power or Cities of refuge, there to flee unto, &c. who giving a terrible shout as chearful, set upon their enemies. The Viceroy placed his foot in the middle, and his Horse in the Wings, to compass in his enemy; but *Techellis* set all his Foot in a square battel, and the Horse for a reserve, who with their red Hats, as if bloody, terrified the Viceroy's fresh-water Souldiers, fleeing in half an houre. The *Turkish* Horse, although they had slain many, and somewhat disordered the battel; yet *Techellis* his men beginning to kill their Horses with their Pikes, and lay hard at them, they fled also: then the *Persian* horse, as yet lookers on, following the chase, slew many, enclosing the Viceroy slaying his Horsemen, who for the dust could not well discern them, so that he had bin taken, if not rescued by his Guard; 7000 *Turks* Foot were slain, all their Ensigns, with store of provision taken, *Chasan* & *Techellis* resting a day, marched to *Cusaie*,

as it were in the midst of lesser *Asia*, the Viceroy's seat, who fled thither, the Countrey also, having for fear, conveyed thither most of their wealth. *Techellis* placing such Field pieces, he had before taken in battel, and his Archers in fit places for annoying the Defendants, caused scaling ladders to be set up, proclaiming the Citie's spoil to his Souldiers, if they could take it, with greater rewards, to them that first recovered the wall's top. Wherefore fearing nothing, they strove who first should get up the Ladders, &c. the Defendants, casting down on them Stones, Timber, Fire, Scalding-water, Lime, Sand, &c. wherewith, though many were killed and spoiled, yet others stept up in their place, none shrinking back; for the Viceroy on one side, and *Techellis* on the other, were eye-witnesses of every mans valour; the Viceroy, all being in danger, personally performing all parts of a courageous Souldier; but, the Defendants at last wearied and most wounded, *Techellis* brake into the City in two places, over heaps of dead bodies, bringing in his Army at one of the Gates: the Souldiers and Citizens being miserably slaughtered: the Viceroy with his Wives and Children, being taken, and the stately Marble Pallace consumed with fire. *Techellis*, thought it was now no hard matter to take *Prusa* so to indanger the *Turks* whole Empire in *Asia*: wherefore, appointing when to set forward, he prepared (if he delayed not) all necessaries for its taking, being neither strongly walled, nor garrisoned. But a new Army being shipt over *Hellaspoint* into *Asia*, he changed his purpose; for *Bajazet* had now sent *Alis Bassa* over with his *European* Army, who, though an *Eunuch*, yet comparable in valour with the greatest Captains, who with the choicest Horsemen, and 7000 *Janizaries*, passing into *Phrygia*, sent to all Governours of the *Turks* Provinces in *Asia*, speedily to meet him with their forces in *Galatia*. *Techellis* now thought best to depart out of *Pontus*, to retire more safely, lest he should be enclosed, &c. Wherefore calling together his Captains to consult,

It was thought madness or extream necessity, to joyn battel with an enemy better knowing the Countrey than he, and farre exceeding him in number and expertness of Souldiers. So trussing up his prey, he speedily returned thorow *Galatia*; but the Bassa having almost daily intelligence thereof, and of his way; passing *Sangarius*, came and encamped between *Cutaie* and *Ancyra*, supposing it the enemy's passage. Where resting, and advertised *Techellis* had gone another way, he after five dayes march, overtook the enemy's wearied or wounded straglers, putting them to the Sword: *Techellis* causing *Cartagos*, carried along with him in chains, to be impaled on a sharp stake, fastned in the ground by the high way side; but *Alis* nothing dismayed with his horrible death, held on his, and exhorted his Souldiers patiently to endure, and strain themselves to take revenge of those rebellious robbers, who destroying the Countrey, spared not the *Turks* very Children nor Temples; comming next day into *Ancyra's* plains, to whom *Achomates* came with 10000 Souldiers. *Alis* grieved that he could not overtake them with his whole Army, leaving his Foot with *Achomates*, followed them on the spur, with 3000 Horse, and overtaking their rears at Mount *Olyga*, nigh *Ancyra*, he hotly skirmished with them.

Techellis, perceiving he should have to do onely with Horsemen, and that in a place of advantage, valiantly received the *Turks* impression, at first repulling them with their long Pikes and Arrows; but *Alis*, sending in a thousand Carbines, who in order shot thick on the enemy, many were slain, and more wounded, and their Ranks somewhat disordered: so that the Horse breaking in, overthrew with great slaughter *Techellis* his vanguard. *Chasan* himself being slain, *Techellis* set in order a new battel of his readiest and best armed, opposing them against the Horse, commanding them, by degrees to retire to the Mountain, hoping the *Turks* finding the dis-

ad.

advantage of the place, would leave assailing them so hardly; but the Bassa exhorting them to urge the Victory, &c. himself, with a Troop of his best Horse to animate the rest, brake thorow the enemies battel: which he attempting the second time, was enclosed and slain. The *Turks* now dismayed, fought but faintly, and at last fled.

Techellis his Souldiers having now thrust forward, and with a terrible noyse crying Victory, put them to flight: who notwithstanding, having lost many of his best Souldiers, and the rest sore wearied, refreshed them on the Mountain *Oliga*: whence he marched to *Taschia*, his old dwelling place, thence to the City *Celenis*, now *Maras*, then the seat of King *Aladenles*. *Bajazet* not long after, sent *Jonas Bassa*, born in *Epirus*, in *Asia* his stead, who receiving the Army from *Achomates*, came in few dayes to the City *Taschia*, where burning and destroying the Countrey, he encamped at *Antitaurus's* Foot: he had above 40000 well appointed. *Techellis* terrified, nor lately receiving ayd from *Hysmael*, and wanting great Artillery, determined to keep the rough Mountain, and thick Woods, hoping for ayd from *Hysmael*, and to take the *Turks* at some advantage: who after fetching a compassse, by the easie rising of the Hills, came to skirmish, and *Techellis* his men sallying out of those places, valiantly assailed the *Turks*: at length, the *Turks* perceiving two wayes to bring up their Army to the Mountain's top: the Bassa caused the *Janizaries* to march up one way, and the rest by the other, who softly climbing up, defended themselves what they could, with their Targets; for the enemy cast down on them great stones, and shot, without number; But the *Turks* Field-pieces drove them from their standings: the barquebuziers shrouding under the Targetiers, thickly delivered their shot: at whose approach, *Techellis* retired farther off into higher Mountains, and rougher Woods; and next night he with

with great silence, fled over the Mountains into *Armenia*, of the *Persian* Kingdom; which, when the *Bassa* by some wounded Souldiers taken by his Scouts, when it was day-light, understood, he chafed, that he had not presently beset the Wood, and sending his Horse-men in vain to pursue them, they brought back some few stragglers to the *Bassa*.

Jonnses, straitly inquiring thorow all Cities, for those who had professed the *Persian* Religion, put those who had born Arms to death, with the greatest torments, burning the rest in their fore-heads with a hot Iron, whom with the Kinsfolks and friends of the executed or fled, he transported, and dispersed in *Europe*: fearing a new Rebellion, if *Techellis* should return with new forces, but here ended this dangerous rebellion, wherein all or most of the *Turks* Dominions in *Asia*, might have been surprised, if *Hysmael* had thorowly prosecuted the opportunity.

Thechellis his followers fleeing into *Persia*, and spoiling, by the way, a *Caravan* of Merchants laden with Silks, &c. the Captains comming to *Tauris*, were executed, and *Techellis* burnt alive.

Next year 1509. *Septemb.* 14th, through a great and terrible Earth-quake in *Constantinople* and thereabouts, most of the Walls, with many stately, publique and private Buildings, were overthrown, and 13000 people slain, so that the people generally lay in the Fields: yea, *Bajazet*, very aged and gowty, removed to *Hadrianople*, but not safe there, he lay abroad in his Tent. It lasted 28 dayes, or a moneth, with very little intermission, accounted ominous (as shortly appeared) to the *Ottoman* Family. Then by a great plague, the City was mostly unpeopled; but it being asswaged, *Bajazet* by Commissions took up 80000 Workmen, who working at once, in four moneths, repaired *Constantinople's* ruines.

Bajazet had eight Sons and six Daughters, Men and Women, the Sons all Governours of Provinces; (yet *Utrius a Genoway*, who lived long in *Bajazets* Court, mentions but six); *Sciemsfia*, for his towardlinesse deerly beloved of his Father, the eldest, died before him. *Alem-sfia* also died, whereof *Bajazet* advertised by white Characters in black Paper (their way of writing heavy newes) he casting away all tokens of Honour, made a generall mourning in the Court, and throughout *Constantinople* for three dayes all shops being shut up, &c: making for some space. solemne sacrifices for the health of his Soul, giving 7000 Aspers weekly to the Poor: his body being afterwards buryed at *Prusa* with great solemnity. *Tziban* and *Mahomet* were (upon their Fathers indignation) strangled. Of his other four, *Machmot* or *Mahometes* was of greatest hope, not so voluptuous as *Achomates* his Elder Brother, nor so bookish as *Cercutus*, nor so cruel as *Selymus*: but so lively, witty, bountifull, and of Princely a carriage, that he seemed to most, worthy of a Kingdome: wherefore *Achomates*, yea *Bajazet* himself were jealous of his affecting the Empire, soon the cause of his death: which he hastened by meanes, as he least feared. *Achomates* and *Mahometes* had one Mother, wherefore *Mahometes* more delighted in him than in the others, though not answered with like love. *Achomates* governed *Amasia*; *Mahometes*, *Magnefia*: who desirous to see his Brothers life and government, disguised himself with two faithfull friends, as if they had been of the Religious order called *Imalier* (who being most comely, well borne, cleanly though homely attired, do wander up and down, making large discourses of others manners, and commonly playing on Silver Cymballs, and singing ditties, they receive money as a devout alms: they are the corrupters of Youth, defilers of others beds, wholly given to ease and pleasure) travelled up and down *Pontus* and *Cappadocia*, and so to *Amasia*, where on a solemne

lemas holiday, *Achomates* (coming to the Temple) passing by, listened a while to their alluring harmony, most skilfully devised and performed. Their Musick ended, *Achomates* (spare-handed) commands 5 Aspers, that is, about six pence to be given them, which *Mahometes* disdainingly, would not now discover himself, as he determined; but speedily riding to *Magnesia*, he by taunting letters scoffed at *Achomates's* good husbandry, sending him his 5 Aspers, *Achomates* being never afterwards friends with him: diverse also diversly deemed of his purpose therein.

Not long after, *Mahometes* attiring himself with some followers, like seafaring men, came in a barque to *Constantinople*, diligently viewing *Constantinople* and *Pera*, and noting how all things were governed. *Bajazet* the while, assembling his chief Bassaes at the Court; *Mahometes* pressing in with his companions to see them, with the fashion of the Court, the Porters (as rude Mariners) kept them out; wherefore buying a beautiful Christian Captive boy, he came next day with two companions (as Sea-adventurers) requesting to be let in, as having a present: So being admitted to *Bajazet's* presence, one of them (as a Sea Captain) reverently proffered him the present, which he thankfully taking gave him his hand to kisse, with a rich golden garment, with two of less value to *Mahometes* and his fellow, who stood afar off. In their return, they meeting with three Courriers who knew *Mahometes*, they had done him honour, had he not by secret signs forbidden them: so speedily returning to *Magnesia*. The report hereof was at last brought to *Bajazet*, which raised in him troublesome thoughts, fearing some desperate and secret conspiracy; wherefore, after long discourse with the 3 Bassaes, he resolved to take him away, causing them to write to *Asmethemedi* near to *Mahometes*, to poyson him with a poyson enclosed in the Letters, with promise of great rewards, &c.

from

from the Emperour, charging him (if he could not effect it without mistrust) to conceal it, &c. Bajazet also knew *Asmehemedi* to bear *Mahometes* a grudge. *Mahometes*, disporting himself, in his Gardens, and being thirsty, called for drink, into which *Asmehemedi* conveighed the poyson: which *Mahometes* drinking, and ill at ease, sent for his Physicians: who thinking it a distemper with the cold drink in his heat, perceived not he was poysoned, till within 6 daies he died; whereof Bajazet hearing, could not but mourn, commanding all the Court to mourn with him, and prayers to be made in the Temples, with Alms to be given for the health of his soul: he being honourably buried at *Prusa*. *Asmehemedi* was cast into prison, and never more to be seen, supposed there to be secretly made away. Of Bajazet's 3 Sons left, *Achomates* (politick and valiant, but given to pleasure) Bajazet and most of the Court favoured above the rest; *Corcutus*, for his mildnesse and quietnesse, was of most beloved, but not thought fit for the Empire, chiefly by the Soldiers, whom they thought was drowned in the study of Philosophy; yet Bajazet promised to restore it him, of whom he had received it almost 30 years before. But haughty *Selimus*, not brooking a subjects life under his brethren, and wholly given to Martial affairs, sought by bounty, courtesie, policy, &c. to aspire to the Empire. Him therefore the *Janizaries* &c. with some chief Bassa's, wished for their Sovereign.

Bajazet the while (far worn with years) and not able to help himself for the Court, for preventing future troubles, determined while living, to establish the succession in one of his Sons to repress the pride of the other. And although he resolved on *Achomates* as the elder, and for affection; yet to try his subjects disposition, it was said in general terms, he meant to make known his Successor, without naming any one Son: not the least cause, that

that every one with like ambition thought only on the Empire.

Selimus Governour of *Trapezond* in 1511, with what Ships he could, sailed thence to the City *Capha*, thence coming by Land to *Mahometes* King of the *Præcopensian Tartars* (whose daughter he had married without *Bajazet's* liking) he besought him not to shrink from him his loving Son in Law, great hope of the Empire being proposed to him by his faithful friends of the Court, &c. if he would but come nearer to his Father, by fair means or fowl, then about to transfer the Empire to some one Son. The *Tartar* commending him, speedily made ready store of shipping, and arming 1500 horsemen, delivered them to *Selimus*, promising him greater aid upon occasion, who passing *Borysphenes*, and also *Danubius* at the City *Chelia*, had commanded his Fleet to meet him at *Varna* in *Bulgaria*, and *Thracia's* confines: and levying more by the way; pretended, he purposed to invade *Hungary*.

But *Bajazet* (before advertized of *Selimus* his coming into *Europe* (*Techellis* his rebellion yet scarce quietted) with forreign aid, on his own head, against the warlike *Hungarians*, seizing also on the places nearest *Thracia*, and keeping the Euxine Sea with a Navy) suspected the preparation to be against himself: and thinking it better with like dissimulation, to appease his fierce nature, than by sharp reproof further to move him, sent him Embassadors, declaring with what danger the *Turkish* Kings had formerly undertaken those *Hungarian* wars, *Mahomet* his Grandfather being an example; wherefore, he should expect a fitter opportunity, for better advice, greater power, and hope of victory. *Selimus* answered, He was forced to leave *Asia* by *Achomates* his injuries, and therefore came into *Europe*, to win (from the enemies of *Mahometism*) a larger and better Province, for that little barren
and

and peaceable one, which his Father had given him, that he was not to be daunted, for danger of the *Hungarians*; yet thinking the ancient prowess of that Nation to be much changed, with the change of their Kings, &c. therefore he was resolv'd for his own honour, which *Bajazet* had some way blemished, by his brethrens advancement, to dye in field against the enemies of *Mahometanism*, or to extend the bounds of the *Turkish* Empire: who though one of the youngest, yet would not be accounted inferiour to any brother in prowess. The Embassadours (though *Selimus* shewed no tokens of peace) presented to him divers gifts to appease him adjoyning *Samandria*, or *Schenderonia*, a strong City of *Servia* on *Hungaries* borders, with other Towns, unto his Government, giving him 60000 Ducats, and 1000 cloth and silk Garments, with store of provision to relieve and content his Souldiers; who returned them to his Father with more doubtful answers than before, yet not changing his resolution; secret Messengers and Letters came from Court, whetting him forward, to make quick speed; *Achomates* (sent for) being coming with a great power out of *Cappadocia*.

Bajazet (now the rather moved) said he would appoint his Successour, who in his stead, should be fit to govern so great an Empire; but the 4 Bassaes propounding it to the Court Souldiers, they cryed aloud, No Emperour but *Bajazet*, under whose fortunate conduct they had served above 30 years, &c. saying, There was in him yet strength enough, if he would retain the aged majesty of his place; &c. and that such a one of his children, should in due time succeed him, as of right ought, wishing the old Emperour to live in health with a long and happy reign, he needing not to fear any controversie after his death; for the *Othoman* Progeny used to attain the Empire by right and not by faction; but if upon his own liking, he would choose such a one as the people so well liked not of, it might perhaps bring in that confusion, which he thought

thereby to eschew; for the other brethren would never endure so notable an injury, &c.

The Souldiers spake these things by the instruction of *Selimus*, his corrupted friends; But *Bajazet* thinking they chiefly affected *Achomates*, said, He would choose him if they liked it; but the chief Souldiers (corrupted) cunningly commended *Achomates*, &c. yet saying, it neither agreed with the custome of the *Othoman* Kings, nor was good for the Souldiery or State; for besides, that neither *Selimus* nor *Corcutus*, could endure the least suspicion of infidelity, &c. it seemed to them unreasonable, that thereby the Souldiers should be defrauded of their usual rewards in the vacancy of the Empire: for then all Jews and Christians, chiefly Merchants at *Constantinople*, *Pern*, *Hadrianople*, *Thessalonica*, and *Prusa*, are by the *Janizaries* and others, spoiled of all their goods: neither will they swear allegiance to the new Emperour till he hath granted them that prey as a bounty, swearing by his head (the greatest assurance) to pardon all the offenders. *Bajazet* hereupon, promised to give them 500000 Ducats, if they would accept *Achomates* for Sovereign: yet the frowardness of these men of war, overcame his good fortune; for they conceived far greater rewards, if, instead of a peaceable Prince, a restless Tyrant as was *Selimus*, might by their help, aspire the Empire. So *Bajazet* concealing his grief, put up that dishonour, till a fitter opportunity.

Selimus advertized hereof, not longer to frustrate his favourites expectation by delay, &c. leaving *Hungaries* borders, and marching thorow *Thracia*, encamped on a hill's rising, not far from *Hadrianople*, whence his horses neighing and Tents (from the City) might be discovered; and sent to his Father, then there, that having not seen him in many years, he desired to visit him before his return (by his appointment) to *Trapezond*; never perhaps

to see him again, saying, It much concerned *Asia's* quietness, if the controversies betwixt him and *Arbomates*, might by themselves be discovered to him their Father, as a decider, humbly beseeching for a time and place of audience, and to kisse his hands, which his Ancestors never refused, to their poor friends, much lesse children. *Bajazet* had called to him certain *Zanzacks*, with their Companies, out of the nearest parts of *Greece*, setting also strong watch thorow the City, lest his Souldiers about his person (upon the point of revolt) should in shew of Parley, quite be drawn away, and now blamed *Selimus*, that he had, on his own head, brought his Army into anothers Province, requiring audience in Arms, and insolently abusing his Fathers lenity; that he should not presume to approach nearer to him, &c. but speedily to repair to his own charge in *Pontus*, so he should find greater kindness with him than before; but if he proceeded in his course (not taking him for a Son, but an enemy) he would shortly chastise him for his malepert insolency, &c. *Bajazet*, being advertiz'd, that *Selimus*, the night following, was marched towards *Constantinople*, hoping for some tumult upon his approach, departed by break of day from *Hadrianople* thither-ward; upon which, *Selimus* peaceably entred *Hadrianople*, the Citizens fearing destruction upon resistance; and refreshing his Army, set forward, by speedy marches to prevent his Fathers coming to *Constantinople*; who scarce come to *Tzumulum* almost the mid-way, warning was given, that *Selimus's* forerunners were cutting off *Bajazet's* straglers troubling his rear; who commanded his Standard to be set up, that *Selimus* might find him in readinesse. The great Captains and Nobles, cunningly favouring *Selimus*, seemed not to like of his resolution of battel, the victory bringing nought but sorrow; but the overthrow threatening destruction, which seemed the more dangerous.

he being then inferiour to his Son in provision and number; therefore not so hastily by a miserable death, to stain the glory of his former life; but speedily to march to *Constantinople*, out of which, *Selimus* being excluded, might (for fear) think of return, and so perish with his rascal followers, by their hands, whom he had spoiled, rather than by his Father's sword. *Mustapha* the most ancient Bassa gave this Counsel, who maliciously hated *Bajazet*, emulating the younger Bassaes, by him promoted, & lecreally affected *Selimus*, resembling *Mahomet* his Grandfather, both for favour and in conditions. *Mustapha* was a *Greek* Priest's Son, born in *Seres*, of a sly and crafty wit, subject to corruption, his froward and sqinting look, discovering it. *Selimus* had allured also *Bostanges* Bassa (infamous for covetousness, ambition, and treachery) betrothing by promise, one of his daughters unto him; and by the same slight *Ajax*, *Aga* of the *Janizaries*; yea, the Captains either for reward or fear, almost generally leaned that way. Only *Cherseogles* a faithful and upright man, thought that *Selimus* was there by force of Arms to be oppressed, before his nearer approach to the Imperiall City, &c. not to be thought, said he, that the naked *Tartarian* horsemen (though more in number) would abide the charge of *Bajazet*'s well-armed Pensioners: not doubting but the *Janizaries* would defend their aged and victorious Emperour against disobedient *Selimus*, &c. Wherefore he perswaded him, cheerfully to mind his Souldiers of his former bounty, as of their duty; who reposing his trust in their fidelity and valour, in that place resolved to chastise his unnatural Son's insolence, with his followers.

Cherseogles (a Christian born) turned *Turk* being a man grown, alway loving Christians and their Religion, not common with such renegates. His Father was *Chersechis*

us, a small Prince of *Illyria*: who lustfully beholding a Lady of rare beauty and feature, to whom *Cherseogles* was going to be married, whom he entirely loved, took her in marriage himself, all his friends crying shame on so fowl a fact. Wherefore, he driven headlong with despair, fled to *Constantinople*: on whom *Bajazet* (liking the honourable man, and his cause of revolt) smiling on him said, Be chearful, noble youth, for thy courage is worthy of greater fortune than thy Father's house can afford: instead of thy love taken from thee, the kintwoman of an exil'd Prince (for she was descended of the Despot's house) thou shalt have the daughter of a great Emperour, of singular perfection: So, abjuring his Religion, and named (of *Stephen*) *Cherseogles*, he married *Bajazet*'s daughter, deserving to be one of the greatest Bassaes; yet, with a desire to return to his former profession, he secretly kept the Image of the Crucifix. This man by intreaty, saved the *Venetian* Senators at the taking of *Modon*, afterwards delivering *Gritti* a prisoner condemned to dye, chosen afterwards Duke of *Venice*; By him, the *Venetians* obtained a peace to their good, redeeming a multitude of Christians, by his authority and charge, from slavery: Neither is his furtherance of learning to be forgotten, as in Pope *Leo 10th* his time. But *Bajazet* encouraged by *Cherseogles*, and hearing (among other things) that *Selimus* had almost enclosed his rereward, got out of his Pavilion, (grinding his teeth with trickling tears) in his Horse-litter (not able for the Gout to sit on horse-back) saying to the Pensioners and Janizaries, Whether they his foster-children, &c. would suffer him, innocent, to be butchered by his gracelesse Son? And being old and diseased, to be murdered by wilde *Tartars*, little better then Rogues and thieves, &c. that many perswaded him to commit himself to flight, &c. But he, contrarily, would give the fierce enemy battel, and in this

his last danger prove all their fidelity, and valour, &c. and so either break that gracelesse man, or (having reigned above 30 years) end his dayes with those that should continue loyall, and though fame would make him believe he should be betrayed by some of his Guard, yet he would not fear it, till he saw proof thereof.

The common *Janizaries*, to whom the Commanders had not communicated their purpose of *Selimus*, cried out, He should not doubt to joyn battell, shouting, clapping hands, and clattering their armour: Others for fashion sake doing the like, the great Commanders especially, (whether for shame or fear) changing their affection, and *Mustapha* with *Bostanges*, out of a feigned loyalty, encouraged and martialled the battell: and by *Cherseogles* advice, the *Sanzacks*, with their horsemen (about 6000) being set in the front, &c. *Bajazet* commanded the Trumpets to sound, and a red Ensign to be displayed: *Selimus* placing his *Tartarians* in both wings, and *Turks* in the middle, &c. The *Tartars* running round in great rings, to shoot backwards and forward, annoyed the *Turks* greatly with showers of Arrows; the others farther off, shooting more upwards, so galled the *Turks* horses with their Arrows direct fall; but the old Soldiers serring close, received their Arrows with their Targets over their heads, hastening to come to handy blows: the Pensioners then also bravely charging the middle of *Selimus* his battel; and *Ajax* drawing out 700 Harquebusiers from the *Janizaries*, assailed the hindmost of the *Tartarian* wing; the 4000 servants left in the rear, repulsing the other wing (with great slaughter) coming to spoil the *Turks* Carriages. This fierce and doubtful battel, lasted from noon till Sunset.

Setting. *Selimus* fighting and stirring as for an Empire; but the *Tartars* not able to abide the Harquebuziers shot, their Horses chiefly terrified with that unwonted noise, fled: the rest, who could not be enforced to stay, fled also: the Foot attired and armed like *Janizaries*, being forsaken, were almost all slain by *Bajazets* Horse. *Selimus* hardly beset, was yet delivered by some *Turkish* Troops, staying with him, and being wounded and freshly mounted, speedily followed the *Tartars*; but doubting to be overtaken, he took another cole-black Horse of wonderful swiftness, so fleeing with a few to *Varna*, thence by Sea, to *Capha*. The Horse called *Carabulo*, that is, a swift Cloud, *Selimus* so esteemed, that covered with Cloth of Gold, he was in all his expeditions led after him as a spare-Horse, and dying at *Caire*, as *Alexander* for *Bucephalus*, he erected a Monument for him. Of 40000 men brought into the field, not above 8000 escaped from being slain or taken. *Bajazet* losing about 7000, and 3000 hurt with *Tartarian* Arrowes, in revenge, put all taken to the Sword, whose Heads and Bodies were laid apart by heaps: old ruinous *Chiurlua* or *Zurnlun*, became famous by this battel, in 1511; but more famous afterwards by *Selimus*, there ending his dayes by a most loathsome Disease.

Bajazet's Souldiers being after 3 dayes returned from the Chase, he went to *Constantinople*, rewarding them there. *Achomates* hearing of what had happened, came with 20000 men from *Amasia*, to the City *Scutari*, situated directly against *Constantinople*, expecting what course his Father would now take: for his minde was filled with hope of the Empire for sundry reasons ceasing, not to send over *Bosphorus* Strait to *Constantinople*, soliciting *Bajazet* to dispatch the Empires resignation, importing also his friends to commend him, and amply to extoll *Bajazet's* purpose herein, that *Selimus* being overthrown, through them he might the sooner obtain the

Empire, his Inheritance. *Bajazet* was easily entreated to hasten what he before determined, preparing Gallies for transporting *Achomates* to *Constantinople*. But the Court-Bassas and Souldiers, again resisted it, alleadging the former reasons, and saying, they would not suffer him so to disable himself, as to resign, who had lately so courageously fought for the honour of his Crown, &c. yet not to cut off *Achomates*, nor he to distrust their good will, but to enjoy his right in due time as the eldest Sonne, and a man of approved valour: saying, they had sufficiently declared in the battel against *Selimus*, what minds they were of, &c. Oh fowl dissimulation! &c.

Bajazet again disappointed of his purpose, or as some thought, delighted with Sovereignty; for that after the Victory, he seemed as young again, &c. sent to *Achomates* how it stood, and to depart to his charge at *Amasia*, whence he would call him when he had won the Souldiers with new bounty, and procured other Courtiers liking, whereby so great and unusual a matter might the more securely be effected.

Achomates thus deceived, and complaining he was so mocked and contemned, began to inveigh against his Father, for making him a by-word, &c. after by his appointment he had come so farre; but if he still so doated, reckoning so of the Court-Souldiers, as not to regard his promise, or what was right, he would by Arms defend his honour and right, and revenge the disgrace: *Bajazet* answered him by the *Cadatescher*, the Interpreter of their Law, and so of greatest authority, that he did neither well nor wisely, to fall into such choler, thinking to get that by force, which was onely by love and loyalty to be gained, whereas all should be surely kept for him, if he married not that by haste which by patience he ought to cherish: the *Cadatescher* telling him, he might learn by *Selymus* his Example, what might be for his good, &c.

Achomates enflamed with anger and grief, while he was
speak-

speaking, sharply taunting him; could scarce stay from violence, threatening, that his Father should dearly buy the change of his purpose, and the Souldiers their treachery; so rising with his Army, he cruelly spoiled in *Bythinia* in his return, determining to invade the lesser *Asia*, to use its wealth, if he must try his right against either Brother; and being at leastwise possessed of half the Empire, he should thereby, be readier for all events: wherefore greatly complaining of *Bajazet's* unkindness, &c. to his Sonnes *Amurathes* and *Aladin*, he declared, there was no hope left, except they with him, would arm to defend his and their own right, easie to be done by a couragious surprizing of the lesser *Asia*; seeing *Pisidia*, *Lycaonia*, *Pamphylia* and *Ionia's* Sea-coast, had no Army or Navy; and for *Caracum*, there was no great doubt but he would either sit still, or in a just quarrel take his part; however he might easily be thrust out, doubting not but that the other Governours would yield to his Command or Fortune: wherefore he willed them to pluck up their hearts, &c. These Gallants encouraged had soon raised a notable Army of Volunteers, most being servile men; But *Achomates*, besides his old Army, led against the *Persian* Rebels, levied new forces, with all the able men in Cities, so running and proclaiming himself King of *Asia*, prosecuting, with his two Sonnes, all who yielded not to him, whereby many Cities, for fear, or constraint, were delivered to him. Then entring *Lycaonia* and *Cilicia's* borders, he frequently requested *Mahometes* his Brothers Sonne, governing there, to ayd him in his just quarrel, for the recovering of the Empire, &c: And if *Mahometes* would ayd him with men and Victuall, he promised, he should finde a better Uncle then he had a Father, in time to be most bountifully required: who answered, he could not do it, without *Bajazet*, his onely Sovereign, his Command; 'twas not for him to judge whether he did right or not, that in his life-time,

he would resign to his Sonne. But this he knew, he was to ob-ey no other, so long as he lived in possession of the Empire: to whom both his Father, *Tizban* and himself had sworn loyalty. Wherefore, it were good to pacifie himself, lest he wronged his Father, and overthrew his hope and honour, which of right, should be great, if he could have patience. *Achomates* unexpectedly finding his requests more considerately denyed, than were reasonably by him demanded, entering his Province, destroyed with fire and sword: which, *Mahometes* seeking by power to remedy, was overthrown by *Achomates*: who fleeing to *Larende*, not farre off, was there besieged; and at last, with his Brother a Child, delivered into his hands, the City being yielded on Composition, who put to death *Mahometes* his Councillors, with his foster Brother, supposing they had perswaded him so to answer, &c.

Bajazet, wroth and grieved, in old age, to be set upon by two Sonnes, sent to him, reproving his disloyalty, commanding him to free his two Nephewes, and without more stir, to get him to *Amasia*; and, if not, to denounce to him open Warre; but he receiving this Message, caused the chief Embassador, frankly speaking, to be put to death in his presence, threatening the rest with the like, if they voided not his Camp before Sun-set.

This irreverent outrage, and against the Law of Nations, highly offending *Bajazet*, and estranging many from *Achomates*: the Souldiers exclaimed in *Bajazet's* hearing, that his insolence was forthwith to be repressed, &c. *Mustapha* also, with *Bostanges*, and others, who had cunningly dispersed these things, began as it were, to wonder at the fact, as condemning the deed, but not the doer; but when they saw *Bajazet* from sundry motives, ready to seek revenge, they bitterly inveighed against *Achomates* as a Traitor, commending the Souldiers fidelity and courage, who for their aged Emperour, were most ready to expose all unto new dangers. So *Achomates* being proclaimed

Traytor,

Traytor, twas ordered, the Court-Souldiers, with the *European* Horse, to be with all speed sent against him; but choice being to be made of some worthy Generall, they all began to strain courtesie, &c. saying, It were a great indignity, for the Emperours Army to be led against his Sonne by a Servant; and the Souldiers having their Lesson, said, they neither durst, nor would draw Sword against his son & Heir, except conducted by one of the *Othoman* blood in person; for so had his Brother long before, and lately *Selimus*, been both vanquished by *Bajazet's* own Conduct. All this was, that *Selimus*, whom yet they durst not name, but in way of disgrace, might indirectly be reconciled to *Bajazet*, whereby comming to *Constantinople*, he might seize on the Empire; for besides *Bajazet* and *Corcutus*, who, it was not probable, would for age and study, undertake those Warres, *Selimus* was only left, all the young Nephews being as yet unfit. *Bajazet* in a chafe, flung into his Pallace, excusing himself; but complaining that *Corcutus* following learning, had neglected other studies; better befitting a Prince. *Mustapha* the while, having drawn him into a Discourse concerning that Warres proceeding, craftily and destructively said; himself, though never so able, must not passe into *Asia* personally, lest *Selimus* should in his absence seize on *Thrace*, *Greece*, and the Imperial City: nor, if he should send his old Souldiers into *Asia*, calling *Corcutus* with his *Asians* into *Europe*, would (said he) *Selimus*, fear these fresh-water Souldiers, or their Philosophical Generall, &c. but if *Bajazet* should for defence of *Thrace*, retain his most approved Souldiers, he should see all *Asia* on a fire, &c. wherefore seeing twas his fate, that two begotten of him. should be adjudged Traitors: why did he not set upon them as occasion should serve, when they were by the eares betwixt themselves? At present, saith he, dissimble thy grief, and taking one, in shew, into favour employ him against the other, &c. at pleasure to oppress him, to whom

whom he should commit his Army, his trusty Souldiers being ever ready, &c.

He scarce having don speaking, the other Bassaes, as before agreed, perswaded *Bajazet* to call home *Selimus*, and make him Generall, saying, It was like, he, now corrected, would contain himself within compasse: whereas *Achomates* was not like to be brought to conformity, till by force pluckt down, as was *Selimus*. *Bajazet* seeing *Chersegles* sit silent, hanging the head, as not of that opinion, stood a while in doubt what to resolve on; but the unfaithful Bassaes, *Chersegles* most instantly perswading the contrary, so perswaded him, as to write himself to *Selimus*, that, on hope of his loyalty, he would receive him into his former favour, making him Generall against his rebellious Brother *Achomates*, if he would speedily repair to *Constantinople*.

Corcutus the while, advertised of these things, sailed to *Constantinople* in his Gallies, where entring the Privy-Chamber with many friends, humbling himself, and kissing his Father's hand after much talk betwixt them, is reported to have said, that he above 30 years past, being by a general consent chosen and proclaimed Emperour, had chearfully and willingly delivered that glorious Empire unto him, &c. Neither did it ever repent him of that his singular kindness and duty done, when as being contented, with what he assigned him, as with a Kingdom, he thought his Father's great Estate, &c. not comparable to the quiet of his pleasing studies, those worldly things working no full contentment to the insatiable desire of man, and that surmounting vertue, and most sweet meditation of heavenly things promised to his contemplative and ravished minde, of farre more worth and Majesty, than all the Monarchies of the World; but whilest he was for devotion and desire of knowledge, travelling to *Mahomet's* Altar, and so to the *Indians*, as more knowing and sincere men, he drew him
out

out of *Egypt* by that *Sultan*, into *Phrygia*, &c. as if he thought, the time would come, when for the ill disposition of some, an innocent man, devoted to study, might be a stay to him and the *Othoman* Family. Since which, he had with all possible integrity discharged his charge: and in the late *Persian* Warre, defended his Frontiers from invasion. But they being vanquished, his unnatural Brethren having one assailed *Bajazets* person and Empire, the other, setting all that part in *Asia* on a broil, he thought himself in duty bound to repair to his Majesty, &c. who having had too great proof of his Brethrens infidelity, &c. he humbly besought him before the coming of *Selimus*, he hearing, that his Father's Guard and chief Commanders, did but expect a time when they might salute him Emperour, whom he fore against their wills overthrew infidels, to restore him the Empire due to him, whilst it was yet in his power, in that so momentary occasion then presented.

Bajazet moved with a Fatherly affection towards *Corcutus*, whose teares stood in his eyes, bad him be of good cheere, discovering his ground of calling home *Selimus*, and that he could be content to resign to him the Empire; but it was not at present in his power, for fear of the Court-Souldiers, &c. But by the plot now laid, *Selimus* should, under the Title of Honour, with the Souldiers, be drawn into *Asia*, whither as soon as they were passed, he promised to resign unto him: which done, although they wholly liked not, yet he feared not, that, they who had lately defended him against *Selimus*, should for his sake dislike *Corcutus*, &c. hoping rather, that if *Achomates* and *Selimus* should joyn battel, either one or both should justly perish.

Corcutus, not much misliking his Fathers purpose, &c. returned to his Lodging not without hope, and remaining many dayes at *Constantinople*, he as a plain upright
man

man, neither by gifts nor promises, strove to procure any ones good will.

Selimus his friends the while advertising him of *Corcenus* his coming to Court, advised him with all speed, to come to *Constantinople*, &c. whereupon, he with certain Troops commanding the rest to follow, came thither with wondrous speed: *Corcenus*, the Bassaes Courtiers, and most of the Souldiers receiving him, as their manner is, (at the Gates entrance) with a kisse, bringing him thorow the City, the people running to see him, who was welcomed with much thundring shot, and joyful acclamation of all Ages and Sexes: and next day coming to Court, humbly in shew, kissed *Bajazet's* feet, craving pardon: who smiling on this Crocodile, contemptuously took him up, saying, His faults were so much lesse, as finding speedy repentance; therefore he the willinglier pardoned him, henceforth to endeavour, that God may be thought to have endued him with a good minde, as with a notable courage: which, with his forwardness, he might manifest by a martial matter, worthy his hardi- nesse.

A Councel of Warre being called, *Selimus* dissembled the Generallship; not to be preferred before *Corcenus*, for his years and discretion; that he having his Fathers favour, could be now content with never to little corner of the Empire:

Corcenus and his friends, whose hope was in *Selymus's* his departure with the Souldiers, instantly requested him, not to refuse that Honour, without disgrace to *Corcenus*, he being more experienced in Warre. So he was no sooner chosen Generall against *Achomates*, but the *Janizaries* and Court-Souldiers especially before instructed, saluted him their Emperour also, arming to defend their act: *Selimus* at first, shewed a half unwillingness, as to reverence of his alive-Father; but afterwards promised, besides particular favours owing to the Men of Warre, to bestow

a great and general largesse amongst them, which he did. Then he requested the Bassaes and chief Commanders, to go and take Orders since 'twas their minde, that the Empire might be transferred on him by his Fathers good will, without farther trouble.

Mustapha, whether on a new fineness of his own, or that *Selimus* threatned to kill him, if he did not; coming as dismayed to *Bajazet*, who hearing the Souldiers clamour was come into the open rooms, most unwelcomly said, Emperour, the Men of Warre have saluted *Selimus*, &c. requiring thy ratification, ready to break in and kill us both, if thou refuse to resign: they request that of thee, which they have already put into his hand. Wherefore its farre more dangerous to seek to recover, &c. than willingly to yield, &c. they in Arms and fury, thinking on greater mischief.

Bajazet troubled, and perceiving the treachery, after pausing, furiously brake out: *False and forsworn, do you thus betray me? &c. why not also take away my life, who could not a while expect my dissolution? but must in post-haste set up a most wicked man. But much good may do you wish him, &c. to whom ere long, you shall dearly pay for this treachery.* And he, beginning his Empire with unnatural treason and blood-shed, shall not, I hope, escape Gods heavy hand.

Mustapha with false *Bostanges* and *Ajax* returning, told them; he, as well content, had appointed *Selimus* to succeed him: then those corrupted, began to look big, and others, standing before doubtful, joyned themselves to that faction. *Selimus* being mounted, was in pomp conducted up and down the streets, and generally by the people, yet most otherwise affected, saluted Emperour, the Bassaes and Souldiers being that day sworn unto him.

Corcutus, whether for grief or fear, (though *Selimus* promised him *Mytilene* with *Lesbos*) secretly returned to *Magnesia*.

Bajazet overcome with sorrow; before he were enforced, trussing up store of Treasure, &c. with 500 Servants, departed towards *Hadrinople*, to have gone to *Dinotica*, not far thence, and whollomly situated. *Selimus* bringing him about two miles on his way, returned, possessing the Pallace.

Whilest *Bajazet* was travelling not above five or six miles a day, then about 76 or 80 years old, and for pain, &c. sometime staying two or three dayes in a place, *Selimus* doubted, if he should passe over into *Asia*, *Bajazet* might the while possess *Constantinople* and the Empire: wherefore before his going, he secretly compacted with *Hamon* a Jew, *Bajazet's* chief Physitian, to poyson him, promising him a reward of 10 Duckets a day for life, and threatening him with most cruel death, if he did not secretly and speedily work it; when he had done to return to him: the Jew comming to *Bajazet* very weak, told him, he would prepare a potion to restore and strengthen him, if he would early next morning take it. *Bajazet*, not mistrusting his old Physitian, said, He would gladly take it. *Hamon* comming, stood waiting till he should awake; but he still sleeping, the Jew awaking him, said, the time was almost past, &c. *Bajazet* willing him to bring it, *Hamon* took the assay, having before taken a preservative, drank it up, he bidding the waiters to keep him well covered, nor to give him drink, till he had well sweat, and so fled to *Constantinople*. *Bajazet* feeling most grievous gripings in his stomach, gave up the Ghost in 1512. reigning 30 years, the *Turks* say he died naturally; but a *Genoway* serving then in his Chamber, reports, plain tokens of poyson, were to be seen on his dead body: *Selimus* having all his Treasures, buried *Bajazet's* body with the greatest solemnity, in a Chappel he built nigh the great *Mahometan* Temple at *Constantinople*: all his Servants but five, who attired themselves in mourning, were restored to their former places: they being imprisoned,

two of them being put to death, the other saved, by *Solyman Selimus* his Sonne, and two Bassaes sure; who being stript of all, were enrolled for common Souldiers: *Merins* a *Genoway* being one, who after ten years captivity, escaping difficultly, and returning into *Italy*, wrote a History of what he had seen there.

Hansen, expecting his reward, was beheaded by *Selimus* his Command, saying, He would not stick for reward, to do the like against himself, when opportunity offered,

H h

The

*The Life of Selimus the I, the third and most
Warlike Emperor of the Turks.*

Selimus fully possessed of the Empire, first viewed the Turkish King's abundant heaped up Treasures, and gave to the Court-Souldiers 3 millions of Duckats, augmenting the Horsemen's pay 4 aspers a day, and the Footmen's two: whereby he greatly assured their minds unto him, then passing with a great Army into Asia, Sleyman his only Sonne to govern Constantinople, he came to Ancyra in Galatia, hoping to oppress Achomates; but he considering his unableness, fled into the Mountains of Cappadocia, taking up men by the way, praying ayd of all sorts, though strangers to him, to make head against Selimus, and recover Asia. Selimus doing very little that Summer, because of the winter cold and snows near Taurus. Achomates also fleeing from place to place, sending his European Horse towards the Sea-coast, and the Janizaries to Constantinople, wintered with the rest at Prusa, who then continued the league concluded by Bajazet, with the Hungarian, Polontan, and Venetian: and calling to him five of his Brothers Sonnes, between 16 and 20 years old, except Musa, not past 7; Mahometes, whom Achomates had upon Bajazet's death, freed, being about 20, who for his feature and courage, was accounted the Paragon of the Osboman Family, &c. He demanded of divers Doctors and Lawyers, whether twere not better, 5, 8, or 10, to be taken away, than the whole Empire with great blood-shed, to be rent asunder, &c. who, fearing displeasure, answered, It were better, &c; for in a general calamity, those few must needs perish with the rest: upon which colour, he leading those five Nephews into Prusa Castle, by 5 of his Captains, they were in the night strangled. Mahometes is said, to have slain one sent to kill him with his penknife, wounding the other for dead; Selimus being in a Chamber fast by, sent in others, who first binding him,

him, then strangled him: their bodies were buried at *Prusa*; which cruelty so offended most, that many martial men, for some daies absented from his sight, as from some raging Lyon.

Amurat and *Aladin* (*Achomates* Sons) only remained of all the Nephews (whom he purposed suddenly to surprize) besides his two brethren of the *Othoman* Family. These young Princes had recovered *Amasia*, whence they were expelled by *Selimus*, when *Achomates* fled: wherefore *Selimus* sent *Usagi* Bassa with 5000 horse, who (by great travel) might suddenly take them, the City being neither well walled, nor furnished for defence, *Achomates* also being absent in taking up Souldiers. But *Mustapha* the old Bassa, now detesting his execrable tyranny, by secret and speedy Messengers, warned them of *Usagi*'s coming, &c. who, advertizing *Achomates* thereof, lay in ambush for them; So that the Bassa fell at unawares into the midst of his enemies, and *Achomates* also following him, most of his men being slain, he, with other Captains were taken prisoners, and committed to safe custody.

But some of *Achomates* Souldiers, scoffing the prisoners, told them how the matter had been carried, boasting they wanted not friends, most inward with *Selimus*, who favouring the Better Cause, would not long suffer the Beast to rage: all which, when ransomed, they reported. But *Usagi* still in prison, secretly informed *Selimus*, that *Mustapha* was the only cause of that losse; who of late, envying at *Mustapha*'s authority, caused him to be in his sight, without trial, strangled and his body cast out into the street, a rare spectacle of the worlds uncertainty, and example of disloyalty. *Achomates* (in revenge) executed *Usagi*, setting all the rest at liberty.

Selimus at Spring, resolving on the destruction of *Corcenus* spending his time in quiet contemplation at *Magnesia*, giving out, he would make a sudden inroad into *Cappadocia*, let forward from *Prusa* with 1000 horsemen.

(whereof *Antonius Manavius* a *Genoway*, Author of this History, was one) and keeping on the right hand, the Souldiers perceived they were to go for *Lydia*, and *Ionis*. A valiant Souldier (sometimes of *Corcutus* his Court) secretly and speedily coming to *Magnesia*, gave him warning of his Brothers coming; *Corcutus* richly rewarding him, fled with two servants to the Sea-side, hoping for passage into *Crete* or *Rhodes*.

Next day early, *Selinus* came to *Magnesia's* Castle, hoping to find *Corcutus* in his bed; but being deceived, he in a rage examined his servants, &c. with cruel torments, getting it out of them, that he, warned by a Souldier, was fled they knew not whither. Wherefore *Selinus* caused a diligent search for 15 daies all over the Countrey, and along the Sea-coast; but not hearing of him, he sent all *Corcutus* his treasure, &c. to *Constantinople*; and leaving there a Captain with 1000 horse, he returned to *Prusa*, supposing he was fled by Sea into *Italy*. But *Bostanges* with a Fleet on *Ionis's* coast, hindered *Corcutus* escape; so that he hid himself in a Cave nigh the Sea-side, hoping to find some opportunity in few daies: he living thus with Countrey-Crabs, &c. a good while, and forced to send his man to a Shepherd's Cottage for relief was discovered to *Cassumes*, (by a Peasant) seeking after his life: and being apprehended was carried towards *Prusa*; and being within a dayes journey thereof, *Selinus* sent *Kiren-gen Oglis* called (of his squint look) *Chior Zeinall* to strangle him, and bring his body to *Prusa*, who awakening him in the dead of the night, told him, He was sent to see him executed, which must presently be done. *Corcutus* deeply sighing, desired to be so long spared, as to write a few lines to *Selinus*, which granted, he readily in *Turkish* verte reproved him of his most horrible cruelty, upbraiding him with his Father's, Nephews, and thirsting after his and *Achomates* guiltlesse blood; and concluding with bitter curses, besought God justly to revenge so much innocent

innocent blood ; requesting the Captain, the letter with his dead body might be delivered to *Selimus* ; which being next day done, (for he was presently strangled) *Selimus* uncovering the face to be sure it was he, took and read the paper from his hand ; which done, he bursting into tears, protested he was never so troubled at any mans death, and commanding a general mourning in the Court, he Princely buried his body, and 3 daies after, struck off 25 of the Searchers heads, flinging the bodies into the Sea, saying, If he were driven to flee and hide himself, they would not stick so to serve him.

Achomates at Spring, set forward with his Army from *Amasia*, being frequently excited by friends letters, assuring him, *Selimus* might be easily oppressed, if with expedition he would come to *Prusa*, the *Janizaries* and *European* horse being then absent, and himself as hated of God and man, could not in so unexpected danger, tell what best to do, &c. wherefore they willed him to hasten, &c. lest *Selimus* should call together his dispersed forces, &c. for Summer being come, he must either conquer by plain battel, which was hard, or get him out of *Cappadocia*, and the lesser *Asia*. He hoping for better succels, as well for his own strength, supply of horse from *Hysmael*, and chiefly hoping, *Selimus* now hated, would be forsaken in time of battel, yielded to his friends perswasion, and being come into *Galatia* with above 15000 horse, left his foot for haste, to come after : wherefore, *Selimus* sent speedily for his horse, and while he levyed common Souldiers *Achomates* friends with *Selimus*, did by Letters earnestly perswade him, to make haste from *Paphlagonia*, before *Selimus* his *Janizaries*, and horsemen were come, he also making all speedy and possible preparation, &c. which letters being intercepted, *Selimus* executing the writers caused others to be written in their names to *Achomates* (and signed with their Seals) with all speed to come on, and not stay for his foot, since *Selimus* might be easily oppressed

sed with a few Troops, if he would but shew himself to his friends: who on the signal of battel would tumult & kill *Selimus* going to & fro; and having them cunningly delivered, *Achomates* giving credit, & much presuming on his strength, left his footmen under *Amurath*, encamping with his horse nigh Mount *Herminius*, upon *Parthenius* bank, *Selimus* going from *Prusa*, 10000 *Janizaries* lately being come to him sent *Sinan* Bassa his *Asian* horse-General, to prove his enemies strength; who not knowing where *Achomates* lay, through the mornings darknesse, was set upon in a disadvantageous place, and losing 7000, fled back with other 3000. *Selimus* not discomfited, marched to the River *Elata*, which running out of *Herminius* into *Pontus*, watereth most large fields on the right hand, called, the Plains of the new Land: So did *Achomates*, who though *Selimus* was too strong for him; yet being now encouraged, and hoping upon his friends with *Selimus*, neither retired, nor expected his others coming: the River was betwixt them, and their number discovered, yet *Achomates*, to whom the open fields offered a safe retreat, could not be perswaded to provide in time for his, and his Armies safety.

Selimus, passing the River, commanded every man to be ready for battel next day, and placing 1000 horse under *Canoglis* his wives brother, sent a little before from *Taurica*, with some choise *Tartarians*, in ambush in a wood, charged him to charge the enemy, (battel being joyned) on their backs; and when it was day, he put his Army into battalia, *Achomates* (having no Foot) dividing his Horse into two wings. Whilst they thus stood, *Achomates* offered *Selimus* to try their quarrels equity hand to hand: which if refused, he took God and the world to witnesse, *Selimus* was the only cause of the blood to be shed; who answered, He was not to do that at *Achomates* appointment, and though he could be content so to do, his Souldiers would not suffer him, &c. returning the Messenger with 1000 *Aspers* reward.

Acho-

Achomates charging his brother's right wing, they valiantly received them; but when it came to handy-blows, they by the force of the *Persians* (well armed) were disorder'd, and forced with great losse to retire. Wherefore, *Selimus* to encourage them, brought on his left wing, and his *Janizaries* also, who with their shot enforced the other to retire. *Achomates* (careful) courageously coming on with fresh Troops, the battel was renewed, and whilst he was in great hope of victory, *Canoglus* rising out of ambush, with great out-cries, caus'd their enemies to turn upon them; the Footmen, standing close, charged them a Front, and the Horse who had fled, were for shame also returned; so that *Achomates*, being beset, his Ensigns were taken, many slain, the rest fled: and himself fleeing, fell with his horse into a rainy and miry ditch, and being taken, could not obtain to be presently slain, but was reserved to *Selimus* his pleasure; who sent *Kirengan*, with a Bow-string to strangle him: whose dead body, being brought to *Selimus* was royally buried at *Prusa*.

Amurath, hearing on the way by the *Persians* (who made their way thorough the *Turks*) of what happened, returned to *Amasia*, resolving with his brother; he with the *Persians* to flee to *Hysmael*; *Aladin*, to flee into *Syria*, and so to *Campsoa Gaurus* Sultari of *Egypt*.

Selimus, after this, soon with little trouble, bringing all lesser *Asia* under, and disposing of all things, would return to *Constantinople*; but the Plague being there hot, he came to *Hadrianople*, where he spent that Summer, and the next Winter, So to *Constantinople*, the mortality being ceased, 160000 having there dyed.

Hysmael sending for *Amurath*, demanded why he came? who by his heavy countenance and abundance of tears, expressed the cause; yet briefly declared, That his Father, Uncle, and Cousins, had lately been murdered by the Tyrant *Selimus*; who sought also his and his Brothers life, wherefore they were glad to flee.

Hysmael taking him into his protection, willed him to be chearful, promising him ayd, shortly giving him his Daughter in marriage; for 'twas thought, if *Selimus* should any way miscarry, none was to be preferred before *Amurat*: and if he should invade him out of *Persia*, all lesser *Asia*, for the death of *Achomates*, would revolt from him. Wherefore *Hysmael*, at Spring, willed *Amurat*, to passe *Euphrates* at *Arsenga*, into *Cappadocia*, with 10000 Horsemen, to prove the Countries affection, and enemy's strength: sending *Usta Ogli* with 20000 Horse to follow *Amurat* within a dayes journey, himself staying in *Armenia* with a far greater power, doubting to want Victual in those vast and barren places, whereby he must passe.

Amurat entring *Cappadocia*, had some Towns yielded him by friends; others he took by force, sacking or razing them, and so fearing the Inhabitants, that they submitting all the way, 'twas thought that he had gone to *Amasia*, had not old *Chendemus*, *Selimus* his *Asian* Lieutenant, at *Sebastia*, now *Sivas*, met him with a great Army: who also having advertised *Selimus* of the *Persian's* coming, he came into *Asia*; meeting all his forces at *Prusa*, speedily levying thereabout 40000 Souldiers: which *Amurat* understanding, though desirous to fight *Chendemus*, yet doubting to be intangled in *Antitaurus's* straits by *Selimus* his speed, he retired to *Usta Ogli*. *Selimus* to the great joy of *Christendom*, converted into the *East*, in 30 dayes came and joyned with *Chendemus* at *Arsenga*, and in revenge of his enemies harrying the Countrey, resolved to follow them, and enter the greater *Armenia*, the chief *Persian* Province. The difficulties of this expedition were propounded in Council, to be great and many; for the Souldiers, who had soon marched thither, out of *Europe* already, were to endure the pinching cold of Mount *Taurus*; by and by, scorching heat in plains, with thirst, hunger and want; and the more, since the *Persians*

retreating, destroyed all, serving for the use of man, on purpose, if they should pursue them; besides, they stood in no small doubt of the petty Princes of Armenia the lesse, and *Aladenles* the Mountain-King, whom they should leave behind them, with no great assurance of their friendship, &c. *Aladenles* his forces being not to be contemned, and his command by Castles and Garrisons stretching from the Mountains *Scodrisci*, near *Pontus*, to *Amannus*, dividing *Cilicia* from *Syria*.

Chendemus a so, of great experience, and in greatest authority with *Selimus*, perswaded him with a notable and grave speech, to stay a while in *Cappadocia*, to refresh his wearied *Europeans*, and to expect the coming of his enemies, dissuading him from the dangerous expedition into *Persia*. But he doing all things according to his own direction, though not a little moved with that speech, and seeing many Captains troubled at the imagination of the danger; yet in a fume, refusing a little of *Chendemus* his speech, dismissed the Council, protesting he would proceed, hap what would hap: though that old fellow he said, feared to die honourably. Whereupon, others accustomed to serve his humour, and envying *Chendemus*, beginning with the greatness of his forces, valour of his Souldiers, &c. laboured to lessen, what the Bassa had said, touching the enemies prowess and power: Then discrediting him, saying, he being of known resolution, had not so said, as wanting courage, but as foreloaded with *Amurat's* promises, and *Persian* Gold. Wherefore they wished him to beware of the Fox, and proceed so much the boldlier, &c. And moreover, these flatterers snubbed false accusers, affirming he received great summes from *Amurat*, and therefore timely went not against the *Persian* robbers; for which pretences, *Selimus* commanded *Chendemus*, without further hearing, to be slain; indeed to terrifie others from like liberty of speech, and to teach them to accept of their Sovereigns devices and counsels; with-

without contradiction. The sudden death of this faithful Counsellor, struck exceeding fear into the mindes of all.

Selimus marching on, came to the lesser *Armenian* King's Confines, and of *Aladenes*, requesting them then in Arms, to joyn and go with him against the *Persian*: promising, the Warres happily ended, to give them all taken from the enemy, as a reward; But they hating them both for daily injuries received, and expecting the event, answered, they took not up Arms, but for their own defence, &c. yet, if he would peaceably passe thorow their Dominions, they promised a free passage, and to relieve him in *Armenia* the greater, with what Victual their bare Countrey afforded. *Selimus* thinking those poor Kings would for love or fear have done him what service they could, then dissembled his grief. Wherefore passing the Mountains *Scodrisci*, in 8 dayes, to the great Mountains *Moschii*, which famous *Euphrates* separates from *Autitaurus*; and running into *Iberia* and *Colchis*, discovereth *Armenia* the greater, on the right hand here; *Selimus*, lest he should lack water, departed not from *Euphrates* his banks. So holding on Eastward, till he came to the Mountain *Periardo*, for its fertility, there called *Lepnus*, that is, fruitful; for *Euphrates* and *Araxis* there running forth of contrary marshes, water that Champian drie Countrey.

Selimus, not yet hearing where *Hyssmael* with his great Army was, as half afraid, encamped at the head of *Euphrates*, sending his Scouts every way, to intercept some that might inform him therein. But the *Armenians*, whether for fear of *Hyssmael's* command, were fled out of that part, whereby *Selimus* was to passe, carrying away, or burning whatever was for mans use.

The Scouts after two dayes, returned to *Selimus*, not taking one man, shewing him how it was, and thinking either the *Armenian* Guides mistaking, or on purpose, had brought

brought them into such desert places, where Horses and men must perish together: the weak Kings increasing their fear, chiefly *Aladeules*, who for a few dayes, helped them with Victuals; but being gone farre thereinto, *Armenia* performed not his promise, thinking *Hysmael* would vanquish the *Turks*, as he had most of the East. *Selimus*, perplexed, &c. with grief remembered what *Chendemus* had before told him, yet seeming chearful to his Souldiers, &c. and calling his Guides, he understood, that on the right hand beyond *Periardo*, lay the fruitful Countrey of *Armenia*; so, compassing the Hill Northward, he turn'd down toward *Araxis*, passing it over about the City *Coy*; for it is soordable, till it receive Rivers out of *Periardo*.

He had scarcely got over, but *Usta-Ogli* with *Amurat* encamping not farre off, quickly set forward to meet the *Turks*, lest *Coy* where the *Persian* Kings for fresh Fountains, &c. wholsom air, and plenty of all fruit, used to spend most of the Summer, should be suddenly surprized. (*Cussumus* an *Armenian*, probably shewed *Jovius*; *Coy* to have been famous *Artaxata*, which *Dominus Corbulo* destroyed,) Nor did *Hysmael*, though he lately sent most of his forces against the *Coraxeni* in rebellion, not much reckoning the *Turks*, durst come so far, delay; but forthwith came personally to his Army.

Usta-Ogli, incamping near the City, when as the *Turks* Scouts, upon *Hysmael's* coming, the dust rising, and the Horses neighing, perceived a great power was at hand.

The *Turks* were glad, that now they should by Victory, turn their toyl and famine, &c. into ease and plenty, or honourably end their miseries at once; for the Horsemen, especially the *Europeans*, whose Horses were starved, and the Foot spent with travel, and a great flux, living mostly on Crabs, &c. with a supping of meal and Vinegar, began to die in every corner. *Hysmael*, to terrifie them the more, sent a Herald to *Selimus*, with some skilful

skilful Souldiers, to view what they could; his number, Artillery, and how encamped; telling him, seeing the *Turks* had no Title to *Armenia*, &c. he marvelled why he entred his Dominion; but if, as *Alexander* the great, he should think so much his own as by the Sword he could win, he should next day prove his fortune, and others forces not inferior to his. *Selimus* answered, the manifold injuries done to the *Turks* by the *Persians* formerly, and also in his Warres against *Achomates*, might give him just cause, yet he esteemed them not sufficient causes of Warre, only seeking after *Amurat*, lately spoiling *Cappadocia*, whom if he would friendly deliver to him, as mutual Laws of amity required, he would peaceably return: else he threatned to destroy with fire and Sword, even the heart of *Persia*.

Next day, *Selimus* set forward in order of battel against the enemies laying about two miles off, thinking, so great a Prince would fight without delay, yet what strength, &c. the *Persian* was of, he certainly knew not; for the ingenious *Persians*, generally so loved *Hyfmael*, that not one went to the *Turks*: whereas many revolted from *Selimus* to him.

Selimus having 80000 Horse, placed *Casan Bassa* with his *Europeans* in the right Wing, *Sinan Bassa* with his *Asians* in the left; before them both, the *Acanzii*; in the middle, the *Asapi*; behind them, the Artillery guarded with 4000 Horse: lastly following himself with his Pensioners and *Janizaries*, compassed with his small Field-pieces and Carriages, commanding his Vant-guard Foot, upon the enemies approach, speedily to divide, that the great Ordnance might play betwixt them.

Hyfmael understanding by fugitives, his enemies devices, said to his chief Commanders, there was no doubt of Victory, if they could shun the Artillery: wherefore, when the *Turks* Foot divided, they should likewise withdraw into two parts, causing two great Ensigns to be displayed.

played, whither then to retire, one for himself, the other for *Usta Ogli*, and the rest. He had about 30000 Horse, no Foot; among whom were 10000 men at Arms, resolute, experienced, mounted on courageous barbed Horses, and bravely armed; no Guns; in which, and number, they were inferior to the *Turks*: yet concerning about 300000 *Turks*, and little reckoning of their Artillery, they doubted not to give them battel: being also exhorted by *Hysmael*, to remember their former Honour, &c. telling them, they had to do with such whose Weapons were but weak Staves, and light Targets: their Horses little poor jades, almost dead with hunger.

Selimus gave notice, that the long-wished for battel, was come, wherein if they would worthily acquit themselves, they should to their immortal fame, extend the *Turkish* Empire from the *Persian* Sea, to Mount *Caucasus*; but if otherwise, they must not think to escape by flight, through those desolate Countries, where they either should perish, or being taken, be forced alwayes to serve the *Persian* Women: also, *Euphrates*, *Taurus*, and *Aladenles*, who had shut up the passages, did cut off all such hope.

The *Asapi* making place for the Artillery to play, *Hysmael* also dividing, charged the *Turk's* right wing so forcibly, that *Casan Bassa*, after a terrible fight with the foremost being slain, and many after them, that wing was forced to retire unto *Selimus*; but *Usta Ogli*, who had no small harm by the Ordinance, as not clearing his men so speedily as *Hysmael*, charged their left wing, making great slaughter, and in his courageous assail was slain with a small shot. Wherewith the *Turks* encouraged, who before gave ground, renewed the battel, and with their terrifying Harque-busiers drave the *Persians* upon the *Turk's* common foot: who serring together, brake thorow them, bearing them down with a mighty slaughter, and slaying the Cannoniers, who discharging at all adventure, slew many

many of their own, as of enemies, so making way till they came to the right wing, where *Hysmael* still hardly charging the *European* Horses, they were forced to retire; but now charged afresh, scarce able to endure it, cryed to *Selimus* for help: who opening his carriages, sent out part of his Horsemen, and said to his *Janizaries*, that dayes Victory was reserved to their valour: therefore as fresh men, they should assail their wearied enemies, whose Horses were all on a water, and the men faint under their Armour: yet *Selimus* could say, they were not very forward, and whilest they leisurely set forward, the *Persians* slew the *European* Horsemen down right, and were ready to assail *Selimus* himself on every side; but *Sinan Bassa*, though his wing was sore rent, came in in good time, and with some fresh Troops, restored the battel almost lost; but chiefly by the courage of *Alisbeg*, and his Brother *Mahomet* resembling their warlike Father *Malcozzim*. *Selimus* still in hope, commanded all the Ordnance about him to be discharged: whereby such slaughter was made of his own, as well as of his enemies, that for dust, smoak, & noise of the Artillery, both sides almost losing sight, and hearing their Horses terrified with the Ordnance, not now to be ruled, the battel brake off, the Victory yet doubtful. The *Turkish* Histories term this, the onely day of doom.

Hysmael being wounded under his left shoulder with a small shot, and withdrawing through perswasion to have it searched, was the safeguard of *Selimus* and his Army: for they following their King, lest the Victory, thought by all to be almost gotten; but *Hysmael* perceiving the wound was not deep, he was about to charge a fresh; but hearing of *Usta Oglie's* death, in whom was his greatest confidence, his Captains also perswading him not to set light by his wound, whose grief he yet felt not, being warm, he softly marched away, as not resembling flight: and passing by *Tauris*, willed the Citizens to open the Gares

Gates to *Selimus*, if he came, rather than to fall into destruction, himself marching in *Media's* confines.

The *Turks* having no hearts nor strength to pursue them, yet took their Tents, where besides much rich furniture, were many Ladies and Gentlewomen, who, *Persian-like*, had followed their Husbands in those Warres, whom *Selimus* safely freed, except a Wife of *Hysmael*, whom he gave in marriage to a Bassa. Some there present, reported that divers *Persian* women were found among the dead, armed, whom *Selimus* honestly buried. This notable battel in the *Gulderan* fields nigh *Coy*, was fought August 7th, 1514. *Selimus* losing above 30000 men, *Casan*, Lievetenant of *Europe*, being one, Seven *Sauzacks*, two being the *Malcozian* Brethren, who were slain rescuing each other: most of his *European* Horse; the flower of his Army, being almost all slain, or grievously wounded: yet he having the Victory, by his enemies confession, and having Embassadors from *Coy* and other Cities also from *Taurus*, promising to relieve him, and do what he commanded, he marched thither to see and possess himself of that chief City, two dayes journey from *Coy*. The Citizens being ready, brought them store of Victuals into the Suburbs, *Selimus* not holding it safe to lodge within that populous City, only kept the Gates with a strong Guard: Some say *Selimus* went not into *Taurus*, but in a common Souldiers habit: others that he banqueted in the Kings Pallace, discoursing with the *Tannians*, about his Victory. And purposing to winter in *Armenia*, he asked his great Captains, how they liked of it, who for fear, referred themselves to him.

Only *Mustapha*, chief Bassa said, twere good to know the mindes of the *Janizaries*, & Court-Souldiers: wherefore *Selimus*, commanded him out of his sight, and degraded him, sending a Jester after him in disgrace, who cut off part of his Tulipant that hung down; but the *Janizaries* much offended with the indignity, rose in arms, telling

ing *Selimus*, they would not winne so farre from home, in the enemy's Countrey: therefore he were best betime consider of it, they being resolved to forsake him, if he did not speedily return. *Selimus* much troubled, and hearing *Hyssmael* was comming upon him with a greater power, and considering with what difficulty and danger he escaped in the last bartel, &c. and suspecting the fidelity of the *Taurisians*, he resolved to return into *Cappadocia*: wherefore exacting from them a great Masse of money against his promise, he speedily retired towards *Enphrates*, a longer way than he came, carrying away 3000 Families, the best artificers, chiefly those skilled in making Armour and Weapons: fearing to return by the head of *Araxis*, &c. for meeting the *Albanian* and *Iberian* Horsemen.

Hyssmael followed him with such speed, that he left his Carriages, and such as could not endure such a march, behind him; yet he overtook no part of his Army, till come to *Enphrates*, where he was transporting his Foot in divers small Boats made, many swimming over for haste upon bladders; some on broken pieces of their Carriages burst in sunder to that end. *Selimus* got over in a little Boat, raising the Horsemen at once, to take the River, to break the streams force, whereby his Foot and burthened Cammels got over, lesse dangerously, and some Field-pieces also with lesse difficulty: yet the *Georgian* Horsemen coming in sight before all got over, raised such a fear, that 2000 *Turks* were in their haste drowned, divers Ordnance sticking in the mud, and much baggage carried away with the River. The *Georgians* drew out the *Turkish* trash, pursuing them no farther. *Hyssmael* rejoycing, that chasing away his enemies, he recovered much of the Ordnance, that did him such hurt.

Selimus his passage was much more dangerous at *Anistaurus*, than he thought of; for *Aladenles* waiting for his prey, had taken all strait passages of that Mountain-Countrey,

Countrey, whose savage people assailing them every night, robbed their Carriages: so fleeing into the thick Woods, rocky and Mountainous: *Aladenles* fraudulently excusing him self, as if done by the people used to such robberies against his will, yet saying he would chastise the Authours, so soon as found. And sending a little provision for some dayes, he spoiled the *Turks* by night, by his Souldiers upon advantage, which *Selimus* could not prevent: wherefore purposing to be in time revenged, he with much ado, came to *Trapezond*, thence to *Amasia*, repairing his sore weakened Army that winter.

Thus *Jovius* reports the said Warres, whom others since have mostly followed; yet *Menavius* a *Genoway*, who served therein, doth much otherwise report the same. *Selimus*, saith he, with about 300000 coming to *Euphrates*, the Bridge was broken down by *Amurat*; and his enemies encamped on the farther side, having new supplies from *Hyssmael*: so that the *Persians* were about 90000 Horse and Foot, most having two serviceable Horses apiece: neither could *Selimus*, any way learn whether *Hyssmael* were there, or, which he most feared, raising greater forces. Wherefore, repairing the Bridge, he sent over *Casan* and *Sinan*, Bassa's, who encamped as they thought convenient: next morning, *Amurat*, two houres before Sun-rising, suddenly assailed *Casan* in his Trenches, discomfiting them, and taking their Tents: whereupon such a terror came on *Sinan*, that his men swam over with great danger to the rest.

Selimus troubled hereat, placed his Artillery along the hithermost bank of *Euphrates*, and to hide them, ranged some Souldiers before them, as if presently to passe over; but upon a signall, should withdraw from the Ordnance, bent upon the enemy; many of whom being overcharged; burst in sunder, slaying divers *Turk*, also many Horses and Mules, terrified with the noyse. leapt into the River, and were drowned with their Riders.

The *Persians* also having great losse, retired farther off for fear: So *Selimus* passing over, marched toward the enemy, whom the *Persians* notably encountred: The Fight was long doubtful, and much blood shed on both sides; and had not the nights approach broke it off, the *Persians* through multitude, rather then valour, had been greatly overthrown; but now they escaped the *Turks* pursuit. *Selimus* leaving his Carriages, &c. with his Foot, marched with his Horse, suddenly to surprise *Tauris*, before the fame of the battel: the *Persians* being as careful of their affaires. The day before, 10000 fresh Horsemen were comming to *Hysmael*, who placing them in the *Turks* way, commanded them, upon their approach, to flee.

Selimus in the morning, descrying them, supposing they were such as could not follow the rest, exhorted them courageously to pursue them; of which, being about mid day, weary, they stayed at a little River to refresh: then again pursuing, leaving those who could not follow, hoping before night to ransack rich *Tauris*. The *Persian* Horsemen in ambush, set the while on the *Turks* Foot, thought to be secure, greatly slaughtering them, taking all *Selimus* his Treasure and Artillery. Which being by Posts made known to him about two at night, and that the enemy was following him, he, wonderfully abashed, began to retire. The 10000 *Persians* now turning on the *Turks*, charged them hardly: who being enclosed before and behind, received a great overthrow; and losing their Ensigns, brake out sideways and fled.

Selimus also fleeing, and passing *Euphrates*, brake down the Bridge, fearing further pursuit, and coming to *Amasia* with trouble and danger, assembled the reliques of his discomfited Army: such as could not follow in flight, being all slain by the *Persians*.

The *Genoway* concludeth, that *Hysmael* did not more rejoyce hereat than himself, hoping now to free himself of thraldom, as he did. For, fleeing into *Trapezond*, he thence

thence had passage to *Hadrianople*, thence by Land to *Salonica*; thence transported into *Chios*, whence he returned to *Genoa*, after ten years captivity, part as a page in *Bajazet's* privy Chamber, the rest a Court-Souldier under *Selimus*

Jonius compares these two great Princes together, *Hysmael* and *Selimus*, who for royal descent, strength of body, courage of mind, riches & power, were equall, thereby obtaining like fame and renown; but in conditions and qualities of minde, and Martial Discipline, much differing; for *Hysmael* was Majestical, *Selimus* tyrannical; *Hysmael* courteous, *Selimus* churlish in devotion and gravity: neither suffered he his Wives to come to Court, nor using their Company, but for procreation sake, and that, as was thought, without any great countenance; for he being more delighted with unnatural pleasure, thought a mans minde and body to be not a little weakned with the allurements of Women: scoffing also many times at his Father *Bajazet*, who, he said, was so drowned in the study of *Averroes*, determining nothing certainly of the souls nature, and the Heavens motions, that he desired rather the name of a sharp disputer, amongst the idle professors of Philosophy, than of a renowned Chiefetain, amongst his valiant Souldiers.

A *Persian* Ambassador finding him pleasant, asked him, Why he wore not his beard long as *Bajazet* and others, to seem of greater Majesty; who answered, He liked not to carry such an unnecessary handful, whereby his Bassaes might at pleasure, lead him up and down the Court, as they did his Father; for *Selimus* followed no advice but his own, in what ever he undertook.

The cause why *Hysmael*, out of so many large Provinces; for he had under his Dominion, *Armenia* the greater, *Sulthania*, *Persia*, *Affyria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Media*, and *Parthia*: *Armenia* being the chiefest which yields the *Persian* his best foot, *Persia* his choyce Horsemen, chiefly

from *Scyras*; next to them, from *Affyria*, whose chief City is *Bagdat*, or *Babylon*: the *Medes* and *Parthians* being the best Archers next to the *Scythians*, brought now to small an Army against *Selimus*, was, because to win his peoples hearts, he had remitted a great part of his Customs and Tributes; so that he wanting money, could not raise such an Army, as otherwise he might, out of those populous Countries, yielding plentifully all necessaries for mans use.

But in 1513, *Selimus* wintring at *Amasia*, raised such a power in *Europe* and *Asia*, that at first of the Spring, he entered again into the *Persian* Confines with a greater Army, and that sooner than either that part of *Armenia's* cold would suffer; or the enemy thought he could have done: who thought in any case to be Master of strong *Ciamassum*, standing on the first entrance into *Armenia*; thereby, as of some holds thereabouts, to open a fair way into his enemies Countrey. *Hysmael* being then gone against the rebellious *Hyrcanians*, *Bactrians*, &c. *Selimus* making a Bridge over *Euphrates*, laid hard siege to *Ciamassum*, before they were well aware, driving the Defendants from the Walls, with their Harquebusiers and Archers, and still bringing on fresh men; others then also breaking open the Gates, and scaling the walls in divers places, the Defendants retired into the Market-place; where though spent and wounded, they resolutely fought it out to the last man. Having taken and ransacked the Town, with two small Castles, for fear abandoned, he thought good to enter no farther, till he had chased out *Aladenles*: who, fearing his own estate, hearing *Selimus* was come, soon raised a great Army for his defence, purposing to do as former'y. Wherefore *Selimus* leaving a Garrison at *Ciamassum*, retired to *Artitaurus*, where his enemies were reported to lay. *Aladenle's* people were fierce and warlike, who could profit little by Husbandry, yet bred Horses and Cammels in Pasture-bearing places; but most of their

their living food in hunting and stealing. His chief City was *Maras*, which may be thought to called from the fair River *Marſias*, running thorow it out of the Mountain *Calene*; who seeing *Selimus* enter his frontiers, brought down about 15000 Horsemen into a large Valley, ordering his great ſtore of Foot to keep the Mountains on the right and left, there advantageouſly expecting his coming. *Selimus* conſidered the places diſadvantage, yet preſuming on his ſtrength and multitude, commanded *Sinan Baſſa* the *Eunuch*, Generall of his *European* Horſe, inſtead of *Cafan*, to charge the enemy afront, with a ſquare battel, becauſe of the places ſtraightneſs, himſelf with the *Janizaries* and *Aſian* Horſe, following after. *Aladenle's* Souldiers alſo, fought valiantly in the head of the battel; and having ſpent their Arrows, ſtood cloſe, keeping the grounds advantage, ſo repulſing the *Turks* old Souldiers, that they ſeemed little or nought to prevail; for they could not encloſe them on either ſide, and the Foot grievouſly wounding the *Turks* from the ſides of the Hills, with darts and Arrows. *Selimus* ſeeing ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, contrary to expectation, ſent ſome Harquebuſiers to relieve their Fellows, and the *Janizaries* at that inſtant, to mount the Hill. The *Aladenlians* terrified with the ſhot, fled into the Mountains and Woods faſt by; yet the moſt ſlaughter was of the Foot, who, the Horſe being fled, and the *Janizaries* coming up the Hills, did with much difficulty by ſteep and broken wayes, clamber up the Mountains, as ſurprized with ſudden fear: the *Turks* killed them to the going down of the Sun: the ſwift Horſemen retiring into further and ſtronger places, with little loſſe.

Aladenles, thinking it now beſt to protract the Warre, as the *Turks* purſued him, burning the Cottages, he fled from Mountain to Mountain, not offering battel, but in advantageuſ places; wherefore *Selimus* fearing want of Viſtual, or intrapping, on the 7th day left off the purſuit: and himſelf conveniently encamping, ſent *Sinan*, carrying Viſtuals with him, with all ſpeed and policy to hunt after

the King himself. And the while inquiring of the Captives, of *Aladenles* strength, &c. found, he had taken with him his best Horse and Foot, commanding the people to forsake the Villages to leave all desolate, and intrenching himself on a strong Rock, with store of Provision, resolved not to give battel, till he had drawn them where their multitude should little avail, but to increase their losse: also they said, he feared to be betrayed by *Alisbeg*, General of his Horse, who first fled; for *Aladenles* had treacherously murdered his Father, upon a suspicion of his aspiring the Kingdom. *Selimus* striking off their Irons, laded them with gifts and promises, and sent them to *Alis*, to perswade him in so fit a time, to revenge his Fathers death, which if he should perform by some notable exploit, he should have both credit with him and the Kingdom: these imparting the matter to *Sinan*, he soon wrought with *Alis*, pricked on with desire of a Kingdom and *Selimus* his rewards, that he went over to *Sinan*, with a great part of the best Horsemen; whereby the rest, for rewards, came all by degrees, over to the Bassa. *Aladenles*, thus unexpectedly circumvented, reposed his hope in secret flight; but they pursuing him as he fled, hiding himself, at last drew him out of a Cave, betrayed by the Peasants: and being brought to *Selimus*, was in few dayes put to death, and his head in derision carried about afterwards thorow lesser Asia, then sent to the *Venetians* as a witness of his Victory. *Selimus* reduced all his Kingdom into a Province of 3 parts, to every part a *Sanzack*. *Alisbeg* to be chief over the rest, wanting nothing of a King, but the name only. And leaving *Sinan* there, commanded him, after he had set all things in good order, to winter in *Iconium*, himself, with a few, returning to *Constantinople*; for he heard, the *Hungarians* had made incursions into *Servia*, and spoiled it. Wherefore least he should lose *Samandria*, reputed the Bulwark of *Servia* and *Thrace*, he sent *Jonuses*, Bassa of *Bosnia*, with 8000 Horse into *Croatia*, as far as *Catinum*, transporting another Army over *Danubius*, into *Hungary*,
that

that the *Hungarians* at once; doubly beset, might fear their estate: and to shew the World of what power the *Othoman* Emperours were, &c. Having thus pressed the *Hungarians*, he at *Hadrianople*, and *Constantinople*, the following winter, more prepared for Warre than ever, as being advertized, that *Maximilian* the Emperour, with the *German* Princes, *Uladislaus* of *Hungary*, and *Sigismund* of *Poland*, had combined to war on him; but learning by his intelligencers sent into all parts of *Europe*, that their meetings proved but great words and Banquets, he turned himself with all his preparations again toward the *East*, to the great quiet of *Christendom*. Yet he strengthened his frontiers, with most strong Garisons, leaving his Son to *Solyman* at *Hadrianople*, and *Pyrrhus Bassa* his Tutor, which was strange, a native *Turk*, at *Constantinople*, then he sent *Cherseogles*, whom he was most trusted, with his Army into *Bythinia*, making *Zafferus* an *Eunuch*, Admiral of his Navy lately built, and with wondrous charge rigged forth, and staying a little at *Constantinople*, to see the young Souldiers then choosing *Janizaries*, he departed to his Army at *Iconium*, intending again to invade the *Persian*. Being come thither, he heard that *Campson Gaurus*, Sultan of *Egypt*, was come into *Syria* with a great Army, giving out, he would ayd the *Persian* King his Confederate, entering into *Cilicia* with all Hostility, if *Selimus* proceeded to invade him: he, perplexed, and fearing if he should passe *Euphrates*, *Campson* should break in by *Mount Amanus*, and indanger that part of his Dominion, stayed at *Iconium*, sending the *Cadalefcher*, who wrote the Commentaries of this Warre, and *Jachis* a great Captain, with great presents to pacifie him, if possible, not to hinder or disturb *Selimus*, from warring upon *Hysmael*, who had so invaded his Dominions in *Asia*; and by a new form of superstition, had corrupted and altered the most sure grounds of *Mahometanism*: and if *Campson* would by no conditions be removed, then diligently to learn his strength and designs, and speedily to return,

Campson,

Campson, though spent with age and living in worldly blisse; yet for sundry causes thought this expedition good and needful; for he hated *Selimus* for his cruelty, and would never renew the League with him made with *Bajazet*; desiring also to repress and abate his insolency, grown by success, beyond reasons bounds, &c. especially, fearing the losse of *Syria*, and so of all his Kingdom: for *Egypt*, *Judea*, and *Syria* intollerably oppressed with the *Mamaluks*, were in danger to revolt, if the *Persians* should chance to be vanquished, with whom he had made a firm League: also moved with *Aladin's* misery, he was perswaded, *Selimus* might by his and *Hysmael's* forces be thrust out of all; for *Aladin* living three years in his Court, had by all means possible incited the *Mamaluks* to revenge. Likewise *Aladules* eldest Son fleeing into *Egypt*, had filled so the minds of all with detestation of *Selimus* his cruelty, that the chief of the *Mamaluks* humbly besought *Campson*, to take on him so just a war: & if through years he thought himself unable; yet to give them leave of themselves to take it in hand.

These *Mamaluks* far excelled the *Turks* both in strength, skilful riding, goodly armour and also in courage and wealth. Many Christians of loose life, or condemned for notorious offences, fleeing to *Egypt*, and abjuring their Religion, being circumcised, and meet for the wars grew by degrees to great honour, as did *Tangarihardinus* the Son of a Spanish Marriner, by whose advice (in *Campson's* time) almost all things were done, and was by him sent Ambassadour to *Bajazet*, and to the State of *Venice*, about matters of great importance; yet at length by envy he was brought into disgrace, thrust out of his place, cast into prison, and miserably died, loaded with cold irons. For appeasing the mischief arising in that servile Monarchy (for 4 years) by civil wars, about the succession of a Sultan, after *Caytheus* his death, to the sore weakening of the *Mamaluks* estate, the great Courtiers, and

and chief men amongst them offered the Kingdom to *Campson Gaurus*, or (as the *Turks*) *Casaves Gauris* a man of great integrity and courage, and free from ambition: who earnestly, at first, refused it, excusing himself as unfit for so high a place, and with tears standing in his eyes, besought other great Lords to forbear to thrust him, (content with his private life) into that place subject to so many dangers, &c. (for he was terrified with the example of so many Kings slain in a short time by other proud competitors). They perswaded him not upon a foolish obstinacy or vain modesty, to refuse his good fortune; but courageously to take on him the government of the State, sore shaken with civil discord, together with the regal dignity, promising by solemn Oath, with all their power, policy, and wealth, to maintain and defend the Majesty of his State, and that the men of war, should not demand their wonted largesse, till it might be raised out of his Customs, and other Crown-Revenues; whereby he suffered himself to be saluted Sultan, and having given 10 millions of Ducats to the men of War, as a largesse, and by his moderate Government, had caused men generally to admire his prowess and wisdom, he so reformed the shaken State of that Kingdom, taking away by poyson and other secret devices, the chief Authors of that Sedition, that for 16 years, neither tumult or noise of war, was heard in all *Syria* and *Egypt*: Undoubtedly worthy the name of a most excellent and fortunate Prince, if in the winding up of his life he had not rashly thrust himself into the dangerous quarrels of other Prince.

Campson, encamping at the River *Orontes*, (now *Farf*) entertained *Selimus*, his Embassadors with more bounty than courtesie; who most temperately and calmly delivering their Embassage in his Pavilion, he answered, The *Egyptian* Sultans (holding the chief place in their Religion) used to keep with all care other *Mahometans* in concord, whereof he was ever desirous, and was
come

come into *Syria*, only to perswade *Selimus* to peace; who, if he would proceed against *Hyfmael* his confederate, he would not long suffer all to go to rack for the pleasure and fury of one insolent and ambitious man, saying, He had long seen into *Selimus* his insatiable, fierce, and troublesome disposition; who, procuring the death of his Father, slaying his Brethren, Nephews, with many other his best friends and faithful Counsellors, could make no end of his ambitious tyranny: therefore, to tell him the only condion of peace should be, If he desisted from invading *Hyfmael*, and restored to *Aladeules's* Son his Father's Kingdom, long under the *Egyptian* Sultan's protection, as he ought to be; whereby, besides his friendship, he should reap more glory by a sure and honourable peace, than by a dangerous war.

Though the Embassadours knew, *Selimus* would not, for any threats, give over his enterprize; yet that being the sooner dispatched, they might truly advertize *Selimus* of the Sultans sudden coming, he seemed wondrously to like of his motion, and to give good hope by their perswasions to induce *Selimus* his liking, &c. So being by *Campson* rewarded, they departed, travelling day and night till they came to *Selimus*, who was come to *Casaria*. *Campson* also came into *Comagena* unto *Aleppo*, at this day a famous City, for its commodious scituation, much frequented by Marchants from the farthest part of the world; but the City *Birtha* at *Euphrates*, of late time bounded the *Egyptian* Sultan's Kingdom from the *Persian*.

Selimus understanding by his Embassadours, both of the coming and number of his enemies, also the Sultan's proud answer, thought good to convert his forces another way than before; Wherefore, making shew as if he would have gone against the *Persian*, he sent before, part of his Army with his Carriages to *Suassia*, formerly *Sebasta*, standing in the *Persians* frontiers; but, turning on the right hand, purposed to passe *Taurus*, and suddenly
into

into *Comagena*, to come upon *Campson* before he were well aware; wherefore he cheerfully declared to his *Janizaries*, & other Court Souldiers, what he resolv'd to do, with the Reasons, perswading them, the victory would be easily atchieved; if they courageously and with speed, would get up to the top of the Mountains, and recover those difficult passages, not fearing the vain names of *Mamaluks*; for why, said he, the strength of those horsemen is long since decayed and gone; the old *Mamaluks*, who in *Caytheins* his time were of some fame, are all dead, &c. To overcome (said he), indeed wholly consisteth in their courage and valour, who deem nothing more honourable or better than to spend their lives for the honour of their Prince and Country. Here the *Janizaries* shaking their weapons, cryed out, He should conduct them whither he would, they being ready to overcome all difficulties, and endure all labours and dangers.

Selimus, by the people, finding the easiest passages, resolv'd to passe the Mountain in three places, and by opening streight passages, by the people and Souldiers, and making rough waies smooth, encouraging by reward those Souldiers who took extraordinary pains therein, in 5 daies, all his Army, baggage, and Carriages, got over the mountain into *Comagena's* Plains: for where *Taurus* takes the name of *Amanus*, it is not exceeding high, nor yet impassible.

Alis Beg the betrayer of *Aladenles*, being sent for, with a strong power of Horse, speedily over-ran all at the foot of *Amanus* and *Taurus*; thereby to understand, of the people and those they could take, where *Campson* lay: also by keeping the passages to do what possible, that *Selimus* his coming might not be known.

Campson who had vainly and proudly flattered himself, could not be perswaded *Selimus* was come over Mount *Amanus*, till he had certain news, that he was encamped with a most puissant Army, within 2 daies march
of

of him. Then as sore troubled, he sometimes hoped well, and by and by was as half dismayed. And being exceeding careful of his honour and himself, doubted whether to retire into more safe places, or to hazzard a battel; though on great disadvantage; for besides the *Mamaluks* Military glory above 300 years, himself being 77 years old, was not willing to reserve his last daies to shame and obloquie.

One *Jamburd Gazelles* above others (valiant, experienced, and Governour of *Apamia*) thought, to fight with the *Turks* most expert Souldiers, with so small a power, was desperately dangerous: also that 'twas good speedily to retire, choosing *Damasco* as the fittest place for war, whither they might easily retire, (the *Turks* not able hastily to follow them for their Foot and Carriages) and calling thither all the *Mamaluks* in *Judea* and *Egypt*, and entertaining the *Arabians* to protract the war till Winter, when the enemy would want victual: neither was it to be feared, *Aleppo* (though but reasonably furnished) could be presently taken, the enemy having but small field-pieces. Besides, aid would soon come from the *Persians* out of *Mesopotamia*, and *Hysmael* was like enough to break into *Asia* the lesse: they might also, upon request, have great Artillery from *Rhodes* and *Cyprus* against the common enemy; afterwards, he said, *Campson*, if he saw meet might (on even hand) give battel; but seeing the most furious motions of the greatest wars, did commonly by politic delay grow calm, he should not make too much haste, since the errors of war often chancing through Chieftain's rashnes, might be lamented and detested, but hardly or never recovered or amended. This grave speech much moved the Sultan and others; but the fool-hardy *Mamaluks* began to leap, dance, and rejoyce, that now they might prove their valour, and win themselves honour, a time long wished for, by notable slaughter of their enemies, to advance *Campsons* Majesty far above the fame
of

of *Caytheius* : Some chief ones also, upon flattery and boasting, alleadged how they overthrew the *Turks* great Army at *Taurus*, periwading him the victory would be easily gotten. Chiefly *Cayerbeius* Governour of the Province and *Aleppo* (afterward preferred by *Selimus* to the greatest honours of *Egypt*) extolling the *Mamalukes*, and extenuating the enemy, strove to the utmost to overthrow *Gazelles* wholesome Counsel; for he grudged in heart against *Campson*, who had poysoned his brother next to himself in power, and of an aspiring mind. *Cayerbeius*, doubting the same on himself, when summoned to a Parliament at *Caire*. feigned himself sick : *Campson* offended hereat, thought best to wait for a fitter opportunity, to take away that proud man, &c. either coming to *Aleppo* upon occasion of that war, or of going in person to *Euphrates*; for the Sultans accounted themselves unworthy of that name before they had encamped their Army at *Byrtha*, and with solemn pomp forced their horses into the River to drink, thereby to shew, they were ready by Arms to prove, all to be theirs along *Euphrates*, from *Taurus* to *Arabia's* desarts. But this wars consideration, caused him to deferr his wrath against *Cayerbeius*, till the end thereof, lest the *Mamalukes* should revolt, or some mutiny be raised in *Aleppo*, he keeping there a strong Citidal, built on a hills rising in the middle of the City, with a sure Garrison.

Many of *Campson's* secret friends (the while) advised *Cayerbeius* to beware of the Sultan, &c. who without delay, sent secretly to *Selimus*, declaring the cause of his grief, promising to come to him upon occasion and to deliver to him the Castle, with the heart of the Citizens, and all his own Horsemen : & for performance of promise on both sides, required Hostages; also advertising him of the Sultan's strength, in any case to give him battel, before he had a greater power. *Selimus* condescended to all, promising him far greater things than he required.

Campson,

Campson, through the General consent of his Souldiers, relolved to dare him battel. He lay encamped on the River *Singa*, almost 10 miles from the City, that his Souldiers using the benefit of the River, and removed from the Cities pleasures, might yet be relieved with the plenty thereof.

The *Mamalukes* were scarce 12000, yet every one according to his place, had more servants well furnished. Besides, their cunning and furniture in their fighting, their Horses were strong, couragious and swift, and so docible, that at signs and speeches of the Rider, they would reach him with their teeth from the ground a Launce, Arrow, &c. and run upon the enemy with open mouth, lashing at him with their heels, and had learned not to be afraid of anything. *Campson* made 4 battels: *Cayerbeius* led the first, it being in his Province. *Sybeius*, Governour of *Damasco*, (called for his activity *Balvano*, that is, a Tumbler) the second. After them (who were to charge both the *Turkish* wings at once) followed *Gazelles* with the third. *Campson*, all glittering, himself led the fourth, almost a mile and half behind. The last was to defend the Camp.

Selimus ordered his *Asian* horse in the right wing, his *European* in the left, his *Janizaries* and Artillery in the main battel; before whom, between the wings, he placed his valiant Pensioners, serving that day amongst them, not used so to do.

Cayerbeius gave a hot charge upon the *Europeans*; and by and by, as if to compasse in that wing, wheeled a great way about behind them, where lighting on a great company of drugges, &c. with Cammels and Carriages, he made there a great stir, with little slaughter. *Sybeius*, turning his Troops on the left hand, entred overthwart the ranks of the other wing; where, having made great slaughter of the *Asian* Horse, they furiously bare down all before them, till they came to their Ensigns in the midst:

midst: neither could *Mustapha* the *Beglerbeg*, nor the *Imbrahar* Bassa, (or Master of the horse) by any means stay the rest from flight. So *Sybeius* now thrusting in betwixt the foot and the Pensioners backs, brought great fear on the whole main battel; the matter being extremely dangerous; for *Selimus* was hereby almost cut off from his Foot; the *Janizaries* being also hardly charged by *Gazelles*, setting on the head of their battel. But by the seasonable coming in of *Sinan* Bassa with many fresh troops, (being but lightly charged by *Cayerbeius* the traitor) the *Mamaluks* fury was repressed, the *Turks* encouraged, and the victory soon wrung out of their hands: *Selimus* then discharging his Artillery amongst them, their Horses somewhat troubled, could not be so well ruled as before, themselves, though wondrous courageous, being oppressed with the multitude of their enemies; yet setting close, they brake thorough the midst of them, with great slaughter of the *Europeans*, and hurt of the Pensioners, speedily fleeing toward the Camp and City, *Sinan* following with the readiest Troops; for *Selimus* who that day seemd greater than himself, riding up and down, called earnestly upon them to urge the victory.

Campson on the way, coming for relief, or to partake of victory, heard by those that fled, That *Cayerbeius* was revolted, his Army overthrowen, and his Souldiers flight not to be stayed: 'twas also reported, that the enemies multitude and their Artilleries force were not to be encountered; Whereat the proud old man, who never tasted of ill hap, was ready for grief to sink down, and forthwith his own men and the pursuing enemy, coming upon him, who without regard overthrow whomsoever they met, he being corpulent, of great years, and, besides his weighty Armour, troubled with a rupture, through heat and grief, fainted in that presse, and falling down was troden to death. The *Tetrarchs* of *Damasco* and *Tripolis* fighting behind, to repress the pursuers force, were slain.

Selimus

Selimus erecting a few Tents in the field, keeping most of his men in Arms, slept not that night, as not yet assured of his victory, lest the *Mamaluks* should set upon his Camp, knowing they were put to flight rather by *Cayerbeius* his treachery, and fury of his Ordnance, than by valour. *Gazelles* and others hearing of *Campson's* death, baiting their Horses hastened from *Aleppo*, to *Damasco*. Next day, *Selimus* giving his enemies rich Tents, to his Souldiers for a prey, had *Aleppo* delivered to him by *Cayerbeius*, and, to win the Citizens hearts the more, granted them greater privileges than formerly.

This noted battel (wherein not above 1000 *Mamaluks* were slain, but of their servants, &c. many more, whose foggy fat Horses, brought up in cold Stables, fainted, with the scorching heat, so that many betook themselves to their feet and were easily slain) was fought Aug. 17. 1516, on which day two years, he obtained the victory against *Hysmael*, in the *Calderan* fields. He lost 3000 Horsemen, although *Sinax* by *Cayerbeius* his Treason, escaped with small losse. *Campson's* body being found two dayes after, was laid in open place, that such as believed him alive, might be out of hope of his return from *Cairé*; and others, revolted, might be the more confirmed; and after three dayes, thus laying and beginning to grow noysome, it was simply buried in the most ancient Temple of *Aleppo*.

Selimus sent *Jonuses* Bassa to pursue his enemies to *Damasco*, who himself came thither few dayes after, his enemies being fled to *Cair*. They of *Damasco* not thinking it good to hazard their lives with that Cities great Wealth, opened to him the Gates; other Sea-Cities, as *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Sidon*, *Ptolemais*, &c. yielding themselves in like manner.

Not long after, he held a great Counsel in his Camp, under its walls; for he brought not his Souldiers in, for troubling the Cities State, and the great Trade then very
securely

securely these kept by Merchants of divers Countreies. And so severe was his Discipline, that the Orchards and Gardens, it being Autumne, rested without a Keeper, untouched: whereby his Camp had plenty of all necessaries, at reasonable prices. And taking men skilled in the Lawes and Customs of the Countrey, with Embassadors of all Cities, he decided the *Syrians* greatest controversies, appointing Governours, viewing the Tributes and Customs, abrogating many old ones due, seeming unreasonable or grievous.

Having refreshed his Army, especially his Horses grown lean, he most desirous of conquering *Egypt*, sent *Sinan* into *Judea* with 15000 Horse, and a select Regiment of Harquebutiers to try the passage, and open a way to *Gaza*, thought to be troublesome, for the wild roaming *Arabians*: *Gaza* standing nigh the Sea, towards *Egypt*, not farre from the Sandy Desarts.

The *Mamelukes* the while, assembled generally at *Caire*, without contention chose *Tomombeius* or *Tumbai* a *Curcassian*, their King, being *Diadare*, or next in office before. He thinking his own Majesty, and the *Mamelukes* remaining hopes, to be wholly reposed in Arms; with great industry provided Armor, Weapons and Horses, casting store of Ordnance, and mustering great Companies of his slaves: entertaining many *Moors* and *Arabians*: Hiring also men skilful to go thorow the *Palmyren* Desarts, into *Mesopotamia*, and so to *Hysmael*; requesting him by Letters to invade *Asia* the lesse, or speedily to break into *Comagena*, then destitute of sufficient Garrisons: and that *Selimus*, then in *Judea's* borders, might easily be inclosed by them both, and vanquished or distressed for want: and the rather, for that there was no *Turkish* Fleet on that Coast, &c. *Sinan* the while *Selimus* his forerunner (having repulsed divers Companies of theevish *Arabians*) was come to *Gaza*: the Citizens, (though in heart the *Mamelukes*) yielded him their City.

on composition, and relieved him, giving him great disembled thanks, that by his meanes they were delivered from the *Mamalukes* bondage, & ever promised to remain faithfull for so great a benefit. *Sinan* commending their good will, lodged his Army nigh the Walls, within defence of the Gardens, there to expect *Selimus* his coming. And the while, diligently sought to get knowledge of that desert, dry Country, chiefly of the nature of the great sands: winning by rewards the Inhabitants thereabout, to procure the chief *Arabians* favour, by large offers, and to spie what the *Mamalukes* did at *Caire*, &c. and give him knowledge.

The *Gazians* on tother side, advertized *Tomombeius* of *Sinan's* coming, and that he might be oppressed before *Selimus* came, if a strong power were sent thither, and if the *Mamalukes* would at an appointed time, set by night upon them, they then sallying out, would do them what harm they could with fire and sword. *Tomombeius* presently sent *Gazelles* with 6000 choise Horsemen and many *Arabians*: who having shewn himself a politique and valiant Chiefetain, all held a great opinion of his valour and direction.

But *Sinan* was instantly advertised by his Intelligencers, that they were coming suddenly to oppress him, and would be with him within two dayes, being on the spur. But *Sinan*, though he knew nothing, yet providently suspecting the *Gazians* treachery, silently betwixt 10 and 12 at night, dislodging his Army, marched about 15 miles toward *Egypt*, nigh which was a small Village, wherein Travellers lodged, for a plentiful Spring there riseth; *Sinan* and *Gazelles* both, purposed to stay there: both whose fore-runners brought newes that the enemy was at hand.

Gazelles not a little troubled, and unable to fight in plain battel; especially his Horses being sore wearied, was enforced on a new resolution; yet not discouraged, he cheer-

cheerfully exhorted his Souldiers to make ready, and perform that by force which they could not by policy. *Sinan* having somewhat sooner set his men in order, as taking order before, with long hopeful perswasions encouraged his, to play the men; not to think of flight, for the wayes would be shut up; chiefly to be perswaded, no one could perish, but whom the immortal God had appointed to die: that valiant men found life in the midst of their enemies, as cowards death in their safest flight.

Sinan placed his Harquebusiers in the wings, in thin Ranks, the easier to use their pieces, and enclose the enemy. *Gazelles* sent, before, the *Arabian* light Troops, to trouble the enemies wings: charging their middle battel with a square battel. The battel was long terrible, and doubtful; for the *Turks* being glad to give ground, and disordered by the *Mamalukes* breaking in, began to look which way to flee; but the Harquebusiers having repulsed the *Arabians*, wheeling about, enclosed the enemies battel, whereby men and Horse were a far off slain, true valour helping them not; for the *Mamalukes* pressing forward, the *Turks* retired, labouring only to gaul them with shot.

Gazelles, his Horses being spent, the *Arabians* beginning to fall off, and many of his valiantest men slain or wounded, (himself also wounded in the neck) making his way thorow, losing divers Ensigns, fled back to *Caire*: having lost the Governours of *Alexandria* and *Caire*, with 1000 more, and a great number of *Arabians*. *Sinan* lost above 2000 of his best Horsemen, some being noted Commanders. The *Turks* (not able to pursue) there encamped near the Fountain: and next day gathering the spoil, fastned their enemies heads, known by their long beards, upon date Trees; in witness of their labour, and to feed the eyes of fierce *Selimus*, shortly to passe that way.

They of *Gaza*, supposing *Sinan* on some knowledge of

the *Mamalukes* coming, had retired, early setting upon many left in the Camp, most being sick and weak, slew them, and presently spoyled 2000 Horsemen of their Carriages, putting them to flight, who were sent from *Selimus* to *Sinan*: who fearing he had been lost with his Army, in fear retiring, were slain by the *Arabians*: neither had one escaped, if *Juleb* sent from *Selimus* to *Sinan* with *Gracian* Horsemen at *Rama*, had not repressed their fury: yet they calling for more and more, dwelling in the Mountains, were a great Army overtaking the *Turks*, at the Village *Carasbara*, forcing them to fight in a place of great disadvantage; for having taken straits, closing in the passage of a large Valley, they were before, behind, and on both sides at once. They skilfully used Bows and Arrows, with long Spears armed at both ends, upon their swift Horses; so that the *Turks* keeping close, hardly defended themselves, in number few: *Juleb* opening the way by 4 pieces of Artillery, speedily brought his men thorow those straits; then marching more latly, he skirmished a far off with them, discharging his Field-pieces, where he saw the thickest of those wild people: yet they were still hovering in their rear, slaying such as could not follow, and not suffering them to refresh or take rest: so that many through thirst, wounds and labour, died; but a great number of other *Turks* met them unlooked for, being even at last cast; for *Selimus* having left *Imbraher* Bassa upon *Persia's* borders, and sent for supplies from *Constantinople*, by Sea to be transported, had removed from *Damaseo*, and the better to provide for Victuals and forrage, every day, sent before, great Companies of his Army.

Juleb, next day meeting with *Selimus*, told him all that had hapned, and what they conjectured of *Sinan* Bassa: He now exceeding melancholy, thought good to go no further, before he knew how it stood with *Sinan*, in whose fortune he had put the hope of his good success;

But

But suddenly came the *Syrian* Spies, declaring what *Sinan* had done, turning that melancholy into joy; seeing by that Victory *Egypt* laid open to him, &c.

Next day removing to *Rama*, he burnt, by the way, the dwellings, Wives, and Children of those *Arabians*, who had done so much harm to his men; and sending his Foot to *Sinan* at *Gaza*, himself turned on the left hand to *Jerusalem*, to visit that ancient and famous City; then unpeopled, desolate and defaced, not inhabited by Jews, but mostly by a few poor Christians, who payed a wondrous yearly tribute to the Sultan of *Egypt*, for the possession of the holy Grave; & reverently worshiping the Monuments of the Prophets, and having done special sacrifice to *Mahomet*, he gave to the Christian Priests keepers thereof, as to devout men, money to maintain them for six moneths; and after one nights stay, marched in four dayes to *Gaza*, having skirmishes day and night with the *Arabians*: who, where the *Turks* were forced for the wayes straightness, to extenuate their ranks, they wou'd be ready to skirmish, and suddenly come to handiblowes: tumbling down upon them great stones from the Mountains: their Harquebussiers through the weathers rayniness, and tempestuousness, serving to little purpose; yet the *Janizaries* climbing up the hills with Pikes, and driving them from their standings, near the Emperors Person, no great hurt was done.

Sinan, who returning, had put to death the Authors of the treachery at *Gaza*, confiscating their Goods, and exacted a great sum of the People in general, went to meet *Selimus* with his victorious Souldiers: who gave to the Captains generally, and particularly, the valianrest common Souldiers, silk Garments, with a great sum of money as a reward.

He stayed but four dayes at *Gaza*; and although his expedition required great haste, yet his Army was to be refreshed, and great provision to be made for carriage of

water on Cammels backs, thorow the drie, solitary and light sandy Defarts, by the winde much troubling the weary passengers; but such a sudden calm ensued, the great rain falling few dayes before, that *Selimus* wanted nothing, no not plenty of water, for the happy conduct of his Army; yet the wild *Arabians* all along, hovered about them for prey, snatching up, and slaying any that stragled, or layed behind; but he provided an easie remedy by placing his Field-pieces in divers parts to be, upon danger, discharged upon them: also strong *Harquebutiers* in the rear-ward, for defence of the weak who could but softly follow.

By this meanes, with small losse he in 8 dayes drew nigh to *Caire*; *Sinan* with his *Europeans*, keeping a dayes journey before. Into a Village called *Matharea*, famous for plenty of excellent balm, about six miles from *Caire*, nigh the Village *Rhodania*, *Tomombeius* conveighing all his new and old Artillery, had drawn deep ditches a crosse the field and high way, closely covering them with weak hurdles and earth: and he with about 12000 *Mamalukes*, and a multitude of *Arabian* Horsemen, lay in convenient places, that the *Turks* approaching might feel the force of his Ordnance, before come within Arrowes shot, and forthwith to let upon them, disordered and entrapped, so that none doubted of the success; a great mischief to the *Turks*, if the treachery of a few, had not frustrated their great endeavors. For 4 *Epirot Mamalukes* (grieving at the preferment of *Tomombeius*: whether upon malice, or hope of reward, &c. or in that declining of their Kingdom to seek new friends, fled secretly to *Sinan*: who being born in a Village of *Epirus*, a Sow kept in the House, is reported to have bit off his Genitories, being a Child sleeping in a shady place; and being brought to *Constantinople*, by the takers up of minions for the *Turk*, was presented to *Mahomet* the great: where fortune advanced him to his appointed
ho-

honours whom he had before dismembered) instructing *Selimus* and him especially, what stratagems *Tomombeius* had devised, wherein they must needs fall, if they forlook not the high way. Wherefore by their guidance, they by a great compass and unusual way, came before day, shewing themselves at their enemies backs in order of battel, with their Artillery ready bent. *Tomombeius*, though above measure grieved at the frustrating of all that he with such industry and labour had brought to pass, yet being of an invincible courage, entered into his wonted devices, telling quickly his chief Commanders what to do: the Signal for making ready was to be given, the battel to be ordered, the Souldiers encouraged: and his Ordnance to be quite contrary turned, hardly at once, to be directed by one, and hastily to be done by many; but especially the great concourse for removing of the huge iron Ordnance like Ship Ordnance, most troubled the well ordering of the rest with their tumultuous stir; but cheerfulness and constancy much helped their difficulties: who although twice overcome, and in so suddain an accident, were still of greater spirit and confidence. Wherefore *Tomombeius*, the signal being given, commanded his *Arabians* to enclose the enemies wings behind, skirmishing with them, that, if possible, the Turks Horsemen, might be disordered, before he came to charge them, also his Ordnance presently to be discharged. So did the Turks likewise, bringing them within an arrow-shot. So that for a good space they beat one upon another with their Ordnance only: the Egyptians Cannoneers being almost all slain, and many of their Field peeces broken, by the others shot. For *Selimus* had allured many excellent Canoniers, out of *Italy* and *Germany*, chiefly of those Jews who were banished *Spain* by *Ferdinand*, dispersing, after that, those devices thorough the East. *Jacobus Regio Lepidi* was the chief, a cunning Engineer who lately through the Turks rewards, revolted to Mahometanism.

But after the matter brought to battel, the Mamalukes with a most hideous cry, furiously assailed the Turks in three places: for *Selimus* keeping his wont, approached his enemies in form of a half Moon: *Mustapha* led the Asians in the right wing, *Jonuses* the Europeans in the left, himself the main battel: *Sinan* the General of the field led a great number of selected Horsemen, with five hundred Janizaries, Harquebusiers, ready against all uncertain events. So almost at once, four sharp battels were made in divers places. Some present, report, that, what for clamour, noise of Instruments of War, and rising of the dust, all were so confounded, that mistaking one another, they slew many friends instead of enemies: never battels meeting with greater hatred, nor two Kings with lesse care of their persons and safety, more desperately shewed their strength and courage. *Gazellus* to requite the Europeans for the slaughter not far from *Gaza*, very furiously assailed *Jonuses*, and at first encounter brake his first Ranks overthrowing some of his Guidons; and the Arabians then pressing in behind forced those victorious, the flower of *Thrace*, *Thessalia*, *Epirus*, *Macedonia* and *Grecia* to flee, which never enemy before saw: but *Sinan* coming speedily in with his fresh Troops, restored the declining battel; and while he was fighting couragiously in the head of his battel, he was by Captain *Bidon* coming in, slain: to rescue whose dead body, while his followers laboured, they were by *Gazellus* unfolding his Troops, most slain, the rest put to flight: and the five hundred choise Janizaries, now destitute of Horse, when they had done what was possible were compassed, cut in pieces, and trodden under foot in a trice. *Mustapha* in the other wing, sore pressed the Egyptians left wing, which valliant *Helymis* the Diadare, and *Giapal* led, who had lately received great harm by *Selimus* his overthwart Ordinance. *Mustapha* hereupon with his whole Troops, overthrew their broken Ranks, and glistering, with a loud

voyce

voyce encouraged his Afians by valour or honourable death, to recover their honour lost in the fields of *Aleppo*.

Then also *Tomombeius* breaking thorow the middle battle of the Turks-Horse, entered among the Foot, giving many a deadly wound with his Scimitar, he being big and strong. The Arabians also had encloated the uttermost of the Turks, forcing them in many places to turn upon them, being doubtfully charged before and behind. *Selimus* setting forward with his foot, and Janizaries, neither the couragious barbed Horses, nor their Riders could abide their force; for with their harquebusers and pikes, they so strongly beset their front, that nothing could stand where that linked body swayed; yet this cruel battel continued doubtful from the fourth hour, till Sun setting, every part of both Armies with divers successes enduring the fury of that fight, both victors and vanquished, fighting as prodigal of their lives, &c. So that their bodies wearied and weakened with wounds, supported with anger seemed sufficient to maintain that Battel till next day; if the darkness coming on, had not ended that dayes slaughter.

Tomombeius fearing to be utterly overthrown, first sounded a retreat, that his Mamalukes might not seem to be put to flight; for the fortune which deceiv'd his first hopes, seemed to promise better success, if, as not discouraged, he should renew the War. The Turks enjoying their enemies tents and Ordnance, pursued them till midnight. It was fought Jan. 24. 1517. The Diadare was taken in flight, mortally wounded, and valiant *Bidon*, having his knee broken with a shot, his Horse being therewith slain: both whom, *Selimus* next day, commanded to be slain either for their wounds thought incurable, or to revenge *Sinan's* death, which he wondrously lamented.

The Turks Armies was greatly impaired even in their fortunate

fortunate Battels: the fourth part was consumed by sickness and Sword, that day tying many Horses, besides their former long journey. Wherefore not yet experiencing the Cuirians disposition, nor certainly understanding where *Tomombeius* stayed, or what he resolved, staying four dayes at *Matharea* and *Rhodinia*, he provided for his wounded, and burying his dead, but not his enemies. Then for more commodious watering, he came into the plains between old *Caire* and *Bulace*.

Tomombeius, encamping between new *Caire* and *Nilus*, with his collected Mamelukes, Æthiopian slaves, Mamelukes sons and Moors: also Jews and Arabians, having opened the old Armory, prepared for a greater War than before; but, having lost his Ordnance, with many of his valiantest Horsemen, and desiring to protract the War till heat of Summer, he thought not good to adventure another Battel: but resolved by night to assail the Turks Camp, and if possible to set it on fire: that he might attempt some notable exploit before the enemies should perceive his weak power, and before grown into contempt with the natural Egyptians, expecting but some fit occasion to rebel: also by benefit of the night, to avoid the danger of their great Ordnance. But *Selimus* by some Mamelukes who daily forsok him, understanding hereof, making great fires in his Camp, kept most careful watch: whereby next night *Tomombeius* was repulled with no small loss of his first Troops, unadvisedly going on too far, and misdoubting the unwonted fires, called back his halting Troops, marching into the very mouth of the Ordnance bent on them.

Tomombeius his chief Captains now perswaded him with his whole strength to man *Caire* and keep the Turks from entring; wherefore the Mamelukes coming thither, furnished all their families, and flat roofs of their Houses with all kind of Weapons: requesting the Egyptians to take arms against their antient and mortal enemies, not

to suffer themselves to be slain, their goods spoiled, and their wives and children to be miserably captivated, since the merciless enemy (if they overcame) would not spare them, though they stood as newters, &c. Many of the wealthiest, as they thought the charge would be hurtful to their trades and wealth ; so were they ready to help their old Lords. But many of the middle sort, and far more of the basest vulgar, having little or nought to lose, hoped to gain by others losses, and remembering their about three hundred years slavery under the proud Mamalukes, kept close, expecting the last event, secretly rejoycing, that their cruel Masters should now be justly punished ; and the more, that the revenge should be by the hazard of others lives, with which, they hoped shortly to fill their eyes.

Tomombeius with much labour and care fortified all the gates and entrances of that great and ancient City (for it was not compassed with any walls) appointing to every street a Captain, in every publike place encouraging the people, and omitting nothing that could be done or devised : making cheerful shew of greatest hope in so great a danger. The Mamalukes also, strivingly, according to every ones devise, caused great ditches, or Timber-logs to be cast along the streets, some setting up sharp Stakes in covert Trenches, that the enemy falling on them unawares, might be engaged ; others furnished the windows and fronts of their Houses in the greatest streets, with Harquebusiers, and all (with many more) with such speed, that none refused to put his hand to any labour. The broadest street came strait from the East gate to the Castle and middle of the City (the rest, were so narrow and crooked, that no great Artillery could be brought by them, or Souldiers enter without great danger) : into this, especially, *Tomombeius* conveighed his chiefest strength, for the enemy must needs come in that way ; but the innermost part, where the Castle stood, was kept with a very

very great, strong and valiant Garrison: thence, on all occasions to come for relief; for why, that greatest City, could not with his then so small power, be in every place sufficiently defended. *Selimus* certainly understanding hereof, drew nearer to the City with his Army, exhorting them, now a little to force themselves for gaining of the Rewards due to their former labours and Victories, which he said, would be more and greater than they had imagined: telling them, there was but few good Souldiers left with the detolate Sultan, &c. making them believe, he was sent for by the Egyptians, promising to assail the Mamalukes whose name they hated, upon occasion, out of their houses; yet saying, they were not to be accounted quite overcome, which lived in hope, with Weapons in their hands, possessed of the chief City; therefore to think, that in that day's fortune rested the good or bad estate of their lives, honour and fortunes: assuring them it would be but small labour to bring it to an end, if in that new kind of fight as in other Battels, they would but resolve to overcome.

This speech enflamed the Souldiers, but hope of such prey, much more; So that *Selimus* entering by the gate, *Bassula* thrust in his Horse at divers places at once, but brought in his Janizaries by the largest street. At first, Horsemen with Horsemen bloodily fought in the narrow streets, but the Foot discharging their Culverings and Falcons before them among the thickest enemies, cleared the street; but coming to the Baracadoes and Trenches, and to remove Timber-logs, &c. by force, they fought with force and obstinacy on both parts, never in mans memory more cruel: for they were not ignorant, that 'twas as well as for their lives and Empire, as for honour. Here the Turks received great losse, for running on, the hindermost on the foremost, they tumbled by heaps into the covert Trenches, and were impaled upon the sharp stakes. The women and children also throwing down stones, ryles, &c.

tyles, &c. from house-tops and windows, upon them: they, as they could, spie them, fetching them off with their Harquebuses, or breaking into their Houses and fighting with diverse successe; but most of the Egyptians according to either fortune, assailed sometimes the Turks, sometimes the Mamalukes. Many cruel encounters were at once, in divers places; for, crossing from street to street, they both happened on new enemies, and the Victors pursuing a-front, were by others following them slain downright. The lanes and streets so flowed with blood of the slain heaps, that the dust at first, very thick, was laid as with a plentiful shower, the ayr was darkned with smoak and arrows, and through clamour, noise of Armour, and Artillery, the earth seemed to tremble, and the houses to fall down.

It thus continued two whole dayes and nights without ceasing, yet the Mamalukes few, and through such labour and watching, giving ground by degrees, retired further into the City. The third day beset with the greatest danger they so resolutely fought that the Turks retiring a great way, left some Field-pieces behind them: whereat, *Selimus* despairing commanded to fire the Houses, especially for that *Jonuse's Bassa*, was in his sight dangerously wounded by a stone out of a window. The Houses burning, the Egyptians cryed for mercy: the Turks fighting, but faintly expecting a retreat: but they had sudden news, that *Mustapha* on their side had forced the enemies to retire and flee; for he being by some directed to a broad street, where the Mamalukes had left their Horses ready that on the worst chance, they might retire, and so haste to their appointed Refuges, took them all away, having put to flight the weak Garrison of most part Horiboes and Muletors.

This accident, daunted the Mamalukes: who now, hard'y beset, and in their own judgement overcome, fled, most with *Tomombeius* to Nile, where being transported

in boats, they fled into the Country *Sigesta*: others hiding in Egyptians Houses and loathsome corners of the City: 1500. of the better sort fled into *Mahomet's* Temple, long defending themselves, to yield on honourable conditions; at last, through thirst, wearinesse, and wounds, with the fury of the Ordinance, they yielded to their pleasure; part being slain in the porch, the rest, sent down the River to *Alexandria* to be afterwards there murdered.

Selimus now, sent part of his Army, to quench the raging fire, proclaiming thorow the City, that all Mamalukes yielding themselves within twelve hours, should have mercy, otherwise, no hope of life; proposing Rewards to the Egyptians revealing them, but concealing them, to impail them, selling their wives and children, and to burn their Houses; whereupon, many Mamalukes came forth, and being cast into Irons, were soon after perfidiously murdered, it being given out, they sought to escape: and many Egyptians not breaking their faith with the Mamalukes, their neighbours appeaching them, most constantly died for their friends.

The insolent Turks ransacked all the City, drawing out, and slaying the hidden Mamalukes, rifling the Houses of friends and foes: and some, in the same Houses, raged at once with covetousnesse, cruelty and lust, as every one was inclined. That day that *Selimus* took *Caire*, *Gazelles*, lately gone to *Thebais* to assemble the Arabians and new supplies, came thither; but finding all lost, &c. he came to *Selimus* upon faith given for safety of him and his followers (three Arabian Captains and a number of good Horsemen) in the midst of his chief Captains boldly speaking to him; If fortune had not envied our safety, thou shouldst not now have had matter (most noble *Selimus*) to excel others in worthinesse of mind. Whilst we were in Arms, our State standing whole, we, as proudly presuming, little accounted of thee or the Turks name, yea we hated thee as enemies; but having to the utmost proved thy force,

force, admiring thy prowess and victories, not given without the providence of the immortal God, we humbly come to thee, to better our adverse fortune, that thou by sparing thy vanquished and yielding enemies, mayest extend thy Fame beyond the rest of thy immortal glory. We faithfully served *Tomombeius*, while he held even but the name of a King, &c. But he being driven out, wandering the Desarts, uncertain whether to live or not; we come to thee, rather as forsaken than forsaking their Prince, to shew thee our loyalty and valour: if by thy goodnesse we may serve under thy worthy conduct.

Selimus knowing *Gazelles* his vertue and valour, and desiring a league with the Arabians (or rather *Alarbes*) most to be feared; courteously received them with honourable pensions, and to forget their old estate looking for greater things of him. Not long after, the Moors and Arabians with some Mamlukes fled to *Achasia*, making incursions about *Caire*, often cutting off Turks seeking for forage) he sending *Gazelles* to repress them, he quickly winning and sacking *Achasia* slaying most of those Adventurers, returned in lesse time then was expected.

Tomombeius the while, began to make head again, in *Sigesta*; for he sent for a strong company of Mamlukes from *Alexandria*, many great Arabians and Moors of that Country promising him their help: Besides, many Egyptians of *Caire*, who became a prey, promised, if he would come thither by night, they would raise a tumult, that should easily work the Turks confusion, since they could no longer endure their indignities: sending him word, that the Turks were now but a contemptible number, most being slain in the Battel, and most of the rest very weak with wounds and sicknesse: wherefore hope began to revive *Tomombeius* his invincible heart, above his miserable state. One *Albuchimar* an Egyptian, the greatest man in all *Sigesta*, whether to avert the War out of his Country, or to gain *Selimus* his good liking, came and certifi-

ed him of *Tomombeius* his strength, and of the Citizens practises. Who keeping strong watch and ward in all places, secured the suspended Citizens in the Castle, then also in his possession: placing along *Nilus* armed boats to impeach *Tomombeius* his passage at the further banks; yet (considering *Tomombeius* was still preparing greater forces in those vast and unknown Countries, and fearing the doubtful faith of the numerous Citizens his power being so small: the Mamalukes also levying supplies in divers Countries whither they fled, and the fleet in the Arabian gulf against the Portugals (wherein were 3000. Mamalukes with store of brasse Ordnance) being daily expected at *Suezia*; chiefly fearing, if the *Bassa*, left at *Taurus*, should not be able to withstand the Persian King, he should be excluded both out of lesser *Asia* and *Syria* before supplies could arrive from *Constantinople* to *Alexandria*) He sent some, the reverendest, of his Religion, with some honourable Egyptians, Embassadors to *Tomombeius*, bountifully promising him on the faith of a Prince, if he would come in and submit, he should on reasonable conditions, repossesse his Kingdom, never by force to regain; but otherwise, when the matter was again tryed by Battel, he should never find any regard of his Princely State, from his angry enemy: These passing into *Sigesta*, were barbarously slain by some Mamalukes chancing on them, to gratifie *Tomombeius* now not knowing of it, and shew, they desired no peace.

Selimus provoked by so great injury, provided all things necessarie for his expedition into *Sigesta* against *Tomombeius*; and, for his honour and conveniency, made a strong Bridge to passe over *Nilus*, with all small Vessels and Lighters he could gather.

Tomombeius understanding hereof, and fearing the Country-people's revolt, by means of *Albuchowar*, determined once again to prove the fortune of a battel: wherefore by advice of his best Captains, he timely departed

out

out of *Sigesta* with 4000 Mamalukes, and 8000 Moors and Arabians, travelling day and night to come to *Nilus*, the Turks supposing no such thing from their weak enemies, hoping by his sudden approach to overthrow part of the Turks Army first passing the River, before relieved from tother side: and fitly came to the place, even as the Asian Horsemen were come over the Bridge. *Selimus* his harbingers and Pages being gone somewhat farther then the rest, to choose a fit place for his Pavilion, perceiv'd their coming by the dust. *Mustapha* suddenly raising an alarm, brought great fear, both on them passed over, and on them on the further side.

Tomombeius assailing them, while but putting themselves in order, &c. slew those that resisted, discomfiting the rest: neither could *Mustapha* by his invincible courage or perswasion, repair his disordered Battel, or stay their flight, all being full of tumult, slaughter and fear: and all along the Rivers Bank Turks ruthfully looking on the River, cryed to those on tother side for help: many forced to take the River, perished: Others striving to return by the Bridge, through fear or being overborn by their fellows, fell in and were drowned. Four men abreast might pass at once; but the Ordnance passing over, fewer Horse were sent than the sudden danger required: nor could their Ordnance be discharged without hurt to the further Banks, their own men standing between.

Selimus the while, filling a number of Boats, &c. with his Harquebussie Janizaries, halted his Horsemen over the Bridge for relief; in which Boats the Watermen were so nimble, that they soon transported divers bands of them: which wondrously comforted the Asians, ready to give over. *Canoglis* also with a host of a few Horsemen swam over the River to the Beholder's admiration: but the Tartars had oft by Troops swam over *Laurus* and *Valga*, Rivers as dangerous as *Nile*. For speedy Victories sake, *Tomombeius* strained with might and main to gain the

Bridge's-head, by plucking away some few Boats, to shut in his enemies: and, by cutting the Cables fastning them to the Bank, the Bridge with Turks thereon might be carried away by the River's force: whereupon a most bloody fight arose, *Mustapha* having drawn his Ensigns and best Souldiers thither. And being relieved by Janizaries and European Horse, come over in great number, they by little and little enforced them to retire. This *Mustapha* the Hungarian, *Baiazet's* son in Law, built, for his Fame, that notable stately Stone-Bridge (of the spoils of this Victory) over the River *Siremon*, by which men pass over into *Thracia*, wondring thereat.

Tomombeus to give a breathing time to his Mamelukes with their fainting Horses, exhorted the Moors and the Arabians awhile to charge the enemy, which after their manner they valiantly performed. Then the Mamelukes so furiously renewed the Battel, that *Selimus* doubting the Victory (though perswaded to the contrary) adventured over the Bridge in person, by whose coming, his Souldiers encouraged, repressed the enemy's fury. Who, soon after, by fresh Janizaries coming on, were notably repulsed, and at length put to flight, fresh Horsemen pursuing them all the fields over: The Tartars also (who through the streams force recovered not the further Bank so soon) were now come in, augmenting the slaughter with their swift Horses.

Selimus not assured of any thing gotten while *Tomombeus* lived, commanded *Mustapha*, *Gazelles* and *Cayrebeus*, with fresh Troops of light Horse to pursue him, not to escape if possible: who making speed, overtook him next day at a place of a great deep Fenn; where having a little rested, he was about to cut off a wooden Bridge, to hinder the pursuit; some of his followers being slain and taken, he again fled. The third day all his men being almost lost, and he come in to the *Succissine* Princes Territory (these eager Captains denouncing to the people there-

thereabouts, all extremities and tortures, if they diligently kept not those Marish passages, that he should not escape) he was so beted, that he hid himself in a foul deep marish alone: and was soon, by the Peasants search, found, up to the shoulders in water among the flags, who delivering him bound, he was with certain others taken in flight brought to *Caire*. *Selimus* (resolving his death, and the rather for the injury to his Embassadors) not admitting him to his presence, commanded him to be tortured, to reveal *Campsons* great Treasures, which he was thought to have hid: wherein, he is reported, with great constancy and stern look to utter nothing, but deep sighs and groans: after which he was set on a lean Camel in ragged apparel, with his hands bound behind him, and so carried in derision thorow all the notable places of the City. Then bringing him to the chief gate *Basuela*, they there openly strangl'd him with a rope, hanging him up by the neck upon an Iron hook in an arch of that gate, so leaving him to the worlds wonder. This misery befell him *April, 13. 1517*. Many shed tears to behold so lamentable a Spectacle, seeming thereby to detest that unworthy death of their late Sultan; yet the Janizaries reproved them, threatening them with death, who like giddy brain'd fools (they said) enured to the slavery of the Mamalukes, thankfully accepted not their deliverance; for the Egyptians doubred, lest the Turks (no more courteous then the Mamalukes) should no less tyrannize over them under their cruel Emperour: they remembered also, that *Tomambeius* with a general favour rose by all degrees of honour to the regal Dignity: with which also, and his Martial disposition; his tall and strong body. grave countenance, and long and hoary beard, well agreed. Divers of the Mamaluke Princes, with some of the common sort, ran the same fortune. No power being now heard of in all *Egypt* to renew the War. *Selimus* dividing his Forces, sent them to take in the Egyptian Provinces farther

ther off. *Alexandria* after the Battel of *Caire*, expelling the *Garrisons*, and easily surprizing the Castle of *Pharus*, yie ded many dayes before to the Turks: *Damiata* a to submiting them selves to them, and every City betwixt *Nilus* and *Judaa* and *Arabia's* borders yielding to *Selimus* his obedience. Also the African Kings bordering on *Cyrenaica* the Sultan's Tributaries, or Confederates, sent him Embassadours with Presents.

The wild Arabian, chiefly they of *Africk*, only remained, who losing many friends in ayding *Tomombeins*, twas thought would never submit to the Turk. These wanderers living mostly by theft, had filled all from *Euphrates* running by the *Palmyrens*, with the meaner part of *Egypt* and *Africk* to the *Atlantick* Sea, with multitudes: living under divers Leaders a hard kind of life in Tents and Waggon, like the *Tartars*, whose greatest wealth is a serviceable Horse, with a Lance or bundle of Darts, by whose perpetual discord the Egyptian Sultans seemed to hold their Empire, rather than by their own strength. Wherefore *Selimus* first alluring many of their Chieftains (by faith afore given) to *Caire*, honourably entertained and rewarded them, whe eby others came in daily, and receiving Rewards, gave Allegiance to *Selimus*. Others who would not be won, being cunningly intercepted by other Captains, suffered for their obstinacy.

The other remote Nations towards *Ethiopia* being formerly in friendship, rather than under command, through the fame of the Victory, easily joyned in like amity with the Turk.

Selimus, about this time, sent Horfmen to *Suazzia* (of old *Arfinoe*) a part of the red Sea, where *Gampson* had built a strong Fleet against the Portugals, who by their *Indian* Conquests, had taken away all the *Indian* Trade into the *Arabian* Gulf, greatly hindering his customes: over which (a little before the Wars) *Amrasses* and *Ray Salomon* were made Generals: who laying at *Gidda*, the port

port of the City *Mecha* (having yet done nothing) and hearing what had happened, fell at variance : one willing to obey *Tomombeius*, the other to follow the Victor's fortune : whereupon a mutiny arising, *Amyrases* was forced to flee to *Mecha* : where *Salomon* requiring him with all hostile threats, they fearing the spoil of *Gadda*, apprehended him, sending him to the Fleet. *Salomon* (to be sole Admiral, and to insinuate into *Selimus* favour) cast *Amyrases* over-board by night, and giving the Soldiers two moneths pay, swore them to *Selimus* his obedience, and sailing back to *Suazzia*, and leaving the Fleet, he came to *Selimus* to *Caire*, being graciously received ; after which, all former Tributary or confederate Princes, even to *Presbyter John's* confines, quickly subjected to and confederated with the Turks,

All being thus subjected, *Selimus* (about the beginning of *July*, sailed down *Nile* to *Alexandria*, to view his Fleet come from *Constantinople*, with supplies of men and victuals : and viewing also the Citie's Walls and *Pharos* Calile, he returned to *Caire*, having slain all the Mamalukes in durance at *Alexandria*, in the prison's entrance. Then also 500. the Nobles, &c. Egyptian Families were commanded from *Caire* to *Constantinople*, a great number of the Mamaluke Women and children, were were also transported thither, with the Kings Treasure and Riches, and all the publike and private Ornaments of that City : yea, the very Marble stones, excellently wrought or beautiful, were rent out of the Walls to his great infamy : Laying at *Caire*, he pleasantly beheld the rising of *Nile*, then having overflowed the adjoining Country, most curiously enquiring of the old Countrymen, the measure and nature of the River ; for by the diversity of its rising, known by certain marks and measures, they fore-tel abundant plenty, extreme dearth, or reasonable store.

Selimus now resolving to return into *Syria* (and the

rather, it being reported, *Hyfmael* was coming into *Meſopotamia*, and ſo likely to break into *Comagena*) diſpoſed of all things, leaving a ſtrong Garrilon or his beſt Souldiers in *Caire* under *Cayerbeins*, whom he made his Deputy over all that great Kingdom, now turned into a Province, as a this day. Which preferment ſo unworthily beſtowed, exceedingly troubled *Jonuſes* Baſſa. enflamed with hope and juſt deſire thereof; for, *Sinan* being dead, he, puffed up with his own worth and valour, thought himſelf the only man, to whom that charge ſhould be committed, neither wanted he the general liking of the Souldiery; for after recovery of his wound, he in the Diadaries houſe (uſurped rather than by gift obtained) keeping dayly Princely cheer for all commers, giving to all, ſome Horses, ſome beautiful ſlaves, ſome Money, Pearls, Jewels rich Garments, fair Armour &c. won ſuch favour, that when he went to the Cattle to the Governour, he was brought with a great and goodly Train, in a ſhorts judgement ſeigned to that Government, All which highly offended *Selimus*.

Jonuſes colouring his diſcontentment by ſainging himſelf ſick, came not abroad for certain dayes, yet in his choler, ſome words fell from him, whereby it was perceived. *Cayerbeins* coming to viſit him, and in heat of the day, calling for water and Sugar (the Egyptian drink) felt preſently, ſuch grievous and unworſted torments in his ſtomach and belly, that many ſuppoſed the Baſſa poiſoned him, yet by a ſovereign Remedy he was preſerved: which uncertain report ſunk farther into *Selimus*, than any one would have thought. He had heard alſo, that many of thoſe Families commanded to *Conſtantinople*, *Jonuſes* being to order that matter, had for great ſumms obtained quietly to remain ſtill in *Egypt*: which was probably alleadged by the repiners at his honour, ſecretly accuſing him, that thoſe Prince-like expences, nor to be maintained by his penſion, were ſupported with the imbezement

ed spoil and revenues of that new-got Kingdom : which tending to lighten his credit, another crime coming on the neck, so wrought his confusion ; for *Selimus* (exp. & ing but some new occasion) waited vigilantly on his words and deeds, with a full purpose to destroy him.

The Souldiers, left in Garrison at *Caire*, alleadging the distance of the place, expected dangers, and already endured labours, requested of *Selimus* an augmentation of their wages : who, never spare-handed to his Souldiers, commanded *Jonuses*, that the required sum might be added, and entered into his accounts ; but he acquainted neither the Treasurers nor Pay-masters herewith. that they, deceived of what was promised, might begin to hate *Cayerbeim*, as author of such an injury ; whereby *Caire* and the Kingdom being diquieted by a mutiny, *Selimus* should instead of him (bared by the Egyptians for his treason and not beloved of the Souldiers, as being to them a stranger) of necessity send a Turkish Bassa to govern ; but *Selimus* now on his way (almost as far as *Jerusalem*) the pay-day being come, and the Souldiers receiving but their old wages, began insolently to intult and threaten the Treasurer & Pay-masters, openly rayling upon *Cayerbeim* : where-with he astonished, (as not yet acquainted with their fashions) with the Pay-masters, requested them not to think so hardly of them who were innocent, and patiently to understand the truth, craving no favour, if they were found fraudulent : at last it was (with much ado) agreed, trusty Messengers to be forthwith sent to *Selimus* (not yet gone out of *Judea*) to know the truth of the matter. They making great speed, overtook him a little from *Larissa*, declaring the Souldiers complaints, and the others care to excuse the matter, with their danger, and all that had happened since his departure. *Selimus* incensed, forthwith commanded *Jonuses* before him to answer, who though struck with guilt, and surpris'd with fear, being pale as ashes, seeing in *Selimus* his five most certain tokens of

veavy displeasure; yet being of great spirit, boldly answered, He had not forbidden the wages (against his Command) to invert the money to his own use, or to draw any man into disgrace, as was maliciously by some suggested; but to provide for his Majestie's Coffers wondrously empty, by those late Wars: the constant Report of new troubles like to arise out of *Persia* giving also occasion. &c. When as the Garrison Souldiers (he said) were enriched with *Egypt's* spoils, possessing the Mamelukes sumptuous Houses and Lands: feeding on the Egyptians goods, and had received greater pay and Rewards from him than any, from any of his Predecessors: wherefore (if not past all modesty) they might take it well enough, if somewhat restrained in their unreasonable requests: saying, that Princes retaining their Souldiers in reasonable pay in peace and war, ought sometime for Warlike Discipline, to moderate their desires, lest striving for private gain, money be afterwards wanting for a greater and more needful Charge, Wars rising upon Wars, since none, if never so valiant, or fortunate, did ever any great matter, if he wanted Coyn, the very sinews of War: *Selimus* full of wrath interrupted him, lest by longer discourse, he (recounting his Deserts and worthy service, in *Baiasets* and his own time) should have had Intercessours, causing him in his presence to be there executed: saying, Others who would presume to prescribe what their Sovereigns had to do, should ever (by that insolent servant's example) be admonished of their condition and duty. It's reported, the Souldiers in despite of *Selimus*, wondrously lamented his unworthy death: who by his rare valour, *Gracian* wit, comely Personage, Military Eloquence, and gallantry of living, so won the love of all, that few or none in the Army but acknowledged themselves some way beholden to him, condemning *Selimus* his cruelty, beginning to tell of *Mustapha* and old *Chendemus*, not forgetting *Bostanges* his son in Law, nor *Cherseogles*, both which, about two years before, had

had their heads struck off, none well knowing wherefore; and their dead bodies cast out at the Court-gate to the terrour of the beholders. Yea *Baiazet Achomates*, and *Corgnus*, with the other Princes of the Blood, were presented afresh to all mens eyes. So that men generally both feared and hated him, who had let down in his ambitious and tyrannical mind; it was better (for assuring his Estate) to be feared of all, than be loved of many; therefore not sparing any mans life, whom he in the least suspected. Yet his severity against this *Jonuses*, may be excused (in some sort) as being justly moved thereto, by his presumption and malice underhand (contrary to his charge) to the peril of *Selimus* his late Conquests.

This great Bassa, by his cruelty on the fair *Manto* his best beloved Wife, offended (not) the people's minds. She (her lovely conditions being answerable, and a Greek born) was by *Sebalia* her first Husband, carried with him into the Wars as his chief delight; but, he slain, and she falling into the Turks hands, was a prisoner, till *Jonuses*, (seeing her far to exceed the other Captives) became amorous of her beauty, which he finding graced with no less inward Vertues, took her to Wife, honouring her above all his Wives and Concubines. She also loyally seeking to please him, lived a while in all worldly felicity; but the Bassa fearing lest that which so pleased him, gave so less content to others, began to distrust her, though he saw no cause, but his own conceit; which jealous humour more and more encreasing, he became so toward and imperious that nothing she could say or do could please him, tormenting still both himself and her, whom he so loved, with his passionate distrust: till, the fair Lady, grieved and wearied herewith, determined secretly to depart from him into her own Countrey: which she discovering to one of her Eunuchs to whom she gave Letters to be conveighed to friends, whose help she was to use therein, he openly delivered them to his Master; who enraged, calling for

Manto

Manto, stabbed her with a dagger to the heart: So curing his tormenting jealousy with the death of his Love.

But *Selimus* now come into *Syria*, was advertised from the *Hembracor Bassa* whom he left on his Frontiers to attend the *Persians* motion, that the hot rumour of their preparations at beginning of Winter, was grown cold in heat of Summer, he having seen in all that time, none but stragling companies, shewing as if greater power were coming, making (oft) suddain inroads, whom he divers times had prosperously encountered, and that it was both by prisoners taken and his own espials reported, that *Hysmael* troubled with the *Hyrcanians* and *Tatars*, had turned most of his forces against them; so that Winter drawing on, and deep snows already fallen on *Taurus*, he could not that year look after *Asia* the less and *Syria*. Some said, that *Tatars* dwelling between *Tanais* and *Volga*, by *Selymus* his procurement and money, busied *Hysmael* by invading the *Albanians*, and *Iberians*, who were under his protection, and that by means of his father in law who being of the same Nation, easily induced them (needy) by Rewards to take up Arms against them.

Many marvelled, why *Hysmael* neglected such an opportunity, who (twas thought) might have thrust *Selimus* out of *Asia* and *Syria* (while thus busied) yet, and have destroyed him, shut up especially while *Campson* and *Tombeius* made such resistance. But others saw, that *Hysmael* was not so strong abroad (as at home) most of his Army consisting of Gentlemen, or those used voluntarily to serve in defensive Wars without pay. These valiantest Horsemen of the East did worthily defend the *Persian* Kingdom, upon occasion Warring with near Neighbours also; but could by no means away with a longer expedition, being so addicted to their Wives, and accustomed to draw after them Carriages and Horses even for wanton uses, not to be done without wages: with which difficulty *Usuncassanes* was much troubled in his Wars against

Mahomet,

Mahomet the great ; but it was harder for *Hysmael* to do, who obtaining his Grandfather's Kingdom, by meer good will of the people eated them of their heavy Impositions alwayes thinking the love of his Subjects (gotten by Bountv and Justice) the surest Riches of his Kingdom &c. Whereas *Selimus*. stepping into his Fathers Seat by force, mischief &c. had (like the *Othoman Kings*) put his most assured strength in a mercenary kind of men, whom (for pay) he might at pleasure draw far from home, from place to place, for enlarging of his Empire ; thereby deeming true and ready Power to stand only in money, and the euer y of his own Command.

Who the Winter following, 1518. stayed in *Syria*, visiting its parts and Cities, and setting things in order ; but Spring approaching, when he understood , that Pope *Leo* 10th. had procured the Christian Princes , to concert of Warring upon him. &c. he (leaving *Gazelles* his Lieutenant in *Syria*) returned to *Constantinople*, there, as at hand, to behold the Christian Princes motions and devices, fearing no alteration in *Syria* and *Egypt*, to arise, since he well saw, *Cayerbeius* and *Gazelles* were at deadly hatred betwixt themselves ; as for old grudges, so for *Cayerbeius's* Treason, the great cause of the *Mamelukes* ruine.

Selimus being at *Constantinople*, purposed thenceforth to turn all his Force upon the Christians, making wondrous preparations, chiefly at Sea ; so that 'twas thought he would either attempt *Rhodes*, or some parts of *Italy*. But while he delighted himself with *Gracian* Cities, to-lacing in the pleasant Countrey about *Hadrianople*, he was struck with a Canker in his Reins, which contemning cure, did so by degrees eat up and corrupt his body, as that he (so honoured before) was now loathsome to himself and others. As he lay thus languishing, leaning his head in the lap of his most loved Bissa *Pyrrhus* : said, O *Pyrrhus*, I see I must shortly die without remedy. *Pyrrhus* thereupon discoursing with him of many matters,, persuaded

swaded him to bestow the great wealth taken from the *Persian* Merchants in divers places of his Empire, upon some notable Hospital: who replied, Wouldst thou I should bestow others goods wrongfully taken away, on works of Charity, for my own vain prayers? I will never do it. Nay, see rather they be restored to the right owners: which was forthwith done. To the shame of many Christians, who make, of Robbery, a sacrifice, not minding restitution.

He rotting above ground in his Tent, on his way to *H Adrianople*, sent *Pyrrhus* and *Achmesies*, Bissa's before to provide for solemnizing their great Feast *Bairam*, as it were their *Easter* keeping with him only *Ferbates* Bissa, to come after as his weak body would permit; but such was his Disease, fury and intolerable pains, that he soon after died in *September* in 1520. near *Chinli* in the very place, where he had assailed his aged Father *Bajazer*, aged 46 years, reigning 8: To the great joy of all Christendom. His dead body being solemnly buried by his Son *Solyman*, in a Temple he built at *Constantinople* for that purpose. He used to say, Nothing was sweeter than to reign without fear or suspicion of his kindred; and commending *Solyman* to *Pyrrhus*, charged him to leave the *Persians*, and turn wholly against the Christians: and, to incite him, left his lively Counterfeit by his beds-side, with sundry bloody Precepts.

The

The Life of Solyman the Magnificent, fourth Empe- rour of Turks.

Ferbates Bassa carefully concealing *Selimus's* death, lest the *Janizaries* and Court-Souldiers, should in the vacancy spoil the Merchants and strangers, and afterwards, as wont, insolently prescribe to the chief Bassaes at pleasure, sent letters in Post to *Solyman*; then at *Magnesia*, of his Father's death, and to hasten to *Constantinople*, while things were in good order, timely to repress the feared disorders of his Men of Warre. He perusing the Letters to his great content, yet considering his Fathers cruelty, who on a jealousy of his aspiring minde, and for some words in dislike of his Fathers extremity, had sent him a poysoned shirt, whose mildoubting Mother caused one of his Chamber first to wear it; whereof he soon died; and that the newes was not seconded from any other Bassa, fearing some plot, durst not adventure from his charge, giving little or no credit to the Messenger. *Ferbates*, hearing of his wariness, ten dayes being past, sent to *Pyrrhus* and *Mustapha* at *Hadrianople*; speedily to repair to Court; to whom, when come, he declared *Selimus's* death; who all, speedily and secretly sent to *Solyman* Letters thereof, with their Hands and Seals: who now assured, by long journeyes came to *Scutari*, of old *Chrysopolis*: where the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* meeting him, he was transported over the passage to *Constantinople*: where the *Janizaries* knowing yet nothing, till *Solyman* were ready to receive him in the midst, the Captains said aloud, Behold your Emperour! who cried

cry'd with great acclamation, *Long live the great Emperour Solymán*: which concert, is the greatest assurance of their Estate. So being triumphantly brought into the Palace, he was placed in his Father's Seat in 1520. *Charles 5th*, being chole Emperour of *Germany* that year. The *Fanilaries*, in lieu of the spoil, received a great largess of *Solymán* he somewhat also increas'd their wages, to their wondrous content.

Solymán, beginni'g to reign about 28 years old, the Princes to whom *Selimus's* name was dreadful, hoped, a quiet Lamb was come in place of a raging Lion; but they were soon deceiv'd therein, chiefly the bordering Christian Princes, upon whom he convert'd his forces, most of his long reign, which *Selimus* almost wholly employ'd against the *Persian* and *Egyptian* Kings.

Gazelles, as if now discharged of his Oath to *Selimus*, and earnestly desiring to restore the *Mamaluke's* Kingdom, gathered speedily to him the dispers'd remnant of the *Mamalukes*, and by rewards, the wild *Arabian* leaders, with great numbers of the discontented *Syrians*, driving the *Turk's* Garrisons out of *Biriba*, *Tripolis*, and other *Syrian* Cities, and possessing them. He sent also Embassadors to *Cayerbeius*, perswading him to revenge the wrong done to the *Mamalukes*, and by killing the *Turk's* Garrisons, to make himself *Sultan* of *Egypt*, offering therein, his utmost service. But he, whether not trusting *Gazelles*, or ashamed of new treason, or misdoubting his own strength, presently in his sight, caus'd them to be executed as traitors: speedily certifying *Soliman* hereof; who sent *Ferbates* with a strong Army into *Syria*.

Gazelles retired with all his Army, into strong *Damasco*; whither *Ferbates* coming, *Gazelles*, rather than to be shut up, valiantly issued forth with all his power, and gave him battel, for six houres most cruel, and many slain on both sides: At last being oppress'd with his enemies, eight to one in number, he was forc'd to fight in a ring, valiantly

dy-

dying with his *Adamallukes*, in midst of his enemies, who had a bloody Victory.

Gazelles thus slain, all *Syria* presently yielded to the Turks: *Ferbates* taking it in good part, suffered not his men to enter *Damasco*, then richly stored with all sorts of Commodities from divers parts. *Ferbates* going to *Caire*, commending *Cayerbeius*, confirmed him in his Government; and in weighing against *Selimus* his cruelty, to please the *Egyptians*, bid them hope for happiness under peaceable *Solyman*, to whom he returned, all things being set in order.

Next year, by *Pyrrhus's* counsel, (the Christians mortal enemy,) and the *Janizaries* persuasion, *Solyman* resolved to besiege strong *Belgrade* on *Hungaries* borders, vainly attempted by *Mahomet* the great, and *Amurath*, to their great losse and dishonour: where the Turk's Ensigns were taken, with other of *Huniades*, and *Matthias's* Trophies of Victory, were reserved, to their grief. His Army sent before, was come to *Sophia* in *Servia*, the *European* Lieutenant's residence, before the *Hungarians* were aware; for, they living at ease, all *Uladislaus's* time, and now secure under young *Lodovicus* his Sonne, of no experience, who being poled by his Nobles and great Clergy, could not raise sufficient power against such an enemy, especially his Nobility, promising much, but performing nothing; so that *Solyman* coming without lett before the City, by battery and undermining, soon became Lord thereof, and with little losse. It was won Aug. 29. 1521. The miseries ensuing upon the opening of that gap, did and do declare, how much that losse concerned the Christian Common-wealth.

Solyman returning to *Constantinople*, breaking up his Army, lay still almost a year, greatly preparing at *Calipolis*, and other Ports, for rigging up a great Fleet: which caused the *Italians*, *Venetians*, and them of *Rhodes* to look about them. About which time, *Philip Villers*, wise and

and courageous, was, in his absence at the French Court, chosen Great Master by the Knights of the *Rhodes*, who safely arrived there from *Marselles*, after a dangerous Voyage, hardly layed for by *Cortug-ogli*, a famous Turkish Pirate. *Solymán* knowing it, whole two Brethren the Knights had surprized at Sea, and slain; keeping the third in prison.

Pyrrhus, by whose advice *Solymán* was directed, consulting with the other Bassaes, what great exploit was first to be attempted, differed in opinion about *Rhodes*. *Pyrrhus*, dissuading, as too full of difficulty and danger, producing *Mahomet* the Great for an example: But *Mustapha* next to *Pyrrhus*, extolling *Solymán*, said, Their Em: greatness was not to be included within his Predecessor's attempts, as appeared by *Belgrade*, who should likewise prevail against the *Rhodes*, being able to bring more men before it, than there were stones in the walls, presumptuously affirming, that upon the first landing of *Solymán's* great Army, they would presently yield themselves and City into his hands.

Solymán desirous of *Cortug-oglies* Opinion, before the undertaking of so great a matter, *Mustapha* and *Ferhates* ushering him in, after reverence, and command to speak, said: Thy great desarts, most mighty Emperour, makes me now frankly speak, what I think may be for thy Majesties and Empires glory: I daily hear the pittifull lamentation of those of *Mitylene*, *Eubæa*, *Peloponessus*, *Achaia*, *Caria*, *Lycia*, &c. for the spoil of their Countries, ransacking their Cities, carrying away Cattle and people, &c. which they suffer by the *Rhodian* Pirates, none withstanding them. Often have they instantly requested me, to be a mean to thy Majesty, whereby they might be protected from these cruel rovers: wherefore I beseech thee by the most reverent holy *Mahomet*, and by thy own heroicalness, to deliver thy afflicted subjects from their most cruel enemies, &c. It
ten-

tending not so much to their hurt in private, as to the dishonour of thy imperial Dignity, which if any other Christian Prince should offer, I know thou wouldst not suffer, unrevenge'd. Who can passe to *Tripolis, Damasceus &c.* without manifest danger? What have we heard every Spring, this many years, but that they have taken one Port or other, &c. and that, under thy nose in the heart of thy Empire? We thy loyal Subjects, ought not for the increase of our Religion, and enlarging thy Empire, refuse to adventure the hazard of all. If thou likewise be carried with love of Glory and Renown, &c. in what canst thou easier gain the same, or better imploy us, than in subduing this reputed Bulwark of Christendom, which onely keeps us from their Countries? Thy happy fortune hath subjected *Belgrade*, farre more strong than in times past, and dost thou then despair of *Rhodes*? If thy captivated subjects, built it for the Christians, cannot they now at liberty, &c. destroy the same? If thou please, thou shalt see a divine occasion procured by *Mahomet*, presented unto thee, The Western Christians being at discord, and mortal Warres among themselves. Thy Majesty is not ignorant, that in managing of Warres, the opportunity is especially to be followed, &c.

Solyman ambitious, and pricked forward by *Cortug* and others, hereby seeking pretermment, chiefly by *Mustapha*, resolved to go in person against the *Rhodes*. And first to prove what spirit and courage *Villers* was of, he sent him a cold friendly Letter, thus directed.

*Solyman by God's Grace, King of Kings, &c. To
the Reverend Father Villerius Lilladamus,
Great Master of the Rhodes and
Legate of Asia, Greeting.*

I Am glad of thy coming and new promotion, which I wish thou mayst long and happily enjoy, since I hope thou wilt exceed all before thee: from whom as my Ancestors have withdrawn, so I joyn with thee in friends.

ship : joy thou therefore my friend, rejoycing also in my Victory, &c. For last Summer passing *Danubius*, I expected the *Hungarian* to give battel, taking his strongest City *Belgrade* with othea Holds, and destroying much people with fire and sword, captivating many more, and, in triumph breaking up my Army, am returning to *Constantinople*; whence farewell. *Villerius* considering these Letters, perceived, Peace was offered in shew, but Warre in meaning: wherefore rewarding the Messenger; he sent with him another of his own, a private person, for they seldom sent any honourable Embassadors to each other.

*Villerius Lilladamus, Great Master of the Rhodes,
to the Turk.*

I Well understand thy Letters. Thy friendship is as pleasing to me, as displeasing to *Cortug-Ogli*, who would suddenly have intercepted me; but that failing, he tryed to rob some Merchants Ships in the *Rhodian Sea*, bound from *Joppa* to *Venice*; but sending my Fleet, I forced the Pirate to leave behind him the Prizes taken from the Merchants of *Crete*: Farewell; from the *Rhodes*.

Hereby *Solymán* perceived he should not so easily carry the *Rhodes* as he had *Belgrade*; yet resolving to try, he thus opened his determination to certain chief Commanders. Though I doubt not, ye are of the same minde as ever, in the invading other Nations; yet I thought good in matters tending to all our good to use your general advice. Since my Father left this World, we have made Warre with divers Nations, having our forces shut up within the compass of the mighty *Sophi* of *Persia* his Dominions; yet, my minde, greater in conceit than my Empire, and the blood of *Othoman*, findes no content in these Victories; all ye have done, though great, seeming but little, to your worth. This I have above all desired, to rect out the very name of the
Rho-

Rhodian Souldiers : and how oft have I heard you crying out , The Rhodes, the Rhodes ? Never a greater opportunity : much of the Cities Walls lying level, Coin wanting, the Castle Garrison but small, their French ayd far off, which will come too late, or I believe, never : that King being at Warres with the Germane Emperour , and Lord of Italy, &c. Nor do ye believe the Spaniards distressed at home, will easily come out of Sicily and Campania with supplies : and I have prevented the danger to be feared from the Venetian Fleet. Wherefore, courageous Souldiers, cheerfully follow your Sovereign, against those most cruel enemies. Admit, their Valour did gain Victory in one unluckie assault, my Great Grandfather unfortunately calling home Mesithes Paleologus : will you therefore alwayes suffer these piratical excursions, &c? So help me Mahomet, it shall not be so : I vow in despite of Christ and John, shortly to set up my Ensigns with the Moon, in the midst of their Market-place; not seeking my self, more than the honour thereof : the profit reported to be great, I give you my Fellow-Souldiers : wherefore let us now set forward with all our force and courage.

This his purpose being with one accord liked, Pyrrhus at first dissuading the Warre, now said, I cannot but admire the great Wisdom and Vertues of our young Emperour : who hath declared all deep Counsels of a worthy Chiefetain, in taking Warre in hand. Blessed be Mahomet, thrice and four times blessed is this Empire, &c. with such a Prince: which manner of proceeding, if we would alwayes follow, we should soon subdue, as the Rhodes, so all Kingdoms in Christendom. Yet besides this, mine age and experience, exhorts you, by gifts, and all other meanes, to corrupt if possible, the very chief Citizens, thereby to enter into their most secret Councils: and that it may be wrought, I, as one offering peace, will induce the Great Master to send some honourable Embassage; which if once brought unto, let me alone with the rest.

Solyman pleased above others, with the o'd Fox his Counsel, charged him speedily to prove what he could do: the other to prepare the greatest Land and Sea-forces: therefore it could not be kept so secret, but *Febr.* the 4th, the *Rhodians* had newes of it: which daily increasing, *Villerius* sent a Christian pie, who could speak the *Turkish* Language, to *Constantinople*, who secretly informed him, The *Turks* were preparing a great Fleet, and mighty Army, with a great deal of battering Artillery; but whether for *Italy*, *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, or *Corcyra*, was not known; whilst every one thought, 'twas against any one, rather than himself, certain notice was given the *Rhodians*, that the *Turks* diligently kept strict Watch and Ward along all their Sea-ports thereabouts, otherwise than before, which seemed to foreshew somewhat else, than defence of their frontiers: wherefore *Villerius* with all diligence, provided great store of Victual, Armour, Weapons, and all necessaries for defence. The new Walls, and *Avergne* fortress begun in *Caractus's* time, was laboriously set about by *Basilus*, an Engineer to *Charls* the 5th, every one putting to his helping hand: a Messenger the while, coming from *Pyrhus Bassa*, the cunning fellow delivering his Field-Message by the way, painted forth *Solyman's* courteous nature, greatly also, commending *Pyrhus*, and delivering Letters from both, to this purport.

Solyman by God's Grace, King of Kings, &c.
to *Villerius Lillidamus, Great*
Master, &c.

I Am certainly informed, my Letters are delivered thee, which thou rightly understanding, pleaseth me beyond expression: Trust to it, I am not content with the Victory at *Belgrade*, hoping for another: may assuring my self,

self, which I will not hide from thee, whom I am alway^s mindful of.

Pyrrhus great Councillor, &c. To Villerius Lilladamus, Great Master, &c.

THy Letters, more in meaning than Character, I have delivered to our mighty Emperour; but I would not suffer the bearer to come into his presence, lest too much offended with so base a Messenger: henceforth, send him men of worth, years and discretion, with whom, if he please, he may confer and conclude of publique matters, which to do, it shall not repent thee, nor me of my counsel. The Messengers brings Letters also from our Emperour; how to answer, ye are admonished.

These Letters being openly read, such as wished for peace, commended *Pyrrhus's* Counsel, as being old, and greatly experienced, more desiring his Countries quiet than thirs: wishing to order that by wisdom, which the young Prince sought for by Warre, fearing the common chance of Warre, &c. Whereupon, *Raymund March* a Knight, a Spaniard, Muster-master, eloquent, couragious and skilful in the *Turks* Language, was appointed to go Embassador. Many contrarily suspecting deceit, said, twere good to beware, asking, To what end? for, Should we proclaim War, say they, against the mighty Tyrant, writing all peace? or, Should we intreat for peace, no Warre as yet proclaimed? &c. Besides, with what security or face, can he go, unrequested by the Emperour, who having him in his power, shall with cruel torture force him to discover our secrets, &c. The Messenger's diligent enquiry of the state of things, confirmed this opinion: who was sent back with one private Souldier, to carry *Villerius's* Letters to the *Turk*.

Villerius &c. to the Turk.

THAT thou art mindful of me, grieveth me not, I also minde thee. Thou, as not content, hopest for another Victory, may assurest thy self thereof, before the attempt. Beware, &c. mens expectations never deceive them more than in Warre,

Villerius to Pyrrhus the Bassa.

I Have considered thy Letters with thy Messengers behaviour: As I condemn not thy counsel, so will I not follow it, whilest my men do spoil thy Masters Countries and Ports: which I bear withall, for injuries they sustained by *Turkish* Pirates; but I will call them home, and send Embassadors, thou first sending me safe conduct under thy Masters great Seal.

But these were not delivered; for the *Turk* being come into the main, posted on Horseback to *Constantinople*, leaving the other behinde him: who returning, and telling what he heard and saw, they despaired of peace, and *Villerius* sent to hire *Cretensians*: he was also advertised from *Naxos* Isle, the *Turks* were ready to put to Sea, at first of the New-Moon; which they observe in the beginning of all great actions; Merchants also coming to the *Rhodes* with Corn from *Eubœa*, brought the same newes of *Pathmos*: who being the *Turks* Tributaries, by his command under that colour, noted what was done in the City.

Villerius likewise sent divers Gallies to learn of the enemies doings.

Lupus a Knight and a Captain, took a great *Turkish* Ship laden with Corn, bringing her home; but *Alphon-sus* another Captain, suffering his men to straggle into an Island

Island, his Ship in harbour, was by a *Turkish* Pirate taken. About which time, the *Turks* making great fires by night, signifying, they desired some parley, a Knight was sent with a Galley to the Main, to see the matter.

Xaycus a pay-master, skilful at Sea, and civil affaires, beloved of *Turkish* Merchants, whose Language he had learned, being joyned with him, drawing nigh, the Merchants, were making merry on the Main, with such Merchandize as they used to exchange with the *Rhodians* for Woollen-Cloth: they gaged their faith for each others safety; but being requested to come ashore, till a familiar of his was sent for, not far off, he said; not so, except a pledge were delivered on Ship-board.

These perfidious, laughing, sent their pledge and Merchandize abroad. *Xaycus* going ashore, and embracing the Merchants, was upon a sign given, beset and taken, and conveyed post to *Constantinople*, where he was, with most exquisite torments, forced to confess what they desired. Then was their wisdom commended, who occasioned the Decree for sending the Embassador to be revoked; The *Turks* Hostage, was found to be a Countrey fellow, well apparelled to deceive the *Rhodians*, who answered to all things demanded, according to his knowledge, as that the *Turks* were greatly preparing on *Caria* and *Lycia's* Coasts by Sea, taking up there many Souldiers, for defence of *Syria's* frontiers against the *Persians*: *Solyman* doing this to put the *Rhodians* out of suspicion of invasion; but *Villerius* perceiving by many circumstances, chiefly by that of *Xaycus*, that the *Rhodes* was that longed after, proclaimed a Cessation from all businesses, till all things for defence of the City were accomplished. A general Muster being taken, and 5000 able free men being found, amongst whom were 600 Knights, 500 of *Crete*; the rest, most Mariners, who did great service: the Islanders serving chiefly to dig and carry Earth: and the Citizens, except a few of the better sort, were most weak, and of small cou-

rage, great speakers, but small doers, yet hardly to be governed. *Villerius* fearing nought more than the faint hearts of the Citizens calling them together, encouraged them by a speech, the sum whereof was, to shew the *Turks*, who came out of the dark Dens of Mount *Caucasus*, their injury and tyranny, and unsatiable desire of Sovereignty; especially to exceed herein against Christ, and Christians: whole Islands and Countries he strove to the utmost to take from them, and utterly to root out the Christian name: hoping, he said, other Christian Princes would in good time, joyn with him and his Knights of the Order, who were most ready to defend them, their Wives, Children, Goods, and Temples; declaring the Cities strength, and great store of furniture of Arms and Provision, so as they should not feel hunger and thirst, which calamities for all that, he said some people in faithfulness and valour, not comparable to them, had most constantly endured, as they of *Petilinum*, when besieged by the *Carthaginians*, and they of *Cassilinum*, by *Hannibal*, holding out till a Mouse was sold for much money; who thrusting their Children and Parents forth, lived with Leather, or Hides sodden, leaves of Trees, &c. till wanting strength to hold their Weapons, or stand on the walls: that, if their Houses chanced to be beaten down, they must have patience; for they should be repaired: neither was it of such importance, as therefore to yield to enemies, in whose courtesie and fidelity, there was no assurance; for, said he, besides *Solymans* being cruel and unfaithful by nature, he can by no means be gentle and faithful toward us who have done him so much harm: that God had hitherto protected them, so often assailed by open force, whom he wished them above all things to serve and call upon; for, saith he, except the Lord keep and defend the City, the Watchmen watch but in vain,

The vulgar especially, were much encouraged herewith; but whilet they dreamed of nothing but victory, the wiser sort, careful, did what they could to effect the fore-wished good.

Clement the Greek Bishop, greatly reputed by them, labouring to perswade the *Greeks*, in that great and common danger to joyn with the *Latines*, whose Governme nt they many times repined at, for defence of the City: and it was so ordered at that time, that they all agreed as one man, to spend their lives, &c. many of the vulgar, wishing his coming rather then not: And few nights after, the *Turks* by night-fires in the Main, gave sig nos of parley: whereupon, a Galley and long Boat, setting forth, being nigh the shoare, was hailed by a *Turk* with a Troop of Horse, desiring to send one ashore, for more convenient parley: which the Captain refusing, *Art thou*, said the *Turk*, afraid of *Xaycus's* fortune? who threateningly answered, *Xaycus* troubled him not, nor they feared him; but if he had nothing else to say, to get further off, or he would speak to them by the Cannon.

A *Turk* coming, layed down Letters on a stone, and said, In them was their charge: who, being departed with the rest, the long Boat was sent for them, thus directed.

Solymán by Gods Grace, King of Kings, &c. To the Reverend Villerius Lilladamus, Great Master, &c.

THE Purport was, that, pittying his Subjects, and for his great injury, he was wroth. Therefore he should yield him the Island and City without delay : making divers protestations, that if they chose rather his friendship than his force, they should depart with all their Riches, or live under him without infringement of Liberty and Religion, by any Tribute: but to those that were subdued, were all extremities from the angry Conqueror threatned, from which, neither their force, forraign ayd, nor huge Walls, which he would utterly over-throw, should defend them.

This being openly read, some thought, 'twere good to answer him roundly : Others, not further to provoke so great an enemy ; at last they agreed to send him no answer at all.

The day these Letters came, *June 14.* a Turkish Commander, arrived at *Coos*-Island (part of the *Rhodes* Dominion) with 30. Galley fore-runners. Who beginning to burn the Corn almost ripe, and Villages ; *Prejanes* the Governour (of great valour) with some Horse and Foot suddenly set upon the dispersed Turks, with such a cry of the people and Instruments of War; that running away amazed, many were slain, not resisting; and had not the Gallies received them, not one had escaped, who then put to Sea again. The *Rhodians* now (most of them) assured of the Turks coming, by *Pomerolus* Vice-master his persuasion, burnt down the Suburbs, utterly destroying their pleasant Gardens nigh the City, and all the rest within a mile (except things needful for the Siege, which they took in) that the enemy should find nothing there to use : A woful sight the while, more mournful than the enemies coming, presenting it self; for the miserable Country-people (as *Villerius* commanded) bringing in wood, corn, cattel,

cattel, fowls, &c. numbers of Women and Children followed them weeping, with dischivelled hair, scratching their faces, tearing themselves, wringing hands, and casting up eyes, beseeching God to defend the City and themselves: which multitude being packt into narrow Rooms, and their cattel starved, afterwards corrupted the ayr, rotten agues and fluxes ensuing: but the City being yielded, there followed such a plague, as destroyed great numbers of Turks, and Christians not knowing whither to go.

The Turkish General which landed in *Coos*, was sent before to provoke the *Rhodians* to Battel, who with 20 Gallies came daily betwixt *Lycia* and *Rhodes* (leaving the rest at *Gnidum promontory* not far from *Rhodes*, to ayd him upon necessity; braving them many dayes; knowing a Victory then, was little less than taking the City; or if he could by fight but weaken their number, he should further his Masters Victory: and sometimes laying at the very Havens mouth: the *Rhodians* moved, as not wont to be so braved, by importunity had a Councel call'd, to consider whether to fight or not? Whereupon the Chancellour, of great authority & spirit, &c. said, Such disgrace was presently to be revenged: for, said he, the huge Fleet of the Turks is as a head to be joyned to these Pyratyck Gallies as members, to which head they should give such a blow, by cutting off those limbs, that it should ever after stagger: or if no Fleet were prepared to follow that, then it being discomfited, they should be at quiet: which in his judgement, was most like to be true, the fit time of the year for a Siege being so far spent, &c. Wherefore to set upon their proud enemies: not fearing a few threatening words, and sitting still like cowards not daring to shew their heads: which they called *Fabius* his policy: wishing they were *Fabius*; but fearing they should prove more like *Antiochus*, the *Atolians* and *Vitellians*, all whose courage consisted in words, &c. but Victory was gained by exposing themselves to danger,

Though

Though the multitude, with these and the like speeches moved, desired to fight, as not wanting Weapons, courage or hands to slaughter their enemies : yet the graver sort thought not good to adventure any great part of forces, afterwards to be wanted for defence of the City. The Turkish General deceived of his expectation, withdrew 12 miles off to *Villanova*, where landing his men, he burnt all the corn thereabouts : the people being all retired either into the Rhodes, or Castles in other places of the Islands.

Villerius careful to reserve his Souldiers for more expected dangers, commanded troops (sent to skirmish with them) to return : and during the Siege, he would often eat his meat with his Souldiers : watching himself, and walking up and down, he would rest on some homely seat as it chanced, being more adventurous in time of assault than was wished ; yet more allowing Counsel grounded on Reason, than prosperous actions commended but by events, he carried alwayes among so many cares, such a grace in his chearful countenance, as made him to be revered and loved : bestowing all the time he could spare in praying, &c. and that (oftentimes) most of the night in the Temple alone, his Armour laying by him ; so that it was commonly said, His Devotion and Care would make the City invincible.

July 26. Early, news came from *Stevens* watch-Tower about a mile off : that a huge Fleet (reported, above 200 sayl) was making thitherwards along the West of *Lycia* : whereupon all places were full of tumult, and a pitiful cry as is usual in such cases : publike prayers were made throughout the City ; which ended, the gates were shut up : people of all ages and sexes going forth to gaze upon that dreadful Fleet ; the formost being the Admiral of *Callipolis*, who was to assail the City by Sea : *Cara Mahometes* was Rear-Admiral, with a great Squadron of Galleys, and a fair wind, striking before the mouth of the Haven,

Haven began to row towards the City; but many hasting unto that Bulwark defending the left side of the Haven more subject to danger than the other; the Turk fearing to be sunk, got him to the rest of the Fleet: the *Rhodians* deriding him with out-cries for his folly: The Fleet passing on came to the *Promontorie* of *Bo*, about 3 miles Eastward: which Harbour being too small, many Gallies, riding it out at Sea, were by shot, often forced to get further off. Whilst the enemy was landing, and transporting all things and men; also viewing the City, and choosing a fit place for his Camp: the *Rhodians* sunk many sounding the Walls to discover the enemies Mines, and fortified their Bulwarks with bigger Rampires. The Master sent also, one Knight into *Spain* to *Charls* the Emperour, and another to *Rome*: thence into *France*, craving ayd by Letters for relief by Sea and Land; but they grudging against each other, or respecting only themselves, returned them with good words without relief.

Then also *Preianes*, forementioned, (comparable with any Captain of that age, &c.) having hid himself 2 or 3 dayes in the Rocks at Sea for fear of the Turks, came by night in a Pinnace to the *Rhodes*, whereat they wondrously rejoyced: whom *Villerius* in any great exploit, trusted above any, and who in the Siege, chearfully endured such labours as others accounted extreame miseries. Also *Marinus* a most skilful Engineer coming out of *Creet*, defeated, by Counter-mines, 55 Mines which the Turks made with exceeding charge and labour.

The City is situate on a Plain every way to be besieged (except Northward) for its goodly Haven, thence laying all Westward: betwixt it and the Hill's about it, is a stony Plain longer than broader, the Hills being full of planxed Orchards; but it was compassed with a most strong double Wall, deep Trenches, having 13 sure and stately Towers, with 5 mighty Bulwarks, divers fair gates with most exact Warlike Discipline from the French
Tower

Tower (seeming to mate the skie) stood the French with the Lillies in their Ensignes, under *Abimus* a Knight of the Order : thence to *George's* gate lay the *Germans* with the Eagle : then the French *Auvergnois* with the Spaniards, the Ditches being there not so deep or broad as elsewhere. Fifthly, the English, whom the Master himself commanded : then they of *Narbona* : lastly, the Italians under *Balimus* and *Morgutus*. In every Station were divers valiant Knights of the Order.

A Turkish woman-slave, conspired with some others : when the Turks gave the first assault, to fire the Houses (wherein they dwelt) in divers places, that the defendants drawn to quench it, the Turks might more easily enter ; but the Treason was revealed, and they executed.

The Turks had not placed their Battery, when as they took a Hill, whereon stood *Cosmus* and *Domianus* Temple, right against the English Station, with little hurt (so far off) shooting thence into the City. Then (having with them 5000 pioneers, whom they forced to labour day and night) with incredible speed, wayes were cut through the stony Rocks, Plaines rais'd to Mountains, with earth brought two miles off, and Mountains levelled ; yet were they sadly rent in sunder with the Town-Ordnance : the *Rhodians* also sallying out, fiercely pursued and slew great numbers of them, and of others defending them : and when many others, thought to relieve their fellows, the Ordnance from the Walls so thundered among them, that the ground was covered with Weapons and Carcasses. After three such salleys, the Turks wrought most by night, keeping most strong watch, and doubling it by day, bending their Ordnance against the *Rhodians* sallying places, which kept them not so much in, as the fear of weakening themselves. Amongst others, certain Marriners having the Turks Language, by leave (disguising themselves as Turks) came forth by night, in a small Boat laden with Apples, Pears, Plums, &c. to the place where the passage

is out of the maine. There (as if come from the main) the Turks bought their fruit greedily: which they having sold and now ready to depart; certain Turks, disliking the hard beginning of the Siege, earnestly requested to be taken with them into the maine; who with much ado (in shew) were entreated to take in 7 or 8, (whom they could master) bringing them prisoners to the *Rhodes*: Where being brought up by *Preianes* to the top a Tower, where they might descry all the Turks Camp, discovered unto him all he demanded: and confessing, that the Souldiers discontented with the Siege, were ready to mutiny, hardly to be commanded forth, saying, all was but lost labour, &c. Wherefore, if they were wise, they should in time depart: which appeared afterwards true, for *Pyrhus* Bassa gladder, to please the Souldiers than to punish, wrote to *Solyman*: if he would have the Siege go forward, he should speedily come in person to the Camp, they refusing to be commanded.

The Turkish Captains heard the while, by some fugitives, that the high steeple of *St. Johns* served as a watch-Tower: Wherefore, and in despite of the Cross upon it, they laboured with continual shot to beat it down. *Solyman* coming to the Camp; *Aug. 28.* more grieved to see the signes of cowardise, and the great disorder, than he did take pleasure and hope of 200000 men in his Army; yet moderating his indignation, he called them together, causing them to be disarmed, and compassing them in with 15000 Harquebusiers brought with him, he stept up into a high Royal Seat; and pausing a good while, he thought it enough to correct the multitude with sharp words, uttering after silence made, a cholerick speech, calling them Slaves; for he could not afford to call them Souldiers, asking them, what kind of men they were become? &c. If any one (he said) at home should have but named the *Rhodes* among their Feasts and pots, &c. they could then brag to pull it down; but when he here proved their courage,

age it was nothing, but perhaps they thought, the *Rhodians* so soon as they saw their Ensigns before their gates, would yield; but that infamous den was full of most cruel beasts, whose madneis; they should never tame without much labour and bloodshed; yet, said he, I shall tame them, or else here spend my dayes, wishing himself, his Empire, and strength for ever curled, and it he did or said otherwise. So pardoning all their former offences, he sware them all again to his obedience: all things being afterwards done with better success and more care. First planting divers great guns, they shot up huge stones into the ayr; which might (falling down) break whatever they lighted on; *Villerius* was like to be slain hereby; yet with 200 such shot, there was but ten men slain, which *Appella* a traiterous fugitive declared to the enemy, as he confessed upon examination, for which he was executed.

The Turks planted also 40 great battering Pieces, 12 being Basilisks: (the Basilisk killing man and beast with his sight) with these they battered continually; but being somewhat far off, did little harm. They then likewise laying battery against *Nicholas* Tower (defending the Haven on the right hand, where stood the great *Colossus*) it was valiantly defended by *Guido* a Frenchman, with 200 Souldiers, 30 being Knights. The Turks Artillery being soon dismounted with their shot, and many Gunners slain; so that, laying still all day, they began to batter it by night; but the Defendants warily observing, so aptly placed their Ordnance, that the Turks sware, their doings were by some means discovered; so after 500 shot bestowed, and a small breach made which they durst not attempt, they abandoned the place.

Pyrrhus was busie in working Mines, 35 whereof were frustrated by counter-mines, many being lost on both sides therein; yet the English Bulwark was Sept. 4. in part blown up, the violence whereof seemed at first, an Earthquake: and divers English, were overwhelmed; the Turks attempting

attempting to enter, were with great slaughter repulſed : but *Muſtapha*, crying out of their cowardice, renewed the aſſault with ſupplies : where for a while was a moſt cruel fight. The Townſmen and Women caſting down upon the Turks, fire, ſtones, timber, &c. ſo that, not able longer to endure it they ran away, not looking for a place of retreat : the Ordnance wondrously ſlaughtering them as they fled : ſome write almoſt 2000 Turks were ſlain at this aſſault, amongſt them, the Maſter of their Ordnance ; the Chriſtians alſo loſing (beſides a few others) 50 Knights of the Order.

Septemb. 9. *Solyman* by *Muſtapha's* perſuaſion commanded a freſh aſſault ; which was with greater reſolution than the firſt : 7 Enſignes being broken into the Bulwark, the Defendants giving ground : but the Maſter coming in with his Enſigne and Knights, drave them out again, *Muſtapha* courageouſly reſtored the Battel, with new ſupplies, other Captains forcing the retired Souldiers to fight. Then began a more cruel fight than ever before, and more dangerous to the Chriſtians, for the Turks much ſhot ; but in that extremity none regarded, either danger or life ; it continued three hours : at length *Muſtapha*, loſing two thouſand with three Noble men, whom *Solyman* ſpecially favoured (the Spaniards beating them out of their Flankers) retired. Few Chriſtians were ſlain (in compariſon) ; but, *Claſis* the Enſign-bearer being ſhot blind had not *Ruiavix* a Knight moſt courageouſly reſcued it, the Enſign of the Order had been loſt.

After this, *Muſtapha* began to grow in contempt with *Solyman* : and *Pyrrhus*, to keep his credit, continually battered the Mount nigh the Italian Bulwark with 17 great Pieces. Then alſo *Caffius* Governour of *Bythinia* laboured by undermining to overthrow the French Bulwark : but was fruſtrated by *Chierus* his countenance : and *Pyrrhus* in a hot aſſault, gaining the Mount, and greatly affrightning the City, was with great loſs repulſed, and can-

led by *Solymán* to retire : the Governour of *Eubœa*, *Solymán's* Lieutenant General being slain : for which he was exceedingly pensive.

Mustapha determined (if possible) by a third assault of the *English* Bulwark to recover his credit : agreeing with *Achimetes* at the same time to assault the *Spanish* ; who suddenly blowing up part of those Walls, and entering presently in the thick of the dust and smoak, recovered the Rampiers-top. *Mustapha*, also hardly charging the *English*, a doubtful fight was made in both places. The *Rhodians* manfully repulsed the enemy, forcing him with shame to retire, many *English* were slain, and *Preianes* sore hurt : having slain many Turks ; 2 of *Mustapha's* Ensignes were taken by *Vaulderick*, commendatour of the *Germane* Knights. *Achimetes* having set up his Ensignes ; by valour, and some Ordnance placed by *Martiningus* in the Houses before the breach, and by shot out of the Flankers on both sides, he was forced also to retire.

Sept. 23. They hoping through a Mine, made against the *Avergne* Bulwark, to win the City, were, upon their approach at the blowing of it up, met with by a counter-mine ; so that being in a place of great disadvantage, they returned with some hurt ; yet their expert Captains, conjecturing, the wall might be inwardly shaken by the mine, though not outwardly perceived ; violently battered there all that day and night after, making a large breach : that night was heard, an unwonted noise in the Camp ; which the *Rhodians* rightly conjectured a sign of some great assault to be shortly given ; for *Solymán* resolving next day with all his Force to assault the new breach, after a melancholly walking in his Tent, sent for the chief Commanders, declaring unto them : that though they needed not any exhortation, yet the enemy's desperate madness made him speak to them a few words : by effectual persuasion and large promises to hearten on his men to the winning of the City, rent, shaken, beaten down : and they wearied

wearied and worn out, &c. worthily seeming unto his Souldiers of invincible force and courage, for in taking that one City, they should make entrance upon the matter, into all Dominions of the Christians; and enjoy store of Warlike provision with a rich City, and a Haven of all others most commodious, &c. And as for them he said, considering he had by their valour and wisdom, lately subdued *Belgrade*, he rested in great hope, those fierce and obstinate Christians, should not be able long to defend themselves in their Dens and lurking places.

The Captains making known the Emperours pleasure, proclaimed the spoil of that rich City, to the Souldiers as a prey. *Solyman* layd him down on his Pallet to take rest; but *Villerius* all night in Arms, viewed all the City, encouraging his Souldiers to remember they watched for Countrey, life, and liberty. A Christian serving a *Turk*, secretly warning the Watchmen of a general assault next day: *Villerius* calling his Knights to prevent rashness and fearfulness, said, He was glad the time was come, when in one battel, they might be justly accounted the defenders of the Christian Commonwealth: the *Turks* presumed upon their multitude; but if they measured valour, not by number, but courage, a few, resolute, would overcome a multitude of cowards; that they knew their manner of fight, &c. Wherefore remembring their birth, and what opinion the Christian Commonwealth hath had of them, they should furiously fight, as if their slaves bore Arms against them: necessary as well as wrong, enforcing them; for they were in an Island, whence was no escape, and in a City, whose rent walls defended them not so much as their Weapons: therefore to morrow should give them a joyful Victory, or a most honourable death.

The enemies approach made him cease, every one hastening to his charge; they with a horrible cry, fiercely assailed 5 stations, 10000 *Turks* being appointed to a

place: *Mustapha* calling on *Mahomet*, and promising his men the spoil, assailed the *English*, whence he had been thrice repulsed.

Pyrrhus assaulted the *Italian*; a cruel and deadly fight was in both places: also Women, Children, and aged men, bringing stones, burning Pitch-Barrels, hoops with wild-fire, scalding Oyl, and boyling Pitch: on whomsoever it fell, to scalded them, that casting down their weapons to tear off their Cloaths, many rent off the skin and flesh; besides the deadly shot which fell, never in vain.

Villerius having well relieved the *Italians* station, at first hardly distressed, left *Monterossius* a Knight, with company convenient, and went to the *English* hardly laid to by *Mustapha*; but having well relieved that place, a cry ran, that the *Spanish* Bulwark was possessed by the enemy: at which heavy newes, he leaving *Gombaulus* with a choyse Company, halted thither with his Guard: which he found taken; for some *Turks* at the first, hiding for fear at the Bulwarks foot among the stones, beaten down by battery: *Achimetes* hotly charging the *Spaniards* on the right hand, nor meddling with the Bulwark it self, those in the Bulwark, seeing their fellows distressed fast by, left the Bulwark, and went to that place. The hidden *Turks*, hearing all silent over them, secretly crawling up the battered walls, got into it, before discovered; suddenly slaying a few busied Souldiers in removing a great piece, and overthrowing the Christian Ensigns: which the *Turks* without, seeing, made great hast thorow the Town-Ditch, to get into the Bulwark; but were so cut off by shot from the flankers, that few got up.

Villerius, nothing fearing, resolutely scaled the same, and *Caponus* a *Spaniard*, with *Menotius* a *Frenchman*, breaking in by a Gate, not yet bolted; whom they slew not, they forced to mischief themselves for haste over the walls. It was two houres in the enemies possession.

Villerius leaving there a sufficient number, went with the rest, where the *Spaniards*, sore charged by *Achimetes*, had much adoe to hold out: who encouraged with his fight, valiantly repulsed their enemies. It were long to tell the hard fight and adventures at the *Avergnoy*s and *Narbonenses* stations; but the *Turks* laying slain by heaps: *Solyman* beholding it from his standing made of high *Masts*, and no hope of Victory, caused a retreat welcom to both sides to be sounded: divers Knights, with 150 common Souldiers, were slain in this six houres assault, and 2000 *Turks*.

Solyman was so much offended hereat, that falling into a rage, especially against *Mustapha*, as an unfaithful Counsellour, and chief perswader of that unlucky Warre, commanded him to be put forthwith to death in his presence: which sudden dreadful doom on so light occasion, upon such a man, struck such terrour in all present, that none durst so much as sigh in pitying his case.

The Executioner ready, *Pyrrhus* presuming of his great favour, stepped forth, earnestly requested him to spare his life: wherewith *Solyman* was so wrathful, and for sending for him to *Constantinople*, that he commanded him to be executed also: All the rest seeing the danger, fell down at the Tyrants feet, craving pardon, saying, The enemies ground, had already drunk too much *Turkish* blood, &c. *Solyman* at this general intercession, pausing a little, granted them their lives: *Pyrrhus* for his age and wisdom, and *Mustapha* for his Wife's, *Solymans* Sisters sake, once *Bostanges* his Wife.

The *Turks* great Fleet all the while, lay before the Haven, not doing any thing; for the Admiral no man of Warre, seeing all fortified, durst not try to enter, or besiege the Castles: suffering also *Viſual* and *Ammunition* to be conveyed into the City: wherefore though by *Achimetes* mediation, *Solyman* spared him from a most cruel death; yet on the poupe of the Admiral Galley, he re-

ceiving an 100 stripes with a cudgel, was thrust out of office.

The remembrance of so many unfortunate assaults, &c. so grieved *Solymán*, that being ready to raise the siege, he also lay oft speechless, with fainting: and a great while after, would not be spoken wirhall, till *Abraham* his minion, recomforted him, and perswaded him to continue the siege, time working that, which the Sword could not suddenly subdue.

Solymán building a Castle upon Mount *Philermus*, in sight of the City: Letters were shor in the while, revealing many of *Solymán's* secretest Counsels, and promising a great mans revolt: which the *Rhodians* gathered to be *Mustapha*, not forgetting the late injury; but rydings coming, that *Cayerbeius* was dead; *Solymán* sent *Mustapha* to be Governour of *Egypt*, thereby pleasing him, no letters coming into the City after that.

It now seemed, that the *Turks* purposed by long siege, rather than assault to take the Town; yet the watchers in their Trenches; would sometimes offer the Souldiers on the walls, great rewards to yield, sometimes threats, and would politicly say, *Solymán*, desiring onely revenge upon the *Latines*, meant no harm to the *Greeks*. *October* was now begun, Rain, Thunder, &c. and mighty Tempests, fell so abundantly, that the wearied *Turks* were now discouraged: the Admiral being forced for the Seas roughness, to slip his Anchors, and run his Gallies on ground. In these troubles, *Achimetes*, one of his valiantest Captains, comforted *Solymán*, promising, if he would continue, shortly to make open way into the City: who, thereupon assembling his fainting-Souldiers before his Pavilion, thus spake, that he knew what great things they had endured for his honour, &c. that the threatnings of the Heavens did perswade him to give them leave to lay down Arms; but they were first to consider, whether it were not a dishonour to men of courage,

page &c. And if they should thence depart, who doubted but the enemy, out of revenge, and having lost what he had, would prey upon theirs, more miserably captivating their Wives and Children, than himself was now in bondage: wherefore he advised them to continue, till they attained the end of their desires. And if there were no necessity; yet the eyes of all Nations, chiefly the Christians being on them, when they should hear, they could not endure the field one Winter, would call them Summer Birds, &c:

If the *Gracians* for a *Strumpet*, besieged *Troy* ten years should not the *Turks*, vexed and oppressed 214 years, endure one winters siege? that Famine and thirst hath vanquished impregnable Cities, as it shall do *Rhodes*, telling them, there was a secret mischief prepared against it, which might not in that open audience be published. Though many thought this was spoken out of policy, and the cold courages of the Souldiers were little moved; yet in regard of duty, with an expectation of the secret, they departed at least in shew, content to endure all difficulties,

Achimetes daily assailing the *Vanmures* of the *Avergne* station, not very high, at length obtained them, desperately keeping the place till more help ran in, who speedily clapt up a strong covering, like a Pent-house betwixt the wall and the *Vanmure*; easie to do, the ditches there being filled so high, that the flankers could not scoure them, nor the Defendants without danger, come to cast any thing down from the walls: so that the *Rhodians* overtaken with a sudden mischief, were first heavily silenced, then breaking out into pittiful out-cries. The *Turks* under their Pent-house laboured to dig up the walls foundation: and *Prejanes*, what might be, threw down fire, scalding Oil, &c. upon them: who shrinking away for fear, and being beaten forward by their Commanders,

manders, and fresh men still thrust on, the fatal work begun *Octob. 7th*, went forward apace: The *Asapi* were employed in this work, who oft serve to fill Town-ditches, for the *Janizaries* to passe over upon, shoring it up as they wrought with Timber, then firing it, hoping to overthrow the wall: which not forring, as not being enough undermined, they tryed to pull it down with hooks and ropes; but the Ordnance soon put them off with great slaughter.

Achimetes disappointed, doubted whether to give over, or there to expect some better hap, knowing the Tyrant measured all things by the event; who understanding the wall to be sore shaken, however, planted his battery against the undermined part, which falling down more and more, the *Rhodians* laboured day and night to raise a new wall.

Solyman perswaded generally, the City was that day to be taken or never, determined another general assault, proclaiming the Cities spoil to his men, and briefly speaking to them, that fortune having proved their courage and patience, now offered them the reward of their pains, &c. that it was the time to end those mungrel-people, of whom more were slain than left alive: who, he knew, would resist, not as daring but for necessity; wherefore they should revenge themselves, and make them a woful example to posterity, saying, There was a fair breach wherein 30 Horimen might enter, nothing wanting but their courage. The Souldiers encouraged, cheerfully promised to do their utmost, threatening the Christians with horrible death and captivity: the great shot the while, flying thorow the breach, beat down many Houses; but the Countermure, standing on a lower ground, it seldom touched. The Citizens were wondrously terrified with the ratling, noise, and thundering: Women and Children lamenting, and seeming forlorn: the night following was more troublesom; but the day dawning, the

Turks

Turks with glittering Ensigns, and chearful with hope, haſted to the breach with great outcries and ſongs: ſetting down many Enſigns before *Ambroſe Gate*, deckt with Garlands, in token of Victory: their Fleet alſo, made ſhew before the Haven, as if it would aſſail the City on that ſide; yet for all theſe extremities, the *Rhodians* regarding no danger, running by heaps to the walls, oppoſed their bodies, inſtead of battered walls, propounding to each other, the cruel death, ſervitude, and taunts, if they fell into their enemies hands, to be endured.

Achimetes fiercely aſſailed the breach: the deadly fight being on both ſides with great courage maintained; (the diſmayd Matrons & Maidens, ſome in their Houſes, ſome in Temples with floods of teares, craved the Almightyes help in that diſtreſs.) The *Turks* hoped to win the City, if they did but a little ſtrain themſelves, therefore for terrors ſake, gave terrible outcries: the *Rhodians* accounting them as good as vanquiſhed, they having not yet prevailed; and by whoſe invincible courage the *Turks* were forced to retire: whom the *Rhodians* ſhout-ed at in deriſion: who diſdaining, that they in number many, ſhould be ſo derided by a handful of men, as good as vanqu ſhed, returned with a more furious aſſault than at firſt: and then had the City been taken, had not the *Turks* been overwhelmed with ſhot out of their Barricadoes, and flankers of the new walls, more ſlaughter for the time, was ever hardly ſeen: wherefore *Achimetes* again retired, leaving in the breach and Town-ditch, 500 dead *Turks*, many more dying afterwards of hurt received. This was on *Novemb.* the laſt: the *Turkiſh* Captains, though not deſpairing of Victory, reſolved for no more notable aſſaults, but by great Trenches, to be made thorough the ruines, to get into the City, and with mattocks, &c. to overthrow the new wall, and another barracado without the ſame; and the while, to buſie the *Rhodians* with skirmiſhes and Alarms,

This

This device served to more purpose than all done before, for the multitude destroying the new Fortifications, and creeping on further by degrees, the Defendants were glad to pull down their Houses to make new ones, lessening their City by new Trenches; so that in short time, they knew not which place to fortifie first, for the enemy had gained almost 200 paces in breadth, and 150 in length.

Solyman, though cruel, and assured of Victory, yet *Achimetes* and *Cassius* perswading him, nothing was better for enlarging his Empire than the fame of Clemency: commanded *Pyrrhus* to try, if they would by parley, yield on reasonable conditions: who sent one *Monilia* a *Geno-way* to the Walls, who craving safe conduct, said, He had somewhat to say, tending to the good of the distressed City: who being commanded to speak, said, He would in secret, either by Speech or Letters, deliver his Message to one *Matthias* his Country-man a Citizen: *Fornovius* a French cholerick Knight (reported to have slain himself, 500 Turks from *Georges Tower*) moved to hear a motion of private conference, bending his piece, made him depart without doing his Message. Many understanding the enemy had offered parley, conceiving some hope of life, requested *Villerins* to provide for the safety of his loving people, &c. most of whom left, being wounded or sick: saying, they had proved their force and fortune, wherefore he should beware lest by too long consulting, the enemy conceived further indignation: with these and such speeches he was forced to send Embassadors to *Solyman*: *Grolens* the Ensign-bearer, and *Barasius* skilled in the Greek-tongue, for whom *Achimetes* kinsman, and an Epirot who had fled to the Turks because a Greek Captain struck him with his open hand, of a sharp wit, and speaking Greek, Turkish, Italian Languages; were pledges. *Solyman's* Interpreter came also after; for *Solyman* counted it a disgrace to speak any Language but his own; the
Embassadors

Embassadours told *Solyman*, they were sent to know why he sent for parley: Who in a flaming heat, as if not knowing thereof, said, There was no such matter, and commanding them to void the Camp, sent them away with Letters, that they should yield speedily as he commanded: their Lives, Wealth, and choice to tarry there. ^{But} to depart, he granted them: that they should ^{not} refuse grace frankly offered, &c. saying, it ^{is} not be always lawful for them to make choice both. Upon their return, the multitude flock'd to *Villerius* his House, who being dismissed, the chief Burgers sent for, the Letter was read before the Knights and better sort of Citizens. To which the Master answered: they had heard those importunous letters, & were sorrowful, that they must resolve to yield or die except Forreign ayd come: Wherefore with Weapons in hand, let us, said he, to the last gasp valiantly defend our Faiths and Nobility received from our Ancestours, &c. never to be said, Honours died, but with our selves.

This speech seemed to many heavier than *Solymans* Command: who stood silent, heavily looking one upon another, &c. At length, a *Greek* Priest with great compassion of mind, and tears trickling down, brake forth into a notable speech, perswading the Great Master to yield. Most there present was of his mind; yet the speech was not liked of all; Some considering the harms they had done the Turks, doubted with what safety, they might yield unto those faithless people, rather to fight it out to the last man, and so leave them a bloody Victory: Amongst these one bold-spoken fellow stept forth, a common Souldier, and, by a most resolute speech, dissuaded the yielding up of the *Rhodes*: concluding they should enjoy eternal fame, and glory in Heaven and earth, prepared for such as honourably die in defence of their Prince and Country: which honour, said he, it becometh not them to envy, who for many years enjoying the
 profit

profit of peace, and being greatly enriched by the bounty of this sacred Military Order, refuse now to bear this last burden of War. At these words, an ancient *Greek*, for wisdom and discretion greatly reputed by *Greeks* and *Latines*, perceiving his Country-men wrongfully touch-
 ed, and the desperate holding out of the City vainly per-
 suaded, interrupting him, notably answered to his speech,
 and urged calmly and affectionately the yielding of the
 City. Notwithstanding, *Villerius*, making shew of greater
 courage than his present situation required, after thus dis-
 couraging most of the night, commanded every man to his
 charge, answering only, He would be careful of all their
 well-doing. Next morning he sent for *Prejano Marti-*
ningus, and a few other, who resolved him, the City could
 not be long defended. Wherefore calling a Common-
 Council; it was by a general consent concluded, the City
 should be yielded; and a Decree by the Great Master pro-
 nounced. During a 4 dayes truce with the enemy, full
 of danger; divers presuming Turks, came to behold the
 Walls and Rampires; *Fornovius* sore moved, without
 command, discharged a Tire of Ordnance among the
 thickest of them. Then also they received by night into
 the City, a ship-load of Wines from *Creet*, with *Alphon-*
sus chief Pilot of the *Rhodian* Gallies, and 100 volun-
 tary *Latines* thence, without the knowledge of the *Venetian*
Senate then in league with *Solyman*. The Turks here-
 by justly offended, supposing the supplies far greater than
 they were, without command or Ensigne displayed, thrust
 in, in great numbers, to the new Rampires and Barraca-
 does, with a furious assault, many being slain and wound-
 ed on both sides; but the Turks retired. The truce thus
 broken, the bloody Captain of the Turks *Senoceres*, ha-
 ving taken 3 Christians, cut off their hands, ears and no-
 ses, sending them thus with Letters to *Villerius*, charging
 him with Truce-breach; threatening, within 3 or 4 dayes
 to make him the like example to Posterity. None was
 more

more troubled with this breach than the 3 Knights, then Embassadours in the Turks Camp: who had been slain or tortured, had they not feared the like to their Hostages: but two Burgesses being come into the Camp with Articles of surrender, their rage was soon appeased. *Solyman* gave them audience, beset with his great Army and glittering Janizaries, who with great humility presented the conditions: The chief were, that the Temples should remain to the Christians inviolated: No children to be taken from their Parents, nor no Christians forced to turn Turks: That such as would tarry in the City, might, at liberty, paying no Tribute for 5 years: All others to depart with bag and baggage, furnished with convenient Shipping and Provision as far as *Creet*; carrying so much Ordnance as they pleased; and a reasonable day to appoint for their departure: *Solyman* solemnly swearing to perform them all: but it seems, they were not altogether kept nor broken: many great out-rages being committed against the mind of *Solyman*. *Fontanus* a Civilian, then a Judge of the City, reports; the Turks brake in one Christmas-day by the *ga e Cosqueinium*, polluting the Temples, abusing the Christians, and making havock of all things: Himself redeeming himself with what money he had, not having enough to content all their desires, was hardly entreated, and grievously bearen: *Villerius* by *Achimetes* counsel, putting on simple attire, went out into the Camp, with a few Knights, where waiting most of the day in the rain, at *Solyman's* Tent, at last having a rich Gown cast upon him, was brought into his presence: where a while piercingly beholding each other, the great Master humbling himself, was admitted to kiss his hand; and welcomed by *Solyman*, thus, Though I might justly infringe the Articles, with thee especially such a Capital enemy, &c. Yet I have determined to be not only gracious, but bountiful, promising, if thou wilt amend, the highest places in my Empire in time of War
and

and Peace, thy present state perswades thee not to refuse, & the Christians deserve no better at thy hands. For what should let thee as it were betrayed & vanquished, to cast thy self into the protection of a most merciful and mighty Conquerour, *Villerius* answered, Most mighty, &c. Thy Favours before thy other Worthies I deserve not, nor dare I, or ought now, to refuse the same; yet I will speak freely in the presence of the Conqueror (whose mercy I never despaired of, or of his faith doubted) I had rather, having lost my Sovereignty, lose my life, or for ever live in obscurity, than to be accounted a fugitive; for to be a vanquished man, is but War's chance; and of so great a Conquerour, no shame: but afterwards to forsake his people and turn to the enemy, I account it shameful cowardise and treachery. *Solyman* marvelled at the courage of the old Prince, in such extremity; Sent him into the City with his own guard, till come into his Pallace; every Knight, attending him, having a rich Garment in token of his favour; and few dayes after coming into the City, he went to visit *Villerius*, busie in packing up his things: who falling on his knees to worship *Solyman*, he would not suffer him; but putting aside his Vail of Majesty (a reverence given only to God and *Mahomet*) took him up, saluting him by the name of Father, to whom the great Master spake: Since the fatal Destinies would needs overthrow the *Rhodian* State; he was glad, he was the man before all other, &c. the least of whose prayes, that should not be, that he vanquished the *Rhodes*, and shewed mercy. Wherefore he doubted not, but he would keep the Conventions of peace inviolate, which his Clemency perswaded him to grant, and their necessity forced them to take: saying, He should be an Example of the Turkish Emperour's Clemency and Vertue, more than if he had at first yielded. *Solyman* answered by his Interpreter. It was a great pleasure to him, that God had at any time put it into his mind, to chuse Peace before War: which

which if he had liked from the beginning, he had now received more good from him, than hurt; which that he did not for hatred, but desire of Sovereignty he might gather, because he suffered them to depart at liberty with all their substance; for he warred not to heap up wealth, but for Honour, Fame, and an enlargement of his Empire, &c. But it was commonly bruited: he had ordered a Ship and Gallies to transport the Master & Knights to *Constantinople*: but if he had so purposed, who should have let him? *Jonus* reports, he heard *Lilladamus* say, that when *Solyman* entred *Rhodes* with 30000 men: there was not any man heard to speak a word: and when he came to ask *Solyman* leave to depart, he turning to *Abraham Bassa*, said, Truly, I cannot but grieve to see this unfortunate old man driven out of his dwelling, to depart so heavily.

Lilladamus imbarquing himself with his Knights, and such as were willing to depart, departed on New-years-day at night, landing after long and dangerous travels at *Messana* in *Sicily*: thence he went to *Rome*, where he was honourably received by Pope *Adrian 6*, a Hollander, who if he had been so forward to relieve the *Rhodes*; as to maintain *Charls* his quarrel against the French King, its like it had been relieved. Thus *Solyman*, while Christian Princes were at discord, entred the *Rhodes*, Decemb. 25. 1522. after 214 years valiant defence against the Turks, from whom the Knights took it in 1308. It was 6 moneths besieged by *Solyman*, who lost a great part of his Army, 30000 dying of the flux, besides those slain.

Alis Beg, who betrayed his Uncle *Aladenles*, being made chief Governour by *Selimus*, as aforesaid; *Solyman* jealous of his honour (all *Aladenles* children being dead) especially if they should joyn in friendship with the *Persian* sent *Ferbates Bassa*, with a great Army to take him out of the way, who marching along the confines

fines of his Country, as if but to look to those marches
 of the Empire, whereof he was Governour, feigning him-
 self very sick, sent to *Alis*, requesting him to come to
 him,, at the point of death : to whom he had things of
 importance from *Solyman* to impart , and would leave
 with him his charge, if he died, till *Solyman* should dis-
 pose thereof. *Alis* alwayes faithful and mistrusting no
 harm, came to him with his four sons, whom with their
 Father, he presently put to death , and reducing that
 Country into a Province, under *Solyman* , came to him
 with 20000 men about the time of the yielding of
Rhodes: where all things being disposed of , *Solyman* re-
 turning to *Constantinople*, brake up his Army, and for 3
 years after, followed his pleasure : in which time and
 many years after, *Italy* was miserably afflicted and rent by
Charls the 5th. Emperour, and *Francis* the French King :
 This, envying of his glory : and *Charls*, seeking to make
 himself Lord of all *Italy* : most of other Christian Prin-
 ces and States being drawn into fellowship of the War :
 Whereupon *Solyman* thought it now a fit time to set foot
 into *Hungaria* ; *Belgrade* being already taken: for he knew
Lewis that King was but young, unacquainted with War,
 rather over-ruled by his Subjects , than commanding
 them, hoping also that other Christian Princes near him,
 either regarding their own estate would not, or being by
 League bound to him, could not greatly ayd him. So set-
 ting forward from *Constantinople*, he was come so far as
Sophia with 200000 men, before the *Hungarians* (so
 blind and secure was that State) knew of his coming. The
 young King was wondrously dismayed at this fame: yet he
 sent to his neighbour Princes with all speed, requesting
 their aid; but in vain. He the while summoned the As-
 sembly of his Councel for the Wars : Thither his stipen-
 dary Prelates (bound to appear) came with ill-appointed
 Horsemen, the Troops not half full, delivering in far less
 sums of money than they ought. And the Nobility as
 fresh

fresh-water Souldiers, never seeing the Turk in his strength vaunted: That though they were but few, they would easily overthrow their great numbers, if they came to hand-to-strokes; but above all, *Tomoreus* Arch-Bishop of *Colossa*, who had been in some light skirmishes with the Turks, so did confidently brag of the Victory, that in his Sermons to the Souldiers, and talk with the Nobility, he seemed himself sufficient to vanquish the Turks Army; but a general muster being taken, there was scarce 25000 Horse and Foot. So the fool-hardinelle of *Tomoreus* and others, was of most wise men disliked: the old Souldiers, saying, 'Twas meer madness to give Battel with such a handful of men. Wherefore amongst others; *Verbetius* a noble Captain, counselled that King *Lewis* should be kept out of danger in the strong Castle of *Buda*; but the unruly Souldiers said, unless the King led them, they would not fight: Of which opinion was *Tomoreus*, periwading them speedily to give the enemy Battel, &c. The King ruled by this unlucky Counsel set forward with his Army, & came to *Mohatchor Mugace*, a Village not far from *Danubius*, the mid way between *Buda* and *Belgrade*. *Balybens*, with 20000 Turks, fore-runners was at hand, and then the *Hungarians* consulted, whither best to encamp alone *Danubius* within their waggons to expect *Sepussius Waywod* of *Transilvania*'s coming with his Horlmen, or to march forward and give Battel? But *Tomoreus*, knowing upon *Sepussius* his coming, he was to give place, would not hear of delay, and by his frantick periwations drew the young King into most apparant danger: for *Balybens* making 4 Battels, skirmished with the Kings Army without ceasing day or night, keeping them in so straight, that none could water his Horse at *Danubius* without danger, or once stir forth; but must dig Water pits where they lay; so that *Tomoreus* must of necessity fight. His Battel was ranged all in length, and his Horse placed here and there by Troops among his Foot, lest the Turks should with their

multitude compass them, for *Solymán* was come with all his Army. *Tomoreus* placed a choyse Troop (nigh the chained waggons inclosing the Tents) to defend the Kings person against all events: but at the first encounter, the *Hungarians*, though not hurt by the Turks Artillery (being mounted too high, most of the Gunners being Christians) were easily overthrown, as oppressed by multitude: *Tomoreus* with the rest of the Prelates and Nobles, being almost all slain together, and the Horsemen slain or put to flight: the Turks assailed the Camp hardly defended by the weak Garrison: whom the Kings Guard Troop would needs go to help: the King, seeing himself forsaken, fled; but passing over a Fenny-ditch, his Horse plunging out, fell backwards upon him, where being loaded with Armour, he was miserably drowned in the filthy ditch; some few Horsemen escaped, the rest were slain or taken: This woful Battell, the ground of that Kingdoms miseries, was fought, *Octob. 29. 1526.*

Solymán after this, marching to *Buda* the regal City, it was delivered him with the Castle; on condition to violate no man or goods, and to leave it again to the *Hungarians*, all which he performed; he much commended the Castle, but lodged not therein, but in his Camp, the Turkish Emperour being forbidden by their Law to lodge in any walled place not his own.

He laying at *Buda*, 7 heads of the Slain Bishops and Nobles were presented to him, set on a wooden step, his Courtiers bending with their right hands on their breasts, and deridingly saluting them by name, as valiant Popes, whereat he smiled, and enquiring particularly what they were; he most detested *Salcanius* Bishop of *Strigonium*, who although abounding in wealth, refused part thereof unto his Sovereign at his great need: blaming *Tomoreus* of rashness, who busied himself so far in matters not belonging to his vocation: commending *Peregrinus* Bishop of *Veradium*, who sharply said in the Council

cil when *Tomoreus* would needs fight with the Turks :
 that he foresaw, their friendlike General would thereby
 but effect one Holy-day more in the Christians Kalenders
 for 30000 *Hungarian* Martyrs slain by the Turks in un-
 equal Battel. He called *George Sepusius* and others rash
 fools, for adventuring with so small strength to encoun-
 ter so strong an enemy. King *Lewis* and his Wives coun-
 terfeit being shewed him : he said, he was sorry it was his
 ill hap to have so unadvised Counsellours in so impor-
 tant a matter: and that he came not to take away his King-
 dom ; but to revenge the wrongs done him by the *Hun-*
garians : and, had he escaped, he would have restored to
 him the Kingdom, as content with a smal Tribute, &c.
 All which he commanded to be told to *Mary* the Queen,
 who was fled to *Possonium* : and he did (shortly after)
 give the said Kingdom to *John Sepusius*, not royally des-
 cended (and he then retaining the mind of a very enemy)
 After that he took away three goodly Brasse-Images :
 placed by *Matthias* in the entrance of the Kings Pallace,
 Representing *Hercules* with his Club, *Apollo* with his
 Harp, and *Diana* with her Bow and Quiver, placing them
 in the Tilt-yard of *Constantinople* as a Trophy of Victo-
 ry ; yet they were since taken away by the *Musties* per-
 sivation (as against their superstition) and Ordnance made
 of them. Also he carried away 3 most curious Artillery
 Pieces, and certain Brazen Pillars. In his 20 dayes stay
 at *Buda*, to satisfie his cruel and greedy Souldiers, he sent
 divers Troops, by whom all the Country betwixt *Rab-*
and the River *Tybisus*, was so destroyed, that above
 15000 people were said to be slain or led Captive : all
 which being done, he returned to *Constantinople*.

John Sepusius Vayvod of *Transilvania*, coming too late
 to aid the King, forasmuch as the King being dead with-
 out issue ; He was of greatest account amongst the Nobili-
 ty of *Hungarie* : he cunningly and instantly requested
 divers Noble men one by one, at the next Parliament now

to betray the honour of their Countrey, in suffering the Royal Dignity to be transferred to a stranger, &c. for they ought to remember what calamities they had formerly received in chusing forraign Kings to rule over them, and in following their unfortunate Ensignes against the Turks : saying, there remained of the Nobility of *Hungarie*, men honourably descended of most ancient Houses, worthy of the Kingdom, &c. Among whom, said he, I would not be accounted so base or heavy-headed (though many for honour of house, and wealth, may seem to go before me) that I will therefore confess any to be better then my self, for conducting an Army, or Government of a Kingdom. He had hereby won many of their good wills, and the easter, for that *Steven Bator* was gone into *Bohemia* to King *Ferdinand*, then greatly busied in procuring the Nobilitie's favour, and Commons of that Realm against the time of the Parliament, wherein he was shortly after chosen King.

Lewis his dead body, after *Solyman's* departure being found by the demonstration of *Corrisens* squire of his Body, present when he was drowned, was buried with great solemnity at *Alba Regalis* amongst the Sepulchers of the *Hungarian Kings*; which ended, the general Military Parliament (by whose Voyce the Kings were antiently chosen) was called: where *John* the Vayvod was by the great Applause and Consent of all there present, chosen King: to whom *Perennus* presented the ancient Crown of the Kingdom, which was in his keeping; and he being orderly Crowned, was consecrated by the hands of *Paul* lately chosen Bishop of *Strigonium*, and *Steven* Bishop of *Vacia*, whom he chose his Secretary: giving unto *Gybachus* Bishop of *Veradium* the Vayvod-Ship of *Transilvania*; But whilst he was thus rewarding his friends, and strengthening himself in his Kingdom; he heard that *Ferdinand* his Competitour was chosen King of *Bohemia*, who out of the old controversie betwixt *Matthias* and *Frederick*

Frederick the Emperours great Grandfather alleadged great claim to that Kingdom, derived from the time of *Ladislaus*, reported to be poysoned at the solemnization of his marriage, through the ambition and malice of *Pogibracius*, who shortly after obtained the *Bohemian* Kingdom. And now it seemed, that *Ferdinand* made greater herewith, and strengthened by his Brother *Charls* the Emperour might on good ground claim the *Hungarian* Kingdom, belonging to him (as he pretended) ever since *Albertus* the Emperour's time: neither wanted he the furtherance of divers Nobles of *Hungarie*, besides *Batet* who were in his Court, and envied at the *Vayvod's* preferment. By whose perswasion, he (trusting to his strength in *Austria*, *Bohemia*, *Rhetia*, *Stiria*, and *Corinthia*) marched towards *Buda*. Whereat *John* being exceedingly troubled, as not having sufficient strength, nor greatly assured of his Subjects fidelity; departed from *Buda*, exhorting his Captains to follow him: And by long marches passed over *Tybisens*, encamping at the strong Castle of *Tocai*. *Ferdinand* obtaining *Buda* without resistance; and staying a while, consulted whether to pursue *John* or not: It was soon resolved, he was speedily to be pursued, before he should gather greater strength, &c. *Ferdinand* committing his Army to the *Hungarian* Nobles his Friends: they with all speed passed *Tybisens* on a bridge made of Boats brought with them, coming to the Castle of *Tocai*: *John* terrified, and debating with his Captains of the danger, they perswaded him to withdraw a little out of the Battel, and if things fell out contrary, to reserve himself to better fortunes: but they would resolutely fight against those traitorous Fugitives, &c. *Bodo* was chief of the Kings Army, to whom he delivered his Ensign with his own hand: who stood himself in the main Battel with the *Hungarians*, placing the *Transilvanians* in the wings. *Turacons* led *Ferdinands* main Battel, strengthened on one side with the *Stirian*, on tother

with the *Austrian* Horse; but *Bachitius* (well acquainted with the Turkish Wars: lay a good distance off in ambush with light-horlemen to take his advantage upon occasion. The Ordnance discharged, they joyned Battel; the wings fighting with divers fortune. The *stirians* were worsted by the *Transilvanians*, and *Bodoes* left wing being mostly unexpert Souldiers, were likewise overthrown by the *Austrians*. The main Battels almost all *Hungarians*, fought most eagerly with equal courage; but *Bodoes* right wing being now put to flight by a fresh charge, all his Army was put to flight. *Bodo* labouring to restore the Battel, and save the Kings Ensign, was by *Bachitius*'s coming in, taken: All the Kings Artillery and Ensignes being taken also: himself fleeing into *Polonia*. *Ferdinands* Captains entering *Transilvania*: all the Province submitting to *Ferdinand*: to whom all the Noble prisoners with the Ensignes, being sent, when *Bodo* could not be perswaded to renounce his Oath to King *John*, and bear Arms against him; He was cast into a dark Dungeon, where soon after he miserably died. *Ferdinand*, was by common consent of the *Hungarians* declared King, and crowned with the same Crown that *John* was Crowned. brought to him by the same *Perennis*. *Anno* his Wife *Lewis* his only sister, being Crowned with him; and all at *Alba Regalis*. *Ferdinand* leaving *Bator*, and the revolted Bishop of *Strigonium* his Deputies for Government, making *Berethsaxius* Secretary; and *Tursonus* a *Moravian* Treasurer, returned into *Bohemia*.

John thus thrust out of his Kingdom; fled to *Lascius* of great fame amongst the *Polonians*: who frankly promised him his own wealth, for recovery of his Estate; and more than that, the utmost of his Device; which was accounted wonderful in great matters. *Lascius*'s entertainment of *John* was not unpleasant to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, though, not to offend *Ferdinand* his Allyant; he seemed to forget himself in shewing so small kindness

kindness to *John*, whose Sister he had married. After almost a moneths debaring, *Lascus* rested on this one point, that ready help in so hard a case, was only to be hoped for of the Turkish Emperour *Solyman*, thinking that he would not reject his humble prayers; especially if being by him restored, he could be content to hold his Kingdom as of the *Othoman* Kings bounty. And ere long upon this resolution with the King; *Lascus* went as Embassadour from *John* to *Solyman*: It was reported that *Sigismund* gave him his safe conduct with Letters of Credence: who being come to *Constantinople*, he soon won the favour of the *Bassas* & other Courtiers presenting them with gifts for Kares's rather than value, as might be most pleasing to their Wives. *Abraham* was then Visier or chief *Bassa*, and keeper of the Emperours Seal, doing whatever pleased himself; and commonly said to be the Commander of *Solyman's* thoughts: *Lascus*, for that he could speak the *Slavonian* tongue, the Turkish Courtiers familiar speech, earnestly solicited the Kings cause, wondrously commending him: for (having saluted *Solyman*) he was turn'd over (after the manner of the Turkish Court) to the *Bassas*: which his request with the particular motives and Arguments thereof, being sharply delivered, and by the *Bassas* reported to *Solyman*: who at a secret Window had before heard them declared by *Lascus*: It was no great labour to persuade him, again to undertake the *Hungarian* War, and grant *John* his request according to the success of the Victory; so he would faithfully perform what he had promised, nor shew himself unthankful. *Ferdinand* the while, fearing no force but the Turks, sent *John Oberdanschs* a *Hungarian*, Embassadour to *Solyman* (with gifts for the *Bassas*) by shewing to him his ancient Title and claim to the Kingdom of *Hungarie*, to desire his Friendship, and joyn with him in League upon *Ladislaut*, his Son *Lewis*, and *Sigismund* of *Polonia*, their very conditions: but though

he was courteously received by *Solymán*, and patiently heard, yet in conclusion *Solymán* said, it was far from the manner of his Ancestors, to receive them into favour, who had injured the *Othoman* name: *Ferdinand* having done impudently to invade another's Kingdom, and to think to hold it, seeing his old Claim, was lost by the Law of Arms, by his late Victory against King *Lewis*: wherefore instead of Friendship and League, he denounce unto him all the calamities of War: commanding *Oberdansous* speedily to depart from *Constantinople*: who coming to *Vienna* and telling the Kings Lieutenants, that *Solymán* would shortly come thither with his Army, he was not believed, but reputed a vain man: wherefore he hurried to *Ferdinand* then at *Spires* (hoping to be chosen King of the *Romanes* at the Assembly of the States of the Empire at hand) for crowning his Brother *Charles*. This news not a little troubled *Ferdinand*, even fore-seeing what would happen, knowing he should come in an ill time to crave help of the *Germanes*, especially his Brother *Charles* being busied in his Wars in *Italy*, and himself wanting money. The Spring come, *Solymán* set forward from *Hadrianople* with 150000 men. *Abraham* and *Achomates* conducting the *European* Horse: *Michael Oglí* General of the *Acanziz*: *Becrambeius* following him with his *Asians*: himself in the middle with his *Janizaries* and Court-Souldiers, coming in 15 dayes to *Belgrade*: where *John* with *Lascus*, and other *Hungarian* Nobles, came to him, and doing him all honour, requested him to proceed to revenge his quarrel.

Solymán gravely, and yet friendly, gave him his right hand, protesting, nothing was better to him, or he more desired of God, than to relieve distressed Princes, chiefly those wrongfully oppressed by his enemies, willing him to be of good comfort, promising to bestow on him what in that warre he won by the Sword. *John* obtained this by *Abraham Bassa's* mediation, whom *Lascus* had so won by

by gifts and requests : *Gritus*, the Duke of *Venice* his Son, born and brought up in *Constantinople*, then following the *Turks* Camp, and in great reputation among the *Turks*, and so favoured by *Abraham*, that he could perswade him to any thing, especially helping him herein.

The fame of *Solyman's* coming, so terrified the Citizens of *Buda*, that they almost all fled to places further off ; so entring *Buda* unreluted, he besieged the Castle, whose Captain was *Nadasus*, of great account among the *Hungarians* : who perceiving his Souldiers, as dismayd willing to surrender, forbade them to talk with the enemy, bending his Artillery upon the *Turks*, and seeing his men timorous, he reproved them of cowardise and treason, threatening them with shameful death, if they held not out to the utmost, &c. But they misdoubling by the *Turks* running to and fro, that the Castle was undermined, & at least imagining to smell the sent of Gunpowder, were struck with such fear, that nought could stay them, but they would needs deliver up the Castle : which when they could not perswade the resolute Captain to consent unto, but sternly exclaiming against them, they bound him hand and foot, presently concluding with the enemy to yield, so they might depart with bag and baggage : and they about 700, about to depart towards *Possonium* : and the *Janizaries* loosing the Captain, were about to let him go also.

Solyman advertized of their treachery, and the Captains fidelity, in detestation, gave them all to the *Janizaries* to be slain ; but offered *Nadasus's* honourable entertainment, which he refusing, he courteously sent him away, holpen by King *Johns* commendation, though his Sister was married to *Stephen Malat*, his deadly enemy. This bloody execution, the *Turks* said, was not onely lawful, but also to *Solyman's* immortal glory, in the execution of justice. *Buda* thus taken, *Solyman* resolved forthwith to besiege *Vienna*, the chief City of *Austria* : sending *Acho-*
mates,

mates before him, with the *Achanzii*, who running thorough *Hungary*, and entering *Austria* passed by *Vienna*, miserably burning and destroying, as far as *Lyntz*. The poor people fleeing as men and women dismayed, carried with them their Children, and what else they could; for whatever fell into their hands, was lost, the old men slain, the young led captive, women ravished before their Husbands faces, and then slain with their Children; Infants ript out of their Mothers wombs: others taken from their breasts, were cut in pieces, or thrust on sharp stake, &c.

Solymán shortly after, following them with all his Army, took *Altenburg* Castle by the way, commanding 300 of the *Bohemians* there in Garrison, to follow his Camp. He also assaulted the little City *Neapolis*, 7 times in one day, still repulsed: but he forsook that, and came to *Vienna* Septemb. 26. in camping in 5 places about it, with such a multitude; that from the highest Tower thereof, the ground seemed to be covered 8 miles space with tents and people. *Ferdinand* besides his own forces (not great to oppose so mighty an enemy) had craved aid of Christian Princes his Neighbors, chiefly those of the Empire, who appointed *Frederick* *Palatine* of *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria* their General; but the *Germanes* (after their manner, slowly sitting forward, *Solymán* the while, had so belayed the City, that *Frederick* could not get into it; but stayed with his Army at *Chremse*, about 12 miles off; yet a few dayes before, 20000 Horse and Foot, were come to *Vienna*, their chief Commanders being *Philip* the *Palgrave* *Fredericks* Nephew, sent thither a little before by his Uncle, with a few Companies of Horse and Foot; *Nicholaus* Count of *Salma*; the Lord *Regendorff* *John Cazzianzer*, a *Croatian* Noble, with four others for birth and valour, of great account.

Vienna was somewhat strong toward the North, by reason of *Danubius*; but in other places, the *Ditches* were

were drie, easie to be passed; the walls of Brick, round, without Flankers, neither high nor thick: neither had they, as men secure, cast up any rampire or Bulwark, unless at the Gate of *Carinthia*; so that of 100 great pieces, and 300 others, lesse, a great part were of no use; yet, as the sudden coming of the enemy gave leave, they cast up Bulwarks, and planted their Ordnance thereon. *Abraham Bassa* encamped on a Hill, where stood a ruinous Castle, whence he might overlook all the City; yet laying out of danger of Gunshot: *Beerambeius* lay at the Gate *Purgatoria*: toward the Hill's rising, lay *Michael Oglu*. At the Scottish gate towards *Danubius*, lay the *Asapi*, with divers Companies of *Janizaries*, who powred such showers of shot and Arrows into the City, that none could appear on the walls without danger, or stir in the City untried: but he was wounded.

Solyman lay nigh *St. Marks* Temple, compassed with his *Janizaries* and Court-Souldiers, defended also with the brick walls of the Gardens: the Defendants sallying often out, slew many, while thus encamping: in one of which sallies, *Hagen* with certain old Spanish Souldiers, was slain, fighting valiantly at the Castle Gates; and in another, *Zettitz* sallying out with 500 Horse, even to their Trenches, was taken with six others, whom the *Turks* compelled to carry so many Heads of their slain fellows, on poles, and so presented to *Solyman*: of whom he enquired many things concerning *Ferdinand*, and where he was, and whether the Princes within hoped to defend the City against his power. *Zettitz* answered (though not so true) that *Ferdinand* lay not far off at *Lintz*, expecting a great Army; and that divers Princes were coming to him with great ayd, &c; And as for the Princes in the City, he knew, they and all the Souldiers were solemnly sworn, not to give it over to the last man &c; But as for him and the others taken with him, they were in his power to kill or save: yet he granted them their lives and li-

liberties, charging them to wish the Defendants in his name, to yield the City: which it was impossible for them long to defend against his mighty power, &c. and to accept before too late, of safe departure with bag and baggage; for he was resolved not to depart before he had taken it. So he sent them away with three *Hungarian* Duckats a man. They being received into the City, related the threatnings and proud speeches of the *Turk*, which they so disdained, as to send him no answer: whereat he displeased, deridingly sent them word, if they wanted help, he would send them the 300 *Bohemians* taken in *Altenburge* Castle: who answered, they needed none from him, therefore he might dispose of his prisoners, as he saw good: wherefore he began to batter the walls with such Ordnance as he brought with him: which being not great, did not much harm, more than to beat down the battlements of Timber, hanging over the walls for small shot to play out of.

His great Artillery was coming up *Danubius*; but *Wolfgangus Floder* going out of *Possonium*, with certain small Vessels, set upon the *Turks* with such resolution, that slaying many of them, he sunk amongst other Vessels, those bittering-pieces with the Boats that brought them; so losing a few men, he returned with Victory: the City hereby, being delivered of a great danger; yet another part of the *Turks* Fleet, at the first coming up to *Vienna*, brake down all the Bridges, which joyned divers Islands together, made by *Danubius*; over which is the way from *Austria*, unto *Vienna*: and so kept the passage, that none by land or water could go in or out without danger.

Solyman now fell to undermining the City: which was with exceeding labour and diligence, attempted in 15 places; but was perceived by Drums on the ground, basons filled with water, and sounds made in the Earth, and so, met withall by countermines, that most were frustrated,

strated, and 8000 *Turks* slain or buried quick therein. *Solyman*, that they might not so perfectly discover his Mines, appointed his Army, divided into four parts, in order to give the Defendants a continual Alarm: whereby his works went forward with all possible speed: and one Mine was suddenly blown up, shaking and overthrowing much of the wall nigh the Gate, leading towards *Carinthia*: whereat, the *Turks* greatly shouling, pressed in on all sides by the ruines of the wall, charging the Defendants with shot and Arrowes very thick: who resolutely standing in the face of the breach, so received them with shot and push of Pike, that they began to retire: whereupon, *Solyman* sent in new supplies; but these also receiving a great overthrow, retired without any sign of retreat.

The ground nigh the Town lay covered, and the ditches filled with dead *Turks*. Ere long, the wall was blown up in two other places, by which breach not very great, they fought so desperately to enter, that they thrust one another upon the point of their enemies Weapons: who slew them without number, being mostly, without Armour, enforcing them again disorderly to retire, filling the breaches with their dead Carcasses.

Three dayes after, another piece of the Wall, not farre from the first breach, was so suddenly overthrown, that for eagerness on both sides, throwing away Guns and Bowes, they came to handy-blowes in midst of the breach, the *Turks* with Scimitars, the *Germanes* with long Swords: as their Captains encouraged (them) with chearful perswasions; so the *Turks* Captains forced (them) forward with words and wounds: 'twas thought, a more fierce and deadly fight was never seen; for many *Turks* Horsemen, thrust in on foot amongst the rest, and fought most desperately. At the last, after three houres furious fight, the *Turks* seeing no hope, retired to their Camp, many of their best Captains and Souldiers lying dead by heaps.

It were tedious to recount every assault in particular; yet Lord *Rogendorff* is not to be forgotten; who one day sallied out (with some Troops) upon many stragling Turks, with such violence, that overthrowing them at first on-set, and chasing them, scarce 140, of 5000 escaped: after which his name was terrible to the Turks. *Solyman* exceedingly grieve: with his vain assaults, purposed to prove the utmost of his forces, and calling his chief Commanders, at first, sharply reprov'd them as of no courage, who had turned their backs in the breaches half won: wherefore (he counting it a great dishonour to forsake the siege) they should resolve next day as Conquerors, to take the City, or as cowards, to end their dayes. Next day, *Octob. 15.* they with all their forces assailed the City, thrusting their men by heaps into the breaches, as if they would with very multitude, have overborn the Christians; being at handy blowes, the fight was most terrible, the Christians still repulsing them: whose Ordnance also fitly mounted, made such slaughter among the thickest of them, that they shrunk back, and chose rather to be slain of their own Captains, as some were, then to be rent in sunder by the murdering shot; so that the Captains, seeing no remedy, retired, leaving many thousands dead in the Town-ditches.

Next day *Solyman* despairing, and fearing *Ferdinand* and the Count *Palatine* their coming, winter also coming fast on, determin'd to raise the siege: to colour which dishonour, he sent certain chief prisoners richly appareld, and full of money, to tell them of the City, he came not intending to besiege or take *Vienna*; but to revenge wrongs done him by *Ferdinand*; and to fight with him for the *Hungarian Kingdom*: whom, since he could not draw to *Vienna* he would remove to seek for him: wherefore they should yield, promising not to enter their City, but to receive them all into his protection, reserving them their lives, goods and freedom: which they scornfully

refused, as proceeding of desperation. Next night, he slew all the prisoners in his Army: which pittiful outcries they heard into the City, not knowing what it should be till, after his departure, they found men women and Children wallowed in their own blood. *Solyman* causing *Abraham*, to shew himself in order, as if to give a fresh assault, rose himself the while, with the rest, returning in such halt, that he neither garrison'd or demanded tribute of any places taken. *Abraham* following him a dayes journey behind he arrived at *Buda* in five dayes, 32 German miles from *Vienna*. He is reported to have lost 80000 men, his Lieutenant of *Asia* being one, and many forward Captains. Few or none of name, of the defendants were lost; but of the country, above 60000 were thought to be slain and carried captive: all about *Vienna* being miserably spoiled. *Solyman* restored *Buda* to *King John*, who by writing, acknowledged himself his Vassall, to whom he joyned *Gritus* as his legat, to help him in providing for that Kingdoms defence.

While *Solyman* lay at *Buda*, he was one day earnest with *King John*, to receive the Bishop of *Strigonium* and *Perennus*, who had taken part with *Ferdinand*, into his former favour, who shewing himself unwilling to be intreated, said, their mutable mindes would never contain themselves within the bounds of loyalty, but find occasion to commit some fowler treason: whereto, *Solyman* straining his voice a little as somewhat moved, replied, *Can any thing happen better to thee in this life, than for thy enemies by thy kindness to be accounted by all ungrateful &c.* when as in thee the commendation of a courteous Prince shall for ever remain? So fearing the cold of approaching Winter, he set forward to *Belgrade*, thence to *Constantinople*.

All this while, *Charles* the Emperour, lately reconciled to Pope *Clement* 7th. besieged *Florence*, by *Davalus*, labouring to bring them again under the subjection of the
Medicis,

Medici's, whereof *Clement* was chief: which with much ado he bringing to passe, invelted *Alexander* the Popes Nephew in that Dukedom. And giving him his baie Daughter in marriage; forgetting his Brother *Ferdinand* the while, and *Austria* waited, with *Vienna* endangered. Next year, 1520, *Solyman*, with great solemnity, circumcised his Sons *Mustapha*, *Mahomet*, and *Selimus* at *Constantinople*. And hardly digesting the dishonour at *Vienna*, and solicited by *John* against *Ferdinand*, who with greater stomach still molested him; but mostly, from an exceeding unsatiable desire of enlarging his Empire, he raised an Army, purposing chiefly, to conquer all *Ferdinands* Dominions, and so, all *Germany*; promising to himself but three years for accomplishment. It was reported, that he would oft say, what belonged to the *Roman* Empire, was of right his, he being possessed of the Scepter and Scepter of *Constantine* the great: wherefore, when he mentioned *Charls*, he would as in disdain, terme him, King of *Spain*, but never, Emperour.

Christian Princes discord, and great troubles then in *Germany*, about Religion, not a little encouraged him to his expedition.

Ferdinand sent him three Embassadors, whereof Noble *Negarela*, skilled in divers Languages, was chief, with rich presents, and reasonable offers for peace, who meeting him on *Servia's* borders, were courteously received and heard; yet had no answer, but to follow his Camp, and attend his pleasure: the report whereof, brought fear on all *Germany*, chiefly the *Austrians*, in whose remembrance were the bleeding wounds of their Country, &c. *Charls* the Emperour, had a little before, for a while well appeased the dissention about Religion, put the *Germans* in hope of a general Councel, for deciding all such matters; and in a great Assembly of the states of the Empire at *Ratisbone*, shewed them the greatness of the eminent danger, &c.

If they should then fall at variance among themselves: offering to go in person with all his old Souldiers in defence of the Christian caule; so that, highly commending him, all other matters then set apart: they agreed with one consent to send at a prefixed day, such Forces to *Vienna*, as they had (in any time before) sent. Whereupon he wrote to *Vastins* his Lieutenant General in *Italy*, speedily to call together the old Captains, and to leavy what Harquebusiers they could, with whom, and the *Spanish*, to repair forthwith into *Austria*: enjoying *Auria* his Admiral to rig up a strong Fleet; and to go against the Turks Navy into *Greece*: He sent also for his choyce Horsemen out of *Burgundy*, and the Low-countries: and many Noble and expert out of *Spain*: entertaining 12000 *Germanes* for his guard, commanded by famous *Herbersthene* and *Tamisins*. Pope *Clement* also, having exacted from the Clergy a great mass of Money (for his Coffers were much emptied by the *Florentine Wars*: whereto his rich Cardinals contributed nothing) sent the yong Cardinal *Hippolytus*, *Medices* his Nephew, (about 20 years old, as his Legate to *Charls*) accompanied with good Captains and store of Treasure, whose coming was very welcome: for besides his great bounty, he entertained 8000 *Hungarian* Horsemen, best acquainted with the Turkish Wars. King *John* thought it now a fit time to wring from *Ferdinand* what Towns he yet held in *Hungary*: wherefore he sent *Aloysius Gritus*, to besiege *Strigonium*, scituated on *Danubius* side, about 30 miles from *Buda*: the Castle was holden with a strong garrison; yet *Gritus* so besieged it by water and land, that the Defendants doubting to hold out, (chiefly, if *Solyman* took that in his way, sent for relief to *Gazianer* Governour of *Vienna*, who sent certain smal Frigots down *Danubius* (well manned) from *Possonium*, by their unexpected coming to open a way to the Castle hindered by the Turks Fleet: but *Gritus* informed hereof by the *Hun-*

garians serving *Ferdinand*, and yet sometime fleeing to either party, sent his Fleet up the River, to oppress his enemies, as they thought to have done him (promising great rewards to such as performed any extraordinary service) who at first were exceedingly dismayed: yet thinking it a great shame to flee, courageously encountered their enemies many being wounded on both sides in that sharp fight: at last, they of *Possonium* (not able to endure the shot, especially of the Turkish Archers) fled: and but 13 of 60 Frigots escaping with *Corporanus* their General the rest being sunk, or run a shore, and forsaken by the *Possonians*, of whom almost 500 were slain. After this *Gritus* hoping, they of the Castle would not long hold out, left off battering and under-mining it, by keeping them from relief to force them to yield. Thus, whilst the divided *Hungarians* sought each others ruine, *Solyman* was ready to devour them and their Country, as in few years he did.

The *Spanish* Souldiers drawn together by *Vastius* were, much about this time, come to the *Alps*: being of all sorts about 20000, yet almost the third part not serviceable. For the old Souldiers enriched with the long Wars in *Italy*, brought with them all their gotten spoils, and their very Women, which drew a multitude of Carriages and unnecessary people: Wherefore *Vastius* strictly commanded, they should leave behind all such unnecessary Baggage, whereat they murmuring, presently rose in mutiny: for many Captains being rich, and disliking that long & dangerous expedition, covertly put into the Souldiers heads, that they all said, they would go no further before they had their pay. *Vastius* though he perceived the tumult was raised by some of his enemies, yet dissembling the matter contented them with a month's pay, promising the full when they came to the Emperour; so having with much ado appeased them, he set forward,

Immediately after followed the *Italians*, so cheerfully offering their service that every Captain brought twice
so

so many as was expected; So that *Vastius* (who before doubred their forwardness, especially to aid the *Germans* of whom they had received great harms) was now glad to dismiss many Common Souldiers, and, against his will, to displace most of the forward Gentlemen, who had gallantly furnished themselves: for the Emperour had appointed the number of *Italians* to be led by old Captains, whose valour and discretion he had well experienced. They were 14⁰⁰⁰ select Footmen, besides many brave men voluntarily resorting to *Vienna*. *Gonsaga* followed these with 2000 Horse, and some *Greek & Spanish* troops; with whom came many noble Gentlemen, who served now as private men without pay, counting it shame not to be present in that religious War. The Emperour also viewing his Low-country Horse, and shipping his store of bought Ordnance, departed down *Danubius* from *Ratisbone* to *Lintz*: which never carried so many Vessels and Souldiers, since the time of the great *Romane* Emperours: and yet the Banks on both sides were filled with Horse and Foot, passing along under Colours with Drums and Trumpets sounding: a most glorious earthly shew.

Solyman the while, in 1532, coming to *Belgrade* in 56 dayes, sent a multitude of Horsemen into *Hungarie* over the River *Savus* by Bridges made, and leaving *Danubius* on the right hand, marched towards rich *Stiria*, now *Stiermarke*; coming by the way, to the little Town *Günza*, which courageous *Jureschitz* kept with a small Garrison of his own, not very strongly walled, an obscure thing, standing in a Plain. *Abraham* very desirous to save the said Captain, knowing him to be of great courage, and his familiar acquaintance at *Constantinople*; first by persuasions and offers, then by terrible threats, tried to induce him to yield. But finding him resolute: he enclosing it round overthrew the Walls (by Mines) in 3 places: which while the Garrison valiantly defended against the *Janizaries* assaults on the South side; the *Bassa* with

his Field-pieces on the Hills from the North, grievously annoy'd the Defendants. Wherewith the Governour troubled, though not much discouraged, rais'd a Curtain of Timber and Boards 12 foot-high at his Souldiers backs; so that they now shooting at all adventures at the Curtain, did nothing such harm as before; with desperate and restless labour, repairing the Breaches strong as at first: 200 Turks Horsemen the while, stragling for booty as far as *Neostat*, were by *Hungarian* Horse all slain and taken; whose Heads they bringing to *Vienna*, to encourage the Souldiers, set them on stakes upon the Walls: Then they knew by the prisoners that *Solyman* had 500000 men and 300 Field pieces; but small. For why, *Solyman* by destroying the Country, purpos'd to draw the Emperour to Battel: which report was confirm'd by *Ferdinands* Embassidours, whom *Solyman* granted to depart at *Gunza* with each of them a Velvet Gown and piece of Plate, and Letters to *Charls* and *Ferdinand*; proudly usurping the Titles of many Kingdoms: saying, he was come into *Hungarie* to revenge the wrongs they had done to King *John* his Friend and Vassal, and would enter their Country, with fire and sword: and by God's and *Mahomet's* power, would give them Battel, if they durst meet him in one Battel to end that quarrel, either by winning or losing the Empire of the World. *Solyman* having a great while sharply assaulted *Gunza* and still with great loss repuls'd: He in 4 dayes cast up nigh the Town-ditch two great Mounts of Faggots and earth, so high, that they over-topped the highest Towers of the Town: one was against the face of the Town, the other at a corner to flanker the Wall: whence he with his shot, beat both them on the walls, and those who went to and fro in the streets. The Town-ditch being filled up, and many Defendants slain or wounded, the Turks most furiously assaulted the place before shaken, the valiant Captain opposing all his strength left; but the Turks with their multitude, got
up

up the walls with 8 Ensignes, whence they had repulsed the Defendants, who being all wounded or wearied, shrouded themselves under their Pent-houses, so that the Walls were now abandoned. But such a sudden clamour was made by the Women and Children, and other fearful people; that the Turks on the Walls, thinking the Town full of Souldiers, stood as men dismayed: whereupon the Defendants began again to shew themselves, at whose sight they forsook the Wall, and could by no means be brought on again. The Town was then defended in all judgement, by Gods power, not mans strength: *Solyman* exceedingly grieved to see so base a Town hold out so long, oft (in his rage) threatened to leave no signe thereof remaining: but *Abraham* Bassa waited a fit time when his choler was past; told him, it was not worth his name and greatness, to spend his time and Forces upon so smal a Town of no importance, by razing whereof he should get neither honour nor profit, &c. Wherefore 'twere more honourable to raise his Siege, and, calling the Governour, to give him the Town as of bounty, than to spend so many good men in winning it by force. The Bassa so prevailed, that the Governour was by a Herald, sent for to *Abraham*, who though grievously wounded, yet refused to come to any parley, except first assured by safe conduct and good Hostages for his safety, and nothing to be exacted unbecoming his Religion and Honour: which stout answer made them think, he was still able to hold out the Siege: whereupon what he required, was forthwith granted; So he going forth, was by *Abraham* honourably received, and bid sit down by him in his Tent, who courteously demanding, whether he had recovered his old infirmity which he had when sent Embassadour to *Solyman*, and whether his wounds were dangerous? But last of all, on what hope he alone had so long and obstinately withstood the mighty *Solyman* saying, he marvelled, why he reposed confidence in the bringing King

Ferdinand Who modestly answered, he was (thanks be to God) well delivered of his old Disease: his wounds being without danger; As for his holding out, he knew (he said) it was the duty of a good Souldier, valiantly to withstand his enemies, nor to be discouraged with any chance of War, &c. That *Ferdinand* would ere long be there present with a great Army: he not much marvelling, he was not relieved before then, since many lets might hinder the King's purpose, considering Fortune's inconstancy in Martial affairs. The Bassa wondring at his courage, said, Although *Solyman* might utterly destroy the Town with all therein; yet being by nature most honourable and mild, and a great lover of valiant men, He had commanded him in his Name to give him that Town, and all the lives in it as a Reward of his Valour: yet so, as to swear to him obedience, and receive some few Turks into it in token of yielding. The Governour knowing scarce a third part of 800 Souldiers were left, and them sore weakened, thought it needful to make his peace in best sort he could: and so cunningly used the matter, that *Abraham* was content, he should only receive a Captain with 10 Janizaries in, at one of the gates for a while courteously entertained, and then dismissed; though he had neither *Germane* nor *Spaniard* then in the Garrison; yet he told the Bassa, he was much affraid the Turks would be ill intreated by them, who deadly hated them. So *Solyman* having layen at that Siege 28 dayes: and to his great loss assaulted *Gunza* 13 times: He rose with his Army, glad of a little feigned submission for safety of his honour. And leaving *Vienna* on the right hand, where was most of the Christian Army, he came into *Carinthia*, and so to the River *Mura*, thence to the City *Gratia*. This put all fear out of the Christians minds: for that *Solyman* (a little before feared) being repulsed at *Gunza*, shunned his enemies at *Vienna* &c. Which disgrace, the Turks sought to cover, as that *Neostat* lay betwixt him and

Vienna, not to be taken without great difficulty, nor without danger left behind him: Winter also beginning to approach. But some were of opinion, *Solyman* understanding that the *Germane* Princes had joyned Forces with the Emperour's brought from *Spain*, *Italy* and the Low-countries, which at first he least feared; and that the Christian Army great, were (mostly) not inferiour to his best men of War, chose rather to take the spoil of the Country with safety, than to adventure person and state in a most doubtful Battel. While this was doing, *Cason* was sent with 15000 *Acanziz*, to spoil all the Countrey between *Danubius* and the *Alps*: Wherefore dividing his Horsemen into 3 Companies not far asunder, he slew or carried away prisoners a multitude of all sorts of people as he went, forcing thousands of men and women to run (tied together) as fast as their Horses, burning down the Villages, and in them the children of the Parents: so that, almost 150 miles every way was covered with smoak and fire within 3 mile of *Lintz*, whence *Ferdinand* was glad to get to *Strabingia* to *Charls* the Emperour. This cruel Turk, loaded with spoil and prisoners, began to return the way he came, to *Solyman*: either (as he thought) at *Gunza*, or *Neostat*, coming towards *Vienna*; but the Christian Captains went out of the Camp, to meet with them: using such diligence in taking the passages, it was impossible they should escape unfought withal: 4 troops of *Spanish* and *Italians* under Valiant *Cone*, first lighting on them nigh *Neostat*, and charging them, were (most) slain; but *Cason* perceiving how he was on every side laid for: the night following slew 4000 Christian prisoners, lest he should be hindred in flight; and, dividing into two parts; set forward about midnight to escape out of the enclosed Valleys: One part of his Army led by *Ferises*, going Southward, with incredible labour, cut a way thorough the thick Woods, coming with little loss to *Solyman* into *Stiria*, *Cason* with 8000 Turks breaking out of *Storam-*

berg Valley, chanced on the *Palatine*, who with 10000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, and some Field-pieces, brake them, slaying a great number. *Casons* Ensigne being taken, and himself fighting in the rear for others to escape, was slain. Whose gallant-Head piece presented to the Emperour, confirmed the report. Those who there escaped (falling into the hands of *Lewis*, and Marquess of *Brandenburg*; and of *Hungarian* Horimen, led by *Turacus*, who killing them 7 miles, insulting over them in their own Language; and of the Countrey people, about *Vesprimium*, and the lake of *Balaton*) it was thought, not one escaped to *Solyman*.

The Emperour hearing *Solyman* was gone as far as *Gratia*, called a Council in *Lintz* Castle, to know whether 'twere best to follow the enemy. From *Lintz* to *Gratia* is 3 good dayes journey of bad rough way. Some said, 'twas best to fight the Turks in that uneven Mountain-countrey: whose chief strength (being Horse) should stand them in smal stead, their Foot being inferiour to the Christians. The Emperour presently sent *Aponius* a *Spaniard* to view that passage, who soon brought word, that all the Countrey was desolate; and (for fear) forsaken; but where the enemy lay, he could not certainly learn: whereupon they concluded to go all to *Vienna*, to view the Army and fight the enemy, if he returned. Some disliked that; saying, *Charls* should in that distress of *Stiria* and *Carinthia*, rather pursue his enemy; but others said, 'twas one thing to invade, and another to defend, &c.

Charls being come to *Vienna*, and viewing the Army, found therein 260000 men, 120000 being counted old Souldiers; It was thought, that so many worthy Captains and valiant Souldiers, were never (before) in man's memory, together in one Camp: all the Flowre and strength of *Germany* from *Vistula* to *Rhene*, from the Ocean to the *Alps*, were sent or voluntarily came thither. A thing never before heard of, &c. Besides, the great number of

Spaniards,

Spaniards and *Burgundians*: the *Bohemians* lay not far off, with the *Silefians* and *Moravians*: There were also some Troops of *Polonians*; as voluntary men. King *Sigismund* winking thereat (as if without his knowledge) being careful, not rashly to break his League with *Solyman*.

This Army lay in a great field near *Vienna* in an excellent order; ready to receive the enemy: which many Gentlemen beholding, wept for joy, conceiving assured hope of Victory, if the Turk with all his Forces durst joyn in Battel. But *Solyman* adverted of the Emperours strength and manner of laying, got over the River *Mura*, and at *Marpurg*, by Bridges suddenly made, passed over *Drauns*, and so to *Belgrade*, thence to *Constantinople*, leaving here and there some remembrance of his cruelty, and still looking behind him, if the Emperour were not at his heels, when as a few *Dalmatian* and *Croatian* Horse pursued his Rear. Its reported he carried 30000 into captivity, besides many thousand slain. *Charles* now determined speedily to return into *Italy*, though *Ferdinand* earnestly intreated him, first to employ those great Forces against King *John*, who might then have been easily thrust out of all; but Winter appoaching, and the plague in the Camp, yea in his Court, he continued in his purpose; yet leaving behind him all the *Italians*, who with *Ferdinands* own Forces were thought sufficient for the *Hungarian* War.

One *Maramaldus* was appointed General over those *Italians*; but no order taken for their pay. Other Captains thought themselves disgraced by *Maramaldus's* preferment: whereby the under-Captains and Officers, said plainly, they would not go into *Hungary* except *Ferdinand* himself went, or *Vastius*, or *Leva* were their General: and the Souldiers said, They would ask leave to depart, if they had not 3 months pay, knowing they should never get it of poor King *Ferdinand*: *Vastius* greatly perswaded

perswaded them to remember the faith of Souldiers, &c. saying, Valiant Souldiers never wanted pay, furnishing themselves by Victories, with all necessaries: and that they had no just cause to dislike *Maramaldus*, being an old Captain of great experience, and placed by the Emperour as most sufficient: having well appeased them, and being gone to *Vienna*, to take order for remedying of all difficulties: night the nurse of sedition, gave farther scope to the murinous Souldiers. There was then brought to the Camp, very coorse hoary, moulded bread, which some, on their Speares point, shewed to their fellows in great choler, rayling against King *Ferdinand*, &c.

And a little before, a *Spanish* common Souldier casting the like bread at *Vastius's* feet in the Generalls Tent, bitterly cursing the Emperour and *Ferdinand*, had raised a wondrous tumult: wherefore, the *Italians* flocking together, gave many hard speeches about their pay, Victuals, and the War's difficulty; and setting up one *Marcenius* upon a heap of Saddles, he was by divers Captains, requested frankly to speak, what he thought concerned all their safety and welfare: where, he is reported, to have uttered a seditious Oration unto them: at which very time, a great Blazing-Starre was seen at *Vienna*, which the said *Marcenius* called a terrible and bloody Comet, shewing he said, his Beams toward *Italy*. But his Speech ended, the Souldiers highly commending it; a confused noyse was heard throughout them; but the Drums presently striking up a march, they go forward towards *Neostat*. Six Captains drew after them 8000 Souldiers, the rest for shame, and fear staying with *Maramaldus*.

Vastius, and divers great Companies hearing thereof, posted after them 6 miles, requesting them to stay, and not dishonour themselves with so foul a fact, saying, their pay was ready, and mingling prayers with grievous threats; but they, as enraged, sternly discharged some small shot upon them.

Vastius

Vastius was oft in danger to be slain, so that in the end, he was glad to forsake them.

Ferdinand hereby, for that time disappointed of hope to recover the *Hungarian* Kingdom, wrote to his *Stirian* and *Carinthian* Subjects, to shew them no courtesie in their passage: whereupon ensued great hurt on both sides: yet the *Italians* at length, recovered *Tiliaventum* in *Italy*s borders, where disbanding, they returned to their dwellings. *Charls* also breaking up his Army at *Vienna*, appointed *Gonzaga* to go foremost with the light Horse, with whom himself went: *Vastius* following with the *Spaniards*; two dayes after came the Cardinal with the biggest Train. Lastly, the mercenary *Germans*; so returning safe into *Italy*. This was the end of *Solyman* and *Charls* the 5th, their wondrous preparations in 1532, some marvellous alteration being expected, and the more for that, then, a great Blazing-Starre appeared for 15 dayes. In the meantime, *Andreas Auria* with 35 tall Ships, and 48 Galleys, and 25000 good Souldiers, greatly annoyed the *Turks* in *Peloponessus*: who near *Zant* Island, met with *Capellius* the *Venetian* Admiral with 60 Galleys set forth for their own defence: who though kind to *Auria*, yet could not joyn with him against the *Turk*, *Solyman* having lately renewed an old league with the *Venetians*: who bare themselves so indifferent at that time, that twas thought they at one instant advertised *Auria* of *Hymerales*, the *Turks* laying with 60 Galleys in *Ambracia* Bay, ill appointed, easily to be surprized: and warned him also of *Auria*s coming with a strong Fleet, wishing him to provide for his better safety: who departed to the strong Haven of *Calcide*: So, the Christian Princes being then either in wars among themselves, or entangled by *Solyman* in uncertain leagues, omitted the fairest opportunity for abating the *Turks* greatness.

Auria (out of hope of doing any good against the *Turks* Admirall, being at *Calcide*) came to *Corone*, about 12 miles from *Modon*, laying hard siege thereto by Sea and

and Land, most terribly battering it with 14 great Pieces by Land, and 150 by Sea; yet the *Turks* manfully repulsed the *Italians*, who under the Count of *Sarne* assaulted the City by Land. The adjacent Garrisons did what might be to relieve it, being discomfited by the said Count, and *Zadares* their leader slain, whose head with others were set on stakes, for terror of the Defendants: who at length, wearied and terrified, and driven from their greatest strength towards Sea by some resolute Christians, fearing also to want Victual and Powder, yielded the City and Castle to *Auria*, to depart with bag and baggage: *Corone* was taken, and strongly garrisoned, and the Christian *Greeks* sworn to them.

Auria came to *Patras*, which he easily took and ransacked: the *Turks* also, soon yielded their strong trench with the Castle covenanting, that they, chiefly their Wives, might with their Garments, only safely depart into *Aetolia*; so that, when some Souldiers (as they passed along) began roughly to handle some Women, and take away some Jewels.

Auria presently hanged them; And leaving his Army to follow him by Land, sailed to the Strait of *Naupactum*, now *Lepanto*, on which Strait stood two Castles; *Rhium* on *Peloponesus* Coast, and *Molycreum* in *Aetolia*, which *Bajazet* had greatly fortified with Ordnance.

Auria threatening all extremities to the Captain of *Rhium*, if he forced him to plant his battery, he presently yielded, onely him and his Souldiers safely to depart; those who came with him by Sea, had the Castles spoil: whereby those who came by Land, were about to forsake him. The other Castle being defended by old *Janizaries*, was not so easily taken; yet the Christians entring by a breach made, slew 300 of them, the rest fleeing into a strong Tower, and seeing no remedy but taking, blew up themselves with Gunpowder, in such sort, that all the Sea-coast seemed shaken with an Earth-quake, and the

Galleys a bow shoot off almost overwhelmed with stones, some Piece of very great Ordnance here taken, were by *Auria* mounted, in token of Victory on the Bulwark of *Genna's* Haven.

Auria strongly fortifying and storing *Corone*, promised to relieve *Mendoza*, the Governour, a *Spaniard*, when need, if the Emperour deferred to do it.

Salvatus, *Naupactum* strait laid open, with the Galleys of *Malta*, did great harm to the *Turks* on both sides of *Corinth's* gulf, even as far as *Corinth*. Winter approaching, *Auria* hearing from the Emperour of *Solymans* departure, returned loaden with spoil to *Genna*.

In 1533, *Mendoza* advertised the Viceroy of *Naples*, that he was hardly besieged by the *Turks* both by Sea and Land: wherefore, he most earnestly requested, that the Emperour, if he would have *Corone* kept, should send him timely relief: whereupon the *Greeks* were likely to help expulse the *Turks* out of *Peloponesus*: especially he put *Auria* in minde of his promise to relieve him, whom *Charles* commanded to rig up a Fleet for that service, promising him 12 Galleys new built in *Spain*, and requesting the Knights of *Malta* to aid him: who taking in his Souldiers at *Naples*, where the mutinous *Spaniards* for want of pay, having risled *Aversa*, having pay given them, were imbarqued for *Corone* under *Macicans*; also *Frederick* the Viceroy's Son, with a Company of Gentlemen, went aboard. The Knights of *Malta* coming thither also with their Galleys, *Auria* the while, to encourage them of *Corone*, sent thither *Palavicine*, of invincible courage, with a most swift Galley, who by day-light, thorow the midst of the *Turk's* Fleet, recovered the Haven to their great joy; and viewing all things, and assuring the Defendants of speedy relief, he about noon, brake out again thorow them, safely escaping for all that they could do to overtake him.

Auria

Auria being informed at *Messana*, of the enemies force, stay'd not for the *Spanish* Gallies; being told the enemies Fleet daily encreased by *Turkish* Pirates, and that *Assembeg*, or the Moor of *Alexandria*, an arch Pirate, was looked for, in whose directions, the *Turks* put the greatest hope; being come to *Zant*, he heard that *Lutxis Bassa* their great Admiral, with two others; and the Moor, men of great skill at Sea, lay before *Corone* with 80 Gallies, manned with old *Janizaries*. Wherefore *Auria* sent before *Palavicine* again, to view their manner of laying: who returned to *Auria* confirming the former report: the *Turks* Fleet greatly increased; seeming ready to give him battel, when he approached the City; yet *Auria* made no stay, and with a fair gale of wind, passing the Promontory of *Acrites*, came directly towards *Corone*. Two great Gallions came foremost: whom he appointed to turn a little on the left hand, and when the enemy put off from shore, to cast Anchor betwixt both Fleets, to beat the *Turks* Gallies with their great store of Ordnance. *Auria* himself was in the middle of the Fleet.

At first sight, the *Turks* moved not, discharging their Ordnance at them a far off; then beginning to set forward chiefly by the Moor, who with most courage, assail'd the side and rear of the Fleet: for the Christians keeping a straight course, seem'd to flee; and the more, since the right wing Gallies, fearing the *Turks* great Ordnance, set a great compass: many also of the middle Squadron, and left Wing, having thrust in disorderly among the Ships, though they had received little or no harm.

The Moor now requested *Lutxis*, not to let slip so fair an occasion: who while he set slowly forward, *Auria* had put his Fleet in order again, and was come to *Corone*. Two Ships falling foul of each other, stay'd behind: about which the *Turks* flocking, took the lesser, killing all the *Spaniards* therein: out of whom, boarding the greater, with a bloody

bloody fight had won the fore Castle and waste: wherefore *Auria* caused all his Gallies to return, to rescue those Ships: which the *Turks* seeing and by degrees falling down with the Ships in danger of the Town shot, withdrew themselves with their Oares in manner of flight, whom *Auria* pursued towards *Modon*, liberally thundering in their Poupes: *Antonius Auria* the while, coming to rescue the two Ships, the *Spaniards* (as revived) courageously now made resistance: and those with *Antonius* entring speedily on every side, slew and took 300 *Janizaries*, left in those Ships by the sudden departure of their fellows.

Josuphus, an old Captain of a 1000, being one, to whom *Auria* at *Corone*, gave a fair Suit, and Chain of Gold, freeing him without ransom, to provoke the *Turks* to the like. The Moor and the other Captains, wondrously blamed *Lutzius*, for not fighting then with the Christians: but he said, he had special charge from *Solyman*, not to come to the hazard of a battel.

The besiegers by Land, upon *Auria's* approach, fled, *Mendoza* taking great store of Victual and Warlike provision, left behind them. So *Auria* furnishing the City with store of necessaries, committed its defence to *Macicans*, and his mutinous *Spaniards*, comforting and exhorting the *Greeks* to patience, in the calamities of war, telling them the Emperour next Spring, would free them from *Turkish* bondage, by warring in *Peloponesus* by Sea and Land. So embarking the old *Spanish* Garrison, he came even braving the *Turks* Admiral before *Modon*; but seeing he could not be allured out, or assailed as he lay, he departed to *Corcyra*, and so to *Messana* in *Sicilie*. Few days after which, *Assambeg*, waiting for *Venetian* Merchants Ships from *Syria*, met with *Canalis* on *Creet* Coast, and fighting a cruel battel by night, of the Moors 12 Gallies, 4 were sunk, 3 taken, the rest fleeing to *Alexandria*, having lost most of their rowers: 300 *Janizaries* going

to *Caire*, were slain, and 1000 other *Turks*: of all taken, scarce one was saved: the Moor wounded in the face, was, for safety, glad to discover himself, (for the trafficking *Venetians*, shew least favour to Pirates) then was care taken for his wounds, and both *Canalis* and the *Moor*, began notably to dissemble the matter to each other, as mistaking, &c. yet the *Venetians* sought to excuse it to *Solyman*, as done by error and mischance: who accepted thereof, saying, *Canalis* had well done, to repulse the wrong offered him. Three of *Auria's* Gallies staying behind the rest, were on *Apulia's* Coast, carried away by *Sinam* surnamed the Jew, a notable Pirate also.

In winter, they of *Corone*, beginning to want Victuals, chiefly Wine and flesh, the *Turks* having blocked up the City by Land, the Souldiers requested *Macicans*, they not hoping for relief elsewhere, before *April*, to lead them forth to some service against the enemy; but *Macicans*, mindful of his charge sought by many reasons to dissuade them, &c. yet the matter was so urged by *Touarres* and *Hermosilla*, great Captains, and by a general importunity, that they yielded to their desire, protesting he did it against his will. A forward man herein, was one *Barbattins*, a valiant *Greek*, who speaking the *Turks* Language, also, best knew the by-ways: undertaking in dead of the night, to bring them to the enemies, undiscovered.

So *Macicans* charging *Liscanius* and *Adendosins*, not to suffer any to go out of the City, lest the enemy should know, set forward about 10 at night, towards *Andrussa*: & resting all next day in a secret wooddy valley, they set forward again at night, and came to *Andrussa* before day; in which Town, of no great strength, lay one *Caranus* with 3000 Foot, half *Janizaries*; and in the Suburbs, *Achomates* with 1000 choise Horsemen. *Macicans* went directly to the Town to surprize it: *Hermosilla* the while, standing still with some *Spaniards*, over against the Horsemen, discovered them by their light matches, who awa-
king

king the careless Watchmen, an Alarum was raised in the Suburbs. *Hermosilla*, setting upon the Horsemen, slew many before they could arm; and firing the Stables, many *Turks* perished with Horses and Arms. Through the terrible noyse, (especially of the Horses, which burnt tied; or breaking loose, ran up and down with tails and mains on fire) there was an Alarum in the Town, the *Turks* getting to the Walls before the *Spaniards* could enter. *Macicau*s striving to break in at a Postern, was shot in the head and slain, with divers others near him: the *Turks* sallying out upon the small number, forced them to retire to *Hermosilla*, by whose direction, they retired in so good order, that those most forward to pursue, caused others, by their death, to make least haste.

Achomates hasting thither also with 200 *Harquebusers*, taken up behind his Horsemen, and too hotly pressing on to be revenged, was slain with a Bullet; so these Horsemen returned from further pursuit. The wearied *Spaniards* and *Greeks* retiring still as ready to fight, returned to *Corone*. The *Turkish* Garrison presently after, removing to *Megalopolis*, now *Londarium*, they of *Corone* came to *Andrussa*, and buried their slain fellows, burying honourably *Macicau*s's Head at *Corone*, which the *Turks* had set on a pole. Not long after, the Plague growing hot, with many other difficulties: the *Spaniards* embarking themselves and Ordnance with such *Greeks* as would go in Ships come with Corn out of *Sicilie*, left *Corone* empty to the *Turks*: whilst the Emperour drawn diversly with consideration of his honour in keeping it, and of his profit in giving it up, stood too long in resolving; yet thought not to be done without his secret consent: and the rather, because the deserters of the place, received no disgrace thereby.

Solyman in 1534, purposing to turn his forces against the *Persians*, having done him much hurt in his frontiers, renewed his League with the *Venetians*, and some other

Christian Princes; but he was most careful of his interest in *Hungary* it being reported, that King *John*, through his Subjects solicitation, desired peace with *Ferdinand*, so he might enjoy the Kingdom during life, afterwards to remain to *Ferdinand* and his Heirs: wherefore *Solymán*, that nothing might be done unknown, in his absence, sent *Aloysius Grittius* as his Lieutenant, to be assistant to *John*, and so, as that without him, he might conclude nothing in matters of State. With this Commission, *Grittius* entered *Transilvania* (much about *Solymán's* going against the *Persian*) with 7000 Attendants; *Batiannus* and *Dacia* Hungarian Captains, with their Companies, being two, also, many being *Janizaries*. At his first coming, he sent out his Command to the Governours in that Province, charging them to repair to him as *Solymán's* Deputy, &c. *Cibachus*, Bishop of *Veradinum*, was then Vayuod of *Transilvania*, whose small haste to welcome him, &c. very much offended *Grittius*, who so desired, at his first entrance, to have his Authority confirmed in the minds of the vulgar, by the ready attendance of the Governour. But it was bruied, that the Bishop upon a Christian Zeal, detested the *Turks* friendship, lest that fruitful Countrey should by some meanes fall into their hands.

Grittius at *Baxonia*, heard that the *Vayuod* was coming with a great Train, encamping about 10 miles off, with divers gallant Troops of Horsemen; insomuch, as the Bishops Retinue made shew of a good Army: which mooved *Grittius* exceedingly, that he should be forced openly to parley with him, as with an enemy. When these two great ones had met together in the fields, and dined without any shew of friendship, *Grittius* covertly threatened to be revenged on all who should make so light of his Authority: and departing, took his *Turkish* Cap from his head, and opening it, said, *This Cap will not hold two Heads, and therefore it must be fitted to one, and so put it on again.*

Dacia

Docia deadly hating the *Vaynod*, (who long before had for his malapert Speech in a great Assembly, given him a blow with his fist) hereupon incensed *Gritus* against him, saying, Thy Honour makes a fit comparison: neither can this Province contain two equal Governours, nor thou ever enjoy thy power, except thou this day with speedy resolution, defend both *Solyman's* credit, and thy own, &c. *Gritus* the more enraged with his Speech, commended *Docia*, promising him soon to requite his good will, especially, if by some notable attempt, he would abate the Bishop's pride. It is said, *Gritus*, once charged him to take the Bishop, that he might have sent him in Chains to *Constantinople*, and bestowed the Vaynodship on *Lascus*: who because King *John* could not without danger place him a *Polonian*, Governour of so Warlike a people, but preferred this Bishop, revered and feared of them: he ever complained, that *John* had deluded him; and though he kept within the bounds of Loyalty, yet estranged from him in mind, was now become one of *Gritus* his followers.

Gritus, delivering a strong Company of Horse to *Docia*, came secretly and suddenly to the *Vaynods* Camp, having learned by his *Hungarian* Spies, that he lay in the fields in his Tent through the heat, without Watch and Ward, his Retinue being dispersed round about; so that, laying in his bed, and scarce well awaked by his Chamberlains, and the noise of *Docia*; breaking in, cut off his head as he lay: those laying near, fleeing and leaving their Horses and other things for a prey. *Docia* returning, presented the Head to *Gritus*, brought by the eare.

Lascus was present, but ignorant of the murder: to whom *Gritus* said, *Lascus*, dost thou know this shaven pate: 'tis a great mans head; but of one very ambitious, rebellious, and proud: who replied, though I loved him not, yet I thought it not so, whilest it stood on his shoulders, disallowing therein, the fact: whereupon, *Gritus*

began to repent it, saying, Though he was worthily slain, yet he had rather he had been taken. The Bishops friends, and almost all *Transilvania* rose in Arms to revenge his death, whom they loved and feared: 4000 Horse and Foot under *Stephen Malat*, being assembled in few dayes. *Gritus* perplexed, and doubting what to do, speedily got with his followers, to the strong Town *Mege*, till either the peoples rage were appeased, or he were relieved by King *John*, or the *Sanzacks* of the *Turks* frontiers. They of *Mege* seeing so many *Turks* with him, shut the Gates; yet by *Docia's* and *Batianus's* perswasion, they received him into the base Town, having retired with their substance into the higher, commanding the lower. While *Gritus* was fortifying, and sending for ayd, the people with hideous noyse, approaching, attempted to scale the Walls and Rampiers: which they doing, with more fury than discretion, were easily repulsed, and many slain. After which, by *Malat's* direction, they encamped on every side of the Town, hoping, that unprovided of Victuals, they could not long hold out: *Gritus* the while, fell sick, and the rather, not hearing of any expected ayd; for *John*, glad in mind of the distress of his Kingdoms Overseer, yet sent for fashions sake, some Troops: who not wholly ignorant thereof, purposed not to come timely for his good. The *Sanzacks* refused, envying his honour, to depart from their charge without *Solymán's* own Command: and *Lascus*, departing to procure some relief, did in this extremity, forsake him also. The Citizens in the upper Town, perceiving their Countreymens full resolution, and the *Turks* difficulties, assailed them thence also. *Gritus* offered them a masse of money, to let him passe forward into *Hungary*; but they were not to be mooved from revenge, by Gold. At last, he sent rich Jewels to the Governour of *Moldavia*, to be ready to receive him with some Troops, when he sallied out of the Town. And sallying out at the time appointed, with his Commission in
 his

his hand, missing the *Moldavian*, fell upon *Schenden*, the Bishops Kinsman, and *Maylat*, his familiar friend: who running on him with tumultuous speech, caught from his head his rich Cap, and took him, weak and not resisting: all his followers, chiefly *Turks*, being slain or taken. *Grittus* beset round, and examined in the Generals Tent, why he commanded the *Vayuod* to be slain? protested he never commanded any such thing; but all the people cryed, that he should be sacrificed to the *Vayuods* Ghost: whereupon, *Maylat* delivering him to *Schenden*, his Head was presently struck off. The Nobles and the *Vayuods* Kinsmen, dipping some part of their Garments in his blood, the longer to keep in mind the revenge. This was the shameful end of *Aloysius Grittus*, a Christian, (who was in such credit with *Solyman*) while he climbed too fast up the ill-flaved ladder of ambition.

The Executioner, found about him. Jewels, valued at 40 Millions of Duckets: ere long, *Lascus* was examined at *Buda* by *John*, upon torture, concerning *Grittus*'s Commission and purposes, and in great danger of life; but by *Sigismund* of *Poland*'s intercession, he was freed, so fleeing to *Sigismund*'s Court. *Dacia* was rent in pieces by the people.

When *Grittus* came into *Hungary*, *Solyman* undertook two great expeditions at once: one by Land, against the *Persians*, the other against the *Moors* in *Africk* by Sea, but we will first declare what his Lieutenants did against the *Moors*. *Hariadenus*, surnamed *Barbarassa* succeeding his elder Brother *Horrucius* in the Kingdom of *Algiers*, had by many Victories, so enlarged that Kingdom, that his name was become terrible both to the Christians and wild *Moors*, and his fame in the *Turkish* Court, the chief Motive of *Solyman*'s invading *Africk*. *Horrucius* and *Hariadenus* born at *Mytilene* of *Lesbos*, weary of their poor estate with their Father a renegade *Grecian*, stole a small Galliot, and by chance consorting with *Tamates*, a

most famous Pirate : *Horrucius* became a Captain under him ; and growing rich, and also strong, with Gallies and slaves taken, at last, consorting with other Pirates, over whom he commanded as an arch Pirate, sought for purchase as far as *Mauritania*. Then was *Selimes*, King of that now called *Algiers*, in Arms against his Brother *Mechemetes* his competitor, who aided by the *Numidians*, put his Brother in great doubt : who with a masse of money payd, induced *Horrucius*, and his followers, to defend him against *Mechemetes* : which he so happily performed, especially by his *Harquebusiers*, that repulsing those Savages, he set *Selimes* at peace in his Kingdom ; but *Horrucius* noting the Kings mild and simple disposition, (and that the naked Moores were no Souldiers, alwayes at variance ; and the *Numidians* divided and bare) slew him as he was bathing himself : and murdering those he thought would withstand him, also by cruelty and bounty, so wrought, that he was chosen King of *Algiers* : Shortly after, he surpris'd *Circello*, a famous City, 60 m les off, by his Souldiers in Merchants Habit ; After which, he by *Hariadennus*, troubled the *Mediterranean*, and all his Neighbors with his Gallies : and himself by Land so prevailing, that men of service resorted to him, as the chief man in those parts.

He drave the *Spaniards* out of *Bugea*, famous for great Trade, and once for a *Mahometan* School : there losing his right hand, he obtained many Victories with an Iron hand ; for he overthrew a Spanish Army under *Diego*, nigh *Algiers* : and soon after *Moncada*, landing from *Italy* (with the old Spanish Souldiers) in his Country, he forced him to Sea again : where they, by Shipwrack or driving a shoare, were slain or taken, and thrust into his Gallies at last ; and having overcome the King of *Tremisa* expulsi'ng him ; *Charls* the Emperour, stirred up the Christians and *Numidians* to ayd that his confederate ;

rate; so that *Horraccius* coming to take *Ora* and *Portus*, he was first repulsed, then quite overthrown, where most of his Army being slain or taken, he fled with a few over the Sandy Desarts, scattering much Gold to stay his enemies hasty pursuit, who, notwithstanding, overtook him, and struck off his Head, which was sent into *Spain* and carried on a Lance thorow the Sea Towns, to the great joy of the people, formerly hurt by him.

Hariadenus not inferior to his Brother, by the Soulciers general content, took the Kingdom, and began to aspire to the Empire of all that part of *Africk*: wherefore he held peace with some, and Warres with others, as best served his purpose: robbing and spoiling the Coasts of *Spain*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares* Islands, becoming famous, and fearful to his enemies: slaying *Hamet* of the *Numidians*, and chasing away *Benchades* and *Amida*, two great Princes: overcoming *Moncada* the *Spaniard* who sore wounded, hardly escaped the flight, losing divers Gallies: he also at Sea slew *Pertundus*, admiral of *Spain* with his Son, taking seven of his Gallies: sending his Ensign with part of the spoil, a present to *Solyman*; but was much more famous, with the *Turks*, when he had repulsed *Auria* from *Cercenna* and taken two great *Geno-way* Ships, coming to him with men and Ammunition, filling *Genua* with sorrow.

Solyman grieved with his losse in *Peloponessus*, by *Auria*, chiefly by *Abraham*, chief Bassae's Counsel, sent him *Sinas* an Embassador to *Algiers*: offering him the greatest honours, and to make him his Admiral, if he would forthwith repair to *Constantinople*.

Barbarussa was exceeding glad hereof: conceiving no small hope of the Monarchy of *Africk*, if coming to *Solyman* he might shew him the State of *Africk*, and the Christians power with their continual discord:

Wherefore committing his Son and Kingdom to two of his faithful kinsmen's Government: with 40 of his Warlike Galley's, he set forward with *Sinas*, taking and burning by the way (after a cruel fight) a Fleet of *Genowayes* bound for *Sicily*: then landing by night in the Isle *Elba*, he surprized *Chium* a rich City, and carrying away their wealth, and them into Captivity, he arrived at *Constantinople* in 1533. joyfully received, if but for the boyes and maidens richly apparelled, Eunuchs, Lions, Leopards of *Lybia*, which he gave *Solyman*; but after some dayes discourse with the Bassaes of *Africks* affairs, he (envy soon over-taking him) was seldomer sent for, and hardly admitted into their company, though offering himself: many saying, the *Ottoman* Kings used not to prefer Pirates to the Admirallship: and that there wanted not, nor ever would men Vertuous and valiant in the *Turks* Court, &c. Whereas he, against all Right, had intruded into another's Kingdom, and persecuted *Mahometane* Princes, being of no Religion himself, &c. *Abraham* was then gone into *Comagena*: After long suit, *Solyman* answered *Barbarussa* by 2 Bassaes, that all concerning him should be referred to *Abraham* chief-Bassa, by whose counsel he was chiefly sent for, wherefore he must repair to him in *Syria*. Though this tended to his disgrace; yet in hope, by sufferance, to obtain another Kingdom, he passed thorow *Asia* the less (by land) coming over Mount *Amanus* (covered with Winters deep snow) to *Aleppo*, where *Abraham* honourably receiving and largely hearing him, wrote to *Solyman*, wishing him to place him as a 4th. Bassa of his Council; besides his deeming him the most fit to command his Power at Sea: who returning with this effectual commendation, the face of the Court was suddenly changed upon him. Who was now in all mens mouths, but *Barbarussa*. He had brought with him *Rosceies* (*Muleasses*, King of *Tunissel-* der brother) whom he wrongfully exiling, he had lived

at *Algiers*; but now came to *Barbarussa* to crave aid of *Solyman*. Him he set out to the Bassaes as a most fit instrument for subduing the Kingdom of *Tunis*, as more affected by the people, than *Muleasses* the Usurper. After long consultation with the Bassaes about *Africks* invasion, he, admitted to *Solyman's* presence, perswaded him in a Speech from divers motives, to that War: and saying, by the way as he returned, he would to use the matter, that the Christians also should have good cause to bewail their calamities: and, if he happened to meet with *Auria*, he should have smal cause to rejoyce of the mischief he had done; for him alone he challenged to persecute as his peculiar enemy, both for the harms received, and for the despight he had at his Fame, who taken out of the way, the Seas should be open only to *Solyman's* Fleet: And believe me, said he, he that can command the Seas, shall easily subdue the Kingdoms by Land. *Solyman* using well to consider, and afterwards to resolve, commending *Barbarussa's* forwardness, then brake up the Council. Ere longa Decree was made, that he should be joyned a 4th Bassa in Council, and made great Admiral, &c. Which proclaimed, *Solyman* himself delivered him a Scepter and Sword, willing him by worthy deeds to perform his promise: after which *Ajax* and *Cassimes* the Bassaes, brought him with exceeding pomp to the Navy; all Tokens of his new Honour being carried before him; and having towards the Sea-ward, 800000 Duc-kats out of the Treasury, with 800 janizaries: Not long after he departed out of *Hellespont* with 80 Gallies and certain Gallions towards *Italy*, leaving *Amurathes* with 12 Gallies to transport *Solyman* and his Army over into *Asia*, for *Persia*: which done, he over-took him at *Me-thone*, who suddenly passing the strait betwixt *Italy* and *Sicily*, much frighted both Countries: but passing by the Bay of *Hippona*; he set upon the Town of *Lucidius* (of old *Tempsa*: which though standing on a Rock with rea-sonable

sonable walls, it was taken by the Turks violence, with the more hurt to the Inhabitants, because the Mayor had locked up the gates on the other side to keep them from flight. Thence with spoil and many prisoners he went to *Citbarium*, where (he heard) a Fleet was building: this forsaken Town for fear, he ransack'd and burnt, firing 7 Gallies unfinished, but being come in sight of *Naples*: all (along the coast) were so terrified, that 'twas thought, if he had landed, and gone to *Naples*, it would have been abandoned; but coming to *Procita*, he took and rifled it, and came to *Spelunca*, the hithermost part of that Kingdom: which the dismayed Townsmen yielded without resistance, he there taking 1200 prisoner. *Pelegrius* a chief man there, fled into the Castle: whom *Barbarussa* promised to let go, if presently yielding: if not, to make him repent it with his own and the Town's utter destruction: who forthwith coming out and falling at his feet, he gave him his liberty, restoring him his Wife, Son and Niece, prisoners: whom he received with many tears from their eyes for joy.

The same night 2000 of those Turks came to *Fundi*, 10 miles off, thought to be conducted by some *Italians*, who through Turkish slavery, had turn'd *Mahometans*. They came so suddenly, that *Gonzaga*, *Italie's* Parragon, could scarce take Horse half-naked, and escape. *Barbarussa* afterwards, seeming not to deny, that for her beauty and perfection, he exceedingly desired her as a present for *Solyman*: slaying or taking most of the Citizens, they returned with the Cities spoil. Others came to *Tarracina*, all the Inhabitants being fled into the Mountains, except some sick and aged, whom they slew, spoiling the Temples. It was thought, if *Barbarussa* had come but to *Ostia*, they of *Rome* had generally forsaken the City; but watering at *Pontia*, he arrived in *Africk*, before 'twas thought he was departed from *Italie's* coast; For to deceive *Mulasses*, he gave out, he would burn and spoil Christi-

an Countries in revenge of *Auria's* harm done. The *Venetians* also then preparing a great Fleet : did somewhat lessen his fear ; but that which chiefly made him secure, was his hearing by especials, that *Roscetes* his Brother, was safely kept at *Constantinople*, as a prisoner at large ; for he knew his State could not be more endangered, than by producing the Competitor of his Kingdom. This *Muleasses* was descended of the Kings of *Tunis* (who had ruled that great Kingdom from *Tripolis* to *Bagia*, nigh 800 miles, and into the Main as far as Mount *Atlas* 954 years : who being appointed by his Father *Mahometes*, his Successour, through his mother *Lentigessia's* importunity (*Maimo* the eldest son being in durance for his hasty aspiring) was thought to shorten his Fathers old years : presently after murdering *Maimo*, executing 17 of his other Brethren, making three blind with a hot Iron : *Roscetes* and *Abdemelech* elcaping, fled to *Morhabitus* a great Numidian Prince : where seeking by practice and poyson to take them away, at last he offered a great sum for them ; which money the Numidian received ; yet suffered them (as if against his will) to flee to another Prince, *Bentieses* ; where *Muleasses* practising as before, they fled (at last) to the City *Biscaris*, far into the main. Where *Abdemelech* (as one weary) became a *Mahometane* Monk ; but *Roscetes* found such favour with *Abdalla*, the Prince of *Biscaris*, that he gave him his Daughter to Wife, and fearing *Muleasses's* practices, he seldom suffered him to eat any meat, but what himself or his Wife before tasted of. *Muleasses* murdered divers of his Brothers children also : torturing to death the *Maniset* and *Mesuar*, men of greatest Authority, and his chief Friends in his aspiring the Kingdom ; fearing their greatness, or grieving at their life to whom he was so much beholden : and by his mothers instigation, causing divers of his Fathers Wives and Concubines to be murdered, inveighing against him as effeminate, who with exceeding charges had maintained so many,

many, by whom he begot so many Competitors, that he had a laborious work to destroy to great a brood. *Roscetes* aided by his Father in law and other Princes (to whom *Muleasses* was become odious) with a great Army, nigh *Tunis*, in a sharp conflict, overthrew his Brothers Army, forcing *Dorax* the General (with those escaping) to flee to *Tunis* : and presenting his Army before the City, hoping, that the Citizens would let him in: and laying there 20 dayes, to alienate them the more from *Muleasses*, he burnt and destroyed all the Olive and fruit-trees from the ruines of Old *Carthage*, to the Walls of *Tunis*, a heavy Spectacle to the Citizens; but *Muleasses* promising every man full recompence for all harm, and strongly possessing *Tunis* by his Souldiers, they would not or could not revolt : The *Numidian* Princes, weary (according to that Nation's levity) began to shrink home, periwading *Roscetes* to provide for himself in time : Wherefore he fled to *Barbarussa*, honourably there remaining till by his perswasion he went with him to *Constantinople*, where he was detained : though *Barbarussa* gave out in policy, he was in his Fleet, and by *Solyman* to be restored to his Fathers Kingdom. He landing at *Biserta* a famous Port of that Kingdom, the Townsmen weary of *Muleasses's* Government, hearing of *Roscetes's* name, drave out their Governor, receiving in the Turks (for he had sent *Roscetes's* familiar friends ashoar) saying, he was there, but could not come a-shoar, being Seasick, and having an Ague; *Barbarussa* now sailing on, came before *Gulletta*-Castle (in *Tunis-Bay*) commanding all Sea-passage unto *Tunis*: where, in Friendship, mutually discharging their Ordinance, and the Castle required for *Roscetes* : they said, he that ruled in *Tunis* should alway command it. *Roscetes's* supposed coming, and the great Fleet discovered, set all the City in an uproar, both for the love of *Roscetes*, and the hatred of *Muleasses* : which he was not ignorant of, who also had made them no recompence for their goodly

Houles

Houses and Gardens, formerly destroyed by *Roscetes*: wherefore coming out of the Castle, and periwading them to play the men, promising them what he was never able to perform, they all departed: yet some (in a colour) and *Abdabar* the *Mesuar* (next to the King) periwaded him to flee, for all said, the Turks were at hand: Wherefore *Muleasses* fled in such haste, that he left behind him his Treasure and Jewels, which his enemies afterwards had: *Fetuches*, Captain of the Castle, who with *Abazes* (a great man) first revolted, now brought forth *Roscetes*'s Wife and children (long imprisoned by *Muleasses*) placing the Royal Seat: and *Abazes* advertised *Barbarussa* of *Muleasses*'s departure, and with what longing *Roscetes* was expected, sending a goodly *Barbarian* Horse richly furnished, with others for his chief Captains. *Barbarussa* coming to the City with 5000 Turks, was joyfully received; but *Roscetes* being not descried; and hearing onely *Solyman*'s and *Barbarussa*'s names in the Turks acclamations, they distrusted, they had received the Turkish Government, which they utterly detested. *Roscetes*'s Friends also brought by *Barbarussa* to delude the people, now grieving, feared not to tell their Friends as they went, that *Roscetes* was left in bonds at *Constantinople*. Whereupon, they most furiously assailed the Turks, not yet got all into the Castle. *Abdabar* was the chief Leader, who now sought by all means to expulse the Turks and recall *Muleasses*, crying to the people aloud as he stood on high: We are (worthy Citizens) most villanously betrayed, for *Roscetes* whom we expected for our lawful King, laments his misery in chains; and except we presently, do valiantly fight for our liberty, we shall ever serve as slaves to these Forraign and merciless Pirates: I my self will be your Leader, &c.

Many Turks were slain before aware: the Citizens being numerous enough, but not so well armed or conducted; yet they swarmed up one of the east est Bulwarks of the

the Castle, where the Turks had set upon an Ensign; and with Darts and Arrows made them retire into a stronger place, whence with their Artillery and small shot, they wonderously slaughtered the naked *Moors*; *Barbarussa* though alway acquainted with desperate dangers; yet being suddenly shut upon in an unknown place, and Victuals but for three dayes, was not a little troubled; which his care was much diminished, by the enemies disorder'd fury, and the known valour of his Souldiers: chiefly, seeing them fight still as full of hope, and the *Moors* as half-dismayed, ready to retire; yet the double assault was twice as desperately renewed as at first, by *Muleasses* and *Dorax* coming in: in which danger, *Halis* a runagate Spaniard, said to *Barbarussa*: that if he would save his Honour, and hold that Fort, they must salley out upon those which had never seen a set-battel, &c. Which motion generally approved of, *Barbarussa* commanded *Halis* with other Captains, to salley out at once at two Ports, so that a multitude of *Moors* were soon slain: *Abdabar* the *Mesnar* being killed with a bullet, the assault being then given over: and in the streets some hours, was fought a most bloody Battel: at last the Citizens overcome, took refuge of their Houses: and wearied *Halis* with the rest, returning with Victory: 3000 Citizens were said to be slain and 9000 hurt: *Muleasses* hardly escaping his enemy's hands, by *Dorax* his Uncle's help, fled with him over *Bagrada* River, and came to *Constantina*, then part of *Dorax's* Dominion: and there protected till the coming of *Charls* the Emperour. The ensuing, both Citizens and Turks stood upon their strongest guard. And next day the Citizens craved pardon, excusing their rash attempt, by the name of Loyalty, offering faithfully to submit: Whereupon *Barbarussa* granted a general peace, by Oath confirmed on both sides: the Citizens being bound to obey *Solymán*, and *Barbarussa* as his chief Lievtenant. All things set in order; he won

to him by gifts and rewards, the fickle and needy *Nu-
midian* Princes: then sending an Eunuch and *Halis*, to
take in the other Cities of *Tunis*, they were peaceably
received, except at *Caruenna*, which holding out a while,
received them also for fear. But let us return to the
Wars at the same time undertaken (by *Solyman* in per-
son) in *Persia*, perswaded thereto by *Abraham* the great
Rissa: who being born in a Village of *Epirus*, and taken
from his Christian Parents by Turkish Tribute-gatherers;
being a boy, served *Scander-Bassa* in *Selimus* his time, and
there instructed in *Mahometanism*; but giving himself to
all manner of curiosity, he was commended by his Mi-
stres to her Husband, as a fit Page to attemper his way-
ward and melancholly disposition: wherein he excelling,
he gave him as a rare gift to *Solyman*, with whom he was
brought up as his companion and play-fellow by old *Ba-
ia-zet*: where he so framed himself to young *Solyman's*
disposition, that afterwards, he wanted nothing of the Ma-
jesty of an Emperour, but the Name only; and common-
ly called the Great Commander of all *Solymans* Forces:
Also he partaked of *Solymans* secret Delights, that if he
were present, all were well, if away, nothing pleased;
that 'twas commonly said, the soul of *Solyman* lived in
Abraham, whereat, many great Courtiers repined:
chiefly *Solymans* mother, and fair *Roxalana* his dearest
Concubine. This great Commander, sought many times
in his discourses with *Solyman*, to perswade him to di-
vert his Forces from the Christians, over whom he had
sufficiently triumphed: and to turn them upon the *Per-
sians* by whom he was daily injured, and who were the
wicked and irreligious impugners of the Divine Precepts
of *Mahomet*: also so famous in ancient time for their
Martial Prowesse: that the so oft vanquishing them by
Alexander, gave unto him the name of Great; therefore
he said, 'twas not so much to have destroyed the *Mamr-
lukes* (by condition-slaves) as to subdue them. Allleadg-
ing

ing what a strong and Warlike people the *Germans* were : and that it were not good to provoke *Charls* the Empe-
 rour (of all Christian Princes the mightiest, &c.) *Soly-*
man at length beginning to yield to his persuasions : *A-*
brahim (in himself) greatly rejoyced, for many thought
 he was only in shew a *Turk*, and in heart a Christian :
 and the rather, because he very much favoured and pro-
 tected the Christian Merchants, and furthered (by all
 means) the Leagues of Christian Princes with *Solyman* :
 labouring alwayes to turn his Forces from them upon the
Persians : insinuating into *Solyman's* acquaintance one
Mulcarabe of *Damasco*, famous at *Constantinople* for ho-
 lineffe and the Art of Magick ; who prophesied to him
 all happineffe in so religious a War, and so much (as he
 said) pleasing to God. *Ulemas* also a noble *Persian*, who
 (marrying King *Tamasses's* Sister) was revolted from him
 to *Solyman*) fearing to be call'd to account for extortion
 from the Countries where he governed) furthered *Abra-*
hams purpose : discovering to *Solyman* the power, and
 State of the *Persian* Kingdom : and plotting the easiest
 waies for conquering it ; he offered also to do his utmost.
 So *Solyman* raising a mighty Army, commanded them to
 be ready at *Nice* in *Bythinia* at a certain day : His mother
 and *Roxalana* mightily impugned it as that which whol-
 ly proceeded from the *Bassa* ; but his credit was so strong,
 that all their devices and prayers were (by *Solyman*) re-
 jected, and his Counsel regarded : who (with *Ulemas*)
 was sent before him into *Syria* with a strong Army at
 Spring, to invade the *Persian* : wintering at *Aleppo*. The
 Spring approaching, *Abraham* sent *Ulemas* before with
 the light-Horsmen into *Mesopotamia* as his guide, fol-
 lowing himself not far behind, and so came to *Tauris* un-
 resisted, great and rich, but unvalled and of no strength.
 The *Persian* King, *Tamas*, was then absent, warring with
Kezien-Bassa, a Prince of the *Corasine Hircanians* ; so
 that the Citizens presently yielded. *Tamas* hearing here-
 of,

of, drew nigh with his power, expecting to take the Turks at some advantage, as being too weak for a plain Battel: which the *Bassa* perceiving, speedily advettised *Solyman* of *Tunis* being taken, and the enemies purpose; and speedily to repair with his Army thither. He was come far on his way, on the right hand from *Nice* to *Iconium*, and by *Cesarea* to *Malathia*, where is the notable passage over *Euphrates*, bursting out by the Valleys of *Antitaurum*, whence *Mesopotamia's* plains (then part of the *Persian* Kingdom) begin to open; through which he peaceably marched, paying for what ever he took, coming in 54 dayes from *Nice* to *Coimini Armenia*, the greater. But hearing such news, asore said, he soon after came to *Tauris*. *Tamas*, yet expecting the *Georgian* Light-horse men, and hearing with what a multitude *Solyman* was coming, that he might cut off his spent, wanting, and diseated people, by advantages, retired into *Sultania*, about 6 dayes journey from *Tauris*: which *Solyman* knowing, departed thence without doing hurt, following after *Tamas*, to joyn Battel, if possible, leaving behinde him for haste, many of his Carriages and much baggage with 500 *Janizaries* and 3 *Zanzacks* with their Companies, near the City *Sultania*, ruined by *Tamerlane*, except the Temples. *Solyman* encamped many dayes, expecting that *Tamas* would come out of the Mountains and give him Battel; but he comparing his own strength with his enemies, so retired, that *Solyman* could not learn what was become of him. And whilst he lay in those plain fields, such a horrid tempest (never before seen in the beginning of *September*) fell from the circumjacent Mountains (whose tops are alway covered with deep snow) with such abundance of rain, so eagerly freezing as it fell, that the depth of *Winter* seemed suddenly to be come; for the raging winds so swept the snow from the tops of those high Mountains, that the Turks lay, as buried alive therein; most of their Tents being overthrown: whereina

huge number of sick Souldiers, and others following the Camp perished : Others losing the use of hands and feet for ever, through benumbing : most of their beasts for carriage, chiefly Camels, being frozen to death. Yea, *Solymán* was endangered in his Tent ; Neither was there any remedy by reason of the night's great darknesse, most of their fires being put out by the storm : a thing accounted by them ominous ; They feared also the sudden coming of the enemy, till the Sun next morning breaking out, revived many ready to dye for cold, and discovered the fields clear of enemies : Many Turks vainly thought it was brought on them by the *Persian* Magician's Inchantments.

Solymán troubled hereat, after some refreshment of his men, took his way into *Assyria*. *Ulemas* perswading him, chiefly from hopes of taking *Babylon*, its Governour being his friend ; But *Mahometes* was not to be won to betray the City. Wherefore *Solymán* resolving to take it by force : *Mahometes* hearing of their coming, (who thought they would not come so far) being neither provided nor beloved, fled out of the City : *Solymán* being soon received by the *Babylonians*, It's called *Bagdat* (not far from old *Babylon*, out of whose ruines it rose) standing on the River *Tygris* : *Solymán* (according to the old manner) received of that Caliph (the chief Mahometane Priest) and greatly revered ; the Ensigns and Ornaments of the *Assyrian* Kings, bountifully winning the peoples hearts, and spending the Winter there. Other Cities (*Babylon* being taken unresisted) yielded themselves ; Yea, Ambassadors came to him as far as *Ormus* City, famous for great Traffique, out of *India* suing for peace. Thus *Babylon*, with *Assyria* and *Mesopotamia*, became Turkish Provinces in 1534. *Solymán* after Winter past, placed a Beglerbey, that is, a Lord of Lords : and under him divers *Sanzacks* or Governours for Government : causing his Treasurer for the Wars there to be hanged, and confiscating

fiscating all his goods, for his unfaithful dealing:

Solyman being gone to *Babylon*, *Tamas* returned to *Tauris*: *Solyman's* men, there left, fleeing away in such haste, that all in their custody was left for a prey.

Solyman's Army being much encreased by the coming of the great *Bassas* of *Caire* and *Syria* with the *Sanzacks* of *Alexandria*, *Judea* and *Comagena*, departed, by *Abraham* and *Ulemas's* perwasion, towards *Tauris*; but *Tamas* (too weak to give battel) fled from the City into the *Hircanian* Mountains (destroying all as he went) and carrying away the Inhabitants: Wherefore he sent *Ulemas* with all his choyse Horsemen, to overtake and fight him if possible: but after 2 or 3 dayes, still finding the Countrey neither yielding forrage nor relief, and no hope of overtaking him, he in time retired back to *Solyman*, declaring how it was: who fretting that *Tamas* was not to be drawn to battel, he marched to *Tauris*, sparing the submitting Citizens lives, but giving the City for a prey to his Souldiers: They ransacking every corner, abused the people with all manner of insolence; *Solyman* razing *Tamas's* most stately Pallace, with the Nobles sumptuous Houses, and carrying away the best Citizens, and beautifullest of all sorts, Captives; and so returning again towards *Mesopotamia*, destroying all as he went, and killing the very Cattel. He was scarce past *Coim*, and the *Caldean* fields: but some *Persian* troops were in his rear, taking some baggage, and slaying divers sick and stragling Souldiers, troubling his whole Army with skirmishes: Besides, it was noysed, that *Tamas* was coming with a great power of Horsemen, and would be at their backs before they could get out of *Armenia*; wherefore he appointed the *Bassas* of *Caire* and *Syria*, with *Ulemas*, to follow him in the rear with 18000 good Souldiers: so keeping on till he came to *Amida* (now *Caraemida*) in *Mesopotamia*. *Tamas* the while, return'd to *Tauris* with a mighty Army, hoping to surprize his enemy; but finding him gone, and the miserable desolation made, he

(with indignation) resolved to pursue him: going as far as *Corm*, where, hearing he was hardly to be overtaken, and his Noble Gentlemen being unwilling in their heavy Armor, to undertake such a pursuit, &c. *Tamas* knowing their reasons were good, thought it best to stay there, till *Delimenthes* a Noble man, alway most forward, offered with 5000 choise Horfmen, to overtake some part of the Turks Army, and do some good service: which *Tamas* accepting of, greatly commending him, and promising reward, sent him (in haste) away; who used such expedition in the nearest way, that he overtook those 18000 at *Bethlis* a famous Town, in a pleasant Valley, bordering on *Mesopotamia*, with a Garrison'd Cattle. The *Bassaes* with *Ulemas* (*Solyman* being come safe to *Amida*) lay secure in that Valley, to refresh their wearied Souldiers: which *Delimenthes* (being within a dayes journey of *Bethlis*) by diligent espials, understood, and determining to assail their Camp the night following; he secretly sent to the Captain of the Cattle, to salley out upon sign given upon that side of the Turks Camp; which his design was much furthered by the night's darknesse, and the abundance of rain then falling. The *Persians* did such speedy execution amongst the sleepy Turks, that the *Bassaes* & *Ulemas* hardly escaped, they being slain by thousands, few escaping the sword. And of 5 *Sanzacks*, 3 were slain, & one taken: 800 *Janizaries* (being forsaken) layed down their weapons, and yielded on *Delimenthes's* his word. The Mountain-people also joyning to the *Persians*, revenged their wrongs done them after *Aladules's* death, who had the baggage of the Camp. The Turks account that slaughter among their greatest loss: in memorial whereof, the *Persians* kept that day, *Octob. 13.* as a solemn Holiday, many years: *Delimenthes* returning from the slaughter, and loaded with spoils, was joyfully received, and honourably rewarded.

This overthrow so daunted *Solyman*, that he resolved to return, and no more to prosecute that unfortunate War: whose ill event, his mother (he said) more truly presaged, than

than the cold Prophet *Mulcarabe*; being secretly offended with *Abraham Bassa*. At *Iconium*, *Barbarussa* and *Sinan Bassa*, surnamed the Jew, met him by land, to shew joy for his Conquest of *Mesopotamia* and *Affyria*, and to excuse themselves for the losse of *Tunis* Kingdom, which was, before the end of the *Persian* war, wrung from *Barbarussa*, and restored to *Muleasses*. They declaring that whole war, shewed, there wanted neither valour, nor direction, but only fortune. *Solyman* accepted their excuse, taking them up prostrate at his feet, commending them, &c. bidding them be of good cheer, saying, he would find occasion for them, to recompence that disgrace, &c. Coming to *Bosphorus-strait*, *Abraham* had (in sign of triumph) caused along the shoar, *Persian*-silk to be laid, for him to tread upon as he went aboard the Galley; whence he passed over with triumph to *Constantinople*. Envy soon discovering (in Court) *Solymans* changed countenance on *Abraham*, some now sought by all secret means to work his confusion, especially *Solyman's* mother: and *Roxalana*, who perceived her design of preferring her own son *Bajazet* to the Empire after *Solymans* death, was much crossed by him, who most sought for *Mustapha's* preferment, the eldest son by another woman, but that which most impaired his credit with *Solyman*, was a report raised, that he, in heart a Christian, did in all things favour such, and therefore perswaded *Solyman* to undertake the *Persian* war: and to encrease the suspicion, that he about that time, caused one *Nicholas a Venetian Merchant* (who came to him oft, while at *Babylon*, with secret Letters, &c. not unsuspected) to be murdered in the night, and cast into the sea, because he should not discover that which might hurt him. *Abraham* being bid to a supper about *March 14*. it's laid, after supper *Solyman* fell into a great rage with him, for mis-governing the State, turning his Treasures to his own private, and having traiterous intelligence with Christian Princes: sternly shewing him for proof his own intercepted Letters, often, furiously asking him, if he knew

not that hand and seal: all which he confessed, craving pardon at his feet; yet the same night, as he was sum-
 mering on a Pallate in the Court through heaviness, an
 Eunuch cut his throat with a crooked knife, which *Solyman* himself delivered him. He was murdered sleep-
 ing, because *Solyman* had sworn to him, he would never
 kill him whilst he lived: the Musty saying, he might kill
 him sleeping, being then accounted as dead, &c. It is re-
 ported, *Solyman* looking on his dead body, bitterly cur-
 sed it, causing it to be cast into the sea with a great weight
 tied on it. His abundance of wealth being next day
 seized on, and a small part appointed for his Wife; the
 vulgar devising on him intamous songs and slanderous re-
 ports as of a Traytour, defacing with stones and mire,
 the Trophies of the *Hungarian* Victory: which he had
 most statelily erected before his sumptuous House. He
 was murdered, *March 15, 1536,*

It was commonly reported, and justly feared that *Bar-
 barussa* would the next Summer, with all his Forces in-
 vade *Sicily*, *Italies* Garnerie; and then attempt the Con-
 quest of the Kingdom of *Naples*: To repress which,
 and for safety of the Christian's Frontiers (much subject
 to the Rapines of Turkish Pirates) *Charls* the Emperour
 whilst *Solyman* was busied yet in the *Persian* wars, resolv'd
 in person with a puissant Army to passe into *Africk*, and
 to dispossesse the Pirate of his new-got Kingdom of *Tu-
 nis*. Wherefore he levying 8000 foot and 7000 Horse
 in *Spain*, came to *Barcelona* before expectation: Among
 many Nobles, there was chiefly *Ferdinand* Duke of *Al-
 ba*, whose forwardnesse, with desire to revenge his Fa-
 ther *Garcias's* death, slain by the *Moors* at *Girapolis*,
 made his Counrey-men hope he would prove a worthy
 Chieftain, as he did.

Auria the while, alone knowing the Emperours full
 purpose, had with speed rigged up a great Fleet of Ships
 and Gallies very well furnished, joyning also 17 Gallies,
 and 3 Galleasses of his own, and imbarquing therein the

Flower of *Genoa* and *Liguria* (they cheerfully offering themselves) and coming to *Barcelona*: whither came also *Lewis*, the King of *Portugal's* Brother (whose sister *Charls* had married) with 25 Caravels (ships used in their *Indian Voyages*) one being a huge Galleon, wherein were 2000 *Portugals*, besides Mariners: also 60 sayl of tall Ships out of the Low-countries, with a number of condemned men, spared to serve in the Gallies. Also Pope *Paul* the 3d. sent 10 Gallies under *Sursinus*: and the Master of *Malta* sent his Fleet also. Then did *Davalus Vastius* the Emperour's Land-General, take up 5000 new Souldiers in *Italy*, led by the Count of *Sarno*, and other famous Captains. The old Spanish Garrisons in *Lombardie* were there left under *Leva*, though the Emperour's best Commander, he not daring so well to trust the *French* and *Swissers*, who were so near that Countrey. Then also came old *Eberstern* to *Vastius*, with 8000 *Germans*, to *Genoa*; divers serving voluntarily of their own charges. With these and the *Italians*, *Vastius* imbarquing at *Portus Veneris* in *Liguria*, had perswaded them patiently to endure the Sea, and to comfort themselves with the hope of Victory in *Africa* &c. So coming to *Naples* the Viceroy and divers Nobles had of their own charges built or furnished, some one Galley, some more, for that service, accounted sacred: both the old Souldiers and lusty youths of that Kingdom, won by *Vastius's* courtesie, most cheerfully offering themselves; but some mutinous Souldiers found fault with their wages and (weary of the Sea) fearing dangers in so long a Voyage, perswaded the multitude to run away: the Authors of which mutiny, *Vastius* thrust into sacks, and cast into the sea, in their sight. So from *Naples* he came to *Palermo* in *Sicily*. The Emperour also came from *Barcelona* to *Mago* port in *Minorca* Isle, thence to *Caralis* in *Sardinia*, whither *Vastius* was a little before come. *Charls* (ere long) passed with a Westerly wind

Into the Port *Utica* or *Farina* in *Africk*: in entring whereof the Emperours Galley struck on the sand sticking fast (which troubled him the more, seeing his Father *Philip* was so like to be cast away on *Englands* coast, sayling out of the Low-countries into *Spain*) yet by *Aurias's* direction, they quickly got off, to all their great joy; So departing from *Utica*, he doubled the Promontorie of *Carthage*, anchoring before *Aquaria* or the Water-Castle, so called of a Well beneath it.

The *Moors*, who from Hills and Watch-Towers had viewed the Fleet and its course, advertised *Barbarussa*, that the Christians were coming against him with an innumerable Fleet, for they were almost seven hundred sayl, 82 being great Gallies: but he was most troubled, hearing often, that the most mighty Christian Emperour was personally there with such a world of people, that *Italy* and *Spain* seemed to be left bare of able men: which, certain *Mahometane* slaves, swimming ashore in the night, reported; for the proud Turks, never thought the Emperour would have so adventured, especially in an unknown, barren, and scorching Countrey, &c, where-in he was confirmed by *Presenda* a German, who was a prisoner (at large) in *Tunis*: of whom *Barbarussa* feeding him with hope of liberty, if he would declare, had learned many things: but now in his rage, he charging him bitterly, that he had perfidiously told him lies for truth concerning the Emperour, commanded him to be executed.

Then forthwith casting about how to withstand his puissant enemy: he first of all calling to Council his Sea-Captains, in whom he most confided; shewed them that they as valiant men, and acquainted with dangers, were not to doubt of the Victory, since he saw it as good as already gotten; having before for the same reasons perswaded himself, that if *Charls* had not been half mad, he would not have undertaken so desperate and doubtful

doubtful a Warre : and encouraging them in a short speech, most earnestly required this one thing, that they should most valiantly defend the strong Castle of *Gulitta*, as the most assured defence both of the City & the whole Kingdom, and especially their Navy, which lay there in safe harbour, &c.

They all answered, they would most chearfully perform what ever he pleased to command; nor to do any thing unbecoming most valiant men.

Gulitta Castle stands in the bottom of *Carthage-Bay*, on a point of Land, where the Sea on the side by a narrow strait, runneth into *Tunis-Lake*; but now the Castle is parted on the West side also by the Sea, begun by *Barbarussa*, but perfected by others, commanding both sides: He now put into it strongly fortified, *Sinan* of *Smyna*, a Jew, of greatest account, *Haidinus* for his fury surnamed *Caccia Diabolo*, *Salec* of *Ionis*, *Tabacches* of *Laodicea*, and *Giaffer* a Captain of the *Janizaries*; most expert and resolute Captains. The Emperour commanded his men to be landed with all speed, which was so done, that the *Moores* terrified with their cry, and not able to abide their shot, were beaten from shore, suffering them to land quietly: first the *Spanish*, then the *Italians*, and last the *Germanes* whom *Vastius* caused presently to encamp, strictly charging none to straggle, till the Horse and Ordnance were landed: the Emperour chearfully landing also. *Vastius* the while, sent out some to view the neer places, and seek out the Cisterns and Fountains of waters, once serving *Carthage*; with whom, the *Moores* (chiefly, the swift, subtle, and painful *Numidian* Horsemen) oft skirmished: and though but naked, yet on all advantages, furiously assailed them with Arrows and Darts unawares, and overloaded with Armour, sparing none that fell into their hands: two of whom, were *Spinnula*, a *Ligurian* Captain, and Noble *Carcestus*, slain by *Vastius's* side; as they viewed; notwithstanding, *Charls* himself would needs

needs with a small Troop, view the places, even in sight of the *Numidians*, every where pricking up and down, though he was often perswaded not to expose himself to endanger his person and the common safety.

Vastius brought the Army nigh the Castle, casting up a rolling trench as he came to defend his men: which was done by all sorts, yea many Captains set to their hands; for the Emperour was a beholder, and chearful commender of labour and forwardness, and the busie enemy ever ready to take advantage, oft sallying out and defying them, even at their very Trenches. When all Commanders were to be appointed to their severall charges, the Count of *Sarue*, requested *Vastius* to have the Mount neere the Castle, a place of most danger, but of greatest honour: whereat the *Spaniards* much repined, he set up his rich Tent on the top of the Mount, in the enemy's sight, there laying with his *Italians*. Ere long, *Salec* with some Companies, sallied forth upon that Mount, as if he would have assailed it, raising a great Alarm; yet after Vollicies of shot on both sides, he retired, as if contrained: whereupon the Count bitterly in rage, reproving some Captains not so forward to pursue them; ran furiously down, the rest for shame following him, slaying divers enemies.

Salec now turning about, said to his Souldiers, The wished advantage is now offered, &c. wherefore, shew your selves valiant, not letting one of these proud fresh-water Souldiers, escape alive or unwounded; which said, they making a stand, so hardly charged the *Italians*, that they fled. The Count fighting valiantly with his Kinsman, was slain, with many others, and others slain in flight: the *Turks* entring so far into the Trenches, that they carried away the riches of the Count's Tent: No *Spaniard* once stirring out of their places to help the *Italians*. His Head and right hand *Salec* sent to *Barbarossa*.

Vastius

Vastius comforted the grieved *Italians*, imputing that losse onely to the Count's rashness, for which he had worthily payd the price; but he sharply reprov'd the *Spaniards*, as merciless men, &c.

The *Turks* by often great shot, shewed joy for this Victory; but *Tabacches*, soon after, sallying out in day-dawning, got to the top of the *Spaniards* Trenches, before they were aware, slaying some sleeping, some idly sitting, others arming themselves: who with their sudden cry, made the rest which lay near, to flee out of their Trenches: where the *Turks* taking their trash, slaying and wounding many with *Mendosa* a Captain, carried away *Sarmentus*'s Ensign, on the top of the Trench. The Alarm caused the Emperour to come running in his Armour, sharply reprov'ing them who forsook the place, and greatly offended with those who kept such negligent watch, against such an enemy.

This disgrace of the old *Spaniards*, well comforted the *Italians*: The tumult appeald, *Vastius* calling their chief Captains into his Tent, said, He was sory and ashamed to say it, They who elsewhere alwayes valiant, were grown wholly out of order, and heartless, &c. the *Italians* worthily laughing at their negligence, who yesterday smiled at their unskilful forwardness. Wherefore he exhorted and straightly commanded them, speedily to prepare their Minds and Weapons for atchieving some new honour, &c. They all answered, they would so behave themselves, that he should not desire greater courage, &c. in men desirous of honour and commendation.

'Twas not long, but *Giaffer* of exceeding courage and strength, issued forth with *Janizaries* and *Moorish* Archers about noon, assailing the utmost Trenches, hoping in that broyling heat, to find them unprepared. The *Spaniards* then kept such negligent Watch, that they discharged their shot and Arrows on them, from the rampiers
top,

top, before they were well aware; but the Drum striking up, some Harquebusiers brake out in two places at once, as *Vashti* had commanded, seconding them with Halbardiers, keeping his Squadrons to rescue his Harquebusiers, if they were forced to retire.

The Skirmish was valiantly maintained on both sides, till *Giaffer* desperately fighting among the foremost *Janizaries*, was slain with two Bullets at once; for whose body, the *Janizaries* most cruelly fought, many being slain on both sides, upon the carcase: at length, being forced to flee, they were so fiercely followed, that they of *Gulletta*, shut out almost a fourth part of their own men, lest the Christians should enter with them.

Abila, an Ensign-bearer, advanced his Ensign to the top of a Rampier, and was slain; but his Ensign was saved by a Souldier. Upon their retreat, they lost most; for the *Turks* discharged their shot on them very fast, which they could not before for their own men. This abated the *Turks* pride, and gave hope, the Castle would be gained without great losse; perceiving being nigh it, 'twas not so strong as they supposed.

The Emperour after few dayes, consulting and preparing things, resolved without delay to assault it with all his forces, for many reasons, chiefly, for that his men began to grow sickly: scorched as it were, all the day, and almost starved with cold by night, and exceeding dewes commonly wetting them to the skin: neither was there good water, or fresh Victual to be had in that sandy and barren Soil, other than out of the Fleet; for the water was so unpleasant and brackish, that sick and whole were glad of a Crab to quench extream thirst; yet much relief was timely sent from *Sicilie* and *Naples*: the Bisket also chiefly in the *Spanish* Gallies, was grown hoary and unwholsom: about *July* 15th, he began to place his battery defended with *Gabions* and Caske of Sand.

Aurias divided his Gallies into three Squadrons, which should

should by turns beat on the Castle, his great Ships at Anchor thundred from their fore-Castles with great Ordinance. *Vasstius* divided *Spaniards*, *Italians*, and *Germans* apart for assault. There was never strong place since Guns were invented, assailed with greater force, preparation, or industry. The Earth seeming not onely to quake, but even by and by to swallow them up: the Sea beginning to rage and foam as in a great storm: the Air became thick and dark with smoak: from day-break till noon, the Cannon and Culvering never ceased; so that the *Vamures* were beat down, the Castle faultable, and many *Turkish* Cannoniers and Cannons, buried in the Walls ruines: which being perceived, upon a Signal given, the Artillery ceasing, the breach was assailed, and the Walls scaled, and with such resolution, that the *Turks* having done what was possible, by casting down Darts, Wild-fire, &c. upon them climbing up, at length as despairing, fled.

Sinan and the other Captains fled forth at the further side by a Wooden Bridge, and so by Land to *Tanis*: which way most of his men followed him. The rest were slain or driven into the Lake, where they were slain coming to Land by Horsemen; or inswimming, shot by the Harquebusiers: the Lake being even covered with dead bodies.

This Castle, with all its Warlike Provision, and all *Barbarussa's* great Fleet, his and his Pyrates greatest grief, *Charls* gained with small losse. *Barbarussa* troubled and terrified, sternly and scornfully received *Sinan* and the rest, reviling and calling them faint-hearted Cowards, so soon giving over so strong a place. *Sinan* answered, when they were to withstand the Devil and his furies, &c. it ought not to seem strange, if they sought to escape. Neither did they count it a disgrace, as men that minded again to fight: from which danger, if himself had been present, he would have accounted it very good discretion to escape.

Hairadin

Hairadin now began more temperately to request every one of them courageously to stand fast to him, well hoping, that the great supply of *Moorish* foot, and *Numidian* Horse at hand, once come, the enemy should not long joy in taking *Guletta*. Then he wholly indeavoured, to prepare things needful for Warre, bountifully bestowing his Treasures among the *Moors* and *Numidians*, to confirm the well-affected, and to win the doubtful.

Muleasses the while, with a small retinue, came into the Emperour's Camp, he sitting royally in his Pavilion, who being admitted, with a Myter, and a green and blew silk Garment, he tall and manly, tawny (so squint-eyed, that he seemed to look spitefully) kissing *Charls* his hand, sat down with his legs close under him upon a Carpet, on the ground, after his Countries fashion, speaking unto him by an Interpreter, that he was come thither, not by any desert of his, their different Religion so requiring, yet, he verily thought, not but by the appointment of the most high God, whom both did with like devotion worship, to take revenge of the most perfidious, cruel Tyrant and Pyrate, whom he saw as good as vanquished, *Guletta* and his Navy being taken, &c. which would be the more to his comfort, hoping thereby to be restored by him, into his Fathers Kingdom, which he most humbly requested of his justice and honour: not refusing to pay him tribute, and to acknowledge himself his Vassal: of which the remembrance of so great a benefit never to be forgotten of him and his Posterity, was a most great assurance, he abhorring the name of unthankful, and experimentally finding how much his State and People might be assured to him, by his near Garrisons in *Sicilie* and *Sardinia*.

The Emperour answered, he was come into *Africk* to revenge the injuries done oft, by *Barbarussa* upon his Frontiers, and to root out the most mischievous Pirates: which, by his Saviour's goodness, had taken such effect, that

that he doubted not soon to obtain a perfect Victory; and then he would grant him what should stand with the convenience of his affaires, &c. so he would not falsifie his faith, which he might well suspect, if he specially trusted not, that such a benefit would alway remain in his heroical mind; being assured, that that power which restored him his Kingdom, could take it from him, if his unthankfulness deserved it.

Muleasses before the Emperour used a full gravity and grace in his Speech; but exceeding courteous to the Generall and other Captains: riding up and down with them, and shewing himself a very good Horseman, and of great activity. He would also reason with learned men after *Averroes*, of the nature of things, the Heavens motion, and Starres power: he had a Tent appointed him, and honourable allowance.

Vastius courteously brought him, when desirous, into all places of the Camp, to see all things and orders there, demanding of him, whether that puissant Army brought to his great good, he judged sufficient to subdue the enemy? *Muleasses* chiefly wondered at the number and order of the great Ordnance; next, at the wondrous plenty of things, and the Souldiers quietness in buying them. Ere long they learned of him many things, well serving for their better proceeding: which things, orderly reported to the Emperour, confirmed his former hope of the desired Victory; so that carefully forecasting, he resolved forthwith to besiege *Tunis*. But whilest he was preparing, they daily skirmished with the *Numidians*: once like to come to a Battel; for the *Moores* planting Field-pieces among the Olive Gardens, shot continually into the Camp: wherefore the Emperour leaving enough to keep his Camp and Trenches, went forth with his Horsemen and the rest, sending *Montegius* General of the Spanish Horsemen before, who were most, but raw Souldiers. These skirmished a while with the enemy; but seeing

ing themselves hardly charged, and *Montegius* greatly wounded, they fled in the Emperour's sight, to the men at Arms coming after them. The enemy at first, would desperately charge, then retire to avoid their enemies force, and by and by turn again with a fresh charge, the light Horsemen fleeing, *Charls* came on courageously with his men at Arms, whereby they were put to flight, and their Field-pieces taken. Here the Emperour standing formost, gave the Signal, crying aloud, *St. James, St. James*, the *Spaniards* Patron. He rescued with his own hand *Pontius* of *Granado*, who, unhorsed and sore wounded, was ready to be slain. Also 30000 *Moores* came suddenly to surprise a small Tower, on a Hill near *Carthages* ruins, wherein Souldiers were placed; for it was near the Camp. Before the went a *Numidian* Priest, bellowing out certain Charms, and casting abroad scroles of paper, wherein he cursed the Christians: they brought those in the Tower with fire and smoak, to great extremity; but the Emperour coming to their rescue, slew the Priest with others, and put the rest to flight. The discomfiture of the *Spanish* Horsemen made many think, that the Emperour's Horse were too weak for a set-battel, being but few, and inferiour to the *Numidians*. For which cause and divers others, some of his Councillors willed him to proceed no farther in that dangerous Warre, but speedily to return, since he had won honour enough, by taking *Guletta* and the enemies Fleet; but he gave them a resolute answer to the contrary: willing them to cease further to flatter him, no way dismayd, or to possess his valiant Souldiers with a vain fear, and resolutely against next day, with him to expect the fortune of the field for a full accomplishment, who was set down to give battel, or the enemy refusing; o batter the Walls of *Tunis*, not doubting but *God* would stand by him in so good and godly a quarrel. So garrisoning *Guletta*, and repairing its breaches, laying the Ordnance on Carriages, which before, lay bound in unwieldy pices of Timber, with Iron rings.

Then

Then causing the Country to be well viewed (which betwixt the Olive Groves, and the right side of the lake, passeth directly to *Tunis*) he set forward with his Army in so good an order, as still ready to fight, and in his Armour he rode from Squadron to Squadron, cheerfully and hopefully recounting the former Victories they had got for him, telling them, he, that day, expected of them a most honourable day's service, seeing they were to fight against the naked enemies of the Christian Religion; and to resolve to endure all difficulties, till they might joyn battel with their enemies: where, they should undoubtedly (by Gods goodnesse) obtain the Victory, comforting themselves the while, with the sure hope of a most rich prey, of a rich City. They all answered with a great shout, he should not trouble himself with those matters, for they would patiently endure all extremities, and by a valiant fight make him Emperour (not of *Africk*) but *Asia* also.

Vastius made General, chiefly for that day, withdrew two Spanish Companies of *Harquebusers* to skirmish with the *Moors*, following in their Rear: whom, by those and some Troops of Horse, the Duke of *Alba* notably repulsed. The Army being come to the *Cisterns*, which *Muleasses* and others had told them of; the extreme thirsty Souldiers descrying them afar off, forsook their Colours, and ran as fast as they could unto them: *Vastius* laboured in vain, by fair and fowl means to stay them, a great advantage being; by that disorder, offered to the enemy, not far off. The Emperour himself hastened thither to keep them in order, yet such was their intolerable thirst, that he could not remedy the disorder, some fainting in the sands for lack of drink. and some ready to burst their bellies at the Fountains, so that he beat them away with his Truncheon: One *Cicero* of *Arpinas*, a famous Captain, died there: with over-drinking. This extremity seemed just; for *Vastius* had the day before, com-

manded every Souldier to carry a bottle of Wine or Water at his girdle : though he caus'd what water he could conveniently, to be carried in Casks for common relief, the *Germans* having the most. Some ready to give over, bought a draught of water of their fellows for two Duckats.

The Army being brought into order, *Charls* held on his march ; for *Barbaruffa* coming (with a great multitude of Horse and Foot, and a number of *Engins* gallantly displayed) about 3 miles from *Tunis*, and some *Field-pieces*, went about to break the Christian's Battel : those *Pieces* doing little or no hurt, through the *Cannoniers* unskilfulnesse. *Pastins* had likewise commanded the Ordinance to be brought into the Front ; but perceiving what toyl and time it required : He told the Emperour, he thought it not best to stay for them, every man desiring Battel, lest staying too long upon their great Ordinance, their enemies should gather courage, and the Souldiers cheerfulnesse grow cold. The Emperour cheerfully answered: If thou think good, I like it well, In Gods Name, give the Signal : That I shall (said he) but first 'tis reason, that thou which swayest a great part of the world, at this time obey me, whom thou for this day hast made General of so mighty an Army : wherefore since I may not request, I command thee to get into the middle of the Battel, lest by some unlucky shot, the whole Army be extreemly endangered by the danger of one mans life ; *Charls* smiling, willed him not to fear it ; saying, Never Emperour was yet slain with a gun ; yet he went into the middle of the Battel. The Signal given by Trumper and Drum : the enemy was furiously charged by his Horsemen, who, to avoid the Artillery, made all haste to come to bandy-blows. Noble and valiant *Gonzaga* being somewhat foremost at the first onset, slew with his Launce a notable *Moorish* Captain, with his sword, so troubling those next him, that he opened a way to break into the enemies

enemies Battel : the *Harquebussers* also discharged so fast, that 300 of them lay dead, before Battel was joyned : whereupon the other Footmen fled back (from their Ordnance) to *Barbarussa* : who not long enduring the Christians force or fight, but grinding his teeth for grief, retired with his Turks into *Tunis* : feeding himself with hope out of his enemies foreseen distresses, to take some fit advantage, if he could but a while defend the City : the *Numidians* and *Moors* retired also into the Suburbs, and other places near.

The Emperour glad of his enemies flight (thought to be a 100000) encamped that night where they before lay, determining next day to batter *Tunis's* walls : *Barbarussa* exceedingly surprized with fear, and distracted with cares, purposed to kill all the Christian captives in the Castle ; but *Sinan* the Jew for divers reasons dissuaded him from that most execrable fact ; *Solyman* using to detest and revenge such outrages : who living bound in Chains (if they should lust after their unlucky liberty) could neither give victory to the enemy, nor take it from him, or hinder it, and might shortly serve him to good purpose ; whereat (he ashamed) went out of the Castle, assembling all the chief of the City into the biggest Temple, telling them what he would have done for defence, and encouraging them to fight, from whom a little before *Charls* his coming, he had taken all kind of arms.

A constant report of a danger so eminent, run even in the Dungeons of the Castle ; by some manumitted slaves, (who had in heart returned to their old Christian Religion, secretly encouraging the chief Captives, with whom they were acquainted, to lay hold on their liberty) two of whom, *Francis* a Spaniard, and *Caterus* a *Dalmatian* Eunuch adventured to open the prison-doors, giving Instruments to the poor prisoners : who boldly brake off their chains and Gyves : and so, about 6000 Christians armed with what came first to hand, chiefly with stones &

brake forth suddenly upon the Turks in the Castle. *Ramadas* the runagate Captain, stirred up with the terrible noile, with a few Souldiers, ran to the gate, where a lusty *Cicilian* prisoner, had with a bar thereof, struck down one or two of the Warders, and bolted the Gate. *Ramadas* slaying him, went forth with his few followers, carrying news to *Barbarussa*; the Christians now loosed, slaying divers *Turks*, possessed all the Castle, and breaking open the Armory, gave signs from a Turret to the Christian Army, by smoak and false fires of Gunpowder. Lastly, displaying *Sarmentus* his Ensign (taken by *Tabacches* as aforelaid) they were too far off, well to perceive the signes; yet by fugitives comming oft out of *Tunis*, *Charls* and *Muleasses* were perswaded some great tumult was risen: wherefore 2 Captains with their Companies were sent to discover the matter. *Barbarussa* the while, in his fury blaspheming his gods, and bitterly cursing the Jew, came to the Castle-gate, with tears in his eyes, requesting the late-captives, forthwith to let him in, faithfully promising them liberty, with a general pardon; but they casting stones at him, with many opprobrious words rejected him; So that he enraged, shot at them himself; betaking himself to flight: 7000 *Turks* following him, intending to flee to the City *Hippona* (now *Bona*): for there had *Barbarussa* left 14 Gallies against any mischance, having laid up their furniture in the Garrison'd Castle fast by the Lake.

Charls hearing of his flight, came to the gates, the Magistrates being ready to submit: only requesting that his Souldiers might encamp without the City, and not seek the utter ruine thereof, promising they should want nothing there to be had: *Muleasses* also earnestly entreating him in the Citizens behalf; but he doubting (not without cause) the *Moors* fidelity, they also delaying the Souldiers promised wages, expecting the utmost of *Barbarussa*, he could not be perswaded to promise them certain

tain safety, moved also by the Souldiers discontented speeches: Whilst the Emperour stood thus in doubt, *Vas-
stins* came with a few to the Castle gate, and was joyfully received in by the Captives; but whilst he viewed the wealth and provision, a *Ligurian* captive discovered to him a Well wherein *Barbarussa* had cast 30000 Duckats in bags, which he easily obtained of *Charls*, as well deserving them. The Captives taking the Castle's spoyl: the Army would enter the City, running after the spoyl; the Citizens in vain calling upon the faith of *Muleasses*. They slew many at first entrance: the *Spaniards* and *Italians* seeking most after spoyl, but the *Germans* filled all places with dead *Mahometans*, not regarding sex or age: their Temples swimming with the blood of those fled into them: which continued, till *Charls*, through *Muleasse's* pittiful request, proclaimed, None on pain of death to hurt any Citizen, or take prisoners. For all that, many young men and women, were by the Mariners carried away to the Fleet: many of whom *Muleasses* redeemed for a little money: one of his Wives (the dearest) being ransomed for two Duckats. The Emperour entering the Castle, commended the captives, giving them money, & promising them shipping and provision to bring every man to his own Countrey; unto the manumitted servants, he gave money and apparel, learning of them, of *Barbarussas's* purposes and secret disposition. In the Castle's spoyl, *Muleasses* chiefly lamented the loss of the old *Arabian* books, containing the interpretation of *Mahomet's* Law, and his Predecessours Acts: which losse (he said) he would most gladly (if possible) have redeemed with the price of a City: then the pretious ointments and perfumes, with the great store of *Ambert-greece*, Musk and Civer. Lastly, the rare and rich Colours for painting, trodden under foot. Here were divers Head-pieces and other Armour of the *French* (laid up in memory of the *Moors* Victorie, who with King

Lewis had besieged it about 300 years before.

Barbarussa easily passed over the River *Bagrada* or *Maïor-dech* (though pursued by certain *Namidian* horse raised by *Muleasses*, who dared not come near him for his *Harquebusiers* and Archers in the rear) : and so came to *Hippona* (yet he lost *Haiden* of *Smayrna* in that passage, who died on the bank with drinking so much) resting his men two dayes : He called them together, comforting them with good words, and perswading them, &c. for he determined (he said) to go with the Fleet he had, to *Algiers* : where he would (being recruited) undertake some Attempt, answerable to their desires and his own credit. It's reported, Never was vanquished Captain answered with a more cheerful acclamation, than he then was. Wherefore he most speedily weighed up those sunk Gallies, furnishing them against all assaies, casting upon the Lake's-brink a Mount, with Artillery for defence of the Harbour ; not vainly conjecturing that the Christian Fleet would come to impeach his going out. And indeed, *Adam*, a *German* Captain (of no great skill, yet the Admiral's Kinsman) was appointed with some Gallions and 14 Gallies, to set forward towards *Hippona*, hoping to purchase great honour of the unprovided enemy ; but being come near *Hippona*, he was advertised what *Barbarussa* had done : Whereat he greatly troubled, upon good advice, returned to the Fleet for more aid : *Barbarussa* a while doubting, whether to pursue them (more in number than his own Gallies) or to persist in his former purpose : unto which opinion the Captains inclining, he letting slip a fair occasion, leaving a small Garrison in the Castle, sailed to *Algiers*. *Adam* being returned, many great ones were exceedingly offended, that by some's negligence, and others unrulinesse, going ashore without leave, so fair an occasion was neglected : for had those Gallies been sunk or taken, *Barbarussa* could not have escaped ; it being verily thought, the

Numidians

Numidians (the *Turks* deadly enemies) would in advantageous places, have cut off him and his followers in his long and painful travail by land to *Algiers*. *Amia* angry both with himself & those entrusted; yet not out of hope, went to *Hippona*; but *Barbarussa* gone, he took the City overthrowing its walls: but taking the Castle by force, he placed *Gometius* with a Garrison, and so returned. This *Gometius* (though valiant) became so infamous for avarice towards enemy and friend, that for fear how to answer such things, he executed himself: the Castle being afterwards razed, as not without marvellous charge to be kept: after which a Council being held touching *Mulleasses*, *Charls* placed him in his Kingdom, to pay him yearly (as tribute) 2 Falcons, and 2 *Numidian* Coulters: also ever to honour the Emperour, and be a friend to all Christians, and an utter enemy to the *Turks*; and to defray the charges of above 1000 Spaniards left in *Guletta*: whereby he (as it were) kept the Keys of that Kingdom at his girdle. These things done, he sailed into *Sicily*, being received in great triumph at *Panormus* and *Messana*, whence he passed over to *Rhegium* in *Italy*, thence by Land to *Naples*.

Solyman, to encrease the glory of his name, and enlarge his Empire, determined to take away all the *Portugals* traffique in the *East-Indies*: It grieved him that the Christian Religion should begin to root among them, not long before, receiving *Mahometanism*; he was also credibly informed, that they (in his late wars against the *Persians*) had aided them with some *Harquebusiers*: sending them workmen, to shew them the making and use of Ordnance: but the chief motive, was because the *Portugals* by their Traffique, had cut off all Trade into the *Arabian* gulf (whereby the riches of the *East*, used to be transported to *Caire*, thence to *Alexandria*, whence they were dispersed into all *Europe*) to the great binderance of his Tributes and Customes: wherefore, and at the instance

of *Solymán-Bassa* an Eunuch, Governour of *Egypt*: he built a great Fleet in the Red-sea to go against them: the Timber was cut in the Mountains of *Cilicia*, thence transported to *Caire*; where being framed, it was with vast labour and charge carried on Camels through the hot and sandy Desarts to *Suetia*, a Port of the Red-sea, antiently called *Arsing*, from whence (80 Miles from *Caire*) the antient Kings of *Egypt*, had with incredible charge (to eternize their memory) cut thorow all that main Land, so that Vessels of good burden, might come up to *Caire* from *Arsing*. *Solymán Bassa* severely commanding all the people thereabouts to further the building of that Fleet, had (in short time) built 80 all Ships and Gallies at *Arsing*: furnishing them for so long a Voyage; at which time picking a causelesse quarrel, yet (with *Solymán's* liking) he confiscated the goods of the *Venetian* Merchants at *Alexandria* and *Caire*, thrusting the Mariners into his Gallies as slaves: so accompanied with *Assanbeg*, he set forward against the *Portugals*, coming at length as far as the River *Indus*, where he assaulted *Dium*, a Castle of the *Portugals*: but having besieged it many dayes by sea and Land and tried the utmost, he was so repulsed, that leaving his great Ordnance behind him for halfe, he returned to *Aden*, a City of great Trade in *Arabia Felix*. where, because he would be thought to do something, he allured the King to come to him upon Faith before given; but having him aboard, he hanged him up at the Yards-arm of his Admiral-Galley, taking the Citty's spoyle. He likewise murdered the King and all the Nobility of *Zibyrh*, another famous Port of *Arabia* contrary to Faith given; so travelling by land to *Mecca* (as if he had been some devout Pilgrim) he sent back his Fleet by the *Moor* to *Suetia*.

At the same time, *Solymán* (*Lutis* & *Ajax*, the greatest *Bassa's* persuading him) purposed to convert all his Forces upon *Italy*: whereunto he was solicited by *Forrest*

the *French* Embassadour, to incite *Solyman* against the Emperour, assuring him, he could not (at once) defend *Apulia* against him, and the Dukedom of *Millain* against the *French* King, who intended that Summer to invade it. Also, one *Pignatellus*, sometime Commander in *Charls* his Army, but then exiled out of *Naples*, fled to *Solyman*, who being like to do him great service, in the invation of *Apulia*, was honourably entertained amongst his *Musfaracas*, a Company of Horsemen chose out of all Nations, having free exercise of their Religion, onely bound to attend the person of the *Turk*, when going to Warres. He revolted, because the Viceroy had executed *Andrew* his Brother, a Knight of the *Rhodes*. He, oftentimes called to Councel, ceased not to perswade *Solyman* to invade the same, assuring him, that they of *Apulia* and *Salerne*, grievously oppressed by the Emperour's Officers, would at first revolt, especially, seeing any of the *French* to cleave unto; but the greatest Motive was, the ancient *Turks* telling him into what fear all *Italy* was stricken, when *Achmetes Bassa* had taken *Hydruntum*. Wherefore he made such expedition by Sea and Land, that he was come with 200000 men to *Aulona* in *Eucedonia*, before 'twas thought he was come from *Constantinople*, where he stayed not long; but *Lutzis* his Admiral, with *Barbarossa*, sailing by *Corcyra*, where *Pisanrius* the *Venetian* Admiral lay, and, after mutual Sea-salutation done, put into the Haven of *Aulona* also.

Solyman now commanded *Lutzis* and *Barbarossa* to passe over with the Fleet, to *Otranto*, and to prove the mindes of the people: with whom went also *Troilus Pignatellus*: who knowing *Hydruntum* and *Brundisium*, to be strongly kept by *Charls* his Garrisons, directed them to the Town *Castrum*, on the Sea-Coast, eight miles from *Hydruntum*: nigh which stands a Castle, then belonging to *Catinarius*, who unacquainted with Warres, and perswaded by *Troilus*, yielded it up; the *Turks* not to vio-
late

late him or his, in body or goods: on which condition, *Castrum* was also delivered up; but the *Turks*, once got in (do what *Troilus*, *Lutis*, or *Barbarossa* could) especially the Marriners, rifled Town and Cattle, carrying away *Catinarius* himself, with the floure of the people to their Galleys, as prisoners; but *Lutis* ashamed, presently freed *Catinarius*. Then also, *Solymán* had, by night, sent over light Horsemen: who running along the Sea from *Tarentum* to *Brundisium*, carried away people and Cattel, and whatever came in their way, for 40 miles; so that the fear and danger of *Otranto*, was likely to have overwhelmed all *Italy*, had not the rashness of one *Venetian* Captain, turned that Tempest from the *Italians*, upon the *Venetians* themselves. For *Contarenius* meeting with *Turkish* Galleys, which would do nothing in token of Reverence and friendship, as they ought in those Seas, fiercely assailed them, sinking two of them. *Ustamenes*, Governour of *Callipolis*, of no small Reputation, being said to have perished: which out-rage, in a most unfit time, was imputed to a private grudge, the *Turks* having intercepted a Ship of his, laden with rich Merchandise, from the East, not regarding what might ensue to the common State.

Auria, hearing that *Solymán* with his Army and Fleet, were, at *Aulona*, put to Sea towards the Isles *Cephalenia* and *Zante*: there chancing upon divers of the *Turk's* Victuallers, which he easily took, chaining the Marriners in his own Galleys for slaves, and seizing on the Victuall, fired the Ships.

Solymán the while, sending *Junusbeius*, his chief Interpreter, with two Gallies on a Message to *Lutis*: he coming near *Corcyra*, offered to passe by the *Venetian* Fleet, without vailing: upon which his pride, certain Captains so furiously set upon him, that they were forced to run them ashore on the Coast of *Epirus*: where they were stript by the people of the Mountains called *Acrostrauiti*.

These

These people live most by theft. *Junusbeius* hardly re-
deeming himself from them, and returning to *Solyman*.
Auria chancing on those fore bruised Gallies, fired them.
For which things, the *Turks* greatly offended, grievously
complained of the *Venetians* to *Solyman*, though the Ad-
miral laboured to excuse the matter, about *Junusbeius*, as
a great oversight on both sides; but the *Turks* sought to
break the League which was the sooner don, because *Auria*
diligently looking into every Harbour in the *Ionian Sea*,
lighted on 12 great *Turks* Gallies near *Corcyra*, filled
with their best Souldiers Horse and Foot, the Horses be-
ing sent before to the Camp by their Lackies, who with
invincible courage, fought bloudily with *Auria*, having
30. Gallies till most were slain, the rest fore wounded:
who seeing they must fall into his hands, threw their Sci-
meters over board, because those choyce Weapons should
not come into their hands.

Auria lost many of his best men, yet with Victory an-
chored nigh *Corcyra*: where he was advertised, that *Bar-
barussa* was coming against him with 80 Gallies; where-
fore, as too weak, he returned to *Messana*, to repair his
Fleet.

Solyman now throughly chafed, cursed *Barbarussa*, who
had done him no good service in these Warres, grievously
threatning the *Venetians*, who under colour of an an-
cient League, being secretly confederate with *Charls*, had
ho'pen *Auria* with intelligence, and all necessaries, &c:
Junusbeius, *Barbarussa*, and *Ajax*, incensing him: the one
out of private revenge; these, gaping after the spoil of the
adjacent *Venetian* Isles: the Warres in *Italy*, being more
difficult than they imagined; for the French King came
not then into *Italy*: it being commonly reported, that
the Viceroy of *Naples* strongly garrisoning all Sea Towns,
was coming with a great Army; besides the Horse sent e-
ver, ranging for spoil, were oft cut off by *Scipio*, Gover-
nour of *Otranto* for *Charls*: wherefore *Solyman* proclaim-
ing

ing Warre against the *Venetians*, arose from *Aulona*, encamping near the Mountains *Acroceranni*: where the wild people of the high and rough Mountain *Chimera*, for so great a prey (by meanes of one *Damianns* a notable Thief, and perfect in the blind and difficult passages) attempted by night to spoil *Solymán* in his Pavilion, hoping (though guarded with so many thousands) to steal into the Camp undiscovered, and kill him sleeping there.

But having put all things in readines, *Damiannus* their Ring-leader, by secret wayes, stealing down the broken Rocks, came very nigh the Camp, to view the standing of the Pavilion, with the order of their Watch, and was, by a bough cracking, espied by the *Janizaries* in a Tree: where, taken, and torture'd, he confessed his intent, and was by *Solymán* commanded to be torn in pieces: who forthwith sent a great party up the Mountains, who hunted after, and slew many of those wild people: doing what they could quite to destroy them, as enemies to all men.

Solymán purposing to invade *Corcyra*, now *Corfu*, sent *Barbarussa* before, with his great Artillery: which *Pisaninus* timely foreseeing, strengthened both the Castles with good Souldiers out of his Gallies: withdrawing himself into the Adriatique Gulf, to joyn with *Veturius*: who kept that Sea with another *Venetian* Fleet, and so to defend the *Venetian* Coasts against the *Turks*: *Auria's* coming being also daily expected.

Solymán sending a great part of his Army into the Island, burnt and destroyed the Villages, leading away a number of people Captives. *Ajax* and *Barbarussa*, came as nigh the City *Corfu*, as they could, to see how fitly to besiege it; but perceiving its great strength, they advertised *Solymán* that it was impregnable. *Ripa* and *Leonius* Senators, were then Governours of *Corfu*, who, doubting of the *Turks* great strength, pluck'd down the Suburbs, very great and sumptuous, a woful thing to behold, when as then

then also, the *Turks* had fired the Magnificent Houses of the *Venetian* Merchants in every place; but in so great a publique danger, all was accounted lightly of, in respect of lives and liberty, since they might with new charge, be soon recovered. The two Governours fearing a long Siege, and not Victuals enough for such a multitude as were there, turned a number of weak people and Children out of the City; many, chiefly Children, dying in the Town-Ditches, in their Mothers Arms, not daring to go further for fear of the enemy, who had fast by planted his Ordnance on Mounds against the City: onely *S. Angelo* Castle in midst of the Isle, about 15 miles from *Corsu*, being valiantly defended against assaults, saved above 3000, which fled thither, all being made desolate elsewhere. The *Turks* on a Hill, covered with their Tents, shot with their Ordnance from the Rock *Maripetus*, into the Town: and some standing close in the Suburbs ruines, did kill or wound those appearing on the Walls. The Galley also oft discharging their Pieces: more terrifying than hurting the Defendants. *Solyman* seeing he did but loose his labour, determined to raise his siege, and return to *Constantinople*, greatly ashamed he had no better speed; but being about to depart, he was told, how unfaithfully some Souldiers dealt with them of *Castrum*: which tending to his dishonour, and the deterring of others from yielding, he put the authors to death, and those Captives to be diligently sought out, and sent home. The *Turks* departed out of the Island, about Septemb. 12th, in 1537. carrying away above 16000 into perpetual captivity; so he returned, having done great harm, both in *Italy* and *Corcyra*; but not increasing his Empire or honour.

Before his departure, he commanded *Lutzi* to return with his Fleet to *Hellspont*: who passing by *Zante*, took divers Countrey people prisoners in the night; but, the City it self being well fortified, he departed to *Cythera*, where vainly attempting to take the Castle, he spoyling
what

what he could, with 800 prisoners, returned into *Aegium* to *Agina* a rich City, and well peopled. He approaching the Isle, sent to the Governour of the City by fair meanes, and, then by threats to have the City yielded unto him: and not prevailing, he landed his men giving the signall of Battel: whom they manfully meeting, slew many Turks, *Lutis* greatly offended, still landing fresh men, oppressed them with multitude, being but few, and weary of long fight, forcing them to retire into the City. The Bassa in revenge, planted a battery against the City, soon opening the walls in divers places: then assaulting the breaches, took it, which he rifling, and burning to the ground, razed the walls, killing all the men, and giving the women to the lust of his men: whom afterwards with the Children, he shipped away into servitude: raging with much like cruelty on them of *Paros*, and Islands thereabouts: killing the old men, and such as resisted, thrusting the rest into his Gallies. And coming to *Naxos*, all the Island people fled into the City for fear: where he made havock of all in his way: sending a Messenger to the Duke, to yield himself and City to *Solymán's* obedience: who in blunt termes said, If he would without more ado, yield to *Solymán*, he might save himself with what he had; but otherwise, he should never have the like offer, &c. That there was present a most mighty Fleet, &c. To be warned by them of *Agina*, *Paros*, and other Neighbour Princes: That his hap was good, if he were not misadvised, &c. He being commanded to stand aside a while, the Duke with his chief Subjects, full of Heaviness, consulted for an answer: generally agreeing, that since they could not withstand such an enemy, or expect aid, to yield to the present necessity, &c. So the Duke answered him, he was ready to yield to *Solymán* as his vassall, and to hold his Seigniory of him for 5000 Duckats yearly tribute: which *Lutis* accepted, receiving in a years tribute: this yielding of *Naxos*, was *Novemb. 11th*,

1537. whence *Lutis* returned laden with rich spoil, to *Constantinople*: who, ere long, fell at odds with his Wife, *Solyman's* Sister; for keeping in his House, a delicate youth, in whom he took more pleasure than in her: she of a great spirit, and knowing him, by marrying her, to have been, of base degree, advanced to the greatest honours: in great rage, bitterly reproved him, laying; she married him to be beloved, and used as his Wife, not to be abused by his minions: whereupon, he gave her a blow on the eare, causing her to be shut up in her Chamber; but she came weeping and complaining to *Solyman*, requesting to be divorced from him. *Solyman* was so incensed, that he took from him his Seal, and thrust him out of all, and had put him to death, had not his old love and friendship stayd him; yet he banished him into *Macedonia*: where he spent his life as a poor private man.

Solyman to entangle the *Venetians* in divers places at once, commanded his Lieutenants, bordering on their Seigniory, to vex them with all hostility. In *Peloponesus*, *Cassumes* besieged *Mauplium* and *Epidaurus*.

Barbarussa surprized ancient *Botroius* in *Dalmatia*, razing it, and carrying away the Citizens.

Ustres of *Illyria*, took *Obroatum*, with the Castle of *Nadin*, in *Dalmatia*: the *Venetians* requiring the like, *Pisaurius* and *Veturius* took *Scardona* in *Dalmatia's* borders, putting the Turks to the sword, and overthrowing the walls: they sent also *Ribeus* to besiege *Obroatum*, who upon the coming of *Amurathes* fled, and lost most of his men: wherefore *Pisaurius* had his head struck off aboard the Admiral Galley, and *Ursinus* Governour of *Jadera*, upon their frontiers in *Dalmatia*, took *Ostrovilla* from the Turks, burning it down: recovering *Obroatum*, and by the Senates Command, razing it, as not well to be kept.

The same Autumne, 1537. King *Ferdinand* received a great and shameful overthrow by the Turks. After the bat-
tel

tell of *Mohatz*, the Turks kept *Possaga* of *Hungary* to themselves, having thereby, a fit passage from *Belgrade*, further into *Hungary*: The Rivers *Savus* and *Dravus* inclosing this rich plentiful and populous Country on both sides. It bordereth upon *Croatia* and *Corbania*, which in time past, had continual Warres with the Turks Garrisons in *Illyria* and *Bosna*. Then was *Mahometes* a most valiant Captain, Governour of *Belgrade*: having the keeping of those frontiers, and the protection of *Hungary* in the behalf of King *John*. He, the year before, by force and policy, took from the Christians above 30 small Castles in the Countrey, joyning them to the Regiment of *Belgrade*: one whereof called *Ezek*, for his passage over *Dravus* into *Hungary*, he strongly fortified: whence he fetcht abundance of prey out of *Ferdinands* Countrey near him. Yet was there then a certain League betwixt *Solyman* and *Ferdinand*: which notwithstanding, did bear with taking of booty, and light skirmishes, without a great power or Field-pieces: which *Matthias* and his Predecessors had long used with the Turks, doing a like harm with their nimble light Horse; but the *Germanes*, now serving upon great Horses, with heavy Armour, received great hurt by those light skirmishes.

Ferdinand not well brooking these injuries, and finding his League with *Solyman*, at his going into *Persia*, to be hurtful to him, determined to take up Arms, that if he could drive the Turks out of *Possaga*, then to go to *Buda* against *John*. There were some, who wished him not rashly to take up Arms against so mighty an enemy: foreseeing that *Solyman*, so provoked, would do as he had of late done against the *Venetians* upon a light occasion; but all *Ferdinands* Subjects were so earnest therein, that they said, they would never bear Arms more against the Turks, if he omitted that occasion; for they of *Carinthia*, *Siria*, *Croatia* and *Noricum*, receiving great harms, thought they might easily be expulsed from *Possaga*, since *Mahometes*

Mohometes had no great power, not like to have greater, *Autumne* being almost spent.

So *Ferdinand*, with the exceeding joy of his Subjects, very soon raised a good Army. yet supposed more strong than numerous, most being select men: they were 8000 Horse, & 16000 Foot, with store of all sorts of Artillery: *Cazzianzer* (as one of great experience, and famous for the defence of *Vienna*) *Ferdinand* made his General; for he (advised by his best friends) never adventured his person in any battel, chiefly against the Turks, by whom many Christian Kings had been formerly vanquished and slain.

Mahometes hearing of this preparation against him, sent for divers Companies of Garrison Souldiers upon the borders: requiring ayd of the Governours thereabouts: being chiefly help'n by *Ustorf*, Governour of *Bosna*, who sent him *Amurathes* with a great Company of gallant Horsemen: to whom were joynd some Companies of Foot, of the wild and Mountain *Dalmatians*, kept in order by *Janizaries*: also many out of *Servia* and *Rascia*. The receiver, giving those willing to serve, two moneths pay before hand: neither wanted he ayd from *Buda*; so that *Mahometes* soon gathered an Army, not much inferior to *Ferdinands*, expecting the enemies coming at *Exek*.

Cazzianzer, come as far as *Caprunza* upon *Drauu*, had before well provided for victualling his Army: the chief of the Countrey by the direction of the Bishop of *Zagabria*, promising to serve the Camp with plenty, at a very low rate: which, the people now hindered by *Mahometes* by Land and Water, could not perform; he also alluring them for a great price, ready mony, to bring it to his own Camp.

Cazzianzer scarce came from *Caprunza* to *Vierueza* Castle, (but about 40 miles) in ten dayes, for the troublesome carriage of some great battering-pieces: and they

were enforced to spend the Viſual, provided, not for the beginning, but the difficulties of a long protracted War: wherefore he wrote ſharply to the Biſhop and the reſt, to uſe all poſſible ſpeed, and not to let the hope of a notable Victory, be loſt for want of Viſual: and there he ſtayed, expecting its coming, ſending *Bachitius* before, with 1000 *Hungarian* light Horſe, and ſome *Italian* Harquebuſiers, as far as *Zopia* Caſtle, by taking ſome priſoners, to learn of the enemies purpoſe: the *Turks* thinking the whole Army was at hand, fired the Caſtle, fleeing down *Dravus* in Boats; yet *Bachitius* took ſome of them: of whom, *Cazzianzer* learned what he knew by his eſpials, that *Mahometes* encamped at *Exek*, reſolving to give him battel: who ſetting forward, came in eight dayes to *Walpo* Caſtle: where he ſtayed ſeven dayes at the River *Crassus*, till a Bridge was made to tranſport his Army. Entering there into often Council, for his better proceeding: ſome ſaid it were beſt to leave *Exek*, and beſiege *Villach* Caſtle thereby: others more wary, thought it beſt to ſtay there, till the expected ayd and Viſual were come; but the greater number prevailed for going to *Exek*, delay breeding danger, ſaying there was ſtrength and Viſual enough, for obtaining of the Victory, &c.

The young Souldiers having no proof of the *Turk's* manner of fight, thought two dayes ſtaying a long delay of ſo ready a Victory: wherefore the Army was muſtered, and 10000 Horſemen found (for divers Germane Troops were come to the Camp): a more gallant Company ſeldom ſeen, ſo ſuddenly raiſed; but the Foot were ſcarce 8000, many being ſick, and others weary, who lingeringly ſtole away: and generally thoſe left, moyled with dirt, wet with rain, almoſt ſtarved with cold, and pinched with hunger, were thought ſcarce able to endure the hardnets of the Warre. Command was given, every Souldier to carry with him three dayes Viſuals: and Proclamation made, none on pain of death to take any *Turk* pri-

prisoner, though yielding, or charge himself with any spoil; for the Captains would afterwards divide that among them.

Thus setting forward, they the third day encamped in a Valley three miles from *Exek*: next day, some *Turks* appearing, were by the Ordnance repulsed: the day following, the enemy sallied out with oft skirmishes, many being slain on both sides; but more wounded of the Christians: certain *Janizaries* being mingled with the *Turks* Horsemen: wherefore the General forbad all such light skirmishes, commanding his Cannoniers so to place his Ordnance, that the *Turks* sallying forth, received great hurt thereby. That day came the Bishop with his Horsemen, and a certain provision of Victual, well easing their fear. *Mahometes* now to annoy them by other meanes, sent many small Boats, manned with Harquebusiers and small Ordnance into the lake nigh the Camp, to keep them from watering, and shooting oft into the Camp: nigh which, was a Hill, having a Village, wherein were some Turkish Companies, to skirmish upon occasion with the Christians: to displace whom, the Army was put in battalia, and the Ordnance bent upon them: whereupon, the *Turks* firing the Town, retired to *Exek*. The Christians being come up the hill, might see *Exek* about two miles off in a fair plain, near *Dravus*: which low ground, was so subj. to the Castle, that it was thought too dangerous to attempt that way to batter the Castle; but descrying a rising ground on tother side of the City, they thought best, on that side to plant their battery against it; but to come thither, was thought a matter of no small trouble. for the 3 miles foul and troublesom compasse they were to fetch: and the Army being like soon to feel want of Viſual, which would hardly be had; the enemy besetting every passage, and scouring about: wherefore, some thought it best to stay there, till more supplies were come; but others said, the enemy was but barely victu-

alled himself: which they understood by some Christian fugitives; and that *Mahometes* had put his chief substance into Boats, purposing to flee after 3 dayes siege: they thinking the Forrest would well enough be passed thorow; beside, winter coming so fast on, suffered no delay: wherefore next day, the Army marched in good order through the Forrest. Which *Mahometes* perceiving, sent forth a 1000 light Horsemen, and some Companies of *Janizaries*, to trouble them, suddenly charging the reareward, being *Bohemians* and *Italians* (the first quickly fled, the other hardly endured the charge;) but being relieved by men at Arms, they put the Turks to flight: so the Army with small losse, came to the place desired: where, after placing all things in order for the siege, they offered the enemy battel; But he, reported not above 16000 strong, kept within the Town, shooting at them with his Ordnance: they also, with two great Pieces on the Hill, shot thorow both Walls and Bulwark, to the Defendants great terrour. Having stood almost all day vainly expecting their coming forth to fight, returned at night into their Camp; for *Mahometes*, kept in his earnest Souldiers, knowing the Christians want of Victual: the fugitives reporting also, that *Solymán* charged him upon pain of a most shameful death, to defend it to the last.

The Christians, in few dayes, began to feel a general want: neither saw they plainly how to be relieved, so that they began to fear some general mischief. *Baltazar Pamphilus*, a Noble *Hungarian*, sitting in Counsel, advised them for relief of the Army, presently to remove to *Hermende* Castle, about ten miles from *Exek*, with whose provision (not like to be small) they might refresh their whole Army, and so proceed further, as occasion required.

Fast by the Castle, was a pretty little walled Town, without flankers, easily (he said) with the Castle, to be taken;

ken, who was sent with some Companies thither: which at his first coming, was surrendred to him, but no such store of Victual as he hoped for therein; yet were there some Vessels of Wine, to the great relief of the weak men: Hereupon, the Camp removed from *Exek*, about 10 at night; but very disorderly: yet the Turks stirred not out, misdoubring some deceit. The Army being come, the Victual was equally divided, and next morning, battery laid against the Castle: which, but 20 Turks defended half a day, then yielding on composition; but there was found in it, but two Barrels of meal, and two of Miller. Then the very Captains hung their heads, as struck with fear, who found nought but a few Women and Children there, and scarce Victual enough in Town and Castle to serve two dayes; yet they fed the Souldiers with better hope, after the Bridge over *Bodrog* running by the Town, was repaired: which the Turks had broken: so, Carpenters, and every man helping, it was in 3 dayes repaired. Next day, the Bridge overcharged with the wondrous weight of the 7th Battering-piece, began to break; so that they brake it, carrying it away by pieces. All things being passed over, the Bridge was again broken, that the enemy should not pursue them, that (much the nearest) way. *Cazzianzer* himself, upon debate, thought the great Ordnance were best be broken, promising to new cast them of his own charge. As for scaling-ladders, &c. they burnt them; but most thought it not best to break those goodly Pieces; but to march on thorow *Possaga* to *Juvancha*, which Town with *Gara* Castle, fast by, stored with provision, they said, would easily be taken before the Turks could come so far about the Lake: and a great shame it were, to return doing nothing. *Cazzianzer* with great toil, came by night to *Juvancha*, but 3 miles off: where the Turks with exceeding speed, at the same time arrived. The Turks fleeing out of a small Town nigh the Castle, the Christians received in the Souldiers, who

so filled themselves with Wine, that they were hardly driven out to the Camp: which Town, the Turks that night burnt, with what the Christians had there left; and in the dawning of the day, began hotly to skirmish with the Christians, especially in the *Bohemians* quarter: whom, *Rascinius* (grieved) with a Troop of his best Horse, forced to flee; but they soon returning, and being relieved, beset the *Bohemians*, and slew many.

Rascinius with his followers, being slain, *Caxzianzer* purposing to retire home, placed 4 ranks of Waggon on each side for defence, the weak and sick in the *Vanguard*; yet in the front were some lusty Companies, but in the rear the greatest strength. They met oft with woody Hills hindring their way; yet the Turks could not so conveniently assail them thereby: wherefore *Mahometes* sent *Janizaries* and nimble Footmen before, (knowing well the passages) with some small Pieces to take the Straits, and to gall them in their passage: and when they could keep a place no longer, to flee back to another: and in the open places, were light Horsemen busie with them, whereby they received much harm: which grieved them the more, for that the Turks were but in stragling Companies. At a strait bigger than the rest, *Bachitius* a *Hungarian* Captain (in whom they generally reposed their greatest trust) was slain with a Falcon-shot, with divers valiant *Hungarians*: who seeing there more than in other places, thought to do some good service on them.

Bachitius's death, brought a fear on the whole Army; yet in revenge, the *Hungarians* did so repulse them, that losing many men, they ran away, leaving their small Pieces behind them; but the nimble Turks, with shot out of the Woods, stayed the *Hungarian* Horse from pursuit, recovering their Pieces, before the Christian Foot could carry them away; so still troubling them as before: who thus beset, and almost spent for want, did generally fear some extreme calamity: and the more, hearing that

Ma-

Mahometes expected supplies from *Belgrade*, *Samandria* and *Nicopolis* : and many *Hungarian* light Horlemen, stealing away from them : neither saw they any comfort now, in their dismayd Captains ; but being come into a fair Field near the Town *Gara*, they heard, the Enemy had in the Woods before them, cut down great Trees across the wayes, so that neither their Ordnance, Wagons, or Horse, could passe without breaking their order. This filled them with despair ; and the more, for that, *Moreus* and others, said, there was but two wayes to escape : one through those Woods to *Walpo*, about 10 miles : the other towards *Zenshner-Zebeth* Castle, in *Moreus* his Countrey, some miles from *Gara*, by taking whereof, the enemy (through the straitness of the passag) must needs give over his pursuit ; yet it was resolved in Councel, to take the way through the Woods, there being in the Castle Victual enough, and money from *Ferdinand*, to pay the Souldiers for all that winter. So leaving the great Ordnance behind, and burning the Powder, with what could not well be carried, upon the sound of a Hoboy to set forward. Many much disliked this resolution : saying, (amongst other things) that to run away, would be a dishonour to the Captains, and also dangerous to them, who respected nothing but life : wherefore they thought better to fight a Battel with them, and not believe the false reports of new supplies come unto them, and that God would undoubredly ayd them, &c. After this, they consulted and determined, that the sick and wounded should be carried on the Wagon and Cart-horses (before carried in the Wagons or amongst other baggage) and that such as could not stay themselves, should be holden by others riding behind them. Those who were so desirous to go, said, This their departure was not a shameful flight, but a right honest & necessary manner of retiring, seeing they were stronger than their enemies in Horse, and equall (if not stronger) in foot, though they were sore weakened

with sickness. Every Captain the while, nor regarding shame, bethought how to betake himself to flight, the uncertain hope of desired life. *Mahometes* using most certain spies, did by most diligent watch, and Troops of Horse, (besetting all passages) most vigilantly attend their motion having shut them up as in a coil. It was now almost midnight, and the Army expecting the sign of setting forward, many great Captains upon a cowardly conceit, departed before the rest without leave. The *Hungarian* Horsemen are reported to begin it, who knowing the wayes, made haste to *Walpo*. *Moreus* going the other way to his Castle, after whom followed in great hast, *Hugonot* with his *Stirian* Horsemen: the Bishop fled also, known by his great Lanthorn, wandering in the Wood.

Cazzianzer hearing hereof, and that all the rest were upon fleeing, presently got to Horse, forgetting the Signal, thinking (as he said afterwards) they were all gone before; and unarmed, fled, leaving rich furnished Tents behind for hast. In this tumult, famous *Lodronius*, was called up, and told by his Servants, that the General was fled: who answered, without doubt not so, that I should be so perfidiously betrayed of him; and so as megered with watching and labour, laid down again to sleep. *Mahometes* hearing the stir in the Camp, rose to assail his enemies; yet for better assurance of the enemies action, he stayed for day-light in order of battel, his men very silently to expect the sign of setting forward: which was by the soft sound of a Horsemans Drum, passing through each Company. The day appearing, *Lodronius* awaking, heard a confused noyse of the Turks; and being forsaken by most of the Horsemen, complained, he was betrayed; yet as nothing discouraged, he cheered up the Footmen, exhorting them to remember their former valour, &c. himself who had been their happy General in many battels, being resolved (by repulsing the enemy) to bring them into a safe place, or valiantly fighting with them, to end his dayes.

The

The *Carinibian*, *Saxonian*, *Austrian*, and *Bohemian* Horse, came the while, to *Lodronius*, beseeching him, to take on him their treacherous General's place, &c. who modestly protested himself unworthy thereof; yet as a man of courage, and moved with the Armies hard estate: he solemnly promised to execute the place in best manner he could. It's reported, as *Lodronius* was inveighing (to his foot) against shameful flight, an old German said, *Worthy Lodronius, thou canst never be thought to flee shamefully, with a Horse of such a price under thee*: whereupon he alighting, hoxed his Horse, saying aloud, *That, that day, they should have him fighting on foot, as one of themselves*: See (saith he) *ye deceive me not, &c.* All his other Horses, he gave away to sick and wounded Souldiers he best knew. The first Troops and Bands were scarce out of the Camp, but the *Turks* with a hideous cry assailed them on every side: the Christian Horsemen repulsing the proud enemy, still busie with them. In these skirmishes as they marched, *Fuchstat* General of the *Carinthians* was slain, supposed for his brave Armor to have been General of the field: 24 Horsemen of great name being slain also (and their Guidon taken) 3 being Noble men. In another place was a most cruel skirmish with the *Saxon* Horsemen, and those who followed their Ensignes: above 36 worthy Captains, Lieutenants or Antiens being slain: and *Chuenricus* a principal Captain taken, who died afterwards in bonds: Likewise the *Austrian* Horse, courageously resisting a while, were overthrown: 2 Noble men being slain with others of great place and reputation: But the greatest slaughter was of the *Bohemians*, by the breaking in of old Garrison Troops with their Scimitars and iron Maces. The Foot being sore gauled by *Janizaries* and Archers of the *Asapi* (discharging on them in their march from a Woody Bank) were on tother side so charged by *Amurathes*, troops of *Bosna*, that they were at last broken, and slain without mercy. *Lodronius* was driven

ven into a marsh, where, after sore wounding, and almost fast in the mud, having done his utmost, by the *Turks* fair intreaty, yielded himself, with 3 Companies, and were all saved; for now the *Turks* seeking after spoyl, hunted after them who disperedly fled, taking and leading away a great number for slaves.

Mahometes having thus obtained so great a Victory, almost without the blood of his Souldiers, and taking the spoyl, pitched his Tents in a little Medow cleansed of dead bodies: and after feasting with his Captains, he commanded the chief prisoners, spoils, and Ensignes to be brought; and commending the Captains that had done any good service, He rewarded the Souldiers, some with Gold, some Silver, as they deserved; and diligently viewed all prisoners, not common Souldiers, He caused every ones name and Office to be enrolled: giving one reward or other to such as brought in the Heads, Ears, or Hands of Christians with Rings upon them. *Lodronius*, being for his deadly wounds thought unable to endure travel, was slain by his keepers, and his Head sent afterward to *Constantinople*; for many (who were afterwards ransomed) have reported, that amongst the Prisoners, fair Ensigns, guilt Armour, &c. presented to *Solyman*; *Bachitinus*, *Macer*, and *Lodronius* their Heads were seen & known, in a silver Bason: which after he had looked asquint upon, he sternly commanded all the prisoners to be slain: but the *Janizaries*, interceding for them as valiant, and to whom they had given their Faith, and might do him good service, he saved many of them; but *Cazzianzer* fleeing to his own Castle, was of all men accused, and commonly railed upon; so that it was reported, he durst not shew his face for shame: Infamous Libels being sung in the Cities of *Germany*, of him and the other runaway Captains: Whereat he was so grieved, that he requested *Ferdinand*, safely to come to Court, to answer what could be laid against him; the King receiving him there with doubtful

doubtful countenance. But his hearing being somewhat protracted, and he the while (half doubtful whether to be quitted or condemned) kept in safe custody; feigning himself sick, by degrees brake thorow a brick Pavement under his bed, with his knife; and by his sheeres escaped, Post Horses being ready without the Castle. Not long after, he fled to the *Turks*: *Mahometes* gladly received him, and promising him the Government of *Croatia*, as a tributarie King, if he would faithfully serve *Solyman*, and help him subdue the Cities of *Austria*: after this agreement for his more credit, he dealt with *Sirennus* a *Croatian* Noble; and his supposed dear Friend, to revolt with him, assuring him of *Solymans* kind dealing with them: who promised to go over with him to the *Turk*, with a troop of his best and most trusty Horsemen, but changing his purpose, after he had well feasted *Cazzianzer* at his House, he caused him to be slain, sending his Head to *Ferdinand*: of whom he received in reward, his Castle, with all his substance.

In the mean time, the *Venetians* provoked, resolved without delay to War upon the *Turk* also, being animated by the Emperour and Pope *Pauls* who lately warned, thought it more safe to keep the *Turks* busied farther off, than to suffer them to be too much acquainted with the Ports of *Italy* or *Cicilia*: Wherefore, their Embassadors consulting all the following Winter; at last agreed (at *Rome*) the Emperour to set forth 82 Gallies, the *Venetians* as many, and the Pope 36; in all 200. The *Venetians* were to lend the Pope as many rigged Gallies as he would furnish with men: and the Emperour and State of *Genna* to find shipping, to transport the Land Forces and Victual. *Auria* was *Charls* his General: *Grimmanns* a Patriarch, the Popes: *Capellus* for the *Venetians*: to whom was joyned, *Justinianus*, a chief Senatour very expert in Sea-matters. *Gonzaga* Vice-oy of *Sicily* was to command the Land-Forces: and what ever was gotten from

from the *Turks* in *Greece*, the *Islands* or *Dalmatia*, was to be the *Venetians*, who had been so injured by them. *Charls.* also promising the Confederates, to have what wheat they would out of *Sicily*, for reasonable price, and without Custom.

Solyman understanding this, commanded *Barbarussa* to make ready his Fleet, and do all harm he could to the *Venetian's* *Islands*: who with 130 Warlike Gallies with the first of the Spring (in 1538) departed to *Crete*, where he unadvisedly landed most of his men, to surprize the City *Canea*. For *Gritus* with a strong Garrison, so vexed the *Turks* with great and small shot, and the sallying out of two *Italian* Companies, that he (having lost many) retired in such haste, that he left a 1000 *Turks* behind him, gone after booty; who were all slain by them of *Crete*. Then attempting divers other places, he was notably repulsed, with the City of *Candia*, not daring to meddle; but sayling almost round, took little *Sicilia* forsaken by the Inhabitants, which he firing, departed from *Crete*: for he heard, that *Capellus*, (come to *Corcyra*) would soon come to relieve it. *Auria*, came to *Corcyra* also, joyning with *Capellus*. *Barbarussa* then lay in the Bay of *Ambracia*, expecting the Christians entrance of its Strait, that he might sink them, with his Ordnance placed on both sides; for *Grimmanus* had (a little before) begun to besiege *Prevesa* upon the Promontorie of *Aetium*, fast by that strait, so battering the Castle, that had not the *Turks* from *Aetolia* come to relieve it with a strong power, he had probably taken it; wherefore, the Patriarch, returned to *Corcyra*, having well viewed the Straits of that Bay, and the *Turks* Fleet at Anchor therein: upon whose Relation, the great Commanders consulted what course best to take, for their better proceeding: *Gonzaga* was of opinion, *Prevesa's* Castle was with all their Force to be assaulted, which taken, all passages might easily be taken from the enemies Fleet in the Bay, by sink-
ing

ing a great ship in the strait's mouth : and mooring three great Gallies full of Artillery ; so that if *Barbarussa* would adventure forth, he must needs be sunk. *Auria* replied, *Gonzaga's* Counsel was in shew glorious ; but most dangerous to execute, both for the peril of landing Souldiers and Ordnance : it being to be thought, the *Aetolian* Horie, would (as before) speedily come for relief, whose force their Foot could scarce abide. And if the Fleet (*Autumn* approaching) should by force of Weather forsake that coast : whence should the Landed men get any Victual in the enemy's Country? &c. Wherefore he thought best, if the enemy could not be drawn out to Battel, to go into *Naupactum*-Bay, taking that Town, not greatly fortified, so to ransack all Towns to the bottom of *Corynth* Bay, which the *Greeks* in the Fleet said, might easily be done; whereby it might happen, that *Barbarussa*, would for shame come out and joyn Battel. This counsel was best liked of, and *Auria* came to *Ambracia* Bay, so placing his Fleet (25⁰ sayl) that the *Turks* might easily number them. At which sight *Barbarussa* (though courageous) was exceedingly moved : So that an Eunuch (sent by *Solyman* as *Barbarussa's* Companion) seeing him to delay the time, did uncivilly and proudly take him up, because he would not forthwith go out of the Bay, and fight with the daring Christians : concluding, he should beware, that he fearing a most honourable death (uncertain though the battel were lost) drew not on himself the sure danger of a most shameful death by *Solyman's* displeasure : Whereupon *Barbarussa* turning him to *Salec*, said, *We ought, for that I can see, adventure this battel although much disadvantageous, lest haply we perish by the complaints of this barking Demie-man ;* So weighing Anchor at the time that *Auria* was on his way toward *Naupactum*, thinking he durst not come out, who being come to *Lenecade*, the enemies Fleet was descryed from the top of *Bondelmerius* great Gallion, making towards them, keeping

keeping close by the shoar: the crafty *Turk*, counting it less losse (if the worst should happen) to lose the Gallies than the men. *Auria* somewhat troubled hereat, yet commanded the Fleet to prepare to battell, and follow his Admiral Gallee. The *Turks* Fleet was come into the open sea in such order with 150 Gallies, that *Auria* confessed afterwards, a more firm and orderly Fleet, could not have been brought out by any: before which came *Drogut* an arch Pirate with about 20 nimble Gallies. *Capellus* came in his long boat to *Auria*, requesting that he with his Gallies might give the first charge: whom *Auria* thanking and praising, requested him to follow him, to whom he would give a seasonable signe what to do. The foremost of the *Turks* Gallies was come to the great Galleon (the foremost of the Christian Fleet) whereto were sent some Gallies from *Salec*, to help assaile it, which shooting afar off, did no harm, nor *Bondelmerius* them; who suffered not a piece to be discharged, expecting them to come nearer: who coming accordingly, were by the great and small shot glad to stay and retire: *Auria* the while, called back the Ships gone before, towing out his Galleon, and charging the Captains of the Gallies to make ready upon signal given; yet was he not minded to fight without his ships: which the enemy perceiving, sought by all means to fight before the coming in of the tall ships: for it was so calm, that the ships could not keep way with the Gallies and the smooth water offering an opportunity for battell: so that *Grimannus* cryed aloud to *Auria*, to give the signal, &c. who fetching a great compass, held a strange course (hovering about his ships) of purpose to draw the enemies Gallies within danger of his great ships; but *Barbarossa* doubting to be circumvented with some finess, stayed his course, expecting to what purpose that his strange course tended: both his wings the while, had begun in divers places to encounter with the Christians: some still vainely assailing

ing *Bondelmerius*: others had sore beaten two ships with their Ordnance, wherein 2 *Spanish* Companies were embarked, many men being slain: 2 other ships laden with victual were burnt, and some few men saved by their ship-boats, and by swimming to the next ships. In the close of the evening, *Salic* took 2 Gallies stragling behind: After which, was taken the ship of *Figaroa* a *Spaniard*, (though his men fought most valiantly for a time) whose son taken with him (beautified with nature's gifts) was afterwards presented to *Solyman*, turning *Turk*, and growing in credit, obtaining his Fathers liberty after 3 years miserable imprisonment, sending him home well rewarded. Whilst both Fleets lay expecting their most advantage, a great tempest of Thunder, Lightning & Rain, with a fresh Easterly gale, arose. The Christians seeing the *Turks* hoysing up their small sayls, hoysed up both small and great, sparing no Oar, to clear themselves of the enemy. and that disorderly and in great haste: So that *Auria*, (called a second *Neptune*) was that day accounted no Caprain. *Barbarussa* is reported, to have pursued them a while, till through the night's darkness, he stayed his course; for the Admirals had put out their Lights in the poupes: whereat he laughing, said oft in *Spanish*, *Auria* hath therefore put out his Light, The better in the dark to hide his flight. Being come to *Corcyra*, they generally thought, by that sudden storm, they had avoided a great danger. The Emperials (to excuse *Auria*) imputed it to the *Venetians*; who would never take any *Spaniards* into their Gallies: wherefore *Auria* doubting of them, refrained batle: and the rather, because they had hoysed their sayls tyed to their Yards with lines: which they cutting, might flye which way they would. Shortly after, came *Barbarussa* to the Isle *Naxos*, about 4 leagues from *Corcyra* Eastward, braving the Christians: *Gonzaga* grieving, requested the 3 great Commanders, for the Christian's Honour, to repress their insolence; at last (the *Vene-*

sions taking in some *Spanish* Companies) they were to give battel in 4 Squadrons; but it was so long protracted, that *Barbarossa* fearing Tempests, returned about *Octob. 7.* into the Bay of *Ambracia*: After which, the Generals went to besiege *Newcastle*, a strong Turkish Town in the Bay of *Sinus Rizonicus*: the people were *Dalmatians*; *Epirots* who had renounced their Religion, and some *Turks*: which they soon won, with a great prey, and a number of captives: and 3 dayes after the Castle was also yielded, the *Turks* covenanting in vain to depart with life and liberty.

This Town (for all the Covenants of the League) was reserved for the Emperour: and *Sarmentus* with 4000 old *Spanish* Souldiers left in Garrison: *Capellus* urging in vain the *Venetians* right: Wherefore the grieved Senate (now assured of an ill neighbour to their Town *Castrum*) decreed to sue to *Solyman* for peace: which they easily obtained a little while, by *Gritus* their Duke's son, and *Rynem* the *French* Embassadour, who told the *Bassas*, that the *Venetians* League with *Charls*, was made without most of the Senates consent.

Barbarossa putting to sea to relieve *Newcastle*, many of his Gallies were by a Tempest, cast away on the *Acroceraunian* Rocks: 20000 men being reported to be lost. *Capellus* would have perswaded *Auria* to pursue *Barbarossa* so distressed: which, *Gonzaga* well liked, to recompence the former disgrace; but *Auria* not liking the matter, presently hoysed sayl for *Italy*, leaving *Capellus* in such a rage, that he detested himself for submitting to another man, wishing the Captains present, never to be subject to a stranger, &c. But *Auria* referring all he said, and did, to the Emperour's profit, so far, that *Ursinus* (then serving the *Venetian*) merrily said, *Auria* had done nothing, but politiquly to set the *Venetians* and *Turks* together by the ears: opening a gate for a long War, &c. without his losing one Galley; for many thought that would sort

to *Charls's* great good : when the *Venetians*, spent with long and chargable wars, should be stripped by force, or wrung by necessity, from Lands and Territories.

Solyman grieved, determined to besiege *Newcastle* again by sea and land, causing also *Nauplium* and *Epidaurus* in *Peloponnesus* (*Venetian* Cities) to be besieged ; yet he took singular pleasure, that *Barbarussa* (the worst furnished) had driven the great Christian Fleet out of the sea. Wherefore at Spring, 1539. *Barbarussa* repaired his Fleet, notably furnishing it, and manning his Gallies most with select Souldiers ; and, Summer well come on, He came to *Rizonicus Bay* ; when *Ulames* Governour of *Bosna*, appeared with his Forces on the Mountains, as he had in charge. *Barbarussa* sent before him *Dragut* and *Corsetus* with 30 Gallies, who landing their men at *Castro-novum* or *Newcastle*, were encountred by *Sarmentus*, and forced to their Gallies, many being slain and taken : After which, came *Barbarussa* with 60 Gallies, and 3 tall ships, which carried all warlike provisions : spending 3 dayes in landing his Ordnance, and casting up Trenches, done but by night, for the Town shot, which flew in that space about 1000 *Turks* : *Agis Hariadennus*, as it were a King at *Taiorea* in *Africa*, being one, to *Barbarussas's* great grief : who gave a fourth part of his 54 battering pieces to *Ulames* on the North side, himself battering the East side in 3 places ; and *Salec* from sea battering another part. *Sarmentus* thus assailed, did what he could to repair the breaches : the *Turks* the while taking a Tower, whence (having displayed their Ensignes) they sore troubled the *Spaniards* : *Ulames* also had made a breach, and was ready to enter. Whereupon *Sarmentus* commanded the hurt Souldiers to get into the Castle below, and the rest with him to take the Market-place : where the *Turks* (breaking in) made a most bloody fight : the *Spaniards* being almost every man slain, *Sarmentus* (wounded in the face with 3 arrows, and wearied) seeing *Fria* a Cap-

tain ready to flee sharply reprov'ing him, caught him by the hand, making him tarry, till, both slain, many valiant Captains were there lost. *Arins* with the wounded Souldiers in the Castle, now yielded: whose lives *Barbarussa* (as he promised) spared, but carried them into captivity; and desirous to send *Sarmentus's* Head to *Solymán*, he offered money and liberty for his body, but it could not be known among so many dead heaps. *Barbarussa* proud of this Victory, wrote threats to *Bembus* a *Venetian* Senatour, Governour of *Cattarus* in the bottom of that Bay, to deliver the City, else he would assaule it. *Bembus* answered, in so doing, he should violate the late League, and that he should find him ready to repel his Forces: He displeased, sent some Gallies discharging great pieces at *Cattarus*, as if come to besiege it: *Bembus* discharging as many more at them, shewed his men on the Walls; whereupon *Barbarussa* returned to *Castronovum*, and (appeased with Presents from *Bembus*) he departed out of the Bay.

The long wars between the Emperour and French King were now well pacified, and such shew of Friendship betwixt them, that most men thought they would (as one) go against the *Turk*: which opinion (not wholly believed by the wiser sort) this also confirmed, that *Vastins* and *Hanebald* (2 of their most famous Captains) were sent Embassadors to draw the *Venetians* into the confederation of that War: who gallantly coming to *Venice*, were by Duke *Landus* and the State, magnificently received, the people flocking together to behold them, especially *Vastins* with his tall and comely person. They having audience in the Senate, *Vastins* arising from the Dukes side, made an Oration, shewing, That by Gods great Providence, two of the mightiest Kings of *Europe*, having had long mortal wars, were (being touched with zeal of Religion) become great friends, to revenge so many calamities received from the Infidel; that they were sent to kindle in them

them the like zeal, who being of such power at sea, were wished for (of all other) as their Confederates in that sacred war, and hoped Victory. As for Land Forces, unto those lately brought into the field at *Vienna*, should be joined all the horse & Infantry of *France* & all the forces of *Sigismund* King of *Polonia*. Wherefore the Victorious Emperour, and most Christian King *Francis* did most instantly request them to enter into the like godly cogitations, &c. For it might worthily seem a most shameful thing unto them to have renewed their League, &c. Neither did it beseem that most wealthy State, to be terrified, with any charges, from what was good and right; for by the profit of one sea or land-Victory, they should to their incomparable praise recompence all former losses.

The Duke answered in the name of the State; Never any thing happened to them more honourable, or more desirable, than the hope of such a peace, wholesome to the endangered *Venetian* State, and wondrously to be desired of all Christian Princes; if those two (most mighty) would sincerely, religiously, and unitedly resolve upon that sacred War: for then would the *Venetians* not be wanting, &c. but end their League with the *Turk*: wherefore it was to be requested of the Almighty God, that they would speedily and seriously fulfil that hope of Peace, which they had in shew promised.

Few dayes after, some select Senatours sitting in Council, calling the Embassadors, asked them, if they knew any thing of the Capitulation of that League: and whether they thought, *Charls* in regard thereof, would give *Francis* his son the Dukedome of *Millane*, as was reported? *Hansbald* was silent: *Vastius* said, He knew no more but that they had agreed betwixt themselves, and that the Emperours desired peace, to help the afflicted &c. could not be effected without yielding in many things to the requests of the *French* King, &c. The Nobility and Authority of this Embassage, more moved the Senate, than

he former Embassadors, *Mendoza* a Spaniard and *Pellerius* a French-man, then present; yet they much suspected it, becaule containing no certain resolution, &c. yet all seemed to rest in this point, that the *Venetians* in hope of this League, should neglect the renewing of last-years League with *Solymán*, now almost expired. On which uncertainty the grave Senatours thought it too dangerous to depend: yet the Senate was wonderfully divided. Some inveighed against the renewing of that shameful League with the Infidels, urging with many reasons the Christian Confederation: Others of deeper reach, considering their exceeding harms by falling out with the *Turk*, and suspecting the Emperours drift, with the great dearth then in the City; not to be relieved but out of *Macedonia* and *Greece*: *Charls* having then imposed a Custome on all Corn (coming out of *Sicily*) amounting to the price of the Corn and freight: which mischiefs, they said, were to be prevented by renewing of the league: They spent almost whole Winter-nights in the Court, consulting what best to do, but all there said, or decreed, was made known; not only to the Embassadors, but in Provinces far off, never before in that State known. *Foscarnus*, an old Senatour perceiving it, said, The State was betrayed by multitude and corruption of Voyces, and must shortly perish, if not speedily committed to some few (for there were almost 200 Voyces) reducing them to 50, who were holden for men of greatest gravity & secrecy; but *Foscarnus*, soon after fell into such hatred, that he was by the Voyces of the multitude thrust out of Council himself, and kept a great while from all City-preferments: which disgrace turned afterwards to his great honour and credit (as one foreseeing much) when they were found out and condemned, who had traiterously revealed the secrets of the State.

The result was, That they doubting of the union of *Charls* and *Francis*, yet expecting the event, they sent two

Embassadours to them to discover their designs, and a third *Badoerius*, a wise man to *Solyman*, to prevent the same of the distrust of their agreement, and to spare no cost to save *Nauplium* and *Epidaurus*, which he required of them before he would grant a peace: And if it could not be obtained, to conclude a peace on any conditions: which the *Decemviri* thought to be most expedient; yet gave him secret instructions for yielding up the Cities, fearing the force and tumult of the multitude; for if they had sought for peace too late, *Solyman* would have encreased his insatiable desire, not granting peace except they (low and forsaken) would deliver the Islands *Cephalenia*, *Zante* and *Corcyra*, as grievous as the destruction of *Venice* itself. So *Vassius* and *Hanobald*, comming to hinder the League, wrought no more by their great diligence, than for the *Venetians* foreseeing the danger, to hasten to conclude the same: and undoubtedly *Hanobald* was sent but for fashion, and secretly, by *Pellicerius*, perswaded them to hasten the peace with *Solyman*: which *Badoerius* carefully soliciting, and loath to yield the Cities, offered *Solyman* a great sum instead of them: who threatningly took him up as a shameless dissembler: protesting, he would never grant him peace without it, rehearsing the most secret points of his Embassage, which *Badoerius* little thought he had known: wherefore (he also doubting of his life) accepted of peace, yielding those *Peloponnesian* Cities, and with them 2 Cities of *Dalmatia*, to the Senates great grief. The common people thinking he of himself had done it, were so enraged at him, that with much ado he was saved from exile, and his goods from confiscating, though the Traitors who had discovered the secrets were known: These were *Leonius* a Senatour and *Cabarius* Secretary to the *Decemviri* (who fled into *France*) and *Valerius* a Senatour's base son, the disperfer of the *Turks* money: who with his complices were hanged in the Market-place. About which

time, in 1540: *John* King of *Hungaria* died, after which great wars ensued, and the subversion of that flourishing Kingdom; for *Ferdinand* and *John* had made a League profitable to them both, and most welcome to the *Hungarians*, who divided into factions, yet enjoyed their Estates hereby, the strong Holds being kept by them who possessed them at the making of the peace: in the Capitulations whereof, *Ferdinand* was thenceforth to call *John* a King, who before called him but the Vayuod; also if *John* died, *Ferdinand* should succeed him in the whole Kingdom, which divers of the Nobles subscribed to: which condition was kept very secret for fear of *Solymán*, who accounted of that Kingdom as of his own. This matter is reported, to have been revealed by *Lascus* unto *Solymán*, to bring *John* into hatred. Whereupon *Solymán* exceedingly angry, called *John* unthankful Churl, saying to *Lutzu Bassa*: How unworthily do these two Christian Kings wear their Crowns? &c. who are not afraid for shame, or fear of God, for profit, to falsifie their Faith; but *John* greatly afraid, did by Friends and Presents pacifie *Solymán*, laying the blame upon *Ferdinand*, as better able to bear it. Not long after, *John* having set all in good order, and fortified *Buda*, being far in years, at the earnest request of most of his Nobility and other Friends, married *Isabel Sigismund's* Daughter of *Polonia*, begotten of the Lady *Bonasfortia* Daughter to *Galeasius* Duke of *Millane*: which *Solymán* liked well of, having often condemned his single life; but *Ferdinand* disliked it, foreseeing if he should have a son, himself should be rejected as a Stranger. *Isabel* soon conceived with child, and was very big: when *John* was forced personally to go against *Maylat* and *Balas*, Governours of *Transilvania*: *Maylat* seeking to make himself King. But *Solymán* detesting his arrogancy, and hating him for the death of *Gritius* and the *Turks* then slain, wished *John* to be more circumspect, whom he trusted with such a Country; So

Maylat

Maylat fearing to be thrust quite out of Government by *John*, thought best to raise up all the Province into Rebellion, taking part with *Ferdinand*, who secretly furthered it to the utmost: (for these two Kings in heart envied each other). *John* then exacting (chiefly of the *Transilvanians*) a great summe to pay the *Turk* his two years Tribute, was a fit occasion to raise the people: to appease which dangerous troubles, *John* sent a great power into *Transilvania*, following after in his Chariot, not well recovered of his sickness. The Noble men entering it in two places, the tumult was by force and policy well pacified, and some chief offenders executed: *Maylat* retiring with all his wealth, into strong *Fogaras*, which they shortly after, hardly besieged: *John* himself laying sick of an Ague at *Sibynium* about a mile from *Fogaras* (into which he relapsed through too much care and pains in travelling in that hot season). News was brought (the while) that his Queen was delivered of a son: which once bruited, the *Hungarians* as overjoyed, came to the Court, discharging their pieces in triumph, with all signs of joy possible: the Noblemen came from the Camp to rejoyce with the King, and all the Army was filled with gladnesse: and a royal Feast was prepared which they would have the King honour with his presence (though unwilling) as but a little recovered; yet he yielding to thir importunity, he forgot himself, eating and drinking more liberally, than was for the health of his weak Body: whereby his Feavour was renewed; Wherefore feeling his end draw fast on, he appointed his son his Heir, committing his Tutition to *George Bishop of Veradium* & *Peter Vicche* his nigh kinsman, requesting the nobles to prefer his son before a Stranger; saying, *Solyman* would surely protect the Kingdom and his Son, if they in time sending Presents, promised he should reign as his Tributary; so presently after dying.

This King, besides his vigilant, courteous, gentle and

bountifull Nature and Learning, used oft to say, that the love of valiant men got by bounty and courtesie was the best Treasures of a Prince: for that the thankful did oft in some worthy service, fully repay what had been bestowed: the unthankful shamefully bearing the witness of anothers Vertue. His death was concealed till the Nobles had agreed with *Maylat* to take the oath of Allegiance to the King and his Son, and to enjoy his former Government.

Then they decreed in Council to send the appointed Embassage to *Solyman*: so *Exechius* Bishop of *Quinque-Ecclesia*, and *Verbetius* the aged Chancellour, were dispatched with ten curious wrought Bowls of Gold, 600 of Silver guilt, and engraven: 50 pieces of Purple silk and gold-cloath, and 30 pound of coyned Gold, as two years tribute, who came to *Constantinople*.

The Kings dead body was the while with much heavinesse, and most of the Army, solemnly buried at *Alba Regalis*: After which the young child (was Christened and called *Steven*, and Crowned with the Ancient Crown of King *Steven*, who first erected that Kingdom; yet the Royal Dignity was given given to the Queen so as in all publique Writings &c. The Bishop was Treasurer, and commanded the strong Holds: yet the Souldiers were at the devotion of *Thuraccus*: and *Vicche* (as a middle man) was named High Constable.

This Bishop was born in *Croatia* and brought up from his youth in the House of King *John*, where Vertue and Industry never wanted relief. Having forsaken his Monastick Profession, as weary of its straitnesse; he still followed *John* driven out of his Kingdom, winning such credit, &c. that he obtained the Bishoprick of *Vera-dium* after *Sibbachus* slain by *Gritus*'s treachery: He was such a notable man in his religious service, and otherwise, that *John* would confesse himself to reign by his special industry: and King *Ferdinand* would oft say,
he

he envied at *John* for nothing he had, but for one hooded fello v, better for defence of a Kingdom, than 10000 with Helms on their heads. Taking on him the tuition of the young King, he was busied in all weighty causes, civil and martiall: carefully labouring for the Hungarians concord in love and unity, and that no tumult or rebellion should arise. But *Ferdinand* now thought it a fit time to recover that so long desired Kingdom: being prickt forward by 7 men of great account in Hungary, who having taken *Ferdinand's* part, lived in exile, concluding their motives to him: What could be more dishonour to him, so great a King and Emperour Elect, than by shameful delay, to forsake them, being noble and valiant, who had followed his part, and were then ready with strong Troops, to do him their best service.

The *Germane* Captains also perswaded him, who, as martial men, desired honour, pay and prey. But *Lascus* (who in matters of Peace and War saw more than they) was of a contrary opinion, telling *Ferdinand* plainly in a Speech, that the Kingdom of Hungary was to be obtained rather by policy than force. by craving it of *Solyman*, to hold it of him by tribute, as King *John* did: saying, that if he should once joyn battel with the Turks, if the best did happen, &c. he should have endless Warre with such an enemy, &c.

His Speech so moved *Ferdinand*, that though purposing to proceed, yet he thought good to prove *Solymans* minde also: none being thought fitter for that Embassage, than *Lascus* himself, who being furnished with all necessities, departed from *Vienna*, to *Constantinople*: yet *Ferdinand* withall, prepared for Warres, trusting to the Emperours Brother, and the coming over of the Hungarians for present profit; but before open Warre, he sent the Count of *Salma* to the Queen, to shew her the Instruments of the last League betwixt her late Husband and him, exhorting her to yield up the Kingdom.

Kingdom, and nor by delay to hurt herself and Son; for *Ferdinand* offered to give the Child the Province of *Septisia*, as was before agreed in the League, and to the Queen a great Revenue, beside her Dowry; but if she would forget that League, he threatned, Neither *Charles* his Brother, nor he, wanted force, &c.

The Count hardly obtained admittance to the Queens presence; for *George* and *Vicche* mistrusting her courage, said, she was not to be spoken with, for sorrow; and that they were of Authority to give him audience and answer: which opinion of her weakness, She of an Heroical Spirit, took so in disgrace, that she said, She would kill herself, if the Embassadors were not suffered to come into her Chamber, (dark and hung with black) she sitting on a low Pallet, negligently attired, pale-coloured, yet then shedding no teares; yet her voice and countenance such as might shew her sorrow was nothing abated; for contemning all dangers, she resolved for defence of her Sovereignty, to call in the *Turks*.

After the Counts admittance, and delivery of his Message, she answered, Such was the fortune of her Sex and years, and griefs of body and minde, that she could neither take nor give counsel: wherefore she requested a convenient time to ask Counsel of her Father *Sigismund*, to whose just judgement she would stand, as she thought the Nobility would also; but if they would needs forthwith make Warre upon her, she said, the Emperour and *Ferdinand* should win no great honour to oppose a Widow consumed with teares, and a young Child yet crying in his Cradle.

The Count returning, told *Ferdinand*, he had heard and seen, that the Queen was wholly in the power of the Bishop, &c. the rest shifted among them the honours and preferments of the Realm, &c. wherefore all the hope was in speedy Warre, the Queen (with her Sonne) to be driven out of *Buda*, before they could take Arms, or well
advise

advise what to do: She delaying but to make her self stronger, and the while, to call in the Turk.

Ferdinand, furnished with money from *Charles*, soon raised a great Army, which he sent down *Danubius* to *Strigonium*, alwayes faithful to him. *Velfius* a Noble *Rhetian* was General: who to open first, the way to *Buda*, after nine dayes siege, took *Vicgrade*, (but not the Castle) with the losse of about two hundred men. Then passing *Danubius*, he took *Pesth*, forsaken by the enemy: also the City *Vacia*, without losse: whence crossing the River, he came before *Buda*, to terrifie the Citizens, and discover what he could, the Queens purpose, where *Perennis*, *Rascains*, and *Francopanes*, Bishop of *Agria*, revolted to *Ferdinand*: the Bishop was reputed to go upon meere conscience: yet *George* challenged him by Letters, in hope to be made a Cardinal.

Velfius lay as if he would rather besiege than assault the City. the *Germans* fetching in great booty round about, burning and carrying away prisoners: wherefore the *Hungarians* fell oft together by the eares, with them: they of *Buda* also, with their Troops, skirmished with them, if they did but stir out of the Camp, well defending the Villages; for *Thuraccus* had taken into the City, a multitude of light Horsemen.

Balthasar Pamphilus coming to the Gates, desired the Warders to give him leave to talk with his old Friend *Thuraccus*, and confer with him concerning the good of the State, which the General granting, he was let in with his Troop: and soon returning to the Camp, he reported, that viewing the strength of the City, he perceived, it was not to be taken without greater power, and a better season of the year. Wherefore *Velfius*, doubtful of the *Hungarian* his fidelity, in anger bid him void the Camp: who without his leave, had private conference with the enemy, and discouraging the Army,

Where-

Wherefore *Velfus* returned to *Vicegrade*, taking the Castle (wherein the ancient Crown was kept) with lesse losse than he had the lower Town. Ere long, he marching to *Alba Regalis* through *Perenus*, it was delivered him garrisoning it for *Ferdinand*.

Then he retired to *Strigonium*; and the rather, because the rough *Germans* and *Hungarians* could not agree together; so that *Velfus* parting them, was wounded in the Thigh, and *Perenus* hurt with a stone: Winter was also come far on, and the Souldiers crying out for pay.

Wherefore he also sick of the stone, billeted his men that Winter, about the Countrey, having new fortified *Pesth*; because 'twas reported, the *Turks* on their frontiers were preparing to ayd *Buda*.

While *Ferdinand* was levying his forces, the Queen had craved ayd of the Turk's bordering-Lieutenants: who answered, they might in no case, without expresse Command from *Solymán*, depart from their charges: besides, *Mahometes* was overcome by rewards from *Lascus* (in his passage) not to stir: wherefore she certified *Solymán*, what danger they were in, craving his speedy ayd.

Lascus falling sick by the way, sent his Physician before, to the great Bassaes, chiefly to *Lutizis*, by whom he hoped to obtain his desire: but in vain; for *Solymán*, besides defending his own right, thought it would redound to his great profit and glory, if he undertook the protection of the Widow and Fatherless Child in so great distress: wherefore he said to the Embassadors, that to declare his constancy, inseparable from his bounty, he would take such course, that the *Germans* should not long rejoyce of the Warres begun: and in token of friendship, gave them a royal Robe, a Buckler with a curious Bosse, a Horsemans Mace, with a golden handle

handle, and a Scimiter with a Scabbard richly set with Stones, writing to *Ustref* and *Mahometes*, speedily to ayd the Queen: who, it harmed through their default, it should cost them their heads.

The Embassadors were scarce gone, when *Lascus* came to *Constantinople*: whose succels he understanding, yet he proceeded in his business, &c.

But when he often mentioned the Emperour, as if he would ayd his Brother with all the power of *Germany*, *Solyman* was so moved, that he was presently imprisoned: young *Rustan* Bessa especially, chiding him as worthy of death, for offending by his liberal speech, so courteous a Prince, and as it were, mocking the King of Kings, requiring friendship, while his Master most impudently warred in *Hungary*.

Ustreff and *Mahometes*, assembling their dispersed forces, by shipping brought them down *Savus* and *Dra-vus* into *Danubius*; (for 'tis hard to perform any great matter by Warre in *Hungary*, without the help of a great Fleet); but *Danubius* was then so frozen on both sides, that the middle was scarce open: so that the Turks not daring to return, were enforced to abide the Winters incredible hardnets in their Tents, to shew their readinesse: their most dear Horses starving for cold, and want of meat.

The Spring coming on (in the year of Christ 1541) they entred *Hungary*: with whom, *Thuraccus* the Queens General, joyned also: the Queen, sending presents to the Turks Generalls, victualling the Camp, and furnishing them with Ordnance for besieging of Cities holden by *Ferdinand*: who took *Vacia*, but badly defended: putting many to the Sword, and burning the City: thence removing to *Pesth*, a Hungarian and a German, so valiantly defended the City, (and the Turks not well relieved with Victuals) that they passing *Danubius*,

nubius, and restoring the Ordnance, returned home; but in their retiring the *Hungarians*, led by *Gharnus*, slew many, *Achomates* one of their best Captains being one.

The *Turks* gone, *Ferdinand*, perswading the Emperour not to give over the War so fortunately begun, the late supplies for *Velsius*, were sent into *Hungary*, under Lord *Regendorffe*; then gone as farre as *Possonium*, to relieve *Pesth*: unto whom *Velsius* gave place, who joyning with the old Army, marched to *Buda*, besieging it.

Upon a great Hill called *Gerard's Mount* (whose middle was equal with the top of the Castle over against it (a great Valley and deep Ditch laying betwixt) *Regendorffe* planted his Battery, so shaking a new Tower thereof, that it was thought it would fall: if it had, yet supposed dangerous to assault it, having a treble Wall; but he sparing the sumptuous Turrets and Galleries of the King's Pallace therein, sent to the Queen: wishing her to break in sunder the Bishops Fetters, and accept of *Ferdinands* offer: ready to bestow on her, a goodly Seigniory, honourably to live and bring up her Sonne in safety: which if she as a simple Woman, and ignorant of her own danger, should refuse, he would beat down the Pallace about her eares.

The Bishop answered in her behalf, she was not such a fool, to exchange the Kingdom of *Hungary*, for the principality of *Sepusia*: scornfully answering him, as a very doting and mad old man, &c. And above all, requesting him of private courtesie, to discharge his Pieces with a little lesse noyse, lest his Sow at home, great with Pig, terrified, should farrow before her time, to the great grief of his Guests; for he was of a sharp and taunting spirit: so contemning the *Germans*, that two being taken burning Houses in the Kings Orchard, he

he hanged two Hogs on the Gallows with them.

Ere long, *Regendorffe* removed to a place called the **JEWES GRAVES**, near *Jewes Gate*: the Bishop quipping him now, as a proper wise man: who had pitched his Tents in a most fit place, among the dead, &c.

But he battering the Walls in two places, a great part thereof was beaten down; another part overcharged with Earth (cast up within side, for strengthening it) then fell down also, to the exceeding dismaying of them in the City: which opportunity, *Regendorffe* let slip, either (through the smock and dust) not well aware, or doing all things leisurely and suspiciously, and the *Germans* not so easily brought to a sudden assault, as *Spaniards*, *Italians* and *French*; so that it was deterred, (night coming fast on) till the next morning: the *Budians* the while, with incredible diligence, raising a rampier instead thereof.

In the morning they fiercely assaulted it, so that *Fotiscus*, with some Companies, entering a shattered adjoining House, had almost recovered the top of the Rampier; but they of *Buda*, wondrously withstanding (the Bishop encouraging and fighting amongst them) the *Germans* were forced to retire, above 800 men being lost: *Perenus* being also repoll'd, (but with lesse losse) at the breach at the *Gate Sabatina*.

Then he began to undermine the City; but, by countermines, was disappointed: yet, the common people in the City, pinched with hunger, mutinously cryed out, 'twas time to yield, and end those common miseries; but the Bishop shewing but himself in the Market-place, as if he would have preached, could turn the peevish people which way he pleased.

After

After this, the City had almost by the treason of one *Bornemissa* a Lawyer been lost; who hating the Bishop, for taking part with a Banckrupt Jew against him, promised *Revalius* the Enemies Marshal, to open a blind Postern in *St. Maries* yard, whereby he might enter.

Regendorffe so liked thereof, that he thought not good to use the service of the *Hungarians* therein: against the request of *Bornemissa*, that many guiltless people might not be slaughtered by the *Germans*; but he hoping by excluding the *Hungarians* to have all the glory of the Victory to himself, made as if he would use the *Hungarians*, glossing with *Revalius*, whose Sonne he took as a pledge.

About midnight, he sent four Select Companies of *Germanes*, with great silence to the Postern: his Sonne Condi standing ready to enter with a strong Troop, when the *Germans* let in, should break open the great Gate.

Bornemissa opening the Postern, had silently received in most of them; but still asking softly for *Revalius*, and they answering in the *German* Tongue, he was so surprized with fear, that as amazed, he forgot to conduct the *Germans*: who knew not which way first to go, stealing on softly for fear of treason, still asking for their Guide; but by their matches and noyse of Armour, being descryed by the Watch: they not giving the Word, an Alarm was raised, who ignorant of the way, and now chased with their own fear, ran back to the Postern in such haste, that they sadly wrung each other in getting out. And the passage being much letted by the Weapons of the first, cast acrosse the way to run the lighter.

Bacianus who had charge of the watch, first set upon them: then *Vicche* from the Market place came thither, with

with a strong company: many of the valiantest Germans were slain or taken, some being *Bornemissa's* Friends (himself being got out with the foremost) whom the Bishop by torture wrung the plot out of, then executing them; *Revalius Bornemissa* lamenting, that besides the name of a Traitor, he had lost all and undone his Friends and Kindred. *Regendorff* (condemned even of the common Souldiers for his foolish pride, &c.) from that time set him down (by long siege) to win the City.

Solyman hearing of the Queen's distress in *Hungaria*, consulted with his *Bassas* of the purposes and power of his enemies, there and elsewhere: and sent first, *Solyman Bassa* to *Babylon*, to defend *Mesopotamia*, and his Frontiers along *Tygris* against *Tamas* the *Persian* King: sending *Mahometes Bassa* into *Hungaria*: and after him *Ustreff Bassa* with another Army, to stay at *Belgrade*, in readinesse to ayd *Mahometes* upon occasion: committing his Navy to *Barbarussa*, for defence of *Greece* and *Epirus* against *Auria*: who a little before had driven the *Turks* and *Moors* out of 5 Cities, and all along the Coast of *Africk* called *Mahomedie* except *Leptis*, now called *Africa*, causing those Cities to submit to *Muleasses* of *Tunis*. And because *Maylat* the Vayvod took part with *Ferdinand*, he sent against him, *Achomates* Governour of *Nicopolis*, commanding *Peter* of *Moldavia*, Prince of *Valachia* to ayd him: who came with 30000 Horsemen. Himself also doubting more of the Christian Princes purposes, than he needed, raised a third Army, about *Hadrianople*, to ayd *Mahometes* and *Ustreff*, keeping with him his son in law, *Rustan* made 1 of his 4 great *Bassas*, having thrust out *Lustibeius* or *Lutzis* as aforesaid, but at this time done. *Mahometes* entering *Hungaria* about the midst of *June*, 1541. took along with him the other *Mahometes*, Governour of *Belgrade*, joyning with him, the power of *Bosna* under *Ulema* the *Persian*, for old *Ustreff* was lately dead, The Christians now consulted, whether to continue

nue the siege, or go meet them and joyn battell; but *Regendorff* prevailed for continuing the siege, though divers perswaded him to crosse the River to *Pesth*, or retire to *Vicegrade* or *Strigonium*: Wherefore removing, he encamped on the further side of the City at the foot of *Gerard's Mount*, where the Hill leaveth a fair Plain toward the East,, that the *Turks*, whom he knew would not go far from their Fleet and the River, should be forced to pass by his great Ordnance, aptly placed on the Front of his Trenches. On the right hand, on a small rising ground, he placed the lesser Camp of *Hungarians*: making also a bridge from his Camp, into a small Island in the River, and, with a Fort, commanded both the River and Plain; to beat their Fleet coming up, and themselves marching in the Plain. The *Turks* being come nigh the City, *Valentinus Thyraccus* met them with 2000 Horse, instructing them, what the Christians did, what their strength and the most conveniently to encamp. Wherefore, the *Bassa* boldly came within half a Mile of the Christian Camp; strongly intrenching himself round: but *Mahometes* of *Belgrade* politiquely took the higher ground next the *Hungarians* Tents. The Christian Fleet had 24 Gallies, about 80 small Pinaces, and little lesse than 100 ships of burden, and other small boats; the *Turks* Fleet not thought above half so great. Near the little Island aforesaid, had the *Turks* taken the Island *Sepelia*, over against their own Camp, where casting up a great Bulwark, they thence shot at the Fort, in the little Island, and at their vessels in the River as the Christians did at them. *Cepelia*, layeth about 40 miles long in *Danubius* full of Villages: so commodiously, that if *Regendorff* had at first fortified it, as he was perswaded, the *Turks* could not have encamped in the Plain, to their great disadvantage; but he was not willing to divide his Forces, till he had some new supply from *Ferdinand*. The Armies thus laying,, there were light skirmishes every day, and sometime one brave man challenging

challenging forth another hand to hand: which was so pleasant to behold, that both Armies many times would forbear to shoot to see those prove their manhood on each other with spears and words only. In which skirmishes the *Germans* were oft put to the worst, by reason of their heavy Horses, fitter for a set-battel: but the *Hungarians* acquainted with the *Turks* manner of fight, and better Armed, did foil them, though more in number. Noble *Rayschachius* (a *German*) his valiant son, going forth, unknown to his Father, bare himself so gallantly against the enemy in his Father's and Armie's fight, that he was highly commended (chiefly of his Father); yet was he encompassed and slain. *Rayschachius* moved with his death, said to the other Captains: This worthy Gentleman, whoever he be, deserves eternal commendation, and to be most honourably buried by the whole Army. As the other Captains were approving his speech, the dead body was presented to the Father, all there present shedding tears: but *Rayschachius* was so struck at heart, that standing a while speechlesse, with his eyes set, he suddenly fell down dead: After which, the General commanded none on pain of death, to skirmish without leave, hanging one or two for so doing. So that the enemy would sometimes brave them, on the top of their own Trenches.

Many dayes having now passed: the *Turks* and *Budians*, daily increased in strength and courage: when on the other side, the contrary. Only the often Letters of *Ferdinand*, and the firm opinion, that *Charls* would not in so great danger, fail to ayd his brother, and the General's firm resolution, upheld their fainting minds. The *Turks* from the higher ground, and out of *Cepelia*, perceiving the *Germans* in the little Island as careless, agreed, at once to assaile divers of their Forts: landing at break of day, so closely and suddenly that they slew 600, ere well awake or armed: the rest fleeing to the Camp in such haste, that many fell beside the bridge & were drowned. The whole Camp

was wondrously troubled, the *Turks* with hideous cries raising the Alarm in divers places at once; yet *Herbessulfe* the Camp-master periwading some *German* companies and Souldiers in the Fleet, not to suffer the Ensignes and Ordnance to be so shamefully carried away: and *Marius* then landing divers Companies in the Island, they drave the *Turks* again to their boats, receiving no lesse losse themselves, than had the *Germans* before; It was said, the *Turks* Fleet might have been quite overthrown, if the Chrittians had courageously pursued them and landed with them; yet 4 *Turks* Pinnaces were sunk, 3 taken, and many *Turks* slain, or drowned in the River. Shortly after, the *Turks* did so assayl the Camp on every side, that they left them almost no time of rest; so that they almost despaired long to defend it; for the *Bassa* at *Belgrade*, taking to him the sick and wounded, sent fresh men still, in their stead: and *Valentinus* with *Harquebuss* *Janizaries* had driven *Perenus* with the *Hungarian* Horse out of the upper Camp, so that the nether Camp was hardly beset; yet the great Artillary from *Pesth* much troubled *Valentinus*, assaying it on that side. Some say, *Valentinus* did privately with *Perenus* speedily to provide for himself and his *Hungarians*: for there was a great Beast coming, which (at one morsel) would devour them all: This was *Solyman* coming in haste with a great Army: Wherefore *Perenus* told *Regendorff*, Except they would presently depart with the Army, he would in time shift for himself & Country-men: at last they agreed, it was best, next night, to pass the River to *Pesth* only the General said, he would not depart from *Buda* without *Ferdinands* command; so sending the Count of *Salma* swiftly up the River to *Vienna*, to know his pleasure (*Perenus* fretting at their long stay) 'twas resolved, next night when the Moon was down, to passe over in 4 Convoys: for 'twas not so easy to make a bridge over *Dannubius* as was supposed: which being almost planked, such a wind

and

and tempest arose, and the River was so rough, that the bridge was loosed and broken, many of its boats being carried away with the streams force. The 2 first Convoys passed well over; for though the *Budians* and *Turks* (seeing by day the Fleet drawing into one place) might suspect, yet could they foresee nothing of their sudden departure; but the vigilant eye was not long deceived, and the less, for that 2 Fugitives then discovered to the Bishop their flight: who presently certifying the *Bassas* thereof, they came to assault the Christians in their Camp with a horrible cry assailing their Trenches: The *German*s began to quail, yet, with the *Bohemians*, a while, notably resisted: All the Camp was filled with confusion, every man at the River-side striving to get aboard disorderly: *Regendorff's* Authority (through the nights darkness, so great noise of people, and Ordnance) being as nothing: who then lay in bed wounded in the shoulder by a Faulkon-shot falling in his Tent (as he was writing Letters to *Ferdinand*) striking a chest in sunder. The Foot-Captains envying at the Horsemen so well escaped, faintly resisted the enemy: the upmost Tents were first taken, and the *German-Foot* chased all over *Gerrards Mount*. They of *Buda* also entred the Camp on the Cities side, burning the Tents, a little before forsaken, and the Bishop firing a great stack of straw nigh the Rivers side, it gave such a light, that one might plainly see over *Danubius* to the Walls of *Pesth*: whereby, their flight by water, and confusion by land was discovered. Then was the Ordnance from every place, discharged upon the Fleet: *Cason* the *Turks* Admiral with his light-boats, setting on the ships crossing the River, taking divers boats laden with Souldiers, sinking others with his Ordnance. After the *Janizaries* brake into the lower Camp: the *Germans*, fleeing over the bridge into the little Island, were slain without mercy by the pursuers, many leaping into the River and perishing: 3000 sayl of all sorts were mingled together,

covering the River as with a Bridge, but the Christian Fleet, clearing themselves, and beating the *Turks* back with their Ordnance, got up to *Comara*. The other Land-Forces enduring the same fortune in the Camp; the *Bohemians* died there in night. Many were slain or saved by the *Budians*, as they fell into the hands of a merciful or mercileſſe man. But the Sun riſing, plainly diſcovered the ſlaughter and the Victory. About 3000 taking a little Hill by *Gerards Temple*, ſtood on their guard till above 2000 were ſlain: the reſt yielding in hope of life, were reſerved for a grievous ſpectacle. *Cáſon* coming to the ſhoar of *Peſth*, ſo feared thoſe eſcaped thither only with the cry of his Souldiers and noyſe of the Artillery, that the Horſmen for haſte to get out, were like to over-run each other, leaving behind them whatever good thing they had; yet ſome *Hungarians* ſtayed behind, riſing the Merchants ſhops: for *Peſth* was now become a notable Mart-Town, as of more ſafety than other Cities; but *Cáſon* entering it, ſlew ſome of thoſe greedy *Hungarians*: ſparing neither man woman or child, except ſome few reſerved for the *Turks* luſt or ſlaviſh labour: Above 20000 Chriſtians being one way or other reported to be ſlain in this War. There was taken 36 great battering pieces; Field-pieces 150, and wondrous ſtore of Arms and Ammunition and Victual. *Regendorff* was againſt his will carried aboard a Pinnaſſe by his Phyſitian and Chamberlain, and ſo was conveighed to the Iſland *Comara*; wherefore he ſhortly after, partly for his Wounds, but more through grief, died in the Village *Samarium*. *Solymán* ſtill doubting the coming of *Charls* and *Ferdinand* to *Buda*, was coming in ſuch haſte, that he cauſed his *Janizaries* to march as faſt as his Horſmen: but hearing of the Victory he came more leiſurely to *Buda*, in *Auguſt*, encamping on rother ſide of the City (the dead bodies lying yet unburied). and making one huge Camp of both Armies. He eſpecially commended the two *Mahometes*:
making

making him of *Belgrade* General of all his *European* Horse, the Victory being gotten chiefly by his means; rewarding the other Captains as they deserved, and augmenting their pay. After which, he commanded the prisoners about 800 to be brought forth, and led in long ropes all along the rangued Army in derision, then to be slain by his young Souldiers: sternly saying, they were worthy of such death who had waged war, while entreating a peace. There was one *Bavarian* exceeding tall: whom (in despite of the *German* Nation) he delivered to a little dwarf to be slain, his head being scarce so high as the Captives knees, who being long mangled about the legs with his little Scimitar fell down, and was with many feeble blows hardly at last slain: others hearning the Dwarf on, to satisfy the eyes of the disporting Princes. This done, *Solyman* sent Embassadors with Presents to the young King: 3 fair Horses with Golden-bridles, their trappings set with precious stones: 3 Robes of cloth of Gold, and to the chief Nobles, rich Gowns and Gold Chains: courteously requesting the Queen to send the young King attended with his Nobility, into the Camp, and without all fear to hope that all should go well both with her, and her son, &c. That *Solyman* would alwayes account of her as of his Daughter; but he came not to see her, as in courtesie he desired, because, by ancient custom, the *Othoman* Kings were forbidden to visit other mens Wives in their Houses, &c. The Queen answered very doubtfully; but the Bishop perswading and instantly requesting her, not to give the *Turks* occasion to suspect her distrust of them, by her delay; She sent him in Princely swathing cloaths in a rich Chariot with his Nurse, and certain great Ladies, with almost all the Nobility, to whom *Solyman* had sent presents, who was met on the way by Troops of the *Turks* brave Horsemen: and as he passed in the Camp, orderly stood the *Fanizaries* of *Solyman's* guard: Being brought into the Pavillion, *Solyman*

looked on him familiarly, talking with the Nurse & commanding his Sons, *Selimus* and *Bajazet*, begotten of *Roxalana*, to take him in their arms & kiss him, in true token of the love they would bear to him, whom they were in time to have their Friend & Tributary: But *Solyman*, while the Nobles were dining with the *Bassas*, had commanded certain Companies under colour of seeing the City, to take the Gate *Sabatina*, and chief Streets: which was so quietly and cunningly done, that a wary watchman beholding the manner of the *Turks* going to and fro, could scarce perceive how the gate was taken, till it was too late. The Gate, Market-place, and chief Streets so finely taken: the Captains of the *Janizaries* made Proclamations, That the Citizens should without fear keep in their Houses, and forthwith to deliver all their Weapons: which they did, receiving the *Turks* into their Houses, as their unwelcome guests; but such was the severity of their Martial Discipline, that none was wronged by them in word or deed. *Solyman* hearing of the City thus taken, sent the child back unto the Queen; but the chief Nobles he retained with him, to wit, *George* the Bishop: *Vicche*, *Thuracum*, *Verbetins* the Chancellour, *Urbanus* Governour of *Buda*; whose minds, this sudden and unexpected change troubled the more, because the great *Bassas* began to pick quarrels with them, and as it were to call them to account for all they had done. The Queen fearing and grieving, by humble Letters, requested *Solyman* not to forget the Faith given, and of late confirmed; but to send back the Noble men, who for their fidelity and valour had well deserved both of him and her: This she did by *Rustemes Bassa*, whom she had loaded with gifts, sending him a fair Coronet of her own, of Orient Pearl, and a goodly Jewel set with rich Stones, a present for his wife, *Solymans* Daughter. After which, *Solyman* consulted 4 dayes what order to take with that Kingdom. *Mahometes* advised him, to carry the child and all the Nobles to *Constantinople*;

Constantinople; and to leave such a Governour in *Buda*, as might put the people out of fear of servitude and bondage: yet by degrees to lay on them the Yoke of the *Turks* Government; but *Rustemes* (before corrupted) stood wholly upon terms of Honour; saying, Nothing could be more dishonourable to so mighty a Monarch, who had never blemished the glory of his Name, than after Victory, to break his Faith with a weak Woman and silly Infant, whom he had taken upon him to defend; but *Mahometes* of *Belgrade* then extraordinarily admitted into the Council among the great *Bassas*, disliked of both the former opinions, as too full of Lenity: and being asked his opinion, delivered it in a mischievous speech: saying towards the latter end thereof: Every year to take in hand so long and laboursome an expedition of an Army of Horse, Foot, Artillery, and a Fleet of Ships for defence of another man (as commonly we do) seemeth to be meer madnesse: Neither do I think it to stand with the Majesty of the *Othoman* Emperours, thus to be moved every year at the request of a puling Woman, crying for help; except you think it more profitable and honorable to mainrain a defensive than an invasive War: wherefore I think it best to turn this Kingdom (so oft conquered and defended by Law of Arms) like thy Ancestours, into form of a Province: the Queen I would have sent to her Father, and her son brought up in thy Court, and instructed in our Religion: the Nobility I wish to be slain; their Castles razed, and all their notablest Families to be carried away into *Asia*: the multitude kept under with good Garrisons, to till the ground and inhabit the Cities: so shall the *Hungarians* perceive themselves conquered, and the *Germans* forbear coming into *Hungary*, unless they will hazard both *Stiria* and *Austria*.

But *Solyman* before he would resolve of so great a matter, entered *Buda* with his two sons, Aug. 30. 1541. and in the Cathedral (before purified by his Priest) offered
the

the first *Mahometan*-sacrifice in *Buda*. Shortly after, he (for his own security and Honour) as it were moderated their opinions, publishing a Decree, That *Buda* should thenceforth be kept with a Garrison of *Turks*, and the Kingdom turned into a Turkish Province; the Queen with her son forthwith to depart and live in *Lippa*, a quiet and fertile Countrey beyond the River *Tybisus*, and near her Fathers borders: safely to be conducted thither by *Janizaries* with all her wealth: Wherefore she and her son, with mourning and tears (detesting inwardly his perfidious dealing) departed from *Buda*. The Nobles went with her also, who though sorrowful for this unexpected change, yet very glad of liberty and safety, whereof they had for 3 dayes despaired: only *Thuraccus* was kept in safe custody, because he was a martial man; and much also hated by the *Turks*, for the hard pursuit of *Cason* in *Austria*.

Ferdinand hearing of this shameful overthrow, and that *Solymán* was coming towards *Vienna*, sent *Velsius* (who never liked of *Buda* siege) to *Comara*, to stay their further flight, and gather together the dispersed Reliques of the Army, and to comfort the men with hope of new supplies. And somewhat to stay *Solymán*, he sent Count *Salma* and *Lithestaine* Embassadors with Presents and new conditions of peace: The Presents were, a high standing-Cup of Gold, curiously set with rich stones: and a wondrous Globe of Silver, daily expressing the passing of the Houres: the Planets motions, the change and full of the Moon, the motion of the upper Orbs: and that exactly, by certain wheels and weights within, devised and perfected by the most cunning Astronomers, for *Maximilian* the Emperour.

They at their landing, were first received by *Cason*, and brought into a rich Tent, the ground being covered with rich Carpets: to whom *Rustan Bassa* sent such cheer as the Camp afforded, especially most excellent Wine;

Next

Next day the *Bassas* feasted them : not sitting with their legs under them on the ground, as their manner was, but in Chairs at a Table; only *Mahometes* of *Belgrade*, an extraordinary guest, sat down upon a Cushion beneath the *Bassas*. Their chear was but Rice and Mutton, as if noting thereby the Christians excess: and the *Bassas* drink, fair water out of *Danubius*. After dinner, they were brought in to *Solyman*, each of them led betwixt 2 *Bassas*, holding them fast by the arms: so to kiss his hand; yet hath the Turkish Emperour sitting in his Throne, for fear of violence, laying by him, a Target, Scimitar, Iron Mace, with Bow and Arrows. The great Globe being brought in, filled *Solyman* and his *Bassas* with Admiration; for *Solyman* had curiously studied Astronomy, and especially Cosmography, as his leisure served.

The Embassadors desired him to give the Kingdom of *Hungary* to *Ferdinand*, almost on the same conditions that *Lascus* had required it for him, paying him such Tribute as *John* had done; promising to draw *Charls* into the same League; so that he might then at pleasure, turn his Forces upon the *Persian*: and urging *Ferdinand's* League with *John*, and so excusing him of the late war, they concluded, Nothing could be to him more commendable, profitable or Honourable, than to call such a King as *Ferdinand*, and also Emperour Elect, and brother of the great Emperour, his Tributary. *Solyman* 2 dayes after, answered by *Rustan*, that this was his resolute condition of peace: If *Ferdinand* would restore all places before belonging to King *Lewis*, and for ever abstain from *Hungary*; and for his often provocations, great travel and charges, he could be content to impose an easie Tribute upon *Austria*. But if those conditions seemed too heavy, he would cause by continual War, that such things as were taken from *Hungary*, should be required with the destruction of *Austria*. Though the Embassadors were much moved at the latter demand, yet they, to win some time, required

required a truce till *Ferdinand* and the Emperour might be made acquainted with the matter : which the *Turk*, winter coming fast on, would in no case grant. And being rewarded and sent away, *Solymán* commanded *Mahometes* of *Belgrade* to spoyle the borders of *Austria* all along *Danubius* : *Cason* also General of *Acanzii*, he sent into *Moravia*, but neither did any great harm : the Rivers rising, and abundance of Rain falling. *Solymán* made one *Solymán* a *Mahometan Hungarian*, Governour of *Buda* : who by justice and courtesie (with *Verbetius* the Chancellour) should endeavour to put the people in hope of long peace ; which done, after about 20 dayes stay, because of the rain and cold, and fearing to be shut in with the rising of the great Rivers, he determined to return : setting *Lascus* (in prison at *Belgrade*) at liberty, who soon dyed of the Flux in *Polonia*, supposed to be poysoned by the *Turks*, whose death the King himself much lamented.

Solymán being come to the River *Dravus*, it was told him that *Maylat* was taken by the cunning of *Peter* of *Moldavia*, and that *Transilvania* was well pacified, yielding to his obedience ; whereof he was passing glad, for he hated *Maylat* for *Gritus* and the *Turks* by him slain, and knew that the *Transilvanians* an invincible people was by him stirred up. This *Peter* uniting with *Achomates* against *Maylat*, they were 50000 Horse besides Foot, which (after the manner of those Countries) were not many : *Maylat* finding himself too weak, and despairing of ayd from *Ferdinand*, fled again into *Fogaras* : where, as in a most strong place, he had laid up his greatest substance and warlike provision, especially the rich spoyle taken from *Gritus* : *Achomates* coming and perceiving, it was not to be taken but with much labour and time, craftily sent a Messenger to him, perswading him to yield to *Solymán* : choosing rather to be called his Friend than his Enemy, &c. promising he would labour

labour for him as his Friend; that he might still enjoy the Government of *Transilvania*, paying him some small yearly Tribute, as he had before requested, &c. saying, *Solyman* was coming with his Victorious Army, who would with assured death revenge his vain hope of holding out. *Maylat* foreseeing it better to make a certain peace, than to endure an uncertain War, answered, He could be content to conclude a peace, so it were not on any hard conditions &c. Wherefore, he demanded *Achomates's* valiant son in Hostage for his coming into the Camp: *Achomates* said, he had given him to *Solyman*, and so had over him no power, but he promised him 4 of his best Captains: which *Maylat* accepting, came with a gallant retinue, and was honourably received:

The Parley was deferred till next day, that the *Moldavian* might take him, whom he invited to a Banquet; about mid-dinner, *Maylat* (of a very proud and cholerick nature) was by some insolent speech (of purpose) so fretted, that with his hand on his sword, he in a rage flung from the Table: the other guests starting up also, took him fuming, and crying out, he was shamefully betrayed (his followers being stript of all): In came *Achomates* the while, with deep dissimulation sharply reproving the *Moldavian*: whereto he scornfully (as if in contempt) answered, He had upon good cause taken *Maylat* prisoner, and would safely keep him for *Solyman*, to whom it only belonged to judge; Ere long, *Fogaras* was delivered with the Hostages, through fear or corruption.

This Town surrendred, almost all *Transilvania* was by *Solyman* given to the young King; to whom all the people most willingly submitted, swearing obedience, his Father having almost thirty yeares with justice and quietnesse Governed that Province: honouring him, the Queen, and his five Tutors, laying in *Leppa*, with many Presents:

At the same time, *Charls* the Emperour at the importunity of his Subjects of *Spain*, greatly prepared for conquering of *Algiers*: whose Pirates so infested all the Coast from *Gades* to the *Pyrenean* Mountains, that (all Merchandize set apart) they were glad to keep continual watch and ward: wherefore though he knew how hardly he was spoken of (for leaving his brother so hardly beheaded) yet he departed out of *Germany* into *Italy*: where, nigh *Verona*, he was met by *Farnesius* his son in law, *Vastius*, and the *Venetian* Embassadors, and brought to *Millane*: where he was with great solemnity joyfully received, and, under a Canopy of Gold, brought to the Pallace, in a plain black Cloak and Cap, mourning-wise; when as the vulgar expected him in his Royal Robes, and the Imperial Crown on his Head: his heavy countenance presaging the wofull overthrow the day before at *Buda*, not yet known in *Italy*: Thence departing to *Genoa*; he was advertised thereof from *Ferdinand* and of *Solymán's* coming; Whereupon, *Vastius* and *Anria* perswaded him to defer his *African* expedition till Spring: and with his present power to stay in *Italy*, making shew of returning to help his brother; and the while, to assure his State in *Italy* against the *French*: but he answered them sitting in Council; If he should then stay in *Italy*, 'twould be thought, he was for fear of the *Turks* fled out of *Germany* &c. hoping that *Algiers* might be won before the seas should grow rough and dangerous; which if so falling out, he would not much care what the *French* could do. There was a new grudge between him and them about the death of *Rinuo* the *French* Embassador for certain years to *Solymán*, who returning to *Constantinople* with new instructions from his Master, for confirming a further League: he was belaid (by some old Spanish soldiers upon the River *Padus*) and slain, together with *Fregosius*: or first tortured to get from him the secrets of his Negotiation, and then slain: *Vastius* in purgation of his credit,

credit, offering the combate to any of like quality that durst charge him with the truth thereof; but many thought he was worthily served, who stirred up the *Turks* against the Christians, discovering to them the Emperours designs; but whether well or ill, Pope *Paul* 3d. meeting *Charls* at *Luca*, could not, or would not determine. The Emperour there came thrice to talk with him, the Pope to him once: who not prevailing with him, for the appeasing the troubles like to arise betwixt him and the *French King*, perswaded him what he might, to employ those Forces in defence of his Brother *Ferdinand* and *Austria*, if *Solyman* should pursue his Victory; so prevailing little in the greatest publike matters, he took his leave, returning to *Rome*.

Charls the while, with some *Italian Bands* under *Columna*, and *Spinula*, and 6000 *Germans* came to the Port *Lune* imbarquing his Souldiers in Merchant-ships, and 35 Gallies; directing their course to the Islands *Baleares*; but were by a sudden tempest brought in sight of *Corfica*; and after 2 dayes tossing to and fro; the wind somewhat failing, they put into the Haven of *Syracusa*, now *Bonifacium*. Then putting to sea again for those Islands, he met with a Tempest from the West, more terrible than the first, divers Gallies losing their Masts and sayls, being glad with extream labour and peril to get into a Harbour of *Minorca*. Thence he passed over to *Majorca*, very glad that *Gonzaga* Viceroy of *Sicily* was come with 150 Gallies and ships, bringing Victual enough for a long war: *Mendoza* by reason of contrary winds, cut over directly with his Spanish Fleet to *Algiers*: so the Emperour by *Auria's* perswasion, hoysed sayl, and in two dayes came thither, anchoring in order before the City. Two *Algier-Pirates*, not knowing of the Fleet, fell into the Bay ere they were aware: the bigger, *Cycada* stemmed and sunk; the other with wondrous speed got into the Haven; *Mendoza* having passed the Cape of *Cassineus*, saluted

Intred the Emperour with all his Ordnance, giving knowledge the Spanish Fleet was not far behind: which were above 100 tall Ships, and of smaller Vessels far more: besides, the Foot embarked therein, were a great number of brave Horfmen: over whom the Duke of *Alba* commanded. These ships could not double the Cape, as did *Mendoza* with his Gallies, for it was a dead calm; but the billows went yet so high that the Souldiers could not land, but they must be washed up to the middle: which the Emperour thought not good to put them unto. He also staied for the Spanish ships, both that with united power he might more strongly assault the City, and to communicate the whole glory of the action with them, at whose request, forwardnesse and greatest charge he undertook it: which did not only disturb an assured Victory, but opened a way to all the ensuing calamities. The Emperour sent a Messenger to *Asan* the Eunuch (born in *Sardinia*) and brought up from a youth in the *Mahometan* superstition by *Barbarussa* (whom he left to keep his Kingdom in his absence) requiring him forthwith to deliver the City to *Charles* the mighty Emperour, come in person to be revenged on those horrible Pirates: which if he would do, the *Turks* should depart whither they would: the *Moors* to abide with goods and Religion as formerly; himself to receive great rewards in peace and war: so he would accept of that the fairest occasion to return again to the worshipping of the true God, and to enjoy the favour of the Emperour, and to revenge himself of *Barbarussa's* unnatural villany on his person: who answered, he thought him mad, that would follow his enemies Counsel, grinningly asking him, Upon what hope the Emperour trusted to win the City? the Messenger pointing to the Fleet, told him, That which thou seest, &c. who scornfully laughing, replied, And we with like force & valour will defend it, and make this place famous for your overthrows here twice, the 3d, time most famous by

by the Emperour's discomfiture: Its reported, there was an old Witch in *Algiers*, who had foretold the shipwreck and miseries of *Verra* and *Moncada*: prefixing a time, when the Christian Emperour, besieging the City, should receive a great losse by Sea and Land: which *Assan* so fed and augmented, that he not only encouraged his own men, but terrified the weaker sort of his enemies therewith, they being on so dangerous a coast, nigh Winter. There was in Garrison but 800 *Turks*; the other multitude of natural *Moors*, and thole born in *Granado*, scarce made 5000: to whom was joyned many rebellious fugitives, who fled thither out of the *Baleares*; But the wild *Numidians* made up a great number, which should molest the Christians in the open fields: *Assan* having allured the brutish people of the Countries therabouts to ayd him, for rewards and hope of spoyl: proposing also pain of death to any who should but look out heavily, or speak a word favouring of fear. The Emperour, after a convenient and soon landing of his Souldiers with plenty of Boats, and a little retting of them, divided his Army (which was about 20000 Footmen, besides Horsemen and other Volunteers) into 3 equal Battels; and 3 Field-pieces to a Battel, to terrifie the *Numidian* Horsemen still ready to charge them, if upon advantage. He encamped nigh the City between 2 deep Ditches, that none could well passe but by Bridge; and fast by on the left hand, was a Hill, whence it seemed, the City might well be battered. *Algiers* is like a Triang'e, fast by the sea, having a Haven neither great, nor safe from the North-wind: the Houses farther off, standing in seemly order on the rising of a steep Hill, as it were by degrees, most beautiful to behold. The Emperour was in great hope to win the City; and the rather, because while he assaulted it on the East-side, his ships and galleys on the North, might with Ordnance beat the enemy all along the wall.

Nigh the Hills-rising, lay the *Spaniards* in the midst of the *Germans* with the Emperour: in the plain nighest the sea, the *Italians*. All that day, the Ordnance was landing, and the Hories shipping: The *Numidians* from the Mountains skirmished afar off, with small danger, but much trouble to the *Spaniards*: and at night they never left shooting, and where they saw fire, came Arrows thick as Hail; so that the *Spaniards* put out their fires, silently expecting the day; which being come, by the perswasion of *Sandes* the Camp-Master, they climbing up the Mountains, put the *Numidians* to flight, laying there (as it were encamped in the Shepherds-Cottages) but that day, such a multitude flock'd about them, that they were glad to fight in a Ring; yet their fiercenesse was soon repressed, by the *Sicilian* Companies of bright-armed pike-men and *Harquebusiers* close by them: the *Numidian* Foot are most youths, half-naked, using nought but Darts; of wondrous ninblenesse, fighting mingled with their Horsemen, who use long spears armed at both ends: As the Emperour was beholding the unshipping of the Warlike necessities: a storm of wind and rain began about 6 in the afternoon, holding on all that night with such rage, that the whole Army at land was wondrously troubled, and a great part of the Fleet, driven aground, perished: & 3 *Italian* Companies who lay without the Trenches against sudden assault, were exceedingly overcome with extremity of the weather; for they could neither well stand nor lye down, sinking up at every step to the calf of the leg in mire: upon these the enemy, perceiving their distress, sallyed out at day-dawning, and to charged them, that their match and powder being wet, they all fled but a few Pikemen, quickly slain, they pursuing the rest over the Trenches into the Camp; Whereupon, *Columna* being sent thither with certain Companies over the Bridge, the Enemy did indeed or in shew disorderly retire: *Gonzaga* the Viceroy coming in also, and

angry

angry with them that fled, perswaded them to recompence their flight by driving the enemy to his own door, which *Columna* said could not be done without great peril; but *Gonzaga* thinking also that perhaps the enemy being hastily pursued, they might together with them enter the City without danger of the Artillery; *Spinula* led forth the other *Italian* Companies, who put them to flight, pursuing them to the very gates, where many (shut out for fear) elcaped some to another Gate, some to the Mountains. But then they began to overwhelm them with darts and shot from the Walls with terrible outcries, and those shut out returned again to fight: they also within sallied forth, hardly charging them: who gauled with shot from the Walls, and rent in sunder with the Ordnance, fled most disorderly; for they were but raw Souldiers: *Assan* also sallying out, pursued the chase with his Turkish-troops and Moorish-foot: only some Knights of the *Rhodes* fought valiantly (retiring orderly) and *Spinula* with others, making a stand at a little Bridge, somewhat stayed the enemy, saving the lives of many. The hindermost *Italians* covered the fields with their dead bodies for half a mile; chiefly those who fled toward the sea, who were slain by the *Numidians*, who beholding the ship-wrack were come down for prey; but the foremost Companies fled in so much haste, that, no Leader performing the duty of an advised Captain, all seemed at once lost both at sea and land: only the Emperour was that day the greatest Captain; for he in good time came on with the *Germans*, sending before 3 Ensigns to stay the flight, and guard his Camp beyond the bridge over the ditch; but these (as if afraid of the *Turks* white Caps, never wont to turn their backs) shamefully fled for company with the *Italians*: then the Emperour galloping forth with his sword drawn, reproved them, setting forward with his *Germans*. stoutly speaking to them: When will you (fellow-Souldiers) shew your faces? if

now when you should fight, &c. in presence of your Emperour, you fear a few disordered and naked *Barbarians*? Immediately hereupon they issued out against the enemy, who moved with their coming, stood a while, and began to retire: many of their men halting to the sea-side in hope of a more certain prey, where no enemy was to be feared; for the blustering winds had made such huge billows, that the ships put from their Anchors, fell foul of each other and were lost, or beaten in pieces upon the Main in sight of the Army, so that the sea-coast from *Algiers* to *Cercello*, lay full of dead men; Horses and ribs of ships; the *Numidians* coming down, and slaying all that came alive to land. In few hours was lost above 140 ships, and all the small Boats and Carvels. Some Galleys having from mid-night to noon next day, by painfulness and skill rid it out: being no longer able to endure the rage of the tempest, ran a ground, but the men swimming to land, were by the *Numidian* Horsemen slain. There did Freeman commend their lives and Liberty with tears to their own Galley-slaves, by their entreaty to be saved from the cruelty of the *Numidians*: yet most chose rather to abide the danger of the sea, than to hasten their end by the enemies hand; whereby many Galley's were saved, which should otherwise have been run on ground: but the *Jannetin* (*Auria* his Galley) being driven on the sands, the Emperour not enduring to see so valiant a man slain by the *Moors* in sight of *Auria*, his Uncle sent a Captain with 3 *Italian* Bands to the sea-side, whereby the *Moors* were put to flight and they in the Galley saved; but many others trussing to the rescue of the Souldiers, ran their Galleys on ground: and had not some bold Captains with their drawn-swords threatened death to the Galley-slaves and Marriners, most of the Galleys had likewise perished.

Auria angry at the Emperour, for undertaking that great expedition unseasonably, strove invincibly against the

the violence of the tempest, bestowing some under the Hatches, who requested him to save himself whatever became of his Galley. Also 4 Galleys of *Ursinus* Earl of *Anguillaria*, & as many *Rhodian* rid it out, Some also of *Sicily*, *Naples* and *Spain* endured it; yet was there fifteen great Galleys cast away, whereby, besides the losse of so many ships, the Tempest still enduring, the whole Army was utterly discouraged, for all their Viſuals was lost, wanting Tents to shroud them in such perpetual rain and dirt, and a heavier care troubled them, doubting how to return home; yet the notable courage of the Emperour still kept the distressed men in hope: who having assured his Camp, He commanded the wearied Captains chiefly the Duke of *Alba*, to take rest, comforting the wounded, and causing them to be cherished in the Tents yet standing; not sparing any pains, being in his Armour and thorow wet. About 3000 men were lost, 5 being forward Captains, and 3 Knights of the *Rhodes*: but many more hurt. Shortly after, *Anria* foreseeing a tempest, departed with his remainder to the Cape *Metasusum*, advising the Emperour to march thither by land: who first commanded all the draught-Horses, then the Horses for service to be killed, and divided among the hungry Soldiers: they having plenty of the broken ships to make fire of: next day departing from *Algiers*, the sick and wounded being in the middle of the Army: and marching 7 miles, (the enemy hovering about him) he came to the Brook *Alcaraz*, which was now grown so high, that it was not to be passed over by a good Horseman: wherefore he there encamped in form of a Triangle; two sides of his Army being defended by the sea and the Brook, & the other with a strong guard. Many adventuring to swim over, were carried away by the stream, & drowned; wherefore a Bridge being made with Masts and Sayl-yards, the *Italians* and *Germans* passed over: the *Spaniards* foording it over higher up: after which, the *Turks* pursued them

no further, but the *Moors* and *Numidians* following at hand, were easily repulsed by the *Harguebustiers* and field-pieces: yet on such sick and wounded as could not keep way with the Army, they shewed all manner of cruelty. Next day wading up to the breasts over another little River, they came in 3 dayes to the place of the Fleet encamping in the ruins of the old City *Tipasa*, serving them instead of a Fortrels.

The sea being now calm, the Emperour commanded every man to make ready to go aboard: first the *Italians*, next the *Germans*, lastly the *Spaniards*: but it was thought there was scarce Vessels enough left to receive the whole Army, though close crowded; Wherefore he commanded all the horses, though of great worth, to be cast over board, to the great grief of the owners: who said, they should also lose the most noble Race of Horses in *Spain*. But scarce half the Souldiers were imbarqued, but the East and North wind, and then contrary-winds rose: whereupon the ships already loaded, without command, for fear of being driven on Rocks, directed their course with full sayls along the Coast: who were soon dispersed with the Tempest into severall Countries: some being in sight of their fellows, swallowed up in the sea, and 2 Spanish ships were driven again to *Algiers*, falling on the shoar, where the *Numidians* and *Moors* came running to kill them as they came ashore; for the barbarous people would not receive them to mercy: which cruelty the *Spaniards* disdainig, got to shoar, and standing close, desperately withstood them, who with their multitude quickly encompassed them: yet they made their way through them unto the gates of the City; but seeing the *Turks* salley out, they offered to yield themselves prisoners to *Assan*, if they would assure them of life; so *Assan* comming forth gave them his Faith, and beating away the *Barbarians*, saved them all, to his great gain, and commendation of clemency. Above two parts of the *Germans* were either

lost,

lost by shipwrack, or dead of sicknesse. The Emperour over-ruled by *Auria*, sailed along the coast Eastward to *Buzia*: in whole Castle, kept by *Spaniards*, he found some fresh Victual, while he lay here for fair weather. A great *Gennan* ship laded with Victual, came into the Bay; yet, through the violence of the Tempest, she was cast away upon the flats: yet part of the Victual (half-spoyled) was driven ashore, well relieving their increasing want.

The wind, of North, being come to Northwezt, he sent away *Gonzaga* with the *Sicilian* and *Rhodian* Gallies, putting them in hope to adventure again to sea: So with a troublesome course, they soon came into the Port of *Utica*, or *Farinas*: where *Muteasses* hountifullly relieved them, whence they safely landed in *Sicilia*. The raging sea becoming calm, they reasoned in Council often, what course best to take; but the wind coming fair at East, the Emperour sayled to the *Baleares*, thence arrived at length at the Port of new *Carthage* in *Spain*, greatly commended even of his Enemies, for his wondrous courage and constancy in so many extremities.

About this time the dissembled Friendship, berwixt *Charls* and King *Francis* brake out into open hatred; this thinking himself deluded by the other, who had sed him with vain hope of restoring the Dukedom of *Millane*: and lately abused by the death of *Rinco* his Embassador: wherefore he raised a great power in *France*, sending *Charls* his son with one part into the Low-countries, and *Henry* his other son with the other part, to invade *Spain*: setting on the Duke of *Cleves* in the Low-countries, and soliciting *Solyman* by *Polinus* his Embassadour, to spoyle the borders of *Spain* with his Galley's, while *Henry* was besieging *Perpenna*; for which he was of most discommended, as too much favouring his own grief. *Polinus* passing by many by-ways to *Venice*, and crossing *Illyria*, met with *Solyman* in *Misia* coming from *Buda*, first offering him a curious Cupboard of Plate, weighing 600 pound,

pounds, and 500 rich garments for the *Bassas* and great Courtiers. *Solymán* reading the *French Kings* Letters, and hearing what he had further to say, promised him he would not be wanting by sea or Land, to give him ayd in his just wars against *Charls* his enemy; telling him, when he was come to *Constantinople*, he should have answer (by his *Bassas*): Of all *Polinus* chiefly desired him to send *Barbarnassa* with his Fleet against next summer, into *Provence*, to be employed against the Emperour out of the *French Harbour*: also to request the *Venetians* to joyn in League with his Master against *Charls*, who began to be dreadful to them: when they were come out to *Constantinople* in the latter end of *Decem.* *Solymán* advited *Polinus* to return to *France*, and to bring him certain word of the determinate time of undertaking those wars: and that he would the while, send *Junusbeius* to *Venice*, who would provide such a Fleet in readines as he desired. He exceeding glad, speedily returned, with 2 goodly Horses and a rich sword, presents from *Solymán* to the *French King*: who discoursing with *Polinus* 3 days together of his proceedings, soon sent him back with full instructions of time and place, with other circumstances of the intended War. He coming to *Venice*, found not *Junusbeius* there: yet with *Pellicerius* the *French* Embassador *Legier* and others of that faction, he laboured with the Senators in behalf of his Master; and having audience in the Senate, notably pleaded the *French Kings* cause, grievously lamenting the death of the Embassador slain by the *Spaniards* & bitterly inveighing against the Emperour's ambition. The Senate declaring the time for *Junusbeius* his coming, grave'y answered, *Their amity with the French King, ought to be an Ornament to them, but no burthen: the like they held with the Emperour, whom they would in no case seem to cast off, though they had been by him over-raught: that they were generally of opinion to preserve their peace, having in hard times of war endured great extremities, hardly to be recovered with long peace:*

peace : whether 'twere good for them to thrust themselves into war, being in League with 3 of the greatest Princes of the World. *Junnsbeins* the while arrived there, requesting, that the League made by *Badoerius* might be confirmed: and requested only to joyn further courtesies to that amity which they held with the *French King*; and the rather, because *Solyman*, accounting him for his Brother, had also undertaken to ayd him against *Charls*: but as to joyn in League, or in his quarrel to take up arms, he requested nothing: Wherefore *Polinus* and *Pellicerius*, thought the *Turk*, who had spoke so coldly in the cause, to be corrupted; but it afterwards appeared, there was such equity and modesty in *Solyman's* Letters, that he would not then exact any thing of them, nor standing with the good of their State,

Polinus travelling by Land to *Constantinople* from *Regisium* whither he was transported; found all things more difficult than he dreamed of; for the great *Bassaes* said; there could be no Fleet set out that year, he being come too late, the Spring being past; *Polinus* was exceedingly vexed with grief and care: *Dixius* also being come to carry newes into *France* of the coming of the *Turks* Fleet: who told *Polinus*, The Kings sons expected nothing more than their coming: Wherefore he wondrously tormented himself, cursed the froward and unconstant manners of the *Bassaes*, calling upon the Faith of *Solyman*, beseeching the *Bassaes* one by one, against their promise not to forsake the King, since by that delay his Majesty was betrayed, and a Victory now as good as gotten, quite marred. He was so importunate and tedious; that becoming rather loathsome than gracious unto them, they sent for him and his followers to Court; *Barbarussa* sitting with them: who being entred the Council-Chamber; *Solyman Bassa*, the Eunuch made a sharp speech unto them, telling them: In their Demands, was no equity nor Modesty:

that they *Frenchman* were ever forgetful and negligent in the *Turks* dangers, but in their own alwayes mindful and diligent: shewing themselves friends to them when need was, not in deeds and certain ayd, but only in bare Letters and Embassages, instancing in particulars: and saying, *A Fleet would be rigged in Winter, furnished and set forward in Spring: In summer was safe sayling and making war: Which that it might be so, they would for the Commonwealths sake perswade the Emperour: If thou be wise, saith he, to Polinus, take these things in good part, as friendly spoken, &c.*

This severe speech troubled him the more, because they seemed to be sent from *Solyman* himself, who was thought to have heard all; for behind the *Bassaes* was a Window, where the Emperour (unperceived) might when he pleased, hear the complaints and suits of Nations: and note the *Bassaes* manners: whose care was the greater, for fear of his presence, yet did not *Polinus* so give over his suit; but by gifts to the *Capiaga* or chief Porter, laboured to be brought to the speech of *Solyman* himself. So being brought to *Solyman's* presence, he most earnestly requested him not to fail the King, of the promised Fleet: who was then invading his enemies in 3 places. *Solyman* expressly answered, The opportunity was past, not by his will, but by his late-coming; but promised next spring to send unto his friend and brother, twice so big a Fleet as he had desired: with which answer he dispatched *Dixius* into *France*: whereupon King *Francis*, called back *Henry* his eldest son from besieging *Perpenna*.

The Princes and States of *Germany*, at the request of *Ferdinand* and the *Hungarian* Nobility decreed about this time, to take up Arms, for recovering *Buda* and other lost places: for they saw, if the *Hungarians* were not speedily relieved, they should soon be forced to fight for all they enjoyed, against the *Turk* at their own doors. Wherefore they sent out 30000 Foot and 7000 Horse, *Joachi-*

mus Marquesse of Brandeburgh being General; yet so, that to him were 8 others (aged and experienced men) joyned, by whose counsel he was to be directed. *Ferdinand's* power met them at *Vienna*: *Huganot* Governour of *Stiria* coming in with 10000 Horsemen: unto whom *Seredius Bathor*, and *Perennus* Nobles of *Hungary*, joyned with 15000 Horsemen: whither also Pope *Paul* 3^d. sent 3000 choise Footmen out of *Italy*, under the conduct of famous *Vitellius*. The Marquesse with his Army marched from *Vienna*, so softly that the *Hungarian* and *Italian* Captains said, The best part of summer was spent in loytering: chiefly *Medices*, who had perswaded the King, to be ready to set forward with the first of the spring, before the *Turks* could augment their Garrisons: which wholesome counsel *Ferdinand* (too much crediting his great Courtiers) rejected, first expecting the assembly of all his Forces. At length they came to *Strigonium*: where it was reported, that *Solyman* feasting to lose *Buda*, was coming himself, or sending the General of his *European* Horse, who never warred without 60000 Horsemen. Wherefore the *Germans* made no great haste, doubting how to return if they got not the Victory. Besides 'twas thought the Marquess purposed only to defend the bounds of *Austria*, and by shewing the strength of *Germany* to terrifie the *Turks*; but it being certainly known that that report of the *Turks* Army was vain, and that there was scarce 1000 *Janizaries* and 2000 Horse come to *Buda*, the *Turks* Fleet also inferiour to the Kings: they set forward with more chearfulnesse, much encouraged by the *Hungarians*, assuring them, if they would speedily march on, they should not find at *Buda* any *Turks* worth the name of an Army; for *Solyman* used to make war but every second year: Wherefore the Marquesse appointed to pass over *Danubius*: which *Perennus Huganot* and *Medices* liked not of, rather to hold on his way directly to *Buda*: but the General and his Counsellours said, The Souldiers would with
much

much more courage and cheerfulness endure the siege of *Buda*, if they had first beaten them out of *Pesth*; so the Army by 2 Bridges with great labour made, was transported over. Then did *Medices* an *Italian*, the Kings Admiral take the Island of *St. Margaret*, a little above *Buda*, repulling the *Turks* Fleet to the Suburbs of the City. The Marques to avoid the danger of the shot from *Buda*, fetcht a great compass, and came to the North side of *Pesth*; for *Buda* standing on a Hill, and divided from *Pesth* only with the River, so commands all the plain thereabouts, that none can stir without danger on any side but Northward: Coming thither, he was told by some fugitives that *Balis* Governour of *Buda* (for *Solyman* the *Hungarian* was dead of the plague) had in Garrison, 2000 Horlmen, & that *Ulam*es of *Bosna* was come with 3000 more: where-to *Amurathes* had joyned another 1000 from *Dalmatia*: and that *Segemenes* was come with 1000 *Janizaries*, the other foot being but Country-people: also that their Fleet was 60 smal Pinnaces, 10 Gallies, & a few great boats: that *Solyman* had commanded them to defend *Pesth* & *Buda* to the last man, proposing great rewards to the valiant, to the cowardly extream punishment: and if need were, to send to *Sophia* for *Achomates* General of his *European* Horse; Upon their approach the *Turks* issuing out, skirmished with the *Hungarians*; but some few being on both sides slain they both retired. Next day, *Vitellius* coming nigh the City, to chuse a place for battery; the *Turks* sallied out at 2 gates at once: the fight being begun with like courage & force, the *Turks* still sending forth supplies, forced them disorderly to retire, losing 4 Captains & 2 Ensigns: & had not *Vitellius* with one troop valiantly repulsed the *Janizaries*, the loss had been much more: *Vitellius* exceedingly grieved, and perceiving their manner of fight; encouraged his Souldiers, requesting *Perennus* to be ready to joyn with him upon occasion: and going out of the Kings walled-Orchards (where he lay encamped) with 12 Companies,

panies, he commanded the rest to stand ready at all assays: fetching a compass, marched toward the City. The proud enemy speedily sallying out, courageously charged them; whom *Vitellius* (covering his shot with his pikes & stand standing close); received by whose shot, oft on their knees, many *Turks* were laid on ground, while they desperately fought to break their order: when many *Turks* had come out of the gates, and divers come over from *Buda* to partake of the Victory, *Vitellius* (of purpose) by little and little retired: then the enemy with a great shout began more fiercely to assaill them, their Horse also clapping behind them; whereupon, *Perennis* suddenly clapt in with his Light-horse betwixt the City and *Turks*: after whom followed *Mauritius* (about 20 years old) afterward Duke of *Saxonia*, with a strong troop of *Germanians*.

The *Turks* thus shut in, began to retire; *Vitellius* coming on, charged them fiercely, and the Horse breaking in on tother side, made great slaughter of them: who run to the gates in such fear, that many thrust each other thorow with their pikes: divers being driven into the River and drowned, a 100 *Janizaries*, and 400 others being lost, *Mauritius* having his Horse slain under him was in danger to be lost, had not *Ribische* covered him with his own body till rescued, *Ribische* presently dying of his wounds. The battery was now presently planted, at first so far off, (doing little harm) though the walls were old and thin: the Ordnance also mislaid, either shot short or quite over the City; the battery being removed nearer, a fair Breach was soon made in the wall. *Vitellius* first offered to assault it, so the *Germanians* would presently second him, which they all by holding up their hands, promised courageously; but cowardly by and by, about to break the same: the *Hungarians* also promising not to be behind; *Segemenes* receiving new supplies from *Ulames*, had cast a deep Countermure against the Breach: and within that

that a strong Barricado, with Vessels filled with sand and earth : behind which stood the Souldiers in order with so much silence, that many thought they had been fled over to Buda. The signal given, 4 *Italian* Captains ran with their Companies to the Breach ; but while they set up their Ensignes, and wondring at the Fortification, were ready to leap down, they were suddenly overwhelmed with Arrows and Bullets ; yet *Vitellius* encouraging them brought them still on ; but the *German* Foot with their General stood still under the walls, the *Hungarians* retiring without looking on the enemy ; 2 *Italian* Captains were slain, and *Vitellius* his Nephew shot in the shoulder. The *Turks* repulied and beat down the *Italians* : the idle *Germans* being more galled than one would have thought ; for there they still stood for shame : Wherefore *Vitellius* would in no case depart from the breach, that the *Germans* might not say, they stayed longest ; of whom he complained, he was cowardly betrayed. A *Turk* spake aloud in the *Italian* Tongue : *Why do not you, valiant Italians, spare your selves, and give place to those lasie Germans ? We all wish to spare you, and to beat the drunkenness out of their most cowardly heads, that they should no more hereafter provoke us.* At length the *Germans* weary, got farther off : the *Italians* forthwith retiring, but very disorderly to be out of danger of shot : 700 were there slain, and many more hurt, who afterwards dyed of their wounds.

All this while, the Marquess and *Huganot* were not to be seen, till two valiant Captains finding them out, wished them for shame to appear, to comfort the Army : who consulted whether to forsake or continue the siege : most of the *German* Captains liking to be gone, though *Vitellius* & others spake earnestly against it ; but a Spy then bringing news (either faigned or vainly believed) that *Achemates* was coming to *Dravus*, the *Germans* resolved to return to *Vienna* : which made many old Ger-

man Souldiers hang their heads for shame; and the *Hungarians* to curse the *Germans*, and the hard fortune of their Nation, vainly wishing for a more couragious General.

Segemenus early in the morning, sent out all the Horsemen, and after them some Foot-companies for a relief in retiring: who skirmishing with the *Hungarians* in many places, many of the most notable Souldiers on either side, regarded no other enemy, but him whom every one had singled out to encounter hand to hand. A notable *Turk* desired to see *Vitellius*: who being shewed to him, he ran to embrace him for his Honour, and departed. About 500 Horse encountred hand to hand, many being slain or hurt. The *Turks* perceiving the Christians to be departed, the night following, sallyed out, upbraiding them aloud of cowardise, and hardly pursuing their rear. *Ulamès*, come from *Buda*, so eagerly followed them, that *Vitellius* made a stand, requesting the *German* and *Hungarian* Horsemen to turn upon them: who put *Ulamès* to flight, slaying many in chase: then they passed on quietly: Yet 700 sick and stragling *Germans* were slain in sight of their fellows: who, thrice toyled by the *Turks*, returned full of heaviness.

The Army coming to *Vienna* was broke up, and the *Italian's* sent home, who most dyed by the way of Infection taken in the Camp.

But to cover the shame of this unfortunate Expedition, *Perenus* was pickt out to fill mens mouths with: who, through envy of the Court, was for suspicion of aspiring the Kingdome of *Hungary*, by *Ferdinands* command, apprehended in the Castle of *Strigonium* as a Traitor, and delivered to *Medices* to be conveyed up the river to *Vienna*. *Liscanius* the Spaniard apprehending him, took from him his rich Chain and Cloak: whereupon, above 12000 *Hungarians* presently returned home, cursing the *Germans* to the Devil. *Perenus* was one of the greatest Peers of

of *Hungary*, but most haughty and Magnificent, sometimes having almost a 100 goodly Horses led before him without Riders, and speaking too freely against the barrenesse of *Ferdinand's* Court: who, polled by his Courtiers, hardly maintained his State: Wherefore the other great Courtiers, conspiring his overthrow would also point at him; saying He favoured of a Crown. Who as he had many Vertues; so was not causelessly noted of ambition and unconstancy, as is before declared,

First it was given out, that his son, who had many years been detained in *Solymán's* Court, as a pledge of his Fathers fidelity: was then, under colour of a feigned escape, come into *Transilvania*, agreeing with *Solymán*; that his Father, should, by promising them all freedom, allure them to Turkish subjection: for which he should be made Governour of *Hungary*, and in hope to be made Tributary King, if the Child should die: Besides, he had very suspiciously, the Winter before, sent the *Turks* Captains great presents, receiving the like: Lastly, his Letters seeming to promise some *Hungarian* Captains, greater entertainment than agreed with his estate: all which, *Ferdinand* (hardly conceiving ill of the *Germans*, but any thing of Strangers) soon believed.

Perennis being come near the Gate of *Vienna*, hearing *Torniellus* with other brave ones were come to meet the Admiral; requested, he might speak to them out of the close Coach (being opened) wherein he rode: which was easily granted; he seeming to those who had charge of him, unworthy of such suspicion; he made a lamentable speech unto them concerning his being apprehended: saying, As for the Kingdom of *Hungary*, he might well have affected it, and easily have deserved it of *Solymán*, when *Ferdinand* (*John* being dead) was preparing for that war; at which time his friends & followers with the *Hungarians* love toward him, might have ministred

no unreasonable or unseasonable hope to have drawn a man into courses, nor wholly beſeeming a Christian: wherefore (saith he) I have, and will (while I live) fight against the *Turks*, if King *Ferdinand* shall shew himself an indifferent Judge in this accusation, falsely surmised by the malice of mine enemies.

The Admirall *Medices*, perswaded him to hope well in the most just King's clemency; and soon after, he and *Torniellus* entreated the King, while hunting, to deal favourably with him; Yet *Perenus* could not obtain an open hearing, but was committed to perpetual imprisonment, either for suspicion of new Treason, or for his old inconstancy. This end had the Warres undertaken by general consent of the *Germans* against the *Turks* in 1542. *Ferdinand* having spent in vain, a masse of Treasure, and lost the opinion before conceived of the strength of *Germany*.

Polinus in 1543, ceased not by all meanes to solicit *Solyman* to ayd his Master against *Charls* in *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *Spain*; but he was so crossed by *Solyman*, (then *Vissier*) that he almost despaired; for the Eunuch being a great Seaman, envied the honour of *Barbarussa*, protesting in Councel, he saw no cause why *Solyman* should send out such a Fleet, but to serve *Barbarussa's* own turn; but *Solyman* decreed according to his promise, to send his Fleet to the *French King* by *Barbarussa*: two dayes after which, *Polinus* was feasted by *Rustan Bassa*, and *Solyman* the Eunuch (for it was their Master's pleasure) both joying of him for the friendship confirmed betwixt the two Princes. So after divers gifts bestowed on him and his chief followers, *Solyman* at his departure, gave him great charge of his Navy, after the service done, to be again returned, delivering him Letters to King *Francis*, to the like purpose, telling him, all things should fall out, according to both their desires, if he took heed, that

Charls did not again deceive him with the motion of a deceitful peace.

Polinus returned from *Hadrianople* where *Solyman* then lay, to *Constantinople*, finding *Barbarussa* ready to put to Sea with 110 Gallies, and 40 Galliots: so setting forward, April 28. 1543, he arrived first at *Caristius*, in *Eubœa*: thence to *Malea*, and, cast by contrary winds into *Lacedemon* Bay, staying nine dayes ere he could double the Cape *Metapanium*. Then from *Methone*, he came to the Strait of *Messana*, where, in sight of *Rhegium*, they began to land their men; wherefore they of the City, fled forth for fear; but the Castle was kept by *Gaietane*, a *Spaniard*, who refusing parley, slew certain of the Turks with shot: wherewith the rest enraged, fired the desolate City, fore against *Polinus* and *Barbarussa's* will, who sought for the Authours to punish them. Ordnance being planted against the Castle, a few shot so terrified the Captain, troubled with his Wives outcry, that he yielded it with all therein to the enemy: to whom, with his Wife and Children, he granted life and liberty, shutting up the rest, and giving the spoil to his Souldiers: there was about 70 *Spaniards*, and many more Citizens, all carried away prisoners. Old *Barbarussa* becoming amorous of one of the Captains very beautiful Daughters, entring her into Mahometanism, made of her as his Wife, bountifullly entertaining the Captain as his Father in Law, who came to see her at *Hercules Port* in *Tuscany*: *Barbarussa* came to *Ostia*, in the mouth of *Tiber*, to frighting them of *Rome*, that they were ready to forsake the City, had not *Polinus* by his Letters to *Rodolph*, Pope *Paul's* Legate in the City, in part stayed the sudden tumult.

The Bishop was then at *Buxetum*, travelling in shew, with the Emperour to make peace betwixt him and the *French*; but secretly labouring to buy of him the Dukedom of *Millane*, for *Octavius* his Kinsman, *Charls's* Son

in Law: As *Polinus* comforted up *Rodolph* the Cardinall, so also them of *Neptunianum* and *Ostia*; so that they brought the Turks all manner of Victuali, and sometimes four Sheep, or two Oxen, redeemed a Prisoner of *Naples*; yet many of the weaker sort fled out of the City by night, though the Magistrates did what they could to stay them.

Barbarussa laying there three dayes, and waiting, passed along *Etruria* and *Liguria*, without doing harm, and so sailed to *Adarselles*, where we leave him for a while.

Solyman came with a great Army into *Hungary*, for the more assured possession of that Kingdom, sending *Amurathes* and *Ulames* to besiege *Walpo*, strong, and situate upon *Dravus*, not far from *Exek*: after whom followed *Achomates* with his *European* Horse. This Town *Pere-nus's* possession, was by his Wife and her friends, worthily defended three moneths: at last, delivered to the enemy by the Souldiers, who when they could not perswade their General to consent to a yielding, took him perforce, delivering him with the Town to the Turks, who received him with all courtesie, but the traitorous Souldiers were all put to the Sword: the other Citizens being well used; the Bishop and chief men of *Quinque-Eclesia*, not far off, now fled for fear, the meaner sort willingly yielding it to the Turks. Next strong Town was *Soclosia*, belonging also to *Pere-nus*, which (divers Gentlemen, encouraging the Citizens to stand on their defence) held out a while; but after much harm on both sides, they retired into the Castle, hoping to save themselves by yielding; but *Amurathes* was so offended, that (promising them onely to come forth at their pleasure) as they came out, slew them all to terrifie others.

Solyman giving those Towns to *Amurathes*, departed from *Buda* to besiege *Strigonium*, kept by *Liscanns* and *Salamanca*, two Spaniards with 1300 Souldiers. *Paul* the

Bishop, got away betimes, despairing of mercy, who by *Solymán's* interposing had been reconciled to *John*, and again revolted to *Ferdinand*. The Castle stood on a high Hill, overlooking *Danubius* underneath it: the Walls were built after the old manner, before Guns were invented: wherefore, *Vitellius* and *Torniellus*, sent the year before to view the place, thought the City could hardly be defended, if besieged by a strong enemy, being also subject to a Hill not far off; so that the old Garrison cast up new Bulwarks and Fortifications, and making great boast, seemed to wish for *Solymán's* coming; but when he had with his Tents, covered the places round about, and brought a gallant Fleet up the River, every man began to doubt of his own safety.

This fear was encreased by Messengers from *Solymán*, who hearing of what Nations the Garrison consisted, sent three Renegates of his Guard, a *Spaniard*, *Italian* and *German*, to speak to their Countreymen in their own Language. They offered great rewards and entertainments, to such as would yield in time, denouncing all torture and extremities to those who endured the Summons of a Cannon. It was answered by the Captains, those faithful and valiant Souldiers were not to be won with Gifts, nor terrified with threats. The same day, the Ordnance was planted on the Hill before the Gate, and all the weakest parts of the Walls so well pickt out to be assaulted, that its to be thought, the Christians wanted faith among themselves.

Salamanca distrusting the Suburb's Fortifications, retired into the City, contrary to what he had boasted.

Achomates besieged that part next the Bishop's Gardens: *Ulames* the Towre next the Gate toward *Buda*: the *Asapi* were brought on to dig Trenches, and cast up Mounts: the Ordnance was so discharged without ceasing that the Towre, with much of the Wall near it, fell down, as if shaken with a terrible Earth-quake: the

Harque-

Harquebuste *Janizaries* also, fetching off any man that stood on the Walls: many further off being grievously wounded with Arrows falling from high; and the Stones broken with the great shot, killed or maimed the Soldiers near hand: wherefore they forsook the uttermost Wall, casting up new Fortifications within. The enemy also, thrice desperately assailed the breach, but still with losse repulsed: *Bultazes Sanzack* of *Selymeria*, a man of great account, being lost. Many the while, who came up the River, with necessaries for the Army, went ashore, and lay in the Suburbs with great security: wherefore they in the City, suddenly falling out, slew many before they could arm, driving the rest to their Fleet: so that there was about 200 slain. *Zymar* the *Persian* Admiral, in rescuing them, being slain with a small shot. While the *Turks* did with greater force, daily assail the City, and the defendants despairing of relief, more and more discouraged: an old *Calabrian* Engineer, fled out to the *Turks*, who satisfied them in all their questions, directing them in planting their batteries in the most convenient places. It fortuned, that a gilt Brazen Crosse on the Steeple of the Cathedral, was by the *Turk's* shooting thereat, at length beaten down: wherefore *Solyman* is reported (taking it as a token of good luck) presently to cry out, *Strigonium* is won.

Liscanus and *Salamanca* secretly conferring together, resolved to give up the Town; for *Liscanus* was no great Soldier, yet by spoil exceeding rich; and therefore thought it folly to buy the name of resolute Captain, with the losse of life and wealth: the like feeling was also in *Salamanca*.

This secret purpose was noised among the Soldiers, a third part being slain, or weak with wounds or sickness: yet they thought generally, they were able still to defend the Town; but the under-Captains, &c. flattering y, liked the motion, rather to yield on reasonable termes,

than to expose themselves to most certain death, and not better *Ferdinands* cause. Ere long, an Auncient was by night let down over the Wall, and receiving the *Turk's* faith, called forth *Salamanca*; who coming out, went to *Achomates*, commanding, before he went, them who defended the Water-Towre (of great danger) for safety of their lives to get into the City: who hastily retiring, the vigilant *Turks* suddenly breaking in, slew such as were not gone, possessing the Castle; but *Salamanca*, when he had stood upon many nice termes with the Bassaes, obtained onely, without delay to yield, and put themselves wholly on *Solyman's* mercy; so being there stayed, he wrote to *Liscanus*, how he sped, wishing him, if he loved his safety, to yield the City without further termes.

Liscanus hereupon, declared to the Souldiers, the necessity of yielding up, and what hope of life and liberty; but whilest the angry Souldiers stood as in a doubt, *Halis*, Commander of the *Janizaries* came, not sternly requiring the Gate to be opened to him, according to *Salamanca's* agreement: which was done, and the keys delivered to him: they entring peaceably, possessed themselves of the Walls and fortresses, chusing all the beardsle's youths out of the Souldiers, commanding the rest to cast down their Weapons in a place appointed; which they did, expecting nothing but some cruel execution: which fear, was the more increased by a strange accident; for while with their Harquebusses, they cast their flasks of powder also, one of them suddenly took fire of a match, which firing the rest, blew abroad that heap of Weapons among the *Janizaries*: whereupon, they slew divers Christians; till *Halis*, perswaded 'twas rather by chance, than malice, commanded them to stay their fury. Then he proclaimed, that all Christians, who would serve *Solyman*, should have places answerable, with large entertainment; yet were there but seventy, which accepted the offer, for
fear

fear of their lives : whom *Halls* sent down the River with the culled out youths to *Buda*: the other helped the *Turks* to cleanse the Castle ; but *Liscannus* was glad to give *Halls* the Chain of Gold he took from *Percennus*, he requiring it as of military courtesie, (a strange Ornament with the *Turks*) hoping thereby to save his other Coyn ; but when the covetous Coward was about to depart with his Horses of service, and Saddles cunningly stuffed full of Gold, the *Turk* laughing at him, took them also so furnished, saying, He who was to go by water, needed no Horses : The rest, were conveighed over *Danubius* : travelling to *Possonium*, where Count *Salma* by *Ferdinand's* Command, committed *Liscannus* and *Salamanca* and some others to custody, to answer their cowardly yielding up the City : which *Solyman* entred Aug. 10. 1543, and turning the Christian Temples into *Mahometane*, first sacrificed for his Victory, as before at *Buda*, and speedily so fortified it, as if to take away all hope of recovery thereof : deriding the *Germans* negligence, who keeping it 14 years, had not fortified it.

Solyman leaving *Ossainus* Governour there ; sent his *Tartarian* Horse to spoil the Countrey, as farre as *Alba Regalis*, going himself to besiege *Tatta* Castle, whose terrified Souldiers, upon the first Summons yielded, and quietly departed : the Castle, (the *Turks* keeping their Provinces under, by few, but very strong holds) being presently rased to the ground : *Torniellus* causing *Hanniball* the Captain to lose his head for his cowardly yielding up his charge, ther-by to admonish others.

Solyman marched thence to *Alba Regalis*, which stands more into the Land, than *Buda* and *Strigonium*, strongly seated in midst of a Lake, but not so wholsomly, especially in Summer.

From the City thorow the Lake, lay three broad and high Causeys, built with fair Houses, and Gardens on each side : at the end of every Causey, toward the Land, were

strong Bulwarks, which the Citizens used not to watch; but in dangerous times of Waire: the City thus standing, and compassed about with a strong Wall, with a deep ditch alwayes full of water, was hardly to be besieged: wherefore a great number of people, fled into it with their Cartel, as into a most sure hold. There was two German Companies, and 200 Horsemen, with 500 Hungarian Horsemen, who, living by robbing, are infamously called *Usarons*.

Tornielus the Italian, sent in four Companies of Italians, the most forward in that service: Then came *Barcocius* Captain of the King's Guard, with a Company of Horse, as Generall: who no sooner come, but news was brought of *Solymán's* approach: wherefore he convened the Captains, with *Birrons* the Mayor, and other chief Citizens, what was best to be done; but chiefly, whether the Suburbs were to be destroyed or not? that the City might with lesse labour and danger, be defended.

This question was seriously debated, and great reasons alledged on both sides: at last, the Citizens cryed out with one voice against the matter: of which opinion, was *Serofastus*, an Italian Captain, saying, both City and Suburbs might with like danger be defended, since both were equally fortified with the Marish; and at the worst, the Defendants might safely retire into the City: at last standing up, he said Valiant Gentlemen, what shew will you give of your valour, &c. If you shall deserf so famous a City, by deforming it your selves, &c. before the danger? Verily ye shall do nothing, &c. unless this City (if God please) be of you whole and sound, valiantly defended. Hereupon they all rose, the wiser yielding to the imporunity of the simple: *Barcocius* also, seeing a good countenance on that which liked him not) declared to the Souldiers, the reasons thereof, exhorting them with the like valour, to answer that honourable resolution, promising to provide all necessaries for a Victory, and

and assured those deserving of great rewards. The Suburbs were quickly fortified, the Ordnance conveniently planted, and Watch and Ward kept by turns, day and night.

The *Turks* bent their forces onely against the Suburbs of the Gate, towards *Buda*, because the Lake was there driest, and the ground sandy, more unfit for Fortifications.

Barcocins drew all the *Italians* and *Germans* into the Suburbs of that Gate, leaving the Countrey people in their places. At first, they sallying out, made light skirmishes for three dayes, without any great harm on either side; but *Solyman* himself being come, and besetting the City far and near with his Tents, they shut up the Gates, and sallied no more out: wherefore the *Hungarian V-sarons*, that they might not be coupt up, as they termed it, asking leave for fashion sake, by night departed, though entreated to stay, escaping thorow the Woods from the enemy. The *Turks* the while, being come with Winding Trenches, within shot, so scoured the top of the Bulwark, that none could appear but he was wounded: the Ordnance also soon battered asunder the Planks and Timber, which kept in the sandy mould; and the shot flying quite thorow, slew and wounded many far off, the *Asapi* the while, in 12 dayes, making a way to passe over to the Bulwark and Suburbs, with Earth and Wood, brought thereby, in 600 Wagons, thought impossible to have bin done. The Ditches thus filled up, the *Turks* sought by force to enter the Bulwark: first the *Asapi*: then the Horsemen now on foot, covering the *Janizaries*, who on their knees with Harquebusses, sore gauled the Defendants: they fought above 3 houres with equal hope; but the *Turks* still relieve afresh, gained the uttermost Bulwark; yet the *Italian* Fort was valiantly defended, the Women and religious helping; and a tall *Hungarian* Woman, thrusting in upon the top of the Fort, struk off two *Turks* Heads with a Sicke at one blow.

This

This assault was *Aug. 29.* on which day they took *Belgrade*, and slew King *Lewis*, hoping to take the City then, as on a fortunate day, but they were forced to retire. *Solyman* offended, sharply reproved *Abraham Achomates*, and *Halis*, because, the Bulwark being won, they had not more courageously prosecuted the Victory, &c. sternly commanding them to prepare for a fresh assault within 3 dayes, never to return to him without winning the City: who answered, They would in short time accomplish his desire; and encouraging the Souldiers, they terribly assailed the Rampires: and (through a thick mist) they got up to the top thereof with great silence, coming to handy blows ere they were well discovered. The fight was for the time terrible; but the *Janizaries* at length put the *Germans*, then the *Italians* to a hasty flight, which little availed, seeing they were to passe thorow a little narrow Gate; and they in the City, without regard of them that fled, had plucked up the draw-Bridge over the Ditch; so the *Turks* pursuing them all along those Suburbs, many notable men, some fighting, some fleeing, were slain; *Serofactus* being one: *Barcocins* fleeing to the little gate not to be passed thorow on Horse-back, and crying in vain to have the great Gate opened, was by the *Janizaries* slain, whose Head and right-hand full of Rings, was carried about in derision on a Lance. The rest finding the little gate shut up with dead bodies, and the Bridge drawn up, threw themselves into the Ditch: where some taken hold of by others that could not swim, were drowned together. Some hardly crawling over, were shot with arrows: others sticking in the mud, were shot to death also; some few got over & were saved. The General of the *German-Horse* and *Uscasades* an *Italian*, gathering the remainder placed them on the Walls: but *Birrous*, the Aldermen and others, were now so overcome with despair, that they thought of no hope but in the mercy of *Solyman*; wherefore *Birrous* spake from the Wall, safely to send to *Solyman*, to treat upon

reasonable conditions of surrender : which *Achomates* easily granted. The General of the *German* Horse, and *Rufus* an *Italian* (the most valiant men in all the assaults) went with the Embassadors : who requested (upon yielding) for their lives and Liberties : who so answered, as that it seemed all should not be pardoned. *Rufus* easily obtained, the *Italians* to depart with bag and baggage to *Vienna* : so did the *German* General for his. *Rufus* refusing to serve *Solyman*, as bound by oath to *Ferdinand*, *Solyman Bassa* gave him a rich Cloak in Honour of his Valour. The Embassadors returning, and telling their succeſſe, freed the Citizens of a great fear.

The City yielded : *Achomates* openly proclaimed, the *Italians* and *Germans* to be ready to depart next day, and to beware that no *Hungarian* went with them : the Citizens also to keep their Houses till they were departed : whom *Homares* faithfully defended against the roaming *Tartars* : losing nothing but their dags, carried at the *Germans* saddle-bow : The *Turks* delighting to see them shot off with a Fire-lock, as a Novelty ; but they (after *Homares* departure) had hot skirmishes with the *Hungarians*, in their passage, being rescued from danger by the Kings Garrisons : which remainder came to *Vienna* more like ghosts than men.

Solyman entering the City, and visiting the King's Sepulchres : proclaimed, the *Hungarians* should not fear ; for he came not to Conquer them, but to free them from *German*-bondage ; so to restore that Kingdom entire to young *Steven*. But 3 or 4 dayes after, he called out the chief Citizens into a field, where condemned men were buried, as if to swear them to fidelity : whether they coming as to a solemn feast, the Tyrant slew them all ; yet some report, they were only such as bare Office when they revolted from the Queen, and Infant-King to *Ferdinand*, the rest being exiled to *Buda* and *Belgrade*. So leaving *Balibeius* the Governour, and *Mahometes* of *Belgrade*

grade his Lieutenants, for the whole Kingdom, he returned to *Constantinople*. All this while, *Ferdinand* had no power worth speaking of to withstand so mighty an enemy. While *Solyman* lay at this siege, he sent his *Tartarian* Horsemen to spoyl the Country round; about 3000 in divers places were slain by the *Hungarians*: one of them being taken, had half a child of two-years old in his Snap-sack.

Barbarussa fretted exceedingly, that he had all this while layen at *Marceilles*, doing nothing: the blame whereof, he said, would be imputed to him: and that *Solyman* would take it ill to have it reported, that he had set out so great a Fleet, and so far off to help his Friend, and to do nothing; also he took on like a *Turk*, that he should now blemish his former credit, by laying still all that Summer, where his Souldiers grew lazy; Wherefore *Polinus* told the King hereof, bringing order to *Barbarussa* to besiege *Nice* a sea-City in *Provence* pawned by a *French* King to the Duke of *Savoy* for a great summe of money; which *Francis* had oft offered to repay, but could not get it out of his hands. He sent also 22 Gallies, and 18 ships of his own, with 8000 Foot and much Victual: 2 dayes after which, came *Barbarussa* also to the Port of *Monac* with 150 Gallies; whence *Polinus* wrote to the State of *Genoa* not to fear, that Fleet being not to hurt so much as them of *Nice*, if they would yield: and for more assurance, had divers *Genoa* captives freed out of the *Turks* Gallies without Ransom. Then he friendly exhorted them of *Nice*, to yield to their Ancient and Lawful Prince, rather than to adventure all extremities for that distressed Duke, between the Emperour & *French* King, spoiled of most of his Dominions, &c. The Magistrates answered, They knew no other Sovereign but *Charls* their Duke: wherefore he should desist further to sollicite them, &c. Wherefore they besieged it in 3 places. They had lately new fortified their walls by *Simcon* Capr.
of

of the Castle, and an experienced Knight of the *Rhodes* his direction: who for their more resolute withstanding the *Turks*, took their wives and children and the weaker sort into the Castle: thence furnishing the Citizens with all necessaries. The City being battered in divers places by sea and land at once, the *Turks* had much beaten a new Bulwark, attempting to enter: *Leo Strozza* with a Band of *Italians*, seeking also to enter, but they manfully repulsing both, caused them to retire, about 200 *Turks* being slain, and of *Strozza's* men 22. *Barbarussa* battered it afresh, so terribly, that their walls being opened, the Souldiers sore wounded, and no hope of timely relief: parlyed with the General from the wall, to yield the City, living under the *French* King in all respects, as they had under the Duke: for which he gave them his Faith: but fearing the *Turks* would violate this Composition, he entreated *Barbarussa* to cause his Souldiers to go aboard: Wherefore, the *Janizaries* deceived of their hoped prey, were about to have slain *Polinus* and *Strozza* comming from *Barbarussa*.

The taking of the Castle now, consisted in assailing the Castle it self, and defending the City from sallies, and from an enemies raising the siege. *Barbarussa* put the *French* to choise which to take: Who standing in doubt, he scorning their slownesse, conveniently placed 7 battering-peeeces, 2 being very great, in a trice to their admiration: wherewith he quickly beat down the Battlements and Sentinel-houses, so that none could appear on the walls: the *French* also battered the Castle; but through long shooting, *Polinus* requested to borrow, or buy powder and shot of *Barbarussa*: who fumed exceedingly, that they in their own Country should want provision, &c. not forbearing to taunt them, and oft complaining, that he was deluded with hope of great matters promised: threatning to lay hands on *Polinus*, who had brought him, where he must lose his Honour; or, having spent his Ammunition,

munition, expose his Fleet to all dangers: Wherefore, calling a Council, He gave out, presently to return to *Constantinople*, seeing, among those cowardly and unskillful men, he found nothing ready, or according to promise; yet by entreatance and large promises, he was perswaded to continue the siege; but presently Letters were intercepted from *Vastius* to the Captain of the Castle, to hold out a while, till he (who had sent his Light-Horsemen before) might come with his men at arms, who would in 2 days (with slaughter of the *Turks*) put him out of fear: Whereupon, such a fear came on the besiegers (next night being also very rainy and Tempestuous) that leaving all, and by narrow-paths, climbing over the High-Mountain, they came down to the Fleet; but at day (no enemy to be seen) they (ashamed) came again to the siege: Ere long, when the Castle (standing on a Rock) was judged hardly to be battered or under-mined, they thought good to depart: the *Turks* then, taking the spoil of the City, set it on fire. *Barbarussa* retiring to *Antipolis*, came to Anchor at the Island *Margarita*: *Vastius* the Duke, with *Auria*, then arriving at *Villa Franca*. In which Haven's entrance, the Galley wherein *Vastius* went, was like to be lost: 4 other being, by Tempest driven upon Rocks, and so suddenly beaten in pieces, that the Galley-slaves could not strike off their Irons, but were drowned.

Polinus hearing hereof, sent to *Barbarussa*, perswading him to hasten thither, as to an assured Victory; who promised to go, yet moved not, letted as was thought by contrary weather. But the wind fallen and sea calm, and he setting slowly forward, coming again to an Anchor: the *Turks* Captains scoffingly said, *Barbarussa* did but reason to deal kindly with *Auria*, who had received the like Friendship at his hands, in letting him escape at *Hippona*: who answered then and afterwards, only, That he an old Commander and half-blind, saw more in the matter than all those green Captains with their sharp sight.

Ere

Ere long he returned into the Haven of *Tolon*. *Vasilius* and the Duke coming to *Nice*, commended *Simon*, preferring the *Turks* Fortifications before the Christians; *Barbarussa*, with all courtesie entertained, sent *Salec* and *Assanes* his Kinsman with 25 Gallies, who rifled some sea-Towns in *Spain*: taking great prize about the *Promontorie* of *Crenum*; and a Merchant-ship, and a Galley in *Palamos-Haven*: passing to *Algiers* to winter, and at spring to return to *Provence*.

Barbarussa that Winter repairing his Fleet, had many necessities from the *Genowayes*: especially from *Auria*, and that under colour of redeeming prisoners: for he would not shew an enemies mind by denial of a little sea Furniture, lest he should have hurt his Native Country *Genoa*.

But *Muleasses* hearing of *Barbarussa's* coming with this great Fleet, doubted (not without cause) lest it was prepared against himself. Besides, five of his great Cities (*Constantina*, *Mahamedia*, *Mahometa*, *Leptis*, and *Adrumentum*) were then holden by the *Turks*: Wherefore about the time that he sayled along *Italy*, himself passed into *Sicily* to have met the Emperour at *Genua* for greater ayd against the *Turks*: committing the tuition of his Kingdom to *Mahometes* (*Manifat*) to Govern the City; *Corsus* or *Fares* to keep the Castle, whose brother *Mahometes* and son *Fares* were left pledges to *Tavarres* (Captain of *Gulletta-Castle*) of his Faith; but to his son *Amiva*, he committed the leading of his men of War.

Passing out of *Sicily*, he was driven by contrary winds (at length) to *Naples*: being Honourably entertained by the Viceroy: The Citizens wondring at his people's strange Attire, with their costly Dishes, putting therein Odours of exceeding price; so that a Peacock and two Feasants dressed, cost above 100 Duckats: all dwelling
near

near partaking of the smell. While he abode at *Naples*, (the Emperour from *Buxetum* so willing him) attending what course *Barbarussa* (disappointed at *Nico*) would take; he was advertised out of *Africk* that *Amida* his son possessing his Kingdom, had slain his Captains, polluted his Wives, and taken *Tunis*-Cattle. Wherefore *Muleasses* exceedingly troubled, with all haste opened his Coffers, entertaining Souldiers: the Viceroy giving leave to all banished men to come and give their name to go into *Africk*: whereupon a great number of Malefactors and condemned persons flocked to *Naples*: of which infamous men, one *Lofredius* (of a fierce and coverous disposition) undertook the leading; who having three moneths pay before hand, leavying 1800 men, and keeping most of their pay, passed over with the King into *Africk*.

Amida rose up against his Father by means of certain Noblemen about him, who ruled him at their pleasure: the chief was *Mahometes* (son of *Bohamer* (*Manifat*)) in the Raign of *Muleasses*'s Father, whom *Muleasses* reigning slew, by cutting off his privities, for deceiving him of *Rahamana* a maid of exceeding beauty, whom he most passionately loved: for which *Mahometes* had long conceived a dissembled deadly hatred against him.

Next was *Mahometes Adulzes*, whom *Muleasses* used to call his worst servant. These two with others, gave out that *Muleasses* was dead, having first revolted to Christianity, perswading him quickly to enter into his Fathers seat, lest *Mahometes* his younger Brother in Hostage at *Guletta*, should by the help of *Tovarnes* be preferred before him; for he was 18 years old, resembling (every way) his Grandfather, and therefore best beloved of those of *Tunis*. Wherefore *Amida* came in post to *Tunis*, to lay first hand on the Kingdom.

The people as yet hearing not of his Fathers death, marvelled at his rashnesse: *Mahometes* the Governour sharply reproved him of Treason, perswading him to return to the Camp; and seeing him stay, thrust him out of the City, who got him into the pleasant Countrey of *Martia*: but the Governour got him speedily to *Touarres*, to know more assuredly if there were Newes from *Sicily* of the Kings death, complaining of *Amida*; where, staying somewhat long, and then returning, the Voyce went, he had practised with *Touarres*, to make *Mahometes* King; whereby some Citizens (hating the very name of *Muleasses*) speedily certified grieving *Amida* how all stood, &c. Who now revived, and encouraged by his followers, returned to *Tunis*; and entering in at the open Gate, ran to the Governour's House, who not at home, he slew all his Household, going presently to the Castle: Where, *Fares* the Captain, laying hands on his Horses-bridle to keep him out, was by an *Ethiopian* thrust thorow with a sword: over whose sprawling body *Amida* riding, brake into the Castle with his followers, where he slew the Governour of the City: after which, murdering his younger brethren, he polluted his Fathers Concubines.

Muleasses (landing at *Guletta*) was advised by *Touarres* not to go to *Tunis* with so few men, before assurance of the Citizens good disposition toward him: being the more earnest with *Lofredius*: because the Viceroy had written, he should in no case go further, except the King (as he promised) had also a good strength of *Nu-midians*; but some *Moorish* Nobles fleeing under a colour, out of the City, putting their swords to their throats, and (swearing to be faithful) wondrously pricke them forward: saying, *Amida* (at the first sight of his Father) would flee; so they set forward with Ensigns displayed; *Touarres* requesting them in vain, to beware of the *Moors* treachery.

Muleaffes being now descryed from the Walls, a strong Troop suddenly sallied out with a terrible cry, and a fierce assail, many falling on both sides. *Muleaffes* fighting couragiously, was wounded in the face, bleeding exceedingly, whole men doubting of his life, fled: a great number of Horse and Foot, suddenly besetting *Lofredius* round, out of the Olive Gardens, on whom the *Italians* discharged some Field-pieces; but had no leisure to charge again, they coming on so thick and fast; so the *Italians*, discouraged, let fall their Weapons, and cast themselves into the Lake, to save themselves by swimming, and taking hold of small Boats, which furnished with small Pieces, did repulse the *Moores* pursuing them into the Lake with their Horses.

Lofredius was unhorsed in the Lake and slain, as were divers with him. A few, chose rather to die in midst of their enemies, than to be strangled in the stinking Lake.

Muleaffes soyled with blood and dust, was taken: nothing bewraying him more than his odours. 1300 *Italians* were slain: *Touarres* relieving the rest, shipped them into *Sicilie*, who came to *Naples* exceeding poor. *Amida*, victorious, cut out his Fathers eyes with a hot Pen-knife, to make him unfit for Government: so he served his two Brethren, taken with him. Then he certified *Touarres*, he would deliver to him a few youths, taken prisoners; & that he had bereaved his Father of his sight, deserving worse, as having done the like to his Brethren, &c. confirming, upon conditions, his Fathers League with him: which *Touarres* refused not, as profitable at present; for he was to give him money to pay his Souldiers: to deliver the prisoners, with the Ensigns and body of *Lofredius*, giving *Schites* his Son, nine years old, in hostage for more assurance yet, *Touarres* safely to restore him, if they must needs enter into War; but *Touarres* thought it not wholly agreeing with the Emperours honour, that he should
enjoy

enjoy the Kingdom, who treasonously and villanously, had thrust himself thereunto, without his leave. Wherefore (there being among the *Numidians*, one *Abdamalech*, (an exile ever since *Roscates* fled to *Barbaryssa*) *Mulleasses's* Brother) *Touarres* sent for him, putting him in hope of the Kingdom, supported by *Anemseba*, a great *Numidian* Prince, who had long entertained him: he was encouraged also by predictions of *Astrologers*, who foretold him, he should die King of *Tunis*. *Amida* was gone to *Biserta* (casting no peril) to take order for his Customs there great upon fishing: wherefore, *Touarres* sent back *Sebites* in a Boat to *Tunis*, and received *Abdemalech*, secretly come thither, and after a few hours rest, he posted with his *Numidian* Troop to *Tunis*, entering the Castle without resistance, the Warders thinking him to be *Amida*, come from *Biserta*; for *Abdamalech* had after their manner, covered his face with a Scarfe, as if to keep him from the Sun and dust, The Warders perceiving their error, in making resistance, were soon slain by *Abdemalech's* *Numidians*: who letting his many friends in the City, into the Castle, was presently saluted King, the rest well liking it, or not daring to stir. But this new King sickned, and died, having reigned but 26 dayes, and was royally enterred: whose friends encouraged by *Touarres*, chose *Mahometes* his Son (scarce twelve years old) to reign: appointing *Abdalages* (*Maniphathis* his Brother, whom *Amida* slew), *Abdelchirinus*, *Mesuar*, *Schyrisus*, and *Perellus* a Christian Knight, to be his Directors and Governours; but *Abdelchirinus*, devising how to set up one of the Royal blood, able of himself to govern, was by the other three slain, with all his Kindred and known friends: so setting up a kind of Triumvirate Government. *Amida* thus shut out, wandred up and down to many places, craving ayd of all to recover his Kingdom, miserably rent (he said) by most wicked men, triumphing over the boy-King:

which they of *Tunis* knew to be true, complaining of *Abdelchirinus's* death, whom they called the Father of his Country: *Muleasses* the while, obtained of the young King, some time to go out of the Castle to the Temple, under colour whereof, he took Sanctuary, a most inviolate refuge to all as fled thereto. Ere long, when *Mendoza* the Spanish Admiral, came to *Guletta* with his Fleet, *Muleasses* at *Touarres's* request, was conveyed out of the Sanctuary, to *Guletta*, to be present at a consultation, for the utter subverting of *Amida*, and driving the *Turks* out of some Cities along the Coast.

Muleasses hardly escaped before at *Tunis*, an old Woman hiding him under a heap of *Garlick*; and had he not now escaped to *Guletta*, he had again fallen into *Amida's* hands, who soon after recovered his Kingdom (saying, he would not have spared him for reverence of any Sanctuary); for the Citizens weary of the ill Government, and offended also with the King himself, for espousing one of *Muleasses's* Daughters, his Cousin, secretly encouraged *Amida* to repair to the City, &c. who came in such hast, that the young King had scarce time to get away.

Amida easily obtaining the Kingdom, exercised most exquisite cruelty, causing some enemies to be devoured of fierce Mastives, first kept hungry: torturing *Perillus*, cutting off his secrets, and burning him to ashes in the Market-place.

But *Muleasses* stayed not long at *Guletta*, offended with *Touarres*, who had avaritiously deceived him (he said) of a part of his Household-stuffe, precious Stones, and some Treasure, with which he entrusted him; for deciding whereof, they were commanded to repair to the Emperour in *Germany*: where in conclusion, *Touarres* was discharged of his Government; and *Muleasses* sent into *Sicilie* to be kept at the common charge thereof: who coming to *Rome*, by the way, was honourably feasted by

Car-

Cardinal *Fernesius*; but would onely kisse Pope *Paul's* knee, not his foot.

Barbarussa in 1544, requested King *Francis*, thowly to employ him, or to let him depart, offering to spoil all along the Coast of *Spain*; but he knowing what hard speeches ran of him in all parts, for bringing in the *Turks*, was loath to leave such a slaughter to the memory of Posterity: besides, the *Turks* did much harm in the Province where they lay, being reported to snatch up now and then one, for slaves in their Gallies: wherefore, the King giving *Barbarussa* about 400 *Mahometan* slaves, for the *Turks* that were dead, with all kind of provision, and great gifts to him and his Captains, sent him away, and *Strozza* with some Gallies, his Embassador to *Solyman*; so they being come to *Savona*, the *Germans* sent Presents and fresh Viſtuall to *Barbarussa*; for which, he protested not to hurt any of their Territory: thence sailing to *Elba* Island, belonging to the Duke of *Florence*, he wrote to *Appianus* the Governour by promises and threats, to deliver a Son of *Sinan* the Jew, there kept prisoner.

Appianus shewing his men on the Walls, as not afraid, answered, The young man was become a Christian, and so might not be delivered to the *Turks*, but he would in any other thing gratifie him, and for his sake use him as his Sonne, sending him fresh Viſtuall and Presents; but he offended, landed his men, commanding them to make what spoil they could, who hunted the people up and down the Rocks and Mountains, till *Appianus* doubting an utter spoil, delivered the young man to *Salec*, who brought him to *Barbarussa* gallantly attired, of whom he was joyfully received, giving *Appianus* great thanks.

Barbarussa gave him Command of 7 Gallies, and afterwards sent him to old *Sinan*, at the Port of *Suetia*, *Solyman's* Admiral against the *Portugals*; but he overjoyed with the unexpected return of his Son for ma-

ny years counted lost, in embracing him, fainted, and presently died.

Barbarussa came from *Elba*, into the Bay of *Telamon*, in *Tuscanie*, taking, spoiling and burning the City, chiefly the House of *Telamonius*, whose late buried body, he pluckt out of the Grave, and scattered his bones, for (he being the Popes Admirall) waisting his Fathers poor possession in *Lesbos*. He surprized also *Montenum* by night, captivating almost all the Inhabitants: doing the like at *Hercules's* Port; but was repulsed from *Orhatello*, by *Luna* and *Vitellius*, before sent thither; yet having done great harm, and exceedingly frightened all *Tuscanie*, he landed at the Island *Giglis*, about 12 miles from *Hercules's* Port; where, battering the Town, he carried away a huge number into captivity.

Passing the Cape *Linar*, he had burnt *Cantumcello*, for the same reason as he did *Telamon*, had he not been perswaded by *Strozza*, fearing his Masters further obloquie. Thence he came to the Isle *Ischia*, where, in the night, he intercepted most of the Inhabitants fleeing into the Mountains: and, in revenge against *Vastius*, about the Siege of *Nice*, he burnt three chief Towns thereof; but *Pithacusa*, *Vastius's* dwelling places, standing on a Rock, and somewhat from the Sea, he durst not attempt; then doing lesse hurt along *Prochita*, because most of the Inhabitants were fled to *Pithacusa*, he put into the Bay of *Puteoli*, sending *Salce* to try if the City might be battered by Sea: who shooting into it with his Ordnance, slew *Saiavedra*, a valiant Spaniard, on the walls, putting the unprovided Citizens in great fear of the whole Fleet's landing; but the Viceroy coming with a power from *Naples*, *Barbarussa* discovering them, re-called *Salce*. Then he was about to seize on *Salernum*; but a sudden Tempest dispersed his Fleet, driving him upon the Coast of *Calabria*, where he did exceeding harm, chiefly

at *Carreato*. Departing to the Isle *Lipari*, he miserably spoiled it; so battering the City with 40 great Pieces, that they were constrained to yield: whom he carried all away (about 7000) burning the City; so he returned towards *Constantinople*, some Captives almost every hour being cast dead overboard, who were all shut close up together among their excrements, all detesting the hatred betwixt *Charls* and *Francis*, the grounds of these, and thousands of other calamities. He arriving at *Constantinople*, in beginning of *Autumne* 1544, was honourably received of *Solyman*, and highly commended for his good service.

Solyman, while triumphing for his good successe in *Hungary*, was advertized of the death of his eldest and dearest Sonne *Mahomet*, whose body was brought from *Magnesia*; and with exceeding solemnity and mourning, buried at *Constantinople*.

Solyman not onely built him a stately Tombe, but a Temple, called the Temple of *Mahomet* the lesser: annexing thereto, a Monastery and Colledge, with many things more, for the health of his soul. After which, he ceased from Warres two years: in which time, *Francis* the French King died; also *Barbarussa*, of great years and Fame in 1547, buried at his own House called *Bejaethas*, about four miles from *Pera*, on *Europe* side, where he at one time sold about 16000 Captives from *Corcyra*: he there also built a *Mahometan* Temple, yet with his Sepulchre to be seen, that place was called *Jasionium*: about which time also, famous *Vastius*, at 45 years old, died of conceit: at which time *Charls* the Emperour, concluded a peace with *Solyman* for five years: *Ferdinand* being included, which was broken by *Solyman*, at the request of *Henry* the French King, before his expiration,

Ercaſes Imirza, King of *Sirvan*, through the often injuries of his Brother *Tamas* the *Persian* King, fled to *Solyman*, craving ayd against him.

Solyman glad of the occasion, used him with all courtesie, promising to take his quarrel upon him ; And making all things ready, he passed into *Asia*, entering at last into *Armenia*, besieging the City *Van*, yielded to him after 10 dayes, on condition that the *Persian* Souldiers might with life, liberty, and Arms, depart. Thence he sent his chief Commanders to burn and spoil the enemies Countrey : who running far, strove as it were, who should do most harm : *Imirza* being as forward therein as any, presenting the richest things he got, to *Solyman*, to draw him on still in that Warre ; but *Tamas*, without shewing any power, had (as he was wont) withdrawn his people far into the Mountain-Countrey, leaving nothing behind, but the bare ground ; so that, the farther the *Turks* went, the more they wanted, without hope of better success than formerly : wherefore the Captains and Souldiers, (to end such a War, taken in hand for anothers good) consulted either to kill *Imirza*, or disgrace him with *Solyman* : some cunningly filling *Solyman's* Head with distrust of *Imirza's* treacherous dealing, and others *Imirza's* with fear of danger he was in : they perswading the Hare to flee, and the Hounds to follow.

Imirza doubting some sudden mischief, fled to a *Chaldean* Prince, his old acquaintance, who treacherously sent him in bonds to *Tamas* : who glad, cast him in prison ; and there murdering him, that none should in his behalf, prosecute the Warre, or by his meanes hope for Victory.

Solyman was occupied a year and 9 moneths, in this expedition : the *Turks* enduring great troubles, and hard distresses by the *Persians* : till he weary, returned to *Constantinople*, having got neither honour nor profit.

In the mean time, one *Raifes* a notable Turkish Pirate, craftily surprizing the City *Africa* in *Tunis*, and also *Mahomedia*, there settled himself; exceedingly troubling the Christians by sea and land, chiefly those trading in the *Mediterranean*; so that the Emperour moved, commanded the Viceroy of *Sicily*, and *Auria*, to leavy a sufficient power to repress him before he grew stronger. Whereupon they, ayded also by the Knights of *Malta*, passed into *Africk*, besieging the City, and making it faultable with battery: and hearing that *Raifes* was coming to relieve it, they speedily assaulted it by sea and land, taking it in few hours, Sept. 10, 1550. many enemies being slain, the rest taken. *Auria*, considering the City was not without excessive charge to be holden there, razed it to the ground, carrying away 7000 Captives, and all its spoil: doing also, all harm he could with fire and sword all along the coast, that the *Turks* might find no relief, taking 12 prisoners out of *Monasterium*, and returning to *Sicily*.

Raifes thrust out of all, fled with a few to *Solyman*, and so incensed him with complaint of the wrong; that he resolved to make War upon the Emperour and *Ferdinand*, though the 5 years-League was not expired. So comforting up the Pirate, the spring following, 1551. he furnished him with a great warlike Fleet, 140 Sail, *Sinan Bassa* commanding in chief, who arriving in *Sicily*, suddenly surprized the Town and Castle of *Augusta*, which they sacked. Thence they came to *Malta*, landing their men in the Port of *Marza* or *Moxet*, battering the Castle with Ordnance to no great purpose: yet some *Turks* running farther up, made havock of all in their way.

A few dayes thus spent, and they valiantly repulsed, and in other places by Ambushments, &c. cut off; they removed to *Paul's Road*, landing their Ordnance to besiege the City; but perceiving small hope, and their men dying through the extreame heat, they went to the little Island *Goxa* 5 miles off, westward (subject to the Knights)

mise.

miserably spoiling it, and carrying away of all sorts 6300 captives, whence they sailed to *Tripolis* in *Barbary* (then kept by the Knights of *Malta*, given them by *Charles*) for taking whereof, landing their Forces, they drew as near it as they could by long-winding Trenches, not without great loss; for they of the Castle with continual great shot often enforced them to retire: yet they came at last within 800 paces of the walls: where the *Bassa* by night, planting his battery; next day, *Aug. 8.* the Canon began to play, and was answered with the like, every hour some of the *Turks* being slain; 4 of their best Canoniers were that day slain, with others of good account; the well-beloved Clerk General having his Hand shot off: breaking one of their best peeces, and dismounting four others, which made them that day to leave the battery.

Next night they approached nearer: the Christians (in day-break) sallying out to their very Trenches, and so retired: The *Turks* at Sun-rising renewed a more forcible Battery; but the fire happening into their powder, 30 were burnt, many hurt, and one piece broken. At length, the *Turks* continuing a furious Battery within 150 paces of the wall, made a fair Breach: but they repairing by night what was beat down by day, it was not to be assaulted. Yet a corrupted Souldier, fleeing out of the Castle, declared to the *Bassa* the weakest places thereof, especially that against the Governours Lodging, which standing toward the Ditch, and Cellars to retire the Ammunition into underneath it, could not, if battered, be well repaired or fortified: Wherefore, the *Bassa* laying the pieces low, did easily so beat the Cellars, that the rammers above the walls, greatly sunk, which so amazed the Souldiers, that they requested the Governour, since the matter began to grow desperate, &c. he would, in time, take some order with the enemy for their safety: Whereat, *Vallier* was exceedingly troubled; which *Peisieu* the most antient Knight perceiving, declared, in the others name,

name, unto them, that the Breach was defensible enough, if they would courageously repair it : saying, It was more Honourable to die, fighting against the Infidels, &c. than to yield to the mercy of those, from whom all cruelty was to be expected, perswading *Vallier* to hold out to the last ; yet he overcome with the importunity of those who would needs yield, consented, A white Ensigne to be displayed, in token of parley ; whereto the *Bassa* willingly consenting, 2 Knights were sent out, offering him the Castle, so he would furnish them with ships to bring them with bag and baggage to *Malta* : who answered, if they would pay all the charges of the Army, he would grant it, or all within the Castle to remain his slaves and prisoners : yet he would exempt 200 of them, if they would incontinently yield. But afterwards he solemnly, though dissemblingly sware twice (first to the Messengers) then before *Vallier* the Governour himself, whom by a subtile *Turk* he drew out of the Castle, and who had answered the *Bassa* warily, that they should all be delivered and set at liberty without paying the charges of the Army : which good news being reported to them, they ran in press who should first get out with their wives children and moveables : but, being issued forth, they were spoiled of all, and taken, part of the Knights being sent to the Gallies, the rest to the *Bassa* : whom the Governour (minding of his Faith twice given) he answered, there was no Faith to be kept with dogs : they having first violated their oaths to *Solyman*, at giving over the *Rhodes*, never to bear Arms against the *Turks*. Thus the strong Castle and City of *Tripolis*, was delivered to the *Turks*, Aug. 15. 1551. the Castle being spoiled, and about 200 *Moors*, who served the Knights, cut in pieces : with a great peal of Ordnance, and great cries and shouts in token of Victory. Lord *Aramont*, the old French Embassador, sent again by *Henry 2d.* to *Constantinople*, came to the *Turks* Camp at the great Master's request, to dissuade the

the *Bassa* from the siege, but not prevailing; yet grieved at the faithless *Bassas* dealing, he put him in mind of his promise by oath, at least to release 200, as he offered: but he still said, no faith was to be kept with dogs, &c. yet he freed 200 of the eldest and most unfit for service: of whom were the Governor and some old Knights transported to *Malto* in *Aramonts* Gallies, but hardly welcome for that cowardly surrender, Aug. 16. The *Bassa* for joy made a solemn dinner, inviting the Embassadors and *Vallier*. It was kept in the Castle-ditch against the Breach in 2 stately Pavillions: one for the *Bassa*, the other for *Aramont* and his company, feasted with great plenty of flesh, fish, and wines found in the Castle, with Musick, and above 100 Officers most in rich long Gowns: all the Ordnance of the Fleet being discharged. After dinner, *Aramont* and *Vallier* entered the *Bassas* Pavilion, obtaining 20 more to be released upon the Embassadors promise of 30 *Turks*, taken at *Malsa*, to be released at the Feast.

The *Turks* bringing forth *John de Chabot* (an ancient Gunner of the Castle, who shot off the Clerk Generals hand) into the Town, cut off his Hands & Nose, and setting him quick into the ground to the waste, shot at him with Arrows for pleasure, and then cut his throat. The *Bassa* departing, left *Rais*es Governour of *Tripolis*, giving him the Title of *Zanzack*, whence he many years greatly troubled the *Moors* nigh him, by Land, and the Christians by Sea. That year, 1551. *Solyman* for all the peace with *Ferdinand*, at his going into *Persia*, sent *Achomates* into *Hungarie* with a great power, who with *Hala* the *Bassa* took *Temesware* (slaying the Garrison contrary to their Faith given) then also *Zolnoek* Castle, first forsaken, with other small ones; but besieging *Ersam*, they were by the Defendant's valour, and winters coming on, forced to get into their wintering-places.

Queen *Issabel*, seeing the *Turks* daily encroaching on
 that

that little they left her; by *George* the Bishop his advise delivered to *Ferdinand* the Government of *Transylvania*, with all the royal Dignity of *Hungary*, for *Cassovia* and 100000 Duckats yearly pension and so returning into *Polonia*; but the Bishop (made a Cardinal) being suspected by *Baptista* the Italian, to favour more the *Turks* than *Ferdinand*, thereby to get the Government, was by his device murdered at his own House at *Veradium*.

Haly Bassa of *Buda* proud of his success, purposed (in 1552) to besiege some chief *Hungarians* withdrawn into the Castle of *Agria*: so, aided by *Achomates*, *Chasan*, and others ready at his call; he came with 35000 *Turks*, Sept. 10. round the Castle, beginning a most furious battery: attempting also to undermine it. But all in vain, for the *Hungarians* by *Dobus* the Captain's good direction, very manfully repulsed them, Sept. 29. they with 28 choise Companies gave a fresh assault, and were forced to retire; 24 Barrels of Gunpowder firing, blew up divers with much harm to the Castle, and to the great dismay of the Defendants, Octob. 12. they assaulted it fiercely from morning till night, leaving nothing unattempted; but were forced at last with great loss to give over. Then he would by large promises and offers have bought them out; but his Letters being scornfully burnt, he brought on his Souldiers most furiously again, but with no better success than before. So after 6 weeks siege he retired to *Pesth*, having battered the wall with 12000 shot, 6000 *Turks* being slain, and 300 Defendants: *Ferdinand* making the Captain *Vayvod* of *Transylvania*, and bountifully rewarding the rest.

Henry the French King, so wrought with *Solyman* by *Aramont*, that in 1553, he sent a great Fleet into the *Tuscane* sea, doing great hurt, that and the year after, on *Calabria* and divers Islands and places on the Emperours Frontiers; yet were the *Turks* in most places notably repulsed by the people. In which year *Solyman* seduced by

by *Roxalana* then his imperious wife, not Concubine, and *Rustan Bassa* his son in law, murdered his eldest son *Mustapha*, the mirror of the *Othoman* family : who was begotten on a *Circassian* Bondwoman, and for his towardsness and perfection, had in the greatest expectation and admiration among the *Turks* : while he thus grew, *Solyman* became amorous of *Roxalana*, *Rosa* (or rather *Hazashya*) a captive, but so beautiful and Courtly, that she soon was commandress of him : having made him a Father of 4 fair sons, *Mahomet*, *Selimus*, *Bajazet* and *Tziander*, and one Daughter married to *Rustan*, called *Chameria* : *Mustapha* embarring one of *Roxalana's* sons (she thought) of the hope of the Empire ; she procured him and his mother (with a Princely allowance) to be sent to govern *Caramania* afar from Court, attended on (after the manner of sons so sent) with a *Bassa*, and a grave Doctor of their Law ; but she saw, *Mustapha's* utter destruction was not to be brought to pass without some Complices : pitching at last on *Rustan* (her son in law, among many conceited of) who was of a mean birth in *Epirus*, and though none of the best Souldier yet by dissimulation and flattery, grew to be the greatest man in the Court : and whom she knew was especially odious to *Mustapha*, for attempting to cut off some part of his allowance (as he did the pensions and fees of the Officers and Servitours at Court) thinking, if he obtained the Empire, he would not forget it. Having broke with *Rustan* upon the matter, she suddenly became very devout, and being exceeding rich, pretended (as for the health of her soul) to build an Abbey, with an Hospital and Temple, demanding of the *Mufti* or chief Priest, if such works of Charity were not acceptable to God, and available for her souls Health? who answered, They were gracious in Gods sight, but not meritorious for her soul, being a Bondwoman, yet very profitable for *Solyman's* soul, to whom she and all she had appertained. Whereupon, she became wondrous

Gross pensive and melancholly, her eyes flowing with tears, &c. which *Solyman* perceiving, sent her word to be of good cheer, promising shortly to ease her of all her griefs, which he did, manumissing her from her Bond estate: wherefore she began those intended works: and hoping thus a good while, busied her self; *Solyman*, not able longer to forbear her company, sent for her by an Eunuch to his bed-Chamber, to whom she with eyes cast upward, demurely answered, All was at her Sovereign's command; but to yield her body to him being now free, she might in no case do without the great offence of the High God, referring her self to the judgement of the Musti, with whom she had fully conferred. *Solyman* ravished with her love, required the Musti's judgement: who agreed with *Roxalana*, aggravating the fact, if he should enforce her as his slave, whom being free, he might not touch unmarried; Whereupon, he became a fresh Suitor to her for marriage (the mark she aymed at) and speedily (contrary to the manner of those Emperours) solemnly married her; with 5000 *Sultanyys* yearly for her Dowry, who now became the greatest Empresse of the East; yet Noble *Mustapha*, Heir of the Empire, in midst of her blisse, suffered her to take no rest: Wherefore she laboured cunningly by degrees, to breed in *Solyman's* Head, no small suspicion of him, that he haughty, and generally beloved, &c. left nothing to be expected of him, but when (as did *Selimus*) he should lay hand on the Empire, and work his aged Fathers destruction. *Rustan* also omitting nothing that could be slyly devised for disgrace or confusion of the young Prince; for he secretly told all, sent Governours into *Syria*, that *Mustapha* was suspected by *Solyman* of aspiring to the Kingdom, charging them to observe his actions, &c. and to advertise him of whatsoever he should see or hear: and saying, The more odiously they should write of him, the more acceptable it would be to the *Sultan*? Wherefore, he oft certified
of

of his Princely disposition; &c. whereby he had won all mens hearts, saw plainly he would at length be preferred to the Empire; yet durst he not adventure to tamper with *Solymán*, but still delivered the Letters to the malicious Woman: who ceased not upon occasion with pleasing Allurements to infect *Solymán*, that whenever he spake of *Mustapha*, she might the fitter produce those Letters; and with trickling tears told him in what danger he stood: recounting, how his Father *Selimus* had dealt with his Grandfather; instantly (as if out of a careful love) beseeching him, to look to himself; but she little prevailing by those light Arguments of suspicion, sought how to poyson *Mustapha*: and rich apparel being lent him by her in his Fathers Name, he fearing, would not touch it before one of his servants had worn it. Yet was she still plotting new devices, and obtained that her sons might (by turns) be present in the Court: thereby, more and more to procure their Fathers love; and if *Mustapha* should chance to come thither, that she might the better dispatch him; if not, to expect some other fit time; but he never coming (as not having leave) she devised that her sons should wait on their Father into the Provinces also; so that *Texihanger*, surnamed *Crouchback*, alwayes followed his Father in the Camp: at length, she got suspicious Letters from the *Bassa* (who governed *Mustapha* and the Province *Amasia*) that there was a speech of a marriage betwixt *Mustapha* and the *Persian Kings* Daughter: which he thought good to give the Council notice of. *Rustan* receiving the Letters, opened the matter to *Roxelana*, both of them going and declaring it to the Emperor; forcing their wits to fill his suspicious Head with the fear of his most dutiful son; by their accusations so prevailing, that at length, he resolved to work his safety by his sons death: Proclaiming, almost in all his Provinces in 1552. that since the *Persians* invaded *Syria*, burning and destroying, &c. he was forced to send *Rustan Bas-*

say with an Army (which was soon raised) : commanding *Rustan* with what secrecy and quiet possible to apprehend and bring *Mustapha* bound to *Constantinople* : otherwise by any other means to take him out of the way. *Mustapha* hearing of his coming into *Syria*, made thitherward with 7000 of the best Horsemen in *Turkie* : Wherefore *Rustan* returned to *Constantinople* so speedily, that he endured not to see the dust raised by his men, much less his presence giving out : He heard the Province was in quiet, as indeed it was ; but he maliciously told *Solyman*, he manifestly perceived the whole Army so enclined towards *Mustapha*, that if he had attempted any thing against him by force he had been utterly forsaken. This raised in him new and great suspicions : Wherefore in 1553, he raised a great Army (giving out the *Persians* had with greater power invaded *Syria*) and therefore he determined to go in person to repress the attempts of his enemies) so coming at length into *Syria*, he (by trusty Messengers) commanded *Mustapha* to come unto him to *Alappe*, where he encamped ; yet was his close hatred against him perceived by great men about him : Wherefore *Achamat Bassa*, secretly gave him warning thereof. *Mustapha* himself also marvelling, that his aged Father should come so far without apparant reason, with so great an Army ; yet, being innocent, though much perplexed, he resolved to obey his Fathers command : thinking it more commendable to incur the danger of death, than, lying, to be suspected of hid Loyaltie : and after much discourse with himself what best to do, He asked the Doctor (alwayes in his Court) Whether the Empire of the world, or a blessed life, were most to be desired ? who answered, the Empire (on due consideration) brought no felicity more than a vain shew of good , nothing being more frail than worldly Honour, bringing with it, fear, vexation, murder, wrong, captivity, and abundance of like mischiefs, whereby the blessed Life was to be lost , and

not gained; but those to whom God had given Grace rightly to consider these things, and striving against the Vanities of this world, and to embrace an upright Life, had surely a place prepared in Heaven, where they should at length enjoy life and bliss eternal.

This answer very much satisfied his troubled mind, foreseeing as it were his end approaching; and so, hastening towards his Father, pitched his Tents in the open field, not far off from his Camp; But this his hasty coming, the more increased the suspicion: *Rustan* craftily increasing the same. For he caused the *Janizaries* and chief men to go meet *Mustapha*, as if for Honours-sake: and the while, with troubled countenance, came in haste to *Solyman*, falsely telling him, that almost all the best Soldiers of the Army were without leave gone to meet him, he fearing what would ensue: Whereat, he became pale for fear, and going out of his Tent (finding them gone) he easily believed all to be true. *Mustapha* also, the 3d. day before his setting forward, falling asleep in the evening, seemed to see *Mahomet* in bright Apparel to lead him by the Hand into a most pleasant place, with most glorious Pallaces and delicate Gardens: and pointing to every thing with his finger, to say, *Here they rest for ever, who have led an upright and godly life, &c.* Then on t'other side, to have shewn him 2 great and swift Rivers: one boyling with water blacker than pitch, and in them numbers of men, tumbling some up and some down, crying horribly for mercy: saying, *There are all punished who have been malicious workers of iniquity, the chief being great men of the world.* He awaking, asked his Doctor what it might signifie? who musing a great while full of grief, answered, This Vision was to be feared, as presaging the extreame peril of his life, and therefore requested him to have great care of Life and Honour: but he stoutly replied, Shall I suffer my self to be terrified and overcome with childish and vain fear? Why rather haste I not? &c. and

and the more boldly, because I know I have alwayes revered his Majesty, never turning eyes or foot against his Royal-Seat; much lesse affecting his Empire, except God had called him to a better Life; nor then without the general choice of the Army, that I might without murder, blood and tyrannie, well and justly reign; and, in love and peace inviolate, live with my brethren, &c. So he came, as was said, to the Camp all in white, in token of Innocency, and wrote Letters (as the *Turks* superstitiously do, when going to any dangerous place) and, putting them in his bosom, came with a few trusty followers, with great reverence towards his Fathers Tent, to kiss his Hand: and remembring his dagger girt about him, entred not till he had put it off; being come into the inner-Rooms, he was sutablely received by *Solymans* Eunuch's; but seeing but one seat, he perplexed, stood a while musing, then asking, Where his Father was? who answered, He should by and by see him: and looking aside, he saw 7 Mutes (strong men bereft of speech) whom the *Turks* hath alway ready for the more secret execution of their Butchery, coming toward him: saying no more, but Lo my death, and arising was about to flee; but, he was caught hold of by the Eunuchs and Mutes: and being drawn to the appointed place, they cast a Bow-string about his neck, he striving and requesting to speak but 2 words first to his Father. All which the Murderer heard and saw by a Travers on tother side, saying to the Villains, with a most terrible Voyce; *Will ye never dispatch what I bid you? will ye never make an end of this Traitor, for whom I have not rested one night this ten years in quiet?* Whereupon, they threw the poor Innocent on the ground, and with the Eunuchs help drawing the knotted string both wayes, strangled him, he doing the like to his Son shortly after. But presently commanding his *Bassa* to be apprehended, and beheaded in his presence: Then sending for *Tzishangar* the crooked, bid him in sporting-wise, go meet his Brother *Mustapha*:

which he (ignorant) hasted to do, as glad of his coming; but when he came to the place where his brother lay dead on the ground, he was beyond measure tormented. *Solyman* sent to him, offering him all *Mustapha's* wealth with his Government; but *Tzibanger* calling his Father ungodly Caint, and Traitor, and most highly commending *Mustapha*: said, Himself would provide, that none should so shamefully triumph over a poor crooked wretch, stabbing himself with his dagger, and shortly dying: Whereat, the old Tyger exceedingly grieved: His Body being Honourably buried at *Pera*. He forthwith commanded all *Mustapha's* riches to be brought into his Tent: which the Souldiers hoping for, hasted to perform; but *Mustapha's* Souldiers, not knowing what was become of him, seeing such a multitude thrust into their Camp without order, notably repulled them, not without much blood-shed. The rest of the Kings Souldiers hearing the stir, ran to help their fellows: so that in short time 2000 were slain, and more wounded: neither had the broil ended, had not *Achomat Bassa*, a grave and experienced Captain of no small Authority, kept back the *Janizaries*, and likewise appeased the rage of *Mustapha's* Souldiers by gentle and mild words, and courteous persuasions: whereby they were so mollified; that they suffered all that was in *Mustapha's* Tent, to be carried into *Solyman's*; but when *Mustapha's* death was blown about the Camp, another worse tumult arose; They in a rage breaking into *Solyman's* Pavilion with drawn swords: which so frightened him, that he was with extream peril about to flee; but being holden by his Friends, and making a Verue of Necessity; he went forth of his Tent, but with a pale countenance, speaking unto them: *What broil is this? &c. What means your fierce and angry looks? know ye not your Sovereign? Have ye resolved to stain your own and Ancestours invincible Honour, with the blood of your Lord and Emperour?*

They

They boldly answered, *He was the man whom they had long before chosen; but they had got and preserved for him a large and mighty Empire, that he should govern them virtuously, and not lay his bloody hands on every just man &c. and that they came thither armed justly, to revenge the death of guiltless Multapha, for which he had no just cause to be angry: protesting they would never lay down weapons, till the Accuser of him for treason appeared, commencing his accusation judicially, upon pain of the like punishment, if he failed in proof.*

The late hainous fact made every man the while, to shed tears, so that *Solyman* seemed to be sorry for his murder: promising the Souldiers whatever they required; yet lest he should slip away, and deceive them of what he had promised, they kept most diligent watch and ward: Wherefore to appease them, he deprived *Rustan Bassa* of all Honours, and of his Seal which he delivered to *Achomates*; But *Rustan*, now in no safety in his own tents: secretly asked *Achomates*, what course best to take in so dangerous a case? who answered, to do what the Emperour advised and commanded: Which was, without delay to get him out of his sight and Camp: which he said he could not do conveniently, being disfurnished of all necessities: *Solyman* sent answer again, He were best to be gone for fear of further harm. Whereupon, the guilty *Bassa*, but with 8 Friends posted to *Constantinople*: where, with *Roxalana*, and other contrivers against *Mustapha*, he in great great fear expected the event.

Mustapha was generally beloved, for his Vertues; but of the Souldiers, most for his Martial disposition and readiness to shed Christian-bloud: When in private or public actions they fail of any great hope; They use to say, *Gietti Sultan Mustava: Sultan Mustapha is dead.* When *Achomates Bassa* received the Seal from *Solyman*; he told him, as he did frankly bestow it on him, so he would to his disgrace take it from him: who swore to him, not to dis-

place him so long as he lived; yet *Solyman* falling in dislike with him, and willing to promote *Rustan* to that the greatest Honour, to save his Oath, he resolved to put *Achomates* to death: whereof, he (ignorant) came (as he was wont) into the *Divano*; receiving word from *Solyman*, he must presently die, the Hangman being ready to strangle him: whom he thrusting away with his hand. (shewing no more trouble than if it had not concerned him) looking round, at last espyed an honest man, whom he had often pleased; He earnestly requested him to strangle him as the greatest good turn he could devise, desisting to die by the Executioners hand: which he at last undertaking; *Achomates* willed him not at one twitch to do it, but slacking the string again, to let him once breathe and then dispatch him: being (it seems) desirous first to taste of death, and not to die all at once. *Rustan* was presently restored to the Viceroyship, which he enjoying about 6 years, died of the Dropsie. *Solyman* is reported to say, 'Twas better for *Achomates* once to die, than to die 1000 times, in seeing his Honour bestowed on another.

The *Turks* Gallies brought by the *French* into the *Tuscan*-sea did much hurt, in 1554, and divers years after; Then did *Contareus* the *Venetian* Admiral, chance to meet with the *Bassa* of *Calipolis* (who the year before had rifled certain of their Merchants) and having greatly spoiled them, he ransacked *Dyrrachium* a Turkish Port in *Dalmatia*. Next year 1555 that *Bassa* recruited, surprizing the Isles *Plumbis* and *Elba*, subject to the Duke of *Florence*: and perswading *Solyman* to take Arms against the *Venetians*, who had broken the League.

Then also did *Haly* by policy surprize *Babozza*-Castle in *Hungarie*, hoping to do the like to *Zigeth* Town and Castle: but his purpose failing, he in 1556 encamped before it with a great Army, June 13: wherein was valiant *Hermath*, and a notable Garrison, During his terrible battery,

tery, they sallying forth slew many: yet *June 20.* they won the uttermost wall, hoping at the 6th. assault to win the Castle also: but the Christians sallying out, slew 800 of them, driving the rest from the wall; yet the *Turks* with abundance of Carts laboured to fill up the Marsh and Ditches about the Town, which they also defeated. The *Bassa* now perswaded them to yield on composition; but failing therein, He beginning *July 12.* assaulted the City 5 dayes together without ceasing, still sending in fresh men, yet was the City notably defended; so raising his siege, *July 21.* He in 6 dayes after returned from *Quinge Ecclesia*, assaulting it afresh, but at last was glad to be gone, losing above 2000, his best Souldiers, & but 120 of the Defendants being slain: He had battered the Town and Castle with 10000 shot found. The *Turks* the while, did what harm they could in the *Tuscane*-sea, miserably again spoiling *Corfica*; for withstanding of whom, the Pope exacted of his people a great subsidy, stripping the Jews of their money, and seizing on their rich Merchandize; at whose earnest suit *Solyman* wrote to him briefly requesting him (having called him most mighty Lord of the professours of the Messias Jesu) to restore them their goods, that they might pay him his tribute: which if he should do, he should feel his favour.

Haly Bassa grieved, besieged *Zigeth* again next year; when as *Ferdinand* sent *Polmiler* and Count *Serinus* with a power to recover *Babozza*-Castle: Wherefore *Haly* rose from *Zigeth*, and met with them not far from *Babozza*: who after a sharp fight, put him to flight. Upon this Victory, and young *Ferdinands* coming with new supplies, the *Turks* for fear forsook *Babozza*, *Samartin*, *San-Lawrence*, and divers other small Castles, fleeing to *Quinge Ecclesia*; the Governour of *Zigeth*, slaying many in their flight overthrew a Troop, and taking the money they were bringing for pay. Then also the Governour of *Rab*, or *Javar num*, burning the Suburbs of *Alba Regalis*,

and driving away 1000 of Carrel : and at *Sian* overthrew 500 *Turks*, and as many fugitive Christians : so with little or no loss returning.

Henry the French King, troubled with the overthrow of his Army by *Philip* of *Spain*, not far from *St. Quintins* (Duke *Monmouth* the General, with his son and divers Nobles being taken) solicited *Solymán* by *Codignac* to invade *Naples* and *Sicily* by sea, to withdraw the Spanish out of *France*: which, he (offended with the Embassadors, insolence) refused; yet commanding his adventurer's along *Africa*, to do what harm they could; so that the Viceroy of *Sicily* was fain for defence of those Countries to lay with his Gallies in the Port of *Calesta* and *Naples*.

The Grand Prior of *St. John's* Knights in *France* (brother of the Duke of *Guise*, General of the French in *Italy*, who upon the overthrow at *St. Quintins*, called thence, soon after took *Calis*) went Eastward with 4 *Malta* Gallies to wait for the *Turks*: meeting with 2 great ships of Merchandize, which he took, and by and by had a great fight with 4 *Turks* Gallies, sinking one, burning another, and taking the rest: but, in his return, 4 other great Gallies met with him, in revenge setting upon him: who seeing no remedy, encountred them: but before, losing some men, and 72 Knights laying sore wounded, he returned towards *Malta*: one of his Galley's with 52 Knights being taken by the way; yet he brought away the prizes, staying that Winter at *Malta*: then sailing into *France* to partake of long troubles shortly beginning.

Solymán had now only remaining alive, *Selimus*, and *Bajazet* his younger brother, both men grown, but very much differing from each other, both in feature and disposition. *Selimus* (most like his mother) was secretly determined Heir of the Empire by his Father. *Bajazet* (much resembling his Father) was strongly supported by the entire love of his Mother, whom she would have pre-

preferred before *Selimus*, if it had layen in her power, *Bajazet*, not ignorant of his Fathers resolution towards *Selimus*: (being comforted by his mother *Roxalana* and *Rustan Bassa*) resolved rather to end his dayes by proving his Fortune, than upon the death of his aged Father, to be but jeered by his Brother, being already fallen out with him. He knowing the disposition of the people for the unworthy death of *Mustapha*: and some fearing to be called to account for their immoderate affection they had born towards him; found out a notable bold obscure fellow, who should take on him the name and person of *Mustapha*: from whose stature, countenance, and proportion, he not much differed: who came (as if by chance escaping) into a part of *Thracia* (not far from *Moldavia* and *Valachia*) best stored with Horsemen, and most Honouring *Mustapha* (slenderly accompanied, as if, at first, not desirous to be known); his followers rather fearfully giving them that asked, occasion to guesse, than plainly to tell them, it was *Mustapha*: neither did he himself much deny it, whereby the people were more and more desirous to know him. Afterward he began to give God thanks for his safe arrival there, telling them, that when he was sent for by his Father, he by his friends counsel, perswaded (with great promises) one maveinous like himself to go in his stead: who, before he was admitted to his speech, was strangled, and cast out before his Pavillion, the greatest part being deceived in the miserable dead man, who was much altered with the terrible pains of death: wherefore he presently fled but with a few, and passing above *Pontus* and the people of *Bosphorus*, was now come thither, where he hoped to find much help from his Friends: whom he requested not now to forsake him, or less to account him, disgraced by the malice of his step-Mother, than they had in his prosperity; for he was minded to revenge the wrong done him, &c. who had the *Janizaries*, with most of his Fathers family, and great multitudes

ritudes on his side: giving out those things, at last, openly wherever he came: The same also did they report whom he said were the Companions of his flight, confirmed by divers of good account, whom *Bajazet* had dealt with to that purpose; so that a great number were hereby seduced. And *Mustapha*'s followers who knew the deceit, yet blinded with fear, grief, and desire of revenge, were the first who offer'd their service to this Counterfeit: who kept with, or entertained, some with fair promises, some with courteous speeches, and many with Rewards; which he said, he had still reserved. So in few dayes, enow almost for a whole Army, resorted unto him. *Solymán* advertised from the *Zanzacks* thereabouts, of the danger like to ensue, and suspecting it was not done without the privity of one of his sons, reproved the *Zanzacks* by Letters that they had not in the beginning suppressed the same, grievously threatning them, if they did not speedily send that Counterfeit with his Complices, bound to *Constantinople*: promising to send them *Partau Bassa* (who had married *Mahomet's* Widow, *Roxalana's* eldest son) with a strong power; but if they would be excused, to dispatch the matter before his coming. *Partau's* squadrons of Court-souldiers, were not so many, as notably faithful: for the common *Janizaries*, standing in suspense at the same, and expectation of some Novelty, favoured that broil. The *Zanzacks* began now to encourage each other to bestir themselves, and (with all possible speed and power) to oppose the attempts of this new-found *Mustapha*: by labouring to stay such as were coming to him, and to disperse those already come, by shewing them the danger, and threatning all the extremities: *Partau* the while, being come not far off, the Counterfeit's Souldiers, seeing themselves beset, a few slipped away, and afterwards every man fled whither he thought best: the Captain also seeking to do the like, was with his chief followers delivered by the *Zanzacks* to the *Bassa*:

sa: who sent them to *Constantinople*; where *Solyman* by most exquisite torments, drew from them all the secret devices of his son *Bajazet*: causing them to be drowned in the sea, at mid night, that his domestique, yea bleeding wounds, might not be laid open to his Neighbour Princesses.

Yet being greatly offended with *Bajazet*, he cast in his mind how to be revenged on him; which *Roxalana* not ignorant of, when his fury was over-past, fell into talk with him about it, alledging in her sons behalf, the indiscreetnesse of youth, the necessity of the fact, and example of his Ancestours in like case, &c. That it was reason he should forgive him this first fault; but if he should again relapse, time would be to punish him for both faults: that if he would not pardon him for his own sake, yet for hers, &c. requesting him to preferre Clemency before just Indignation: since God himself did deal with sinners for most part in mercy, else all mankind would not suffice his wrath: And would mercy in any place be more fit, than in the Father towards his child? promising, he should thenceforth remain in most dutiful obedience toward his Majesty; the remembrance of which Fatherly forgivenesse, should be a stay to him for ever doing the like: which, and such like words, with tears and other gestures, so wrought, that *Solyman* resolved to forgive the fault: but he should come and submit, and receive from him his charge. Wherefore, she speedily and secretly advertised *Bajazet*, not to fear coming to his Father when sent for: assuring him, she had made his peace. *Bajazet* comforted, resolved to go when sent for: yet full of fear, oft looking back to his brother *Mustapha*. Yet he came to a common Inne at *Carestan*, a few miles from *Constantinople*, the place appointed; for the Turk in these times suffers no son, when a man, to come into *Constantinople*: *Bajazet* alighring, his Fathers guard were ready to receive him, commanding him to lay aside his
Sword

Sword and Dagger. But his kind mother (foreseeing in what perplexity he would come) called unto him (in passing by) out of a little Calèment, covered with a thin linnen-cloth: saying, *Corcoma Oglon, Corcoma*: that is, Fear not my son, fear not; not a little comforting and encouraging him. But having done his duty to *Solymán*, he bid him sit down by him, reproving him of rashness and want of discretion in taking up Arms, &c. And so having in other words also reproved him of disloyalty, pardoned him: and telling him, if twere his destiny to enjoy the Empire, it was not by mans power to be kept from him (as ordained by God for him); but if otherwise appointed by God, then were it a mad thing for him, to labour in vain against Gods will; Wherefore, he should cease to rage and molest his brother and aged Father; for if he should raise new stirs, no place of mercy would be found for his second offence. *Bajazet*, rather craving pardon for his trespasses, than excusing himself, promised thenceforth to live most loyally: *Solymán* calling for drink for *Bajazet*, who drank what he thought good, doubting it might be his last, but his Father forthwith drank a good draught of the same Cup. So *Bajazet* returned to his former charge, behaving himself with all dutiful and brotherly kindness from that time, 1555. while his mother lived, rather to keep her favour, than for any confidence in his Father, or love to his brother; but she dying about 2 years after, he, by secret practises to make away his brother, and by open force entred his Province not far off, evil entreating some of his followers: omitting nothing tending to his disgrace, whom he wished (of all other) dead. He sought also to gain the Souldiers love by some favorites at *Constantinople*, passing thither himself upon occasion, secretly there lurking with those of his faction: Of all which (chiefly by *Selimus*, his Letters, wherein he also advised him to have a care of his safety, &c.) *Solymán* had knowledge: Wherefore, he by Letters put *Bajazet* in mind of his

his duty, promise, and his courtesie towards him: that there would not be alwayes place for forgiveness; and that, after his death, God would assign them both their Fortunes: But *Bajazet* was fully set down to hazard all, rather than to be slain by his brother: yet answered his Father not impertinently, but his deeds agreed not with his saying; Wherefore *Solyman* gave his sons to understand, that both of them within a preixed time should remove their Governments farther off, *Bajazet* from *Luca* to *Amasia*, *Selimus* from *Magnesia* to *Iconium*: He commanded them both to remove, to seem indifferent, adjoyning this: that the farther they were off from each other, they should be so much the nearer in mind and brotherly love, &c. to do in any case as he commanded, and he who stayed longest should not be free from the suspicion of contempt. *Selimus* made no long stay; but *Bajazet* hung back, staying a little way off, complaining of the unlucky Province of *Amasia*: stained with *Mustapha's* blood, &c. requesting, to Winter in those places where he was, or there from whence *Selimus* was departed: but *Solyman* would not hearken to him.

Selimus with some Troops from his Father beside his own, returning and fetching a compass, appeared at his loytering brothers back, marching towards *Prusa*, not without his Fathers privity: who thought it best for *Selimus* to stay there, the fitter to help one another: if *Bajazet* should, as was feared, turn upon either of them.

But when he saw this contrary to his expectation, and that *Selimus* should be Heir of the Empire: He wrote unto his Father, accusing his Brother, that he thereby declared how maliciously he affected him, only to aspire to the Empire; and have a short cut over to *Constantinople*, if his Father dyed, which he gaped after: but otherwise, by secret Ministers of his Treason, to dispatch him, &c. yet this man, as a most dutiful son, to be much made of: whereas he, meaning well, &c. was not had

had in any regard, whose greatest request was but to shun an ominous Province. Then he prayed, requesting his Father to gratifie him, if it were but with that Province which his Brother left, or any other more lucky than *Amasia*, &c. However he was ready to go whither he should command: It's the manner of the *Turks*, of the smallest things to divine upon the greatest; but *Solyman* not ignorant of his sons teares, knew he sought but for a more fit place to raise new stirrs in, nearer *Constantinople*. So *Bajazet* the while, augmented his strength, and whatever else served for his own defence, and impugning his Brother: which *Solyman* took as intended against himself; but would not, by taking notice thereof, drive his too hasty-son head long; knowing also, the eyes of all Nations were bent upon this discord: Wherefore, he answered *Bajazet* courteously, they should both do well to go to their appointed places, which he could not alter. For the rest he would so order it, that neither of them should justly complain: *Partau Bassa* was sent with this Message to him; and *Mehemet* with the like, to *Selimus*: who were commanded not to depart from them, till come to the assigned places of Government. *Selimus* took it in good part, but *Bajazet* thought nothing more unfit for his designs, than to have one of his Fathers greatest Councillours still at his elbow, as a Censor: Wherefore he dismissed him (though unwilling) with this excuse, that he would use him as his Patron, having none other to defend his cause in Court, promising not to be to him an unthankful Client; and to carry word to his Father, he would (above all) have care of his command, if he might for *Selimus*: whose wrongs and treacheries he had much ado to brook. *Partau* assured *Solyman* of *Bajazets* very purpose: and, although he made shew to go to *Amasia*; yet *Solyman* made all preparation against him, sending the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece* with his Horsemen, and *Mehemet* with some trusty *Janizaries*, to ayd *Seli-*

Mus : himself making semblance, as if he would have gone over : but the Court-Souldiers detested that War between the Brethren : saying, It might well be let alone, and not they to be forced to embrew their hands in each others blood : saying, What *Bajazet* did, was to be excused as from necessity : which speeches *Solyman* declared to the *Mustis* as to a most sacred Oracle ; demanding How he was to be entreated , who of himself levyed Souldiers, and troubled the State of the Empire ; and what he deemed of his followers, and of those who refused to bear Arms against him : saying, He had not offended? Who answered, That he and his partakers were worthy of death : and those refusing to take up arms, &c. as profane men to be accounted infestible.

Which answer published to the people , was sent to *Bajazet* by the chief *Chians*, to see if it might move him: who in few dayes after sent to his Father by an intercepted *Chians* sent to *Selimus* , That he was in all duty his, but he had only to do with his brother, and with him to fight for his life, by whose sword he must needs die , or he by his, &c. Therefore, he should do best not to meddle in the quarrel : but if he would needs passe over to aid *Selimus*, he knew, if the worst came, how to escape : and would (ere he could get into *Asia*) spoil with fire & sword more then *Tamerlane* or any other : which not a little troubled *Solyman*, and it was reported that *Aznar*, where *Selimus*'s son was *Zanzack* , was taken by *Bajazet* and sacked. But *Selimus* hearing *Bajazet*, was gone as far as *Ancyra* towards *Amasia* , being now out of danger on the way, hasted towards *Iconium*, kept with a strong Garrison for him ; for *Solyman* feared, lest *Bajazet* intercepting it, should get into *Syria*, thence into *Egypt*, not yet forgetful of the *Mamelukes* Government : and therefore desirous of change: out of which open Countrey it would be hard to drive him out ; chiefly the *Arabians* being ready at hand : and whence he might transport himself
into

into any Christian Kingdom : Wherefore, he also commanded most of his *Asian* Commanders, to be alwayes ready to ayd *Selimus* : with whom he lay under the walls of *Iconium*, attending *Bajazets* motion, and expecting more ayd from his Father.

Bajazet the while, first entertained *Chiurts* Horsemen, suppoed to be of the *Gordians* (famous for their known valour) laying in the fields by *Ancyra*, in whose Castle he put his Concubines and Children : taking up money of rich Merchants, to be re-paid with use upon the success of the war: taking thence also all needful Furniture for his men : Besides his own very great Family, and those *Chiurts*; many repaired unto him both of valiant men and expert Souldiers, and an exceeding Rabble who desired some change : many were drawn out of pitty to him, who lively resembled his Father, but *Selimus* his mother, who was generally hated of the people : He went heavy with a fat paunch, blub-cheeked, and very red faced : the Souldiers saying in sport, he was fed with green Malt, he was given to eate, drunkenesse and sleep, not courteous, who would not. He said, offend his Father, by being popular: so he was of all other men hated, he most misliking those who hoped in a bounteous and couragious Prince. They us'd to call *Bajazet* Softi, or one quiet and studious ; but now they began to admire him as a man of valour : asking each other : why his Father should reject him his express Image, preferring that gor-bellied sluggard, in whom no spark of his Fathers valour was to be seen? saying, This was no fault in *Bajazet*, being necessitated to take up Arms : for, did not *Selimus* the Grandfather the like? &c. yet this man, they said, intended no harm against his Father, nor yet his Brother ; if he might by his leave but live, he ceasing to do him wrong. By such affections, *Bajazets* power daily encreased almost to a full Army, who marched forthwith against his Brother ; for whose coming *Selimus* waited before *Iconium*, with an exceeding strong

strong Army, and many notable Commanders : who lay covered, with their Ordnance conveniently planted ; But *Bajazet*, come within sight of them, exhorted his Soldiers to play the men, for now the time and place was come, where they should shew themselves courageous and valiant, and he would make them all rich and fortunate, &c. saying, It was only *Selimus* who withstood his welfare, and theirs, whom they should seek for as their common enemy, and not fear his multitudes : since Victory was to be gained not by number, but valour ; and the most mighty God was present not with the most, but best ; concluding, if they fought for his Honour, as they should see him do for their profit, he dared assure them of Victory : which said, he performed all the parts of a worthy Captain : so that he was alike commended of his own, and enemies. The battel was terrible, many falling on both sides, 40000 *Turks* in all being slain, but at length the Victory inclined to the stronger, juster, and better Counsel'd-side. *Bajazet* retiring, but so leisurely, and without shew of fear, that he seemed well near to gain as lose the field : neither durst *Selimus* pursue him, being most glad to see his back. But *Bajazet* thus disappointed of his journey into *Syria*, began now in good earnest to go to *Amasia*.

Solyman speedily hearing of the event, passed into *Asia*, his great *Bassaes* now thinking it not good for him longer to stay, lest *Bajazets* overthrow might occasion his secret Favorites to raise greater troubles : but hastily to pursue *Bajazet*, and not suffer him (as his Grandfather *Selimus*) to gather greater courage ; and indeed this battel got *Bajazet* great admiration and love, though unfortunate, who with so small a power durst encounter, and so behaving himself in fight ; men saying, *Selimus* might boast to his Father of the Victory ; but *Bajazet* deserved to overcome, &c. These speeches doubled his fathers care, encreasing his hatred ; so passing into *Asia*, he purposed

not to go far from the sea-coast, but, as it were, a far off to countenance *Selimus's* proceedings: doubting (by coming too near with his Army) of the sudden revolt of his *Janizaries*. *Augerius*, the Reporter of this History, saw him depart out of *Constantinople*, June 1. 1559. who himself was sent for within few dayes, the *Bassas* thinking it not amiss to have him in the Camp & use him as their friend who was assigned to lodge in an Inne near the Camp: he descryed the good order, & great quietness and cleanliness of the *Turks* Camp, who when they disburthen nature, dig a hole and bury it: Also their opinion of those dying in their wars, that no souls go more speedily to Heaven than of such, valiantly dying; for whole welfare their maidens make daily prayers & vows: He also saw their Butchery, but very small, the *Janizaries* using a spare diet, & in their Fasts being very precise, preparing themselves to abstinence the day before: nor, as a Turkish Embassadour reported of the *Germans*, saying, The Christians on certain dayes did riot & become mad, till besprinkled with ashes in the Temple, they came to themselves again; meaning their disorder at *Shrovetide*, and the Ceremonies used on *Ash-wednesday*: whereat the *Turks* marvelled the more, as having many Medicines to drive away madnesse, but few or none which presently ease the same. While I lay here, saith he, one learned *Albertus* came from the Emperour, with Gilt-plate, and a rare Clock, carried on an Elephant, and Crownes for the *Bassas*, presents for *Solyman*: who, that their friendship might the better be known, and that he needed not fear Christian Princes, would have them presented, in the Armies sight.

But *Bajazet* retired to *Amasia*, as if he would there have lived quietly, if his Father would suffer him: ceasing not by Letters and fit men to prove his mind: who at first easily heard the Messengers, read the Letters, and courteously returned answer; so that it was commonly reported, the Father and the Son would agree; but this was but
(by

(by the *Bassas* counsel) dissimulation, till he had got him into his hand; fearing lest he, despairing of pardon, should break with such a power into *Persia*, as might prevent the diligence of the Lieutenants on those Frontiers: whom *Solyman* charged to stop exactly all passages.

Solyman the while, torturing and making secretly away all in his reach that were but suspected to take his part: and some, whom *Bajazet* had sent to excuse themselves. *Bajazet* was often warned by some friends, not to trust his Father, but speedily to provide for his safety. But *Solyman* thinking he could now by no means escape, returned to *Constantinople* the day after their *Easter*; but *Bajazet* upon the very Feast-day after its solemnities, trusted up all his things, setting forward towards *Persia*: who though he went to the ancient enemy of the *Othoman* Family; yet resolved to prove any mans mercy, rather than to fall into his angry Fathers-hands: some weak ones were left behind, amongst whom was *Solyman*, his son, newly born (with his mother) whom *Solyman* commanded to be nursed at *Prusa*. *Bajazet* used such speed, that he lighted on many appointed to stop him before they were ready or aware: deceiving the *Bassa* of *Sebastia* by seeming Fugitives, telling him, he was gone the other of the 2 wayes, only to passe: and him of *Erzurum* under the pretence of desire of leave to shoo his Horses and refresh them, in his Territory; who hearing he came still on, made all haste, joyning his Forces to the *Bassas*, following fast after him: who, with *Zanzacks*, were on pain of their Heads, to bring him back, alive or dead; but he made more haste to flee than they to follow; yet the *Bassa* of *Erzurum* was displaced, and afterwards slain by *Selimus* with his 2 stripling sons, in despite having abused them against nature. *Solyman* was grieved above measure at his departure, and would presently have gone against the *Persian* to terrifie him from relieving his rebellious son: but these raging fits, his grave Councillours for 2 weigh-

ty reasons, moderated. *Bajazet*, as he went, wrote on gates and doors, he would give double pay to those who would follow him : Wherefore the Captains distrusted their Souldiers, who also heard their often speeches of great love towards him. Being come to the River *Araxis*, he left certain followers upon the Bank to keep the *Zanzacks*, who still pursued him, from passing over, whom they repulsing, passed the River, entring far into the *Persian* Kingdom : till some *Persian*-Nobles with great Troops, met with them, demanding what they meant and sought for in another Kingdom ? who answered, they pursued their Kings-fugitive son : they replied they did not well, against the League to come Armed beyond their bounds, &c. As for *Bajazet*, their King would consider what was meet for him to do ; in the mean time to be gone, &c. whereupon the *Turks* retired. King *Tamas* sent Messengers to salute *Bajazet*, to know why he came, and see his strength, which some reckon about 20000 : who declared, through his Brothers injuries and Fathers hard dealing, he was fled to the *Persian*-King, as his most assured Refuge, &c. but otherwise wholly destitute. The *Persian* replied, He had done very unwise'y, in respect of his and his Fathers League : being, to account the enemies of one, the enemies of the other, and on the contrary : yet since it was so, he was welcome as to his Friend, who would leave nothing unattempted to reconcile him to his Father, which he despaired not of.

At their first meeting there was friendly countenance, often conference, and great Feasting each other : Also there was a motion, one of the Kings Daughters to be promised to *Orchanes Bajazets* son, and he put in hope that *Tamas* would never be quiet till *Solyman* made him Governour of *Mesopotamia*, *Babylon*, or *Erzirum* far off from both Brother and Father : where his Brother the *Persian*-King might be his sure Refuge from danger.

Bajazet seemed by these speeches, so assured of *Tamas's* love, that when his Embassadour went to *Constantinople* for a reconciliation (as was supposed); He bid him tell *Solyman*, he had lost a Father at *Constantinople*, and found another at *Persia*; but (the while) all things were plotted tending to his destruction: which being ripe, a motion was made, that it was more convenient to have *Bajazets* multitude, billeted thereabouts farther asunder, both for the better Viſtalling them, and other purposes also. And indeed *Tamas* (unlike his Father *Hysmaell*) was in fear of *Bajazet*; yet many thought he was enforced to destroy him (not at first so minded) by reason of some of his followers: who perswaded him to thrust him out of his Kingdom, whereof there was many tokens: *Tamas* hearing also, that a chief Captain said, *Why stay we to kill this Hæretical King, and possess his Kingdom, by whose treachery we shall surely be all destroyed,*

Bajazet might not (then) well gainſay the diſperſing of his Forces: though many of his wiſe followers did ſhrewdly ſuſpect the ſequel; They ſo being beſtowed in Countrey-Villages where the *Persians* ſaw good: ere many dayes, they ſew and ſcattered, were enclowed and ſlain: and whatever they had, became a prey. Then was *Bajazet* and his ſons caſt into bonds; and that (as many ſay) while merrily at dinner, at the Kings Table: who ſeemed to foreſee, that it ſtood far better with the ſafety of his eſtate, that *Selimus* ſhould raigñ, than *Bajazet* a couragious Prince, and much better Souldier than his Brother.

Bajazet imprifoned, Meſſengers ran to and fro betwixt *Solyman* and *Tamas*; This ſending the *Turk* curious Tents, coſtly Carpets, one of their *Alcorans*, and ſtrange beaſts by a ſolemn Embaſſadour, pretending to reconcile *Solyman* and his ſon: *Solyman* craving to have him delivered to him, and the *Persian* ſeeming to defend him: whom *Solyman* ſometimes ſpoke fair, minding him of his league; otherwhile denouncing War, ſtrongly Garrifoning all

754 *The Life of Solymán, the Magnificent,*

his Frontiers towards *Persia*, filling *Mesopotamia* and *Euphrates* banks with Souldiers: *Mehemet* the 3d. of the *Vizier Bassaes*, and the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece* commanding them; inciting also the *Georgians* against the *Persians*: who answered, they were not so confident in themselves as to provoke *Tamas*: but when they saw *Solymán* himself in field, they knew what to do, &c. He made shew as if he would go in person to invade *Tamas* on the side of *Aleppo* (who was somewhat fearful) having proved *Solymán* to his cost; but the Souldiers unwillingness (many of whom without leave returned to *Constantinople* yet unwillingly going again to the Camp when commanded) easily stayed the raging *Türk*; who perceiving that *Bajazet* could not be got alive from the *Persian*, excusing himself by fear of his revenge, if he should any way escape, thought best to have him there slain: which he hoped the rather, because *Tamas* lately wrote to him, He could not but marvel he dealt so slenderly in so important a matter: That he should do well now to send him men of account, with whom he might conferre and conclude according to the weightiness of the cause. *Bajazet* having also been to him no small charge, before he could get him into his power: whereby *Solymán* perceived money was the thing sought after. Whereupon *Hassan Aga*, and the *Bassa* of *Maras* departed towards *Persia* in the depth of Winter, and with great speed, losing many followers by the way. Being come to the Court at *Casbin*, they desired first to see *Bajazet*, close shut up, wan and pale. & not to be known before he was trimmed; and then *Hassan* knew it to be him, who was brought up with him from a child. But after long discourse with the King: it was agreed that *Solymán* should recompence all his charges and harmes, since *Bajazet* came into *Persia*, with a reward suitable to so great a good turn: and then *Solymán* might have him made away.

Hassan posting to his Master, he forthwith made all ready

ready, sending it to the borders of *Persia* by a safe Convoy, the *Persians* receiving it, *Hassan* coming presently after, and strangling him (with a Bow-string) himself, as *Solyman* had straightly charged him, not being suffered to see his Children first, as he requested, as is reported: 3 of his sons, *Omer*, *Amurat*, and *Selym*, being there also strangled, whose bodies with their Fathers were buried at *Sebastia*; but young *Muhamet* at nurse at *Amasia*, was now commanded to be strangled also: the Eunuch sent, loath to do it himself, took with him a hard-hearted Porter of the Court, who coming, and fitting the string to the Childs neck, it twiled on him, and lifting it self up as it could, offered to embrace his neck and kisse him: whereat the stony-hearted man fell down in a swoond, & lay for dead. The Eunuch standing without the Chamber, and marvelling at his long stay, goes in, where finding the Russian on the ground, strangled the guiltlesse child himself. So long as it was uncertain what success *Bajazets* attempts would have, *Solyman* spared the Infant, lest upon his good hap, he might seem to strive against the will of God: but his Father being dead, and his quarrel by the ill success condemned as it were, by the Sentence of the Almighty, he though not good to suffer him longer to live, lest of an ill Bird might come an ill Chick; for the *Turks* judge all to be well or ill done by the good or bad success, though brought to passe, or endeavoured by never so bad or good means; as appeared by a *Chians* in his talk with the Author of this History, who justified *Selimus*, *Solyman's* Father, but exclaimed against *Bajazet*.

This Year, 1558. the Emperours *Charls* 5th, who had 2 years before, delivered all his Hereditary Dominions to his son *Philip*: on *Febr.* 24. the day of his birth, by his Embassadors, resigned the Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*, requesting the Ele^{ts}ours to confirm him therein, which they did *March* 13. following; so

as a private man in a solitary life, whereto he had certain years before retired himself. He died *Sept. 21* after, living *58.* and reigning *39* years : About which time also died *Mary Queen of Hungarie*, and *Eleanor the French Queen*, his Sisters.

The Knights of *Malta*, had at length so prevailed with the Pope and King of *Spain* for recovery of *Tripolis* in *Barbary* : and the Island *Zerbi* betwixt *Tripolis* and *Tunis* (then also surprized by the *Turks*) whence they much troubled the Christians ; that the King made ready a great Fleet in *Septemb. 1559.* unto which, the Pope, Duke of *Florence*, the said Knights, and others, joyned their Forces; there being 100 Gallies and ships met together in *Sicily*, *Gonzaga* being General; but whilst they wintred in the Haven of *Marza-Moxet* in *Malta*, many Souldiers died.

Spring being come, the Captains consulted, whether first to set upon *Tripolis*, or *Zerbi*, otherwise *Mening*. The Knights thought best to besiege *Tripolis* speedily, before *Dragut* should come to furnish it: Others rather, first to invade *Zerbi* Island, where the Army might be relieved with plenty, and whence they might, in danger, safely retire, & thence go to *Tripolis* as time should serve : Which most agreeing to, in *Feb. 1560.* they sailed to *Zerbi*. *Dragut* the while being come to *Tripolis* with 800 *Janizaries* had also notably fortified the City, certifying *Solyman* of the Christians Fleets arrival : who at their first landing on *Zerbi*, were encountred by the *Moors*, whom they repulsed, and landed at pleasure. It is not far from the main, no River in it but boggs and Marshes, and somewhat Hilly in the middle. About 30000 men inhabited it, dwelling in low Cottages, yet is the Island, reasonable fertile. The Christians sent for *Carvannus* thither, a poor King, from whom *Dragut* had taken it, to use his Counsell: & going with 8000 to besiege the strongest Castle in the Island, they lighted on 10000 *Moors*; which

which lay in ambush in a Wood: 700 of whom being slain in skirmish by the *Spaniards*, (who went foremost) the rest fled; so laying hard siege to the Castle, the Captain fled secretly, with his *Turks*, leaving it for the *Moors* to defend: who (to depart in safety) yielded the Castle: three *Spanish* Companies being there left, *Caravans* the *Moor-King* (with the King of *Tunis's* Sonne) came the while, to the Camp, sitting on the ground, and wisely discoursing with the Generall, how the *Turks* were to be removed out of *Africk*; but suddenly, a Pinnace brought newes, that *Piall* the *Turk's* Admirall, was coming with 85 Gallies (more repairing to him daily) with a number of the *Turk's* best and most approved Souldiers (for the *Turks* had a great opinion of the valour of the *Spaniards*: they were doubtful also of the long journey; so many of them before setting forth, making their wills; so that all *Constantinople* was in a confused fear). The Christians were not a little troubled hereat: yet they new fortified the Castle, agreeing with the chief *Moor* in the Island (who had set up the King of *Spain's* Ensigns, instead of *Draguts*) to pay yearly tribute to the King (as before to *Dragut*) 6000 Crowns, 1 *Cammell*, 4 *Ostriches*, 4 *Sparrow-Hawks*, and 4 blew *Faulcons*.

But *May* 9th, the Master of *Malta* gave those at *Zerbi* to understand, that the *Turk's* Fleet was even at hand, advising them to get them to some more safe place, or come to him for fear of being by so great a power oppressed: whereupon, *Auria* the Admirall requested the Generall presently to come aboard; but he for all that, stayed at the Castle, where they had built four strong Bulwarks, not yet all perfectly finished; but whilest he is thus busie, next day, descrying the *Turks* from far, he hastened to be gone, with the Admiral, and was twice by a contrary wind, driven again into the Haven; so that with much ado, they got into the Castle; for the wind brought the *Turks* so fast

fast on, that the Christians dismayed, knew not well which way to turn; but most of the Ships and 14 Gallies, were gone the night before, and the Master of Malta had called home his, in April: of the rest, some few Gallies escaped, others ran aground, 10 whereof, were taken by the *Turks*; and the rest that were left, though they (awhile) did what they might to save themselves. The night following, the Viceroy and Admiral, secretly got away to Malta.

Anria gathered together the remainder of the dispersed Fleet, having lost 17 Gallies, and a good part of the Ships. *Don de Sandes* was left as General in the Castle, with 5000 Foot, some *Germans* and *Italians*, but most *Spaniards*: besides 1000, no Souldiers.

The *Turks* besieging it May 17. were notably encountered, and repulsed in their assaults. *Dragut* came at length to the siege, encreasing the battery with 15 great Pieces. The Christians also with 40 great Pieces, slew a number of *Turks* and *Moors*, and sallying out, fought with them, slaying and wounding many. Thus the siege continued three moneths; but in the Castle was but one great Cistern, which though yielding some store of water, yet was not enough to suffice so great a multitude in that hot Climate and season; but was sparingly measured out to the Souldiers, as far as it would go: which some augmented by distilling Sea-water, mingling it with their allowance, till they had spent all their Wood. Many half dead lying on the ground, gaping and crying, water, water, into whole mounthes, if any one powred a little they as revived, would sit up, till for thirst they fell down again, at length giving up the Ghost.

The Governour considering the great extremity attempted with *Donde Leyva*, the *Neopolitan* Admiral, and *Bellingerius* the *Sicilian* Admiral, and others to escape by night, into a Galley under the Castle; but, in so doing, were all taken: whereupon, the Souldiers, covenanting
one'y

onely for life, yielded themselves into captivity. In this expedition, about 18000 Christians one way or other, perished.

*Pi*all sent newes hereof, by a Galley, to *Constantinople*, dragging (as a token) at its Poup, a great Christian Ensign, having the Picture of *Christ* crucified, the *Turks* exceedingly rejoycing for so great a Victory; yea, many came by heaps to the Emperours Embassador his Gate, deridingly asking his servants, if they had any Brethren, Kinsmen or friends, in the *Spanish Fleet* at *Zebri*, saying, if they had, they should shortly see them there: bragging also of their own valour, and scorning the Christians cowardice, asking, Who could withstand them, now the *Spaniards* also were overcome.

In *September* the Victorious Fleet returned, with the prisoners, spoils, and Christians Gallies, anchoring that night near the Rocks in the face of the City.

Solyman from a Gallery near the Havens mouth, joyn- ing to his Garden, beheld the coming in of the Fleet, *De Sandes*, *De Leyna*, and *Don Bellingerus*, being on the Poup of the Admiral Galley, to shew; the Christian Gallies disarmed and unrigid, were towed at the rail of the *Turks* Gallies: no man perceiving in *Solyman's* countenance, any sign at all of insolent joy: so capable was the great heart of that old Sire of any fortune.

Few dayes after, the Captives (almost starved) were brought to Court: many could scarce stand, some fell down and fainted, others died: they were scornfully led in triumph, with Arms disorderly put upon them: the *Turks* insulting about them, promising themselves the Empire of the whole World, and asking, What enemy they were to fear, now the *Spaniard* was overcome: *De Sandes* was brought into the *Divano*, and demanded by *Rustan Bassa*, What his Master meant, being not able to defend his own, to invade other mens? Who answered, that it beseemed not him to judge of it: himself to have
done

done but his duty, &c. though he had no good fortune therein. Then he besought the *Bassa* on his knee, to speak to *Solyman* to spare him, for his poor Wife & small Children's sake at home. *Rustan* answered courteously, his Sovereign was of a mild nature, and that he was in good hope of his pardon: So he was sent to *Caradines* Castle; but not gone far, he was sent for back again; for the great Chamberlain had not seen him: whereat, he was much troubled, fearing the *Bassas* would have put him to death. The rest, of the better sort, were committed to *Pera* Castle; yet the three chief aforesaid, were with much adoe, at the Emperour's request, and his Embassadors dexterity set at liberty, though *Solyman* had denied them to the *French* Ambassador, an earnest intercessour; yet the *Musties* opinion was first asked: whether many *Turks* might be changed for a few Christians? (for 40 common *Turks* were to be freed for them) who answered: some of their Doctors said it was lawful, and some, not; yet himself then resolved on the more favourable part. There were two other noble persons taken at *Zebri*, *Don John Bellingerius's* Son in Law, and *Don Gasto*, the Duke of *Medina's* Son, yet a youth. *Don John* had ordered a great sum to be left in *Chios*, as the *Turk's* Fleet went by, whence he got into *Spain*; but *Gasto* was by *Piall* (in hope of a great Ransom) hidden; but *Solyman* having an inkling thereof by *Rustan*, laboured to have *Gasto* sought out, to have a more just occasion to put *Piall* to death; but *Gasto* was dead, either through the Plague or *Piall's* meanes, lest the truth should be found out: whose Fathers servants seeking for him with great care, he could never be heard of: yet *Piall* took occasion with a few Gallies, to wander among the Isles of *Aegeum*, as if he had something to do; but indeed, shunning the sight of his angry Lord, lest he should have answered the matter in bonds: till at the request of his Son *Selimus*, and *Saleiman Bassa*, the Eunuch and Chamberlain, he was

appealed, saying: Well, hath he from me pardon for so great an offence; but let God the most just revenger of all villanies, take of him due punishment after this life.

Busheguins the Emperours Embassadour, easily obtained of a *Turkish* Colonel, the Emperial Ensign of the Gallies of *Naples*, containing within the compass of an *Eagle*, the Arms of all Provinces belonging to *Spain*: an Ensign of *Charls* the 5th, by sending him 2 Suits of Silk, (such as the *Turks* make reckoning of) for it.

Novemb. 25. this year, died *Andreas Auria*, 94 years old, of great fame and reputation, chiefly with *Charls* the 5th, in whose service he did much; yet the notablest thing, was the kindness he shewed to *Genna* his Native Countrey, which he freed from *French* oppression: not taking on him the sole Government, (as others had done); but appeasing the great long dissention there, he established such a wholsom Government (no mans liberty infringed) as that it hath ever since flourished in Wealth, State, and Freedom.

In 1561, the *Turks* robbed and spoiled upon the Coasts of *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *Malta*, against whom *Philip* of *Spain* sending his Gallies, lost 25 by Tempest, with *Mendoza* the Admiral, *Septemb. 18.* *Ferdinand* the Emperour, having with long suit, and much intreaty, obtained peace of *Solyman*; and being well stricken in years, commended to the Princes Elector, his Son *Maximilian*, King of *Bohemia*, to be chose King of *Romans*: whereupon, an Assembly of them met at *Frankford*; and *November 24.* they chose *Maximilian* accordingly, solemnly crowning him: who *Sept. 8th, 1562.* was crowned King of *Hungary* at *Presburg*. Unto this Assembly, came *Ibraim Bassa*, or *Abraham Srotzsa* (a *Polonian* born) Embassador from *Solyman*, with Presents and Letters to *Ferdinand*, to confirm the afore said peace for 8 years: where having audience, after much speech in setting forth his Masters greatness

ness with his love towards the Emperour, and his Sonne the new chosen King, he delivered his Letters of credence to the Emperour, notably shewing *Solyman's* most insolent pride and presumption, and miserable Estate of *Hungary*, divided as it were at his pleasure, betwixt him and the Emperour: laying down the several conditions of the peace to be observed: promising toward the conclusion, that he should give unto that new-made friendship, so great Honour, Reverence, and Authority, that what might even in the least things be had, should not on his part, be wanting: in token whereof, (saith he) we have suffered certain Christian Captives, to return unto thee without ransom, as thou requestedst by thy Embassadour, who could never have been redeemed, if in regard of this amity we had not granted them liberty: trusting thou wilt likewise set at liberty, such of ours as thou hast Captives.

The gifts presented, were two naturall Cryshall Cups, curious, and set with pretious stones: a courageous Horse, with a golden wrought Saddle, and Trappings set with pretious stones, and chains of pure Gold, and 4 very fair Cammels: the Bassa making excuse, that the Horse and Cammels had lost their beauty, being somewhat lean and weary, with 4 moneths Travel. This peace held firm till the death of *Ferdinand*, who about two years after *July 25.* died, (being 60 years old) in 1564. In whose place succeeded *Maximilian* his son. Then began the Emperour's Captains on one side, and the Turk's Captains, with the Vayuod of *Transilvania*, on the other, to surprize strong Holds in each others confines, in *Hungary*.

Melchior Balas, first surprized certain Towns, on the frontiers about *Transilvania*: in revenge whereof, the Vayuod set upon *Sackmarin*, the Emperours Territory, which he took, with *Balas* his Wife and Children: wherefore, *Balas* ransacked and burnt *Debreſin*, a great Town

of the Vayuods. Ere long, the Vayuod aided with 4000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Moldavians*, did much hurt on the Emperours Frontiers in *Hungary*, taking *Hadad*, and besieging *Ungar*: wherefore *Maximilian* sent *Suendi* with 8000 men, besieging, and taking the Castle of *Tokay*, Feb. 5th, 1565. and afterward rich *Erden*.

Solyman the while, to stay the Emperours proceedings, till he had better leisure to be revenged, (for he was then preparing for *Malta*) sent *Lilinesius*, a Renegade *Transilvanian*, his Embassador to *Maximilian*, to minde him of the League with his Father, &c. Whereupon, he commanded *Transilvania*, nor the *Turks* part of *Hungary*, to be no more invaded; yet while this Embassadour was at *Vienna*, the Bassa of *Temeswar*, made divers incursions, besieging *Jula* Castle with 6000 men, many *Turks* coming daily into *Transilvania*. Then also *Suendi*, by Messengers, wished the Emperour not to give credit to the *Turks* Embassador, who under colour of peace, sought but to take him suddenly, unprovided. But in *June*, the *Transilvanians* besieged *Erden*, before taken by the Imperials, and after two moneths, had it yielded to them: *Chernovich* also, the Emperour's Embassadour, returning from *Constantinople*, assured him, that the *Turks* meant nothing indeed, but Warres, greatly preparing by Sea and Land: Whereupon, he raised new forces, divers Nobles coming to him with their followers; and *Romerus*, a Knight of *Malta*, and divers of his Brethren, sent by *Rochenheim* (their grand Prior in *Germany*, and then confirmed a Prince of the Empire).

The *Turks* being then busie upon the borders of *Stiria*, and thereabouts, were oft cut off by *Charls* the Arch-Duke, upon advantage, slaying 3000 at one time; yet was the *Turks* Embassador at *Vienna*, intreating for peace, and so cunningly, that *Salma* a valiant Captain, having corrupted the Judge and others, of *Alba Regalis*, to have betrayed it, (giving their Wives and Children as Hostages)

stages) and was on his way from *Rab* (but 8 miles off) was by Post-letters called back by the Emperour, for corrupting the hope of peace; the *Turks* afterwards, of 40 of the conspirators, impaled some on sharp stakes, hanging others on Iron hooks, by the jawes, till they were dead. The *Turks* shortly after took *Ncoftat*, which was ere long, recovered again. At the same time, a *Turkish* Spie was taken at *Zigeth*, who was sent from *Constantinople*, to view its strength and scituation: who said (before the Arch-Duke) that *Solymán* would personally come at Spring, to besiege the Castles of *Zigeth* and *Jula*.

Count *Serinus* took also other spies, by whom he was advertized of *Solymán's* coming: besides, the Countrey-Contributors to both parties, were straightly commanded to pay no more Contribution to the Imperials: whereupon, what *Suendi* had often written, was easily gathered to be true: Also the *Turks* made daily incursions into the Emperours Territories: wherefore (being also warned by many letters) put strong Garrisons into his Frontier-Towns, chiefly *Rab* and *Zigeth*; but he likewise resolved to call (against the next year) a general Assembly of the Princes of the Empire at *Augusta*, for the better withstanding of the common Enemy, *Solymán* at that time, in revenge of the manifold injuries done to his Subjects, by the Knights of *Malta*, made great preparation by Sea and Land: whereunto he was much incited by *Cassanes Barbarussa's* Son, King of *Algiers*, and *Dragut* of *Tripolis*; and having understood in what forwardness things were, he called a great Assembly of his chief men, making known his minde in a speech for the invasion of *Malta*: calling the Knights crossed Pirats, whom utterly to root, he thought by God and his Prophets favour, he had now obtained leisure, which he wished for alwayes, 40 years: neither could any thing happen more pleasing or honourable, than before he died, to win *Malta*, and leave all things in order, in *Hungary* and *Polonia*. But some will say, (saith he), *Malta*
is

is nearer *Italy*, than the *Rhodes*, *Syria*, or *Jerusalem*, whence ayd may be easily sent, &c. Believe me, they will never fight with us at Sea, who have been there so often by us overthrowen: nor can so small a place contain any great Garriſon, or (if it could) could it long feed them, &c.

After the matter well conſidered, and they which beſt knew the ſtrong Holds, and manners of the *Malteſes*, had declared what they thought moſt expedient, it was decreed ſpeedily to ſet forward.

John Valetta a *Frenchman*, Grand Maſter, being advertized hereof, by his ſit Intelligencers at *Conſtantinople*, was not afraid; but aſſembling his Knights, briefly ſaid: The enemy, with his inſatiable ambition, ſtrength, and mortal hate againſt them and the Chriſtians name was known: wherefore they ſhould by amendment of life, and religious worſhipping of God, firſt reconcile themſelves to Him, by which meanes, their Anceſtors obtained many Victories againſt the Infidels in the Eaſt; but ſince God uſually helped nor the negligent and ſloathful, they muſt joyn thoſe helps which their profeſſion and the courſe of War required, conſiſting in themſelves and other Chriſtian Princes: ſaying, The cruel Tyrant ſhould feel the ſting of the Croſſe, which he ſo much contemned, even in *Conſtantinople*, and his Houſes of pleaſure; for, (ſaith he) we ſhall not have to do with him now in the Iſland of *Rhodes*, far from help of friends, incloſed with enemies by Sea and Land; but in the eyes of *Italy* and *Spain*, in ſtrong places, whence the enemy may be eaſily circumvented; for which, let us not ceaſe to pray unto Almighty God. This ſaid, all preſent promiſed rather to loſe their lives, than to fail the cauſe, or come into *Solyman's* power. Then was publique prayer made throughout the Iſle, and three moſt expert Colonels choſen, diligently to provide for all Warlike neceſſaries: by whoſe appointment alſo, the ſuppoſed hurtful Suburbs and Trees were over-
D d d thrown:

thrown: Letters being sent from the Grand Master to the Pope, and other Princes, requesting their ayd: Messengers also into divers places, certifying the Knights of the Order, and others of the *Turk's* preparation, who departed from *Constantinople* March 22, 1565. And at *Methone*, *Mustapha Bassa*, 75 years old, and General, mustered the Army, 7000 Horsemen, called *Spahi*. 500 out of the lesser *Asia*: out of *Mytilene* 400, *Janizaries* 4500, (whose *Aga*, or chief Captain, leaveth not the City, but when the *Sultan* himself goeth) 13000 who lived of the Revenues of their Church, who had vowed their lives for their superstition: 1200 Horse from *Thrace* and *Peloponessus*; and 3500 Volunteers out of divers Countries. In *Piall's* Fleet were found about 77 Galleys, Ships, and Galliot, beside one ship cast away near *Methone*, with 6000 Barrels of Powder, 13000 great shot, and 400 *Spahi*. This strong Fleet arrived at *Malta* the 18th of *May*, and put into the Haven *Marzasrock*; but not being there safe, they removed to the Port *Maior*.

Malta layeth betwixt *Africa* and *Sicily*, and is twenty miles long, and 12 broad: looking to *Africk* Southward, and *Sicily* Northward, seeming to be called *Melita*, from *Mel hony*; whereof it yieldeth plenty: it is in some places stony, gravelly, and bare of Wood, great Thistles serving for fewel: fresh water is exceeding scarce, their Wells filled with rain in Winter: in Summer being dry, or the Water bracky: the Inhabitants differing little in colour from the *Ethiopians*: their Buildings, except the City, in midst of the Island, being long and low, covered with Turf or Reed. Its rather to be thought from *Act.* 27. and 28. that *Paul* was cast upon the other *Melita*, between *Corcyra* and *Illyria*: the trouble and ship-wrack being in the *Adriatique* Sea, out of which, 'tis not to be gathered they were driven.

That side of *Malta* towards *Sicilie*, hath many good Harbours and Havens; two whereof, *Maior* and *Mar-*

Zamoxet are divided by a narrow piece of ground: on the head of whose high ridge stands *St. Elmo* Castle, of great strength. On the left hand of the Haven Maier, are promontories: on the first standeth the Gallows, whence its named: on the point of the second, on a rough and high Rock, stands the most strong Castle of *St. Angelo*, the Town adjoyning, in which resideth the Grand Master, and the Souldiers in the Town or Burg: on the 3d, stands the strong Castle, or Burg of *St. Michael*. *Valetta* had to defend those three Castles and Towns, 1300 Mercenaries, Spaniards, French, Florentines, and Neopolitans: 1000 Seamen of the Knights Fleet, and 500 in *St. Angelo*, 5000 Countrey people, which fled into the strong places: 500 Knights, besides Priests and Squires; (for these 3 sorts are called Brethren of the Order.)

In the City *Melita* it self, was 200 Souldiers, and as many Citizens, with 300 Country Horsemen, commanded by valiant *Vagno*: Every place being furnished with whatever was needful for a long siege; and minds armed with invincible courage against all chances: 200 *Turks* going ashore, met with *Riverius* & 8 Knights more, whose Horse being killed, and one Knight slain, they were all taken.

The *Turks* returning with their Fleet to *Marzafirock* Port, landed 2000 Souldiers, and 5 field-Pieces, so intrenching themselves, *Piall Bassa* went to view *Michael* Castle, but for fear of great shot, durst not come nigh it; yet they sallying out, skirmished with the *Turks*.

Curfelinus, and but one Spaniard with him, taking an Ensign from them, and slaying a *Sanzack* with divers others: *Piall* being returned, the General in consultation, agreed with the Captains to besiege *Elmo* Castle; and going up the Hill to view it, they were encountred by the Garrison Souldiers, some few being lost on both sides. Things growing hotter and hotter, *Valetta* sent *Salvagus* a Knight, in a Galley by night, to certifie *Garzias*, Vice-

roy of *Sicily*, how things stood, that he might the sooner come to their rescue.

The *Turks* the while, cast up a Mount to batter the Castle, and beat the Gallies in the Haven *Major*, for their Fleet to enter; but it was forthwith beat down again by thundring shot from the Castle, much abating their courage.

Ochiall came to them with 6 Ships, and 900 Souldiers: They cast up another Mount on higher ground, annoying with 3 great Pieces, not onely the Haven, but *Angelo* Castle, and with a rowling Trench, drew nearer and nearer to *Elmo* Castle: which, though at first hindered by the Defendants, yet at last, they brought to perfection, and soon so planted their Ordnance, that they batter both *Elmo* and *Michael* Castles.

A *Spanish* Gentleman, then a slave to the *Turk* advertised *Valetta* of the Enemies purpose: who sent forthwith two *Spanish* Companies into *Elmo* Castle, a great strength thereunto. At length came *Dragut* long looked-for, with 13 Gallies, and 1600 Souldiers: 10 *Galliot*s following him from *Bona*, with two Companies.

Salvagus having done his Message at *Messana*, was commanded to return to *Malta* in a *Galliot*, conducted by 2 Gallies: who bringing him near the Island, returned; but he in the 3d Watch of the night brake into the Town thorow the midst of the Enemy's Fleet, losing but one man: where delivering the Viceroy's charge to *Valetta*, he was sent that night, back again into *Sicily*: to request him with all speed, to send him supply: who soon arrived at *Syracusa*, sending thence in the two Gallies, 400 Souldiers, divers being Knights, and some skilful Canoniers: willing them to shun the West part of the Island, and passe by the East end thereof, farther about, but safer.

Then he went to *Messana*, declaring to *Garzias* the danger, requesting 1000 foot: which with those already sent

sent, he thought would hold out, till he might with his Fleet relieve them; but while these things were slowly providing: the *Turks* June the 3d, assaulted *Elmo* Castle, hoping with short Ladders, to get over the Rampiers, nearest to the Castle-Bulwark; but the Defendants having made a large strong Flanker, the Castle also helping them, filled the ditches with their dead bodies: who thrust still on with their multitude, till they had gained the Flanker: where they so speedily fortified themselves, that they could not be hurt: their Ordnance on the other side of the Haven *Marza*, driving the Defendants from the place, beating down the corner of the Rampire, and battering the front of the Bulwark. But night coming on, five thousand of the nine thousand *Turks*, tarried there, the Christians being forced to retire into the Castle.

The *Turks* filling up the Ditch under the Bulwark, with Sacks of Tow and Earth, gave a fresh assault, 800 *Janizaries* and *Spachi* being slain, and many wounded, most of whom remained in the Ditch, where they perished: 45 Christians were lost, 5 being Knights of the Order.

That night, *Malta* sent 200 Knights, and as many Souldiers into the Castle: who, if they had been more, with the 400 there before, might perhaps have driven the *Turks* from the Rampiers and Flankers, and kept the place longer. But the grand Master, marvelled exceedingly, that no help came; for these two Galleys (through the Master's fear) kept not the appointed course, he vainly affirming, he saw some *Turkish* Gallies before the Port *Milleria*, shaping his course to the Island *Gaulos*: which much grieved the Viceroy and others, especially *Salvagus*; for he saw what would come to passe. Yet in the mean time, six hundred Souldiers were taken up at *Rome*, by Pope *Pius* the 4th, His Command, under *Columna*: whom

770

The Life of Solymán, the Magnificent,

his Legate *Medices* accompanied; and for example to other Princes, gave 100 l. of Gold to the Legate of the Order, with Gunpowder, and other Warlike necessaries. With these went many Volunteers, and that with a most ardent desire: who found *John Auria* and others, at *Naples*, with 36 Ships, wherein these Footmen being imbarqued, were transported to *Messana*, where the King's Fleet was providing. But the *Turks*, resolved to prove the utmost, before the slow Christians strength were ready, assuring themselves more easily of the rest, *Elmo* Castle being once taken: wherefore they began again to batter it furiously for four dayes, without ceasing: the night following, giving a great assault, almost gaining the top of the wall: the Defendants driving them down with such force, that they never durst set Ladder to the wall, till the last conflict.

Dragut's Souldiers the while, upon a bravery, went to *Martia Scala* (betwixt the Gallows and *St. Thomas* Road) as if to do more than the rest; but, they of *St. Angelo* sallying forth, they were glad after a great losse to retire whence they came: *Bonnemius* one of the Knights, and 7 others, being slain.

Monferratus was then sent into *Elmo* Castle as Governour, instead of *Brolia*, sick through watching, and pains taking, who had oft written to *Valetta*, that he thought it impossible to be won.

The *Turks* nor discouraged, battered the Castle with greater fury than before, and presently gave an assault, having made a Bridge over the Ditch, that ten men might go abreast: placing 4000 Harquebusiers about the Ditch, with their Fleet at *Georges* shoare, not far off: And hoping even presently to win the Castle. *Beragamus* a Knight, and *Medranus* a Spanish Captain, with others, ran to the Bridge with great admiration, opposing the multitude: the fight hand to hand, being on both sides terrible: a *Turk* advancing an Ensign on the Bulwark, *Medranus* laid

laid hold on it: who in striving together, were both slain with a *Turks* Bullet. Some of the 400 sent in a little before, thrust Barrels of Gunpowder under the Bridge, some cast down Wild-fire, Stones, &c. on the enemy; others gauling them with Harquebusses. So the Bridge was burnt and blown up, overwhelming 800 *Turks* in its fall: the rest retiring, most being wounded: The Defendants having plucked down *Mustapha's* and *Dragut's* two Ensigns, set upon the very Battlements of the Walls. Toward the South-west, some *Turks* got up to the top of the highest Rampier, whom they of *Angelo* Castle, thinking to beat off, slew seven Defendants thereon; but at the next shot, they rent in sunder, four *Turks* Captains, and twelve the most forward Souldiers: other *Turks* casting up a Trench on that side toward Sr. *Angelo*, they were soon driven forth by fire &c. cast down upon them. They retired, having lost 2000 of their best Souldiers: almost 100 Christians were slain, and as many wounded. The same day, *Valetta* had a light *Brigandine*, carried over Land to *Martia Scala*, thence to send into *Sicily*, to certify by Letters the Viceroy and Pope, what was done, and the danger, requesting speedy relief, saying to the Viceroy, Our lives lay in thy hands, on whom next unto God, resteth all our hope: wherefore, we most instantly request thee not to forsake us.

Garzias greatly moved, seemed desirous to bring forth his whole Fleet against the *Turks*; but seeing the supply of Ships from *Genoa* and *Spain*, was not yet come, he sent *Cardona* with 4 Gallies, joyning *Robles* Camp master, with a choise Company of *Spaniards*; also 80 Knights went with them, staying at *Messana* for a fit time to passe over: who letted by Tempest and otherwise, came not before *Elmo* Castle was lost; yet served they in great stead.

The *Turks* desperately renewed the fight, first thundering day and night with their Ordnance on the Castle, then

assaulting the breaches, with an exceeding multitude and force, five houres endured that most terrible assault; at length, the *Turks* repulied, retired; yet the night following, they did so beat the Defendants with their Ordnance, that they had much adoe to keep them from scaling the Walls: the Christians lost two hundred, and the *Turks* an exceeding number: *Dragut* himself, dying two dayes after of a blow in the Head with a Stone: whose body was buried at *Tripolis*.

The *Turkish* Commanders, more and more enraged with the Christians valour, and their own slaughter, commanded their Fleet to compass the Castle, purposing by Sea and Land, to send in fresh supplies, till they had taken it; with great industry, preparing what ever was needful for the assault: which *Valetta* perceiving, and fearing they should not be able longer to endure such a fury, called his Knights together, requesting them to declare, what they thought best to be done for their safety: whose opinions briefly delivered, a Decree was made, that 12 Pinnaces should be sent to fetch them away; But first, 3 Knights were sent thither the night following, to tell them what was agreed on, and carefully to consider the state of the Castle, which if the Defendants thought was to be abandoned, then to poyson the water, and clay the Ordnance.

The Knights, oftentimes shot at by the *Turks*, got into the Castle, declaring the care taken of them: who all gave thanks therefore, saying, if they considered the places straightness, the few Defendants and the enemies multitude, they should well perceive the danger they were in, if such assaults should be of en renewed; yet since they had hitherto felt the help of God: present, &c. they, for all the most manifest danger of their lives, would keep it to the last man; for perhaps the like honourable occasion to shew themselves in, shou'd never be offered, &c.

requesting the great Master, not to be too careful of them; but promise himself of them what becomed resolute men.

The Knights having diligently viewed the Castle, returned to *Valetta*, who with his Knights, heard the answer of the besieged, and would needs hear the three Knights Opinion: *Castriot*, thinking the place was still to be defended, &c. But *Recca* was of another minde, saying, If *Julius Caesar* were alive, he would not suffer so many valiant Souldiers to be lost, but reserve his men to further service.

Medina said, he thought it not good, the place should be so easily forsaken, since the Ditches and Bulwarks were yet defensible; and there being so great a consent among the Defendants. So it seemed good to the greater part, that they should for certain dayes hold out, that the enemy might see his pride abated; for the Knights used not easily to abandon their strong Holds. But the *Turks*, June 23. in the dead of the night, battering the rest of the Walls yet standing, presently gave a most terrible assault: the Defendants beating down, repulsing, and slaying. Great were the outcries on both sides, mixt with exhortation, mirth, and mourning: it was now the third houre of the day, when still the Victory stood doubtful; but the very Rock bared of Walls and Defendants, above four hundred being slain, a man could scarce appear, but he was struck in pieces.

Montferratus the Governour, and *Garas* of *Eubœa*, were both slain with one shot: yet the rest fought with greater force than before, overthrew the *Turk's* Ensigns, set up: slaying the Ensign-bearers, Captains, and Colonels: by which time it was noon, very hot, and men exceeding weiry: the Ordnance never ceasing, and the enemy sending in fresh men: and so the Castle was won; but it was a wonder, that so many should be slain of so few:

few : the Defendants were every man slain in fight.

The *Turks*, finding certain Knights yet breathing, and but half dead, cut out their hearts, then their heads from their bodies, hanging them up by the heels, in their red Cloaks, with white Crosses, (black in time of peace) in sight of other Castles.

Mustapha, commanding them afterwards to be bound together, and cast into the Sea : who being cast up in the Haven Major, were honourably buried by sorrowful *Valetta* : who, moved with such cruelty, put to the Sword all *Turks* before taken, casting their Heads over the Walls, and every one that should be taken, to be presently slain.

From the first of the siege, to the taking of the Castle, were slain 1300 Christians, 130 being Knights of the Order.

Valetta, though exceedingly grieved, yet seemed otherwise, because of daunting his Souldiers: telling them, nothing was happened unprovided for, or unforeseen : that it was the will of God, and chance of Warre, sometimes one, sometimes another, to be overcome. &c. so encouraging them : then withdrawing aside, he (among many things cast in his troubled minde) determined to write to *Mesquita*, Governour of *Melita*, to certify him, the Knights at *Messania*, and the Viceroy, of the losse of *St. Elmo*, saying in his Letter, He for all that, thought it not lawful, to doubt of Gods mercy and power, though yet, he might complain, that they were forsaken of whom it least be seemed : saying, all their welfare consisted in celerity of relief from the Viceroy, bidding *Mesquita* to send him three Captains, with their Companies, and praying God to send them ayd from some place.

Mesquita

Mesquita sent *Codonellus* a Knight, in a Galliot into *Sicily*, requesting him with all possible speed, to passe over with thole Letters: *Mustapha* the while, sent a Messenger to *Valetta*, promising a *Spanish* captive liberty for going with him, to try if he would come to any agreement for yielding up the Town: whereinto the Christian being entred. (the *Turk* waiting at the Gate) declared his Message to *Valetta*, who was so angry at the name of composition, that had he not been a Christian, he would presently have hanged him: giving him his choyce, either to tarry still in the Town, or to go tell his Companion, if he packed not quickly away, he would send him farther off with a great shot.

The *Turk* returning with this answer, *Mustapha*, enraged, protested, never to forbear any kind of cruelty against the Christians.

One *Philip*, of the *Grecian* Family of *Lascaris*, then with *Mustapha*, (who had been courteously used by the Christians in *Patras*, by whom he was taken prisoner of a boy) had oft attempted to flee to *St. Michaels* Castle, at length, *July 1.* he swum to the Castle, being many times shot at by the *Turk's* Arrowes, and small shot. He revealed to *Valetta*, many of the enemies secrets, advising him, how to frustrate the enemies purpose, for assailing *Michaels* point, with other things, no small help to the Defendants, fighting himself valiantly during the Siege.

Codonellus, coming safely to *Messana*, found the Christian Fleet not ready: wherefore, the Knights, after debate, resolved by all meanes possible, to help their Brethren: choosing two Generalls of their own fellows, the Commanders of *Messana* and *Baroli*, who declared to *Garzias*, what the Knights of their Order had done for the King of *Spain* and the Christian Commonweale, and what charge they had been at the year before, in the

Pinionian expedition; beseeching him also to consider, of what concernment the losse of *Malta* was: therefore requesting of him four thousand Footmen, with whom all the Knights there, and many Volunteers would make all speed to relieve the besieged.

But whilest the Viceroy considereth of an answer, a Messenger came from *Spain*; whereupon, he answered, he could not grant their request; for so he should dis-furnish his Fleet; but they might transport the Knights, with part of the Bishop's Souldiers, with their own two Gallies, to whom he would joyn another.

Those four Gallies aforementioned, with the eighty Knights, and six hundred Souldiers, (through a great tempest, hindering the Frigot's return, which they sent to see whether *Elmo* Castle were still holden; and afterwards, by mistrusting a fire, which they saw within two Leagues, where they thought to land, (which yet was made as a sign, that they might without fear, come forward) arrived not at the black Rocks, on the South side of the Island, till *June* the 29, about midnight, getting unseen to the City *Malta*, there expecting what *Valetta* should command: in the meantime, a great fogge (seldom there chancing) arising, a Boy looked out of a Window in the Castle, crying out (as afraid) that he saw a *Turk* going from the City, to *Michaels* Castle: wherefore some of the Knights running out, found a *Greek* of the City, who upon examination (for none was to go forth without a *Passé*) confessed, he intended to give the Turks notice of those Souldiers coming, that they might be intercepted as they came to the grand Master; for which, he was cut in four Pieces. Three dayes after, in the first Watch, they came safely to *Valetta*, except two or three Boyes, who charged with Armour and Baggage, could not keep way with the rest, The besieged, incredibly

rejoyced at their coming, chiefly *Valetta*: who with teares trickling down, and eyes cast up to Heaven, said, *I thank thee (O Heavenly Father) which hearest my prayers, and forsakest not this thy little Flock, beset round with most ravening Wolves: these are the works of thine everlasting goodness, mercy, and providence.*

Valetta easily granting their desire, to be put into *St. Michaels Town*; (yet not removing the old Garrison) they next day sallied out; and having slain 200 *Turks*, and wounded as many, returned without a man lost. *Mustapha* knowing it was they which came lately in, fell in rage with his Captains, as that they entred by their negligence. But the suspicion was the more increased on them, which kept the uttermost part of the Island, because 3 Gallies of *Algiers* had withdrawn; so that he neither trusted them, nor the Renegade Christians, who fled daily from him: wherefore he proclaimed, those who lay out of the Gallies by night, should be burnt, or impaled on stakes; and changing his Warders, appointed *Salee* with his Gallies, to keep the Island: chaining together divers Gallies in the entrance of the Haven *Marza-Moxet*, causing the rest of the Fleet to ride nearer together than before. Three places were also assigned for the wounded: and the then exceeding many sick in the *Turk's* Camp. *Mustapha* then appointed *Ochiall Bassa*, Governour of *Tripolis*; who going thither, and setting things in order, returned again: having carried two Ships of Corn there, to make bread, whose want they began to feel. He sent also a Colonel to *Solyman*, to certifie him of the winning of *Elmo* Castle, with a description of the Isle, as they found it: and to declare, that the *Malteses* were stronger and better provided, than was supposed: wherefore if he should continue the siege, he should send a new supply of Men, Victual, &c. and while he expected an answer; he would do what possibly he might: who began
his

his battery in fourteen places, with seventy great Pieces, three being most huge Basilisks, so incessantly battering the Towns and Castles of *Michael* and *Angelo*, that scarce any could be safe therein: which most troubled the Women and Children. But the *Turks* were far more safe in their Trenches; yet they durst not stray farre from the Camp, but with a multitude, and then also were cut off by the Horsemen of *Malta*, who were ever ready at their heels.

At *Rome*, some were sory for the dishonour at the losse of *Elmo* Castle: others, fearing lest the calamities of the *Malteses*, should redound unto themselves: There were also a sort of men, unacquainted with Marriall affaires, who shamed not to lay the blame upon *Valetta*: whom his own valour, the testimony of so many famous men present, and this History shall now and hereafter acquit of so false a slander.

But when the three Galleys (containing besides Knights, six hundred *Spaniards*, and three hundred of the *Pope's* Souldiers) which through diligence, departed from *Messana*, *July* the 7th, with five hundred bushels of Wheat, (beside Gunpowder, Saltpeter, and Lead for shot) approached the Island; their Scout perceived by the sign, that they should retire: the *Turks* presently obscuring the Air with smoak, &c. that those Signes should not be discerned; but they were already descryed: so they returned to *Sicilie*; about which time, those in the City *Melita*, pursued the *Turks*, when they were fetching in booty of Cattel, slaying divers, recovering the prey, and chasing them even to their Camp; but the other *Turks*, seeing them flee so hastily toward them, raised an Alarum, ran to the Generals Tent, and for that time, ceased their battery:

Valetta,

Valetta, conjecturing, the *Turks* would soon assault the Town and Castle of *Michael*: was about himself to have gone thither, by a Bridge made of Boats, from one point to the other; but hearing the certainty thereof, returned into his Castle.

Some think it had been full of danger, for him so to have done; and therefore to have been discommended.

Others think the Generalls presence, chiefly in great dangers, is prayse-worthy and most necessary: after the examples of *Alexander* the great, *Julius Caesar*, *Themistocles*, *Marins*, and others: who said to their Souldiers, I my self will be your Conductor in field, in the Battel partaker of the same danger, ye shall be in all things as my self.

The King of *Algiers* came to the *Turks*, with seven Galleys, ten Galliot, and 2200 Souldiers: who requested *Mustapha*, for the first place in besieging *Michaels* Castle, which he granted him, joyning to his forces, two thousand of his best Souldiers: who commanded 90 small Vessels to be carried by Land out of *Marzamoxet*, to *Aqua Martia*, on that side, to besiege the Castle by water: Wherefore *Valetta* demanded of two skilful Shipmasters, what they thought best to be done, to keep the *Turks* from landing: who thought their purpose might be defeated, if a Chain of Masts and Sail-yards, joyned together with Iron Rings, were drawn from the corner of *St. Angelo*, to the place where the Enemy thought to Land, which was done the night following: the *Turks* perceiving this barre, when 'twas day, knew not how to Land their men; but a desperate Christian fugitive, promised the King to break the Chain, and swimming to it, two or three more following to help him, they got up upon it, hewing apace with their Hatchers.

Wherefore

Wherefore five or six *Malteses* swam thither with their drawn Swords, slaying two, and causing the rest to flee: after which, none attempted the same; yet the barbarous King, diligently prepared for the Siege, which *July* the 15th, began by Sea and Land; but the Defendants (in the three houres assault) slew with their Ordnance two thousand *Turks*, and sunk twelve Gallies: the rest, coming to the Chain which stopp'd them, turned their prows on the corner of the Castle, but were glad at last to retire.

The Land-assault, endured also five houres: many *Turks* being slain, and two hundred Defendants, four being Knights: *Medina* was also wounded, whereof he died.

But *Valetta* considering what danger was like to be, if he should fight many such fights: *July* the 17th, sent a Messenger into *Sicilie*, who swam from the Castle to *Aqua Martia*, thence escaping unknown, thorow the Enemies, to *Melita*, and so came to *Messana*: whose Letters, requested the Viceroy, to send *Valetta* his own two Gallies, with those Knights there, and what Souldiers might be transported therein: at which time, the Fleet from *Spain* came to *Messana*, with many Knights from divers Nations.

The Viceroy sent Letters before, to *Valetta*, in Caracters, by two Frigots, requiring some sign from him, whereby the Galleys at their coming, might know whether to enter or retire: one of which Frigots, laden with Medicines, was intercepted, the other came to *Melita*; yet since all passages between that and *St. Michael*, were shut up, and the Haven straightly kept, there could be no further direction from *Valetta*, for their safe sending; yet the Knights of *Messana*, thought good to adventure 40 Knights, with other Souldiers.

Salazar a Spanish Captain being sent with them to be landed in the Isle *Ganlos*: who should thence in a boat passe over to *Malta* as a Spy, to view the City and enemies Camp: The *Turks* the while, in revenge of the former losse, so battered the Castle, that they beat down by day what was repaired by night, laying a Bridge over the Ditch, *July 20.* that they might come to fight hand to hand: which seen, *Pariset* and *Agleria* Knights, with some Mercenaries, sallied out to burn the Bridge, but they were (with the Knights) almost all slain, and the exploit unperformed. The *Turks* battered without ceasing, till *July 28*: which afternoon, they assaulted it in divers places, with 3 fresh supplies: but the Defendants so repulsed them with weapons, shot, fire and force, that with no small losse they enforced them to retire: Wherefore now they made small reckoning of the enemy, who now determined to prove what might be done by undermining, which they almost perfected undiscovered; for they caused 2 Gallies to come as near as they could, and to batter that place, hoping thereby that the Defendants should the lesse regard what they were working in secret; yet the besieged, perceiving their purpose, with a Countermine, defeated their Mine; One Antient, especially, casting pots of Wild-fire before him, and following after with a fire-work in his hand, forcing them out; for which he was rewarded with a Chain of Gold weighing 5 $\frac{1}{2}$. And next day, *Aug: 1.* the Bridge, was (by a salley made) burnt down with fire and Gunpowder cast thereon, seasonably done; for next day the *Turks* again assailing that part, where *Rufus* had the charge, were valiantly repulsed, 300 being slain in that 3 hours assault, and *Rufus* himself with *Barezus* Knights, and some Mercenaries. At this time, the Christians could not look into the Ditch or shew themselves, but they were set off with great Ordnance; yet *Calderomus* a Spaniard, seeing some viewing that part of the wall, most battered at, the Castle-Bulwark, sallied out,

but was presently slain with a bullet : which did the more incense (not terrifie) the rest ; so that when they saw the enemy busie in filling the Ditch, 100 Knights and Souldiers sallying forth, made the enemy betake himself to flight, slaying 80, and losing ten men, 2 being Knights, whose Heads next day, the *Turks* set on spears upon their Trenches. The same day, they of *Melita* (at night) made many fires, discharging great Valleys of small shot, &c. done only to shew their cheerfulnesse, and keep the *Turks* in suspence : who for all that filled up the Ditch at the Castle-bulwark, whereby they might without stay passe unto the over-thrown Wall : with 2 great peeces from a High Mount cast up, playing upon the Castle, shooting at first shot in *Castilia's* Loupe, a Spanish Knight being there slain with a small shot : on which day a Spanish Souldier fled out of the Town to the enemy, assuring them, they should by a fresh assault win the Town ; there being but 400 alive in it, and they (he said) almost spent with labour and wounds. Wherefore Aug. 7. they at one instant assaulted the City at the Castle-bulwark, and the Castle at the Breach, with an exceeding multitude ; the noise of Warlike Instruments and cry of men on both sides, being exceeding confused and great : which the Knights in *Melita* hearing, and seeing the smoak, fearing the worst, All the Horsemen issued forth to avert the *Turks* from the assault by setting upon those at *Aqua Martia* ; who fled, these hardly pursuing them with bloody execucion, who piteously cryed for help : whereby the other gave over the assault, to rescue their fellows ; having lost 1500, besides those slain in chase : the Defendants in both places losing above 100, and almost as many wounded. *Valetta* going that day and certain others, to the Temple to give publike thanks for that Victory ; *Garzias* was advertised, that some ships with men and warlike provision were coming from *Constantinople* to *Malta* : who sent 2 Noblemen with 5 Gallies to meet them : who met only

one Frigot and a Gallior, taking the one, the other escaping to *Malta*. *Mustapha* commanded his Souldiers again to assault the Breach at *Michaels-Castle*; where they were (with no small slaughter) soon repulsed; He gave so many assaults, more to shew valour, and satisfy *Solyman*, than for hope of Victory, who had commanded, either to win the Island, or to lose all their lives. *Mustapha* also sent in haste to *Solyman*, shewing the state of the Fleet, the Armies difficulties, their small hope to win, how well the Christians were provided, &c.

The 2 Gallies aforesaid going out of the Haven of *Syracusa* met with a *Maltese*, coming from *Pozalo* in a boat sore wounded, telling them, that landing by night with one Companion, he was requested by 2 *Sicilians* to rest there that night, and 5 *Turks* breaking into the House, killed his Companion, carried away the *Sicilians*, wounding him thus, who hardly escaped by benefit of the night; Moreover, that the *Sicilians* told the *Turks*, two Gallies were come into that Port, bound for *Malta*: whereby they perceived their coming would be discovered; yet they kept on their course as far as *Pozalo*, whence they certified the Viceroy what had happened, and the South-wind blowing stiffly against them, they returned to *Syracusa* expecting his further direction, which was to stay for the coming of the whole Fleet, ready shortly to passe to *Malta*: but *Salazar* in his little boat, from *Pozalo*, soon arrived at *Malta*, and came to the City, and in Turkish Apparel, with a Companion who could speak their Language, by night got into the *Turks* Camp, where they perceived there was scarce 14000 Souldiers in all, many being wounded and sick, the rest but unserviceable and feeble. So they returned to the City, whence *Salazar* with one *Paccius* a Spaniard, went to a place nigh the Watch-Tower of *Muleca*, which they curiously viewing, *Paccius* was there left, that observing the signes from *Gaulos* and *Melita*, he might give knowledge to the Vice-

roy at his approach : *Salazar* himself returned to *Messana* in his little boat, declaring to the Viceroy all he had teen ; and affirming, the *Turks* Fleet was far unable to encounter with 10000 Christians : one of the 2 Frigots sent to *Malta*, returning with another *Spaniard* and a Turkish fugitive, and 4 Gallies coming in with 14 *Turks* taken about *Malta*, confirming the same, and saying, that the *Turks* seeing the Christians invincible courage, and skill in shooting, repented that ever they took in hand that expedition; many stealing away, especially the abjurers of the Christian Faith, &c. There was in the Castle one *Givara*, Captain of the Vanguard, who about 10 foot from the Wall beaten down, drew a Curtain 50 foot-long, and 5 foot-thick, with Flankers at both ends, a great help to the besieged : the enemy the while began a Mine under the Corner of the Town-ditch, defeated by a counter-mine. As a fugitive was swimming to the Town, he was taken by the enemy, which much grieved the besieged. Now part of the *Turks* assailed the Cattle, and part thought to have blown up the Castle-bulwark ; but many were in both places slain, and some baggs of powder taken from them in the Mine. *Mustapha* and *Piall* disappointed of their hope, consulted with the other great Captains, whether to continue that desperate siege or depart ; most thinking, it was best betime to depart, yet *Mustapha* said, He would stay till the Galliot were returned from *Solyman* : and the while, by force and policy to seek after Victory : which he did too often, either for his Armie's or the besieged's estate, bringing all to such perfection in short time, as might have carried a stronger place, had not the Defendants valour far exceeded all his devices. *Robles* Governour of the Castle viewing by night the Walls-ruines, was struck in the Head with a small shot and slain, A man for his many good parts beloved. In whose stead, *Valetta*, sent an expert and resolute Colonell, who so vigilantly discharged his place, that the

the *Turks* were repulsed with losse, so oft as they attempted the place.

Two Gallies with a Galliot deserv'd by the 2 Gallies of *Malta*, told *Piall*, The Christian Fleet was ready to come forth: Wherefore he caus'd 70 Gallies to be in readinesse, keeping himself by day in the Port *Maio*r nigh the shoar, putting to sea by night, expecting their coming; but (after long looking) when he saw none, he land- ed his men again, taking out of every Galley most of the powder for the *Bassa*, at land. After which, they (with a greater fury) battered the Walls of both Towns, especially with Basilisks, whose shot was 7 hands about: the Walls of *Michaels*-Castle being beaten flat: and the Castle Bulwark of *St. Angelo* was almost fallen quite down. Wherefore *Aug.* 18. (at noon) they fiercely assaulted both Towns, being thrice repulsed, and still coming on afresh; yet at length with greater slaughter they gave over the 5 hours assault: Wherein *Valetta* armed with a pike, was still valiantly fighting in the face of the Breach, so encouraging even the boyes and women to fight, yet part of the *Turks* stood still in the Town-ditch, having cast up a defence of earth, faggots, &c. to save themselves, in approaching to undermine the wall; but the besieged bending their Artillery upon it, slew many, consuming what was left. Next day the assault was renewed at the same places: first battering both Towns all day, and the Moon rising, about mid night with a horrible cry, began a most terrible assault; yet the Christians (at first much troubled) with weapons and fire-works, made the enemy after 3 hours fight, to retire ill-intreated: on which day a Mine was perceived at the Castle-bulwark, wherein 100 *Turks* were almost all slain, and the Mine destroyed; yet next day did the enemy, give 7 assaults, using fire-works also, *Bobinsegna* losing one of his eyes therewith. The *Turks* also mightily laboured to enter the Castle at the *Spur*; but *Centius* a Knight, with a pike, thrust them down that

were climbing up the Rampire, thrusting one thorow; but himself shot in the arm, who withdrawing to have his wound bound up, returned to the Rampire, never departing till (as a Conquerour) he had preserved the place. So the *Turks* with great slaughter, left the Christians Victors of whom almost 100 were slain: one Knight at St. *Angelo*, and divers at St. *Michaels*, where the *Turks* also having wrought a Mine, it was destroyed.

Certain Knights fearing, lest that so often attempted by the enemy, should at length be effected, told *Valetta*, they thought it meet and needful, to remove all the Records, Pictures, reliques of Saints, &c. into the Castle of S. *Angelo*, a place of more strength: He, exceeding moved (though he knew they spake it of a good mind) answered, So to do, were but to discourage the *Malteses*, and also the mercenary Souldiers: Wherefore, he would keep all, or lose all. And because none should hope in the strength of that Castle, he would bring forth all the Garrison into the Town, leaving nothing but Gunners in it, to shoot at the enemy as need required. But with the dawning of this day, the *Turks* assailed the same places with the greatest fury, chiefly at the ruins of the Castle, where *Romanus* an *Avergnois* lost his transitory life, and at *Michaels* divers Knight were grievously wounded; for the enemy suddenly retiring, mightily thundred into the breaches with great and small shor. *Valetta* thorowly wearied, had withdrawn himself but a little when a Priest came roaring out, that all was lost, 3 or 4 Ensigns being by the Castle breach, broken into the Town: whereupon he clapt on his Helmer, and with pike in hand, uttered a brief comfortable speech to those about him, concluding, *Wherefore follow me, valiant hearts*: and so hastened to the place of most danger, with Souldiers, Citizens, men and women, old and young, yea the very Children. There was a most dreadful and dangerous battel: within, without, all was covered with Darts, Weapons, dead bodies and

and blood : *Valetta* being every where present, commending, exhorting, directing as occasion required. At length the *Turks* with sun-setting retired, above 2000 were slain, besides every one of them who were entred : *Valetta* losing in this fight above 200 men.

Garzim the Viceroy, Aug. 20. with 72 Gallies, set forward from *Messana* to *Syracusa*, with 1000 select Souldiers, above 200 being Knights of St. *John*, and about 40 of the order of St. *Steven*, instituted by *Cosmus Medices*, Duke of *Florence* in 1561, and residing in *Cosmopolis*, a new-built City in the Island of *Elba*. There were also divers noble and valiant men. The Viceroy sent *Auria* from *Syracusa* to land a man, to know of *Paccius* what news, or what he had seen? who said, there was but one Galliot seen at sea, which Aug. 21, made towards *Gaulos*, and the same day 16 Gallies came to water at *Saline*, but the nights coming on, hindred a further deservying of them. The besieged had notably repaired the breach at the Castle-bulwark, placing Ordnance in divers places to flanker the Ditches, and beat the Mount cast up by the enemy to annoy the Castle with small shot : who, at once to assault both Towns as before, brought an Engine to cover 30 men under the breach at *Michaels*; so that the Defendants could not (without danger) there appear : Wherefore sallying out, they put them to flight under it, burning the Engine. So also they did at the new City : and next night some issuing out of the Castle, destroyed the Engines prepared, slew the keepers thereof and safely returned : but the enemies resting not, but repairing things, laboured to beat the Christians from the walls in both places, and were by valour and industry frustrated. The besieged made a Mine at the Castle-breach to blow up the enemy, if he should again assault it ; but the *Turks* there working a Mine also, lighted on theirs, spoiling it & carrying away the powder. *Mustapha* considering the summer to be far spent, determined with all his

power, once more to assault *Michaels Castle* : Wherefore displaying of his Emperours stately Standard , he commanded his men to enter the Breach, where was made a most terrible and doubtful fight ; but the *Turks* having been twice beaten down, *Mustapha* came himself to the places, praying and exhorting his Souldiers, faintly fighting, not to be discouraged, but to confirm their former labours and Victories, and not suffer their vanquished enemies to triumph over them, &c. promising Money, Honour and Preferment, threatening and requesting. Who, moved, gave a fresh and fierce assault ; yet the *Turks* were again forced to retire, for the Defendants with 2 Field-peece from a Rampire, at first shot, struck in sunder their strongest wooden-Engine (covered with raw Hides) with 40 Souldiers under it: and they in the other Town, sallying forth, destroyed all their defences : and (though but 25 of them) they drave almost 300 *Turks* from a Mount. The Defendants had made another Mine at the Castle-bulwark, but seeing it in danger to be found, they fired it, 60 *Turks* within danger being slain.

Garzias the while, departed from *Syracusa* to *Pasbi-num*, overtaking a tall ship driven thither by Tempest, who was carrying shot and powder to the *Turks*, which he sent to *Syracusa*. A Tempest arising from the East, drave the Christian Fleet to the Island *Agusa*, 220 miles west of *Malta*, whence *Valetta* had Letters, Sept 1. that the Viceroy would shortly come and relieve him : on which day a Christian captive, fled to *St. Angelo*, reporting, that the *Turks* had few men able to fight, and that great numbers died daily, yet that they determined to besiege *Melita*, and had already mounted 5 great peece for battery : Having taken first 12, then 14 Horsemen of the Garrison. The Fleet coming from *Agusa* to *Drepranum*, thence toward *Gaulos*, 2 *Matra* Gallies (by the way) took 2 *Turks* Galliot. The Viceroy perceiving not the appointed signes, returned from *Gaulos* to *Pozalo*; but

Auria following, and telling him, he had seen the signs of safe landing, he next day returned again to *Gaulos*. On which day, a Christian captive fled to *St. Angelo*, and told *Valetta*, the *Turks* would prove their last fortune in assaulting *Michaels* Castle next day, and if they had not answerable success, forthwith to be gone: *Mustapha* promising 5 Talents of Gold to those who first advanced their Ensigns on the Walls, and promote them higher, and to reward the rest according to their desert. *Valetta* first gave thanks to God, for such discoveries from time to time, then preparing necessities for repulsing the enemy: but the *Turks* all that day battered the new City, and the shipping in the Haven, sinking one great ship. *Gatzias* in the morning arrived at *Malta*, landing his Forces, and going forward with them about half a mile, instructed the chief Commanders what was to be done; all things to be in the King of *Spain's* name, but till they came to the Great Master.

So exhorting them to play the men, he left them marching to *Melita*, in sight whereof he came with all his Fleet: they of the City discharging all their Ordnance, which was answered from the Fleet twice. Then he returned into *Sicily* to take in the Duke of *Urbins* companies, and some Spanish Bands, and so to return to attend the *Turks* Fleet's departure, as good as half overthrown. As soon as the *Turks* heard the Army was landed, there arose a wondrous confusion among them: some crying Arm, arm, and others To be gone; the greatest number, burning the Engines and Fortifications, with all speed embarked their Ordnance and baggage: which they in *St. Angelo* perceiving, sallied out (without command) to *Burmola*: where some *Turks* fleeing from a huge piece of Ordnance which they kept, they drew it within their Walls: and, had the new-come Forces charged the enemy, as they disorderly ran to their Gallies, perhaps they had found occasion of Victory, or taken most of their Artillery:

illery: but they thought it not convenient to leave the things brought for relief of the besieged, which for roughness of the way, and want of Horses, were hardly carried, Sept. 11. a *Genuan* fugitive came in haste, telling *Valetta*, that 1000 *Turks* were marching to meet with the Christians on the way: whereupon, he sent Souldiers to *St. Elmo* Castle, to set upon an Ensign of the Order: who found 24 great Peeeces which they could not (for haste) remove.

Mustapha being landed from *Marza Moxet* at *St. Paul's* Port (with 7000 men) by the Fleet; and being falsely informed, the Christians were not above 3000, marched toward *Melita*, and at the rising of a Hill, both Armies meeting, gave a great shout, the foremost beginning Battel, a few being slain on both sides: but the Christians growing on them in number and strength, they fled, the Christians killing of them to their Galleys, where, striving who to get in first, about 400 were drowned, besides 1800 slain. The *Turks* lay in the Haven all next day, and most of the night following: and upon shooting of a great piece, hoysed sayl, leaving *Malta* sore wasted, losing in all about 24000, most being their best Souldiers, About 5000 Christians were slain, besides 240 Knights, honourably buried. The *Turks* spending 78000 great shot in battery. All things considered, a man shall scarce find a place these many years more mightily impugned, or with greater valour and resolution defended.

Valetta thus acquitted, commanded publike prayers with thanksgiving to be made to the giver of all Victory; then rewarded the Valiant, commended the rest, thanked all, relieved the sick and wounded, bewailed the spoil, provided for reparation of Breaches, &c. And yet in all this was not secure; but because of the great harms, and the enemies return, next year feared, He by Letters to divers Princes, chiefly to the grand Priors of the Order in divers Countries, requested help: containing also
briefly.

briefly in his Letter to *George*, grand Prior of *Germany* and founder of *Elmo* Castle, what hath been largely written in this History. And being bountifully relieved by those he wrote to, he both repaired and with Fortifications strengthened places, subject to the enemies force.

Solyman exceeding angry with the Governour of *Chios* Island (who during the siege had intelligence with *Valletta*, revealing many of the *Turk's* designs, also for detaining 2 years Tribure, 20000 Duckats, and not sending his wonted Presents to the *Bassas*) commanded *Piall* to prepare his Fleet, and take that Island into his own hand: who *April* 15. 1566. with 80 Gallies, there arrived: Whereupon, the chief men, sent him Embassadors with presents, offering him the Haven, and whatever he should require; who kindly accepting thereof, and landing, sent for the Governor and 12 Citizens, as if he had some special matter to confer about from *Solyman*, before he went thence for *Malta* or *Italy*: who coming to him with great fear, he cast them into Irons; the Souldiers taking the Town-Hall, pulling down the Towns-Ensign, having in it *St. George* with a Red-crosse, and setting up one of the *Turks*, and so was it thorow the whole Island. Then rifling the Temples, they consecrated them after their manner. The Governour and Senators with their Families were sent to *Constantinople*: the vulgar to tarry there or depart. So *Piall* placing a Turkish Governour, and a strong Garrison, departed from that fertile Island for *Italy*: burning and destroying the Villages along *Apulia*, and carrying the people into captivity, so returning. *John* the Vayuod of *Transilvania* grieved with the harms from the Emperours Captains (whereof he was the cause) and vainly hoping (from *Solyman*) to have most part of *Hungarie*, calling himself King thereof, ceased not to sollicite him to come personally to make a full Conquest. summoning the Nobility and Burgeses (as if by *Solymans* appointment) to meet at *Torda*, *March* 9, about matters for

for the common good ; which *Swendi* the Emperours Lieutenant hearing, counter-manded them , perswading the *Hungarians* not to listen to the *Vayuods* and *Turks* charms tending to destruction, but to obey *Maximilian*, who purposed to protect them in peace.

Hence it was, that the remainders of this fore-shaken Kingdome (divided) began afresh to work each others confusion, serving the *Turks* for a further encroachment : who then surprized *Ainastch* (in the Captain and some of the Souldiers absence) putting all to the sword : but they were by valiant *Serinus* at *Sigeth* after 4 hours hard fight overthrown and put to flight ; not long after, they ranged up and down fetching in booty, and doing much harm ; Wherefore, *Maximilian* appointed his Captains to raise such Forces in *Germany*, as were lately granted him by the Princes and States of the Empire at *Augusta*, going himself to *Vienna* ; for *Solyman* was set forward with a mighty Army, and come to *Belgrade*, where the *Vayuod* of *Transilvania* met him, kissing his Hand, and commending himself and all his State to his protection. Then did *Swendi* hardly besiege *Husth* in the borders of *Transilvania* : and the *Bassa* of *Buda* (on the other side) besieging *Palotta*, had, by 8 days continual battery, greatly endangered it, though valiantly defended by *Thuriger* ; but the Count of *Helffenstein* approaching with some Companies, he rose in such haste, that he left some Ordnance and much baggage behind him. The Count had the Breaches repaired, strengthening the Garrison with a supply. After that, he strengthened by Count *Salina*, with some Companies from *Rab*, came to *Vesprimium* about 2 miles off , which he taking by force, *June 30.* left not a *Turk* alive, who had lately slain some Christians which they took : so leaving a strong Garrison they returned to *Rab*.

Shortly after, Count *Salma* besieged *Tatta* or *Dotis*, taking it by assault, *July 28.* slaying all the *Turks* but 50, who

who fleeing into a Tower of the Castle yielded on composition, the Governour and 2 other chief ones being sent prisoners to *Vienna*. He was on his way to besiege *Gestes* nigh *Palotta*; but the *Turks* seeing his Army, left all and fled to *Strigonium*: 3 other Garrisons of Castles, firing what they could not carry, doing the like; for which good success, *Maximilian* caused publike prayers and thanksgiving to be made all thereabouts.

Count *Serinus* certainly advertised of *Solyman* coming to *Zigeth*, sent 2 of his Captains with 1000 Foot, and 500 Horse to lie in wait for the fore-runners of his Army, who not far from *Quinque Ecclesia*, next day about night, suddenly set upon them, who disorderly fleeing several wayes, were most slain or wounded in flight. *Hali-beg* sore wounded, perishing in the Marshes: whose son and many others were carried prisoners to *Zigeth*: beside store of Plate and Coin, they took 8 Camels, 5 Mules, and 6 Carts laden with all manner of spoil; and many rich Garments, with 2 fair red-Ensignes. *Maximilian* besides his own Forces, procured great aid of the States of the Empire and other Princes, who met at *Rab*; beside which Land-forces, he had 12 Gallies and 30 ships: so made, that the men could not be hurt with Arrows: wherein was 3000 Souldiers, most *Italians*, under *Flachins* a *Germane*, and a Knight of *Malta*; afterward, one of the number of the Princes of the Empire.

Solyman commanded a bridge to be made over *Dra-vus*, and the deep Fens on tother side, for transporting his Army, so difficult, that being thrice begun, it was given over as impossible. *Solyman* swearing in his rage to hang up the great *Bassa* who had the charge thereof, if he did not with all speed perfect it: whereupon all boats to be found, were taken up, and timber brought from far, not only the vulgar, but the Gentlemen of the Countrey were forced to work day and night, till the Bridge was, in ten dayes space (by such a multitude) finished: Over which

(a mile long) *Solymán* passing, encamped at *Muhatchz*, staying till his huge Army was come together. *July 30.* 90000 (the Vanguard) encamped within a mile of *Zigeth*: 100000 more following soon after, many in their approach being slain from the Castle, yet they encamped and began the siege: *Zigeth* is strongly situate in a Marsh on the Frontiers of *Dalmatia*, denominated from the Countrey it commandeth, and a strong Bulwark against the *Turks* further entrance that way towards *Stiria*. *Serinus* the Governour seeing that huge Army, called together the Captains of the Garrison (being 2300 good Souldiers) (into the Castle, making a short but comfortable and resolute speech, saying toward the end, *I am resolved, as I hope ye are, that as I am a Christian and free born, so (by Gods Grace) in the same faith and freedom to end my dayes; neither shall the proud Turk, while I can hold up this hand, have power to command over me, or the ground whereon I stand: which to perform he solemnly took oath, perswading them to the like; so every one returned to his charge.*

Aug. 5. The Army encamped a mile off, and next day *Solymán* came into the Camp, the great Ordnance exceedingly thundering, and the *Turks* (as they were wont) crying aloud, *Alla, Alla, Alla*, the Christians answering with the Name of *Jesus*, *Aug. 7.* They cast up a great Mount, planting some great Ordnance. Next day, they most terribly battered the new Town in 3 places, casting up a Mount in the midst of the Marsh: whence, next day and night, they battered the inward Castle without ceasing, greatly hurting both Castle and Defendants. *Serinus* seeing the new City was now to be defended, set all on fire, and retired into the old, *Aug. 10.* they furiously battered the old Town in 3 places, bringing their Ordnance into the new Town, and making a bridge the better to go over the marsh: 2 plain wayes of wood, earth, stones, faggots, &c. being (with wondrous labour) made tho:

thorow the deep Fenne from the Town to the Castle, where the *Janizaries* defended with Wool-sacks, &c. (the Defendants could not shew themselves on the Walls without great danger for their small shor. So the *Turks* (yet with great loss) by force entred the old town, *Aug. 19.* and with such speed, that they slew many of the most valiant before they could recover the Castle. Next day they planted their battery against the Castle in 4 places, making 2 plain wayes to it thorow the Marsh; and *Aug. 29.* they fiercely assailed the Breaches; but having lost many men they were forced to retire, a great *Bassa* being also lost.

Solyman (the while) distempered with long travel fell sick of a loofness, retiring for Health-sake to *Quinque Ecclesia* near *Zigeth*, where *Sept. 4.* 1566. he died of the Bloody-flux, 76 years old, Raigning 46. who was tall and slender, long-necked, pale and wan, long and Hook-nosed, ambitious and bountiful, more faithful of his promise than most of his Progenitors. *Muhamet* the Visier *Bassa*, fearing the insolence of the *Janizaries*, and some tumult in the Camp, concealed his death, and to that end, had his Physicians and Apothecaries secretly strangled: willing *Selimus* then at *Magnesia* by a trusty Post to hasten to *Constantinople*, to take the possession of the Empire, and so to come to the Army; but the *Janizaries* began to mistrust the matter. Wherefore *Muhamet* caused the dead body of *Solyman* to be brought into his Tent sitting upright in his Horse-litter, as if sick of the Gour, whereby he contented the *Janizaries*, who began now to undermine the greatest Bulwark, whence the Defendants did most annoy them; and *Septemb. 5.* had set all the Bulwark on a light-fire. Whereby possessing it, they with all their force assailed the Bulwark next the Castle-gate, whence they were with great slaughter twice repulsed; but the fire encreasing, *Serinus* was forced

was forced with those left, to retire into the inner-Castle, where was but two great pieces, besides fourteen others.

Septemb. 7. They furiously assaulted the little Castle, whereinto they cast so much fire, that it set all on fire. No place being now left for the Count safely to retire unto; He went into his Chamber, putting on a new rich suit, and came presently out with his Sword and Targuer, speaking a few, his last words to his chearful Souldiers: *That the hard Fortune of that sinful Kingdom, with their own, had overtaken them, but they should with patience endure, and since the place was no longer to be kept, &c. They should valiantly break into the utter Castle, there to die and live with God for ever; saying, He would go out first, they to follow like men.*

So with Sword and Targuer, calling thrice on the Name of Jesus, he issued out of the Gate with the rest, where valiantly fighting on the Bridge, slaying some *Janizaries*, he fell down dead with a shot in the Head (being first wounded twice with small shot) the *Turks* crying for joy, *Alla*: the rest fleeing back, were all slain, but a few whom some *Janizaries* (for their valour) by putting their Caps on their Head, saved from the others fury. The *Turks* reported, they lost 7000 *Janizaries*, 28000 others, beside Volunteers not enrolled, and three *Bassas*.

Serinus Head was cut off, and next day (with the other Heads) set upon a pole; then, by *Muhamet*, sent to the *Bassa* of *Buda*, who sent it to Count *Salma* in the Camp at *Rab*, covered with a fair linnen-cloath, with a few quipping words in a Letter: Whose death was much lamented of all the Army, and his Head honourably buried with many tears by his son among his Ancestours.

Solyman purposed (before his return) to Conquer both the remainder of *Hungary*, and to attempt *Vienna* again:

To which end, he sent *Parthan Bassa* with 40000 *Turks* to help the *Bassa* of *Temesware*, and the *Tartars* besiege strong *Giula*, in the *Vayuods* behalf; not far from whence, *Swendi* in *Aug.* before, had slain 10000 *Tartars*, called in by *Solyman* to ayd the *Vayuod*. He then also sent *Mustapha* of *Bosna* and *Carambeius* with a great power, who with the *Bassa* of *Buda*, should busie the Emperour, whilst he belieged *Zigeth*. *Parthan* was still notably repulled by *Keretschen* the Governour, before *Giula*, having some of his Ordnance taken from him, and the rest cloyed; but this brave Captain, was at last perswaded by his Kinsman *Bebicus* (from whom *Swendi* had taken some Castles for revolting to the *Vayuod*) for a great summe to deliver up the Town: the Souldiers all to depart with bag and baggage; who were not gone past a mile, but they were all slain by the *Turks*, but a few who crept into the Reeds in a Marsh. *Keretschen* himself being carried in Bonds to *Constantinople*, where, upon complaint, how hardly he had used some *Turks* taken, he was by *Selimus's* command rolled up and down in a closed Hoghead stuck full of Nails with the points inward, till he died, with this inscription, *Here, Receive the reward of thy avarice and Treason: Giula, thou soldest for Gold. If thou be not faithful to Maximilian thy Lord, neither wilt thou be to me.*

Many hot skirmishes passing between the Emperours Camp at *Rab*, and the *Bassa* of *Buda* and *Bosna* at *Alba Regalis*, *Septemb. 5.* The *Turks* came in great number out of the Camp, lighting on a few Forragers, slaying some, the rest fleeing and raising an Allarm: whereupon, some issuing out, pursued the *Turks*, and slew divers: *Thuriger* deserying the Governour of *Alba Regalis*, never left him till he took him, and presenting him to the Emperour, he was Knighted and rewarded

with a Chain of Gold: When a Spaniard charged the prisoner before the Emperour; that he heard him say openly at *Constantinople*, He with his power only could vanquish the *Germane* King (as the *Turks* term the Emperour.) The *Turk* answered him: such is the chance of War, Thou seest me now a prisoner and able to do nothing.

Muhamet Bassa, repairing, wrongly Garrisoning, and placing a Governour in *Zigeth*, call'd back the dispersed Forces, and retired towards *Belgrade*, carrying *Solymans* body sitting upright in his Hort-litter, he having been many yeares so carried; whose fortunate presence, though he could do nothing, the *Janizaries* still desired.

The

